

A HISTORY OF THE CRUSADES

Kenneth M. Setton, GENERAL EDITOR

A HISTORY OF THE CRUSADES

Kenneth M. Setton, GENERAL EDITOR

I The First Hundred Years

II The Later Crusades, 1189-1311

III The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries

IV The Art and Architecture of the Crusader States

V The Impact of the Crusades on the Near East

VI The Impact of the Crusades on Europe

Volume VI

THE IMPACT OF THE CRUSADES
ON EUROPE



Melizmed II, "the Conqueror." Portrait by Gentile Bellini. National Gallery, London

A HISTORY OF THE CRUSADES

KENNETH M. SETTON

GENERAL EDITOR

Volume VI THE IMPACT OF THE CRUSADES ON EUROPE

EDITED BY

HARRY W. HAZARD

AND

NORMAN P. ZACOUR

THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN PRESS

Published 1989

The University of Wisconsin Press
114 North Murray Street
Madison, Wisconsin 53715

3 Henrietta Street
London WC2E 8LU, England

Copyright © 1989
The Board of Regents of the University of Wisconsin System
All rights reserved

First printing

Printed in the United States of America

For LC CIP information see the colophon

ISBN 0-299-10740-X



HARRY W. HAZARD

1918-1989

AMICO NOSTRO ET LABORIS CONSORTI

HOC VOLUMEN ULTIMUM HISTORIAE

EXPEDITIONUM AD TERRAM SANCTAM

LIBERANDAM MISSARUM

DEDICAMUS



Justissimum bellum

CONTENTS

Foreword	xy
Preface	xvii
A Note on Transliteration and Nomenclature	xix
Abbreviations	xxiii
I The Legal and Political Theory of the Crusade	3
<i>Norman Daniel, Cairo, Egypt</i>	
II Crusade Propaganda	39
<i>Norman Daniel</i>	
III The Epic Cycle of the Crusades	90
<i>Alfred Fowler[†] (Princeton University)</i>	
IV Financing the Crusades	116
<i>Fred A. Cazet, Jr., The University of Connecticut</i>	
V The Institutions of the Kingdom of Cyprus	150
<i>Jean Richard, Université de Dijon</i>	
VI Social Evolution in Latin Greece	175
<i>David Jacoby, The Hebrew University of Jerusalem</i>	
VII The Ottoman Turks and the Crusades, 1329-1451	222
<i>Halil İnalcık, The University of Chicago</i>	
VIII The Crusade of Varna	276
<i>Martin Čadež, Bridgeport, Connecticut</i>	
IX The Ottoman Turks and the Crusades, 1451-1522	311
<i>Halil İnalcık</i>	

X	Crusader Coinage with Greek or Latin Inscriptions	354
	<i>John Porteus, London, England</i>	
XI	Crusader Coinage with Arabic Inscriptions	421
	<i>Michael L. Bates, The American Numismatic Society</i> <i>and D. M. Metcalf, Ashmolean Museum,</i> <i>Oxford University</i>	
	Gazetteer and Note on Maps	483
	Select Bibliography of the Crusades	511
	<i>compiled by Hans Eberhard Mayer, Universität Kiel,</i> <i>and Joyce McLellan</i>	
	<i>edited by Harry W. Hazard</i>	
	Index	665

MAPS

following page 238

- 1 The Near East
- 2 Western Europe
- 3 Central Europe
- 4 Frankish Greece
- 5 The Straits and the Aegean
- 6 Northern Syria
- 7 Palestine
- 8 Cyprus
- 9 Venice and the Levant in 1300
- 10 The Ottoman Empire 1300-1451
- 11 The Ottoman Empire 1451-1522
- 12 Mongols and Missions in the Thirteenth Century
- 13 Missions and Mongols in the Fourteenth Century

*Maps compiled by Henry W. Hazard and corrected by the
Cartographic Laboratory of the University of Wisconsin, Madison*

FOREWORD

As I observed in the Foreword to the preceding volume, it has been a long, hard journey. There were times when I wondered whether we should ever reach the end but now, after many years, we have finally done so. From time to time we have had to institute changes in our initial plans. At least some of these changes have been for the better. In some cases, to be sure, we have been forced to yield to practicality or to one circumstance or another. Also we have unfortunately lost along the way several of our contributors and two of our fellow editors, Marshall W. Baldwin and Robert Lee Wolff, who labored with a steadfast devotion to the first and second volumes of this *History of the Crusades*. I am saddened by the thought that they will not hold this last volume in their hands. It is a pleasure, however, to express my indebtedness to Dr. Harry W. Hazard and to Professor Norman P. Zacour, who have made possible the appearance of these volumes. With the courage and determination of a true crusader Dr. Hazard has borne a heavy load. Furthermore, we are most grateful to Mary Hazard for her valiant help. I am glad at last to be able to express in print my thanks to Professor Hans Eberhard Mayer, who, despite his numerous responsibilities, agreed *amicitiae gratia* to prepare a bibliography for all six volumes. We are pleased to welcome into our midst one of the outstanding crusading historians of our time.

We are grateful to Dr. Susan Rabbitt, who is now with the American Philosophical Society in Philadelphia, for her help with this volume as well as with Volume V. I am also pleased at long last to acknowledge our indebtedness to Mrs. Elizabeth A. Steinberg, assistant director of the University of Wisconsin Press, whose conscientious attention to detail has been of endless assistance to us. It is now more than thirty years ago (in 1955) that I sketched in the Foreword to Volume I what I might call the historical background to this work. There I dwelt upon the interest taken in it and the impetus given to it by Dana C. Munro, August C. Krey, Frederick Duncalf, and John L. LaMonte before any plans had really been made or a single word had been written. Without the enthusiasms of these scholars, however, all of whom left us many years ago, this work would never have come

into being. Therefore my fellow editors and I want once more to recall them to our readers and again to render thanks to all four of them.

KENNETH M. SETTON

The Institute for Advanced Study
Princeton, New Jersey
March 21, 1988

It is now some days ago that the sad news came of the death of Dr. Harry W. Hazard. He left us on 5 February (1989). My comrad-in-arms for almost forty years, as we wended our way through the long history of the *Crusades*, he will be sorely missed. His death led me to reread the Foreword to the first edition of Volume I of this *History of the Crusades* (1955) outlining the part played so many years ago by Minro, LaMotte, Duncalf, and Krey in planning a work that was initially to be in three volumes but, as time went on, became four, then five, and finally six. As one after another the volumes have appeared, they seem to bear almost no relation to the original planning. Year after year changes had to be made. We would have second thoughts. Contributors died, withdrew from the project, or failed to write their chapters. "Hap" Hazard was more patient than I as the almost endless changes had to be made.

Despite months of illness, Hap Hazard spent much time on this last volume, but it would not have been finished within the current year except for the assistance of his wife, Mary Hazard. She has retyped the Bibliography and the Gazetteer, added all the page references to the index cards from which the printers set the type, and shared with us the proofreading of the entire volume. But now I fear we must agree with our old friend Shakespeare that "Hector is dead: there is no more to say!"

K. M. S.

Princeton
February 12, 1989

PREFACE

This is the last volume of *A History of the Crusades*. It marks an end neither to the conflict with Islam nor to the very idea of crusade as a mass movement divinely sanctioned. The crusading impulse remained a vital force in the West whether directed towards a holy war to win Jerusalem or, later, a defensive struggle against Turkish aggression. Bede had long since taught the West about Ishmael, the father of Islam, whose hand was raised against all men, and against whom the hands of all men were raised in turn. Islam, then, remained an enemy with whom peace was unthinkable, war a duty. The duty would be all the more pressing in coming centuries when, as the Turkish threat grew, the very future of Christian Europe seemed to hang in the balance. Like so much else in medieval Europe, the crusade demanded both legal definition and theological justification, to say nothing of financial and military organization, constant preaching, and propaganda. Three centuries of crusading fervor accompanied by incredible hardships, massive sacrifices, legends of heroism, and propaganda of hatred, left for the future a heritage of profound consequence impossible to measure.

How sad that our colleague, Harry Hazard, was not allowed to hold this finished volume in his hands. But he was determined to see it through its final preparation. Hardly a page has not felt his touch. He was one of many who inspired the entire *History* and for whom in turn it has become something of a monument. It was with some prescience that, just before his death, he recalled the comments of Hil Gilbert: "By caring about and being moved by the persons and deeds of our ancestors, we give assurance – and are assured – of a sort of immortality."

Norman P. Zacour

*Centre for Medieval Studies
University of Toronto
Toronto, Canada
August 15, 1989*

J. Spirit. Supernat., XLIV (June 21, 1976), 76.

A NOTE ON transliteration AND NOMENCLATURE

One of the obvious problems to be solved by the editors of such a work as this, intended both for general readers and for scholars in many different disciplines, is how to render the names of persons and places, and a few other terms, originating in languages and scripts unfamiliar to the English-speaking reader and, indeed, to most readers whose native languages are European. In the present volume, as in most of the entire work, these comprise principally Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and Armenian, none of which was normally written in our Latin alphabet until its adoption by Turkey in 1928. The analogous problem of Byzantine Greek names and terms has been handled by using the familiar Latin equivalents, Anglicized Greek, or occasionally, Greek type, as has seemed appropriate in each instance, but a broader approach is desirable for the other languages under consideration.

The somewhat contradictory criteria applied are ease of recognition and readability on the one hand and scientific accuracy and consistency on the other. It has proved possible to reconcile these, and to standardize the great variety of forms in which identical names have been submitted to us by different contributors, through constant consultation with specialists in each language, research in the sources, and adherence to systems conforming to the requirements of each language.

Of these, Arabic presents the fewest difficulties, since the script in which it is written is admirably suited to the classical language. The basic system used, with minor variants, by all English-speaking scholars was restudied and found entirely satisfactory, with the slight modifications noted. The chief alternative system, in which every Arabic consonant is represented by a single Latin character (t for th, h for kh, d for dh, l for sh, g for gh) was rejected for several reasons, needless proliferation of diacritical marks to bother the eye and multiply

occasions for error, absence of strong countervailing arguments, and, most decisively, the natural tendency of non-specialists to adopt these spellings but omit the diacritical marks. The use of single letters in this manner leads to undesirable results, but the spellings adopted for the present work may be thus treated with confidence by any writer not requiring the discriminations which the remaining diacritical marks indicate.

The letters used for Arabic consonants, in the order of the Arabic alphabet, are these: ' , b, t, th, j, h, kh, d, dh, z, s, sh, ʿ, ḡ, ʃ, gh, f, q, k, l, m, n, h, w, y. The vowels are a, i, u, lengthened as ā, ī, ū, with the *sh/ḡ-gūmā-t-yē'* distinguished as k; initial ' is omitted, but terminal macrons are retained. Diphthongs are aw and aī, not aw and ay, as being both philologically preferable and visually less misleading. The same considerations lead to the omission of l of al- before a duplicated consonant (Nūr-ad-Dīn rather than Nūr-al-Dīn). As in this example, hyphens are used to link words composing a single name (as also 'Abd-Allāh), with weak initial vowels elided (as Abū-l-Ḥasan). Normally al- (meaning "the") is not capitalized; ḡm- is not when it means literally "son of," but is otherwise (as Ibn Khaldūn).

Some readers may be disconcerted to find the prophet called "Mohammed" and his followers "Moslems," but this can readily be justified. These spellings are valid English proper names, derived from Arabic originals which would be correctly transliterated "Muḥammad" and "Muslimīn" or "Muslimin." The best criterion for deciding whether to use the Anglicized spellings or the accurate transliterations is the treatment accorded the third of this cluster of names, that of the religion "Islam." Where this is transliterated "Islam," with a macron over the a, it should be accompanied by "Muslim" and "Muḥammad," but where the macron is omitted, consistency and common sense require "Moslem" and "Mohammed," and it is the latter triad which have been considered appropriate in this work. All namesakes of the prophet, however, have had their names duly transliterated "Muḥammad," to correspond with names of other Arabs who are not individually so familiar to westerners as to be better recognized in Anglicized forms.

All names of other Arabs, and of non-Arabs with Arabic names, have been systematically transliterated, with the single exception of Ṣalāḥ-ad-Dīn, whom it would have been pedantic to call that rather than Saladin. For places held, in the crusading era or now, by Arabs, the Arabic names appear either in the text or in the gazetteer, where some additional ones are also included to broaden the usefulness of this feature.

Large numbers of names of persons and groups, however, customarily found in Arabized spellings because they were written in Arabic script, have been restored to their underlying identity whenever this is ascertainable. For example, Arabic "Salṭūq" misrepresents four of the six component phonemes: *s* is correct, *a* replaces Turkish *e*, for which Arabic script provides no equivalent, *f* is correct, *j* replaces the non-Arabic *ch*, *ā* substitutes a non-Turkish long *u* for the original *i*, and *q* as distinguished from *k* is non-existent in Turkish; this quadruple rectification yields "Selçuk" as the name of the eponymous leader, and "Selçukid"—on the model of Abbāsid and Tīmūrid—for the dynasty and the people.

It might be thought that as Turkish is now written in a well-conceived modified Latin alphabet, there would be no reason to alter this, and this presumption is substantially valid. For the same reasons as apply to Arabic, *ch* has been preferred above *c*, *sh* above *ş*, and *gh* above *ğ*, with *kh* in a few instances given as a preferred alternate of *k*, from which it is not distinguished in modern Turkish. No long vowels have been indicated, as being functionless survivals. Two other changes have been made in the interest of the English-speaking reader, and should be remembered by those using map sheets and standard reference works: *c* (pronounced *dj*) has been changed to *j*, so that one is not visually led to imagine that the Turkish name for Tigris—Dicle/Dicle—rhymes with "tickle," and what the eminent lexicographer H. C. Honey terms "that abomination the undotted *i*" has, after the model of *The Encyclopedia of Islam*, been written *I*.

Spellings, modified as above indicated, have usually been founded on those of the Turkish edition, *İslâm Ansiklopedisi*, hampered by occasional inconsistencies within that work. All names of Turks appear thus emended, the Turkish equivalents of almost all places within or near modern Turkey appear in the gazetteer.

In addition to *kh*, Middle Turkish utilized a few other phonemes not common in modern Turkish: *ch* (modern *j*) *dh*, *ng*, and *ḡ* (modern *ç*); the first three of these will be used as needed, while the last-mentioned may be assumed to underlie every medieval Turkish name now spelled with *c*. Plaintive eyebrows may be raised at our exclusion of *q*, but this was in Middle Turkish only the alternate spelling used when the sound *k* was combined with back instead of front vowels, and its elimination by the Turks is commendable.

Persian names have been transliterated like Arabic with certain modifications, chiefly use of the additional vowels *e* and *o* and replacing *q* and *sh* with *g* and *ş*, so that Arabic "ʿAdharbāyjan" becomes Persian "Āzerbāyjan," more accurate as well as more recognizable. Omission

of the definite article from personal names was considered but eventually disapproved.

Armenians presented great difficulties: the absence of an authoritative reference source for spelling names, the lack of agreement on transliteration, and the sound-shift by which classical and eastern Armenian *h, d, g* became western Armenian *p, t, k* and—incredible as it may seem to the unwary—*vice versa*; similar reciprocal interchanges involved *ts* and *dz*, and *ch* and *j*. The following alphabet represents western Armenian letters, with eastern variants in parentheses: *a, p (h), k (g), t (d), e, z, z', l, t, zh, i, l, kh, dz (ts), g (k), h, ts (dz), gh, j (ch), m, y, n, sh, o, ch, b (p), ch (j), t, a, y, d (t), e, y, u or v, p, k, o, l*. Many spellings are based on the Armenian texts in the *Recueil des historiens des croisades*.

In standardizing names of groups, the correct root forms in the respective languages have been identified, with the ending “-id” for dynasties and their peoples but “-ite” for sects, and with plural either identical with singular (as *Kurghuz*) or plus “-s” (*Khazars*) or “-es” (*Uzes*). In cases where this sounded hopelessly awkward, it was abandoned (*Muwahhids*, not *Muwahhidsis* or *Muwahhidses*, and certainly not *Almohads*, which is, however, cross-referenced).

The use of place names is explained in the note preceding the gazetteer, but may be summarized by saying that in general the most familiar correct form is used in the text and maps, normally an English version of the name by which the place was known to Europeans during the crusades. Variant forms are given and identified in the gazetteer.

HARRY W. HAZARD

[Princeton, New Jersey, 1962]

[Reprinted from Volume I, with minor modifications.]

ABBREVIATIONS

- AFP* *Archivum fratrum praedicatorum* (Scripta monach. Sancta Sabina, Rome, 1930-).
- AMS, NNM* *American Numismatic Society, Numismatic Notes and Monographs* (New York, 1920-).
- AOA* *Archives de l'Ordre latin* (Société de l'Ordre latin; 3 vols., Paris, 1881-1884; repr. Brussels, 1940).
- AR, RSH* *Académie royale des Sciences, Bulletin de la section historique*.
- BAR International Series* *British Archaeological Reports International Series* (Oxford, 1974-).
- BOF* *Biblioteca bio-bibliografica della Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana*, ed. Girolamo Golubovich et al. (9 vols., Quaracchi, 1906-1927).
- CSHB* *Corpus scriptorum hystoriae byzantinae*, ed. Barthold G. Hübner, Immanuel Bekker, et al. (50 vols., Bonn, 1828-1877).
- CURC* *Columbia University Records of Civilization: Sources and Studies* (New York, 1915-).
- EETS, ES* *Early English Text Society, Extra Series* (83 vols., London, 1867-1935).
- IFO, BO* *Institut français de Damas, Bibliothèque orientale*.
- Maai, Concile* *Sacrosancti conciliorum . . . collectio*, ed. Ottavio Marai, rev. ed. by Jean P. Martin and Louis Petit (3 vols., Paris, Arnhem, and Leipzig, 1901-1927; repr. Paris, 1940-1942).
- MGH* *Monumenta Germaniae historica . . .*
Epistolae saeculi XIII *Epistolae saeculi XIII e regestis pontificum romanorum selectae*, ed. Georg H. Pertz and Carl Rodenberg (3 vols., Berlin, 1883-1894).
Epistolae selectae *Epistolae selectae . . .*, ed. Michael Tangl, Erich Caspar, et al. (5 vols., Berlin, 1916-1952; repr.).
Lepen *Lepen, vol. IV Constitutiones et acta publicae imperatorum et regum*, ed. Ludwig Weiland (8 vols., Hannover, 1894-).
Mer *Lepen, vol. V Particular merovingici et karoli aevi*, 2 pts., 1882-1884).
SS *Scriptores*, ed. Georg H. Pertz, Theodor Mommsen, et al. (*Reichsregiment für das deutsche Geschichtsdruck*; 32 vols., Hannover and elsewhere, 1826-1934).
- Noria, CN* *Numismatic Chronicle* (Royal Numismatic Society, British Museum, London, 1825-).
- PAN* *Polska Akademia Nauk* (Warsaw).
- PC, Pontes* *Pontificis commissionis ad relegendum conciliorum veteris canonici orientalis*, Fontes (Vatican City, 1944-).
- PG* *Patrologiae cursus completus: Series graeco-latina*, ed. Jacques P. Migne (161 vols., in 166, Paris, 1837-1864).

- PL** *Patrologiae cursus completus: Series Latina*, ed. Jacques P. Migne (220 vols., Paris, 1844-1864).
- PPTS** *Palestine Pilgrims' Rest Society* (3 vols. and index, London, 1890-1897).
- P.R.O.** Public Record Office (London).
- RHC** *Recueil des historiens des croisés* (Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres, Paris, 16 vols. in fol., 1841-1906).
- Ann.** *Documenta orientalia* (2 vols., 1849-1906).
- Levi** *Les Annales de Astrucum* (2 vols., 1841-1843).
- Occ.** *Historians occidentales* (3 vols., 1841-1893).
- Or.** *Historians orientales: Arabia* (5 vols., 1872-1906).
- Rev. numis.** *Revue numismatique* (Paris, 1838-).
- RHDFE** *Revue historique de droit français et étranger* (Paris, 1833-).
- PHGF** *Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France*, ed. Martin Bouquet et al.; rev. ed. (24 vols. in fol., Paris, 1840-1904).
- RSS** *Scriptum italicum scriptorum . . .*, ed. Lodovico A. Muratori (25 vols. in 28, Milan, 1723-1754); new ed. by Giulio Carlucci and Vittorio Fiorini (34 vols. in 40 fasc., Città di Castello and Bologna, 1940-1953).
- ROM** *Revue de l'Orient latin* (Société de l'Orient latin, 12 vols., Paris, 1893-1942; repr. Brussels, 1964).
- Ballu Series** *Scriptum italicum scriptorum: The Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages* (25 vols., London, 1858-1890).
- SOL. SN** *Société de l'Orient latin, Série Asiatique* (5 vols., Geneva, 1877-1887).
- T&S** *Topographi Sarum*, printed (archival).
- ZDMG** *Zeitschrift des Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* (Leipzig and elsewhere, 1846-).

Volume VI

THE IMPACT OF THE CRUSADES
ON EUROPE

I

THE LEGAL AND POLITICAL THEORY OF THE CRUSADE

The basic legal theory of the crusade is the moral theology of the just war. The crusade was the perfect example of the just war, *justissimum bellum*, and the idea of a just war was inevitably developed and refined in the course of the crusading period. Before the crusades the just war was best defined by its opposite, though a number of the fundamental concepts already existed in church decretals. At all times, the notion was closely bound up with that of martyrdom and of Christian sacrifice. On many points the Christian system as a whole approximated to the Moslem teaching on *jihad*. The only explicit war aim was the "recovery" of the holy places and of Christian land.

The status of a man who is fighting against "the enemies of God" is the crux of crusading law. If, even when he is killed, he is not a martyr, he must be engaged simply in a good work, and the crusade became the highest and most efficacious of good works, and so of penance. Penance has always been important in canon law, and under the pressure of the crusade the related theology of indulgences developed even faster than the theory of the just war.

A. Origins of the Concept of "Holy War"

The idea of holy war in the west takes shape early with the conversion of the Arian Franks, and Merovingian history, at least as Gregory of Tours relates it, reflects the idea that Catholic faith is rewarded by military and political victory. The definition of martyrdom, inherited from the age before Constantine, was much more precise. True martyrdom, like baptism, wipes out sin. The martyr knows no pain,

no purgatory, needs no penance, but his act must be nothing more than a refusal to deny the Christian faith. He must not seek death or incur it rashly. For much of the crusading period the situation of the individual crusader was more exactly defined than the crusade itself.¹

When the Arabs began to colonize the Spanish and Italian mainlands and Sicily, they were not thought of as unique, and the war against them was not "signed with the cross" more than war against any other invader. In this situation, however, pope Leo IV (847-855) asserted that Christians who die for the truth of their faith, the safety of their country, and the defense of Christians are sure of a heavenly reward.² Thus, of course, means no more than is self-evident in Christian terms, that death incurred in the course of these good and praiseworthy acts is particularly meritorious. "The repose of eternal life shall embrace those who fall in the conflict of war, from duty to the Catholic religion and struggling vigorously against pagans and infidels," wrote pope John VIII in 879, at a time of continual wars against the Arab colonizers of Italy.³ Death for the "Christian faith and commonwealth", then, was a penance, and in pronouncing absolution, John made it conditional on penitence, foreshadowing theological development in a later period. He did so also in his many diatribes and exhortations against alliances of Christians with Moslems, requiring, for example, that prince Walferius of Salerno "withdraw everyone from the fellowship of the pagans". He exhorted bishops Ayo of Benevento and Landulph of Capua to secure the dissolution of these ungodly alliances (*foedera impia*) or unnatural alliance (*infernium*). The Neapolitan duke Sergius II, warned to withdraw from an alliance, was threatened with attack by the temporal defenders of the church, but was promised, if he obeyed, both papal favors and "great heavenly rewards".⁴ Thus an influential man, merely for not helping the Moslems, was offered almost as much as those who might be killed. Archbishop Athanasius of Naples was finally excommunicated for his treaty arrangements with Moslems (881), in rather more sober language.⁵ John's aim is clear — the elimination of Moslem invaders from Italy. The justification is stated in another of his letters, more emotional in tone: he denounced the Mos-

1 Bruce Krohn and Wilhelm Lehn, eds., *Gregory's epistles: Theonimus Johannes Ruchmanus N* (MGH, *Inscr.*, 1, 1; Hannover, 1921), e.g., II, 37 (pp. 85-86), and 121, *passim* (pp. 16-17).

2 PL, 135, col. 457 (pp. 1, *ad quendam Francum*).

3 PL, 136, col. 365 (pp. 186, *ad apostolos et reges Ludovicum comitatum*).

4 *Ibid.*, cols. 308, 313-708, 323, 336 (pp. 15, *ad Guelfrum*; 63, *ad Landulphum*; 70 *ad Sergium*; 73, *ad Aysum*).

5 *Ibid.*, cols. 930-931 (pp. 321, *ad alterum apostolum*).

lems as "the sons of fornication" (though this may represent one of the usual propaganda criticisms of Islamic sexual moral law), together with those who, "under the name of Christians", kill "the sheep of the Lord", some by the sword, some by famine, while carrying others off as booty into captivity.⁴ John did little more than support a policy of expelling the invaders with the strongest religious reasons he could think of. The alternative fates that he referred to, death and captivity (devastation was a by-product), reflect more part of the Islamic law of *jihad*, as applied to conquered Christians. He did not mention that the Christians were also offered conversion to Islam, though this, of course, can be assumed to have happened. Whether only those who refused conversion were enslaved we do not know; the slave-labor market seems to have flourished.

This period was formative of later law but produced nothing clear or unambiguous. The same is true of the years immediately preceding Urban II's 1095 initiative, when the reconquest of Sicily was already complete and the war in Spain reasonably successful, a tradition had grown up which gave ecclesiastical encouragement to any effort to recover European territory. Churches in Spain and Sicily were already described as "recovered" or "rescued";⁵ Europe was the last region to have come (in part) under Arab domination, and it was taken for granted that it should be recovered first, until the idea of the crusade supervened.⁶ In Sicily and Spain the Christians fought campaigns blessed by the church, but not dominated by religious purpose. Harald Hardråde, count Roger of Hauteville, and Rodrigo Díaz of Vivar were probably all believing Christians in their different ways, but none was a crusader. Europe approached the proclamation of the First Crusade with some idea of holy war but also with a papal diplomatic tradition which would be suspended by, but would survive, the crusades. Even when the idea of a Levantine crusade was in the air, Gregory VII expected to have a working relationship with the Hammālid an-Nāṣir (1062-1088), to whom he wrote about the surviving local Latin hierarchy in North Africa, wishing him honor in this world and life in the next, in the bosom of Abraham. This was a wish which, though it may have been inspired by an acquaintance with Jewish belief, was equally appropriate for Moslems. He urged the Christian population to

4. *Ibid.*, col. 722 (p. 62, of *Wright*); col. 716 (p. 62, of *Gregory*) in *reper Carol imp. monachus*.

5. Erich Caspar, ed., *Das Register Gregors VII. (1073-1085, Epistolarum selectae)*, II, Berlin, 1928-1933), IV, 28 (pp. 343-347); and see note 12 below.

6. Diego Hays, *Europe, the Emergence of an Idea*, 2nd ed. (Stanford, 1961).

accept trials with patience and to set a good example to non-Christians around them.⁹

Urban II introduced a clearer legal and political situation. Whatever the confusion about Urban's exact words, all writers (some of whom were themselves among the new "crucesignati") recognized that the crusade proper was a new initiative. The initiative in crusading always remained with the papacy. Whenever initiative appeared elsewhere (as later it would do in the case of Frederick II), the papacy fought to regain it. The political theory therefore began as, and remained, a characteristically clerical concept of Christendom, and the theory common to all accounts of Urban's preaching is that of a defensive war by the Christian commonwealth. This is part of the history of propaganda, but it has major political and legal implications. From this date forward, the crusade was justified by long accounts of Arab aggression against Asia, Africa, and Europe in turn; the European reaction was now literally oriented to the "recovery" of the Holy Land. This was clerical law. The wars of the Old Testament were thought to give further legal justification, in addition to their propaganda value. Politically, all crusades would continue to be regarded as defensive; legally, they were justified first as undertaken in defense of Christendom. The papacy purported to act on behalf of the Christian commonwealth.

The political concept amounted roughly to what would now be called "cultural imperialism". It is not only that Urban was believed to have appealed to a national sense, and especially to the French.¹⁰ As soon as the "pilgrims" left the Latin world, and long before they met a Moslem, they came into conflict with cultures different from their own, and an inflexible "Latin" cultural intolerance remained with most of them throughout the crusading period.¹¹ Rejection of all but the Latin culture—and in Spain even the Latin, though not Roman, Mozarab rite was largely replaced—ensured that the crusade would never look like more than an alien colonization to Arab Christians as well as to Moslems. From the beginning, it was implicit in Urban's decision to preach the crusade at all, in his choice of Clermont, and in the way he was understood in the west, that the crusade in the east should be an expansion of western European society.

The key to both legal and political theory was the idea of "recovery". Gilbert of Nogent says that Urban expected God, through the

⁹ *Chron. des Rois de France* 472, III, 28 (pp. 286-287), 21 (pp. 287-288); cf. I, 22 (pp. 16-17), and IV, 28 (pp. 342-343).

¹⁰ Robert of Rhemes, *Historia Hierosolymitana*, I, 4-5 (BNC; Dec., III, 728-730).

¹¹ See Henry L. Sargent, "Springs and Pilgrims: Shams in Palestine and Syria after 1095," in volume IV of the present work, pp. 66-68.

crusades, to "restore *lost Jerusalem*". In Robert of Rhinens' account Urban called on the Franks to "repel aggression". In the Latin liturgy for the recovery of the Holy Sepulcher, as reported by John of Würzburg, the *Secreta* refers to "the city of Jerusalem, plucked out of the hand of the pagans".¹² It is necessary to labor this point in order to understand that from the beginning the notion that the Holy Land belonged of right to Christians underlay the legal concept of holy war. Palestine, which had been Arab for centuries, was conceived of as being as much Christian as were Spain and Sicily. The political fact that Spain, even more than Sicily, had a strong Latinate population on which to build effective reconquest had no reflection in political theory. That cultural (and ethnographic) realities meant nothing is admirably illustrated in a Genoese account of the capture of Caesarea during the First Crusade. According to this, two Arabs came out of the besieged city and argued with the legate and the patriarch, asking why the Christians want to kill people who are made in the form of the Christian God, and take the Arabs' land, when this is contrary to the Christian religion (or "law" — *lex*). The patriarch answered that the city belonged to St. Peter, not to the Arabs who lived in it and whose ancestors rejected St. Peter; furthermore, whoever strives against the law of God ought to be killed; to kill him is not contrary to the law of God, who said "Vengeance is mine." Therefore, if the Arabs will give up the land of St. Peter, they may safely depart with their goods, but if they refuse, "the Lord will strike you with his sword and you will be justly slain."¹³ This "right" of killing in the crusade was important, and in due course would be elaborated scholastically.

It brings us back directly to the problem of the just war, at this date only a compendious phrase to cover a group of associated concepts: "defensive" war, war "for God" or against the "enemies of God", a "good" war as distinct from ordinary bad wars, war as penance, and war as a form of Christian ascetic life and a means of salvation particularly suited to anyone capable of fighting. The Latin for the crusade is, after all, "*bellum sacrum*". At this early stage the idea of the crusade as directing bad instincts to good ends was important. Fulcher's classic account describes the public crimes which the bishops and other authorities had failed to repress, such as the capturing and

12. Gifford of Nogent, *Gesta dei per Francos*, II, 4 (MGH, Ger., IX, 137-140); Robert of Rhinens, *Historia*, I, 1 (MGH, Ger., III, 728); John of Würzburg, *Descriptio Terrae Sanctae*, cap. 15 (PL, 153, col. 1089). Emphasis added.

13. Caffaro di Castellione, *Caffaro Genuensis de litterarum christianorum ordine*, XV (MGH, Ger., V, 42-43); *Revue* 12:17; *Ibid.* 12:18. The legate Fulcherus was already dead, and no patriarch had yet been elected.

plundering of monks and clerics and nuns and their servants, and of pilgrims and merchants; his account condemns kidnappers, burners of houses, and all who consent to their crimes, but claims that private wars and lawlessness will be brought to an end by unity in fighting the Turkish and Arab invaders of the east: "May those who used to fight against their brothers and their families now justly (*iure*) war against the barbarians." In practice this would not end savagery, but as well turn it against the external enemy. "Let hatreds cease among you" meant "hate the enemy"; the theme was prominent in what came to be accepted as Urban's argument, as tendered, for example, by William of Malmesbury and, in due course, by William of Tyre, and the best clerical tradition in the crusading state.¹⁴ In Monte Cassino the monks held that Urban enabled the lords to do penance by crusading, without having to admit publicly that they were doing so. The idea of the crusade as a penance naturally follows from its being a good work, literally a pilgrimage. We can illustrate the originality of this complex of attitudes by the fact that, once the idea of the crusade was enunciated, it was extended to older areas of conflict. The privileges (and often the opportunities for legal penance) were extended to the war in Spain, though not uninterruptedly or as fully as in the war in the east. As of 1100, we can define the just war as a defense, a restoration of rights, a resistance to aggression and cruelty, a substitute for wicked internecine warfare, a penance for rapine and lawlessness, and finally, a Christian way of life.

Urban brought existing ideas together; they were not yet precisely defined, but all the ideas of the crusade that developed later were present in some form or other.

B. Indulgences and the Holy War

The systematization of canon law relating to the different aspects of holy war, including indulgences, is best studied in its final form in the decretal collections. We may glance at passing in Bernard of Clair-

14. *Fletcher Curatoribus Monachis Massaciuglensis*, ed. Heinrich Hagenmeyer (Gießenberg, 1912), I, 1 (pp. 119-122); William of Malmesbury, *De gestis regum*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, 90), II, 393 ff.; William of Tyre, *Historia conan in partibus transmarinis gestorum*, I, 15 (*ANQ. Soc.*, I, 39-42); cf. *ibid.*, I, 7 (pp. 21-22).

Yves, whose surviving crusade sermons, and whose treatise on the knights of the Temple, naturally emphasize the "way of Christian life" but, as concerns the law, stress two points. He is careful to define the conditions of the papal offer of indulgence exactly, at a lower rhetorical level than usual — taking the cross and making contrite confession. He contributed, as did many who never went to the east, to the conception of irreconcilability and the attempt to separate two civilizations by a barrier of canon law. Christ is considered glorified in the death of the Moslem; the Christian in death is led into his reward. Again, "the profit of the death which (the soldier of Christ) inflicts is Christ, the profit of that which he receives is his own." Even Bernard thought that this needed a bit of explaining. "Not that even the Moslems (pagans) ought to be destroyed, if by any other means they could be held back from excessive aggression and violence against the faithful." Elsewhere, however, when he absolutely forbids any understanding with Moslems (no allegiance, no money payments, no tribute), Bernard sounds no less uncompromising than Cato, and writes, "either the religion or the people must be destroyed."¹⁵

A survey of the canons and papal bulls throughout the main period of the crusades reveals no specific justification of war, although this should have been the basic legal problem for church lawyers. The official documents that proclaim or support or enforce the crusade take for granted that such justification as Urban, and particularly the idea of "recovery", had lent the war was fully sufficient. The Moslems who are the targets of the warfare continue to be referred to as "attackers". Early in this period the crusade became a normal penance; for example, the Second Lateran Council (1139) decreed a year's service in Jerusalem or Spain for arson. The legal concept of holy war developed most quickly in terms not only of penance, but of the indulgences which the papal documents concede, and which became so popular at this time.¹⁶

Indulgences evolved from the old system of penitentiaries, with their tariffed penance, which, together with a process of redemptions, lasted into the eleventh century. Indulgences in consideration of some good or pious work first developed clearly in the course of this century, and did so more definitely in the twelfth. The ordinary indulgence substi-

15. *De liberis servis militibus*, in *PL*, 162, cols. 924-929; *Ibid.*, I (vol. 911), and *Epistolae*, col. 632 (pp. 427, of *sententiae fabrice*) and col. 633 (pp. 428, of *Epistolae*).

16. Karl A. von Hefele, in *Handb. d. Kirchenr.*, *Monum. des conciles* (12 vols., Paris, 1907-1912), V4, p. 731.

tated a stated good work for so many "day" units of purgatorial pains which would previously have been remitted by penance.¹⁷ Throughout the crusading period, the plenary indulgence was confined to the crusade proper, and the first known unambiguous plenary indulgence (for all the pains of all sins committed, if confessed and repented) appears to have been that offered by Urban II himself at Clermont in 1095. Canon 2, as reported, conceded remission of all penance to whoever made the pilgrimage, not from pride and avarice but out of pity and in order to liberate the tomb of Christ.¹⁸ Indulgences were inextricably associated with social motivation, especially the purpose of fighting. Their use should not be seen as the act of private devotion that it subsequently became. They were essential to the law of the crusade, and constitute a useful legal and political criterion.

Examples illustrate the development of this practice and its underlying theory. The Second Lateran decree was by later standards as imprecise as Urban had been at Clermont (it actually uses as a definition the phrase "as decreed by our lord pope Urban"): "To those who set out for Jerusalem, to defend the Christian nation and war against the tyranny of the unbelievers, we concede remission of their sins."¹⁹ Much later, in 1181, it is interesting to see Alexander III associating the notions of defense and attack with the remission of sin. Thus in a bull to the master of the Temple, Arnold of Toroge, he writes of the duty of Templars to lay down their lives for their friends (John 15:13), adding "and you do not at all fear to protect them from the attacks of the pagans". He charges them "for the remission of sins, by the authority of God and the blessed Peter, prince of the apostles," to defend the church by attacking its enemies, and to rescue it where it is "under the tyranny of the pagans".²⁰ 1181 was the year of Reginald of Châtillon's brutal breach of the truce; Arab power was growing, but crusading aggression against Egypt was still fresh in the memories of men. In a few years' time Jerusalem would fall, and Gregory VIII would call all Christians to penance, good works, and the (armed) pilgrimage to the Holy Land, the "labor" of its recovery, "to look not for profit or worldly glory, but for the will of God". He granted the indulgence, which is of course "plenary", to those who undertake the "journey" with a contrite heart and humble spirit, "and to those who depart in repentance for sins and in a true faith, we promise full in-

17 *Dictionnaire de théologie catholique* 24 vols., Paris, 1922-1950, 22: "Indulgence"

18 Hefele, *in* Leclercq, *Histoire des conciles*, V-1, p. 461.

19 *Ibid.*, p. 624.

20 Alexius Brancaccio, ed., *Documenta diplomatica et privilegiorum — editio* (Turin, 1857-1872), Alexander III, II, 120 (no. 181).

dulgence of their offences (*crimium*) and eternal life. They shall know that whether they survive or die, they shall have relaxation of the penance imposed, for all their sins of which they shall have made true confession. . . ."²⁰

After the comparative failure of the Third Crusade, Celestine III wrote in stronger terms. We shall see how, stage by stage, failure made the papacy increasingly intransigent. Celestine preferred the threat of excommunication to the inducement of the indulgence. He reverted to Urban's old themes, while bringing them up to date and using the more legalistic phraseology of his own day. In condemning sin, he singled out private enmities and tournaments. By implication, the crusade offered meritorious enmity and a profitable tournament. Celestine did not claim that Jerusalem was Christian because Christians had been ruling it for nearly a century, but spoke of "the filthiness of the pagans in the taking of the Holy Land, which is the inheritance of the Lord"; he also said that they came "ruinously" and "violently". Later he referred to "that tiny piece of the portion of the land of the Lord which is still held under the power of the Christians". When, as so often in recruiting propaganda, the church is identified with the people of ancient Israel, it has in fact both a political and a legal implication. Politically, the church, (Latin) Christian society under papal guidance, has claimed the right to the "inheritance of the Lord" in the same way as the chosen people had a right to the promised land; and when Celestine approvingly quoted how one man overthrew a thousand, and "slaughtered something like an infinite multitude", he was coming close to a justification of the slaughter of infinite multitudes in any situation, because any situation may be seen as reproducing events of the Old Testament.²¹ Thus gave the war its legality.

It was at the end of Innocent III's pontificate and during that of Honorius III that the definition of the "Holy Land" was extended to include Egypt; thus the legal concept of holy war and indulgence was stretched to cover what was originally no more than a strategic concept recommended by Richard I of England and actually attempted by the Fifth Crusade.²² At the same time we reach the fullest expression of indulgence, but no more precise definition of holy war. For Innocent III it was still otiose to define closely the justification of the war. For example, he spoke of the "ungrateful slaves" and "disloyal

20. *Ibid.*, Gregory VIII, III, 32 (no. 2: 1187).

21. *Ibid.*, Celestine III, p. 96 (no. 32: 1193).

22. *Ibid.*, Honorius III, p. 332 (no. 16: 1217); *Chronique d'Outre-mer et de l'Orient en France*, cap. 31, of *Leves de Miles Latens* (Paris, 1877), p. 328, if this is not blight. Cf. volume II of the present work, chapter XI.

servants" who refuse, "when the Lord of heaven and earth implores their help in recovering his own patrimony, which has been lost, not by his fault, but by theirs." Like his predecessors, he preferred to hover over the intermediate ground between political and legal theology. He argued from a familiar feudal situation: "Certainly, if some king in this world was thrown out of his kingdom by his enemies, and if his vassals did not venture their persons as well as their property for him, would he not, when he recovered his lost kingdom, condemn them as disloyal, and conceive unthought-of torments for them . . . ?" This unattractive picture of a worldly king became less attractive still when the pope drove home the comparison with the King of kings "as if ejected from the kingdom which he provided at the price of his blood". This is merely another variation on the theme of defense, but the picture of the enemy as a criminal or rebel was becoming clearer and acquiring a more obviously legal force. In the same bull, dated 1214, Innocent argued that the divine command to love one's neighbor requires men to fight to free their fellow-Christians "held among the unfaithful Moslems in the slave-yard of a fearful prison"; there are many thousands detained in "slavery or prison", he said.²⁴ This is a variation on the theme of persecution, and it is still as much an exhortation as an attempt at legal justification. Even in this great age of canon law, the legal basis remained uncertain. The key ideas were still the "recovery" of land rightfully possessed, and the "defense" against the "attack" (possession of the Holy Land), and these were determined on theological grounds.

The classic form of the plenary crusading indulgence is to be found in Innocent's decree calling for a new crusade, promulgated during the Fourth Lateran Council. The indulgence is based on the power of binding and loosing which was conferred on the pope by God's mercy and by the authority of the blessed apostles Peter and Paul. What was granted was "full pardon (*plene remissio*) of their sins", if "truly confessed with a contrite heart and mouth". It was granted to those who undertook this labor (the crusade) in their own persons and at their own expense; but the same "full pardon" was conceded to those who paid someone else's expenses, or who went at the expense of someone else. As had long now become the custom, the property of crusaders was to be under the protection of the church during their absence.²⁵ In the same bull, he revoked the "remissions and indulgences" granted

²⁴ Tomassini, *op. cit.*, Innocent III, III, 222-224 (no. 62, 1206), and 274-276 (no. 62, 1214).

²⁵ *Ibid.*, III, 300-304 (no. 107); Hefele, *in* Locking, *Manuel des conciles*, V-1, no. 1196 ff.

for fighting against the Moors in Spain or against Albigensians in Languedoc, as only temporary. Subsequently it was enough that the indulgences should be announced "according to the statute of the [Fourth Lateran] general council".²⁶

These problems of public war and private forgiveness are really quite simple, even in terms contemporary with the crusade. They were reduced to a few clear phrases by Thomas Aquinas, who had to deal with the objection that "he therefore who takes the cross according to the form of the papal letter, suffers no pain for his sins, and thus soars immediately aloft, having achieved the full remission of sins." Thomas had reservations: "Although indulgences are very valuable for the remission of pains, yet other works of satisfaction are more meritorious with regard to the essential reward, which is infinitely better than the discharging of temporal pains."²⁷ Crusading presupposes death in the course of a good work, in Aquinas's thought here as much as in the preaching of Urban. The good confession, the contrite heart, the "good work" of a just war, these were the reasons to hope for the forgiveness of sin, and the indulgence was a pious reward for those who feared the penalties of sin rather than sin itself. The indulgence is here seen to depend wholly on the identification of the war as just. For this, Aquinas required proper authority, the just cause, and the right intention. It does not surprise us that these conditions were believed without difficulty to be satisfied in the crusade, it was precisely these points that were supposed to characterize the crusade.

The evidence is insufficient, but it seems that the teaching was widely yet only superficially understood. The *Chanson de Roland*, even though there is a large clerical element in its composition, was certainly not written by a theologian, and it is essentially a work for a lay and courtly, but war-minded, public. In the *Chanson*, the warriors do not actually make a good confession before battle, but they are absolved by Turpin on their knees, and are given fighting itself as a penance.²⁸ It is true that this passage promises that they will be holy martyrs if they die, but the absolution and penance, however lightly or uncertainly conceived, make it clear that "martyr" here has only a popular sense. True martyrdom was not claimed. Long before, an eighth-century pilgrim to the Holy Land from Wessex had spoken of being "martyred" for smuggling. This may have been a joke; but it was no joke in the cru-

26. Gregory IX, in THOMAS, *op. cit.*, III, 492-493 (no. 40: 1234).

27. *Quaestiones parisienses*, II, vii, 2; *Somma theologiae*, III, Supp. 312.

28. *Le Chanson de Roland*, ed. Joseph Bédier (Paris, 1937; often reprinted), lines 1752-1761.

siding period. The *Gesta Francorum* ordinarily speaks of anyone who died on the crusade, for example of hunger, as martyred, but Albert of Aachen had heard that the clergy prayed for the souls of those who died at Dorylaeum.²⁸ There is not enough evidence for us to be sure how far the complex theology of martyrdom and indulgence penetrated to the soldiers and camp-followers, or even, later, to the residents of the Latin states, or how far, indeed, they were really interested. The suggestion underlies many chronicles that death in a holy war had the popular sense of "martyrdom" that we find in *Roland*. Later chansons provide even less evidence. The farther we recede from the theologians and canonists, the less we find any clear theological concept at all.

For two centuries from the first preaching of the crusade to the growing realization that it was no longer practical politics, the system determined a part of public life, and to the extent that law affects the ordinary public crusading did so; indeed, its influence continued till very much later. The old, abused system of tariffed penance would not have been enough for effective recruitment; indulgences reached far more people, and provided a legal basis for propaganda; persuasion was based on a theology that must reach everyone. There was some scope for legal compulsion. Once a man had taken the cross, he must be forced to put his vows into effect. The First Lateran Council (1123) imposed an interdict on the lands of all those who did not put their vows into effect between the next Easter and the Easter following, and forbade them to attend church; later, excommunication was the normal form of sanction.²⁹ William Marshal spent three years in the Holy Land in order to make good the crusade vow the young prince Henry — son of Henry II — had sworn before his death in 1183.³⁰ From knights or sergeants to monarchs, laymen benefited in their different degrees from a tax levied to pay for soldiers. It was logical to extend the indulgence to those who financed other men's personal service, but such subsidization soon opened the door to abuses which ultimately extended to the whole system of indulgences. The councils from Fourth Lateran in the early thirteenth century to Vienna a century later recognized the need for control, but established no effective method.³¹

A good canonist or an experienced preacher could see the problem.

²⁸ *Vita Willhelmi, or Hadoperpetui*, in Tiesi, *Edic.* ed., *Descriptio Terrae Sanctae* (Leipzig, 1874), pp. 74–76; *Gesta Francorum*, ed. and tr. Louis Bréhaut under the title *Histoire anonyme de la première croisade* (Paris, 1826), pp. 42, 81, 92; Albert of Aachen, *Historia Hierosolymitana*, II, 48 (PAC; Ger., IV, 302–303).

²⁹ Heikel, *u. Lachaux*, *Annuaire des conciles*, V-1, p. 633, V-2, pp. 1390 ff.

³⁰ *Memoirs de Guillaume le Marshall*, ed. Paul Meyer (Paris, 1884), lines 7177–7239.

³¹ Heikel, *u. Lachaux*, *Annuaire des conciles*, V-2, pp. 1390 ff., VI-2, pp. 641 ff.

clearly, but could suggest no remedy beyond conscience, always the weakness of canon law. Gilbert of Tournai was only reviving condemnations of an earlier century when he attacked the financing of the crusade by exploiting the poor, but it was the whole public that was exploited; he also discussed the real legal abuse, which was the severity of sentences in the condemnation of those who, often for a good reason, failed to fulfil the crusading vow, when severity was used only to extort higher redemption money.³³ These abuses, by common consent, made the whole business unpopular. In fact it was a business, an often capricious system of tax collection which gave increasing prominence to redemption. Cash payments necessitated a return to the custom of partial indulgences ("proportionate" plenary indulgence), and there was no adequate means of assessment. In a study of legal theory one can do little more than emphasize the forbleness of the law which wholly failed to regulate the trade in indulgences or the scale of redemption.

Innocent's declaration at the Fourth Lateran Council of a new crusade illustrates the law at its height. After giving instructions for the "passage" (*passagium* = "crossing" or "crusade"), it announces miscellaneous provisions almost haphazardly. Clerks may retain the profit of their benefices while they are away. Those people who have taken the cross will be excommunicated if they do not go. All prelates and others responsible for the care of souls must preach the crusade. Those who cannot go should pay a soldier to go for three years. Those who supply ships or contribute to their construction receive an indulgence. All clerks are to give a twentieth of their ecclesiastical revenues for three years, the pope and the cardinals a tenth. While crusaders are away they will be exempt from taxation and from payments of interest. Pirates who pillage pilgrims are excommunicated. The usual prohibition of consuetud (tunnage, iron, and so forth) is repeated in slightly strengthened form. No ship is to go to the east for four years, lest the enemy benefit; on the contrary, it should remain in the Christian reserve. Tournaments are prohibited for three years, wars for four. Then comes the plenary indulgence, in the form already quoted above, but those who, short of paying for a substitute, contribute to the costs, receive remission "according to the quality of the subvention and their devotional disposition".³⁴ Here appears a scale of exact payment for an incalculable return, and such could lead to nothing but abuse. The

33. "Collectio de scandalis ecclesiarum," ed. August Thoma, *Antiquae institutionum historiae*, XLIV (1891), 91.

34. See above, note 25.

contrast between the careful provision for practical steps leading to military action, and the loose terms of the indulgence, illustrates at least the greater worldly than spiritual wisdom of the church.

C. *The Full Theory of Holy War*

We can best evaluate the theory by considering the case as it was argued by the distinguished Dominican scholar Humbert of Romans. He genuinely disliked war but understood the need to make a case to justify it. The case he made, while wholly circumscribed by the ordinary terms of his thinking and the contemporary commitment to the crusade, betrays from time to time an awareness of some of the real difficulties. He had the same clear picture of the unjust war that Urban stimulated in those who reported him. Instead of starting from a conception of the just war, he began by considering what makes war unjust. He said that there are three things: attacking the innocent—killing poor men and nameless farmers, ransacking hospitals and even leproseries; fighting without reason; and fighting without authority. The war against Islam, on the contrary, was "just". The Moslems were not innocent; they were "culpable in the highest degree against the whole of Christendom"; he elaborated this no further, and to Moslem "guilt"—no nameless farmers, no hospitals—we must come back. The war was reasonable because undertaken not out of pride, avarice, or vainglory, but in defense of the faith, and defense of mere property or persons would have been justification enough. Finally, it was undertaken on the authority of the church. It was therefore *justissimum bellum*, undertaken against the most culpable of enemies, for the highest reason, and on the highest authority.

Yet Humbert knew that crusaders were by no means all penitent; there were those who carried their cross like the bad thief, as well as those who did so like the penitent thief. Moreover, Humbert was well aware that Christian practice was once very different, and that the change needed to be justified. Jesus told Peter to put up his sword, and the teaching of all the apostles and the fathers is against the use of force; he recalled the example of Maurice and his legion, who were beheaded rather than obey an unjust command, and of the innumerable martyrs. He developed a remarkable historical theory of the development of Christian practice to explain the change: "For the vine planted by the head of the household is brought to its proper growth by favor

of the dew and the rains and the warmth of heaven; but it is preserved by the sword, if by chance enemies want to root it out." The powerless and the powerful, he went on, must act in different ways, the former with humility, the latter with severity; every craftsman uses the tool he has, and not that which he has not. The early Christians used miracles, the sufferings of the saints, and holy doctrine, that it might be seen that faith grew by God's agency, not man's, but when it had grown, it became necessary to defend it by the sword. The church, which lacked the early gifts of miracles and tongues and the Holy Ghost, but had power, must use it. Humbert did not deprecate this historical development. Those who object to the shedding of blood by Christians "do wish themselves want to be poor, as men were in the early church, but rich; they do not want to be, as (Christians) then were, lowly, but to be held in honor; they do not want to be destitute of sustenance, as Christians then were, but to live amid pleasures." This is consciously a theory of history: "according to the series of periods and the diversity of circumstances, the church has varying situations, as the growing boy passes through varying situations before he reaches old age. Thus the church was poor, but is now rich, and many things similar; in the same way, it makes use of arms now, but did not do so then." This is an interesting, a logical, and a frank argument; does it amount to a legal theory? Almost certainly, Humbert saw this as having legal force, though we might incline rather to allot it to political theory.

Humbert in any case saw a legal defect, and cautioned that the use of the sword was confined to lay people, as the hand is the only member that can wield a sword. Using the argument of the two swords, he elsewhere stressed the necessity of rational justification of a war. Force is justified against those who rebel against the authority of the church, he wrote, because the fear of God recalls them from evil; and the infection of heretical error must be cut out like a putrid member; but the Moslems, who will not even listen to the word of the church (beheading those who tell them about their errors), are worse than rebels, who at least listen, even if they do not obey; and worse than the heretics, because they destroy body as well as soul. Jews, he added, are in a different category; their conversion is foretold by Scripture, they strengthen faith in being seen to fulfill the Scripture, when it is properly interpreted; they do not attack in arms. The Moslems' conversion no Scripture has foretold; to see them does not encourage faith, but rather gives scandal to weaker minds; more than any other unbelievers, they come strongly in arms against us. He applied the parable of the marriage feast. The Jews are those who "would not come". The

idolators are those who "made light of it". The Moslems are those who treated the king's servants "shamefully and killed them" "The king was angry, and he sent his troops and destroyed those murderers and burned their city."³³ Humbert and that "from this derives the authority to advance the army against them"; this, he believed, gives his exegesis legal force.

He added that the church not only provides the justifying authority, but also grants indulgences from "all sins"; by these the crusaders would be washed as clean as martyrs are by the shedding of their blood (a large claim which, however, clearly distinguishes martyrdom from indulgence, while claiming equal effectiveness for the latter). It will be noted that there is no suggestion that the indulgence is confined to remission of pains for which penance should otherwise have been done, as Catholic apologists have maintained, even when talking about remission *a culpe et a pena*. Those who are "completely absolved", said Humbert, are "not only the dying, but the living who are good pilgrims, from all sins, great as well as small, hidden as well as open, carnal as well as spiritual, by day as well as by night, known as well as unknown." This did, of course, presuppose penance.³⁴

This is perhaps the fullest reasonable defense surviving of a canonical position which was difficult to reconcile with much Christian history and doctrine. It was a good deal closer, as we shall see in more detail, to the Moslem position. Humbert, within the limits of the method, allowed his imagination some play; he put the scholastic points for and against a proposition in a more literary form than usual, and his work gains from even this slight freedom from the classroom method. All justification of war in Christian terms is derived from the right of self-defense, and even in more sophisticated form the arguments used can still be reduced to that single issue; that the "recovery" of the Holy Land is considered the defense of Christian land, the ill will of the enemies of God presupposes self-defense, and so on. If we come to the point of what confers the right to kill, the authority of the church, on which scholastics insist, is only part of the answer, and should rather be considered a conclusion. The "right" is conferred essentially by self-defense; by "reason" and by "custom" a man has the right to defend himself and his property, and still more his faith, which is his most important possession, and more important than his life on earth. Humbert often seems uneasy about these arguments, and per-

³³ Matthew 22:7

³⁴ *De prebatione sancte crucis* (Münchberg?, 1490), caps. 2, 8. *Opus expugnacionis, in Appendix ad Iustitiam rerum expugnacionum et jugacionum*, ed. Edward Brown (London, 1598), cap. 11.

haps stresses the wickedness of the enemy as much to evade the emotional consequences of the crusaders' cruelty and inhumanity as to establish his legal justification. In the last resort, in spite of the array of scriptural authorities, canon law was based on common sense and not on revelation, in this unlike the Moslem *shari'*. However, although the right to defend the faith by force was seen as self-evident, this argument was at least implicitly reinforced by the right of the Christian faith, as revelation, to exercise God's dominion over the world. We shall consider this "war aim" later.

Some of these arguments are found more fully, but less reasonably and certainly less attractively, expressed a few generations later, in the period of total crusading failure. When Humbert wrote there seemed to be at least some chance of saving the Latin remnant of Syria. Humbert added something to the case for killing infidels which had been put so summarily by Bernard of Clairvaux in the twelfth century and taken for granted in many bulls and canons. It was argued in still fuller detail by the English Dominican Robert Holcot, who, when he died in 1349, had lived through a period of futile attempts by the papacy to revive the crusade seriously. Though there was talk of attacking the Arab countries, there was at this date no danger of attack by any Islamic power, but the question "whether it is lawful and praiseworthy for some Christian, when in order to attack he uses force, to kill some unbeliever such as a pagan" was not altogether unreal. Alexandria was sacked after Holcot wrote.

The arguments he cites against killing unbelievers, summarized, are: God desires not the death of the sinner, but that he should be converted; the church prays for unbelievers, so they should not be killed; God is merciful and Jesus forbade Peter to use his sword, Aristotle told Alexander that he refused to shed blood because, whenever a creature kills another, the heavenly powers are moved to divine vengeance; God said, "Vengeance is mine";¹⁷ it is forbidden to kill a bad Christian, although he is worse than a pagan who does not enjoy the restraints of Christian law; unbelief is not the unbelievers' fault, because God has not lifted the veil from their hearts; their error is unvincible, because, even if they want to believe, the power of their rulers prevents them; an effect is good only if it is directed to a good end, but the

¹⁷ (Pseudo) Aristotle, *Sacraeum secretorum*, in *Opera hactenus inedita Rogerii Baconi*, fasc. V, ed. Robert Steele (Oxford, 1936), esp. 18, pp. 32-36; *The Governance of Lanchipien*, esp. 26, in *Three Prose Versions of the Sacraeum secretorum*, ed. Steele (EETS, 55: 1899, 390; New York, 1973), p. 81. See also *Sacraeum secretorum: Nine English Versions*, ed. M. A. Mannucci (EETS, 179; Oxford, 1973), pp. 62, 128, 129-132.

principal end is conversion, and conversion cannot be forced, because no one comes to God except by faith, but can only believe freely. The replies to these objections are: it is only the eternal death of the soul that God does not desire; the church prays for the sinner to become just, and, if he refuses, may cut him off; the sword is forbidden only without due authority, and Peter chose the wrong moment ("that was not the time"); Aristotle meant that he would not take pleasure in shedding blood, and true Christians, when they do so, take pleasure only in the end for which they do it; God's vengeance is sometimes effected through his servants; bad Christians are killed "every day"—thieves, traitors, heretics—and it is necessary only that there be just authority, rather than private decision; God will remove the veil from anyone who wants it removed; invincible error excuses only those who deserve no blame in incurring it; finally, the principal end is conversion, and extermination only secondary. No one who believes will be killed. We can sum up all these arguments: it is a Moslem's fault that he is Moslem, and that fault is a capital offense. In that case, there would be no necessity to allow a Moslem prisoner to live if he refused to apostatize. This harsh attitude is only very slightly mitigated by the main body of the argument.

Although later Holcot distinguishes different types of *pagan*, he begins his main discussion on the assumption that he is speaking about those who rule the Holy Land—that is, the Moslems. The land was promised to Abraham and his seed, and Christians are the spiritual seed of Abraham; it is lawful to take up material arms against those who occupy our spiritual country unjustly, and thus to repel force by force. If they are killed in the course of being expelled, they are the cause of their own deaths; in the same way, a husband may kill an adulteress who does not run away from his house. Again, the outcome of what is vowed is always lawful if the thing vowed is lawful, and in this case the thing vowed is lawful according to the church militant. Again, any outcome vowed by the pope is lawful, and fighting against *pagan* is indulgenced from fault and pains (*a culpa et a pœna*) and so such fighting is lawful and meritorious. A similar argument: the English church is taxed to subsidize the fighting, with the approval of the pope; therefore the *and* is approved by the rulers of the churches, to whom obedience is due.

The argument is prefaced by a number of definitions and distinctions. Thus, some unbelievers are subject to the church, and are associated with believers, as servants to their lords, and are ruled by them. Others are "rebels against the church, persecutors of the Christians, and annullers of Christian doctrine". This is really merely a distinction

between those under Christian and those under non-Christian governments. Then there are different ways of attacking the pagans; for example, if someone presumes to act without the authority of the church (an allusion to Frederick II?) he cannot kill justly. Thirdly, there are different kinds of pagans, those who have no religion "unless by chance the law of nature"; there are also Jews, Moslems, idolators, and heretics, and these have different relations to the Christian religion. Heretics must be compelled to recant. Moslems kill anyone who preaches against Islam, but the life of Christ cannot be taught without disproving the religion of Mohammed (a characteristic self-deception); however, those Moslems who are bound to, and tolerated by, Christians cannot lawfully be attacked by arms, but must be granted peace according to the example set by Joshua, who enslaved the Gibeonites as hewers of wood and drawers of water. *A fortiori* "pagans" may lawfully be offered protection, provided they live "*sine consuetudine creatoris*", especially in the hope of their conversion; they cannot then lawfully be killed, though this applies only *per accidens*. As for those other unbelievers, insurgents against the church and persecutors of the faith, Christians may "attack them by force and arms, despoil them, kill them, and devote their goods to the believers".

Jews are in a different class; Holcot does not think it lawful to kill them, because the apostle announced their conversion at the last days, so all, at least, may not be destroyed. The Moslems and the Jews are not in the same case, the former persecute the Christians and turn them out of their own towns and places, the latter are ready everywhere to serve the Christians.³⁸ The war against the Moslems is just, under the authority of the church, for many reasons: they occupy the land and other possessions that belong to the Christians (the justification "appears proved by reason and custom"); again, it is divine law that by right all good things of this world belong to the just (*omnia bona temporalia sunt iustorum*); again, as a corrupt member may be cut off from the body, so may the rebels and unbelievers be cut off from the mystical body of the redeemed human race; again, it is lawful to induce charity through terror; finally, such people — Moslems, but which? — act worse than beasts, but beasts may be killed for the public good, so also may evil sinners. (It is not clear whether Holcot would hold a good act by an unbeliever to be evil.) Some of Holcot's arguments

38. The idea is an old one. Pope Alexander II (1060-1073), in writing about Jews who were not to be injured, forbade a Spanish bishop to destroy a synagogue: "*Dispar maxime est Judaeorum et Christianorum usus. In hoc enim, qui Christianus perspicitur et ex arbitrio et proprio arbitrio palliat, non persequitur; in vero obsequio parat esse servum*" (p. 100, in *PL*, 146, col. 1347).

sound silly to us, and probably sounded severe to some of his contemporaries; he often betrays ignorance of the realities of the crusade; all that he says is nasty.³⁹ In an unimpaired way, he elaborates Bernard of Clairvaux, but he does not innovate; he draws out what is already there. He is inferior to Humbert in intellectual power and in judgment. He takes up more thoroughly than Humbert the question of what right a Moslem has to live, and the conditions under which it is permissible to tolerate him. On these conditions there is a large canonical literature, which is the fullest expression of the legal apparatus of a "just war", and a revelation of its political purposes. Unlike many political purposes, these were in fact ultimately achieved; in the areas that the Europeans conquered permanently, Islam died out.

D. Toleration and Trade

In the Islamic law of *jihad* the end of the process, or war aim, was understood to be the death, conversion, or submission of the "infidel".⁴⁰ Crusade law to some extent resembled this, but usually, as in the scheme defended by Holcott, the submission of Moslems was barely accepted. Aquinas justified imposing force on unbelievers (where practicable) to prevent "blasphemies and evil influences", and he defined blasphemy as, in effect, any theological error publicly expressed. Toleration had no absolute status in medieval Christendom as it had (within limits strictly defined) in medieval Islam, and that is why the Moslem communities in Europe were eventually extirpated; submission was only an interim war aim. The history of James I "the Conqueror" of Aragon-Catalonia is full of Moslem surrenders to the king, representing the civil power, on his guarantee of freedom of worship.⁴¹ This was no protection from the gradual operation of discrimination over the centuries, and canon law is our best guide to the pressures gradually exerted. The case of Moslems was generally assimilated to that of the Jews in the great collections of decretals, although a number of canons

³⁹ In *Liberum superius* (Oxford, 1948), lecture LVI, esp. 1; *Deiua* 922; *Academia* 1123. For further references see Benjamin Z. Kedar, *Crusade and Muslims* (Princeton, 1964) pp. 58-59, 143-149.

⁴⁰ In general see Edmund Spens, *L'Islam et le christianisme* (Paris, 1962).

⁴¹ Aquinas, *Summa theologiae*, 2a-2ae, qn. 10, art. 2, qn. 13, art. 1, cf. qn. 10, art. 10, and the references John in *Opera omnia*, vol. 23 (Paris, 1875-1888). Cf. also *The Chronicle of James I*, in John Foster (London, 1873), *passim*.

specified Jews only. The main difference between the Islamic rules for Christians and Jews under Moslem rule and the Christian rules for Moslems and Jews under Christian rule lay in the original intention. The Islamic law, by introducing a special tax for *dhimmis* and excluding them from the army, created a barrier between the majority and its dependent minorities, but the Christian rules set out deliberately to isolate "unbelieving" communities from Christian society.

Before we leave the subject of the divisions enforced between Moslems and Christians, we should consider two canons of special interest of late date. One is from the Council of Vienne (1312), incorporated into the Clementines promulgated by John XXII in 1317, which makes a number of rash incidental assertions about matters of fact; for example, that the call to prayer "invokes and enols" the Prophet's name (which might be considered accurate), and, absurdly, that Moslems "adore" Mohammed in their mosques; legal conservatism combines with propaganda to the point of self-delusion. The call to prayer is in any case understood to be "an affront to the divine name and a reproach to the Christian faith", at least when it occurs in lands subject to Christian rulers where *permissum cum Christianis habitant Saraceni*, glossed by the canonist John of Andrew as "said to be in Aragon and various territories in Spain". The affront lay in the Christians' hearing this fragment of Moslem worship. The decree goes on to object to the public congregation of a multitude of Moslems, which generates "scandal seriously in the hearts of the faithful"; that happens when they go to "the place where a certain Moslem was formerly buried", to "venerate and worship him". This is so vague a description of the *hajj* that we might think it referred to the local cult of a holy man; but John understands it as the pilgrimage to Mecca, and expresses surprise that there should be doubt as to the identity of the "certain Moslem" as Mohammed. The offense is again the appearance of the multitude of Moslem worshippers before the Christian public. John assumes that Christian rulers tolerate non-Christian religious practice "on account of their avarice, that they may take tribute". They "tolerate and suffer them (Moslems) to be and remain in their areas; sometimes the rulers suffer them to be apart, that is, separated from the Christians; sometimes they suffer and tolerate them in the same city and the same quarter." It is the latter case, of course, which gives offense, and the offense is that non-Christian worship should be seen to happen at all.⁴²

42. *Clementis papae II constitutiones*, II, I, in *Corpus Iuris canonici*, ed. Emil L. Richter, rev. ed. by Emil A. Friedberg (Leipzig, 1875; repr. Graz, 1955), II, cols. 1180-1212.

The other decretal was issued only a few years later, by John XXII in 1317. It completes a process only half achieved by the other. It is about "the business of attacking the faithless Agarenes, by whom the kingdom of Granada is held in insult to God"; apparently God, insulted (as we have just seen) by the public profession of Islam in a mixed quarter in a Christian city, was insulted again by Moslems who worked industriously to pay tribute from a small, subordinate, but separate kingdom. The decretal begins appropriately "The Lord (is) overflowing in mercy", *capitans in misericordia Dominus*. In response to a particular request by Peter, the infante of Castile, this decretal about the poor remnant of independent Islam in Granada has a general implication for the theology of the just war: "indeed," says Jesse-llin of Canaguet in his gloss, "the defense of the church is expected to be a responsibility of the rulers of the world, and the church should be protected by their power; for it is the will of God to stimulate temporal power against heretics and other unbelievers." The "insult to God" here is defined as an injury to divine religion, a "faculty of doing harm", which God permits on account of the sins of Christians; but the "insult" and the "injury" from which the church demanded protection was just the theological "error" of those who continued to be Moslems.⁴³

This offense of Granada's brings us to the last theme in the legislation for holy war, the relation of Christians to places under Moslem rule. There are two separate questions: one is the trade relationship as governed by the canonical declarations of war contraband and regulated by formal agreements between European trading powers and the Moslem states; the other is the personal situation of those Christians who lived and worked in Islamic territory, but still within reach of canon law so long as they wished to remain in the Latin church.

The prohibition of carrying arms or war materials to Islamic countries was well established, repeated in a regular formula with little variation over centuries of warfare and projected warfare; it appears first in full form in the canons of Lateran III, and was later incorporated in Gregory IX's *Decretals*. Those who carry arms, iron, or lumber for making galleys to the Moslems are as bad as the enemy or worse; so are those who serve in command of Moslem galleys and private ships. They are all excommunicated, and Christian rulers and the consuls of trading cities are warned that the goods of such people should be

⁴³ *Excerpta postea* . . . *Summa papae XXII* . . . viii, 4, *Dist.*, cols. 1214-1215.

confiscated, and that they should themselves, if taken, be enslaved.⁴⁴ A similar but fuller canon of Lateran IV, also incorporated in the *Decretals*, added anathemas against these "false and impious" Christians who do the things forbidden by the earlier canon, and also those who give advice and help in the use of "engines", or in any other way; what this forbids is what we now call acting as foreign experts. It also required that sentences against offenders should be published in the maritime cities on Sundays and holy days; finally, the condition of pardon would be to transfer the gains made in *dispendium* to the service of the Holy Land. The *glossa ordinaria* condemns the same motivation that the original decretals attributed to such offenders; "led by blind cupidity," it says, echoing Alexander III's "harsh cupidity occupied their souls"; it argues that, because it is worse to help the enemy than to be the enemy, slavery is appropriate as punishment.⁴⁵

Elsewhere the glossator discusses the significance of repeated excommunications. It might seem that once a man is outside the church, he is outside, and repetition adds nothing; his answer is that the effect of the first excommunication is to put the offender outside, of later excommunications to keep him there, since each sentence requires its own proper satisfaction. He draws a parallel with the penaltim for usury, where the restitution must be commensurate with the offense, here more so, because the offender, guilty of "attacking" the Christian faith, sees his confiscated gain spent entirely in its defense.⁴⁶ To the modern observer, there is an implication that the merchant or "foreign expert" seeks to serve the Moslem world not only from cupidity but by preference; ordinary Mediterranean trade attacked the Christian faith in the sense that it was incompatible with the intentions of the crusade, and with the theory underlying papal policy.

Two other decretals date back to the period of the Third Crusade. The first of these deals with cases of conscience arising out of trading with the enemy: it is legitimate to go to Alexandria to redeem fellow citizens from captivity, but not to take more goods from which the Moslems could benefit than are needed for ransom. A second point is that the existence of a truce between Moslems and Christians does not justify the revival of prohibited trade with Alexandria, and merchants who swore that they would not go to Moslem countries with goods until there was peace are not excused excommunication if they

44. Lateran III, canon 24 (Hefele, *in*, *Leclercq*, *Manuel des conciles*, 9-2, pp. 1104-1105).

45. *Decretalium Di Gregorii papae compilation*, V, vi, of J. Richter and Preberg, *op. cit.*, col. 773j.

46. *Ibid.*, col. 773-778.

do so during the truce. The gloss adds that they are not absolved from their perjury either, adding that the excommunication is *per se*, and applies "in time of peace or truce". It carefully distinguishes truce from peace, the former being defined as "security of persons and property, conceded for a time". It also picks up the major ambiguity in the decretal; what if the articles to be used to ransom Christians are arms or iron? Some think that they are still exempt, but the glossator believes that this should first be referred to papal authority, not in principle, but in any particular case.⁴⁷

The second of these decretals forbids any trade at all with the Moslems in time of war, "either in person or through agents (*per alios*), in ships or by any other means, or any material help or advice". The gloss considers that it imposes a double excommunication. The decretal concludes, and the gloss repeats, that offenders will not only be excommunicated, but also be exposed to the anger of the living God.⁴⁸ This seems to diminish a little the terrors of excommunication alone.

A later decretal of Clement V issued during the period immediately following the expulsion in 1291 of European Christians from Syria-Palestine listed more goods: "iron, horses, arms, and other forbidden goods, and also foodstuffs and wares (*mercimonie*), to Alexandria and other places of the Moslems, in the land of Egypt." It increased the abuse of both the Moslems ("dreadful and faithless nation") and the offenders ("deviating into a crooked path . . . unmindful of their own reputation and forgetful of salvation"); it piled up the list of penalties — excommunication, enslavement, perpetual infamy, testamentary incapacity, and inability to hold public office, something of a *diminutio*, although the rhetoric maintains a steady frenetic level.⁴⁹ Church law naturally imputes motivation, and so tends always to read more emotionally than other kinds of law, but this law is stated emotionally by any standard. One point of making the prohibition "more absolute than absolute" was, of course, to make it incapable to obtain a papal license to trade with Egypt, although sometimes this was withheld. We are not here concerned with the practice of the law, but the role of expensive exemptions, amounting to a system of taxation, does affect our judgment of the theory.

In papal theory, perhaps only missionaries should have been allowed to live in Islamic territory, but some trade was allowed, even in theory.

47. *Ibid.*, xl (ed. 772).

48. *Ibid.*, xli (ed. 773); cf. *Ibid.*, x (eds. 774-775).

49. *Excoꝛgationes communes*, V, c. 1, (eds. 1289-1290).

and exemptions were given, so that it was admitted that there were and might legitimately be Christian communities living in Moslem countries, primarily for trade, not necessarily excommunicate, needing spiritual services; at certain periods, of course, there were considerable numbers of enslaved prisoners. The only profit that the popes ostensibly accepted as desirable is missionary, but trade itself has advantages both ways; the popes simply tried to insist on reserving to themselves the decision in each individual case, and gave licenses for trade limited by the number of ships and to a fixed period, for example, a year. Granted the seasonal problem of Mediterranean navigation, a year was not long in the export and import business. The sale of license was a taxed permission to commit an offense, which obviously reduced the whole crusading theory to absurdity.

There were, of course, many problems of conscience, for which we have some solutions by the Dominican Raymond of Peñafort, consulted by the minister of the Friars Minor in Tama la (1234). These are the cases. Those who claim license on the ground that their own immediate ecclesiastical superiors have not forbidden them to carry arms, iron, et cetera to the Moslems are to be excommunicated, because the decrees of the councils cover their case; the same applies to those who fight Christians. Should Spaniards who sell footwear and harness be counted as selling arms? Or those who sell rams and sheep? What about Pisara and Genoese who sell grain and legumes? These are excommunicated in times of war. Those who transport food produced by Moslems to other Moslems are excommunicated. People who bring arms for self-defense, but then sell them when they are in need, are excommunicated.

Those who sell Christians as slaves, especially if these are forced to become Moslems, are not excommunicated, but do commit mortal sin; this is also so when they steal Jews or Moslems (children presumably) and sell them as Christians. The reason why there was no excommunication for what many might think the worse offense is that this particular trade was not included specifically in the canons, and, as it was not contraband, was not an *illegitimum*. Later, in the fourteenth century, when Europeans had come to appreciate the Mamluk system, the trade in slaves came to be seen more as a kind of war contraband; the Egyptians then were said to be peaceful people, who would not carry on war if the Mamluks did not receive constant foreign recruitment. Asked about the baptism of Moslem children in the hope that they will die before they come to years of discretion, Peñafort makes an ambiguous and unsatisfactory reply.

A more practical question was whether Christians may live with con-

verts from Christianity, especially if they are related, some being minors, some adults, and others their own children? Happily, the reply is yes, because of either "correction", the hope of putting them right, or "necessity", presumably material necessity. Cohabitation with a heretic (Moslem?) spouse is also permitted, if there is no *contumelia creatrix*; perhaps this means here, provided the Christian spouse does not take part (or perhaps is just not seen to take part) in Moslem (or Coptic?) worship.

What about those who have been given a period of crusading for a penance, but are infirm, or poor, or afraid? Give them another penance. What of those who are held back from keeping their vow by serious business? They should not involve themselves closely with others, and, when disengaged, should fulfill the vow. Are those who steal from Moslems bound to make restitution? They are so bound. Are those who bring grain, small pieces of wood, or the like excommunicated? Only if they do so *in dependium Terrae Sanctae*, or to attack Christians. What about clergy who give scandal by acting as merchants? They are subject to the appropriate canonical penalties. Is ignorance about what trade is forbidden an excuse? No, because the prohibitions are public, but if the offenders are ignorant, and stop when they are informed, then they are not excommunicated. If a sailor has no other means of earning his living, and takes service on a ship that is carrying contraband, is he excommunicated? Yes, but he can be absolved at discretion if he makes proper satisfaction.⁵⁰ Many of these decisions bear witness to a sensible and occasionally humane application of a harsh law which was intended to erect a powerful barrier between Moslems and Christians, and appears to a considerable extent to have succeeded.

It is beyond the scope of this chapter to examine the extent to which the canons were modified by official license, or by being ignored, but the actual correspondence of the popes fills out an otherwise incomplete picture. There is not much evidence about the life of Latin communities in North Africa, but, as we should expect, the intentions of the later canons contrast with the pre-crusading situation of the eleventh century. At the earlier date, as we saw, when an indigenous hierarchy in the Roman province of Africa just survived, Gregory VII's diplomacy shows him concerned to reach an agreement with the Hammudid ruler. Something of this spirit remained alive at the papal court: when, later, the local Christian church had died out, the popes, in-

50. "Excommunication," in *Instrumenta ordinis Praedicatorum historicis* (Rome and Stuttgart, 1894), VI, fasc. 4, doc. 402, pp. 25-6.

cluding those, like Gregory IX or Nicholas IV, who were most anxious for the renewal of the crusade, were concerned to ensure that the Moslem rulers at least in North Africa and the west should accept Latin clergy sent to act as chaplains to the local Christian communities. There seem to have been, from an early date, friars, especially Franciscans. Even in Egypt they served Christian prisoners, among others, but it is not clear that this service was maintained consistently.

The trading communities were relatively stable. The treaties between the commercial states and Islamic rulers, of which many, from the twelfth century onward, are extant, are strictly businesslike; they do not infringe the canons, although as Pellaforte's case-decisions illustrate, individual members of the communities must often have done so. The treaties freely use Moslem terminology, adopting the style of the country ("in the name of God the Compassionate and Merciful"); they establish a firm consular basis for trading rights, often reciprocal, and some secure the right to maintain chapels. In this situation the popes intervened amicably enough. In writing to Moslem rulers, they used phrases like "your nobility" and "your magnificence"; Gregory IX wrote to 'Abd-al-Wahid II, the Mawabhid ruler of Morocco, "to the noble man Anirromolinus" (*amir al-mu'minin*, the commander of the faithful); we must assume that (as was often the case) this was thought to be a proper name. Several of these letters refer in more or less friendly fashion to Christians who are serving under Moslem rulers, even as soldiers.¹ It is clear that in North Africa (as distinct from Egypt) this was not always taken to be *in dispendium Terrae Sanctae*, and was then legal so long as it was not done to fight against Christians.

In any case, not even the shadow of toleration extended to Egypt: Egypt was an enemy country and constantly singled out as such, on strategic principles which remained dominant till the Ottoman invasion. The earlier canons that forbade trade *in dispendium* did not specify the Moslems against whom they were directed, but one bull of Innocent III, of the same date as Lateran IV, singled out "the lands of the Moslems who inhabit the eastern regions". A gloss of Jean de Cassanegues explains the phrase "the lands of Egypt" (where it occurs in the 1317 canon about Granada): "in which Christ was born, namely

1) See also Fabrice L. de Mas Latrie, *Traité de paix et de commerce et documents divers* (Paris, 1862-1872), II, 1-2, 367-370; Paul Ernst, "Traité des Vénitiens avec l'Émir d'Afrique en 1204," *AOX*, 1 (1881), 406-408. Cf. *Sallustiana de Adam, Crusades*, ed. Giuseppe Sestini (Scrinari 471616), 233, 1 (Bari, 1969), 457-458; *Asquini de Spaleno, De fidei et misericordie viaticis* *capitula in Sublimis* (1287-8), in *BOA*, 18, 48 ff. See also *Epistolas Antioch, Levant Trade in the Later Middle Ages* (Princeton, 1963).

in Bethléhem, brought up, in Nazareth, suffered and was buried, in Jerusalem . . . which because of the fathers of our sins is in the hands of the unbelievers."⁵² What looks like a geographical error may rather be a recognition of Mamluk rule over Palestine from Cairo. Pilgrimage, because it added to the revenue of the Mamluks, was also *in dispensation*, and so required dispensation, and Egypt was a normal route to Palestine. The North African states, though the object of several startling Christian attacks, never provoked the same vituperation as Mamluk Egypt. Even though we cannot confidently assert, we can reasonably suppose, that the popes would have been ready to reach some accommodation with Islamic powers, whenever expedient, as a matter of course, were it not for the question of Palestine. This, if true, implies that the conviction that Palestine rightfully belonged to the Christians had priority in Christian theory over the argument that the Moslem religion was in itself evil. The latter originated in propaganda, although the machinery of tolerated coexistence was legal, but the former was sincerely, however perversely in a modern view, believed itself to have the force of a right at law.

E. Political Theory

These legal systems have their political implications. No imaginable papal accommodation with the Moslems of North Africa would have survived any real chance of conquering them. Just as Christians were believed to have a prescriptive right to the Holy Land, they were considered to have a lesser but still valid right to all lands that they set out to "recover". They did recover all of Spain and Sicily, and service in Spain was often (though not always) counted for purposes of penance or indulgence as equivalent to service in the east. This was law, and was simply a matter for papal decision *ad hoc*. They would have recovered any other territory of the Roman empire if they could. Behind the historical descriptions of Arab aggression in and after the seventh century lay the legal theory of "recovery"; after however long an interval, all ancient Rome was considered in some legal sense inalienably Christian. There was no territory within the reach of Christians which had not once been under Christian rule. If Iran had been

52. *Transarcti*, op. cit., *homages* III, III, 305 (no. 381, par. 14); *Excerpta Joannis XXIV*, viii, l. 43. "Terra Anglorum".

accessible, and conquered, what would have been the status of its Moslem inhabitants in Christian legal theory?

Beginning with Innocent IV there developed a theory of papal jurisdiction over non-Christians, and even over non-Christian states, which was soon elaborated into a theory of world monarchy by canonists busy with the task of extending papal authority. There was a steady growth in self-serving legal arguments that non-Christian states had to allow the entry of missionaries, that their Christian subjects came under direct papal authority – although it was never clear whether this was a political or only spiritual authority – and that this applied not only to those territories that had once been held by Christian rulers, but to any lands whatsoever.³⁵ Such discussions said nothing about subject Moslems in such states, or what might happen if such states fell into Christian hands, but there can be little doubt of the consequences. If the toleration of Moslems was only tactical, the “ultimate war aim” must inevitably have been the same as the commission to the apostles, the conversion of all unbelievers. The Jews, thanks to Romans 11:25–26, could count on being left till last, but Moslems would certainly have been reduced to submission, on the ground that non-Christians have no right to lordship and that they “persecuted” or “attacked” Christianity by existing at all (and no doubt would in any case have attacked Christendom often enough); once in submission they would have been subject to conversion, that is, compelled to listen to preaching, and to discrimination, until, as happened in Spain in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, and had happened in Italy in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, they had ceased to exist as Moslems. If we concede that “recovery” was the primary concept, then “conversion” (by war initially) was soon so firmly rooted as to become itself essential to the idea of the crusade. The political theory of the crusade was quite simply the infinite extension of Latin Christendom.

This is speculation, based on implication, but the close link between legal and political thought makes it reasonably certain. Can we speculate further? Uthred of Bolton, a monk of Durham and scholastic of the fourteenth century, was censured for discussing the possibility that Moslems, Jews, and pagans might be saved *de communis lege*; this was classed as error.³⁶ William Langland maintained that a “true man”

35. For further references to Innocent IV see *Index*, op. cit., pp. 129–161, and on scholasticism generally pp. 74 E, 140 E, and *passim*; see also Walter Ullmann, *Medieval Papalism: the Political Theories of the Medieval Canonists* (London, 1960), pp. 114–137. For an interesting discussion of the whole concept of a “just war” see Frederick M. Russell, *The Just War in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge, Eng., and New York, 1957).

36. M.D. [i.e., David] Knowles, “The Censured Opinions of Uthred of Bolton,” *Proceed-*

who follows the best law he knows, acts justly, and "tyuode as his lawe taughte and knyoweth ther be no bettere", may be saved. This specifically relates to Saracens and Jews, in spite of Langland's acceptance of traditional libels against the Prophet.⁵³ Aziz Azya has drawn attention to further examples, John Gower and Honoré Bonet.⁵⁴ These opinions stand out because they were contrary to the usual opinions expressed by the lawyers. Granted the intimate connection among theology, law, and political intention, should we suppose that, if Moslems could be saved in their own "law", the compulsion to save them by conversion would disappear? Would the crusade have been confined to "recovery", perhaps only of the Holy Land? Wyclif went further, and opposed the crusade itself,⁵⁵ but he did so because the crusade, both in practice and in theory, was an instrument of papal political expansion. This idea of his was not influential, although, as Southern has shown, the originality of John Wyclif's treatment of Islam cannot be questioned.⁵⁶ Even according to the ideas aired by Uthred and Langland, however, non-believers would be protected only by their ignorance of the true religion; thus the armed crusade must still have followed the missionaries. We must conclude that "recovery" came first, both legally and politically, but that "conversion" too was an unlimited political objective that would have compelled crusaders (in law) to continue in arms to the limits of the inhabited world; and, of course, Wyclif was right; this objective for Latin Christendom was a concept inseparable from papal ambition.

The history of Frederick II, in particular, sheds light upon the theory of the papal party. Frederick preserved the Sicilian Arabs in an existence separate from the rest of his subjects for his own purposes, exploiting rather than protecting them. In Sicily itself, Innocent III had been prepared to deal with them as legitimate subjects whose loyalty, when they were loyal, should be praised; they could be dealt with through the qadis almost like a tributary people or *millet* in Islamic

ings of the British Academy, XXXVII (1951), 308-342, repr. in *The Historian and Character* (Cambridge, Eng., 1963), text pp. 142-161.

53 *Plant the Plowman*, ed. Walter W. Skeat (ETS, 4 vols. in 3, London, 1867-1877), B Text, *Poems* XII, 204-209, and XV, 309 ff., but cf. *PO*; C Text, XV, 309-312, and XVIII, 121 ff., 166 ff.

54 Aziz S. Azya, *The Crusades in the Later Middle Ages* (London, 1938), pp. 167-168. Cf. Weymann von Eschenbach, *Parzival*, ed. Albert Lohmeyer in *Die Artusromane*, 1961-1963, VIII, 424, 23-29, and IX, 423, 11-14.

57 Brinkman in Richard W. Southern, *Western Views of Islam in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge, Mass., 1942), p. 78, and Azya, *loc. cit.*

58 Southern, *Western Views*, pp. 79 ff.

law. Frederick, after destroying their independence, transferred them to Lucera on the mainland; he rated the life of a Moslem or a Jew at half the price of that of a Christian; he seems to have thought of them as in some sense having the same status as that of Christians in Islam, using the word *gens* to denote a capitation tax which he imposed and which represented the *jizyah* or poll tax which Christians and Jews paid in Islam. This must have been deliberate, but Frederick did not really assimilate his Lucera Arabs to the status of *dhimmi* in Islam, who are not required to fight; the people of Lucera, on the contrary, were required above all to provide troops who would be wholly dependent on the emperor's good will. From a Moslem or a modern point of view, pope Gregory IX was persecuting the Arabs when he insisted on their having to listen to the preaching of Dominicans, but his intention toward them was more charitable and disinterested than Frederick's; as Christians they would at least have been safer.⁵⁹

The objections raised by the papal party to Frederick's arrangements in Palestine are also instructive. His great offenses were permitting Moslem worship in the Dome of the Rock (Qubbat as-Sakhrah) and the Aqsa mosque, forbidding Christians free access to those places, and allowing the public call to prayer, as well as allowing Moslems access to Bethlehem. All these horrors were simply the admission of Moslems to the use of holy places then conceived quite wrongly to be exclusively Christian, and to public worship of their own. One other episode, out of so many told of Frederick, deserves mention here. Matthew Paris says that in Acre he had Christian girls dance before Moslems who, "it is said," had sexual relations with them; nearer the source, the Latin patriarch Gerald said that the sultan al-Kamil, knowing that Frederick lived in Moslem style, sent him singing girls, dancing girls, and jesters, whose reputation was infamous and unmentionable among Christians, and that Frederick behaved in Arab style, in drinking (*sic*) and dressing. With Matthew Paris the (imaginary) scandal is the prostitution of Christian girls, which would indeed be contrary to the canons, with the patriarch, it was the "Arab" way of living to which he objected; he would no doubt have argued that the offense was mixed attendance at a *convivium*. All these episodes in their different ways illustrate the principles underlying the clerical concept of the crusade.⁶⁰

⁵⁹ I. L. A. Hazard-Brisson, *Historie diplomatique Frédéric second* (12 vols., Paris, 1852-1889), I, 1, p. 308-309; IV, I, p. 76; I, 1, p. 308-309; V, I, p. 628, IV, I, p. 437.

⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, IO, 68, 101-102, 109, 109, 126, 140; V, 320, cf. also Matthew Paris, *Chronica majora*, ed. Henry R. Luard (Oxford, 1913), III, 182.

It is time to look more closely at the inevitable comparison with the law of *jihad*, itself part of the basic structure of medieval Islamic policy. In outline the two laws are closely similar. A Moslem army offers unbelievers the opportunity to accept Islam, or, failing that, to accept the status of *dhimmi*; if they refuse both, they must fight, and, being defeated, may be enslaved or even killed. A slave who later becomes a Moslem is not necessarily freed, though it would be pious to free him. Comparing the crusade, we remember that it, too, was aimed at conversion, and that Moslems who surrendered on terms of submission were given an inferior status. Moslems captured in war (not on capitulation) would be enslaved, if not killed. The slave converted to Christianity would not automatically be freed, but it would be a pious act to free him. Obviously there is much common ground in the treatment of "infidels". So is there in the rewards of holy war. The death of the Moslem in *jihad* ensures the status of martyr (*shahid*). The death of the crusader did not result automatically in martyrdom, because confession and absolution, absent in Islam, were necessary, but it was common to speak and think of anyone who died in the course of a crusade as a martyr. *Jihad* is more than war; it is also the struggle for one's religion. The crusade qualified as a good work, a penance, and a pilgrimage, and it was rewarded by indulgences which certainly remitted "pains and guilt". Some of them seem to imply more than later Catholic theology would allow.

The Christian or Jewish *dhimmi* was in a better situation than a conquered Moslem, in that his position was strictly regulated by a law known in advance and not dependent on the details of a capitulation; it was guaranteed by the Koran itself. It was a status of dependence, however, strictly not even second-class citizenship, but something altogether less than citizenship. The *dhimmi's* life and property were guaranteed by the Moslem army, but he had to pay special taxes, and had to distinguish himself from Moslems by dress, and by not riding a horse or carrying weapons. As a witness he was inferior in status; his law of personal status and doctrine was determined by his bishop. The conquered Moslem had similarly to be distinguished by dress, and was inferior as a witness. Because he was unbaptized, he was not subject to canon law, and so was free to follow his own law of personal status. Some details, though similar, are not precisely the same in the two cases; Christian monarchs assumed the duty of protecting conquered Moslems on their capitulation, but these had to pay the ordinary or extraordinary taxes attached to the land they held, and those who surrendered, or negotiated a truce on terms allowing subordinate Moslem rule (of which the longest-lasting example was Granada), had to

pay an exorbitant tribute. The two laws resembled each other in limiting strictly any public celebration of the religion of the other, and the erection of places of worship. On the other hand, Christians under Islamic rule were not subjected to compulsory preaching of the dominant religion, as happened in the reverse case. *Jihad* might be declared against Moslem heretics and rebels, so that if, as the popes claimed, Moslems "judaised" in declaring pork unclean, the popes themselves "islamized" in declaring a crusade against heretics (such as the Albigensians) or against those who rebelled against their authority (the most distinguished of whom was the emperor Frederick II). Differences of detail are fewer than points of resemblance, and in any case do not obscure the close similarity of general outline.⁴¹

Besides the uncanny resemblances in many details, there is an overall consonance between Moslem and Christian ideas of holy war. The idea of *jihad* as spiritual struggle is much to the fore of the minds of modern Moslem theologians, and in the modern world Christians speak loosely of any good endeavour of any magnitude as a "crusade". The concept of *jihad* has not loosened quite to the same extent in Islam, but it is certainly used to define what Christians still call a "just war". It is as a theology of just war that the two ideas come closest. Even the requirements of using right means (*modus debitus*) which developed rather later in Christianity, and the idea of double effect which permits the incidental death of the innocent, are parallel to Islamic rules. We have seen that the crusade from its inception was considered the just war *par excellence*, the war which would end all other kinds of war, though in fact in time it led on to an infinite number of "just wars" and crusades for this and that alleged good end. Here we return to the starting point. Both *jihad* and crusade were designed to lead to that state of perfect peace where the world is under the rule of true religion, and the conversion of a barely tolerated remnant is imminent.

It is extremely unlikely that there was an actual Islamic influence on the Christian canon. There is no vestige or echo of specific knowledge of the Islamic law of *jihad* in any medieval writing; still less are there specific references to it, translations, questions, or discussions. In writing theology and even history there is no reticence about the use of Moslem sources, and this silence makes it certain that there was no explicit influence of Moslem jurisprudence. References do occur

⁴¹ Cf. *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, vol. I (Leiden, 1906), iv ed., vol. II (Leiden, 1967), at "Jihad"; Majid Khadduri, *War and Peace in the Law of Islam* (Baltimore, 1957).

often, of course, to the "religion of violence"; generalizations are based on traditional distortions of early Islamic history, and tendentious reading of Robert of Ketton's paraphrase of the Koran, undertaken for Peter the Venerable, stressed the commands to fight unbelievers. This crude idea of *jihad* was quite unrelated to the crusade. We might say that an unacknowledged influence of Moslem jurisprudence, not even perceived by those who received it, is not impossible, but it is an unnecessarily complex assumption. The natural explanation is that those who start from the same position and go in the same direction are apt to follow much the same path. Granted the duty of converting the world, and granted that there is no objection to the use of force, at least within legally determined limits, the detailed rules seem to develop inevitably in parallel. There was of course no fundamental difference between the Christian and Moslem positions on the use of force. Christians began by not using force at all, and Humbert's theory that different stages of development require and justify different means, whether or not it is a sound theory in theology or law, is certainly good history. The real difference was that the Christian position did not require toleration, in the way that Islam is predetermined by the Koran to accept the "Peoples of the Book". Although there is something similar in the status of Jews, under Roman II, the fact that nothing guarantees the status of Moslems—tolerated, as Holcott said, only as Gibbonite brewers of wood and drawers of water—made a political objective of total conformity possible. The proof is that Christians and Jews have survived under Islam, but not Moslems under Christian rule before the modern colonialist period; in Christendom, Jews have survived, and Moslems have not. The position of the latter was always insecure despite the reasonable terms on which so many of their cities surrendered.

In minor ways uniformity might be broken by license, by the purchase of privilege. It is ironic that in the days of effective crusading people paid the church in order not to go on "pilgrimage"; when a crusade was no longer a practical possibility, they paid for license to break the boycott, to go on pilgrimage, or to travel to Alexandria to trade. As excommunication followed excommunication and was ignored until it suited better to give way, it might seem that the weapon was cheapened beyond usefulness, but, though this may be true of the conflict between the papacy and the secular state, excommunication as the typical ecclesiastical sanction was not diminished; on the contrary, the suppression of heresy became more widespread. The fact is that excommunication was the natural mode of thought of Europeans, unquestioned till relatively late, and surviving into the seventeenth cen-

tary (and verifiably much later). In the Middle Ages, those who would not keep the rules, either of recovery of the Holy Land, or of frigid relations with unbelievers, were excommunicated; above all, the unbelievers themselves began by being excommunicate. This was the justification for taking "spiritual" action against persons outside the church: to preserve Christians from contact with them. There was no secret or mystery about this. The crusade is the characteristic, even quintessential, expression of a conformist society.

The very idea of the crusade was clerical, but in that, perhaps, it differed less from *jihad*, which was the act and thought of the whole community, than might at first appear. Laymen's crusading was a series of practical wars, with little beyond a "them and us" ideology, modified by recurrent common sense, and occasionally by a little good fellowship across the barrier. The crusading ideal was quite different, a clerical intention for laymen to practise, but, though it was sometimes more, sometimes less remote from what was actually happening, laymen acquiesced, at least in the theory. Seen from the point of view of the Christian and European body politic, the crusade becomes only one aspect of the characteristic tendency of the Middle Ages, the concerted determination of the articulate classes — effectively the clerics — to establish a society so fully united as to express itself naturally in total orthodoxy. Nor is there any evidence that the bulk of the population objected to this aim; objectors seem untypical, and most of them were clerical in any case. Some degree of orthodoxy is the expression of any normal society; the peculiarity of the Middle Ages was the preponderance of clerical and theological articulate leadership.

A crusade was different from war against Moslems, as such a war was understood before Clermont, precisely in being more clerical and more theological. It was different in emphasis, and in the stronger papal initiative, expressed partly by a simple philosophy of history, but more by papal decrees elaborated in a growing collection of canons, commentaries, and theological questions. Thus the crusade must be understood as existing by virtue of its own definition; it only added a complex interpretation — at once legal and sentimental — to an already existing activity. In its turn, the papal leadership had an actual effect on events, the crusades were successfully recruited, and this recruitment, though often at a very low level, continued without break. A complex though ramshackle financial system was created.⁴² Thus the existence of such a theory had helped to give a nominal body politic, "Christendom", some effective reality. The crusade was a function of

42. See chapter IV on finances by Paul A. Curi, *ib.*, below.

"Christendom" and an important element in every approach to a papal theocracy. Strictly speaking, the crusade has no political theory of its own, but only plays an important part in the political theory of the papalists.

Moreover, the theory helped greatly to form persistent and influential European attitudes. The overall effect of the law of the crusade, including the law governing the treatment of conquered Moslems, was the political one of sealing Europe off. The relations between the Moslem world and Europe (with, in due course, America) have been uneasy up to the present day. There has been mutual respect, occasional contempt, frequent hatred, and almost constant incomprehension. We can trace this back on the European side as far as the Arab invasions of Europe through an unbroken series of misunderstandings, but, in that story, the effect of the crusading period must be considered decisive. Unmodified crusading opinions can still occasionally be heard from a few Christians, but many Moslems believe that crusade still informs the whole western attitude, and, inverted, it has certainly come to influence extremist interpretation of Islamic law.

W. M. Watt, basing his view very fairly on the evidence of contemporary Moslem historians, and especially on Ibn-Khaldūn (d. 1406), holds that the crusades were no more important to the Arabs of their time than the wars of India's Northwest Frontier to Englishmen of the Imperialist age.⁶⁷ Yet, if so, the Arabs were fatally wrong; there is a clear continuous line from the crusades to the aggressive imperialism of the western European powers in the Levant and North Africa in the nineteenth century. The paternalism of the church within Europe grew into the paternalism of Europe throughout the world. Even at the height of its intolerance Europe sent experts, excommunicate but active wanderers, into the Islamic world; these are lost to history because of the effective cultural barrier which a clerical society closed behind them. The political achievement of the age was an integrated society supported by laws of exclusion; law carries no guarantee that its provisions will be put into effect, but it is likely at least over a long period to express the wishes and beliefs of a people. Crusading Europe, which retained a capacity to develop within itself, was one of the most efficiently closed societies to have flourished under civilized conditions.

⁶⁷ *Muslims against the crusades: personal experience of the action, but an extreme interpretation*, see also Giles Krupp, *Le Prophète et l'Empire* (Paris, 1964), pp. 115-117, 170-172, 198-201. W. Montgomery Watt, *The Influence of Islam on Medieval Europe* (Oxford, 1971), p. 81.

II

CRUSADE PROPAGANDA

A. The Preaching

In 1095 Europeans were already familiar with the constituent notions of the crusade. When Urban II preached at Clermont, the Christian expansion in Spain and Sicily that had been characteristic of the third quarter of the century was well within living memory, and much of it was contemporary history even to the younger men. In spite of that, the propaganda for the eastern crusade seems to have introduced a new note of almost hysterical aggression. There had been two earlier stages. The idea of meritorious fighting against the enemies of God had been characteristic of the wars between Catholics and Arians; directed specifically against Moslems, in a somewhat imprecise form, it dated back to the ninth century, to the attacks on Rome and the settlements in southern Italy. Then European morale had only just sufficed: "lest the Arabs should behave too insolently too long, and say 'Where is their God?', God turned the hearts of the Christians, so that their desire to fight was stronger than their old desire to run away."¹

Then with the increasing momentum of European aggression against the Arabs in the course of the eleventh century, there was a revolutionary change of tone. The companions of count Roger, like the first captors of Barbastro, were adventurers come to exploit the relative weakness of Arab Sicily and the Spain of the *taifa*; though the *Cantar del Cid* and the *Helmshingla Saga* were written later, they seem to reflect very well the spirit of the Varangian, "scourge of the Saracens", and of the Cid, who, "born in a lucky hour", made his living from the booty of the Moors.² These men were successful professionals who made aggression into big business. The recovery of morale was complete. It is equally and immediately obvious that they were not religious enthusiasts, and that war was in the air.

1. Liberatus of Cremona, *Antiquitates*, II, 46 (MGH, 36, III, 297).

2. R. Hiestrich Prihl, ed., *Cantar de mio Cid* (Madrid, 1917), passim; Snorri Sturluson, *Helmshingla Saga*, partly translated as *King Harald's Saga* by Magnus Magnusson and Hermann Palsson (London, 1956), p. 51.

What propaganda turned such men into crusaders? The Gibbonian—and, indeed, medieval—diffusion with the crusaders' greed for land and booty has created a picture of them as rogues cynically exploiting religious sentiment to their profit. For us the interesting question is the reverse. How did the rogues come to be imbued with either the appearance or the reality of religious motivation? This is a fruitful perspective from which to examine again Urban's reported preaching at Clermont. Though Gregory VII had canvassed the idea, it is evident that he did not conceive it in just the same way as did his successor. He was more concerned about papal rights in reconquered territory, more willing to envisage "coexistence" in North Africa.³ He seems to have thought more in terms of papal functions than of an embattled Christian commonwealth. That a reconquered area was "restored" to Christendom was a legal concept at this stage not yet emotionally charged. In Urban's preaching we find new notions, more especially new sentiments, that correspond to ideas immediately and thenceforward in general use. From this point of view it matters more what Urban was understood to have said than what he actually did say. We shall say little to distinguish the propagandist from the consumer of propaganda, because the one is usually, and simultaneously, the other. We are concerned only to identify the main lines of persuasion and self-persuasion which thenceforward men of all types accepted as defining their official motivation.

It is tolerably certain that Urban stressed the idea of the recovery of Christian lands, although this has reached us in a form likely to have appealed primarily to the more literate, and even the literary-minded; history was a branch of literature, and the appeal to history was strictly mythical, and myth-creating. However, it was allied with an idea easily assimilated by the feeblest-minded and the most ignorant: the notion of persecution, of the new wave of attacks against Christendom, comes out very strongly in the "Letter of the emperor Alexis" faithfully reproduced in Robert of Rhelims' version of Clermont;⁴ and in some form or another it is in all the accounts of the period. The legal and liturgical notion that Christian lands, which by hypothesis included the Holy Land, were to be "restored", and saved from a ruthless persecutor, acquired great new emotional force. Like all powerful

3. *See Register Gregory VII*, Birch-Copps, I, 22, 23 (*MGH, Epistolae selectae*, I, 26-26v, II, 21 ff., 267-268).

4. *Historia Hierosolimitana*, I, 1-3 (*RAC, Ger.*, III, 723-726); cf. Edward Marler and Ursula Dronke, eds., *Thomassin versus monasterium* (Paris, 1975), I, 262. For the Council of Clermont see Frederick Donald, "The Councils of Piacenza and Clermont," in volume I of the present work, chapter VII.

idea, it could appeal simultaneously at all levels; on the one hand there was the reasoned catalogue of alleged history; on the other the simple image of a raping and murdering Turk.

William of Malmesbury, an admirable historian, is the first to state (ventriloquizing Urban) the historical argument fully: the enemies of God (or persecutors) inhabit one third of the world, Asia, as natives, and have come to inhabit another third, Africa; in the last third, Europe, the Christians are oppressed, and have now for three hundred years been subjugated in Spain and the Balearics. He also attributed to Urban the theory of national character determined by physique, and physique determined by climate.¹ This was supposed not only to inspire and reassure the Frenchmen of the temperate zone, but also to explain why the Turks fired their arrows from a distance, refusing to close with their enemy. It was written, of course, a generation after the event, and knowledge of Turkish tactics is clearly anticipated. Its historical perspective and historical geography probably represent long reflection upon the original propaganda, but the essence of the argument, the destiny of the Europeans to oppose the alien attack, is contained in other versions.

Gulbert of Nogent's version, written like Malmesbury's after long reflection, also like Malmesbury's contains its historical disquisition, but is more scripturalized (the kings of Egypt, North Africa, and Ethiopia cut off from the Christian world); it reflects the liturgical theme of the restoration of Christian land, and even the Roman concept of an age-old struggle between east and west. Christianity was sown in the east, but the westerners, who received it last, were destined to recover Jerusalem.²

Robert of Rhemes contrasts the French, "beloved and elect by God", phrase by phrase with the "nation of the kingdom of the Persians, a cursed nation, a foreign nation absolutely alien to God".³ The praise of the French seems to be one of the most primitive elements in the crusading movement. Robert appeals also to the example of Charlemagne and Louis the Pious. We can class these arguments under the heading of the historical vocation of the west, which merges naturally with the theme of repelling persecution. These are two aspects of a single line of appeal, and they are reinforced by Old Testament references which tend to assimilate the crusade to biblical situations.

The religious motivation, whether to bring sin and struggle in the

1. *De gestis regum*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, 90), II, 295 ff.

2. *Gesta Dei per Francos*, II, 4 (JAHG, Occ., IV, 179).

3. *Historia Hierosolimitana*, I, 1 (JAHG, Occ., III, 127).

west to an end, or to achieve the pilgrimage *par excellence* in some kind of "martyrdom", constitutes the other main line of appeal. Let us again take Malmesbury's version, as representing a late stage of compilation: the "profit" of martyrdom (not necessarily death in battle) replaces the "wretched exile" of this life, and puts to practical advantage the gifts of valor which inner-scient war despairs.¹ Ouibert stresses this less, but retains it. The sources agree that the idea of pilgrimage as an escape from the "exile" of this life was one of Urban's themes.

It was Fulcher of Chartres who most emphasized the substitution of holy war for the petty wars and their attendant miseries in Europe, and he even saw this as Urban's principal motive. Differently expressed, this was Gibbon's explanation: the diversion of the energy of the knightly class into more profitable channels. Fulcher showed a consistent horror of war, and, as with other authors, later reflection presumably affected his memories of Clermont, an occasion which left so powerful a general impression, but so little exact recollection in its hearers.² The crusade was also presented as the ideal penance, and it was even seen as a chance for important men who had committed great crimes to atone without public humiliation.³ This last point is somewhat grotesque, but in many different accounts we find the same association of ideas — unnatural internecine strife in the Christian world, the "exile" of this life, the excellence of pilgrimage, penance, and "martyrdom". Propaganda here blended with the theology of crusading which made holy war a superlatively good work. It offered, not the certainty of heaven, but at least a version of the good life attractive to the adventurous.

Does this explain the reception the preaching encountered? Urban's exact degree of emphasis, his shades of meaning, even the weight of emotional content, we cannot assess through sources which are all recollected in tranquillity and inevitably misinterpreted. Still, do the main themes justify the outburst of near-hysteria which those writers who themselves did not go on the crusade describe in such detail? One point we may take literally: when we read in Baldric of Dol that the preaching was passed down from the pope to the bishops and from them to the community, where ultimately every individual became his own preacher, we can see the process of propaganda as at once hierarchic and irre-

1. *De gestis regum*, II, 394-398.

2. Fulcheri Carnotensis Rectoris *Historia Hierosolymitana*, ed. Heinrich Hagenmeyer (Siedburg, 1912), I, I (pp. 119-123). See also volume I of the present work, p. 246, and David C. Munro, "The Speeches of Pope Urban II at Clermont, 1095," *American Historical Review*, XI (1905-1906), 231-242.

3. *Chronica Monasterii Cantuariensis sanctae Petri (Dunelm)* (MGH, SS, VII, 246).

sponsible. Self-incubation explains the broken marriages, shattered families, and desertions from monastic vows that he and Gilbert describe. The joy with which the deserted wives and parents saw their happiness broken is a gauge of hysteria; so are the mass movements—so moving to posterity—of children asking, "Is this Jerusalem?"; so are the general pictures of men of different origins and speech congregating and set in motion like a disturbed ant' nest.¹¹ Albert of Aachen likewise speaks of the deserted towns and castles, the empty fields and husbandless homes.

We need not ask if these accounts are exaggerated; hysterical accounts and accounts of hysteria alike need explanation. It is not clear how far the pope was responsible. Nor can we blame Peter the Hermit, whose story Albert of Aachen particularly emphasizes without explaining it, and who, as reported, seems to be a figure of myth.¹² His complex history of pilgrimages and visions, his appearance as a type of the conventional ascetic, his part in the outward movement of rogues, fanatics, and adventurers who made up the proto-crusades—all this declines finally into his fictional appearance in the *Antioche* and *Jerusalem* poems, libel, cunning, unscrupulously ambitious, idealistic, a sort of apotheosis of the common man. The great lords, their motives equally confused, are nevertheless more easily intelligible.¹³

The effect of propaganda which we do not know at first hand can be judged only from the recollections of those who went on the great pilgrimage. Of these the simplest and most sympathetic to the modern taste are certainly those of the author of the *Geste Francorum*. His opening words speak of a movement of evangelical simplicity: the Lord calls on men to take up the cross—and this is conceived in terms of the gospel instruction, not of later crusading technicalities—and there is a "powerful movement" (*motus valde*) across France. The pope, the hierarchy, and priests start to preach *subtiliter* that those who want to save their souls must undertake the pilgrimage; soon the Gauls have left their homes and set off for the east.¹⁴ This last remark was an understatement, if the other accounts which we have mentioned were

11. Gilbert of Nogent, *Geste Des*, II, 8 (OHC, Occ., IV, 140); Baldric of Dol, *Historia Jerosolimitana*, I, 4 (OHC, Occ., IV, 166).

12. *Historia Hierosolimitana*, I, 3 (OHC, Occ., IV, 172).

13. Richard le Pilieris, *Le Chevalier d'Antioche*, ed. Paulin Paris (Paris, 1846); and ed. Suzanne Dauter-Quere, 2 vols. (Paris, 1976, 1978); *Le Comte de Montfort*, ed. Charles Dujols (Paris, 1846); *Le Chevalier des étangs (pretexté) ou Le Chevalier du Chevalier de Cygne*, ed. Huguette (Paris, 1874-1877); *Assises de Nîmes*, *Les Poésies des premiers croisades* (Paris, 1912).

14. *Geste Francorum*, ed. Louis Bellenger in *Histoire anecdotique de la première croisade* (Paris, 1926), pp. 2-3.

at all accurate. Fulcher is clerical, stressing the consent of Clermont, which the *Gesta* does not even mention, and he is courtly, impressed by the participation of the rich lords.¹⁵

Raymond of Aguilers, also courtly, also clerical, though ordained after he set out, totally ignores the background of the First Crusade, but explains his own story briefly. He concentrates on the events the army experienced, writing consciously to correct misrepresentations by those who did not stick it out. He clearly dissociates himself from the general state of Europe; his notorious partisanship for Peter Bartholomew, the discoverer of the "holy lance", should in no way discredit his witness to army attitudes.¹⁶ Though the writers who themselves took part in the events they described tend to emphasize the crusade itself, rather than its inception, their reactions are entirely consistent with the alleged main lines of Urban's preaching. This is perhaps only to say that the propaganda was clear and was effective.

This is seen most clearly in their pride in being Franks and in their sense of martyrdom when facing death on pilgrimage. These points, whether they dictate or follow the official propaganda, correspond to the two key notions—the appeal to the west, and the call to a better life—reduced to their essentials. They have been modified, and almost suggest an oral tradition distinct from the writers' accounts. In the *Gesta*, martyrdom has an accidental quality which is wholly convincing. If we accept the identification of the author as a knight undistinguished in rank, he represents the presumptive target of the pope's preaching. Did it reach the target? There is a matter-of-factness in the frequent reference to the army, not only as "pilgrims" (which appears to all the accounts), but still more as "receiving martyrdom", almost a euphemism for "being killed"—"many of our men received a happy martyrdom in the course of the siege," "that day more than a thousand of our cavalry and infantry were martyred." (Conversely, Moslems are said to die "body and soul".) The poor who died of hunger were said to be dressed in heaven in martyrs' robes, although they had not died violently. In fact, when the author of the *Gesta* is reflecting, he considers every death of a "pilgrim" a kind of martyrdom, and, when he is not, he refers almost automatically to a battle casualty as a martyrdom.¹⁷ Is this a measure of success in propaganda? The idea implied is that a crusader had put himself in danger and so, if he died as a result, died for Christ; that is, was martyred. Yet this was not ortho-

15. Fulcher, *Continental Europe in the Twelfth Century*, I, 3-4, 6 (pp. 119-120, 122-123).

16. *Historia Francorum, X (OPEC, Ser., III, 253-255).*

17. *Ibid.* *Ibid.*, pp. 10-11, 42-43, 90-91, 108-109, cf. pp. 94-95.

dox, and we must assume that the pope did not teach it; the "martyrdom" of which the *Gesta* speaks is clearly not a theological concept. It is almost folkloric.

Practising good works as a penance was not, of course, a new idea, but as part of crusade theory it developed quickly. The indulgence was a successful experiment in the history of church discipline, and constituted a powerful inducement. In this case official theology had a widespread practical impact; we might even say that popular needs produced a radically new theology. In general, lines of argument were very persistent, but their emotional coloring fluctuated greatly. It was always obvious that the crusading movement responded to moments of crisis in Palestine. Each separate "crusade" was differentiated by its own distinct preaching. A man – or a woman – might go on the pilgrimage at any time, and it was largely the intensity of propaganda that distinguished one "crusade" from another. We think of different crusades often in terms of their leaders, who themselves merely responded, and hence contributed, to a particular movement or wave of propaganda.

It is clear that crusading and "pilgrimage" became a normal part of the political and social scene; we should not underestimate this habit of mind. Eventually it came to be taken for granted, so that there was a diminishing response to successive crises. Bruno of Asti, bishop of Segri, preached the crusade at a council in 1106, in order to revive flagging ardor. In only ten years all the excitement had faded. He was supporting Bohemond I of Antioch, whose own contribution to the propaganda is unclear, but who certainly held not worldly incentives while himself posing as an epic hero.¹⁵ The crusade would for long have a steady appeal to merchant and soldier adventurers for sound economic and psychological reasons, as well as to religious enthusiasts. Its appeal to rulers, and perhaps to the general public, waned and ultimately waned *pari passu* with the evidence for its viability. Yet it is likely that as long as hope of crusading success lasted, it was fortified, even for the most worldly, by the conviction of God's support.

It is clear that Bernard of Clairvaux's characteristic and habitual bluff could not arouse the same enthusiasm for a war against the Arabs as it could for a project at home. His homiletic for the Second Crusade is poorly preserved, perhaps because its recruits did not succeed in the field, but we are by no means ignorant of it. It seems to have been

15. Seege, *His Leadership great again*, ed. Hans Weyant as *Vie de Louis II le Gros* (Paris, 1944), pp. 44-45, 48-50; Orlowski, *Vindicta, Historia ecclesiastica*, XI, 12, ed. and tr. Marjorie Chibnall, VI (Oxford, 1975), 66-71.

dominated by a sense of outrage at physical "pollution" of the holy places and at doctrinal "persecution", as when Moslems (he supposes) say that Jesus was a deceiver because he falsely claimed to be God. This, he believes, must rouse the faithful man to fight and gain glory in victory or profit in death. There is a clear brutality in his approach. Christ is glorified in the death of the Moslem; there must be no entering into treaties with Moslems, either for money or for tribute (such as lordships?) until either their religion or their nation be destroyed. Bernard says that both swords of the faithful must be thrust into the brains of the enemies of God, and by "both swords" he means the temporal and the spiritual; in his imagery he thirsts for blood.¹⁹

In general the Cistercian attitude, represented also by Eugenius III himself and by Godfrey, the bishop of Langres, to whose preaching Odo of Deuil refers, seems to have lent heavily on the loss of Edessa in 1144, basically repeating Urban's "crisis of Christendom" propaganda. It seems that there was an unexpected enthusiasm when Bernard preached in the presence of the king and of some nobles to whom pope Eugenius had sent crosses. The crowds demanded so many more crosses that the preacher had to tear up his own clothes.²⁰ There is certainly nothing new in the substance of Bernard's propaganda, and any new development must be found in the style; there is a grim sensitivity to the danger presumed to result from a Moslem victory, and a holy pleasure in the duty to retaliate.

The persisting themes of crusade propaganda are seen clearly in a letter of archbishop Baldwin of Canterbury to his suffragans in 1185. There was again devolution of propaganda, like authority, from pope to metropolitan, and metropolitan to suffragans, and down through the hierarchy to the soldiers. Recruits were picked up as the message went down the line: Baldwin himself went to the war. The need was pressing: "Because of our sins, the cosmic of the cross of Christ have become so strong that they have tried in their pride and perversion to destroy the Holy Land, the inheritance and patrimony of the Crucified, on which the Lord's feet stood, and in accordance with the complaint of the lamentation of the prophet, 'there is none to support her'." Again he puts it in a phrase: "Thus does our mother Jerusalem call to you." Nothing could better illustrate the pious pilgrim quality, the simple pety toward the earthly scene of the life of Jesus, which still survived in the bitterness of war. In the assimilation of the church

¹⁹ *PL*, 182, cols. 422-423, 524-525.

²⁰ *Odo of Deuil, De peregrinatione Ludovici VII in orientem*, ed. and tr. Virginia G. Berry (CUNEC, 42; New York, 1961), pp. 8-11.

to ancient Israel we recognize another recurrent theme, specifically linking the Old Testament to the crusade, both of them seen as parts of the long history of war between east and west. There is a sincere feeling of outrage and crisis: "The nations come to the inheritance of the Lord and pollute his temple. . . . The tribes of them together say in their heart: 'We will silence the name of Christ on the earth, we will take away his place and nation, come, and in a great multitude we will scatter the small number of Christian people'."¹¹ An attack so conceived would elicit an immediate will to resist; nothing could seem more just, more simply defensive.

It can be argued that when the fruits of a successful aggression are endangered, as when the Frankish colony in Palestine was threatened by Saladin, it arouses more acutely bellicose reactions than the simple instinct of self-defense in the case of an initial attack. Certainly the west was to hold on determinedly to its acquisitions in Palestine for many generations yet, with the ever-delusory hope of restoring a viable state, despite the insistent but effective pressure of the Moslems. The Levantine colony had been a familiar political fact for a century; it was not merely a dream of religious enthusiasts. Side by side, therefore, with the old propaganda, we note an increasing professionalism. This was not confined to the colonists in the east, as any study of the impact of Richard I of England upon the Palestine war must remind us, and the preaching of Baldwin himself illustrates this point.

The *Itinerary through Wales* of Gerald of Wales is an agreeable stream of gossip, which makes it difficult for us to remember that the party was traveling to preach the Third Crusade in terms suited to a desperate crisis. We may attribute this contrast to the personality of Gerald, but he was not alone, and a closer look at the preaching — such mention as this receives — shows how the new conventional appeal of the crusade reached certain types of men in particular, among whom we can include the archbishop, but not the writer. Gerald's brief references show the effect of propaganda on one who saw no reason to apply it to himself. Other writers, too, even the chroniclers of the period, reflect only an afterglow of the old inspiration. Gerald is entirely businesslike: "About three thousand men were signed with the cross" in the course of this Welsh propaganda campaign, "well skilled in the use of arrows and lances, and versed in military matters; impatient to attack the enemies of the faith; profitably and happily engaged for the service of Christ, if the expedition of the holy cross had been forwarded with an alacrity equal to the diligence and devotion with which the

forces were collected." Gerald criticizes the authorities for failing to make good use of the recruits they were offered; all the same, he considers that a recruiting job has been well done, and he certainly describes a professional army in good morale.

It is different when he goes on to speak of Baldwin's arrival at Acre. The archbishop had been among the first to take the cross, "having heard of the insults offered to our Savior and his holy cross". As Gerald puts it, Baldwin, arrived in Palestine, found the troops attacked as well as attacking, "dispirited by the defection of the princes, and thrown into a state of desolation and despair", tormented by lack of supplies and by hunger, sick from the climate; the archbishop could only relieve them by charity, and set an example of a good death. We can deduce that by this time the familiar theme of "insults to the Savior" would appeal only to the ascetic and unworldly, such as Baldwin. Crusading should be managed like any other business operation. The attitude of the troops in the field was apathetic, and their affairs were ill-managed. There is now a cold assessment of a practical proposition, perhaps in Baldwin's mind as well as in Gerald's. The crusade, still seen as a good work, was also now a logical job, to be done properly.²²

We can study the professionalism of the preaching itself in a number of documents of this period and of the succeeding century. First we may take the *brevis oratio de predicatione sancte crucis facienda*, attributed to Philip of Oxford and dated to about 1216. What immediately strikes us is the persistence of the theme of the crusade as a way (or seen the best way) of the Christian life, conceived, of course, as a pilgrimage. There is a series of short theological arguments, scholastic in method, expressly intended for amplification in the pulpit, to exemplify the need for suffering in this life.

It is only at the very end that we come to passages which take actual crusading situations into account — pieces of propaganda, but at least in a relevant setting — and at the same time suggest some emotional and rhetorical persuasion, with a reiterated *cum ergo* and *ergo*. Even these passages look as if they have been chosen at random, but for that reason they are more likely to belong to the preacher's personal repertory. They still lack pithy application. Of three knights, brothers, fighting the Albigensians, two fear to die, but the third says (in the vernacular) that a day's penance (that is, death in battle) is a cheap

²² Caroline Cusack (Oxford of Wales, *Attorney-General*, II, 22-24, cf. James E. Gieseler (Roth's Series, 21-97), pp. 146-252.

way to God. A captured knight is suspended from the wall of a besieged place; his friends stop bombarding it for fear of hitting him; he tells them to go on hurling stones, and the stones cut the rope that holds him; he falls and escapes – moral, do not lack faith. A knight wounded four times thinks of Christ's five wounds and goes again into the battle, to die of his fifth. Another knight tells his horse, which has often carried him into battle, that this is the first time it has carried him into eternal life. Lastly, another knight says to French: "A horseman would sooner lose the use of his feet than his head."²² These stories are so unconvincing because they are meant only as bare reminders to the preacher. This is the end of our text, and clearly is meant to lead to the taking of the cross by the listeners around him. It is difficult to judge the quality of rhetoric that reaches us so incomplete. It is possible to believe that what does not seem particularly apposite or forceful to us seemed so once. It is not possible to believe that so much theology appealed to the soldiers, and much of it must be a clerical exercise. The essential note is that the crusade was a normal component of Christian life. The way of the cross was a way of suffering; there is no mention here, as in Bernard, of the suffering inflicted.

A much more comprehensive example of homiletic method is given by Humbert of Romans, which combines a number of currents. Important for any study of legal theory of the crusade, his *Tractatus solemnis de predicatione*²³ is important also as propaganda. It has all the virtues of systematic scholasticism; it is clear and inclusive, if not exhaustive. It begins by explaining to the preacher how he will find the matter he needs in this book, how the well-informed will be able to complete their information, and how the emotive preacher who lacks rational matter will find it. The preacher is advised to undertake periodic calls, "invitations", to his hearers, followed by hymn-singing – *Veni Sancte Spiritus*, *Veritas Regis*, and such. Humbert's sermons are direct and emotional, at once varied and repetitive, their appeal obvious. He emphasizes the "history of Islamic aggression", the story of the rise and expansion of Islam, in much the terms that Malmerbury had attributed to Urban; other writers had used more or less the same passage, for example, Joachim of Flora.²⁴ We have seen that the

²² *Quem deus deus scripturas minores*, ed. Bernhard Kikvidze (CML, SFL 11-3, Geneva, 1879).

²³ *Tractatus solemnis de predicatione* (Hamburg?, 1486) (Bibliotheca sacra), "Invitationes" cap. 1.

²⁴ *Ibid.*, caps. 1-3 (last page), 4, 10, 18 ff. There are 18 pages of holy wars, 8 of Old Testament times. Joachim, *Expositio in Apocalypsim* (Münich, 1537), fol. 163^v. Cf. William of Malmerbury, *De prelia regum*, II, 394.

general theme still had a very wide appeal. From this Humbert passes on to a warm condemnation of unjust war, and to a scholastic definition of the just war with an emotional content that we can only term propaganda; thus, unjust war attacks the innocents, but the crusade attacks guilty men, the Saracens; the argument continues in the same vein throughout. The stress on the "guilt" of Moslems was bound to encourage savage methods of war. The picture of Saracen aggression and Christian just resistance constitutes the *theme constant* of the whole work of preaching the crusade; it picks up from Urban not only the historical argument, but also the idea that the holy war is substituted for unholy, unchristian, irresponsible war.

Humbert returns often to the history of the Moslem onslaught on the world, sometimes with a new emphasis; thus Saracens are worse than Jews, who procured the crucifixion and would not believe in the Crucified, but who did not bear arms against the worshippers of the cross; the Romans were responsible for the crucifixion, but turned to adoring the cross and did much to subjugate the world to the Crucified; but the Moslems, although they agree with the Christians in so much belief, reject the mystery of the cross, and have conquered much of the world—Asia, Africa, and even Europe as far as parts of Gaul, as we see in the history of Charles (the Great). The European aggression, which looking back from the twentieth century we see as a swing of the pendulum, is here presented as divine vindication of true religion; success vindicates and failure does not vitiate it, from Constantine, *in hoc signo*, by way of Charlemagne and Turpin to Godfrey of Bouillon and the capture of Jerusalem, and the continuing conflict thereafter. He stresses the many "martyred" Christians and the "innumerable Moslems they killed" in the glorious climax of the capture of Jerusalem in the First Crusade.

Humbert recommends to the preacher that the different kinds of crusade service should be seen in a practical, even worldly order, and should be raised before the public in that order. Service of the body—military service—comes first; next, service by property (*de propriis rebus*); the preacher is warned to take particular care over gifts; third comes verbal, or spiritual service, as by prayer. The debt that man owes to his body is explained by scholastic theological reasons, one of which is illustrated by practical terms apposite to the supposed audience: it is owed *inquam in feudum*. We are astonished that there were not more such applications of theology to situations which the ultimate audience of these appeals might be expected to experience. Prayer for the army of the faithful is commended primarily as a useful aid toward victory. The preacher is advised to pass direct, after each aggres-

sive passage, into an exhortation to take up the cross and follow Christ, to become a "pilgrim of the Crucified". No-doubt it was well-calculated propaganda that stressed the immediate dignity of taking the cross; although this was a public penance for public sins, as Humbert says, it was also an immediate and no doubt gratifying drama with quasi-liturgical significance. It is in this connection that the preacher is recommended to bring up the theocratic idea: the church confer the cross because the church by right wields both the material and the spiritual sword. Humbert has earlier said that the evil crusader is like the bad thief whose cross does not lead to heaven. For any papalist, the example of Frederick II contrasted with that set by Louis IX. Ecclesiastical leadership was the essence of the crusading idea, and this propaganda is here for the church, narrowly conceived, rather than for Christendom in the more general sense of *populus Dei*: it was for the papacy against secular authority.

This theme is not wholly devoid of appeal to the non-churchman, or at least to the less powerful. Humbert proceeds directly to contrast the Lord who demands willing service with those lords who compel their men to follow them. Constantly Humbert reverts to the mystique of the holy war of the past, and adds to it the mystique of the Holy Land. The pitey of Moslems in their own pilgrimage – the *hajj* misunderstood, supposed to be to the tomb of Mohammed the Prophet, and yet recognized as an enviable devotion – is seen as a spur to Christians whose devotion should equal and then exceed it. The major problems of theology are taken in the preacher's stride. How could God allow the rise of Mohammed? This is answered scholastically. First, it brings about a "manifestation of the faithful of Christ", as when we recognize loyal knights by their fighting strongly for the king; second, there is "good exercise": God does not want idle followers. Third, "ease of salvation": crusading gives unequalled opportunities to save one's soul.²⁸ All these arguments are systematized.

Humbert's *Opus tripartitum* summarized the more important points of the *De predicatore* (as he rates them): the seven motives for fighting – zeal for the divine name, and for the Christian religion, love for one's brethren, devotion to the Holy Land, the spiritual advantages of war, the example set by the ancients, and the graces granted by the church (indulgences and the like). The *Opus tripartitum*, Humbert's work in preparation for the Second Council of Lyons in 1274, will be considered again later. Here we should note the motives for not crusading which the *Opus* summarizes from the *De predicatore*: the seduction

²⁸ *De predicatore*, cap. 3; *Quarta sententia*, caps. 4, 5, 6, opening of cap. 6, cap. 9, 14, 15.

of sin, excessive fear of bodily suffering, the bad advice of men, the bad example of others, excessive love of one's own country, excessive love of one's own people, a pretended inability (on grounds of weakness, or lack of means, or unfinished business), or, finally, deficiency of faith.

A final list is of the qualities necessary for a preacher of the crusader sanctuary of life (to be worthy of his subject), the signs of penance (unfitting that he who lacks these should all day invite others to the cross and death), the assumption of the cross (to do what he recommends others to do, lest he be like the scribes and pharisees), discretion in action (the calculation of great transactions in taxation, absolutions, and dispensations requires absolute exactness), a careful solicitude (to preach effectively), a circumspect judgment (since there are so many doubtful questions involved in the business), the offerings of prayers (necessary in the least of matters, the more so in great ones), a moderate zeal (because excess of zeal has very questionable results), and, lastly, the necessary knowledge of what relates to the business.²⁷ (This was Humbert's special contribution, the provision of homiletic material; his lack of originality did not save him from the vanity of authorship). As in all contemporary scholastic writing, more is packed into Humbert's work than we can do justice to. It is interesting for its inclusion of so much of the crusade propaganda that had preceded it, and for the scholastic bias which it gives to this familiar material. There are long lists of suitable biblical texts, many of them not immediately relevant to the theme. It is not easy to believe that the scholastic approach made effective propaganda for purposes of recruitment.

To sum up, there are certainly differences of emphasis between the propaganda associated with Urban II and that of a hundred years and more later; we must explain them changes not only in the crusading scene, but in the recruiting as well. The themes that are constant are the misery and unfulness of this life, and the long story of holy war, from Moses and Joshua and David, through the Maccabees and, oddly, the Acts of the Apostles, to Constantine and Charlemagne, Urban and Godfrey, a sacred history perpetually renewed, for example by Louis IX. The history of Arab expansion was told in parallel, perhaps an essay in justifying the new European aggression. Urban was starting a new enterprise, and it is at least certain that his preaching was emotive. So was Bernard's. In later treatises (*De predicatione*) the periodic

²⁷ *Opus tripertitum in Appendicis ad Iussulorum rerum expeditionem et sepulchrum ad Edward Bruns (London, 1880), II, 145 ff., and De predicatione, esp. 34.*

hymn-singing and calls to arms provided emotional interludes in what must often have seemed dry matter. By this time a wide background of anti-Islamic polemic had created assumptions which must be understood to underlie everything that was said.

B. *The Polemic Framework*

The regular sequence of homiletic themes was supported by a set of ideas sometimes clearly stated, sometimes only hinted at. These ideas delineated the enemy as repulsive; they constituted a body of learned and popular lore which identified the Arab and Moslem world as hostile, dangerous, and harmful. Such an identification was obviously conducive to a condition of protracted warfare, and most of all if this were presented as a "just war", of which holy war is in fact the prototype.

The theme of the Arab attack upon "Asia, Africa, and parts of Europe" was supported by current accounts of the life of the Prophet Mohammed and the rise of Islam. Behind these lie accusations that violence is an essential part of the religion of Islam, which seemed no inconsistency to crusaders employed in religious violence. Also behind the propaganda for the crusade as an ascetic way of life lies a theory that Islam reverses Christian moral concepts (particularly sexual). These are the main constituents of the "Christian version" of what Islam was, and it proved so powerful a body of ideas as to survive even into our own time.²² These ideas sealed off the mental world of Islam, really so close to the Christian, and effectively prevented contact, except in certain limited fields of immediate utility to Europe. Roughly, the development of these ideas coincides with the period of the crusades, but it is possible to write the history of either with very little reference to the other. We should not see the polemic as a crude and deliberate effort of propaganda called into being by the crusading need. Still less can we simply consider the crusades as the product of

22. Richard W. Southern, *Western Views of Islam in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge, Mass., 1942); Norman Daniel, *Islam and the West* (Edinburgh, 1964); Guy Monod de Villard, *Le Sufisme de l'Inde en Europe au XII^e et au XIII^e siècles* (Vaux-sur-Seine, 1944), is not that brilliant scholar's best work. Correct by reference to Marie T. Châleup, "Deux Traductions," below (note 10), and her "Notes de Dattala, traducteur d'Ibn Tilmart," *AN-Annuaire*, XVI (1951), 99-140, 219-231, and XVII (1952), 1-26, with Georges Vajda, also see *La Connaissance de l'Islam en Occident au XII^e au milieu du XIII^e siècle* (Spoleto, 1963); but see Ekkehard Rössler, *Abendland und Sultansland* (Berlin and New York, 1966).

these ideas; more plausibly, we may recognize the two as jointly representative of a common impulse, but even that is an incomplete analysis. We have to see the European concept of Islam throughout the relevant period as conditioned by all the contemporary movements of thought, of which it was itself an active constituent.

The content of anti-Islamic polemic remained largely unchanged in its main lines from its first appearance in the west in the ninth century, in Spain,²⁹ where it derived from the resentment of Christian minorities submerged in an sea of Moslem rule. The form and expression of the polemic, however, developed *pari passu* with the methods of theological, philosophical, and historical thinking of succeeding centuries. Writers struggled with sheer ingenuity to retain their inherited ideas in the face of increasing experience of Islam as it actually was.³⁰ This complex of notions should be seen as one compartment, a rather small and unobtrusive one, in the whole developing structure of European thought. Once that has been said, the importance of these ideas as propaganda can be seen more clearly. The Christian misconception of Islam was fitted into the main body of knowledge and opinion in which European society found expression, in such a way as to typify the enemy as the converse of the ideal Christian society—not, of course, actual Christian society. In this way propaganda springs naturally out of the whole attitude of European society; it did not depend on any single ephemeral intellectual fashion.

This attitude to Islam was largely pseudo-historical in character; there was also a great deal of theological analysis, but it was pegged to the "history", tied directly to the sermonizing about Arab aggression, seizure of the Holy Land, and so on. It is equally true to say that the "history" was created to justify the theology. The mental process (not, of course, the ostensible argument) seems to have been this: Christianity is a religion of love, Islam is opposed to Christianity, therefore Islam is the religion of cruelty, therefore Mohammed was cruel and claimed divine justification for it, as suitable circumstances arose. A parallel process begins from the proposition that Christianity is a reli-

29. See the collection of documents dealing with the career of St. Eulogius, archbishop of Toledo, in PL, III, cols. 745 E., esp. *Libro apologetico martyrum*, cols. 159-165 of M. C. Díaz y Díaz, "Los textos autobiográficos más antiguos en idioma castellano," in *Archivos de historia documental e historia de la literatura*, XXXVII (1938), 149-161. Hermann F. Haug, *Europa después: Teatro geográfico-histórico de la iglesia de España*, vol. XI (Madrid, 1918), Parte 5, *Antigüa* in *Historia de España*, ed. Sánchez (Léipzig, 1903), pp. 54-66. See also Edward F. Cohen, *The Martyrs of Cordoba* (Washington, 1962); Javier Waks, "Significance of the Voluntary Martyr," *The Moslem World*, IX (1919), 340-379; Daniel, *Arabic and Medieval Europe*, 2nd ed. (London and Beirut, 1960), chap. 2.

30. Daniel, *Islam and the West*, pp. 129-170.

gion of chastity. This process is again repeated with the idea "truth" ("therefore Islam is the religion of deception"), and so on. The polemic technique, of course, is the exact converse of the mental process. It starts with the "history" of the revelation of Islam as a deception (as "unchaste", as "violent"), and works back.

Misrepresentations of the life of Mohammed and the rise of Islam fall into three classes. The first group of ideas is so fantastic that we are reduced to guessing what the sources were, and we are even uncertain that there was any source in reality at all. The early poems about Mohammed (Embrico, Walter, du Poit), and tales repeated in a large number of accounts by otherwise serious writers about the circumstances of his life and death, are both absurd and brutal, at once offensive and fantastic. The idea of a dove or bull trained to impersonate a heavenly messenger may derive respectively from Christian symbolism and Jewish superstition of the golden calf. The origin of the stories about Mohammed's death may be some dim awareness of the "apostasy of the Arabs" at the death of the Prophet; more likely, there was a deliberate effort to contrast with Jesus. Several accounts say that Mohammed foretold that he would rise on the third day; of course this is all invention. Another example of the image of Islam as a "false Christianity" is a widespread and persistent belief that the pilgrimage — the existence of which was very generally known — was to the tomb of the Prophet. There was some knowledge of the Ka'bah and of the relative importance of Mecca and Medina, but this was rare and incomplete at best. This type of attack is important only in that it occurred frequently and was an unrestrained expression of hate.²¹

The second group of misrepresentations is almost as far from reality. This revolves around a wicked Christian monk who, in a con-

21. *Exhibition of Madras, Histoire de Mahomet* (PE, 171, vols. 1245 ff., where it is attributed to Hâleket of La Meuse), critical edition by Guy Coudin as *Illustration de l'Almagest, La vie de Mahomet* (Geneva, 1911); Walter of Châtillon, in de Mâle, *about below* and ed. R. B. C. Haggen in *Sacris eruditio*, VIII (1958), 287-328, *Oris de Mahomet*, repr. 1977 (see note 57, below); *Alexandre du Poit, Histoire de Mahomet*, ed. Joseph Y. Bromberg and Françoise Michel (Paris, 1931), new critical edition by Lapage (see note 57, below). Legends are mentioned, for example, in Cardinal Cusa's *De principiis instructionis*, ed. George F. Warner (Ealla Series, 21-VIII), p. 69 ff. Alonso Ciruela, all versions; Vincent of Beauvais, *Speculum historiale*, XXIII, 28-42 (Paris, 1629); Jacques de Voragine, *Légende aurea*, ed. Theodor Graesse (Dresden and Leipzig, 1846), c. 4833, *De sancto Pelagio*; Gerson also *Edificium du Mire*, *Pléiade* (présentée par le docteur de l'université de Paris, 1847); Alexander d'Ancora, "La Légende de Mahomet en Occident," *Giornale storico della letteratura italiana*, XIII (1897), 197-201; Augustin Haug, *Par le Studio della leggenda di Mahomet in Occidente* (Rome, 1917); Vladimir Zaslavskii (Charles Pellat), "La Légende de Mahomet au moyen-âge," *En Revue d'islam*, III (1943). See also I. Sigismund Oller and G. Levi della Vida, "Das Verhältniss Islam zu Paganismus nach dem von Serge Balout," *Mittheilungen archäologischer und ästhetischer*, LXII (1958), 122-148.

stantly repeated story occurring in many contexts and a number of versions, is the evil genius of a "Mohammed" conceived as rather simple. At its most absurd the Prophet himself is a rebellious cardinal of the Roman church. In every case this man contrives the content of the revelation. The source of this legend was probably the Arabic story—also legendary—of the monk Bahura, who recognized the future prophet in the young Mohammed. Christian legend distorted him into the evil genius—monk, heresiarch, cardinal—called Nicholas, or, more often, Sergius, who taught or trained a false prophet, and to the medievists the Arabic Bahura legend was a half-admission of the truth of their own absurd story; the original was not Bahura, but the bad, mad monk of their invention.³² It is fatally easy to read any original as the perversion of its own perversion, and both versions were legendary.

Then, thirdly, we come to deal with arguments which represent the subtlest kind of deformation—unfair exaggeration and misinterpretation of admitted facts, rather than wild invention. In this category we have the more accurate accounts of the life of Mohammed, where the Arabic and Moslem sources are obvious and reasonably close. Here every divergence between Moslem and Christian sources is taken as a Moslem deviation, and so as evidence of ill intent. The guiding influence was the *Risâlah* of the pseudonymous al-Kindî, a tenth-century work of oriental Christian polemic against Islam which purports simply to apply the moral criteria of Christian faith to the known facts of Mohammed's life.³³ This manages to twist a plain story into a *chronique scandaleuse*, using the technique of the gossip column and giving a free rein to malice. Nevertheless, the material it used, or abused, was authentic, and it was enormously influential, constantly copied in summarized form in the Middle Ages; it determined the main lines of Christian attitudes almost into modern times, and has been naturally and bitterly resented by Moslems. In our own days, Christians have had to put up with similar treatment by disbelievers in Christ, and the motive of the critic in the one case, as in the other, is likely to be merely to register dissent from the religion so treated, with propagandist intent. Some of the Christian writers concerned were familiar

32. For details see *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, vol. 1 (Leyden, 1908), s.v., and rev. ed. (Leyden, 1960), s.v.

33. The full version of the pseudo-al-Kindî, is *Peut-être l'islam*, ed. J. Mabius y Sanjaan in *Al-Madrasa Cordobesa XI-XII* (1940); more accessible in MS. (non version, Paris, Arsenal, 1162) abridged version in Brillouin, *Mohammed—Alcoran* (Paris, 1753). For the Christian sources see James Kritschky, *Peter the Hermit and Islam* (Princeton, 1944) and d'Alverny, "Deux ex-dactyles issues du Coran," in *Archives d'histoire doctrinale et littéraire du moyen-âge*, XVI (1945-1948), 48-132; also *Patres Monachalis Scholae de Islam*, ed., fr., and comit., Reinhold Cini (Altenbourg, 1905); later in Kritschky, *Opus*, and PL, 189, cols. 659-730.

with unreproachably authentic Moslem sources, with a biographer like Ibn-Ishāq, and the traditionalists al-Bukhārī and Muslim.³⁴ It is difficult to decide whether the deformation of the truth was deliberate, but certainly it was done in order to justify the Christian inheritance of allegations about Mohammed. As more accurate information gradually became available, it tended to drive the more absurd accusations out of circulation, at any rate in learned circles, but where a fact resembled a slander it was regarded as confirming it, not as correcting it. In the case of Peter Pascual, this was a conscious argument. By setting out the two stories one after the other, he reckoned to show the priority of the "Christian" version.³⁵ This is the same process we have already noted, but here it is seen at its most deliberate.

Except that venom gave emotional force to hatred of Moslems, the attacks on Mohammed are really preliminary to the attacks upon the religion that he preached. We have seen that the polemic technique was to invent (or select) a story about Mohammed in order to link to it some aspect of moral teaching in which Islam and Christianity allegedly differ. The attack on Moslem teaching does not seem at any time to have been related to the perception of actual Islamic practice. We can trace written Arabic sources; we can never trace, nor would our texts by themselves allow us to suspect, that direct experience of Moslem life which we know that many Christians in fact had. This may be why the polemic was related so specifically to the original revelation and its historical circumstances; the distant past was beyond the reach of the historical techniques available. No common ground for argument was recognized, although, of course, it existed in abundance. Both Moslems and Christians accepted that everything must stand or fall by the Koran, but most Christians used only Robert of Ketton's inaccurate paraphrase, and no text or interpretation was accepted in common.

This is a situation obviously favorable to the manufacture of propa-

³⁴ Particularly the quadruplex reproductions (perhaps by Raymond Març) in MS. (see David, *idem*, p. 397) and printed as *Arabicis Galensis de origine Mohammedi* (Constantin, 1590), but see J. Hernandez Delgado, "Le 'De Seta Mohammedi' de Richard Març," in *Notes de chrétiens du midi* (Toulouse, 1903); and Peter Pascual, *Solus de seta mahometana*, in *idem*, ed. P. Armand Gollwitzer (Geneva, 1905-1906); but see also Remond of Monte Crois, a work variously known as *Disputationes Confutatio*, or *Arsenalium*, but more properly as *Liberius contra the infidelis saracenicorum*, but in Jean-Marie Hengren, "L'Œuvre d'un être pieux", in *Monastère dominicain*, t. 2, XV (11) (Paris, 1900); and William of Tripoli, *De seta Saracenicorum*, in Hans Foltz, *Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Berlin, 1882; repr. Darmstadt, 1964), appendix 4, pp. 375-398.

³⁵ Pascual, *Solus* . . . *mahometana*, I, 4, 28, and I, 2, *passim*.

ganda, and it is here that it is most clearly demonstrated that men see what they determine to see. Just as in matters of moral discipline Christians interpreted the divergences of Moslem law from Christian as license — without comparison of the actual permitted practice of the two societies — so even more unfairly they assessed the Koran in ways they would never have dared to use, or dreamed of using, to assess the Bible. For example, it was attacked as disordered, as though any prophecy could read like a scholastic treatise. Several of the Old Testament prophets read more strangely, but the point, of course, was that it was assumed that the Koran could not be the eternal word of God, and must therefore be treated as, and shown to be, an imitation. This is why Christian, and to a lesser extent Jewish, influence on Mohammed was supposed to be so important. Only in our own century have Christians begun to recognize originality in the Koran.

Most modern non-Moslem scholars have assumed, from the fact of Jewish relations with the early Moslem community, that there was a formative Jewish influence on the Koran, much more important than the more distant Christian influence. Medieval Christians took the opposite position. Whether they arrived at the theology from their historical error, or derived their history from an error in theological analysis, they conceived Islam with its positive Christology to be in the intellectual sense, if not the legal, a Christian heresy, and so they came naturally to credit the notion of there having been a Christian source of Moslem revelation. If Islam be conceived as a development from Judaism, it must, for a Christian, seem an improvement, but when it is viewed as a heresy, it must seem, not an approximation to Christianity, but a sad falling away. Even today Moslems are often hurt that Christianity does not award Islam the honorable place that Islam awards to Christianity, but in fact Islam awards Jesus honor, and Christians only toleration. This explains the vilification of Mohammed, who, for Moslems, is the bearer of the word of God, the Koran, as Mary is the bearer of the word in the Christian faith (and Mary is heartily praised in the Koran). This was precisely the trouble for western writers, who could regard praise of Jesus, expressed in terms of doctrinal deviation, only as "sneering the lip of the cup with booty, and after with deadly poison",²⁶ an offense against that strict orthodoxy which was a medieval preoccupation. Christians in Europe were not interested in toleration and were not grateful for the toleration of Christians in the Arab world; not to acknowledge the Christian right to rule was itself, in medieval eyes, to persecute Christianity.

26. Kretsch, *Peter the Hermitic*, p. 206.

Thus the Islamic revelation was rejected *in toto*, an ever-continuing cause of war, perpetually renewed.

The relationship between this quasi-historical, quasi-theological polemic and the state of war comes out clearly if we examine one of its most classical expressions, the summary of his own more lengthy polemic with which Riccoldo of Monte Croce ends his *Liber peregrinationis* (to Baghdad).³⁷ This attack immediately follows one of the most glowing testimonies to the practice of virtue by Moslems that the Middle Ages produced, and we should bear this in mind when we study Riccoldo's confused attacks on the "confusion" of Islam. In these passages he says that Islam, *lex saracenorum*—religion was always conceived as a law, the rules for obeying God—is *large, confusa, occulta, mendacissima, irrationabilis, et violenta*. At least three of these adjectives describe his own analysis. Thus, under *large*, he argues that the philosophers, and above all Christ, say that the way is narrow; how then can the witness, "there is no god but God and Mohammed is his messenger", have saving power? Anyway (he goes on) such a proposition is self-evident of anything, as for example, "there is no horse . . .". Riccoldo's absurd position here is, of course, capable of being demonstrated most clearly in a language that does not lack the article: to say "there is no horse but a horse" or "the horse" immediately shows the fallacy in the argument. Under *confusa* he complains that nothing in the Koran is stated under clear headings, like scholastic categories presumably; can he have persuaded himself that it is so in the Bible, in either the New Testament or the Old? He exemplifies "confusion" from the Koran, with the complaint that in it, when God forbids something, he adds, "if you do it, God is compassionate and merciful and knows that you are weak." Does forgiveness imply inconsistency? Few today would accept this as fair criticism, and, as there is talk of confusion, we note that this point would have been appropriate, if anywhere, as *laxty*, under the heading *large*.

Under *occulta* Riccoldo attacks dishonest means supposedly used by Moslems to circumvent the laws against adultery and usury; it would be easy enough to make similar criticisms of canonical evasions in the Catholic church. Under *mendacissima* he attacks chiefly passages in the Koran that are inconsistent with the text of the Bible. The first point to which Riccoldo objects as *irrationabilis* is the law of triple divorce; if an objection is to be made, it would again seem more appropriate

³⁷ In *Peregrinationes sancti et aliorum*, ed. E. C. M. Lavren (Leipzig, 1840), pp. 125 ff., an *Itinerarium*, based on a paper manuscript, that should be corrected by MG. Berlin Staatsbibliothek lat. 4° 148 entitled *Liber peregrinationis* and corrected by the author himself San Eusebio Pavia, *Peritipografia*, in *Monasterio diossitorio*, n.s., XVII (1880).

under the heading *large*. He claims that learned Moslems denied the Koran in secret; it is hardly credible that this is asserted at first hand, and his sources are probably the Jacobites and Nestorians with whom he was for a time friendly. Under the same heading he goes on to explain that Islam claims to correct our biblical stories, which, if he were as logical as he claims, he would have put with his attacks on the truth of the Koran (*mensongeisme*) because of its inconsistency, in detail, with the Bible. Under *violence* he stresses that it is "most certain" that Islam will last only as long as the victory of the sword lasts. This brings him back to the life of Mohammed, and thence he wanders into subjects other than violence. Lastly, he claims that the Moslems are easily convinced and confused in debate;²⁸ to this improbable claim we shall return.

Why is this attack on the unmethodical so unmethodical? It is difficult to suggest a reason, beyond the intellectual agitation induced by the subject. The fact is that Riccoldo objects to most things that he attributes to Islam, under all the epithets he lists. His perpetual inconsistencies are in fact characteristic of his approach, which can never use one single standard to judge the two religions, but which sees the same thing in Islam as a fault and in Christianity as innocent. This side of his work resembles the worst propaganda. With its considerable apparatus of learning, it pretends to show "rationally", as was said then, or "scientifically", as we should say today, that Islam is in every respect the opposite of, and so an unremitting threat to, the entire Christian structure. He typifies this polemic literature by his refusal to recognize anything good or true in the teaching of Islam (even the praise of Jesus and Mary is grudged), and in its vilification of Mohammed and his religion interchangeably. His total rejection of Moslem religion reflects in the intellectual sphere the total war that was the usual papal policy for the world. What makes this truly poignant is the contrast with Riccoldo's very honest praise of the virtues and even the religious practice of the learned Moslems he encountered. He sometimes even exaggerates these, in order to condemn Christian faults, but his account seems truthful.

Much more questionable is his unambiguous claim to have debated theology successfully with Moslems.²⁹ It is self-evident that Moslems could not have accepted many of his arguments as even relevant, since much that he says is a misinterpretation of an Islamic position. For

²⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 132-142; cf. also the more argument of the *Libellus contra sectam* (note 34 above).

²⁹ Riccoldo, "Lettere da Gerusalemme al Monte Sion," *AOI*, II-3 (1914), 268, n. 11.

example, he makes great play with the blessing, "may God pray for Mohammed". He takes this literally and so attacks its theology. No Moslem would ever accept that the Arabic idiom here could actually bear the sense in which Rucoldo attacks it; therefore Rucoldo knew it only in written form and had never discussed it with Moslems.⁴⁰ More to the point, a public debate which involved blasphemy against the Koran (considered the uncreated word of God) and crudely sacrilegious and scurrilous attacks on Mohammed could lead only to "voluntary martyrdom" on the Cordova model, as in one case which survives in detail, of a Franciscan who mistook bad history for faith, and in a number of others known to us in more or less detail.⁴¹ Much is pathetic in this impersonal cultural arrogance. The story of Raymond Lull, who deliberately angered Moslem mobs by attacking Mohammed, and whom the North African authorities twice saved from himself, illustrates the best that might happen in such circumstances.⁴² Surviving accounts of debates between Jews and Christians show that each side dreamed its own fantasies of success.⁴³ An anecdote of William of Rubruck suggests the inconclusive nature of such discussions in neutral surroundings.⁴⁴ The belief that what a man himself finds so convincing must convince the world reminds us of the delusion that right must prevail in battle.

How was anti-Islamic polemic in the crusading period linked with the crusade? The polemic is not contemporaneous with active crusading. Naturally, it coincides with a relationship, sometimes close, sometimes distant, between Moslems and Christians, and so it coincides very generally with *jihad*. As long as the two religions existed side by side they experienced a magnetic repulsion which first took a bitter form on the Christian side, as that time materially the inferior and losing side. All the existing material – much of it, we may confidently speculate, in the form of unbroken oral tradition – was used widely and actively from the time of the First Crusade onward. Propaganda thus developed became conventional. For example, Innocent III in the course of a bull

40 *Libellus contra sectam*, cap. 9, in Marquart, *op. cit.*, pp. 196–197, Esch 209–214, and Böhreke, "Latines," *AOZ*, 71–2, 266.

41 *JOCP*, II, 61, 66–67, 111 ff., 143 ff.; IV, 396–398, and V, 282 ff. For Cordova see references in note 26, above.

42 Edgar A. Peters, *Raymond Lull: a Biography* (London, 1929). See the discussion of Lull in Benjamin Z. Kedar, *Crusade and Islam* (Princeton, 1964), pp. 168–170.

43 Daniel, *Israel*, p. 184, and *idem*, as "Supplement."

44 *Œuvre française*, vol. I, *Œuvre et relations d'ambassade d'Alphonse de Liguori XIII et XIV*, ed. Amédée van der Wyngaert (Quaracchi, 1929), *Le Question de l'islamisme musulman*, cap. xxxv, 22 ff., 277; English translation in Christopher Dawson, *The Islamic Mission* (London and New York, 1955), p. 194.

which is simultaneously a recruiting exhortation, a legal pronouncement of indulgence (as all such documents were), and a declaration of an intention to undertake war, summarizes the usual polemic against Mohammed in a few phrases.⁴²

The crusades gave a sense of historical importance to those who took part in them, and they aroused interest in Islam which would otherwise have lain dormant. The most informed polemic came from Spain, from areas where Christians had gained possession. In that sense it is an achievement of the reconquest, and neither a cause nor a consequence of the crusades proper, but material originating in Palestine agreed with what came from Spain, although as information it was inferior in quality. We cannot really divide the European inheritance in this respect. There is no doubt that this polemic served both to fill out and to support the purely recruiting themes with which we began this study.

C. Lay Attitudes

We can sum up all this polemic propaganda as designed to show that the Moslems were and had always been implacable enemies, proponents of a form of religion devised to supplant and destroy Christianity. There was (in theory) no possibility of reconciliation. Moreover, every possible legal step was taken to cut Christians off from Moslems, whether in territory under Christian rule, or in territory under Moslem rule. The authorship of most of the propaganda, and all the intellectual propaganda, was clerical. Of course, the clergy was not a homogeneous body; it covered a vast range of different degrees of power, interests, skills, abilities, and cultural levels. The more intelligent propaganda (however perverse) was the work of clerics of a higher order of ability and learning and spontaneous interest in the idea of "Christendom". There was certainly a sense of solidarity among Christians, but this was so rarely put to the test that we cannot say how far it existed outside the range of the theorists of Christendom. Crusading was an essential part of the papal, theological, and canonical movement, almost as much so as the Gregorian reform which had immediately preceded it, or the investiture controversy which coincided

⁴² *Alfonso Tassinari, Bullarium diplomatum et protodiplomatum officii (Rome, 1827-1872), Universi III, III, 373 (no. 82).*

with its early stages; the notion of Christendom which it both presupposed and reinforced was taken up by the scholastics. "Although the abandonment of Christendom to the Moslems must greatly touch all Christians," said Humbert, "it touches the clerical and properly estate more, for it is they who see more clearly . . . because of their greater gift of intellect; and it concerns them more, because of the responsibility they have for Christendom."⁴⁵

This idea of Christendom was much later than the idea of Islam. Islam was conceived as a negation set up against the church, but in one sense the opposite is true. The idea of Christendom, as at the time understood, was largely set up by the polemicists who attacked the Moslems; indeed, their "Christendom" extended in practice no further beyond the Latin west than western rule, including rule over oriental Christians considered as unreliable allies. With this theoretic picture, which is not just clerical, but papalist and scholastic, the actual interests and practice of laymen did not always coincide, and the effect of the propaganda upon them is not always discernible. The laymen, whether lords, merchants, or poor men, with the clerics dependent on them, had their own likes and dislikes, and to some extent their own propaganda.

Those who had to deal with Moslems in practice found it quite easy to treat them as human beings; the natural fact is no doubt why it seemed necessary to the canonists to set up great barriers between Moslems and Christians living beside each other in countries under Moslem or under Christian rule. Travelers, merchants, and all whose profession was not deliberately to provoke Moslems to anger, found that they got on with them well enough, and sometimes even very well, when not prevented by suspicion on both sides, arising mostly from the perpetual hostilities. The intention of the crusade propagandists was naturally to prevent this and to represent Moslems as impossible to deal with. Some of the polemic writers for knightly consumption, however, even when written by clerics, at least those dependent on aristocratic patronage, was much less analytic.

We saw above that, before the crusades proper, discussion of war against Moslems lacked real hostility. The chronicles of the capture of Sicily, though committed to a church interest, show themselves more interested in personal stories (even of Arabs) and in the sequence of events, than in any attitude toward Moslems as such. In Spain, in the *Cantar del Cid*, there is absolutely no hostility to Islam at all. The Moslem gentleman (I use the word deliberately; it is his noble charac-

ter that matters) who is manipulated by the Cid serves him loyally, admittedly much as the "lackeys of imperialism" have been and to serve their masters in our own time, but quite acceptably when judged by the standards of chivalry. The villains of the poem are Christians: it speaks for a new aristocracy against an old one, and its leading ideas are honor and booty and luck. It is far from the thought of the crusade. The Moors figure sometimes as noble enemies, but more often as the victims of the Cid's frank brigandage, and, whatever the victims felt about it, the Cid and his companions exploited them without malice.⁴⁷ At least during the period of the *arxas*, slaves and singing and dancing girls were evidently amenities of a common culture; when the other side won, the daughter of the house might become her conqueror's singing girl, if he preferred her to her ransom. Similarly, we cannot speak of crusading hatred where Arab vassals helped, as was the style of the day, to educate the sons of their Christian overlords.⁴⁸ Not indifference to religion, but a phase of confessional indifference, of often callous toleration, seems at first to have accompanied a Christian victory. Susceptibility to the clerical propaganda which exploited the more malicious Moorish traditions (while suppressing Moorish culture) came later, and the earlier lay attitude left no permanent mark.

Did propaganda follow, rather than precede, the crusade also in the case of the *chansons de geste*, which at first sight looks more different from that of the *Cantar del Cid* than it does on analysis? Certainly they represent something more permanent in the European imagination, an unreal but perennially popular convention that, throughout the four centuries that it survived in active form, imparted steady entertainment rather like the Wild West stories of the nineteenth century or the science fiction of the twentieth. Whether or not these poems were often based on monastic records, as Bédier has argued, most of them were meant to appeal to knightly listeners and all who admired chivalry.⁴⁹ Noble birth is important in all the literature. When the French king buys a fine Arab slave-boy, he watches him — "Demandat mei si ere de hals gent", and when he learns that he is indeed noble, with powerful parents, treats him well. When count William is able to throw off the disguise in which he has penetrated into Arab Nîmes, and been

⁴⁷ Monodier Pélal, ed., *Cantar de este Cid*, esp. verses 125-128, 132, 25-26.

⁴⁸ Reinhart P. A. Dozy, *Recherches sur l'histoire et le costume de l'Espagne pendant le moyen-âge*, 3rd ed. (Paris and Leyden, 1881); Monodier Pélal, *La Espagne del Cid*, 3rd rev. ed. (Madrid, 1907), and cf. his *Problemas arábicos y poéticos de España* (Madrid, 1940); Korman, *Los Descendidos del Sarraceno en Francia* (Paris, 1839); Dozy, *Arabs and Medieval Europe*, chaps. 4 and see also note 42, below.

⁴⁹ Joseph Bédier, *Les Légendes épiques*, 3rd ed. (4 vols., Paris, 1906-1928), cf. Jean Ryckover, *Le Chanson de Geste* (Geneva, 1955).

treated contemptuously as a merchant or peasant, he calls out: "Telon paisen, toz vos confonde Deus! / Tant m'avez lui escharni et gabé / Et marcheanz et vilain apelé; / Ce ne sul mie marcheanz. . ." Both sides understand this clearly. For an Arab knight, as for a Frank, "baseness" is as bad a fate as death: "a vostre volenté / Volentiers m'i rendra, se jou ai seürté / Que jou n'i soie ocs et mesés a vilé." The daughters (or wives) of the rulers or amirs, the ladies who change sides and marry the Christian heroes in so many of the poems, are all noble; they may change their religion, but they cannot, of course, change their class. "Birth" was necessary for any love-making: "deus poezies de moi haut parcoité"; so was wealth: "Achetanz fu ses oncle, qui ot grant richeté" – four castles and as many cities. The fathers (or husbands) command large estates, even empires. An obvious example of a general trend is *Roland's* roll-call of the enemy, king and kings' sons and dukes, besides the "amurric" and "almurac"; in its careful statements of properties, *Climborin* owns half Saragossa, *Valdabron* is lord of four hundred galleys.¹⁰

Roland, perhaps the earliest and best, certainly the best-known of the poems, is also among the most bellicose – Turpin at least seems to be an authentic crusader, though a crusading attitude is strictly confined to him; and yet in *Roland*, almost more than in any other poem, the Arab world is presented as a close analogue of European society. In most of the poems, Saracens are not only recognized as "barons", but are made out themselves to discriminate between Christians in point of birth and conduct. King Galafré in the *Couronnement de Louis* offers William of Orange fiefs and honors because of his birth – "Car tes lignages est moit de haïe gent" – and of his prowess – "De tes proïces ot parler souvent". The poems assume that chess and backgammon, like love-making, are common to the two worlds; but sometimes also sup-

10. *Le Chevalier de Geoffroi*, ed. Francis McMillan (2 vols., Paris, 1949-1950), lines 3337; *Renaud's* royal Saracens submit to some baptism, *Chevalier de Geoffroi*, before 101, *Alcorin, chanson de geste*, ed. F. Gressard and Antoine de Montaignon (Paris, 1870), lines 4104-4117, 4196-4210; also ed. E. Weyssbeck, W. Hartmann, and F. Koch (Heidelberg, 1933); *Le Renard Loquax*, ed. Monique Bournet (Oxford, 1975), lines 2947 and 3028; also ed. J. Bannenberg (Heidelberg, 1913); *Le Minstrel Renaud*, MSS. Autant 4262 fol. 147 and BL. MS. Turpin 38120A fol. 181 col. 2; cf. E. Renenberg, *Études sur la Geste Renaud* (Heidelberg, 1897), p. 47, *Le Chevalier de Nivern*, ed. Joseph L. Perrier (Paris, 1916); repr. 1973, lines 1368-1369, *Le Chevalier des quatre fils Aymon*, ed. Ferdinand Caumont (Montpellier, 1949), lines 3994-3998, *Le Siège de Barbastro*, ed. Perrier (Paris, 1926), lines 1088, 1089; *Le Chevalier de Roland*, ed. Bédier (Paris, 1917), often reprinted), lines 1526-1527 and 1582-1584, and generally lines 85-125; *Isorin, roman, etc.*, are cited cursorily in all the editions. See also *Les Rimes de la Chanson de Roland*, ed. René Marou, Vol. 1: *Le Verset d'Alcorin* (Paris, 1949). On the language see Bédier, "La Composition de la chanson de Roland," *Revue*, XVII (1886), pp. 46-49, and cf. Ellen Ross Woods, *Age of Romance: a Study of Genre and Society* (Cambridge, 1974), chaps. 2 and 3.

post that feasting with wine is too.⁵¹ This mistake is best considered as the product, not so much of ignorance, as of indifference to facts, combined with a set purpose to regard the Arab world as just like home. We meet more and more gallant Saracens until with the passage of time an imaginary Arab world merges with an almost equally unreal Christian one. The son of the sultan and the countess of Poitiers, admittedly brought up as a Christian, was "preudom et boins chevaliers et hardis et cortois et larges et debonnares et ne mor orgellous", surely a summary of chivalric ideals. His sister remained in Egypt, "grew in very great beauty", and married a valiant Turk, and their grandson was "Salhadin, qui tant estoit cortois prince que nul plus".⁵² So in the end the most chivalrous of all was a Moslem. There is plenty of generalized abuse of "pagans", but, as in the *Cantar del Cid*, the only villains were Christians – in the *chansons*, they are defectors, a Ganelon, an Ysaak, a Macaire.⁵³ This was not peace propaganda; it took the war for granted, and treated it like a very dangerous sport; but it was not crusade propaganda either.

The mass of the internal evidence indicates that this literature was meant simply to entertain. What we usually regard as the lowest and silliest point that propaganda reaches, the absurd theology of Mahom, Tervagan, Apollin, and the rest of the idols, can equally well be taken

51 *Chansons de Roland* e.g., *lais 39* and *lais 1644, 1646, 1172, 1637-1638, Le Comencement de Louis*, ed. Ernst Langlois (Paris, 1921), *lais 179-180*; also ed. Yves G. Lezage, *Les Abolitions en vers du Comencement de Louis* (Geneva, 1978). Love scenes common. *Le Sige de Barbesre*, *lais 13* f., *Le Priu d'Orange*, ed. Claude Niquet (Paris, 1972), *lais 1, 5, 15, 13*, note "ne ge son si la dame et le ois" (*lais 166*), central episode in *Roland à Saragasse* (14th century), ed. Marie L. G. Baquet (Paris, 1956); *Amours d'Agrement*, ed. Caumont, *Revue des langues romanes*, LXCVI (1892), *lais 1328-1404*, where incest is evoked, the queen, a captured Christian, is the hero's aunt; *Le Chansons d'Agrement*, ed. Louis Brault (Paris, 1924), repr. 1970, *lais 2613-2655*, where the love scenes were priggishly then plainly; *Roland de Mandach*, *Notionnes et développement de la chanson de geste en Europe*, III and IV, *Chansons d'Alsace* (Geneva, 1977 and 1980), cross-referenced in Brault's edition, *Age d'Orpierre*, ed. François Guissard and Paul Meyer (Paris, 1861), *lais 1716-1769* and 4091-4095, Christian borderer will not, Moslem hero will, change religion. New edition, ed. S. J. Berg, *Age d'Orpierre: chansons de geste anciennes* (Geneva, 1967); ed. Janet B. McCormack, *Chansons de Normandie* (Geneva and Paris, 1978). *Chansons de Godefroy*, *chansons de geste*, ed. F. Guissard and Polycarpe Chabault (Paris, 1892), *lais 1792* and other examples; in *Gut de Harcourt*, ed. Alfred Everé (Paris, 1923), *lais 1*, there has a brief but essential part in the plot, *lais 1969-1986*, and see note 62. *Wien la Sirene de Poetrie*, ed. Jeanne Barois (Geneva, 1962), *lais 1480*; *Gangre*, *lais 1732*, etc.

52 *La Fille de Comte de Poitiers*, ed. Clémence Brault (Paris, 1926), *lais* (pp. 756-758), *lais* (pp. 760-762); *Saladin*, ed. Larry S. Crist (Paris: Librairie Imprimerie, 185; Geneva, 1972), I, 22, 25, cf. *lais*, 28, and explicitly; cf. *Bouton du Gabbén*, *L'Incomparable Châliens* with *L'Ordre de Chevaliers*, ed. George F. Plant (Florence, 1832); examples of strictly fictional Arab scenes in *Agrement*, *lais 2961, 3022, 3029*, etc.

53 In *Roland et Assaut de Carthage* (*Assaut von Karthago*), ed. Johannes B. Alton (Tübingen, 1892), in *Aiol*, *chansons de geste*, ed. Jacques Hymond and Gaston Raynaud (Paris, 1877)

as evidence of a deliberate triviality. The number of different idols seems to increase with the passage of time, and then to tail off again, but this attitude does not correlate with any other observable change in the attitude to Islam. Sometimes the idols play more part in the story, but as far as we can tell only for the sake of the plot. Have we been guilty of anachronisms and of condescensions, assuming that the poets were ignorant and small-minded, when the fault lay in our own ability to interpret? The system of idols is effectively confined to this one body of literature; I do not take much account of sparse references in chronicles to idols in mosques, which may have been thoughtless reflections of the literature. It is possible for two communities to live side by side and largely in ignorance of each other, but even the most ingenious explanation of the origins of the names of the idols does not tell us why anyone wanted in the first place to invent the system of idols at all.

The poets probably thought of Islam as somehow a continuation of the religious system of ancient Rome, and of that they knew nothing save the names of some gods. The question remains, why elaborate so complex a system? If we reply, propaganda, why an attractive system of jeweled splendor? Above all, why reject the official propaganda system? The authors may have been ignorant of Moderna, but not, surely, of what other Christians knew and thought. It is not just that they ignore what the academic polemicists and theologians were saying, but, with very few exceptions in so vast a literature, they ignore the abusive folklore of Mohammed which penetrated everywhere else. To me it seems likely that they chose and knowingly adhered to a certain convention which suited the story they wanted to tell and which in fact largely determined the plot, and that they deliberately decided to take not the slightest notice of what the preachers were saying. It is possible to argue that these poems, far from being war propaganda, constitute a rejection of serious propaganda, made possible, while avoiding any suggestion of crypto-heresy, by adopting an absurd convention, but one unfavorable to Islam. In *Arabel*, king Maršile will not desert Mohammed to save his life, out of contempt for how Christians practise their religion.³⁴ The poet speaks neutrally, almost ambiguously. These poems rarely come so near to satire as this, but all remain isolated from official propaganda.

Y. and C. Pellat very acutely established the absolute division among three types of polemic against Islam. One is true polemic, academic

34. *Arabel*, lines 11463-11528. This episode appears in a form both more clearly satirical and more clerical in the *parvus-Turpin* 13, "Ne admettas quo arabis in convitia" See Hans Iwan M. Seyer, *The Parvus-Turpin* (Cambridge, Mass., 1933), and C. Morellet Jouve, *Revue Carolingienne* (Paris, 1936).

"pure and applied" theology: either direct crusade propaganda, or its theoretic foundation. Another is the legendary, "folkloric" life of Mohammed. The third is the idolatry convention of the *chansons de geste* and related romances.⁵⁵ This division is absolute in the sense that the three categories are logically distinct. In practice they overlap, but in different ways. The legends very occasionally wander into the *chansons*, where they seem odd and out of place, but they strongly influence the academics, who were always hoping that something in the "Christian" version of events would turn out to be true, or could be made to such. As we have seen, the legends have a distant relation to the facts as we know them from Islamic sources, sometimes so distant as to require clairvoyance to recognize, but still a relation.

We have already considered the importance of the legends in polemic, but not their character as a literary genre. One of the earliest western writers on Islam, Guilbert of Nogent, calls the legends *plebeia opinio*, which we can reasonably translate as "folklore", and he tells us that he has not seen them written down. He seems not to vouch for anything that he repeats, but, after making a rather crude joke, he precludes from it, and adds that it is not true, as some people think, that Mohammed claimed to be God. As who think? This can hardly refer to the *chansons de geste*, because a manipulated idol is not a man claiming to be God; nor is it one of the usual legends, nor does Guilbert refer to it as such.⁵⁶ It may just be that a comparison with Christ is at the back of every Christian's mind, but this text does emphasize how amorphous, how protean, and sometimes untraceable this material is, penetrating sermons, chronicles, and collections, wherever the anecdotal form is appropriate. Embrico in his *Vita Mahometi* puts it to propagandistic use maliciously and tendentiously, but Walter of Compiègne, in his *Œis de Mehemete*, is more ironic, as Cambré and Lapeyre point out, and Alexandre de Pons's paraphrase elaborates a bosky, feudal background.⁵⁷ Legends might be used to stir up crusading sentiment, but might just as likely be repeated solely to divert.

55. T. and C. Pollat, "L'Idée de Dieu chez les 'Sarrasins' des chansons de geste," *Studia Islamica*, XXII (1963), 3-42; cf. C. Pollat, "Mahomet, Derwagan, Agellus," *Actes del primer congrés de estudios árabes* (Madrid, 1964); Henri Grégoire, "Des Dîmes Calais, Sarrazin, Derwagan . . ." *Annuaire de l'école de philologie et d'histoire orientales et slaves*, VII (1878-1880) 431-472, and "L'Épique de Derwagan (Derwagan)," in *Mélanges d'histoire du cheikh agferré à Constant Célus* (Paris, 1928, 67-74); also René Basset, "Mahomet et Mahomet," *Journ. des savants*, n.s., 1 (July 1903), 389-412.

56. Guilbert of Nogent, *Gesta Dei per Francos*, I, 3 (MGH. *Occ.*, IV, 127-128); see above, note 31.

57. Cambré, "Quand Guilbert de Compiègne compare les Œis de Mehemete?" *Lexis*,

The legends vary greatly, but they have in common, as I have shown, some relation to facts, however perverted, and some polemic purpose, however frivolous. *Bahur-Sargis* in its first form is Moslem, in its latest (cardinal) purely west European. Disgusting tales of pigs and dogs and drunkenness seem gratuitous, but probably relate to Moslem religious teaching. The magnetic tomb was picked up from Hellenistic legend, but it is a backhanded compliment to the impact of Mohammed on the European imagination that it came to be associated with him in particular.²⁴ Even here there is a distant authenticity in that it tended to be believed because the importance of the *hajj* was dimly apprehended. Such stories, mixed with the more authentic if equally perverted tales of the pseudo-Kindi and others, reached everywhere — except the *chansons de geste*. This can only be because the *chansons* could not repeat the legends and at the same time also maintain the system of idols which is fundamental to their only serious purpose — as we shall now see — itself interwoven with the fabric of pure entertainment.

The legends were perversions of fact, but the idols were pure fantasy, although the Arab society in which the poets imagined them was made to resemble the European even more closely than it really did. It is clear that the legends can only be propaganda, or its consequence, but the motivation of the *chansons* is less obvious. A clue is in the recurring references to Arab wealth, though they are never as frank as the *Canter del Cid* about booty. Some of the most striking descriptions of the idols gleaming in gold and precious stones are in the *Chanson d'Antioche* ("Tous fu d'or et d'argent, moult luiz et reflamble") and the *Conquête de Jérusalem*, where the royal pavilion is lighted "De l'or qui i talust, des perres de cristal". We might blame the vulgar sensuality of the ribald *Taïfurs*, but we first find the theme in *Roland*, and the grandest accounts come in poems of the later twelfth and the thirteenth centuries devoted to chivalry. The recurrent scene of the smashing of idols is a hardly disguised scene of loot. Wealth is emphasized in other ways. A Christian is offered great wealth to become a Moslem. The Moslem country is rich, as some contemporary travelers said,

XVII (1598), 331-332; cf. his "Les Sources de la Vie de Mahomet d'Enfance de Mayence," *Lettres*, XX (1601), 364-386, and "Enfance de Mayence (1597-1577) ou il l'enfance de la Vie de Mahomet?" *Lettres*, XVI (1577), 468-479 (the *Enfance* of this date is questioned by Souleire, *Ministre Vieux et Jeune*, p. 38 note). See also Yves G. Lepage, *Le Roman de Mahomet de Aïme au-delà de Paris* (1254) avec le texte des Chans de Mahomet de Gautier de Compiègne, edited par R. B. C. Higgins (Paris, 1977).

²⁴ More references at note 20 above. For the tomb see Chastel, "Les Sources," *Lettres*, XX (1601), 373-377, and Lepage, *Le Roman de Mahomet*, pp. 46-50.

and there is an idea that Moslems claim that, though God may rule in heaven, "Mahom" rules that world and makes the vegetation grow — recollections of a fertility cult?¹⁹

In the *chansons de geste* it is success that is important, in war especially, and is even a great moral and religious issue. Love is important, but it is interwoven with the war interest. Women, for the vulgar, are booty — "Ne doi pas estre a vos garçons livrés" — but the knight, too, who wins the sultan's daughter gains by marriage a title to his new estates that lends legality to conquest. Even Orable, surely no mere sex object, holds the hereditary title to Orange. Moslem countries were for plunder, and success was the judgment of God evinced through ordeal by battle; we must believe in the God who helps us, "En tel Dieu dont on croit, qui se gont volt aidier."²⁰ In real life, Christians

¹⁹ *Chansons d'Antioche*, ed. Paris, v, 41, line 1082; ed. Dupont-Guillet, line 4178 (variant); *Chansons de Jérusalem*, ed. Hippaux, vii, 12, and 440; *Chansons de Roland*, ed. Bédier, line 3482. Examples (by no means exhaustive) from other poems: *Les Exploits d'Algeron*, ed. Pauline Henry (Paris, 1932), lines 1213-1238, Hippaux, ed. Yves A. Isenhardt (Louvain, 1942), xxx lines 723-728; *Guinege*, ed. Guarnier, line 8735; *Apres de Narbonne*, ed. Louis Dumoulin (Paris, 1887), lines 1234-1235; *Fierabras*, ed. Auguste Krehl and Gustave Servais (Paris, 1888), lines 3131-3134, where the idea is brought into the narrative and developed in one passage another fuller version in *Chansons d'Agremon*, ed. Bragadis, leads up to a distribution of books for among the knights, lines 182-188, especially lines 3458-3478. Still more elaborate, in *Sirens de Penelle*, ed. Barthele, the manipulation is driven out of the title one after the other (lines 64-67). There is a good example in the same poem of riches offered as a reward for conversion to Islam: "Drop is, and woe it riches-donot. / Drop gart) demerced a med in it's per". *ibid.*, lines 1461-1462; cf. *Apr d'Algeron*, ed. Guarnier, lines 1646-1647. Again, many more examples might be cited, though conversion to Christianity was also rewarded materially. Many examples also exist of Moslem wealth, some apart, e.g., *Le Chevalier Fier*, ed. Antoine L. Tardieu (Paris, 1912): "A Cordeus s'es riche vers Damasus," where are "Arabes, riches plus ostensibles", lines 90, 92. Others, e.g., *Comet of Jerusalem* in Arnold of Lübeck, *Chansons de Jérusalem* (Munich, 18, 192), 233-244; *Renaude, Ismermes*, in *Pemprison*, a fragment of Laurent, and Barthele, "Lettre," *ADM*, 31-3, 371-376; Simon Terevants, in *ADM* (II), *Acrode de Monas* (Libre pemprison), ed. Barthele, *ADM*, III (1897), Moslem riches: examples in Barthele, line 1046; *Couronnement de Louis*, and 899; *Guinege*, lines 1761, 1771-1772, *Chansons de Guinege* line 2116; *Chansons de Chevalier de Cygne*, line 4666; *Algeron*, ed. Guarnier and Montclair, lines 1416-1417; and *Pier d'Orange*, line 673; cf. Y. and C. Pellis, "L'Idée de Dieu".

²⁰ *Version* *Chansons d'Agremon*, and 1890; cf. *Chansons d'Antioche*, vi, 35, line 981, "Des helles Damascenes nos fait les d'el", Dupont-Guillet, and 4413. Age, in the spontaneous poem, is stated of this (lines 779-728) but even by Queen Silver we's *riches* were no doubt safe enough), but distinguished ladies captured and marry Moslem lords in these poems, e.g., *Chansons d'Agremon*, lines 3320-3434, and the capture of Frederick's daughter (*Le Fils*, vi, 358-362) another version in *Le Roman de Rouman de Salomon*, ed. L. Napoléon Boas (Valenciennes, 1845), art. 437-438, "Le d'el de Poirais qui Jans crocist / Poir l'arose d'Esarant" God *Conquere de Jerusalem*, vi, 18, line 3381. For the "god" who fails see the Rouman (p. 18), *ADM*, Arnold 1842 and 1844, manuscript, Rouman-est-Nor, 182. The association of the barons with the estate is never even clearly put lines in Arnold of Gerage, lines 26-27 (the estate is all Spain). Rouman: daughter of Charlemagne in *Orad*, ed. F. Guarnier and Henri Michaux (Paris, 1838), reveals the hero's conversion with her hand and huge estates, but this way round it runs. Orable in *Pier d'Orange*, and 1408, makes her family mean in Orange clear.

did not apostatize en masse at a Moslem victory; during the period of the *chansons*, only the Levant was an area of military failure, but defeat there brought a theological problem of Providence which troubled the theologians themselves. In fiction alone could Christians be sure of winning in the end, and the basis of all the plots is providential victory; the different classes of poems—the light adventure (such as *Prise d'Orange*), the serious individual adventure (*Simon de Pouille*), the two-laden war (*Alamant*), and the magic fantasy (*Huon de Bordeaux*)—all share this characteristic. It is here that the convention of idolatry proves its worth as literature. The thing is put to the test. The sultan or amirant or king vows offerings to the gods, but in the event they let him down. A scene in which the idols are destroyed is popular; triumph over the idols is the true climax of many poems, rather than the battle itself, which leads up to it, or the baptism of the best Saracens, which often follows. Can we call this propaganda? It is not even its effect, because the system of testing idolatry by ordeal is quite independent, in matter, of clerical arguments or legendary polemic; it is unlike them because it is a reflection of actual war against Moslems, and in origin a spontaneous reaction. It extrapolates some facts of war and sets them in fantasy. If this is propaganda, it is in a very subtle sense. The poems are like *Portant pour la Syrie* or *Tipperary*, but are much more elaborate, and they never stop being entertaining as well as encouraging.⁴¹

There was some overlap of interests between poets and clerics, chiefly in the rewriting of history. An obscure skirmish in the Pyrenees, the Arab invasions of southern France, the sacking of the Roman subalbs, these, treated episodically or as epic, were set in a new perspective, dramatized and romanticized. The poets created an imaginary world with a complex history of its own (not unlike strange worlds in some mid-twentieth-century fictional sagas) in which not the events of history, but the impact that they made, is remembered.⁴² If the history

41 *Prise d'Orange, Simon de Pouille, and Alamant; Huon de Bordeaux*, ed. F. Gignouard and Charles L. de Grandmaison (Paris, 1880; image changed by Charbonneau on pp. 70-71, but the whole plot—including Oberon—is magic. Usually the poem arrives the fighting to p. Charbonneau's *Supplément*), the most serious the religious conflict between poets, but without bitterness between insightfully opponents. For other general views consult William W. Coulbert, "The Literary Role of the Saracens in the French Epic," *Modern Language Association of American Publications*, 17 (1902), 428-437; Jean Froppier, *Les Chansons de geste de cycle Guillaume d'Orange* (Paris 1902 and 1903); C. Morellet Jones, "The Carolingian Saracens of the Song of Roland," *Speculum*, NYO (1902), 261-226.

42 For the creation of southern France, especially the *Guillaume* cycle, but *Conquêtement de Louis Jolys Fierolles* and *La Destruction de Rome*, ed. Gaston Goulet, *Annuaire*, 11 (1876), as outstanding for the Roman legend, adding *Ramond de Peire Justicier*, *La Chevalerie Ogier de Danversville*, ed. Joseph Barrois (Paris, 1842). Attacks delivered or threatened against Paris,

in *Roland* is absurd, the Christianized Spain of the sequel, *Anseïs de Carthage*, is more so, and yet quite logical—and in its way, of course, prophetic. That fantasy of Frankish exhibitionism, the *Voyage de Charlemagne en Orient*, takes us through a nonexistent country inhabited by Turks and Persians to Byzantium; as a tourist, Charles visits Jerusalem, where there seem to be no Moslems, so he promises the patriarch to fight them in Spain. At the same time, clerics accepted the victories of poetry as fact. According to Robert of Rheims, Urban thought that Charlemagne and Louis had "destroyed the kingdom of the pagans [Turks]". Where? In the east? Or in Spain? Later, Christian Jerusalem, in *Simon de Pouille*, is embattled against Babylon (Mesopotamia, not Egyptian Babylon), in the same general pattern, again under Charlemagne. The second crusade cycle rewrote later history as it "ought" to have been, with the conquest of Arabia, and especially Mecca, with the crossing of the Red Sea into Fairyland, now the Sudan. We do not have to suppose that anyone was deceived, or any deceit intended; these were fancies, not meant to persuade anyone to fight, though they may sometimes have had that effect; they were meant in fun.⁴³

The poems encouraged people to fight in another way also inconsistent with the official propaganda. Prowess is on the whole a Pelagian virtue. Christians in the poems are defeated only because outnumbered, had are victorious only against odds, without miraculous

possibly a confusion of Anseïs with Vikings (cf. *Garnant et Anseïs*, ed. Alphonse Dupont (Paris, 1921), lines 4732: "à Charlemagne, en son conseil"; for the false history of Spain cf. *Chet de Bourgogne*, ed. Guarnier and Michéaux (Paris, 1888); *Chanson de Roland*, and *Anseïs de Carthage*, and see *Barlet. L'épique*, III, *Minotaur*, esp. II, in general see *Barlet*, *ibid.*, *passim*; Marc Sireh, *La Société Normande* (Paris, 1939-1940), part 2, chap. 8; *Reinard, Iwanstien*, Göttingen, 1896; *Histoire poétique de Charlemagne* (Paris, 1847); Léon Gautier, *Les épopées françaises* (Paris, 1878-1894); Paul Aublet, *Reinardus and Oltramar* (Göttingen, 1867); Delgado, op. cit., Philippe Sraus, *Proverbes et proverbes normands* (Paris, 1902) (with good bibliography); and the Introduction to some of the critical editions of individual poems.

⁴⁴ *Le Voyage de Charlemagne à Jérusalem et à Constantinople*, ed. Aublet (Göttingen, 1867); Robert of Rheims, I, 1 (JRPC, *Occ.*, III, 728); *Simon de Pouille*, Second crusade cycle; *Le Roman de Beuclien*, ed. Robert F. Cook (Göttingen, 1912), combines a number of elements that have appeared in earlier poems, but with some originality. The reputation of Baldwin and Isaacson (it is hardly more) is closer than the usual "pagan usurper" story to the presumed prototype in *Ordre de Vinet*, op. cit., X, and still, the union guarantees the heroism, who loses his life (on marriage) on Laila, daughter of the Ascalon and faithful lover of Corambis; earlier, he kills his cousin with a dismember. The absurd "conquest of Mecca" is concerned only by the proximity of Saladin as villain. The magnetic south legend and the triumph over Mahum occur in the same episode. The strange interior of Fairyland caps the odyssey of which, however, the most interesting part is now over in an old form (Gautier II-III, 185-188, 102, 103, 107-108). See also *Le Filz, Chanson de Chevalier en Cygne*, and *Reinard de Salomon*, Gaston Cook and Cris, *Le Douzième cycle de la croisade (Publications romanes et bretonnes, CXX)*, Göttingen, 1902).

intervention. The authors seem to forget that victory is supposed to vindicate God, not their heroes' prowess, and this essential point tends to disappear from sight also in the case of the almost endless individual combats that the listeners seem to have loved. Adventure is a constant theme, perhaps increasingly important. The early-thirteenth-century romance *L'Escheval* (by Jean Renart) is introduced by a war against the Saracens which, though only an episode, amounts to about one seventh of the whole. Two major episodes in the career of Guy of Warwick (early mid-century) are in the service of the emperor of Constantinople against the sultan of Turkey, and in the service of king Trimor of Alexandria against the giant Amoraant. How could propaganda against Islam for its sexuality and violence appeal to a public that wanted to hear of violence in endless detail, varied only by episodes of love? Of course crusaders were deep in "sexuality" and "violence" from the beginning, and the secular literature suggests nothing much else. The troubadours are stylish and worldly, and when they went crusading, their motives were not more than moderately pious. A poem of Marcabru's (mid-twelfth-century) makes interesting use of the crusading theme.⁶⁴ A girl whose lover has gone to the holy war complains to Jesus that through him her sorrow grows, for the Saracen attack on him is her ruin. "The best of all the world go to serve you," she says, but the motive hardly reflects the preaching; it is not the cross, but duty — in the form of honor — and adventure that attract the men from home. We may suspect that church invective against Moslem lust was directed against the Christian laity in the first place, and that invective against Moslem violence was sometimes aimed at professionals for whom any war would do as well as a crusade.

The impact of events on professionals tends to bear this out. Most of the propaganda in the English chronicles of Richard I is directed against his European enemies, in relation to Arabs, the only obvious concern is for his reputation — the justification of his killing the prisoners, his renunciation of the pilgrimage, his personal standing with Saladin.⁶⁵ The courtly chivalry who followed him must have conceived the

64. *Poèmes complètes des troubadours Occidentaux*, ed. J. M. L. Delmas (Toulouse, 1928) pp. 106-109; Jean Renart, *L'Escheval*, ed. Franklin P. Sisson (Geneva, 1914), lines 1-1323 (out of 5172); *Chet de Warwick*, lines 100 ff., 1020 ff., *Brer de Hureweine*, lines 1346 ff., in *Der arthurromanische Belle de Hureweine*, ed. Alfred Stimming (Halle, 1899). English versions include *The Romance of Guy of Warwick*, ed. Julius Zupitka (London, 1871-1876 and 1882-1883); *The Romance of Sir Brer of Hureweine*, ed. Eugen Köffing (London, 1863-1894); and the full collection of *Charltonian romances* (JETS, 22, XXXIV-XLI, XLII, XLV, L).

65. E.g., *Itinerarium . . . regis Ricardi*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, 18-22, pp. 427-431, Richard of Devizes, *Chronicon*, ed. John T. Appleby (London, 1862), pp. 74-75, and the usual sources for the Third Crusade.

heroes of the *chansons* in his image. The troubadour Gaucelm Faidit, a townsman who had gambled his fortune away, wrote, probably in sincere sorrow at the death of a patron, that "Saracens, Turks, Pagans, and Persians" feared Richard more than anyone born of a mother; it was unlikely that after his death any prince could recover the Sepulcher – "Huet mais non al esperansa que i an / Reys ni princeps que cobrar lo saubes"; and similarly William Marshal said that the king's unexpected death prevented Richard from gaining "the lordship of Saracens and Christians and all the men of the world". In his own way as professional as Richard, Frederick II was successful in a crusade which was unacceptable to the papacy because it was not under papal leadership, nor informed by hatred of Islam. The propaganda had become integral to the crusade itself for papalists.⁴⁴

The theme of success or failure was naturally perennial in "real life". The Second Crusade was an anticlimax. While the Latin states were still untouched, William of Tyre was oppressed by a sense of their failure. The accidental death of Frederick I at the outset of the Third Crusade seemed a wanton disaster at the hands of inscrutable Providence.⁴⁵ The Damietta crusade of 1218–1221 seemed for a brief moment to promise success. The structure of the army, directed by the legate Pelagius, as unqualified by experience as he was unsuited by temperament, parodied the structure of Christendom; and from the total failure of that crusade, after its momentary vision of an Islam destroyed, date prophecies of the end of Islam which were popular with all classes, right up to the fall of Acre, a prophetic myth that parallels the historical myth of Charlemagne. This was the self-propaganda of the whole community, giving itself to fantasy as there was less and less solid food to feed on. Yet in the recollections of Philip of Novara, who spent much of his life in the coastal remnant of the Latin states, there is no hint of danger and no whiff of crusade.⁴⁶ The threads are very tangled.

From the canons, repeated and reinforced, from instructions to confessors, from the tirades of an indignant polemicist, it is clear that neither law nor propaganda could stop Christians from mixing with

44. See *le mort de Richard* in Jean Audouin, *Nouvelle anthologie des troubadours* (Paris, 1932), p. 217; *canon* 41, *canon* 46–47; *Histoire de Guillaume le Maréchal*, ed. Meyer (Paris, 1881), *lines* 11823–11828. For Frederick II see volume II of the present work, chapter XII.

45. See Housley, *ibidem*, note 79 and cf. Karamich, *note* 89; William of Tyre, *Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis gestarum*, XXI, 7, and XXIII, *passim* (RAC, Dec. 1, 104–107, 1052).

46. *Quelques brèves notes scripturaires canoniques* (SCN., 52, II, 214–226); cf. volume II of the present work, chapter XI; Philip of Novara, *Mémoires 1288–1294*, ed. Charles Estlin (Paris, 1882) *passim* 1979.

Moslems in the trading cities of the Arabs in the Mediterranean area.⁶⁹ That the evidence is negative is a success of the propaganda; we have no personal records of consuls or merchants of the period. We know more about good relations from Moslem than from Christian sources; Usamah Ibn-Munqidh and Ibn-Jubair are obvious examples. Louis IX was the church's perfect crusader, but his devoted biographer, Joinville, is surprisingly little influenced by the official line and is a rare European witness to an attitude unsympathetic to Louis: he took the Arabs as he found them.⁷⁰

If propaganda does indeed reflect as much as create the feelings of the society that produces it, it will be subject to different distortions in different sections of the community. Louis's failure was associated with the "crusade" of the Pastoureaux, an antieretical usurpation which disseminated the idea that the clergy had betrayed the king and the crusade; the rich in their turn formed the idea that the revolt had itself been fomented by the Arabs. Both fantasies exemplify the natural recoil of official propaganda; the hysteria induced by a Peter the Hermit or a Fulk of Neuilly, or as the Children's Crusade, could easily degenerate into wild suspicions. Fourner's Inquisition suspected the lepers of conspiring with Arab monarchs, so that sober churchmen too were capable of paranoia under communal pressure.⁷¹ The church wanted an official war in due feudal order, but its dogmatic and pastoral theology had no appeal for feudal leaders, except Louis. They stopped crusading except where it looked profitable. More precisely, they required feasible projects and, in terms of modern business, we can classify some fourteenth-century theories (which we shall consider shortly) as feasibility studies. The papal inflation of the crusading notion into an Albigensian Crusade or a crusade against the emperor was acceptable as relating to political reality.

If so fact the *chansons de geste* excluded the official line deliberately, that does not mean that the knightly class consciously rejected ecclesiastical teaching, but that it did not think in scholastic categories.

⁶⁹ See chapter I, above.

⁷⁰ Usamah Ibn-Munqidh, *Memoirs of an Arab-Syrian Gentleman and Warrior in the Period of the Crusades*, tr. Philip E. Hitti (CURC, 18, New York, 1937), and Ibn-Jubair, *Travels*, tr. Ronald J. C. Broadhurst (London, 1952) (also RHC, Or., III, 440-456, where extracts have been translated into French); John of Joinville, *Memoire de Saint Louis*, ed. Natalle de Wailly (Paris, 1948); *Le Vie de St. Louis*, ed. Noël L. Chabou (Chartrouise, Quebec, 1971), cf. Daniel Abulafia and Medieval Europe, pp. 182, 252-253.

⁷¹ Salomon de Adieu, *Crusades*, ed. Giuseppe Scialoja (Scienze d'Italia, 213, II (Paris, 1966), 442-444); Norman Cohn, *The Pursuit of the Millennium* (London, 1957), pp. 73, 82-87, *Le Registre d'Inquisition de Jacques Fourneau Evêque de Poitiers (1398-1425)*, ed. Jean Desnoyers II (Toulouse, 1965), pp. 135-145 (the last two pages numbered XXX).

Moreover, we can overdo this; there was an overlap of attitudes, as of interests. Saladin first appears in western chronicles as the usual Arab scourge. Then two events appealed to the imagination of the west, the ransoming of poor captives at the fall of Jerusalem by Saladin and his brother al-'Adil, and the beheading of the oath-breaking Reginald of Châtillon after Hattin; to refuse to accept him as a guest when king Guy gave him water was in accordance with the knightly code. Not only did Joinville remember this; at a moment of stress he expected Arabs to be bound by the rule of behavior he understood it to imply. In legend Saladin became a courtly hero, as we have seen, and Europe's most honored visitor, but this myth carried the clergy along with it, and clerics told satirical tales in which Saladin's disgust castigated the sins of Europe.⁷² Other ideas were shared by different groups; thus the idea that Islam was a continuation of paganism is common—in very different forms admittedly—to the canonists and the *chansons de geste*.⁷³

Certainly orthodox propaganda was a vehicle to express Europeans' pride in themselves and contempt for others; the church was only the chief proponent and the chief instrument of a cultural ethnocentrism in which all took part. One of the best examples of a propagandist was James of Vitry, French-born, well educated, representative of the higher clergy in the Latin state, and also of modes of thought of the early thirteenth century. He was prepared in theory, but not in practice, to attribute the loss of Jerusalem and other "Christian" lands to original sin, rather than to particular sins. His analysis of the peoples of Palestine is intelligent as well as antipathetic. It is more and more off the mark as it gets more remote from the Latins. He repeats the "orthodox" Christian attack on Mohammed and Islam, but this version of it may represent a local eastern variation of material more familiar in Spain, and occasional comments mark some fragment of actual knowledge floating in a sea of legend. Above all, he leaves us with the unmistakable impression, valid for all the crusading movement, of total Latin intolerance, an actual inability to put up with any part or parcel of alien culture, even—or especially—in the situation of a precarious colony surrounded by enemies. He speaks for a

72. G. Paris, "La légende de Saladin," *Journal des Savants* (1883), pp. 284–299, 358–363, 422–432, 496–498; cf. Cook and Cross, *The Descent into Hell*.

73. For the material see above, chapter 1. As far as the *chansons* are concerned, the inclusion among the supposed idols of Apollon (later formally assimilated as *Apollon*) and *Apollon* confirms the delusion of continuity between antiquity and Islam; the use of the word *patrie* should not be dismissed as meaningless. Cf. Roger Reynolds, *Open spaces*, ed. John H. Briggs (Oxford, 1971), III, part 2, maps, vi–viii, pp. 53–61.

whole community, but he does so in the accents of its most articulate class.⁷⁴

There was indeed overall unity, and this articulate class controlled the propaganda. Within the Christian community the churchmen were always addressing their charges, never the Moslem enemy directly, nor did they write for neutrals. The only Moslems who were converted were those who were so unlucky as to live under Christian rule, and the only neutrals known in the west were the Mongols, for whose conversion there was a short-lived hope, encouraged by some interesting missions. We have already seen that the idea of a public debate was merely another fantasy. What was the purpose of the propaganda against the Moslem religion? W. M. Watt suggests that it represents the "dark side" of the Christian attitude, psychologically a projection of the sins, especially sexual sins, of the Christians upon an Islamic scapegoat.⁷⁵ The present writer has always maintained that it both sprung out of and served to fortify the sense of Christian European solidarity, of which the war itself was one expression and the acceptance in theory of a severe sexual morality another.

Western Christendom wanted to establish its sense of identity. The constant preoccupation with orthodoxy, the crusades against heretics, and the development of the Inquisition all bear witness to the extent to which uniformity was desired by the people who made up the society as a whole. This was not affected by division within society, or by anticlericalism within the bounds of orthodoxy. They felt it to be a precondition of their solidarity. To establish that a whole religion, society, *lex*, was in every respect the reverse or denial of European society was immensely helpful in creating a mental as well as a physical frontier. It was the best war propaganda in that it made the enemy the proper recipients of treatment unworthy of humanity in ordinary conditions. The evil alleged of Islam made the rules of the crusade, of the "just war", emotionally acceptable. All war is more effective if it is fought with hatred and if the humanity of the enemy is minimized. In this sense the laity needed and accepted that clerical propaganda which did not otherwise come naturally to them.

74. *Lettres de Jacques de Vitry*, ed. François Goyens, 1903, pp. 79-80; *Monarchie Aragonnaise*, trans. by Jacques Bongars, ed., *Coste Des par France* (Rome, 1619, repr. Jerusalem, 1972), I, 1083 ff.; also Denon, 1397 (repr. Farnborough, Eng., 1971), repr. 67-68.

75. *Influence of Islam on Medieval Europe* (Edinburgh, 1970), p. 70.

D. *The Age of Doubt*

We come finally to the phase in which propaganda is met by counter-propaganda, arguments not only for, but also against, the crusade. These bear the marks of failure and doubt; they reveal the increasing strength of secular interests and are produced by new social developments no longer compatible with a doctrine of the crusade composed in an earlier age. The accumulation of failures affected even the theologians, and those who wanted to renew the war were faced with the classical dilemma of providential theory. In a holy war our victory is the vindication of God, but our failure must be the chastisement of our sins. Why is God now vindicated, now chastising our sins? Many agonized over this problem, so judge by the frequency with which the stock solutions are stated, up to the very end of the period of Ottoman expansion (when it became the turn of the Moslems to experience this cycle of despair).

We might date the new age of doubt from 1291 and the fall of Acre, last of the mainland territorial possessions of the Latins in Palestine. An alternative date might be 1274; the Second Council of Lyons was intended to reunite Christendom for a crusade and was a moment of useful self-questioning. Again, we might find our arbitrary date a few years earlier still, with the final failure of Louis IX at Tunis in 1270. Like the Damietta crusade of 1218, Louis's first crusade in 1249 had raised great hopes which it had quickly disappointed. The fall of Aiyubid Cairo was no sooner rumored than Europe learned that this pious king and model crusader was a defeated prisoner.⁷⁵ Edward (I) of England, crusading at about the same time, and little thought for the kingdom of Jerusalem that was not defensible. The watershed in crusade propaganda can plausibly be said to have come when Joinville refused to join Louis's second venture, in spite of his veneration for the king and the seriousness with which he took crusading ideals. In a well-known passage he describes how Louis pressed him to take the cross again, and how he replied that the king's sergeants had oppressed and impoverished his people, and that "if I wished to do God's will, I should stay here, to help and defend my people." He considered that the king should do the same: it was a mortal sin that anyone should advise him to go, because at the time the country was at peace, both within and with its neighbors; yet, if the king went, it must deteriorate. Joinville maintained that, if the king had not gone, he might, in

⁷⁵ Matthew Paris, *Chronica majora*, ed. Henry R. Luard (Rolls Series, 57), V, 138 and VI, 149.

spite of his weakness, have lived longer and continued his good work for the country.⁷⁷ Nothing could be more explicit than this assertion that God requires charity to begin at home; and nothing could be further from the position of the crusade propagandists.

We may compare Humbert's preparatory work for Lyons, which was at once backward- and forward-looking; the arguments are old, his awareness of the opposition is new. He considers seven categories, first accusing objectors in general terms as "given to idleness, running away from all exertions for Christ"; there used to be an English idiomatic use of the word "slackers" which Humbert's bracing tone exactly reflects. The first particular objection that he considers is that the shedding of blood is incompatible with the Christian religion; this is based on a number of obvious New Testament texts (John 18:11, Acts 5:41, Romans 12:19, I Peter 2:23 and 3:9), but omitting the most obvious of all, Matthew 5:38 ff. He replies that the early church had no power with which to fight, but had miracles and the gifts of the Holy Ghost instead; in his own day, however, the church only had power, and must use what it had. It was obvious that Christians must resist the infidels; who would be so silly (*jenus*) as to say otherwise? The texts cited he explained by their special circumstances; he also quoted Luke 22:36 (but not 38), adding that this is glossed to mean that Christians may sometimes use the sword, a matter not for any individual but for the church itself to decide.

The second objection is the reverse of the first: that a crusade causes the shedding of Christian blood and the death of Christians. There are innumerable casualties, "sometimes from illness, sometimes in war, sometimes from too little or too much to eat (*ex excessu*)—and not only ordinary people, but kings and princes, and persons really useful to Christendom". He replies that people who put such arguments forward "have eyes only for what concerns their own or recent times"; they would see things very differently if they read ancient histories, about all the Arabs killed by Charles Martel or massacred in the time of Godfrey of Bouillon at the capture of Jerusalem; Charlemagne too (he thought) had killed many Arabs in the course of liberating Spain. He felt confident that a final accounting would prove that over the ages many more Moslems had been killed than Christians. He fairly pointed out that if Christians had not opposed Moslems, the Moslems who formerly inhabited Sicily, Sardinia, and Spain would have destroyed the property and lives of numberless Christians, as they did when they attacked Genoa by sea from North Africa. Anyway, Chris-

⁷⁷ *Vie de St. Louis*, ed. Carlier, pp. 734-737.

tians are called to people heaven, not this world. Humbert does not consider the point that ancient victories were irrelevant to modern defeats, and so evades the conflict between the crudely providential view of history and the contemporary realism.

The third objection that he considers is the adverse conditions for the crusade. His choice of objections is more realistic than his replies to them. Christians in the east are few among many enemies; they are in a strange land, while their opponents are in their own (a curious admission, and seemingly inconsistent with the theory of a Christian right to the Holy Land). We are unused, he goes on, to the climate, but they are used to it; we are unused to the food, they are used to it; they know dangerous tracks and hidden routes, we do not; we are often in want, they have plenty. "As, therefore, in war, wisdom is necessary above all, it seems Christians should never attempt this kind of war." Humbert's answer is that the Moslems have the advantage in terms of worldly wisdom, but as for divine wisdom, Christians have it, and once again he brings up the numbers of Moslems successfully massacred in the past. To this third objection is connected the fourth, that, though we may well defend ourselves when the Moslems attack us, it would be better not actually to invade their lands, and even likely to prove harmful to us to do so. Humbert's answer here is that the Moslems so hate the Christians that they will let no chance to harm them pass; as they do not need to be provoked, the thing to do is to wear them out by invading their countries first. This he defends by theological argument, that it is sinful to maintain peace with the wicked. The reasons for attacking are three: to exhaust the Moslems, to introduce the worship of God into their countries, and to avoid sharing, by toleration, the guilt of their crimes. This is to give a legal answer to a pragmatic objection.

The next objection was that if Moslem nations must be extirpated, why not Jews, and also Moslems living in Christian territory, and also Tatars and barbaric nations? The conversion of the Jews, he replies, is promised (Romans 11:26) and even the Moslems under Christian rule need not be despaired of ("whether they like it or not, they can be forced to listen to preaching"); the Tatars and others do not bother us, and their conversion too is promised ("all languages should serve the Lord Jesus Christ", Daniel 7:14, adapted). Even as propaganda, Humbert's argument here is careless. Why should this last text not refer to Moslems as much as to "barbarians"? Both objection and answer here must always have seemed quibbles, and neither can be quite serious.

The sixth objection is that crusading serves no useful purpose; it only arouses the resentment of the Moslems. This cuts much closer

to the bone, but Humbert sees a triple advantage in attack: the enemies of the Christian faith are attacked before they can themselves attack, they are thrown into disarray, and they are frightened; these "temporal" advantages are normal practice in war. There are also the "spiritual" or clerical advantages; the honor of God, the salvation of Christians, the extension of the church ("as concerns worship"), that is, the area in which the Latin rite obtains. Moslems and Greeks under Latin rule, he claims, live happily, cultivating their lands and paying tribute, and can be converted gradually. His last objection resembles his second; it is that the misfortunes of the Christians suggest that God does not want them to go against the Moslems. There was the success of Saladin, the fortuitous death of Frederick I in a small stream, the capture of Louis IX at Mansurah and his death at Tunis, and the dispersal by bad weather of his fleet returning to Europe. This popular theology is easy for the theologian to refute to his own satisfaction; such people do not understand God's ways (the *facta divina*), it is not in this world that God gives his rewards. A stream of biblical quotations from the Old Testament shows how God willed the defense of Israel.

We need not doubt that Humbert was stating actual criticisms of the crusade that were familiar to him, and doing so quite fairly. Does he answer them effectively? Obviously not, according to modern ideas, and, though we must beware of anachronism, his scholastic range of argument does not touch the more practical objections even as he himself presents them. Often, when Humbert makes an effort to meet a practical point by appealing to ordinary knightly experience, he slides off into theology. Wholly idealistic, Humbert is nevertheless not wholly impractical. He wants a large permanent army to reinforce the surviving Christian centers in the east. The soldiers must be more than mercenaries, and carefully chosen, but he realizes that they will need large stipends to maintain them at war. He proposes gracefully to leave the laity to make their own financial offer, while he waits at once poetical and businesslike about the possible sources of clerical contribution. He argues that the anti-Islamic polemic which we have discussed above is really important; before the Second Council [of Lyons] assembles, it will be necessary to state the facts about Islam concisely, so that people may understand the enemy; as it is, clerics, as well as laymen, suppose "that Moslems reckon that Mohammed is their God, which is however false". The advice of the wise, he continues, not only the learned but the laity, and especially the nobility, should be obtained, and put into succinct reports; and prelates and magistrates should be sent to all countries to enlist support, especially from the other mag-nates. Many arguments may persuade them, says Humbert, and he takes

us back over the old familiar ground: feudal obligation to God; the examples of the Old Testament; the examples of Christian history; the need of piety; duty; nobility; shame. We must admit that in all this there has been some attempt to understand lay motivation, but there is little in the bag of tricks that was not already there.⁷²

Another example from the material relating to the Second Council of Lyons is Gilbert of Tournai's *Collectio de scandalis*.⁷³ Its brief references to the crusade are a check on Humbert's more conventional approach. Gilbert naturally accepts in principle the necessity of destroying Moslem power, on the old theme of "restoration" — "our inheritance has been turned over to strangers" (Lamentations 5:2). In a sense his remarks are particularly traditional; he makes use of the correspondence of Peter of Blois, and also that of James of Vitry, but a radical strain is more in evidence. Of the three points to which he draws attention, one is the exploitation of the poor and of the church in order to fund the crusade; Christ, he says, cannot be liberated by the affliction of Christians. Assessors unjustly manipulate the law governing the release of various categories of crusaders from their vows; this recoils on the heads of those who preach the crusade, and who have to put up with violent criticism. Preachers who collect funds for the crusade must not be motivated by the thought of gain. It is the crusade administration, rather than the propaganda, that Gilbert criticizes; of course, he makes it clear that he supports the crusade itself, and there is no *arrière-pensée* in this. He describes the behavior of the rulers and the knightly class, of the citizens, merchants, and workers of different kinds; the ruling class fails to do justice and exploits those subject to it; merchants disregard the church and operate frauds; the rest are dishonest and do not go to church. Gilbert is like Joinville in his insistence on first putting things right at home. Neither of them really falls into any of Humbert's classes of objectors.

Of about the same date is the work of Rutebeuf, whose editor attributes the formative influence on him to Humbert. Rutebeuf's crusade polemic poetry is well within the general scope of Humbert's definitions, though sufficient variations suggest an individual assessment, and Rutebeuf cites objections to the crusade which, like Humbert's, are more convincing than their refutation. The early *Complainte d'Outremer* is the least interesting of these poems; it does seem to reflect the exam tradition as Humbert's own preoccupation with the al-

⁷² *Opus Miramini*, in *Appendix*. . . *Impressiones*, ed. Brown, chaps. 2-22, XLII, 27.

⁷³ *Archivum franciscanum historicum*, XXIV (1911), ed. Arthur Sordani, esp. pp. 39-40.

most legendary sequence of former crusades. His *Desputacions dou Croune et dou Desceintgle* is dated in the late 1260's. The orn-crusader in this debate says that the adventure is ruinous; it has reduced many to beggary; the clergy set a bad example; he would defend his country from the sultan, but will not go to hunt him out, and will do wrong to no man; and "if God is anywhere in the world, he is in France, there is no doubt". Warned to think of eternity, he is suddenly converted; this does not spring inevitably out of the sense of the poem, but seems rather a device to bring it to an end.

Rutbeuf's *Nouvelle Complainte d'Olivier* is more lively than his other crusading poems, although its satirical passages contribute no surprise. The appeals to particular kings and nobles nicely combine the courtly with the pious. A long passage castigates the young squares who, instead of crusading, rob maidens of their honor; prelates on fat palfreys who preach abstinence to the poor, and clergy who live and dress well on the patrimony of the Crucified, could afford to support troops at the war. Knights at their cups threaten the sultan – "Quant la tence est bien prinse" – but next day are off hunting hares and duck; the rich townsmen buy cheap and sell dear, charge usury, and trick people, and their children spend their wealth at the brothel and the tavern while the poor starve. Rutbeuf is much taken with the theme of a golden past, and, imperceptive of the irony which no modern reader can miss, recommends to his contemporaries, as models, not only Godfrey but Bohemond and Tancred.⁸⁰ Of course, by 1270 there were no principalities for ambitious crusaders to seize, and so no Bohemond.

It is interesting to compare the contemporary view of someone actually caught up in the war; as one would expect, it is more concerned with practical problems than is anything written at the same time in Europe. Fidenzio of Padua was a Franciscan whose work was dedicated to pope Nicholas IV and, he says, explicitly commissioned by Gregory X at the Second Council of Lyons, apparently because his knowledge of the country might produce practical proposals. Probably Nicholas, if not also Gregory (who, after all, knew the situation at first hand), thought that existing proposals, originating in the west, lacked the necessary field knowledge, and Fidenzio is indeed more practical than Humbert. He lays down three basic requirements – first, forces, second, what he calls "eminence of goodness", which means, when examined in detail, sound morale, and finally, single leadership. Under the first

⁸⁰ *Ouvrages complètes de Rutbeuf*, ed. Edmond Picot and Julia Barlow (Paris, 1913), I, 440 ff. 449 ff., 492 ff. (line 258).

heading Fidenzio often adds, after his recommendations, "and the Saracens do this also"; his military advice (and he was not a fighting priest) is largely based on his observation of Moslem success. He naturally recommends that there should be large forces, and that they should be not only well armed but professionally skilled. One aspect of morale he considers under this heading: the soldiers must be men of spirit and initiative, *fortes animo*. He considers tactics (under the heading of *seperatus*) in the context of weaknesses he has observed. He stresses the importance of fortifications and strong points, both defensively and when in enemy territory; he rates effective intelligence next in importance, and again reminds the reader that the sultan has good spies; he demands caution, unity, and careful planning. His analysis is down to earth.

In his chapters on the need for "goodness" among Christians, commending charity, chastity, humility, mutual loyalty and compassion, unity, sobriety, legality, patience, avoidance of cupidity, and prayer, he seems to be assessing the defects he observes in terms of their opposing virtues. His "legality" is interesting: it is important especially "among those who are brought together in a single society and for the accomplishment of a single work"; it is both negative, as not injuring fellow countrymen, and positive, as serving them. Then he deals with main lines of strategy, recommending two armies, one by sea to attack Egypt, one by land (in order to split the enemy) to attack at one of a number of Syrian alternatives. He inserts a chapter on the idea of the just war, claiming the right to rule Egypt and the Holy Land "as far as the Euphrates". Much of this is new, and, insofar as it is a practical assessment of the situation, it is realistic propaganda. If it demands far more than would ever be possible, this is well devised to counteract the new opposition to crusading, the variations on the theme that it cannot be done.²¹

The period roughly from the Second Council of Lyons in 1274 to the death of Philip IV of France in 1314 was decisive in the history of crusade propaganda, because it was then that the serious intention disappeared. We are here concerned to see how the propaganda affected and was affected by the change in intention. The Genoese Galvano da Levanto serves to link the undeterred zeal of Fidenzio with the new secular approach, which he himself, however, did not share. Galvano's own attitude is unoriginal, but illustrates the practical search for leadership. Fidenzio's "mutual loyalty and compassion" is reflected in Galvano's "brotherly loyalty and compassion", and so is a sense of

²¹ *Liber christianitatisque Imperii Sacrorum*, in *BOC*, vol. I, II-3, 1-60.

urgency. "Let the Christian religion succumb, it must everywhere defend itself . . . have its eye always on victory." Amid much that is old-fashioned, he looks for a leader who will give new life to the old ideal; he hopes to persuade him on grounds of principle that it is sufficiently to his advantage to do so.³²

Most writers agreed that Acre fell because of the divided command, and that is one reason why afterward success was seen as depending on effective leadership. A distinct strand of thought stresses the sins of the people of Acre; according to Giovanni Villani, who reflects Florentine traditions, no Christian city contained "more sinners, men and women, guilty of every wickedness". John of Ypres, writing nearer the time, and himself a source of Villani's, contrasts the morals of the people with the imagined virtues of the first crusaders; he knows a good deal, though not accurate in detail, of the troubles of the succession of the Mamluk sultanate in the family of Kalayun, and so is able to point to divisions among the Moslems which were unknown to Fidenzio, in order to show that their sin, too, received punishment.³³ We shall return to the theme of Christian wickedness, which naturally is less significant for the history of events than for the history of theological propaganda.

If Fidenzio had been conscious of the need for unity of leadership, sound morale, and strategy, it was because he knew the actual situation, and the same realism occurs in other supporters of renewed fighting. Villani writes of the loss to Italian trade that resulted from the disappearance of Christian rule from the Syrian coast, but this was more a Florentine view.³⁴ Venice suffered less, but Venetian writers, as long as the crusade remained a serious proposition, would be keen that the armies should be carried by Venetian ships. Ptolemy of Lucca, writing retrospectively of the fall of the last coastal cities, gives two reasons in explanation, the first the "diversity of wills of the lords", who could not agree in the government or defense of Acre; the second, the stupidity of the crusaders recruited through the preaching set on train by Nicholas IV after the fall of Tripoli. They came to Acre in disorderly style, and attacked some Arab merchants, robbed them, and killed some, arousing the anger of the sultan.³⁵ Here are both the

32. *Libro sacro passaggio christiano per recuperatione Terre Sancte*, ed. Kohler, in *ACS*, VI (1896), 345-346.

33. *Crusade di Giovanni Villani e singolarissime notizie*, VII, 145 (Florence, 1823, II, 150). John of Ypres, *Chronique de Jean de Ypres*, ed. S. B. L. in Martine and Durand, eds., *Textes de la guerre sainte*, III, 769-773.

34. *Chronique di Giovanni Villani*, pp. 335-336.

35. *Historia ecclesiastica*, in *ACS*, XI, col. 1196.

criticism of disunity and the mercantile wish that the enemy should not be provoked. Ptolemy, rather than Marino Sanudo, seems to speak for the maritime tradition.

Sanudo wrote the most monumental of all works of crusading propaganda,⁴⁴ and his enthusiasm for a point of view essentially ecclesiastical does not chime altogether harmoniously with the Venetian trading interest; his notion of a fleet-carried army to conquer Egypt would have been good business, if it had not already too often been shown to be impracticable. He is naturally well informed about Egypt's commercial needs but, like so many others, overestimates its vulnerability. After his death, the sack of Alexandria in 1365 would show that real damage could be done to Egypt, without weakening it enough to make possible a Christian conquest. For the rest, his advice is practical enough, if we grant the main strategy. Like Fidenzio, Sanudo wants to see a restoration of morale by means of a moral reformation, and he too looks to a king who should be a new Godfrey, but unites the army and people in a single rule. He offers the same advice as Fidenzio in point of tactics and effective imitation of successful Arab methods of warfare. In addition to his flash in both economic and armed war, he depends heavily on the hope of reformation, the expulsion of irreligious men and heretics, and a model state financed from the lands recaptured — once more, a repetition of the First Crusade as it was remembered by this time. His history of the crusaders is among the most thorough. He shows how Palestine has always been exposed to conquest, beginning with the Jews and running through all those who succeeded them — Greeks, Romans, Arabs, and Latins. He detours via Charlemagne, then gives the history from Godfrey to the Second Council of Lyons and the end of the kingdom of Acre. The legendary quality of these accounts is emphasized by their relative neglect of recent events. This is a good example of the revival of ancient propaganda in a new situation. Sanudo, having spent a lifetime thinking about the crusade, naturally did not ask whether it was necessary at all; when he refers to the preaching of a crusade, he thinks of the kinds of skilled men to recruit, not the arguments to persuade them. He too is both propagandist and propaganda victim. His advocacy of the strategy of invading Egypt, and of the tactics of establishing fortified places on the coast, was finally outmoded some twenty years after his death, when the

44. *Liber secretorum fidelium crucis*, in Bongars, *Gesta Dei per Francos*, II, 1-268. On particular points drawn from book II see part I, esp. 1 (pp. 34-35); part II, esp. 10 (pp. 44-47), part III, esp. 3 (p. 512); part IV, esp. 1 (pp. 53-54); part V, esp. 17 (pp. 74-75).

papal legate, Peter Thomas, failed to persuade the army to stay in Alexandria longer than was necessary to loot and murder.

Another theme had by this time been worked into the historical legend, the story of the Mongols, seen at the time, and always afterward remembered, as a great opportunity for Christendom missed. A sentence of John Sarraute's from *Damietta* in 1247 illustrates the delusion of an immediate hope: "discrement ils que Elchekay, a tout son ost de Tartarins, seroit en l'aide au roy de France".⁴⁷ Some travelers wrote clear accounts of the Far East, the mid-century envoys John of Pian del Carpine and William of Rubruck in particular, with other clerics; there is an echo also of some of the mechanics and others who were captured by the Mongols or went to work for them and returned to Europe. John's work was redacted by Vincent of Beauvais, and Roger Bacon gave some publicity to Rubruck's splendid book, but these authentic sources were largely ignored; Europeans exaggerated the chance that had been missed, and even continued to imagine that it still existed — this delusion survives in *Sarudo*.⁴⁸ As the time they underlined the lasting consequences of the Mamluk victory at 'Ain Jalut in 1260. In the second half of the thirteenth century Mongol society was better and more accurately documented in Europe than was the Arab world with which there had been hostile contact for so long. It is difficult to define exactly the effect of the "Tartar" myth. Certainly it gave Europe an idea of a world beyond Islam, and the idea that existing conditions could be upset; it contributed to the unsettled state of mind which was increasingly dissatisfied with the traditional propaganda.

The propaganda worked itself out, exhausted by its own logic. Its greatest inherent weakness, so long as people thought in terms of holy war, was the providential problem. Riccoldo of Monte Croce arrived in Baghdad only to find evidence of the sack of Acre, where his journey had started, and of the death of his brother Dominicans, the equivalent of his family. Personal distress led him to a theological problem which he besought God — as a somewhat literary exercise — to dispel by special revelation. It was now nearly seven hundred years, he said, that Islam had flourished, and some people thought that its momentum must slow down and weaken; but, on the contrary, it was growing stronger. He demanded that God should answer him oracularly. He set the Koran on the altar before the image of Jesus and his mother,

⁴⁷ *Lettre à Nicolas Arceus*, ed. Alfred L. Poide (Paris, 1924), p. 2.

⁴⁸ *John of Pian del Carpine and William of Rubruck as Sinus Francorum*, vol. I, Vincent of Beauvais, *Speculum historiale* (Darm., 1629, ed. V of *Bibliotheca mundi* and other editions), III, xxvii, 3 ff., alternate with Simon of Boves, from chap. 26. Also *Sarudo*, II, i, 2 (p. 26), II, iv, 28 (pp. 92-93), and ed. 10, xii, 3-9 (pp. 234-240).

and indignantly prayed, "Read, read"; "It seems to me that thou didst not want to read." In Mevel, Riccoldo bought a copy of Gregory the Great's *On the Morals of Job*, part of the loot from Acre, feeling as if he were redeeming a prisoner. He finally found his "revelation" in the work of Gregory. He read, "God speaks once"; and he realized that he must accept what he already knew as answer enough, that a Christian accepts suffering and worldly failure as normal. Here he has gone beyond the always-revived argument that worldly failure is a punishment for sin, with its delusive corollary that a revival of virtue must produce military victory. Riccoldo finally saw that success and failure have nothing to do with religion, but this made nonsense of all the most effective crusading propaganda. It is not clear that Riccoldo realized how radical he was being here. He must have realized that his praise of Moslems for practising virtues (which we considered above) was not really compatible with contemporary scholastic opinion, although he never for a moment slackened his firm hold on orthodoxy. He has learned the weakness in the historical argument of which crusade propaganda made so much. "You see that the Christians often made plans against the Moslems, and almost every design of theirs turned to their harm. For what pope, or emperor, or king made plans or arrangements over a long period against the sultan of Babylon (Cairo), against the successor of Mohammed, and was not overtaken by death or else cheated in his plan or his dispositions?"⁸⁹ This was the crux of the providential discussion.

Although the First Crusade had not been what its later admirers supposed, it had indeed offered worldly success, but this was only a memory, and Riccoldo's sense that providence was against the crusade might appeal more to the contemporaries of Philip the Fair. Although the old belief, that Christians have a right to the Holy Land, survived defiantly in Sanudo and others, the idea of not attacking the Moslems so long as they did not attack the Christians, acceptance, indeed, of a permanent cease-fire, was becoming increasingly attractive.

We may take one more example of the secular approach to the crusade in the early fourteenth century, the greatest of them, the *De recuperatione* (1306-1308) of Pierre Dubois. The first part of this work, conceived as advice to all Christendom, was dedicated to Edward I of England, because of his known concern for the Holy Land. Approaching the problem from the European end, Dubois looks at the reverse side of the theology of the crusade by discussing the unjust

⁸⁹ Edizione: "Lettere di Riccoldo da Monte Croci," *ACL*, II-2, 264-267, 269, 272, 273, 278, 279-279, 279, 281, 282, 284, 289, 291, 293.

Wars of Europe which lead only to damnation. Peace and reform are the means of the crusade, or the crusade the way to peace and reform, it is not clear which. This, of course, had been Urban's own theme, but Dubois gives the papacy only a minor role. His ideas are based on the establishment of royal authority (suppression of the rebellion of great lords becomes a crusade theme in his work), and he has little sympathy with the Italian cities which acknowledge no lord. Arbitration becomes a means of promoting French authority and suzerainty. In the second part of this work, addressed to Dubois's own king, Philip IV, it becomes clearer still that the crusade, once set in train by reform, is intended to create an eastern empire for France, a project finally begun by Napoleon nearly five centuries later.

The secularity of the general scheme is shown by the reforms it proposes; only a little more than a quarter century after the orthodox Second Council of Lyons, Dubois would achieve the purposes of the crusade by very different means, including the secularization of much church property and the limitation of papal authority. Dubois would put an end to the constant flow of excommunications of recalcitrants: "It is much better to punish them in time than in eternity." Crusading is no longer an ascetic; indeed, Dubois was born on the marriage of the clergy. He sees, of course, the need for sound financial support, and proposes to begin by using the resources of the Temple and the Hospital. His is not the old familiar concept of the crusade at all, despite the traditional language (*ardor salutis Terre Sancte*), which he uses to introduce his quite new project for colonization obliquely. Those who, instead of crusading, make war on other Catholics, and all who give them any help, will be punished; "When the war is over, the survivors, of whatever age, rank, or sex, shall be perpetually exiled from their lands and possessions, of which they shall be deprived, with whatever descendants they may have, and they shall be sent to populate the Holy Land; if they obey and freely mean to take themselves to the Holy Land, they shall be given their necessary expenses for their journey out of their confiscated property." On arrival, they were to be given lands next to the enemy. This Botany Bay concept marks the beginning of the long-cherished European intention to plant colonies in the Near East, which until recently dominated the politics of the eastern Mediterranean, and those who question any continuity between the crusading concept proper and the colonial age must at least recognize a clear link in Dubois.

His intention to populate the east with Europeans was probably stimulated by the remembered weakness of the Franks of the old Latin states, isolated amid an alien population whether Moslem or Chris-

tian Arab. Dubois thought out rough principles for apportioning land to the settlers, and rather more detailed ideas for the organization of a local militia. After a discussion of the best routes and methods for attack, he considers "those things that are required for the well-being of the colonists [*habitatores*]"; he foresees first the need for confessors speaking the language of each settler, and doctors of body as well as of soul must be ready for them before they arrive. He talks of his system of education, principally in "the languages of the Arabs and other dialects of the world", and medicine and surgery (for men and horses), to which he attaches great importance. A proper supply of interpreters must be available well in advance, and they must understand the local people—they must be, as the modern editor says, dragomans. Women were to have an important part, although considered "inferior"; girls were to obtain influence through their medical powers and knowledge, were to marry priests, who by so doing would bring all Christians into the Roman rite, or else to marry Moslems, whom they would convert to both Christianity and monogamy. This neatly reverses an idea of Riccio's that captive nuns would breed enemies to Christendom. Among the advantages that would accrue would be the purchase of articles normally dear in Europe but cheap in the Levant; this ignores the economics of the Italian ports.

Dubois envisages this colonization as taking place in a world divided politically but in other ways united. "There is hardly a sane man, I think, who in these last days would credibly suppose that (as concerns temporal things) there could be one sole monarch of all the world, whom all would obey as their leader, because, if that were attempted, there would be endless wars, rebellions, and dissensions; nor would there be anyone who could settle them, because of the multitude of peoples, the remoteness and variety of places, and the natural inclination of men to disagree." He adds that those commonly called world rulers in the past had only been rulers of large areas, and then continues: "But it is likely that there could be a single prince and monarch in spiritual things, who should be spiritually effective in all directions, east, west, south, and north; which I do not see could happen unless provision be made for learning languages, in the way I have written above, or better." This spiritual power is not the pope; Dubois seems to intend a French cultural hegemony based on a colonial Latin east.⁵⁰

⁵⁰ *De recuperatione Terrae Sanctae*, ed. Angelo Del Boca (*Testi medievali di letteratura documentaria*, I, Florence, 1977), pp. 172, 121–122 (86, 2), 128–130 (91, 3–4), 140–144, 1041, 40–401v, 40, 120–124 (100, 37–1001v, 61), 126–129 (101, 67–1011, 69), 189–192 (102, 111–112), 200–201 (100v, 122–1221v, 122), 209–211 (1021v, 129–132). For all this period see Aziz S. Atiya, *The Cr-*

I have dealt with Riccoldo and Dubois at some length because in their different ways they mark the end of the traditional crusade propaganda—Riccoldo its logical conclusion, Dubois the new concept that replaced it. Dubois's frank colonialism was new, but not, of course, the school of Arabic that he planned as part of it; something like it had been papal policy as early as the middle of the thirteenth century, though probably not a new project then;⁸¹ and it was a favorite scheme of Raymond Lull's. Lull, too, was an original but, though widely read and long famed, in fact without the direct influence he longed for. His ideas of the crusade were conventional, or easily paralleled in contemporary writers. He too demanded a single war-leader, the bellator. His determination to preach in North Africa was finally fatal, in spite of the determination of the Muslim authorities not to martyr him. For polemic, he recommended the "al Kindi" *Rudhok*, whether in Vincent of Beauvais's shortened version, or the original in the Cigolac manuscripts, which were widely distributed; but his peculiar contribution to religious controversy, which he put into practice in North Africa, was insistently to attempt to prove the Trinity by "necessary reasons".⁸² He is an interesting backwater of cultural history, though his enormous output makes him an important figure in Catalan literature.

One type of propaganda characteristic of the fourteenth century is argument supporting the papal prohibitions of trade with Mamluk Egypt and Syria. The underlying conviction that Egypt would be crucially weakened by cutting off its supplies of wood and of slaves was a miscalculation; it was a fact that Egypt needed to import these commodities, not that the supply could be effectively cut off by a simple boycott by European carriers in the Mediterranean, even if there had been no evasion of the papal prohibitions by Christian merchants, and, indeed, by papal license. So too for exports. Lull, for example, believed that a six-year boycott of the spice trade would ruin the Mamluk state. The argument was overstated, but not foolish. On paper, economic warfare looked promising, but Marino Sanudo is certainly unrepresentative.

code in the Later Middle Ages (London, 1938), and Palmer A. Thompson, *Crusades of the Crusade* (Amsterdam, 1940), for further examples and bibliography.

⁸¹ Dubois, *De recuperatione*, ed. Diéhl, pp. 131-134 (card, 39-41, 46); cf. pp. 140-149 (chs. 71-72, 75). Lull, *Liber de fin*, extracts in Adrien Goussier, *Ramon Lull: Essai de bibliographie* (Berlin and Leipzig, 1912), fasc. 2, Bb. 4. Invariant IV in Heinrich S. Deyhle, *Christentum und islamische germanische* (4 vols., Paris, 1889-1897), I, 212.

⁸² Lull, *Liber de fin*, Bb. 1 and 2, in Goussier, *Ramon Lull* . . . ; Vincent of Beauvais, *Speculum historiale*, 212B, 40, in *Bibliotheca mundi*, vol. V. For the present writer's views on Lull's "necessary reasons" see *Islam and the West*, pp. 177-180.

sensitive of the great city of which he was a native in believing that the more profitable future lay with a hypothetical crusade rather than direct trade. Sanudo gave economic reasons, but he also emphasized the supposed abuse of slaves, in order to arouse sexual moral repulsion. For the rest, the argument about slaves was *ad terrorem*; if the trade succeeded, the Mamluks constituted an alarming threat; if it failed, the peaceful Egyptians would themselves be vulnerable to threats.⁹³ The vulnerability of Egypt was current if disputed doctrine in the fourteenth century (it proved true only of the landward threat from the east), and it resulted not only in the pillage of Alexandria but in distracting attention from the early stages of the Ottoman advance. Propaganda was a conservative force.

One of the most emotive presentations of the anti-Egyptian theme was by William Adam, a European "expert" in eastern affairs, missionary, and traveler in the east, a Dominican who was very briefly named to the Armenian archbishopric of Sultaniyeh. He says that slaves are needed for the army because the Egyptians themselves are given over to carnality. The slaves supply both needs. There is a distinctly calumnious passage where he describes how suitable boys are prepared for market—presumably by Christian merchants; the passage is ridiculous and rather nasty. The propaganda here has nothing in it of observed facts about life in Cairo; it is a propaganda picture in the worst sense, constructed out of Christian doctrines about Moslems—propaganda, in fact, out of propaganda. He goes on indignantly to tell the story of a Genoese, Segurano Salvago, who used to strengthen "the persecutors of our faith" and took part in the slave trade. He was generally "called the sultan's brother", because the sultan had addressed him in letters as "brother and friend", a stately courtesy horrifying to the polemicist. Segurano "was so much a Moslem that he allowed the aforesaid sin against nature to be perpetrated on his ships" and, what was apparently more horrifying still, flew the sultan's flag "as I saw with my own eyes". In these crimes he was aided by his relations and by "many other Genoese".⁹⁴ This sort of propaganda is unbalanced and without sense of proportion and it left the maritime cities unmoved. The sultan in question is Muhammad an-Nāṣir, whom the Franciscan Giovanni Vitodurani praised for his severe but true justice in the protection of Latins in Cairo.⁹⁵

The last crusading propagandists of importance were Peter Thomas,

93. Esli, *Libro de feo*, lib. 1, 5; Sanudo, *Libro cronica*, I, passim.

94. *De rebus Saracenarum castigatim* (BMC, Arm., II, 523-525).

95. BCG, II, 145.

pepal legate, archbishop of Cyprus, and Latin patriarch of Constantinople, and his pupil and hagiographer, Philip of Mézières, sometime chancellor of the kingdom of Cyprus. It was Peter Thomas who vainly urged the conquerors of Alexandria not to withdraw, but we do not know the details of his preaching. He proclaimed "the mystery of the cross" and "the destruction of the Saracens" in quasi-biblical rhetoric. The legendary history of St. Thomas the Apostle seems to have inspired him to dream of the conversion of the east from Islam, schism, and heresy.

Mézières planned to found a *Milice Patroine*, a special force which was in line with the ideas of Lull; it would unite the nations and estates in a good life. When the disaster of Nicopolis happened, Mézières attributed it to those familiar, but not irrelevant, excuses, disunity and sin. He was himself aware in old age that the world had lost interest in all that he had cared for most. His *Songes du vaill pelerin ramblés*, but is full of ideas; in it he concedes to the Mamluk state the virtues of peace, justice, benevolence, public order, and public charities. He advises the young Charles VI of France to send an educated squire ou embassy to the sultan, in order to protect the local Christians in a peaceful way.⁵⁶ He still wished for a crusade, but had greatly mellowed; that there may be something beyond the propagandist in such a case is a lesson to remember.

In general, Europe had not ceased to wish to impose its ways on the rest of the world but was seeking new methods. There was continuing sentiment for a crusade, however, which Shakespeare reflected accurately,⁵⁷ and a purely clerical propaganda survived, and followed lines already laid down; it is interesting that Pius II, the last pope seriously to hope to see a crusade assemble, should himself have written a polemic piece against Islam in the manner of the Middle Ages. Roughly contemporary with Pius, Benedetto Accolti, a distinguished Florentine public servant and stylist, rewrote the history of the First Crusade (with an epilogue leading up to Saladin's capture of Jerusalem) in the manner of Livy.⁵⁸ The historical memory is perhaps the most persistent survival of traditional propaganda.

56. Philip of Mézières, *Life of St. Peter Thomas*, ed. Joseph Saut (Rome, 1954), pp. 137-141; for a modern biography see Frederick L. Goodkin, *Pierre de Thomas: Scholastic, Diplomat, and Crusader* (Philadelphia, 1964). Cf. William of Mézières, *Le Pèire d'Alexandrie*, ed. Louis de Mas Latrie (SOL, 28, 1), lines 1948-2129. On the Milice en Armes, *Crusade in the Later Middle Ages*, pp. 140 ff., *Le Songes du vaill pelerin*, ed. George W. Coignard (2 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1909), I, 226-231, and II, 288-291, 425-426. Cf. Langland, *C ant*, xxvii, 151.

57. E.g., *Richard II*, V, vi, *Henry IV*, I, 4, cf. IV, v.

58. Pius II, *Epistola ad Moritanos*, in Wollastorf, *Manuscripta* . . . , Altona (Buda, 1756), Accolti, *De Iulio a Christianis pape* (Thomas, 1623).

Gradually crusading faded into pilgrimage in the older sense of the term, and, though sacrilegious attacks on Islam by Franciscan zealot missionaries continued to produce "martyrdoms",⁹⁹ for the most part a secure and inexpensive trip to Jerusalem was the height of Christian hope; resentment at delays, insults, incivility, and an inclement climate took the place of bellicosity. It is interesting that the theoretical tone of pilgrim accounts is long a continuation of crusading propaganda.

Thus crusading propaganda petered out when its main themes became irrelevant or were seen to be untrue, and new ideas replaced it. The crusade, which had begun by being the type of the Christian way of life, gave way to new forms of religion. It had never been anything but an ecclesiastical product; whatever the motives of crusaders, the official clerical line was always the only official line and the only articulate one that we know to have existed. Of course, there is plenty of evidence for its having been exploited in private interests or simply ignored. Among the most orthodox, traditional attitudes survived as long as the crusading idea survived, and the idea survived long after all practical enthusiasm for it had waned, and when it had nothing of political value to offer. If traditional historical propaganda was re-stated in the style of the day by Accolli, Tasso's *La Gerusalemme liberata* witnessed to the continuing appeal of the theme still later. In this way survived the expression of a papal policy long outdated. As a sentiment it would have some future value in the defense of eastern Europe and the central Mediterranean from Ottoman attack, and it would merge inevitably into the propaganda of secular colonialism; the official French line in the invasion of Algiers in 1830 still spoke of "Christendom".¹⁰⁰ It remains true that as long as papal leadership of western Europe in the name of "Christendom" had been a practical political project, crusading themes had been a natural expression of the unity and morale of the west. There had been an implicit "colonialism", in the modern sense, in the "cultural imperialism" of papal pronouncements even more than in the actual practice of the colonies, which were more or less well adapted to their environment.

"Cultural imperialism" played its biggest part in the European refusal to accept the basic facts about Islam, and in a total rejection of the idea of toleration. These had long-lasting effects. Conquered

⁹⁹ *BOC*, II, 41 B, 66-67, 116 B, 143 B, IV, 399-794, and V 232 B. (cf. note 41 above).

¹⁰⁰ *Papers Relative to the Occupation of Algiers by the French* (British Sessional Papers, House of Commons, 1879), I, 45-46, esp. 41, 43.

Moslems were allowed to survive, as such, only for a time, and the invidious treatment of Moslems was made possible largely by the unattractive light in which the clergy set the doctrine and the history of Islam. It is no doubt true that the laity were not much moved by theological considerations, and would have behaved as well or as badly if there had never been any propaganda at all. Yet they accepted the need for absolute orthodoxy and cultural unity in Europe, so that the part of the Mediterranean world that was Arabic in speech, and largely Moslem in religion – not, in any case, Latin, even where it was Christian – was quite unacceptable in terms of contemporary European culture. These attitudes, the product of a powerful and consistent body of propaganda, remained still powerful in the nineteenth century, when they fed the propaganda of imperialism, and they actually survive today.

Even the direct preaching cannot have been ineffective. It is not realistic to suppose that there was a total dichotomy between the official and the actual motivation. How far did the two diverge? Insofar as crusaders went to the east to forward their careers, they were doubtless mixed in motive; no one has ever found it difficult to combine the conviction of righteousness with a desire for advancement. In the Marxist sense, it is hardly possible to have feudal colonialism, and in that sense the only colonialism was the maritime cities, whose interest was purely mercantile. They needed no propaganda beyond their interests; yet, even in the periods of difficulty and failure, when their interests clashed increasingly with official doctrine, they produced literature favorable to the crusade. At all times men were willing enough to follow their interests against the church, and often, it is likely, accepted the general principles of orthodox belief without taking excommunications seriously. On the other hand, when they could combine perfect orthodoxy with a course of action that suited their interests, there was no reason why they should not draw comfort and strength from the official line. The crusade became a part of European life for those who never went crusading; the whole system of indulgences was closely involved in this. Without the crusade, kings would have lacked one acceptable means of taxing the church. To some extent, the *clavis* became a mark of those who supported the papacy, but the monarchs also derived benefit from it. There was therefore little inclination to question the orthodox opinion. Any divergence of motive from propaganda is a tendency rather than an absolute distinction.

The Mediterranean continued divided into three main linguistic and cultural areas, and the propaganda has obscured the personal exchanges that there were among them, and particularly between Moslems and

crusaders. The Greek area contracted when the Turkish culture intruded, but the propaganda barrier was maintained unbroken. In spite of it, there is enough evidence to convince us that men passed from a Latin into an Arabic culture and often passed back again, even in the Middle Ages, not only in Spain, but in the east also. From the earlier seventeenth century onward—beginning with Don Quixote—we can call a considerable literature of people who returned from Barbary captivity; printers seem to have carried a stock of stereotype woodcuts to illustrate their stories. There is even a small literature of converts to Islam writing in Latin.¹⁰¹ There is no literature of either sort from the period of the crusade. Constantine the African was, perhaps, a North African convert; in any case he antedates the crusade, and says nothing of himself. Was his successor, Affricus, "al-Falak"? Peter (of) Alfonso was an Arabic-speaking Jew, and he, and other Jews for that matter, converts or not, may have traveled in England.¹⁰² Many Arabs lived in Europe, not by their own choice, and were gradually forced to become Christians. Many Latins lived on friendly terms with Arabs in Sicily and Syria; we know that best from Arabic sources. Many merchants lived and worked in Egypt, Africa, and Syria; there were also mercenary soldiers and chaplains. Only a few late accounts from travelers make up for the lack of personal accounts by European residents in the Arab world. Thus certainly was the Pyrrhic victory of the propaganda.

We must see crusade propaganda as essentially negative. It cut off whatever relationships might otherwise have been possible. At its worst it gave religious sanction to inhumanity which made it possible to say, for example, of Germans, "slaughter them mercilessly as if they were Saracens".¹⁰³ At best it only gave an added conviction of righteousness which boosted morale more in success than in failure. A pride in the linked achievements of various armed forces throughout history, from the ancient Jews onward, presupposed continuing success; the dangerous conviction that a holy war offered the opportunity for a whole-hearted rejection of the good things of the world often resulted in self-deception. In the last resort, all propaganda is merely the expression of hostility. The original enthusiasm which had created

101. *Musul Man, British Library MS. Add. 19864 and Bodleian, Marsh 179; Bodin, Confessions d'Égyptiens convertis*, ed. Gustave Moench (Schönerlin, 1837); Cf. Fernand Braudel, *Le Méditerranéen et le monde à l'époque de Philippe II*, 2nd ed. (Paris, 1966).

102. Constantine legeus or Peter des Dervens, PL, 173, vol. 3824 (and his successor John Affricus, possibly al-Falak, but he was apparently not an extraordinary); Peter (of) Alfonso, PL, 173, cols. 471-708.

103. Suger, *Vie de Louis IX le Gros*, pp. 322-323.

so strong a motive force and made the worst rogues in all classes call themselves an army of God was steadily eroded, but, while it lasted, it encouraged the delusion that God ensures the victory of the true believer, and from it seems to derive the tone of most modern war propaganda.

III

THE EPIC CYCLE OF THE CRUSADES

The Epic Cycle of the Crusades¹ is the name commonly given to two different cycles, composed in different centuries but related in subject matter, and both written in Old French *doctacasyllabic* verse. The first was apparently begun toward the end of the twelfth century by a versifier named Graudor of Douai, who rewrote and amalgamated three previously independent poems, *Le Chanson d'Antioche*, *Les Chrétiens* (the Captives), and *Le Conquerir de Jérusalem*, which dealt with the First Crusade. Graudor's compilation was later prefaced with an account of the fabulous youthful exploits of Godfrey of Bouillon and the story of his mythical grandfather, the swan-knight; at a later date (the middle of the thirteenth century) a sequel was added which carried the narrative from the end of the First Crusade down to the emergence of Saladin. The second cycle, composed, or at least begun, during the 1350's, comprises three separate poems, *Le Chevalier au Cygne et Godefroid de Bouillon*, *Baudouin de Sebourg*, and *Le Bâtard de Bouillon*.

The construction of an epic cycle over the years by different authors, usually belonging to different generations, but sometimes known to each other, conforms to a paradigm of which the best-known examples

¹ *Bibliography*: Cycle I: *Le Chanson du Chevalier au Cygne et de Godefroid de Bouillon*, ed. Charles Higginson (2 vols., Paris, 1874-1875); *Le Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. Paulin Paris (2 vols., Paris, 1846); *Le Conquerir de Jérusalem*, ed. Higginson (Paris, 1846). Cycle II: *Le Chevalier au Cygne et Godefroid de Bouillon*, ed. Frédéric de Reiffenberg and Adolphe Borquet (4 vols., Bruxelles, 1844-1859); *Baudouin de Sebourg*, ed. L. Napoléon Bata (2 vols., Valenciennes, 1843); *Le Bâtard de Bouillon*, ed. Robert Coûté (Oxford and Paris, 1902); *Saladin: Suite et fin du deuxième cycle de la croisade*, ed. Lucie S. Crui (Geneva and Paris, 1912).

² *General studies*. Henri Pirenne, *Le Cycle de la croisade et la famille de Bouillon* (Saint Cloud, 1877); August Haas, *Les Poèmes épiques des croisades* (Paris, 1932); Suzanne Despres-Quéret, *Le Cycle de la croisade* (Paris, 1953) (reprinted as *Le Moyen-Âge* by Claude Cahen and Robert Boussat, LXIII, 301-328, LXIV, 179-187; Crui and Crui, *Le Deuxième cycle de la croisade: Deux études sur son développement* [Geneva, 1972]).

are the cycles of Charlemagne, William of Orange, and Doon of Mayence. At the center of a soon-proliferating cycle stands a martial figure whose prowess in many a combat has charmed a public never weary of hearing tales about prestigious heroes who fight and slay innumerable foes. At the beginning of the fourteenth century this avid interest was crystallized in the literary and iconographic cult of the "nine worthies" (three Jews: Joshua, David, and Judas Maccabeus; three pagans: Hector, Alexander, and Caesar; three Christians: Arthur, Charlemagne, and Godfrey of Bouillon). The epic hero is not allowed to remain in splendid isolation; he may be the brightest star within his family constellation, but the deeds of his father, grandfather, brothers, sons, nephews, and grandsons are likewise memorable and so must be praised in epic song. Just as Charlemagne's father Pepin and his nephew Roland are the protagonists of various *chansons de geste*, just so Godfrey of Bouillon's ancestors, brother, cousin, and their descendants were celebrated in epics built around their persons and deeds, real or imaginary.

Superhuman strength and supernatural happenings endow the epic hero with a radiance that marks him as a man above other men, one of God's elect. When his fury is aroused he can with one mighty blow of his sword cleave an opponent and his steel in two, that is to say into four parts, two human and two equine. Miracles accompany him on his way, heavenly warriors battle at his side, his prayers stay the sun in its course so that the enemy may be pursued and annihilated, and archangels bear his soul to paradise, while devils precipitate slain Saracens into the nethermost regions of hell. How much of all this a medieval audience believed is somewhat beside the point. People of those days were certainly pleased with such tales, and being entertained were not unduly skeptical. Also, one of the fondest beliefs of the nobility was being catered to: blood will tell. Ancestors of a knight must of necessity have been brave and strong, qualities due to be possessed also by his relatives and descendants. Worth noticing is the explanation seemingly given in all seriousness for Eustace of Boulogne's failure to measure up to the worldly success of his brothers Godfrey and Baldwin: when he was an infant, during his mother's absence one day he had been suckled by a woman of low standing.

The ascription of a supernatural origin to Godfrey's family may perhaps be accounted for by many a nobleman's desire that his lineage should not be traced back to the common people. It is worth remembering that the Lusignaux, who ruled over Cyprus and Jerusalem, claimed to be descended from the fairy Melusane. The legend of the

Trojan origin of the Franks encouraged French and English feudal families to half believe that their forefathers, in the distant past, had come from the mysterious east.¹

When compared with William of Tyre's *Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis gestarum* and its Old French sequels, the two epic cycles of the crusades have scant historical value, though they do not lack cultural significance. For three centuries, from the twelfth through the fourteenth, they fascinated the French-speaking and French-reading population of central and northern France, thus helping to nourish a lively interest in the Frankish east and in the crusades. A history of the crusades, therefore, should pay some attention to them.

To facilitate access to the first epic cycle I have deemed it advisable to give, for each of its three parts, a résumé of its contents, followed in each case by a few comments. The division into *chanes* (cantos) of *Antioche* and *Jérusalem* is, of course, the invention of modern French editors, but as a means of reference it is a serviceable one.

A. The First Cycle: Godfrey of Bouillon

SECTION I: THE SWAN-CHILDREN²

King Oriens rebukes his wife for saying that the birth of twins is proof of their mother's unfaithfulness to her husband, claiming that such a belief tends to limit God's power to act as he sees fit.³ Soon afterward queen Beatrice gives birth to septuplets: six boys and a girl, each one wearing a silver necklace. Matabrune, the queen-mother, who hates her daughter-in-law, replaces the septuplets with a litter of seven pups and has Beatrice cast into prison by the outraged king. The seven infants are abandoned on the bank of a river, where they are found by a hermit who takes care of them. Ten years later the children are discovered by one of Matabrune's servants, who steals six of the neck-

1. A French chronicle of the Fourth Crusade records that, when Peter of Bauxelles, a Picard baron, was asked what right westerners had to eastern lands, he replied: "Don't you know that these lands belonged to our ancestors, the Trojans?" See Robert of Clari, *La Conquête de Constantinople*, ed. Philippe Lemer (Paris, 1924), cap. 178.

2. Hoppin, *op. cit.*, pp. 1-103.

3. Another version of the swan-children (*La Naissance du Chevalier au Cygne*, ed. Henry A. Todd [Baltimore, 1897]) calls the king Lucifers, his wife Elionor.

laced. The children to whom they belong are transformed into swans; for several years they are fed by Elias, the seventh child, who has retained his human shape. Meanwhile Matabrune has one of the necklaces melted down by a silversmith. Young Elias succeeds in saving the life of his mother Beatrice, condemned after fifteen years' imprisonment to the stake. The swan-children, except the one whose necklace has been melted down, resume their human appearance and are christened Oriens, Orson, Zacharias, John, and Rosette. Elias, whose father has abdicated in his favor, besieges Matabrune in her castle of Malbruant. She is finally captured and burned at the stake. At the injunction of an angel Elias sets forth in a boat drawn by his brother the swan, after receiving from his mother the gift of a magic horn. On his way he slays Agolant, the dead Matabrune's brother. He enters the Rhine and reaches Nijmegen.

SECTION 2: THE SWAN-KNIGHT*

Duke Ralander of Saxony is laying claim before emperor Otto to the lands of the widowed duchess of Bouillon, who still lacks a champion willing to defend her rights and those of her young daughter Beatrice. The swan-knight proffers his services and succeeds in slaying Ralander, whose hostages are put to death. The Saxons seek revenge by sacking the castle of Floren, a nephew of the emperor. The swan-knight marries Beatrice, but cautions her never to ask him who he is nor whence he came, otherwise she will lose him forever. The vengeful Saxons kill Gellen, another nephew of the emperor, but the swan-knight rescues his wife from their hands. To them is born a girl, Ida, the future mother of duke Godfrey, count Eustace, and king Baldwin. The Saxons, still unsatisfied, besiege Bouillon but are finally routed by the emperor, whom the swan-knight has called to his aid. On the seventh anniversary of her wedding Beatrice can no longer restrain her curiosity. The swan-knight takes sorrowful leave of his wife and daughter and departs in a swan-drawn boat which has suddenly come for him. As a farewell token, he entrusts his horn to Beatrice, recommending that she take good care of it. This she fails to do. One day at the hour of noon the ducal hall bursts into flames and, amid the general confusion, a swan is seen flying away with the neglected horn. Increasing in beauty every day, Ida reaches the age of fourteen.

4. *Myriam*, vol. I, pp. 107-209.

SECTION 3: GODFREY OF BOUILLON⁵

Emperor Otto holds court at Cambrai. A newcomer, young count Eustace of Boulogne, waits upon him at table with such pleasing grace that Otto grants him a boon. Eustace asks for the hand of Ida of Bouillon, whose mother Beatrice does not oppose the match and retires to a nursery. Within two and a half years Ida gives birth to three sons, Eustace, Godfrey, and Baldwin. She insists on suckling all three, for fear that another woman's milk might prove injurious to them. One day during Ida's absence one of the nurses is given the breast by a nurse. On discovering this, the frantic mother shakes the infant till he regurgitates the debasing fluid, but alas, in later days Eustace was never to equal his two brothers. At seventeen years of age Godfrey, having received knighthood at the hands of his father, is sent to the court of emperor Otto. He champions the rights of the orphaned daughter of a castellan against her cousin, whom he slays in judicial combat. Godfrey becomes duke of Bouillon.

The scene suddenly shifts to Mecca, where a great concourse of Saracen potentates and dignitaries is assembled. The spirits of the rejoicing Moslems are dampened when Calibre, mother of Corbann (Kerboghe), prophesies that dire things are in store for the pagan world. She names Godfrey and his brothers as the leaders of an army that will conquer Syria and Palestine. Her nephew Cornumarant, son of Corbadas and lord of Jerusalem, decides to travel to France and discover for himself whether this Godfrey is the formidable adversary his soothsaying aunt proclaims him to be. He crosses the sea disguised as a palmer, with two razor-sharp knives hidden beneath his cloak. The abbot of Saint Trond recognizes Cornumarant, whom he has seen on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and warns Godfrey that he is in danger of being assassinated. Godfrey sends for all his friends and retainers. Cornumarant is greatly impressed by their number. He is told that within five years Godfrey will have conquered the Holy Land. Cornumarant replies that he will ready his kingdom to meet the Christian onslaught.

Comments: It is usually assumed that the three sections of part one came into being as separate poems and were later soldered together by a *remaneur* named Renaud. The legendary tales they embody were already known to William of Tyre, since in his *Historia* (IX, 6) he refers to the swan-knight and to countess Ida's prophecy that her three

⁵ Hippert, vol. II, pp. 1-109.

sons would grow up to become a duke (Godfrey), a king (Baldwin), and a count (Eustace). It should be noted here that through some curious transference the legend of the swain-knight became detached from the Godfrey epic cycle to fasten on the central figure of an entirely different cycle, that of Garin "le Lorrain", Wagner's *Lohengrin* (= *Lohereng Garin*).⁴

B. *The First Cycle: The First Crusade*

SECTION I: THE TAKING OF ANTIOCH⁵

I: Graildor of Douai will tell how the Christian host conquered Jerusalem. The liberation of the Holy Land was prophesied by Jesus on the cross. Peter the Hermit was praying at the tomb of the Redeemer in Jerusalem when God appeared to him, commanding him to return to the lands of Christendom and announce that the time had come to free his city. Sixty thousand men assemble at Peter's behest, among them Harpin of Bourges, Richard of Caenmore, John of Aila, Baldwin of Beauvais, and his brother Ernoul. Peter and his followers begin the siege of Nicaea. Soliman (Killy-Arslan), the lord of that city, has just received reinforcements, led by Corbarus (Kerbogha), from the sultan of Persia. The Christians are defeated on the slopes of Mount Cozesot, the above-named knights being taken prisoner along with Fulcher of Meulan, Richard of Pavia, the bishop of Fozes, and the abbot of Fécamp. Peter, who has escaped capture, betakes himself to Rome and thence to France. The pope preaches a general crusade at Clermont in Auvergne. II: Godfrey of Bouillon takes command of the Christian host. Bohemond and Tancred join up with him at Constantinople. The crusaders have difficulties with the Greek emperor, which are smoothed away by Eustath the Noseless (Tatichus) and Guy the seneschal. Soliman's army is defeated and Nicaea surrenders to Eustath. III: The crusaders resume their forward march. Bohemond and his men, who had outdistanced the main army, suffer a setback. Tancred and Baldwin quarrel about the possession of Tarsus. Tancred enters Mamistra and

4. See Robert Jaffrey, *The Two Knights of the Swan, Lohengrin and Helios: a Study of the Legend*, with special reference to its two most important developments (New York and London, 1910).

5. *La Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. Paulin Paris.

Choros (Corycus?). Baldwin accepts an invitation from the Old Man of the Mountain to go to Rohais (Edessa) and marry his daughter. Godfrey forces his way into Artais (Artâb). Thanks to Enguerrand of Saint Pol, the crusaders are able to seize two towers guarding the bridge over the river Far (Orontes). Emir Garsion (Yaghi-Siyan) prepares to defend Antioch.

IV: The crusaders encircle the city. Gossier of Aire gains possession of emir Fabur's steed. After several skirmishes, the besiegers erect a wooden tower. Dead Turks are dug up in a cemetery and decapitated, and their heads are catapulted into the city. The crusaders suffer from a shortage of food. Again the Turks attempt a sortie, again they are repulsed. At the height of the fray Godfrey cleaves one of his opponents in twain. Raimbaud Creton slaughters some two hundred Saracens who had sought refuge under the bridge over the Far. V: The Tatars or rifflers of the army roast the bodies of the fallen Turks and eat the human flesh. When negotiations for a truce break down, the enraged Garsion orders Reginald Porquet, a recently captured Christian knight, to be hamstrung. Sansadoine (Shams-ad-Daulah), son of Garsion, is sent with a request for help to the sultan of Persia. Hardly has he arrived at the Persian court when Soliman of Nicaea shows up with a few battered strugglers. Corbaran takes command of the force which will march to the rescue of Antioch. He is accompanied by Brohadias, one of the sultan's sons. Corbaran refuses to pay any heed to the warnings of his mother Calabre. VI: On his way to Antioch, Corbaran is unsuccessful in his attempt to storm Rohais. Meanwhile the crusaders repulse a sortie of the besieged during which the young son of emir Dacian (Firtiz) falls into their hands. They send him back to his anxious father, who promises them his support. At this point count Stephen of Blois, having learned of Corbaran's approach, withdraws for greater security to Alexandretta. Emir Dacian informs Bohemond that he will admit the Christians into Antioch. Bohemond demands of the other leaders that they yield their share of the city to him, but Raymond of Saint Gilles refuses to forgo his rights. Dacian slays his wife, who had become suspicious of his designs, and then lowers a rope ladder fastened to a merlon. Thirty-five knights scale the walls before the ladder collapses, but they are able to open one of the gates and let the rest of the army in. Antioch, with the exception of the citadel, is taken after two days of street fighting.

VII: Corbaran and his troops arrive in view of Antioch. He writes confidently to caliph Calfas and to the sultan of Persia, but again his mother Calabre informs him that he cannot hope to prevail against the soldiers of Christ. The Franks, whose turn it is to be besieged, are

tormented by the lack of food. Count Stephen of Blois advises the Greek emperor not to help the beleaguered crusaders. Peter the Provençal (Peter Bartholomew) reveals that Saint Andrew has twice appeared to him in his sleep and has designated to him the exact place where is hidden the spear with which Jesus was struck on the cross. Amid general rejoicing the Holy Lance is unearthed. A fire destroys a part of Antioch. Corbaran turns down an offer to decide the issue by means of champions chosen by both sides. Emir Amideha, who has spied on the Christians, reports back to Corbaran. VIII: The bishop of Le Fay cannot find a knight willing to carry the Holy Lance into battle. Robert of Flanders, Robert of Normandy, Godfrey of Bouillon, Tancred, Bohemond, and Hugh of Vermandois decline each in his turn an honor which would keep them from the front ranks. Raymond of Saint Gilles consents to stay inside the city to prevent Garrison from breaking out of the citadel. As the Christian leaders ride out of Antioch emir Amideha names each one to Corbaran. The battle begins. Among the first to fall are Reginald of Tor and Odo of Beauvais. The crusaders lay about them with lance, pike, and sword. Corbaran is knocked off his horse by Robert of Normandy and Brohadat is slain by Godfrey. The poet indulges in a lengthy enumeration of Christian and Moslem warriors, adducing as his authority Richard the Pilgrim. The Red Lion (Turkish, *Kıralı Arslan*), Soliman, and Santadoke succumb under the blows of Robert of Normandy, Godfrey, and Hugh of Vermandois. Several saints are seen fighting on the Christian side. The paytans are routed, but only after Godfrey has had a narrow escape. The defenders of the citadel surrender.

SECTION 2: CORBARAN'S CAPTIVES¹

After his defeat at Antioch Corbaran flees to Sarmasane (Kermanshah), where he returns to the bereaved sultan of Persia the body of his son Brohadat. Accused of treachery, Corbaran agrees to be put to death if any Christian chosen by him cannot defeat any two Saracens selected by the sultan, thus failing to prove his contention that the Christians are better fighters than the Moslems. On the advice of his mother Calabre he calls upon the Christian knights he has held prisoner since the battle of Civetot. Richard of Caumont consents, in exchange for his freedom and that of his companions, to do battle with Goliath of Nicæa and Songat of Mecca. He slays both. Goli-

¹ See Chabry's, in Hippmann, vol. II, pp. 199-226.

ath's son and Sorgak's nephew attempt with their followers to murder Corbaran and Richard of Caumont, but they are defeated by Richard and his companions. Corbaran and his newly found friends are crossing the land of King Abraham when a dragon pounces on Ernoul of Beauvais and proceeds to devour him. His brother Baldwin bravely pushes his sword through the heart of the monster. Corbaran is filled with admiration and can hardly restrain himself from becoming a Christian. His nephew, son of queen Florie, is carried off by a wolf. Harpin of Bourges, another of the Christian knights once held captive by Corbaran, gives chase, only to see a huge ape wrest the child from the wolf and clamber with it into a tree. Before he at last rescues the boy, Harpin has to beat off four lions. Then he is unable to prevent five highwaymen from kidnapping the young prince, but Corbaran, who has finally arrived on the scene, manages to obtain the release of his nephew. With Corbaran's approval, the Christian knights ride toward Jerusalem. On the way they join up with the other crusaders.

SECTION 3: THE TAKING OF JERUSALEM³

I: Godfrey of Bouillon, several other leaders, and ten thousand knights leave the main part of the army at La Mahomerie and ride close to the holy city. While they are foraging in the valley of Jehoshaphat, they are attacked by Cornumarant and fifty thousand Saracens. At this critical juncture they are joined by Richard of Caumont, Harpin of Bourges, and the other knights formerly held captive by Corbaran. A call is sent out for help, but the Turks are driven back into Jerusalem before the arrival of the rest of the crusaders. That night Thured and Bohemond raid Caesarea and on their way back are attacked by the emir of Ascalon. Fortunately for them several saints enter the fray on their behalf. The following day the whole army renounces its advance and reaches the top of La Montjoie, a hill from which the holy city is plainly visible. II: Godfrey and the other leaders agree on the various sectors they will occupy facing Jerusalem. King Corbadus, watching the besiegers from a high tower, is dismayed when he sees Godfrey transfix three kites with a single arrow. That night Cornumarant sallies forth with ten thousand men, but Harpin of Bourges and his companions drive them back into the city. Exhorted by the king of the Isfurs and the bishop of Marturana, the crusaders prepare a general assault.

³ *La Conquête de Jérusalem*, ed. Wikipédia.

III. The king of the Tatars is wounded, Pagan of Beauvais and Gontier of Acre are slain, and a run of Greek fire forces the besiegers to retreat. Bohemond surprises an enemy column on its way to Acre. The Saracens send out carrier pigeons asking for assistance. These are intercepted by the Christians, who modify the terms of the messages. IV. A general assault is again attempted, but hostilities are soon suspended to allow for an exchange of prisoners. Cornumarant sets out to get help from the sultan of Persia. Baldwin of Edessa follows in hot pursuit, but is surrounded by Saracens and driven to take refuge in a marsh. His armor proves insufficient protection against the leeches, and to add to his discomfort, the Turks set fire to the dry reeds. Cornumarant receives a promise of aid from the sultan of Persia. V. The besiegers are told when and how to assault Jerusalem. They attack between the Gates of St. Stephen and David, but are unsuccessful on the first day. On the following day, a Friday, Thomas of Marle has himself hoisted up to the battlements on the spears of thirty of his men and manages to open one of the gates. The crusaders pour into the city. Corbadas surrenders the Tower of David. Godfrey is chosen as ruler of the new kingdom but refuses to wear a crown. Most of the Christian lords are about to return to their native lands when they receive news that Cornumarant is advancing on Jerusalem at the head of a huge army. VI. Corbadas and his son meet in Barbais. While foraging in the valley of Jehoshaphat, Cornumarant is taken prisoner. Raymond of Saint Gilles falls into the hands of the Turks. Corbadas tells the sultan of Persia that his son is held captive within Jerusalem. Cornumarant is exchanged for Raymond. Before he is freed he is made to witness a parade of the Christian garrison in which Godfrey has the same men file by over and over again. The sultan's army approaches Jerusalem.

VII: On the caliph's advice, the Saracens display their treasures. Eager for booty, Peter the Hermit and his followers rush forth. He is taken prisoner. Threatened with death, Peter agrees to become a Moslem. The sultan sends an envoy to Godfrey ordering him to surrender Jerusalem and abjure the Christian faith. Wishing to impress the messenger, Godfrey repeats his previous stratagem of having the same men file by several times. To cap this show of strength, he cleaves a Turk in two. After failing to take the city by storm, the paynims withdraw to Ramla. While praying in the Temple Godfrey is reassured by several signs that God's help will be forthcoming. Hugh of Vermandois and the other chieftains arrive in Jerusalem. The crusaders ride forth in the direction of Ramla. As their battalions draw near, Peter the Hermit names the leaders to the sultan: Godfrey, Robert of Normandy,

Hugh of Vermandois, Bohemond, Tancred, Rotrou of Perche, Stephen of Albermarle (Blons?), and the "king" of the Infans. VIII: The sultan of Persia exhorts his thirteen remaining sons to avenge the death of their brother Brohadus. The poem lists the many and sundry peoples comprising the sultan's army. The battle starts with Godfrey slaying Sinagon, the sultan's eldest son. There follows a series of jousts. Bohemond kills king Corbadus, and Lucabel, the king's brother, is slain by Tancred. Baldwin of Edessa lays low Cornumarans. Saint George and Saint Maurice are seen fighting the infidels. Peter the Hermit regains his freedom and promptly dispatches Sanguin, another of the sultan's sons. The paysons are routed. The bishop of Marturana's prayer is answered when the sun is stopped in its course and the light of day prolonged. During the pursuit, Baldwin of Edessa and Raimbaut Creton are cut off from the other knights, but are finally rescued. The sultan enters a boat at Acre and sails away to safety. Enguerrand of Saint Pol is solemnly buried. Funeral honors are also bestowed on Cornumarans, the brave enemy whose heart, when cut out from his body, fills a helmet.

Comments: Part two of Cycle f is apparently the work of a versifier named Graindor of Douai, who amalgamated the compositions of three earlier poets, no one of which survives in its original form. The first of these, written by a certain Richard le Pelerin (Richard the Pilgrim), who may have taken part in the First Crusade, told of the taking of Antioch (*La Chanson d'Antioche*); the second (*Les Chétifs*), which in its present form contains a statement that it was composed at the request of Raymond of Antioch, narrated the fictitious adventures of six followers of Peter the Hermit who through their boldness and resourcefulness supposedly won the friendship of their captor Corbaran (Kerbogha); while the third related the siege and storming of Jerusalem (*La Conquête de Jérusalem*). In laisse 1 of section I Graindor of Douai names himself and implies that his song has for subject the First Crusade in its entirety:

Ses, pray be still and end your chatter,
If you wish to hear a noble song.
Never has a jongleur recited a better one;
It tells of the holy city, so worthy of reverence,
In which God allowed his body to be wounded and barred,
To be struck with a lance and nailed to the cross
Jerusalem it is called by its right name.
Those newly fledged jongleurs who sing this song
Leave out its opening part,

But Graindor of Douai has no need to do likewise,
He who has written all in verses.
Now you will hear of Jerusalem
And of those who went to seize the Sepulchre,
How they assembled their armies,
In France, in Berry, in neighbouring Auvergne,
Aragon, Calabria, down to Sicily on the sea,
Far-sung Wales, there they gathered their forces,
And in many there I know not by name;
Of such a pilgrimage you never heard tell.
For God they suffered many hardships;
Thirst, heat, and cold, lack of food and sleep;
Our Lord could not help but reward them
And call their souls to him on high.

The beginning of Graindor's long narrative (about twenty thousand lines), with its emphasis on the six followers of Peter the Hermit taken prisoner by Kerbogha, is evidently borrowed from *Les Chétifs*; what follows is mostly based on Richard le Pèlerin's *Chanson d'Antioche*; the lifting of the siege of Antioch brought about by the battle the crusaders won on June 28, 1098, is followed by a very lengthy segment drawn from *Les Chétifs*; when the final section, which deals with the siege of Jerusalem, is reached, there is no clear indication as to the moment Graindor ceases using the *Chétifs* and starts to paraphrase the *Conquête de Jérusalem*. Although Graindor wrote in rhymed alexandrines, it is entirely possible that one or more of his predecessors composed in a different meter and was satisfied with assonance. Any historian of the First Crusade interested in assessing the factual value of Graindor's work should always remember that his "Song of Jerusalem" represents an extensive reassembling of three poems which have not survived in their original form, undertaken in order to fuse their contents and thereby create the impression of a unified narrative. He should also bear in mind that Graindor's compilation has not been published as transcribed in the manuscripts, but was arbitrarily carved up in three different editions (1848, 1848, 1877) by two different editors (Paulin Paris, Célestin Hippeau).

Richard le Pèlerin must have written his *Chanson d'Antioche* not long after the First Crusade, if he is to be identified, as seems very likely, with the author of a song of Antioch who is taken to task by the chronicler Lambert of Andres for not having included in his poem any mention of Arnold of Gates (d. 1138), presumably because that worthy had turned down the poet's request for a pair of shoes. The contents of Richard's poem can be reconstructed, at least in summary fashion, by comparing Graindor's *résumé* with the other accounts

which derive from Richard: the Latin one by Albert of Aachen, the extant fragment from Gregory Bechada's Provençal *Canzo d'Antiocha*, and the Spanish *Gran conquista de Ultramar*. Such a comparison shows that Graudor does not seem to have made any radical changes in Richard's narrative except in cantos VI and VII of his *Antioche*, for which Robert the Monk is the main source.¹⁰

The *Chérifs* may have been composed in Syria. According to a statement which appears in Graudor's revised version of the poem (Hippau, II, 213), its author wrote at the request of Raymond, prince of Antioch (d. 1149), and was rewarded with a canonry at Saint Peter's in that city. Anwar Hafeez claims that since the *Chérifs* manifests such intimate knowledge of Syria, its land, and its people, only a native of that country or a long-time resident could possibly be its author. Roger Goossens, though somewhat skeptical of all the local color which Hafeez professes to find in the *Chérifs*, has nevertheless strengthened the case for a "Syrian" origin of the poem by pointing out that the themes, situations, and inspiration (struggles with wild animals, service of a Christian under a Saracen, desire to reconcile hostile peoples living side by side, and so forth) resemble similar material found in *Digenes Akritas* and other Byzantine epics. Urban T. Holmes and Claude Cahen, who also find themselves in general agreement with Hafeez, believe that the adventures ascribed to Harpin of Bontpes and his companions might well reflect the experiences of Bohemond I of Antioch and his cousin Richard of the Principate while they were prisoners of the Saracens.¹¹

La Conquête de Jérusalem is the title that Hippau chose for section 3 of Graudor of Douai's account of the First Crusade when he decided to publish it independently from the other two sections. Section 3, as is the case for the other two sections of part two, represents a revised version of older material, which at one time probably constituted an independent poem, though it may also have started as a sequel tacked on to Richard le Pèlerin's *Antioche*. The unrevised *Jérusalem*, still recognizable in the *Gran conquista de Ultramar*, was his-

10. See Dupont-Querc, "La Composition de la *Chanson d'Antioche*," *Revue*, LXXXIII (1902), 1-25, 216-245; on p. 216 she cites Lambert's *Christian Glossaire et Antioche* (MS-D81), col. Dm. C. de Godesfrey latinogrecus (Paris, 1835), p. 30. She believes that the anonymous author of the *Geste Froissartien* borrowed his epic materialism from Richard le Pèlerin. See also Lewis A. M. Salingar, *La Chanson d'Antioche: Étude historique et critique* (Paris, 1968).

11. Cf. Othello Villa, *Historia antiochenia*, X, 21 (ed. Marjorie Chabault, V [Oxford, 1915], 150-157); Roger Goossens's review of Hafeez's book in *Byzantion*, VII (1913), 706-722; Urban T. Holmes and William M. Mitchell, "Some Problems of the *Chérifs*," *Romantic Review*, XXVIII (1937), 99-106; and Cahen, *La Syrie du nord à l'époque des croisades et la principauté franque d'Antioche* (IFT, 80, 1, Paris, 1946), pp. 548-576.

tonically more accurate than its *réfacement*, which suffers from the injective of incidents and episodes similar to those found in *Antioche* and presumably borrowed from Richard le Pèlerin (or even possibly by Graildor from his own version of *Antioche*). Anouar Hatem has attempted to prove that the older *Adramaleu* was, like the original *Chérif*, written in the Latin Orient, but Suzanne Duparc-Quoe's counterclaim that it was composed in northern France is based on more impressive evidence.¹²

C. *The First Cycle: The Kings of Jerusalem*

Raymond of Saint Gilles, Bohemond, Tancred, Harpin of Bourges, John of Als, the king of the Tartars, the bishop of Porez, and the abbot of Ficamp promise Godfrey that they will stay with him in the Holy Land. Corbaran receives baptism at the hands of the bishop of Marharana, and his sister Florie (also called Matroline) becomes the wife of Godfrey. Meanwhile the siege of Acre has begun. Tancred obtains possession of Caesarea. He joins with the amir Dodekin (Tughtiglin). The resistance of Acre ends when the besiegers start catapulting beehives onto the battlements. Godfrey angers Heraclius, the patriarch of Jerusalem, by asking for relics to send his mother, countess Ida. The late prelate does not hesitate to poison the king. Heraclius conspires with Tancred to place Bohemond on the throne, but cannot prevent Baldwin of Edessa from taking his brother's place. Heraclius dies in prison and is succeeded by Henry, archbishop of Tyre. Death also claims John of Als and Harpin of Bourges. Baldwin is taken prisoner. In order to guarantee the payment of his ransom to the sultan of Persia, he surrenders his younger daughter Beatrice (Yvette) as a hostage. When later she returns home, she reveals that she has been ravished by Blugadas, king of Aleppo, and becomes a sister of charity at the hospital at Acre. The elder daughter, Ida, had married Amaurie of Auxerre, who succeeds Baldwin on the latter's death. Amaurie is king of Jerusalem for only three years. His posthumous son Baldwin inherits the crown. The widowed Ida marries Baldwin of Sebourg (Le Bourg), a cousin of Hugh of Vermandois. With his own hand Baldwin of Sebourg kills the infamous Blugadas. At this point of the narrative Saladin makes his appearance. Son of king Eufarin of Alexandria,

12. Duparc-Quoe, *Le Cycle*, pp. 1-26, 275-300.

he becomes master of all Egypt through the assassination of his overlord the Ayyubids. At first, he makes little headway against young king Baldwin, who is ably assisted by three powerful lords, Baldwin of Falkenberg, count of Ramla, his brother Bahān, count of Tripoli, and Regnald of Châtillon, castellan of Kerak. Unfortunately the young king is stricken with leprosy and cannot prevent Regnald from violating a truce both sides had promised to respect. Saladin besieges Kerak. King Baldwin manages to raise the siege and renew the truce. Soon afterward he dies without having named a successor.¹³

In the closing lines of part two of Cycle I reference is made to another poem in which the taking of Acre will be recounted, as well as the founding of the military orders. Part three does contain an account of the siege and capture of Acre, but nothing is said of the first appearance of either the Knights Templar or the Knights Hospitaller. As may be gathered from the summary given above, part three of Cycle I presents a very fanciful, yet not entirely unhistorical, recital of what took place in the Holy Land between the battle of Ascalon and the death of Baldwin IV. Godfrey of Bouillon's marriage to the fictitious Florie and the conversion of her supposed brother Corbaram are, of course, examples of unbridled fantasy. The drastic pruning down of the family tree of the kings of Jerusalem is worth noting: Godfrey's two immediate successors, his brother Baldwin I and his cousin Baldwin II, are telescoped into just one Baldwin; Baldwin II's son-in-law Fulk of Anjou and the latter's two sons, Baldwin III and Amauric, are replaced by the still more composite Amauric of Anserre. Despite his disappearance from the roster of kings, Baldwin of Le Bourg is reborn as Baldwin of Sebourg, who will become the second husband of Ida, the supposed widow of Amauric of Anserre. Baldwin II's eldest daughter, Helleand, and his youngest, Yvette, are now named Ida and Beatrice. Although it is historically true that Yvette was as a small child for a time a hostage in the hands of the Saracens, it is unlikely that she was sexually molested by them during her captivity, but it is indeed a fact that she later became a nun, abbess of Bethany. One may safely assume that patriarch Heraclius, who in the 1180's had for mistresses the notorious Pasque de Rivet (*Madame la Patriarchesse*) and was rumored to have instigated the poisoning of William of Tyre, was the prototype of the nonhistorical patriarch Heraclius stated to have

13. For a detailed summary and analysis of part three of Cycle I see Emile Roy, "Les Poèmes français relatifs à la première croisade: le poème de 1196 et ses sources," *Revue de l'histoire de l'église en France*, IV (1838), 421-488.

been the contemporary and possessor of Godfrey of Bouillon. Finally, young king Baldwin IV's leprosy and Regnald of Kerak's misdeeds correspond to the historical accounts.

D. The First Cycle: An Evaluation

Cycle I, as a whole, is difficult to assess. Quite apart from the fact that it runs to well over thirty thousand lines, it suffers from having been edited piecemeal and in incomplete form. The editor of the *Chétifs* did not attempt to give the complete text of that poem, and part three (*The Kings of Jerusalem*) lies buried in the manuscript; it is a very late addition to Cycle I. It is different in spirit from the first two parts, which do evince a certain amount of structural unity. Whereas part three is essentially a rhymed chronicle, however distorted its chronology and presentation of facts, parts one and two are epic in character; they celebrate the heroic deeds of one man, be he the swan-knight or his grandson Godfrey of Bouillon. It should also be noted that part one leads straight into part two. The prophecies foreshadowing the exploits of Godfrey and his brothers during the First Crusade are echoed in part two by reminders of the deeds of their supposed ancestor, the swan-knight. Cornoumant, the alleged leader of the Saracens during the siege of Jerusalem by the Christians, has already appeared as Godfrey's chief antagonist in part one. In addition, there is hardly any change of ethos between the two parts, at least from a medieval point of view. In part one first the swan-knight, then his grandson Godfrey, fight to protect damsels and ladies in distress; they are the staunch champions of rightful causes, and miraculous occurrences accompany their progress through life. The same struggle in behalf of a cause which entitles divine assistance is found in part two, only here it is Christ to whom Godfrey and his companions seek to ensure his inheritance. Yet it must be admitted that part two cannot compare with the *Chanson de Roland* when it comes to capturing the religious fervor and the indomitable spirit which animated the crusaders in their struggle with the Moslem world.

E. The Second Cycle

Cycle II, as already stated, belongs to the middle of the fourteenth century and comprises three different poems: *Le Chevalier au Cygne* or *Godfroid de Bouillon* (as tale I shall shorten to *Godfroi de Bouillon*), *Baudouin de Seboure*, and the *Bâtard de Bouillon*. As will be seen by the following comments, these three poems, without ceasing to be epics, are visibly influenced by other types of literature such as the Arthurian romance and the fabliau.

The author of *Godfroi de Bouillon* (33,180 alexandrines) has completely recast and rephrased parts one and two of Cycle I. He almost never preserves a line of one of the older epics (e.g., GB 16091 = *Jérusalem* 142, GB 16112 = 784). His account of the swan-knight and the early exploits or *enfances* of Godfrey is considerably shorter than that of his Cycle I predecessors, but, when Commanant appears on the scene, the *Godfroi* poet must have felt that the story as he understood it — a romance located in the Orient — had at last begun, for from then on he becomes prolix, prone to additions and embroiderings instead of his former relatively restrained self. His fancy is especially unimpeded when he describes (vv. 13832–13963) Godfrey's courting of the Saracen princess Flore, which he imagines as taking place at the very time the crusaders are advancing on Jerusalem! The climactic episode of the poem, the poisoning of Godfrey by patriarch Heraclius (vv. 27512–28537), is narrated with a certain amount of dramatic skill. Tancred is made to appear as the accomplice, however reluctant, of the murderer, and we are told that the day will come when Godfrey's mother, countess Ida of Boulogne, will exact a terrible revenge for the death of her son. On a number of occasions the *Godfroi* poet has borrowed details from William of Tyre, or more probably from the Old French translation of William's Latin text.¹⁴

Baudouin de Seboure (about 23,000 alexandrines) is concerned with the *enfances* of the third ruler of the Frankish kingdom of Jerusalem, Baldwin II. The fourth son of Bos, the swan-knight's sister, Baldwin is brought up by the castellan of Seboure in complete ignorance of his illustrious parentage. He becomes a much-traveled knight-errant, shuttling back and forth between the west and the east with surprising alacrity, the hero of many a preposterous adventure. At long last he learns that he is related to Godfrey of Bouillon and Baldwin and is in the line of succession to the throne of Jerusalem. He then settles down to what history expects of him by accepting the lordship of Edessa.

14. *Excerpt-Quint*: Note some thirty such borrowings, *Le Cycle*, pp. 110–115.

from his cousin Baldwin I. When *Baudouin de Sebaste* ends, Cycle II has not progressed chronologically beyond the point which marks the close of *Godfrey de Bouillon*: Baldwin I is still planning to attack the five Saracen rulers of Mecca, brothers who go by the names of Esclarmart, Hector, Marbrun, Sarloine, and Taillefor.¹⁵

The *Bâtard de Bouillon* (6,546 alexandrines) opens with Baldwin I's campaign against the five kings of Mecca, his excursion to the shores of the Red Sea, and a sojourn of five years in the land of Péerie, where his hosts are king Arthur and Morgan le Fay. After Baldwin's return to Jerusalem the narrative focuses on still another Baldwin, who happens to be the illegitimate son of the king and the Saracen princess Sinamonde. The Bastard of Bouillon is the "hero" of a series of episodes which at best might be termed unfortunate. Still in his teens, he quarrels with a cousin and bushes in his skull with a chessboard; not long afterward he stabs to death his half-brother Ourry; he then proceeds to marry a Saracen girl against her wishes, when she becomes unfaithful, he allows her to be burned at the stake, and so on. The narrative shifts back to Baldwin I, only to recount his death. Tancred is dispatched to Boulogne to offer the crown to Eustace, the brother of the deceased monarch. Apprired of his arrival, countess Ide has Tancred summarily hanged. The poem closes with the ominous statement that the violent deaths of Godfrey and Tancred will so divide their respective partisans that eventually they will be unable to stem the onrushing tide of Saladin's armies. Did the Second Cycle end at this point, or did it, like the First Cycle, reach the end of the twelfth century? If we agree with those scholars who have recently given their close attention to Cycle II, we must assume that the fifteenth-century romance *Saladin* represents a prolixification of a lost fourteenth-century poem which continued and completed the narrative undertaken in the *Bâtard de Bouillon*.¹⁶

15. See Edmond René Labande, *Étude sur Baudouin de Sébastie, charmes de geste. Légende politique de Baudouin II de Boulogne, roi de Jérusalem* (Paris, 1946).

16. See Gauthier and Croix, *Le Quatrième cycle*.

IV

FINANCING THE CRUSADES

Western Europe never wholly succumbed to those disruptive forces which threatened it with a moneyless economy. At the end of the eleventh century money was a common, but not a cheap, commodity. In the succeeding centuries the supply of money increased and money consequently cheapened; credit instruments were developed and banking practices established. During the first two crusades the scarcity of money made it rise in value as the crusaders competed with one another to obtain it by selling their goods.¹ In the thirteenth century the

The primary sources for this chapter are not scattered in terms of a comprehensive bibliography. Many chronicles of the crusades as well as a number of others have proved useful. Charters of value have been found in many countries and collections, both published and unpublished. Papal and royal letters and accounts have been among the most valuable sources and will be cited in the notes.

No comprehensive study of the financing of the crusades has been published, although Olin Carstenius has recently surveyed "The Financing of the Crusades in the Twelfth Century," in *Crusader Studies in the History of the Crusading Kingdom of Jerusalem*, ed. Benjamin Z. Kedar et al. (Jerusalem, 1962), pp. 64-88. Most secondary work has been in the field of statistical support, where William E. East's works are preeminent. *The Hibernians of Norway* (Oslo, 1926), *Papal Revenue in the Middle Ages* (2 vols., New York, 1934), *Financial Relations of the Papacy with England in 1137* (Cambridge, Mass., 1937), and *Financial Relations of the Papacy with England, 1137-1154* (Cambridge, Mass., 1962). His bibliography provides the best introduction to the materials relating to the subject. Adolf Groll, *Die päpstlichen Kreuzfahrtsensteuern des 12. Jahrhunderts* (Bonn, 1932), is the fullest account of papal taxes but is subject to corrections. Sydney E. Mitchell, *Monks in Medieval England* (New Haven, 1931), is also of special usefulness. On the role of the military orders the classic work is Léopold V. Delisle, *Mémoire sur les ordres militaires des Hospitaliers, des Templiers et du Mont aux Croix de France*, Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres, XXXIII; Paris, 1839, to which may be added Jules Poyet, *Des hospitaliers au moyen-âge*, in *Revue des études médiévales* (Paris, 1918). Robert Chénest, *Rôle des monastères comme établissements de crédit* (Paris, 1901), is still fundamental on the credit transactions of the crusades. On the privileges of the crusaders see André Bréchet, *La Condition juridique des croisés et le privilège de crois* (Paris, 1900), James A. Brundage, *Medieval Canon Law and the Crusader* (Madison, Wis., 1906), and Maxime Fauriol, *Papal Crusading Policy, 1144-1271* (Lyon, 1973). It may be worthwhile to note that L. Fagn-Duchet, *Il faut de l'argent: Surveys d'une monnaie* (Caen, 1886), and other works based on the Collection Cosseton in the *Bibliothèque nationale de médecine*, cf. Alexander Carlberg, Philipp H. August, *König von Preussisch* (4 vols., Leipzig, 1879-1923), II, 303-324.

1. August C. Köp, *The First Crusade* (Princeton, 1931), pp. 17-27. Further, the writers caused a scarcity of goods wherever they went, and the crusaders paid high prices in money which was dearly bought.

availability of more money and credit made both saving and borrowing easier. Though the situation changed thus during the crusading era, it is well to emphasize at the beginning that the crusades were always financed. When Urban II issued his call for the First Crusade, he recognized specifically that his crusaders would have to collect the money necessary for their expenses. Then and later there were some who took the vow but could not themselves find the money to pay the costs of their journey. In the financing of the crusades Innocent III saw the key to their success or failure: "If the money be not wanting, the men will not be wanting."²

Like the pilgrims who had made the pilgrimage to the Holy Land for so many centuries, the crusaders were individually responsible for carrying out their vows.³ How could the individual crusader finance his journey? He might look first to his current income, but it will be shown later in this chapter that few crusaders had sufficient cash income both to pay their obligations at home and to support themselves decently on a crusade. If one was wealthy enough to support himself from current income, then he had to arrange to resupply himself with money as he needed it. The Holy Land lay beyond a long and dangerous passage by land or sea, and the receipt of money from home was correspondingly uncertain. On Louis IX's first crusade a shipment of money to the king was lost at sea, though at least one nobleman planned to send home to resupply himself.⁴ From the middle of the twelfth century, it is true, the Templars provided facilities for the transfer of crusaders' funds, and merchants came to provide similar services by lending money in the east to be repaid in the west.

Many crusaders, however, may have hoped to support themselves with plunder. The mob led by Peter the Hermit and others like it undertook to support themselves by robbing fellow Christians in Hungary and Greece. The Jews were robbed as well as murdered by some of the crusaders. More justifiable was the booty won from the Moslems. On the First Crusade the booty of the Moslem armies defeated at Dorylaeum and at Antioch, as well as the tribute and ransom of those who had the misfortune to dwell in the path of the crusaders from Antioch to Jerusalem, all enriched the Christians. Stephen of Blois wrote home from Antioch that he had more silver and gold than when he left

2. *Ibid.*, *Crescilla*, XXII, 498.

3. On pilgrimages and pilgrims see Henry L. Savage, chapter I in volume IV of the present work. On crusaders' private financial arrangements see Constable, "The Financing of the Crusades," pp. 75-89.

4. *Harvard Park, Christiana regens*, ed. Henry E. Luard (Rolls Series, 57), V, 228, and VI, 155-162.

France.³ Later crusaders also benefited by the spoils of their conquests. King Richard I of England profited enormously by his capture of Cyprus, and later in Palestine he did not scorn to capture a rich caravan. He and king Philip II Augustus of France divided the spoils of Acre, and from his share of the captives alone Philip hoped to obtain ransoms worth 100,000 bezants.⁴ The capture of Damietta in 1216 and again in 1249 provided the crusading armies with quantities of precious goods, but they probably lost as much at Mansurah as they gained at Damietta.

The prudent crusader planned to finance his journey before he departed, to take great bags and chests of money with him. He could use his savings, if he had any. It has been suggested that count Robert II of Flanders may have financed his participation in the First Crusade from his treasury.⁵ Stephen of Blois went on two crusades without paying any heed to his financial arrangements, and he may have had sufficient savings. Theobald III of Champagne, a century later, had saved a great treasure for the Fourth Crusade, which he bequeathed to it on his premature death.⁶ And the countless legacies and gifts that were made to the crusades from the end of the twelfth century on represented increased savings. Some crusaders may have saved the whole of the cost of their journey, but two general considerations render it doubtful. First, the scarcity of money early in the crusading era militated against savings *per se*. Second, when money became more plentiful, social attitudes which had been engendered earlier continued to inhibit savings, since a chivalric society regarded money rather as a means of consumption than as a means of investment. A gentleman did not save money; he spent it. A large expenditure, such as a crusade, had to be made from his capital, whether chattels or lands. While this second consideration perhaps did not apply to the "little people", the bourgeoisie and the free peasants, one may suppose that the chevaliers, who were the crusaders *par excellence*, used what savings they might have had but that they generally found them insufficient.

³ Heinrich Haguenauer, ed., *Die Kreuzfahrerbriefe aus den Jahren 1095-1108, aus Erläuterungen* (Düsseldorf, 1887), p. 149.

⁴ *Monarchia parapsitronum et geste regis Ricardi*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, 18-15, pp. 192-204, 205-211, 222-234; *Aschmann, L'Étude de la guerre sainte*, ed. Gaston Paris (Collection des documents inédits sur l'histoire de France, Paris, 1897), I, 4373-4386.

⁵ Marshall M. Knapp, "Robert II of Flanders on the First Crusade," *The Crusades and Other Promoted Ranges Presented to Dana C. Adams*, ed. Louis J. Paxton (New York, 1922), p. 12.

⁶ Geoffrey of Villehardouin, *La Conquête de Constantinople*, ed. Édouard Fauré (Les Classiques de l'histoire de France au moyen-âge 2 vols., Paris, 1904-1915), I, 96-97, 44-45; Robert of Clari, *La Conquête de Constantinople*, ed. Philippe Lericq (Les Classiques Français du moyen-âge, 52, Paris, 1924), p. 4.

From the First Crusade to the last the alienation of property by crusaders reveals the failure of booty, current income, and savings to support their expeditions. A man who had a family or expected to return from the Holy Land would hesitate to dispose of the source of his and his family's livelihood, and it may be presumed that men sold their lands only as a last resort. But the examples are too numerous to name more than a few. For the First Crusade Godfrey of Bouillon sold his county of Verdun and other lands to bishop Richer, while for the Crusade of 1101 viscount Odo Arpin of Bourges sold his city and county to king Philip I of France.⁹ Richard the Lionhearted sold the homage of the king of Scotland, which his father had so recently won, and swore he would sell London if he could find a buyer.¹⁰ Fifty years later the count of Milcon, John de Brains, sold his fief to king Louis IX.¹¹ Throughout the period less prominent men sold what they could of their lands, burgage tenements, and titles.¹² As Ambroise wrote of the Third Crusade,

And none to sell his heritage
Delayed the holy pilgrimage.¹³

Though sales of chattels can rarely be documented from the records, the chroniclers leave no doubt that crusaders also disposed of their stock and other valuables as well. For example, Simon of Montfort sold his wood of Leicester for 1,000 pounds to finance his crusade in 1240.¹⁴

Crusaders preferred not to sell their property outright. Count John of Milcon sold his fief subject to the provision of a life pension for

⁹ Orderic Vitalis, *Historia ecclesiastica*, ed. Auguste Le Prévost (Paris: de l'histoire de France, 5 vols., Paris, 1824-1833), IV, 14, 18; *Chronicon Sancti Roberti Arundinensis*, ed. Ludwig C. Bethmann and Wilhelm Wattenbach, *MGH SS*, VIII, 401.

¹⁰ Roger of Howden, *Chronica*, ed. Stubbs (Rolls Series, 315, 316, 317-18, 34-35, William of Newburgh, *Historia rerum Anglorum*, ed. Richard Bateson in *Chronicles of the Reigns of Stephen, Henry II, and Richard I* (Rolls Series, 123-7), pp. 304-104.

¹¹ *Excerpta de valore decimarum*, ed. Alexandre Teulet et al. (5 vols., Paris, 1853-1869), II, no. 2776.

¹² E.g., *Les Exploits de Gillespie IX*, ed. Lucien Aubrey (Paris, 1894 ff.), II, no. 4304; Beatrice N. Szaloching, *English Participation in the Crusades, 1150-1229* (München, Wac 1935), appendix A, 112, 1154, nos 1714; *Chronica monasterii de Haina*, ed. Edmond A. Bred (Rolls Series, 43), I, 220; "Document concernant les seigneurs de Hain," ed. Arthur de Méry, *AGI*, U-2 (1864), 154-163; *Cartulaire de la Seigneurie de Grand-Benavent*, ed. René Marlot et al. (Chartes, 1899), no. 130; F.H.O., Great Council of the Duchy of Lancaster: DL 26/5 fol. 75, F.H.O., Assent Donds, E 214/2197, 3382: 884. col., MS. Marston 92, fol. 34, 171-173.

¹³ Ambroise, *The Chronicle of Richard Lion-Heart*, ed. and tr. John L. LaMonte and Marion J. Habert (CUP, 34 New York, 1941), lines 47-48.

¹⁴ Matthew Paris, *Chronica majora*, IV, 7.

himself and his wife Alix. A lesser English crusader made a gift of land to a religious house in return for which the canons promised to make regular payments to his wife while he was gone on the crusade.¹² For the First Crusade duke Godfrey of Lower Lorraine sold his castle of Bouillon to bishop Osbert of Liège for £,500 pounds with the right to redeem it if he returned, and duke Robert II of Normandy pawned his duchy to his brother king William Rufus of England for 10,000 marks which William took from the churchmen of England.¹³ In 1219 Baldwin II of Courtenay, the Latin emperor of Constantinople, in his dire need, pledged his county of Namur to Louis IX for 50,000 livres of Paris; he was also to pledge to Venetian merchants his empire's holiest relic, the Crown of Thorns, and even his son and heir, Philip.¹⁴ There are but a few famous instances of the loans by which crusaders perhaps most commonly financed their journeys. They borrowed from kings and princes, from monasteries and bishops, from lay lords and merchants, from whoever had money to lend.¹⁵

The terms of the loans vary. Some were interest-free, like the 70,000 livres of Tours lord Edward of England (the future king Edward I) borrowed from Louis IX in 1269.¹⁶ A recognized form, however, gave the lender the use of the pledged land for a period of years, the income comprising his repayment. Under this *vif gage* the lender took a certain amount of risk. The more common form of loan, consequently, was the *mort gage*, which provided for the lender to have the usufruct of the land as interest, the borrower to repay the principal, usually before he got his property back.¹⁷ From the patristic period on, the church had condemned the taking of interest on money loans as usury. The *vif gage* was not held to be usurious, since the lender was expected to regain essentially the principal of his loan. The papacy permitted clerical crusaders to pledge their benefices under these terms. Mortgages, on the other hand, fell under the condemnation of pope Eu-

12. *Steuchling, English Participation*, appendix A, 1296.

13. On Godfrey's financial arrangements see John C. Ascham, *The Ancestry and Life of Godfrey of Bouillon* (Bloomington, Ind., 1947), pp. 31-32, on the pawning of Normandy see Charles W. Diehl, Robert Curthose, *Duke of Normandy* (Cambridge, Mass., 1900), pp. 91-92 and appendix D, nos. 22-24, 34, 44.

14. *Lettres du roi des chrétiens*, II, no. 2744, and III, nos. 7777, 7854, Robert L. Wolff, "Marriage and Redemption of an Emperor's Son," *Speculum*, XXIX (1954), 43-44.

15. E.g., *Cartulaire de S.-Jean-en-Vallée de Chartres*, ed. Marie F. Chartes, 1906, no. 66; *RHCX* XII, 94-95. *Calendar of Documents Preserved in France*, ed. John H. Bousard (London, 1879), pp. 73, 244. *Steuchling, English Participation*, appendix A, I, 2, II, 104, III 34, and IV 27, *Clare Hall, Henry III, 1214-1272* (London, 1907), pp. 363, 393, 394.

16. Jean F. Vialon-Camus, "Le Financement de la croisade anglaise de 1272," *Revue de l'École des chartes*, CXXIX (1942), pp. 113-121.

17. *Gibertus, Sella dei monasterii*, pp. 1-10.

genius III, and under Alexander III the papacy undertook to enforce its laws against usury. Law-abiding clergy, especially the monasteries, which had found mortgages profitable investments, gave up the business,²¹ but other Christians continued to ignore or evade the prohibition of usury. The merchants of southern France and, above all, of Italy were commonly known as moneylenders. In the thirteenth century their business extended throughout Europe, and even in the Holy Land itself they made loans to needy crusaders. In addition, the Jews provided a source of money at interest, though their role in credit transactions must not be exaggerated.

The privileges of popes and princes for the crusaders reveal the great importance of credit arrangements in financing the crusades. From the First Crusade on the popes took not only the persons of the crusaders and their families but also their property under papal protection. Crusaders who found it difficult to secure the return of pledged lands were able thus to call upon the church for help. Since at the beginning of the crusades a man could not alienate his real property without the consent of his wife and heirs, nor, if it were a fief, without the consent of his lord, and since such consent was not always forthcoming for crusaders who had to borrow money for their pilgrimages, Eugenius III in 1145 conceded to crusaders the privilege of pledging lands, even fiefs, without the consent of relatives or lords, if the latter were not themselves willing to lend the money needed. At the same time Eugenius granted crusaders a moratorium on repayment of debts and sought to free them from the payment of interest on loans while they were under the cross. In 1188 Philip Augustus issued a long and detailed ordinance on crusaders' debts that gave royal authority to the "crusaders' term", as it was called, in France. Innocent III went further and ordered that crusaders should not only have a moratorium on payment of the principal of the debts but be immune from interest, creditors who took interest from crusaders should be forced to make restitution. These privileges led to the abuse of the crusade as a means of avoiding creditors, and from the middle of the thirteenth century contracts commonly included a clause renouncing the crusaders' privilege.²² From the point of view of the crusader, whose responsibility it was to find the wherewithal for his costly expedition, respite of debts and especially prohibition of usury doubt-

21. *Ibid.*, pp. 79-80.

22. *Idem*, *La Condition juridique des croisés*; Edith C. Brunsch, "The Origins of the Thirteenth-Century Privilege of the Crusaders," *American Journal of Theology*, V (1904), 279-290; Brunsch, *Medieval Canon Law and the Crusades*, chap. vi.

less seemed only just. From the point of view of the creditors, these privileges represented a real — and usually involuntary — financial contribution to the crusades.

Finally, family and friends must often have aided the crusaders. The nature of the transactions did not require written documents to record them, and few examples can be cited. John, lord of Joinville, in describing his departure on the crusade, tells of a gift of "a great quantity of fair jewels to myself and the nine knights I had with me" made by the abbot of Saint Urbain.²³ The kings of England from Henry II to Henry III made considerable gifts to various crusaders. Henry III alone gave 500 marks to Philip d'Aubigny, one of his councillors, and more to his half-brother, Guy de Lusignan, besides a number of smaller sums to others.²⁴ One can have little doubt that many crusaders obtained much of their money through similar acts of generosity. Again, the social dimension of the crusades is apparent. Although the crusaders took their vows as individuals and were individually responsible for fulfilling them, the crusades were corporate, or at least collective, enterprises. As crusaders joined together to fight under the leadership of feudal lords, communal officers, national sovereigns, and the church, so they also organized their finances, thus transcending the individual.

From the beginning feudalism offered a device for the command and for the financing of crusades. The crusader who held his land of another crusader must almost automatically have followed his lord on the expedition to the Holy Land. The lord, for his part, desired to take a suitable measure with him to lend him dignity and power, and he would be willing to accept the company, not only of his vassals, but also of other men as a sort of temporary vassalage for the purposes of the crusade. In return the man might reasonably expect the lord to pay at least part of his expenses. On the First Crusade Bohemond took his followers into his service (*ad Bohemundi servitium*) and presumably paid their way.²⁵ At Acre both Philip Augustus and Richard took

²³ John of Joinville, *Memoirs de Saint Louis*, ed. Huet de Wailly (Paris, 1868), p. 44.

²⁴ *Calendar of Letters Patents, Henry III, 1226-1240* (London, 1917), pp. 53, 117, 476 for the Guy de Lusignan; see Harold S. Bedford, *The Lusignys in England, 1247-1258* (Aldershot, 1926), pp. 36-37.

²⁵ *Omnia Privilegia et litterae Monasterii Cisterciensis*, ed. Benedict Hill (London, 1862), pp. 8-9; cf. Steven Runciman, *A History of the Crusades* (3 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1913-1954), I, 123, where Bohemond is stated to have "raised sufficient money to pay for the expenses of all that came with him", and Frederic Deroold, "The First Crusade: Clergyman to Contemporary," in volume I of the present work, p. 236, "It is not likely that he undertook to provide for any followers, except those in his personal following."

crusaders into their pay. When Philip left, he gave the command of a body of French crusaders to duke Hugh III of Burgundy along with money to pay them. Of Richard's army it has been said, "At times he was financing not only members of his own household force but mendicant pilgrims, crusaders of all social ranks whose funds had been exhausted, and apparently also knights to whom he wanted to show favors, to say nothing of the ordinary soldier of fortune whose custom it was to fight for pay."²⁶

The relationship between the lord and his companions might be very loose: Geoffrey of Villehardouin condemned certain liegemen of count Baldwin of Flanders because they accepted 500 pounds from the count and then went to the Holy Land by a different way.²⁷ On the other hand, emperor Henry VI in 1195 published an offer to crusaders which approximated mercenary service: to 1,500 knights and the same number of sergeants he promised wages and maintenance if they would enlist in the ports of southern Italy with the masters of a fleet he was sending to the Holy Land for a year; the crusaders would have to obey the imperial commanders, to whom would also revert the *successes* of any deceased men.²⁸ Henry's army, which left little mark, may have consisted both of voluntary but poor crusaders and of mercenary soldiers. On the Fifth Crusade a large part of the army at Damietta was in the pay of the papal legate Pelagius, and many were frankly mercenaries.²⁹ The line between the mercenary and the true crusader in the company of his lord may sometimes have been drawn fine, but it existed in the minds of the men. In 1249 Joinville was proud that he set out with a decent company of his own, but in Cyprus he was glad to accept the king's pay, and he certainly did not regard himself as a mercenary. In his household accounts king Louis distinguished between "pay of knights at wages" and "gifts and commences of knights serving by the year without wages".³⁰

The communal organization of the "lesser men", the middle classes, revealed itself in their crusades, which took now the character of a huge partnership, now that of a trading company, and now that of a state enterprise. Although the Italians were the most famed participants, they were not the only middle-class crusaders. From the first, expeditions of northern mariners made their way by the Strait of Gi-

26. Siedhoff, *English Participation*, p. 74.

27. Villehardouin, *Le Conquête de Constantinople*, I, 26-27.

28. *ARGG*, *Lappon*, II (1837), 196.

29. Oliver (Schlossbach), *Die Schreyen*, ed. Hermann Hergert, *Bibliothek des Kaiserlichen Historischen Museums in Stuttgart*, CXCII (Tübingen, 1894), 258-259, 360.

30. *Annales de Saint Louis*, pp. 158-159; *ARGG*, XCII, 203-212.

brablar to the Holy Land: men of the British Isles, the Low Countries, Germany, even Scandinavia. The expedition which took Lisbon may be taken as typical of such crusades, although it was largely diverted from its original destination. The crusaders came from both sides of the North Sea and the English Channel, in large part the sailors of those seas, men neither of the chivalry nor of the peasantry. Like a commune, they elected their leaders and made policies in council and assembly. The booty won at Lisbon was shared among the members of the expedition, and presumably the other financial arrangements were similarly collective.¹⁰

The crusaders from the Italian cities organized their sacred expeditions like trading ventures. To participate in the First Crusade the Genoese nobles and merchants formed a *compagne* on the model of their earlier expeditions against the Moors. The ships were provided and outfitted by subscription; each man who subscribed or went on the crusade had a certain financial interest in the profits or losses. When the expedition ended after the capture of Caesarea, the booty was divided according to the shares held by the members in the *compagne*.¹¹ The success of this expedition led the Genoese to finance others of a similar character over the succeeding centuries.

In Venice the state was stronger than in Genoa, as may be seen in the Venetian participation in the Fourth Crusade. Villehardouin describes the process by which the Venetians made their bargain with the French crusaders. First, the French envoys spoke to the doge and his council, who, after deliberation, made their offer to the French on the part of the Venetian state. When the envoys accepted the offer, the doge, Enrico Dandolo, had still to persuade the grand council and, finally, to sway the commons at an assembly in Saint Mark's. All Venetians shared in the costs and profits of the expedition as citizens of the state, and all were encouraged by the doge to think of themselves as sharing in the merits of the crusade.¹² The corporate principle could hardly be more completely embodied.

Unlike the centralized Venetian republic, most of the states of medieval Europe were loosely organized principalities. Medieval princes took the cross not as princes but as individuals. The crusade of Robert of Normandy, like the conquest of England by his father William I, was not that of the duchy but of the duke. Not even Louis IX of France

10. Osborn, *De expugnatione Lythornensi*, ed. and tr. C. W. Duncal (CUPES), 24 (New York 1856), esp. introduction, pp. 12-16.

11. Caffaro di Cassinella, *Annali Genovesi di Caffaro e de' suoi continuatori*, ed. Luigi T. Belgrano and C. Imperiale di Sant'Angelo (5 vols., Genoa, 1880-1889), I, 5-14.

12. Villehardouin, *La Conquête de Constantinople*, I, 22-31.

could encourage or shame any very large part of his people to follow him on the crusade, much less command them. Yet by the collection of taxes to support the crusades, princes called upon their subjects as sovereigns of their states. Lords who levied the *taille*, or tallage, upon their subjects and took *aid* from their vassals could use these taxes toward financing a crusade if the occasion were accepted as lawful by their people. For his crusade in 1146 Louis VII imposed upon some of his subjects taxes which were probably *aid* and *tailles*. Count Theobald V of Blois in 1190 apparently levied a *taille* for his crusade. During the thirteenth century *aid* for going on the crusade were taken by three kings of France, counts of Champagne, counts of Nevers, a count of Poitiers, and a viscount of Limoges. The collection of the *taille* for the crusade had also become customary in France by the reign of Louis IX.³⁴ In England the crusade was not generally recognized as an occasion for *aid* and tallages, but they were sometimes asked for crusaders.³⁵ Outside France and England the available evidence is slight. When emperor Frederick II taxed the kingdom of Sicily in 1227-1228 and again in 1234 for his crusade, the basis of the collect was the *hof*.³⁶ In 1166 the nobles of the kingdom of Jerusalem granted king Amalric an *aide* of a tenth of their movables if they did not serve in his host. In several respects, however, this levy was more like the general tax taken in France and England at the same time than the older feudal *aid*.³⁷

In 1165 pope Alexander III issued a plea to the princes of western Europe for aid to the Holy Land. In response king Louis VII of France promised to give each year for five years a penny in the pound of his revenues and personal property, and the king asked his subjects lay and clerical, great and small, to contribute at the same rate (about 0.4 percent). The levy apparently did not extend to the lands of the great vassals of France unless they chose to accept it, for Henry II imposed it, with the consent of his council, in his continental possessions as well as in England and at a somewhat higher rate (two pennies the first year and one thereafter). As provided in Henry's ordinance for his French lands, each man assessed himself under oath and deposited

34. For *aid* and *taille* see Boulogne, *Le Comté de Flandre*, pp. 48-79; *ibid.*, *pass.*, 365. Mares 95, f. 5. The tax of 1146 is vaguely described by the chroniclers; see the opposing interpretations of Lutz, *Vassalage of Norwich*, pp. 1-2, and Mitchell, *Monarchy*, p. 104. Cosman, "The Financing of the Crusades," pp. 64-79, has the most recent discussion of the subject.

35. *Patent Rolls, Henry III, 1226-1227* (London, 1901), pp. 284, 310-319.

36. Richard of San Germano, *Chronica*, ed. Carlo A. Garbi (Bologna, 1934-1938), pp. 148-152, 179.

37. William of Tyre, XIX, 11 (RHC, Occ., I, 901); cf. John L. LaMonte, *Feudal Monarchy in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem* (Cambridge, Mass., 1912), pp. 179-180.

his tax in a chest in his parish church. The parish priest and two parishioners had keys to the chest and were responsible for the delivery of the monies to the bishop. The bishops were to bring the money together as they and the king would decide. The sanctions for the collection were ecclesiastical: for fraud, excommunication; for scrupulousness, remission of one third of enjoined penance. A "first crude experiment" in compulsory almsgiving, the levy of 1166 begins the history of general taxation for financing the crusades.³⁸

The peril of the Holy Land again evoked an extraordinary levy in 1183, when King Baldwin IV with the consent of a general council imposed a tax on the kingdom of Jerusalem. It was levied at the rate of one bezant on a hundred of movables and debts (and income of mercenary soldiers) and of two bezants on a hundred of the revenues of churches, monasteries, barons, and their vassals. The poor were to pay a hearth tax of one bezant or what they could; the vassals were to be taxed by their lords at the same rate. Four men were chosen in each civitas of the realm to assess and collect the tax, but the taxpayer might declare under oath that he was over-assessed and pay according to his own declaration.³⁹ Altogether the levy showed considerable development beyond that of 1166.

The kings of England and France followed the new model in levying another crusade tax on their subjects in 1185. The unit of one hundred was employed, and the annual rate was roughly the same as in Jerusalem, but the levy was taken for three years and so was the heaviest thus far collected. The sanctions remained ecclesiastical, and the tax was still administered by the clergy, though the bishops were replaced as collectors by a Templar and a Hospitaller appointed in each diocese. The exemptions of goods necessary to the taxpayer's profession preaged the Saladin Tithe.⁴⁰

In January 1188 the two kings, Henry II and Philip Augustus, took the cross together. On the urging of the papacy, they provided for the levy of another tax upon all their subjects, clerical and lay, who did not take the cross; this was the famed Saladin Tithe.⁴¹ The most striking feature of the tax was its rate, a tenth for one year of the value of income and movables, excluding the necessities of the taxpayer's

³⁸ *Lois, Ordinances of Henry II*, pp. 2-3.

³⁹ *William of Tyre*, XCIII, 21 (229C, Chr., I, 1108-1112); LaBrosse, *Latin Kingdom*, pp. 186-187.

⁴⁰ Fred A. Carr, Jr., "The Tax of 1185 in Aid of the Holy Land," *Speculum*, XXV (1950), 385-392.

⁴¹ See the accounts of Mitchell, *Beading*, pp. 12-14, 84-85, 127-132, 219-275; *Lois, Ordinances of Henry II*, pp. 4-8; Carollieri, *Philip II August*, II, 52-74; *Beading, La Courtoisie juridique*, pp. 71-74; Brown, "The Saladin Tithe," *English Historical Review*, XCIII (1916), 447-469.

profession such as the arms and horse of a knight or the books of a clerk. The novel severity of the tithe occasioned loud complaint, so much in France that Philip had to promise, for himself and his successors, never to levy such a tax again.

The administration of the tax was regulated by the two monarchs separately, and the ordinances enacted by them in their councils differ greatly. In Henry's dominions, on both sides of the Channel, the parish remained the unit of administration as theretofore, but a more elaborate machinery was established. Each taxpayer assessed himself again, but he paid his tax before committees composed of the parish priest, the rural dean, and the clerk of the baron on the local level, and of a Templar, a Hospitaller, and clerks of the bishop and king on the diocesan level. If the collectors questioned a man's payment, a sworn jury of four or six men of the parish was called to assess him. Philip's ordinance reflected the less centralized government of feudal France as compared with the governments of the Angevin dominions. Each seigneur having *haute justice* was to collect the tithes of his lay tenants. If he were a crusader, he would keep them, and a crusader who was the heir of his father or mother would have their tithes. Churchmen had to collect the tithes of their tenants and subordinates "and give them to whom they ought to give them". The sanctions of the collection were, first, a provision that crusaders might seize the tithes of those who refused to pay them, and second, that clergy and laity, including knights, should pay under oath and under threat of excommunication. But no royal enforcement like that of Henry was provided. Another much longer ordinance regulating the debts of crusaders reflects the relative importance of the two forms of finance in the minds of the French *chevalerie*.

As Philip Augustus promised, neither he nor any of his successors appear to have collected another crusade tax like the Saladin Tithe.⁴² Philip and John of England, meeting in Paris in June 1201, acceded to a request of pope Innocent III to give a fortieth of their revenues for one year for the approaching Fourth Crusade, and they asked their subjects to do likewise. The method of collection in France is not known. In England the fortieth was asked as a charity, but those who refused to pay were ordered to give the king their reasons. The collection was made by counties rather than dioceses, and the sheriffs were responsible for escorting the collectors with their money and records to the

42. A general collection was ordered by the papal legates in France during the Fifth Crusade (Bibl. nat., MS. Mazarin 123, fols. 149-152), but apparently this proved more of stringing than tax-collecting.

New Temple at London. In this use of secular machinery, the English collection was tantamount to a tax. Both kings reserved the right to send the money to the Holy Land as they saw fit, and John ordered that it be given only to Hospitallers, Templars, and crusaders of the lands where it was collected. Philip in his ordinance specifically denied any right of distraint by the papacy, and John protested an attempt by bishop Odo of Paris to collect the fortieth in Normandy on papal authority. General taxation by the pope and the princes acting together had fallen afoul of political jealousies, which in another generation would prove fatal to this source of financial support for the crusade.⁴³

In the empire hardly an echo is heard of the Saladin Tribute on the departure of Frederick Barbarossa for the Holy Land.⁴⁴ The first general tax known to have been levied in the empire was decreed by Philip of Swabia, who was king of Germany but not emperor. In a great council of the realm held in 1207, Philip ordered a general "almshiving" for the Holy Land to be paid for five years. Freemen were asked to give as divine grace inspired them, but in the country six pence should be paid on each plow and in the towns two pence on each house. The collection may be called a tax on the non-noble lower classes but not on the freemen or nobles. The bishops were made responsible for the appointment of collectors, the nobles for enforcing the collection. The king sent messengers to collect the whole and to use it for the Holy Land.⁴⁵ Since these were troubled times in the empire and Philip was killed the next year, the universality and effectiveness of his tax are questionable.

At the Fourth Lateran Council in 1215 Innocent III called upon princes and towns to give financial aid to the Holy Land. In 1221, apparently in belated response to this request, the newly crowned emperor Frederick II levied a tax in his kingdom of Sicily for his planned crusade: from the clergy he took a twentieth of their temporal income (the pope had already collected a twentieth of ecclesiastical income) and from the laity a tenth, while the merchants also paid a twentieth of their *lucro* of the preceding year.⁴⁶ At the same time a papal legate,

43. Here: F. Delaunoy, "Agences d'une même nature au règne de Philippe Auguste," *Revue des Études de l'École des Chartes*, LXIV (1903), 180; Roger of Howden, *Chronica*, IV, 164, 187-188; *Annals of Matthew Paris*, 1207-1210, ed. T. Duffus Hardy (London, 1833), p. 5 of *Medell*, *Textus*, pp. 131-132.

44. Carlier, *Philippe II Auguste*, II, 73-74. Gregory VIII in 1187 granted an indulgence to the citizens of Lucca, not crusaders, who gave a fortieth as aid of the Holy Land; *Regesta Henrici papae III*, ed. Pierre Premonet (2 vols., Rome, 1885-1895), at 903.

45. *MGH Legation*, II, 303-334.

46. Richard of San Germano, *Chronica*, pp. 75, 77-78.

the future Gregory IX, born the requests of the pope and the emperor for aid to the Holy Land to the cities of northern Italy. In consequence, Siena promised to collect six soldi for every hearth, while Florence promised twenty soldi for every knight's hearth, ten for every foot soldier's hearth. Milan agreed to send twenty knights fully equipped and supplied for one year; Bologna, Brescia, Mantua, and Treviso each ten; and others fewer.⁴⁷

In the spring of 1223 John of Brienne, regent of Jerusalem, came to England to secure aid for the Holy Land. King Henry III was a minor, but his regents called together a council of the magnates which authorized a general poll tax to be paid on November 1. The tax was levied at the rate of three marks for earls, one mark for barons, one shilling for knights, and one penny for freeholders or landless persons with chattels worth half a mark. The money was to be collected in each village by a Templar and a Hospitaller with the aid of the sheriff. Opposition to the tax appears to have necessitated another writ on November 24 which extended it to all cultivators of the land and ordered the sheriffs to detain the taxpayers. The yield was evidently small, and arrears were ordered collected as late as January 1224.⁴⁸

The papacy, nonetheless, favored the poll tax. Pope Honorius III in April 1223 sent an encyclical throughout western Christendom in which he asked the princes to ordain in their dominions a tax similar to those of 1207 in Germany and 1222 in England.⁴⁹ The pope asked that every household should pay one penny of Tours or its equivalent each month for three years. The collection was left up to the princes, and no ruler is known to have taken heed of the papal request. Again, in 1233 Gregory IX asked every Christian who had not taken the cross to give a penny a week to support the crusade.⁵⁰ Forty years later, Gregory X still sought to have the princes of Europe levy a universal tax for the crusade he planned.⁵¹ He asked at least a penny a year from every person without exemption. But again the levy appears not to have consented to the levy. Such taxes as the princes of the late thirteenth century might raise, they used for purposes other than the crusades. When princes did lead crusades, they expected to have their expeditions financed largely by the clergy.

47. *Registre des cardinaux légats d'Orient et d'Occident de l'épiscopat d'Ulrich*, ed. Claude Lévêq (Rome, 1898), pp. 7, 11-12, 19-24.

48. Mitchell, *Monarchy*, pp. 10-20, 25-26, 130-131.

49. *MGM, Epistolae regales* XII, 1, nos. 224-226.

50. *Registre des légats de Grégoire IX*, II, no. 2664.

51. Heinrich Pflaum, *Konzeptionsstudien zur Geschichte des 13. Jahrhunderts* (Münster, 1897), p. 123.

The crusade appertained peculiarly to the church. Like the lady, individual clerics took the cross and led companies of crusaders, helped other crusaders with gifts and loans, and paid the taxes levied by their princes. But it is rather as a corporation that the church had its unique place in financing the crusades. The privileges of crusaders reveal the early concern of the church with the problem, and it evolved other, more positive methods of supporting its great enterprises.

Through the military orders of warrior-monks, the church provided directly for the defense of the Holy Land. The most important of these orders were the Knights of the Temple and the Brothers of the Hospital of St. John, although for a time the Teutonic Knights added their strength and resources to the common task. The orders formed permanent corps of crusaders stationed in the east with reserves in Europe. Each created an elaborate organization with houses of various ranks throughout Europe as well as Outremer. In the west these houses acted as recruiting stations and managed the resources of the orders locally. Early in the thirteenth century James of Vitry wrote of the orders, "They have been prodigiously increased by vast possessions both on this side of and beyond the sea, for they own villages, cities and towns. . . ."¹² The records more than bear out his statement. Each house of the orders, as James went on to say, sent "a certain sum every year for the defense of the Holy Land to their grand master", whose seat was in the east. The sum sent by preceptories of the Hospital seems normally to have been a third of their revenues, paid twice a year before the regular spring and autumn passages to the east.¹³ The financial organization of the orders not only supplied their own needs, but also permitted them, especially the Templars,¹⁴ to act as bankers for the crusades. Their part in the collection of the general taxes of 1185 and 1188 has already been noted, and they also received clerical taxes in 1201 and 1215. Their regular passages offered facilities for other crusaders to resupply themselves. Deposits with houses in the west could be withdrawn in the east, and money could also be borrowed from them in the Holy Land to be repaid in Europe. They preferred to deal in coin and apparently did not develop credit operations beyond transfers. Yet they remained the crusade bankers *par excellence*, serving the papacy and princes as well as lesser men, while their own resources gave them a prime place in the defense of the Holy Land.

¹² James of Vitry, *The History of Jerusalem*, tr. Aubrey Stewart, PPTS, XI 2 (London, 1896), pp. 53-54.

¹³ Evelyn S. King, *The Knight Hospitallers in the Holy Land* (London, 1912), p. 27.

¹⁴ Delisle, *Opérations financières des Templiers*, pp. 14-21, appendixes xiv, xviii-xxi, xxxviii (p. 287); cf. Piquet, *Les Templiers*.

Around the military orders from an early date grew up confraternities, in which laymen bound themselves together to support the orders financially and otherwise. Although members of the confraternities might eventually take the vows of the orders, the corporation continued as a separate supporting body. The confraternities of the military orders perhaps provided a model for other confraternities which were actually independent crusade fraternities not associated with the older orders. The organization of a *confratne* at Châteaudun, confirmed by pope Innocent IV in 1247, may be taken as an example:¹³ its members took the cross not as individuals but as a group, and they were not held to the ordinary regulations governing performance of crusade vows. They might go to the Holy Land individually, or as a group they might send money or warriors paid from the common purse. These confraternities represented an adaptation for the laity of the older military orders, unlike them in being part-time activities of the members, like them in being permanent corporations organized to support the crusade.

Ultimately the financial support of the military orders and the confraternities derived from the alms and legacies of the faithful. By his gift to one of the orders any Christian could share in the great enterprise and in the spiritual rewards promised to crusaders. As early as 1101 pope Paschal II joined with the patriarch of Jerusalem, Daubert of Pisa, in offering an indefinite remission of penance to those who gave aid to the Hospital. Innocent II in 1131 promised remission of one seventh of enjoined penance to those who gave of their goods to the Hospital, and the same privilege was soon extended to the Temple. Confraternities also received indulgences and could pass on some of these rewards to those who supported them. Great gifts as well as innumerable small ones were made: in 1134 Alfonso I of Aragon bequeathed a third of his kingdom to the two military orders and the Holy Sepulcher; Béla of Hungary, Byzantine her-aparent and "duke", in 1163-1169 gave 10,000 gold bezants to the Hospital; and Henry II of England sent 30,000 marks sterling to the Templars and the Hospitallers for the defense of Tyre in 1188.¹⁴ Until the Third Crusade the Hospital and the Temple were the usual recipients of alms and legacies for the Holy Land. Later, gifts were received by the Teutonic Knights, the kings and patriarchs of Jerusalem, and others. Other crusaders

13. *Les Archives d'Anjouet IX*, ed. Elie Berger (4 vols., Paris, 1884-1921), I, no. 3644.

14. *Cartulaire général de l'ordre des Hospitaliers de S. Jean de Jérusalem, 1185-1242*, ed. J. Gauthier Le Beuf (2 vols., Paris 1894-1900), I, nos. 6, 9, 124, 209, 224, 262; *Cartulaire général de l'ordre du Temple, 1157-1238*, ed. Marquis (Cologne) d'Aboville (Paris, 1817), p. 141; *Annuaire . . .* regis Ricard, p. 26.

doubtless received alms for which the givers were granted spiritual benefits by local clergy, who certainly administered legacies for the crusade along with those for other pious purposes.

The church also developed monetary redemption of vows as a means of financing the crusades. In order that the Holy Land should suffer no loss through the inability of a crusader to fulfill his vow himself, the church early permitted him to send a substitute, both of them being entitled to the crusade indulgence. At first, redemption of vows for money, though similar to substitution in theory, was opposed by a significant body of opinion in the church. A decretal of Alexander III, incorporated in the canon law, provided for redemption by life-time support of a pauper. On the other hand, as early as 1101 four crusaders gave lands to the Hospital in redemption of their vows. At the departure of the French army on the Second Crusade, bishops Godfrey of Langres and Arnulf of Lisieux redeemed the vows of rich and dying crusaders for money.⁵⁷ The crusaders received their full indulgence, but they were expected to give as much money as it would have cost them to make the crusade. The money was presumably used in aid of the Holy Land by the clergy who received it; much of it probably went to the military orders with the alms and legacies they received.

The loss of Jerusalem in 1187 led the church to make greater use of its penitential system for financing the crusade. Gregory VIII, followed by Clement III, offered larger indulgences to those who gave alms for the Holy Land. The pope left the execution of his mandate to the bishops, who should grant remission of sins according to the "quality of the person and the quantity of the contribution" and disburse the money to needy crusaders.⁵⁸ When archbishop Baldwin of Canterbury preached the crusade, for example, he granted an old man remission of half his enjoined penance in return for a tenth of his estate.⁵⁹ In 1198 the famous preacher Fulk of Neuilly undertook to preach the crusade in France, and he collected much money in alms. What Fulk collected he deposited in the abbey of Clugny, whence some of the money was sent to the Holy Land for the repair of the walls of Acre and Tyre, part was distributed to poor crusaders to de-

57. Philipp Jaffé, *Regesta pontificum Romanorum ab episcopo cardine ad annum 1198*, ed. Samuel Loewenfeld et al. (2 vols., Leipzig, 1863-1886), II, nos. 14026, 13914; Debaille Le Roche, *Curiosities*, I, no. 6; John of Salisbury, *Metaphysica philosophica*, ed. and tr. Margaret Clifford (London, 1936), pp. 34-35.

58. Gratianus Carolinus, *De principiis instructionis*, pp. 234-239, 11. Last, *Papal Rescripts*, II, no. 329.

59. Gratianus Carolinus, *Interpretes Romanorum*, ed. James F. Dimock (Bull. Series, 31-50), pp. 73-74.

fray the cost of equipment and transportation, and the remainder went to pay the Venetians for the fleet they prepared for the expedition.⁴⁰

To make the collection of alms for the crusade permanent and easy, Innocent III in 1199 ordered a chest placed in every church throughout Latin Christendom, wherein the faithful might deposit their gifts to share in the remission of sins. The chests should have three locks, like those for the general taxes, the keys to be held one by the bishop, one by the priest, one by a layman. The bishops were ordered to associate with themselves a Templar and a Hospitaller as well as laymen to distribute the alms to worthy but poor crusaders who would promise to remain in the service of the cross a year or more and bring back letters attesting their stay in the Holy Land.⁴¹ Although later popes changed these orders on disbursement of alms, the chests became fixtures in the churches of Europe.

The use of legacies and redemptions also increased during the Third and Fourth Crusades. Crusaders came to be expected to provide legacies for the fulfilment of their vow in the event of their premature death. Compacts were made, like that between Richard and Philip on the Third Crusade, that on the death of one crusader, another should receive his property and carry out the crusade for both.⁴² For his crusade Richard was empowered by the pope to redeem the vows of crusaders whom he wanted to stay in England. Although Celestine III preferred substitution by men to redemption by money, Innocent III established the two systems as equal in the law of the church. The dispensation of vows was left to local prelates, for Innocent expected them to be very strict, as he was himself in the cases on which he acted. Celestine had permitted confessors to impose the vow of the cross as penance; the next step was direct absolution upon payment of money for the crusade, and this also Innocent established as a form of redemption.⁴³ Innocent's successors added other monies derived from the penitential system of the church: ill-gotten gains, penalties for offences such as blasphemy, and indistinct legacies. By ill-gotten gains were meant the monies which were restored by or confiscated from usurers or thieves and which could not be restored to their victims.

⁴⁰ Miles R. Gassch, 'A Twelfth-Century Preacher—Talk of Herdity', *Essays Presented to Dame C. Moberg*, pp. 200–205.

⁴¹ *PL*, 214, 428–432; cf. Palmer A. Thompson, *Crusades of the Crusade* (Austin, 1946), p. 242 and notes.

⁴² Matthew Paris, *Chronica majora*, II, 368–369; Roger of Howden, *Chronica*, II, 31, 364 (ed. 1891); cf. Lunt, *Financial Relations*, pp. 425, 433, 437, 443, 451.

⁴³ *PL*, 206, 1125–1126; 213, 745–746, 1136–1137, 1085; 206, 493; Lunt, *Papal Revenue*, II, no. 526.

In 1237 and 1238 Louis IX of France and Theobald IV of Navarre and Champagne, with papal permission, gave to the aid of the Latin empire of Constantinople monies taken from Jewish usurers. Louis said that his predecessors had used such monies for the crusade, but thenceforth the papacy undertook to collect and control them. Indistinct legacies were those made for pious purposes not clearly specified, and these the papacy permitted to be assigned to the crusade. The income of suppressed religious orders, of some vacant benefices, and of some tithes held illegally by laymen was also ordered given for the crusade.⁴³

The thirteenth-century popes concerned themselves largely with regularizing the collection and disbursement of these crusade monies. Under Gregory IX local prelates continued to collect the monies, but they were sometimes given the assistance of, sometimes frankly superseded by, papal legates. In any case, the collectors were ordered to deposit the monies with God-fearing men, report the amounts to the pope, and disburse them only by papal mandate. Thus the pope could make gifts to providing crusaders either in a specific amount or as the whole or part of the collections of an area. Crusaders exerted great pressure to obtain these monies in their own lands or neighborhoods, and the pope made numerous grants of collections in advance. To safeguard such grants, Gregory ordered the collectors to give a crusader only a third of his grant on collection, the remainder to be reserved till he had embarked or actually arrived in the east.⁴⁴ Gregory also began the diversion of these crusade monies from the Holy Land, in which he was followed by his successors. Eventually, Urban IV ordered a collector to deliver crusade monies, along with other papal revenues, to merchants for transfer to the papal camera. Boniface VIII repeated the instruction, and thenceforth papal collectors treated these funds like any others.⁴⁵

Pope Alexander III had inspired the general levy of 1165, and from this beginning the papacy in coöperation with lay rulers had progressed in crusade taxation to the Saladin Tithe. Although the popes appealed thereafter for further general taxes upon lay and cleric alike, the results were disappointing. Taxation of the laity without the consent of

⁴³ *Regestes de Grégoire IX*, II, nos. 3079, 4280, 4608, 4643; Matthew Paris, *Chronica maiora*, IV, 344-345; Brundage, *Medieval Canon Law*, p. 186; Fawcett, *Papal Crusading Policy*, pp. 242-244.

⁴⁴ *Regestes de Grégoire IX*, *passim*. For an example of the working of the system see Solway Palace, *The Savings of the Church: Peter of Dron, Duke of Brittany* (Baltimore, 1957), pp. 285-287.

⁴⁵ Last, *Papal Revenue*, introduction, I, 121.

the princes was out of the question, but the clergy were rich beyond compare. From the beginning the clergy had been taxed for the crusades, and probably the largest amount of financial support had come from their treasures and revenues. For the First Crusade William Rufus had taxed the clergy of England for the money to send Robert of Normandy to the Holy Land, and bishop Othert of Liège had taken from his clergy the money to give Godfrey of Bouillon for his journey. In 1099 archbishop Anselm of Milan withheld a customary revenue of his clergy to support the Lombard crusade of that year. King Géza II of Hungary levied a tax upon his churchmen to bribe Conrad III to make a peaceful passage through his lands on the Second Crusade.⁴⁷ But general taxation of the Latin clergy by the popes appears only in 1188 when Clement III issued an encyclical commanding the bishops to give aid to the Holy Land and to induce or force their subordinates to contribute. In England and France this separate clerical tax was apparently merged in the general Saladin Tax; but the letter was also sent to the clergy of Genoa, and a papal legate in Poland "imposed a tenth upon the bishops and all the clergy for the recovery of the Holy Land".⁴⁸ Thus originated papal taxation of the clergy for the crusade.

Innocent III built upon this foundation when in 1199 he levied a fortieth of the ecclesiastical income of every clerk in Latin Christendom.⁴⁹ He directed the archbishops and bishops to deal with the tax in provincial synods and then in diocesan synods to order all the clergy to assess themselves and pay the tax within three months. The bishops should collect the money in a safe place and notify the pope of the amount. The Cistercians, Premonstratensians, Grandmontines, and Car-

47. Orlorio Vitalis, *Historia ecclesiastica*, IV, 16; Christian S. Mahrt, in *MGH*, SS, VIII, 82; Landolfo da S. Paolo, *Historia Mediceviana*, in *SSS*, V-1, p. 2; *The Hungarian Monarchist Chronicle*, ed. Deaci Devincenzi (New York, 1909), *Isidore* 120.

48. Gregorius Chetwicus, *De principis instructione*, pp. 224-226; Marci, *Constit.*, XXII, 281-282, 287-290; Julius von Pfingst-Wartburg, ed., *Acta pontificum Romanorum inofficia* (177-1784) (Jena, Teubner, 1881-1882), III, no. 417.

49. The fortieth is variously considered the first papal tax for the crusades: see Edgar H. McNiel, "The Fourth Crusade," in volume II of the present work, pp. 124-137, and Joseph R. Sargent, "The Political Crusades of the Thirteenth Century," *ibid.*, II, 146. See also Gottlieb, *Kreuzfahrerstaaten*, pp. 21-29, who did not know the letter to Genoa and discussed the Polish evidence as a *privilegium*. *Allgemeine Professoren, Contributo agli studi sulle decime ecclesiastiche e sulle crociate* (Bari, 1896), p. 14, however, cited the Polish evidence as "la prima decima di una tassa ecclesiastica per la crociata . . ." Giuseppe Martini, "Tommaso II e il finanziamento delle crociate," *Archivum della R. Accademia romana di storia patria*, LVII (194), 104, refers to the letters to Canterbury and Genoa, but does not consider the Polish evidence; he concludes that Innocent III fully taxed the clergy but that Clement III's letter held the "primus foramen foramenale." Taking all the evidence together, Clement's tax appears to be as well designed as can be expected for the period, and must take precedence over Innocent's.

thousand orders were exempted from the fortieth, but by special mandates the first two were commanded to pay a fifteenth of their income, which they were to assess and collect themselves. Although Innocent promised to treat the tax as a gift and granted an indulgence of one fourth of enjoined penance to those who paid it faithfully, the clergy protested vigorously, and in England much of the tax remained unpaid six or seven years later. After the Fourth Crusade, which the fortieth was intended to support, was diverted against the papal will, the pope seems to have sent the money to the Holy Land for use by the military orders, the patriarch, Albert, and the king of Jerusalem, Aimeric of Lusignan. Meanwhile Innocent's own attention was diverted by the Albigensian heresy, against which he proclaimed a crusade, and in 1209 he laid upon the clergy in southern France another tax, which his legates collected. In 1204 a similar levy had been ordered collected in Lombardy by papal "visitors". Like the fortieth, these lesser taxes were laid by the pope on his own authority and strengthened further the system of papal taxation of the clergy, while they also established a precedent for diversion of clerical taxes from the Holy Land.⁷⁰

In 1215 Innocent convened at Rome a general council of the church, the Fourth Lateran, to provide for the success of the Holy Land. A long session of the council was devoted to the organization, regulation, and financing of the proposed expedition. While princes and towns were asked to give aid to the Holy Land, the core of Innocent's financial program for this papal crusade was taxation of the clergy. Promising a tenth from himself and from the cardinals, the pope laid a twentieth on the rest of the clergy for three years.⁷¹

When Innocent died in 1216, the execution of his plans fell to his successor, Honorius III. In each province of Germany, Hungary, and Spain, Honorius appointed as collectors of the tax the local masters of the Temple and the Hospital with two dignitaries of the metropolitan chapter; they in turn were commissioned to appoint as subcollectors in each diocese two or more clerks with a member of each military order. Presumably like the fortieth, the monies were to be held by the military orders until disbursed by papal mandate. Accusations of Roman misappropriation of crusade monies were rife, however; and to avoid further scandal, Honorius determined upon a major revision of his predecessor's plans. In February 1217 he made each bishop respon-

⁷⁰ Marini, "Innocenzo III ed il finanziamento della crociata"; Christopher R. Cheney, "Master Philip the Hermit and the Fourth of 1199," *English Historical Review*, LXIII (1948) 342-350; Lutz, *Financial Relations*, pp. 249-262; Lutz, *Religion of Norwich*, pp. 10-12; Gieseler, *Kreuzfahrerwesen*, pp. 20-25, 176-177.

⁷¹ Mansi, *Concilia*, XCII, 1085-1087.

sible for the twentieth in his diocese; rendering only an account to the pope, he should send the money directly to the crusading army. The clergy exempt from episcopal authority were directed to collect the tax themselves. Decentralization, however, created other administrative problems. Toward the end of 1218, therefore, Honorius sent papal collectors directly to Spain, Germany, and Hungary, and eventually to northern Italy and to Britain; in France, where king Philip II had demanded half the collections for the Albigensian crusade, two bishops and the abbot of Cîteaux were appointed to collect and divide the tax. Although the ordinaries continued to be chiefly responsible, the papal commissioners could enforce and hasten the collection, and they had powers to deal with the exempt religious. Further, as the pope saw the need, he could direct his commissioners to give money to specified crusaders; to deposit it with the Templars, who transferred certain amounts to the east on papal order; or occasionally to send or bring it to Rome.⁷¹

The tax presented many other problems. The canon of the Lateran Council called for a twentieth of all "ecclesiastical revenues", a phrase which concealed grave difficulties of definition. The clergy, however, were left to assess themselves under threat of spiritual penalties, and there can be little doubt that undervaluation was common. Exemptions from the tax fill the papal registers. Besides the orders exempted from the fortieth, many other groups and individuals received exemptions for poverty, debts, or charitable function. Collections tended to be slow and uncertain. The twentieth was still being collected normally in 1221, six years after the Lateran Council. The pope had to empower many legates and prelates to absolve from papal excommunication the clergy who defaulted at the stated terms or attempted to defraud. Even of the collectors appointed directly by the pope, one proved seriously untrustworthy and others disobeyed papal orders. Disbursement was complicated because powerful crusaders received grants of the tax in their lands. Honorius complained that many magnates took the cross, took the twentieth, but neglected to go on the crusade.⁷²

If the problems attendant on the administration of the twentieth were great, so were the collections. Thenceforth papal taxation became a common feature of the life of the clergy of the west, although diversion from its original purpose of supporting the crusade in the Holy Land also became common. Honorius III had diverted monies from the twentieth to the support of the Albigensian Crusade, and in 1226

71. Cf. *Less, Financial Relations*, pp. 242-247; *Less, History of Norwich*, pp. 13-18; *Curich, Cross Crusaders*, pp. 177-184; and the references cited therein.

72. *Reges Henrici III, passim*.

he authorized a tenth for five years from the clergy of France for the same purpose. Gregory IX levied a tenth in 1229, not for the Holy Land, but for his war against the emperor. When he sought a thirtieth for the Holy Land in 1238, he seems to have been unsuccessful, perhaps because the next year he proclaimed a crusade against Frederick and demanded clerical taxes for it. Innocent IV convened a general council at Lyons in 1245, and the canon for the crusade, very nearly the same as that of 1215, included the levy of another twentieth for three years from all the clergy. In France and England this twentieth was superseded by a tenth which the pope granted to the kings as crusaders, and elsewhere the twentieth was directed to the "crusade" against Frederick. Although Innocent and his successors continued to tax the clergy chiefly for other purposes, Urban IV in 1263 collected for the Holy Land a hundredth for five years (the equivalent of a twentieth for one year), and Clement IV levied a tenth for three years from the French clergy when Louis IX took the cross a second time in 1267. With these taxes, the papacy improved and further centralized the administration of clerical taxation.⁷⁴

The pontificate of Gregory X proved the climax in papal taxation of the clergy for the crusade. Although Gregory found little enthusiasm in Europe for another crusade, he nearly succeeded in organizing another great expedition before his death intervened. Like Innocent III and Innocent IV he called together another general council in 1274, and the constitutions of the council for the crusade reveal his indebtedness to his predecessors. Essentially like theirs, his financial program centered on a tenth to be collected from all the clergy for six years. Gregory's administration of the tax, most impressive in its plan and thoroughness, completed the work of his predecessors. *Declarationes dubitationum in negotio decime* were issued to define the bases of assessment. New assessments were made and in England at least proved to be much higher than earlier ones. All the lands subject to the papacy were divided into twenty-six collectorships, over each of which the pope appointed a general collector, who in turn appointed sub-collectors without reference to the ordinaries. Though originally no exemptions were to be allowed, the pressure became too great, and the pope permitted the usual exemptions at the discretion of the collectors. The bitter complaints of the clergy and surviving accounts of the tax reveal the efficiency of the system and the large sums of money

⁷⁴ The history of these clerical taxes of the thirteenth century is told most completely in Gertrude A. Ruggenweitz, but her research has been corrected and completed by later studies. Cf. Austin P. Evans, "The Albigensian Crusade," in volume II of the present work, p. 316; Searcy, "Political Crusades," *ibid.*, pp. 348-352, 355-357, 361, 364, 371.

collected. After Gregory's death the money was largely diverted from the Holy Land. Although papal taxation of the clergy long continued, it ceased in the main to be used in support of the crusade to the Holy Land.⁷⁵

Throughout the earlier Middle Ages devout western Christians made pilgrimages to the Holy Land. The pilgrimage unquestionably mothered the crusade: those who took the vow and wore the cross were called pilgrims, their routes to the Holy Land were the pilgrim ways, and they benefited by the experience of the earlier pilgrims in organizing their expeditions. Yet, if the pilgrimage was mother to the crusade, the child had a lusty father in the chivalry of medieval Europe. A crusade was an armed expedition to reconquer the Holy Land for Christians, and only men with the ability and arms to fight God's battles could be effective crusaders. The simple palmer, though he accompanied the crusading armies, had not the skill or equipment of the warrior-pilgrim who may best be called a crusader. As a pilgrim, each crusader was obliged by his vow to find the means to accomplish it, and the financial basis of the crusades was the individual effort made by the crusader to finance his pilgrimage. On the other hand, the crusader's journey cost more than the palmer's: every warrior had equipment to maintain, the knight, a horse and attendants. The greater needs of crusaders gave rise to collective or corporate financing. This formed the superstructure of the vessel that carried the crusaders over the Mediterranean while individual financing made the bottom.

The First Crusade comprised several groups: the peasant mob of Peter the Hermit and others like them, the companies of knights from France and Norman Sicily, the marine expeditions from Italy and the north. Except for these last, all the evidence points to individual preparation for the crusade. At most the feudal contingents of the princes may have been feudally financed. But lesser men as well as Godfrey of Bouillon and Robert of Normandy alienated their property. The pilgrims plundered the Jews in the Rhineland and the Hungarians and Greeks on their route of march. The eastern emperor Alexius Comnenus gave them rich gifts, while booty was a prime source of con-

⁷⁵ On the death of 1274 see Gerdok, *Kreuzfahrerwesen*, pp. 34-406, 223-269; Thirney, *Crusades of the Crusade*, pp. 236-286; Lunt, *Voluntaries of Norwich*, pp. 185-406, 351-359; Lunt, *Financial Administration*, pp. 341-346; *Statutes des comtes de Flandre aux points XIII e XIV^e siècles*, ed. Pierre Garih (Vevey, 1922); Laderus-Gatto, *Il Pontificato di Gregorio X* (Rome, 1939), chap. vi. For the history of crusade taxation after Gregory X, see Ernst Hirsing, *Die päpstlichen Einkünfte aus Deutschland im Zeitalter des ursprünglichen Pilgerwesens und während des grossen Schwanen* (Halle, 1897); Bédarride, *Le Cardinal légat, p. 77*; Paul Ewart, *Expeditions et pèlerinages des Scandinaves au Terre Sainte au temps des croisades* (Paris, 1867), pp. 391-409.

tinuing finance. It may be supposed that crusaders received alms like the pilgrims, perhaps went as substitutes for others, but none of the later financial organization of the penitential system yet existed. Only the mariners are known to have used corporative methods of financing their expeditions. Following in the pilgrim's pattern, the crusader of 1096 generally provided for his financial support privately and individually.

During the first half of the twelfth century methods of financing crusades remained essentially the same as at the beginning. Each crusader, like the viscount of Bourges, sold his lands or saved or borrowed or plundered the money he needed to achieve his vow. However, the clergy were already being taxed to support others on the crusade. And the military orders were organized and began to accumulate the endowments which enabled them to become a standing army of crusaders in the Holy Land.

The second great expedition revealed considerable development in crusade finance, at least among the French participants. Louis VII taxed his subjects for his crusade. In his army bishops redeemed crusading vows for money, and there can be little doubt of the prevalence of substitution. The king, and very likely others, employed the financial facilities of the Templars to transport and borrow money. The wealth of both the Temple and the Hospital shows the growth of alms and legacies for the crusade. For this crusade Eugenius III issued his bull *Quantum praedecessores*, setting forth the privileges of crusaders. In all these ways social financing of the crusade had grown since the initial conquest of the land beyond the sea, yet the overwhelming impression remains that each crusader financed his own peregrinatio individually.

Muslim victories evoked a new response among western Christians to the problem of financing the crusades. This was universal taxation, which reached its peak with the Saladin Tithe of 1188. Presumably this tax in large part financed the Third Crusade: it was said to have yielded 70,000 pounds sterling in England alone.⁷⁴ But Henry II obtained 60,000 pounds at the same time from the Jews, and Richard I raised substantial sums in addition. The great wealth of Richard gave him a larger command than just the men of his own dominions and perhaps made possible such success as the expedition achieved. The military orders played an increasingly important role, largely supported by the papal development of the collection of alms, legacies, and redemptions of vows. Yet one cannot gainsay the primary importance of individual financing. Many crusaders pledged or sold their prop-

⁷⁴ *Convent of Canterbury, Historical Works*, ed. Trappe (Euph Series, 77), I, 412.

erty to pay their way. The ordinances of Philip Augustus for the crusade laid much greater emphasis on regulation of debts than on the Saladin Tithe, and Frederick Barbarossa issued an edict that no crusader should set out on the journey without complete equipment and enough money to last two years.⁷⁷

The popes of the thirteenth century undertook to provide a more corporative financial base for the crusade. Innocent III desired a crusade not only called by the papacy, but commanded by a papal legate; in order to ensure command, the papacy had also to control the financing of the crusade. The leaders of the Fourth Crusade refused papal direction and apparently received little or none of the fortieth collected by the pope for the crusade. The legacy of the count of Champagne and the individual financial arrangements of the crusaders supported this as earlier crusades. The leaders contracted with Venice to pay 85,000 marks of Cologne to transport and feed 29,000 men and 4,300 horses for nine months. When only about half that number actually came to Venice, the leaders gave their own treasure and even borrowed what they could to pay off their debt to the Venetian state. Eventually they had to work it off by the capture of Zara, but this was hardly the kind of corporative finance envisioned by the pope.⁷⁸

The Fifth Crusade most nearly embodied the papal plan. Going to Acre, king Andrew II of Hungary financed his expedition in the traditional way, by selling and mortgaging property, by debasing the coinage, and by taking the sacred utensils of the churches.⁷⁹ But the twentieth exacted from the clergy of all Europe provided the legate Pelagius with a sizeable command in Egypt. By July of 1230 the pope

⁷⁷ *Annals of Frederick Barbarossa*, in *MGH*, 52, XVII, 184, cf. *Annals of Frederick Barbarossa*, p. 43, which says *non plus*.

⁷⁸ The contract between Venice and the crusade leaders is printed in *Urkunden zur älteren Handels- und Staatsgeschichte der Republik Venedig*. Recently with considerable correction by *Ernst H. Kantorowicz*, ed. Carlitz L. E. Todd and George M. Thomson (*Fontes rerum italicarum*, *Diplomata et acta*, XII-XIV), 3 vols., Vienna, 1896-1897; repr. *Ann Arbor*, 1944, I, 342-373, no. 92. Villardouin's manuscript are extremely at variance on the total sum, though all give the first as 4 marks per horse and 2 marks per man. Four manuscripts of the thirteenth century have a total of 85,000 marks, but two more manuscripts of the late fourteenth century and probably two that are now lost, representing a tradition which Peral (Villardouin), *Le Comptable de Constantinople* I, xvi-ii believes is better than that of the earlier manuscript and takes for the base of his text, give 94,000 marks. Peral (I, 215-217), and of Donald E. Queller, *The Fourth Crusade* (Philadelphia, 1977), pp. 18-21 and note 13) explains this as a first offer of the Venetians of 4 marks for each horse and 2 marks for each other man, which was reduced before the contract was signed. Robert of Clari has such a story (*Le Comptable de Constantinople*, pp. 7-10), but the text of Villardouin says nothing about such bargaining and a scribal error may be all the explanation required.

⁷⁹ Reinhold Köhler, *Studien zur Geschichte des fünften Kreuzzuges* (Frankfurt, 1891), p. 24.

had sent him approximately 100,000 marks,⁸⁰ and in time his position became strong enough to enable him to lead the army to its defeat. Until that last fatal march, however, he had strong competition from other leaders whose finances were largely independent of the papacy: the king of Jerusalem, the masters of the crusading orders, and princes like the duke of Austria, Leopold VI. Oliver of Paderborn took pride in the well-supplied contingent of crusaders from his region of Cologne, and when he speaks of a "common treasury" under the legate's control, this cannot be taken to mean that the crusaders pooled all their resources. The spoils of Damietta, it is certain, were divided among the various leaders of the crusade.⁸¹ The legate's treasury must have been filled for the most part with money from the pope, although other crusaders contributed to it.⁸² Since the legate controlled no more than a fraction of the financial resources of the crusade, the ideal papal crusade failed of realization in its financing as it did in its military goal.

Later popes abandoned the principle of papal command of the crusades. They continued and extended taxation of the clergy and the collection of alms, legacies, and redemptions, but they granted the proceeds of these financial measures to lay crusaders. "Apostolic graces", as the papal grants were called, formed a prized source of support for the later thirteenth-century crusades. For his first crusade in 1248, Louis IX received all the crusade monies derived from alms, legacies, redemptions, usuries, and especially the tenth levied on the clergy of France, Lorraine, and Burgundy—all, that is, which the pope did not specifically grant to other crusaders. The king also collected aides from his vassals and tallies from his non-noble subjects. He presumably had savings to spend on the crusade plus as much of his annual revenues as he could persuade his mother, regent in his absence, to send to him.⁸³ The king was the greatest and the richest single crusader in the army, but his wealth, even with the backing of the church, was insufficient to finance the crusade entire. The Templars and Hospitalers provided large contingents of troops who represented another part of the corporative financial program of the church. Many crusaders other than the king received money from the church, notably his brothers Alphonse, count of Poitiers, and Robert, count of Artois; of monies

80 *MGH, Epistolae pontificales* VIII, 1, no. 124.

81 *AGN*, II-2, 104. William of Chartres was master of the Temple; Gern of Homburg, of the Hospital.

82 *MGH, Epistolae pontificales* VIII, 1, no. 124; Westwood S. Morris, "A Crusader's Testament," *Speculum*, XLVII (1972), 197: "by the treasury of the Commander of the Army was bestowed."

83 Bouge, *Saint Louis et le Royaume de France* (Paris, 1897), pp. 182-202.

known to have been sent to Alphonse after his departure from France, roughly a fourth came from "graces". Along with the king and his brothers many crusaders probably took *avides* and *infelles*.⁸⁴ The participation of the maritime cities, mercenary though it was for the most part, was presumably financed corporatively. Yet crusaders like Joinville still alienated their property for the expedition, and not a few, among them great nobles, borrowed large sums of money from Italian merchants in Cyprus, Egypt, and Syria.⁸⁵

Other crusades of the thirteenth century followed the same pattern of finance. For his crusade Frederick II took tax after tax from his subjects and especially from the churches of his dominions, and since he took so small an army with him when he finally went, he probably spent in the Holy Land only a fraction of what he collected. But in this as in so many things Frederick was the great exception. Papal taxation of the clergy and other papal monies provided much of the support for Richard of Cornwall in 1240 and for prince Edward of England in 1270. Edward borrowed over 100,000 livres of Tours from merchants of Cahors on the security of a clerical twentieth in England granted in 1272, and a tenth was ordered collected in 1267 to reimburse Edward and his brother Edmund for their crusade expenses. Edward also and a twentieth of movables conceded by the English barons in 1269 that yielded over 125,000 livres. He received over 10,000 li. from the Jews; the royal demesnes were tallaged; and in 1271 he was granted the revenues of all royal wardships and escheats, the regalian rights to the revenues of vacant prelacies, and the royal profits of justice. But he still had to pledge the customs of Bordeaux for four years for an unknown sum and for seven years for a loan of 70,000 li. from Louis IX.⁸⁶ Altogether, Edward may easily have spent more than half a million livres on his crusade. Louis himself raised the money for his second expedition as for the first: a tenth for three years from the French clergy and a twentieth from the French-speaking parts of Lorraine and an aid from the townsmen produced a great part of it. But he tried to recover a large loan he had made to his brother, Charles I of Anjou, and doubtless he scraped up every penny he could. Even

⁸⁴ Réginald P. Bontemps, *Saint Louis et Affranchi de Poitiers* (Paris, 1878), pp. 69-71, 229-312.

⁸⁵ *Expositio de rebus et chartis*, III, nos. 1769-1775, 1800, 1811, 1821, 1823, 1842, 1924, 1960.

⁸⁶ Théron-Cassat, "Le Financement de la croisade anglaise," p. 121; Mitchell, *Studies in Thirteenth Century Asia and Henry III* (New Haven, 1914), 295-299; Frederick H. Powicke, *King Henry III and the Lord Edmund*, 2 vols. (Oxford, 1947), II, 561-569; Steven Lloyd, "The Lord Edward's Crusade, 1270-2," in *War and Government in the Middle Ages*, ed. John Gillingham and James C. Holt (Oxford, N.L., 1964), p. 112. The money of Tours, from merchants, is repeat whatever it is worth.

if he did not, countless other crusaders continued to sell or pledge their lands or chattels to make the great journey.

Corporative finances remained in the thirteenth century a superstructure reared upon the solid base of individual finances. The reasons for this fact may be sought partly in the nature of the crusade, child of the individual pilgrimage and the individualistic chivalry, but partly also in the cost, which was greater not only than any individual could sustain but than any medieval state or corporation, even the church, was able or willing to afford. The evidence for the whole cost of any of the great expeditions is not forthcoming, but some idea of its magnitude can be obtained for Louis IX's first crusade. A fourteenth-century account of the French government says the crusade cost the king over 4,337,570 li.⁸⁷ It has been estimated that Louis financed between one half and three fifths of the crusaders,⁸⁸ and if this calculation is correct, the whole cost of the crusade might have been between 2,500,000 and 3,000,000 li.⁸⁹ The possibility of error in this figure is great, but it may help to put in perspective the relative value of individual and corporative sources of crusade finances. To begin with the largest corporate sums, the twentieth of their income paid by the clergy for the crusade of 1248 was probably in the neighborhood of 750,000 li, over the whole five-year period.⁹⁰ The alms, legacies, redemptions, and usuries of the church would have added somewhat more to corporative support, as did the Templars and Hospitalers. *Aides* and *tailles* added still more: his towns may have contributed as much as 274,000 li.⁹¹ But when all allowances are made, it seems unlikely that half of the costs of the crusade came from corporative sources. The rest still had to be raised by the individual crusaders from savings, current income, or borrowings.

Something more can be said of the costs of the crusades for the various ranks of participants. For Louis's second crusade in 1270 a document has preserved the gist of the contracts made between the king and a number of crusaders he took into his pay.⁹² The terms var-

87 *RAHE*, XCI, 404.

88 Seezer, "The Crusade of Louis IX," p. 494.

89 Francis Clerval, "Il Costo della crociata," in *Studi in memoria di Federico Arino*, 3 vols. (Naples, 1973), II, 179-208, concludes that on the first quarter of the thirteenth century a modest crusade would cost more than 300,000 li, one of 40,000-50,000 crusaders about 1,200,000 li per year.

90 Gottlieb, *Erwerbsgewinn*, p. 49, gives 764,000 li. Seezer, "The Crusade of Louis IX," p. 491, roughly 500,000 li, but I cannot replicate his calculations.

91 See William C. Jordan, *Louis IX and the Challenge of the Crusade* (Princeton, 1973), p. 98.

92 *RAHE*, XX, 305-308; text of *ibid.*, XCIII, 732-734.

sed greatly, an indication that many still expected to finance their journeys in part; but the king contributed from 133½ to 400 l. per knight for a year's service, the total being above 100,000 l. for about 500 knights. Most of these barons and knights were also promised their passage, replacement of horses, and meals in the king's palace, the cost of which can hardly have been less than a half of their stipends. The king's brother, Alphonse of Poitiers, about the same time offered to knights who would furnish their own equipment, from 160 to 180 l. a year, representing a maximum stipend of 10 sous a day, while he offered 5 sous a day to mounted bowmen.⁹³ All these wages were apparently supplemented by transportation and maintenance, and Alphonse specifically promised remounts to his bowmen in addition. Light cavalry thus cost half of the stipend of the chevalier and infantry a tenth or more. If Louis employed no more than 200 to 300 light cavalry and 1,600 infantry, as he did in Syria in 1250-1253, these men would have cost him well over 50,000 l. in annual stipends, plus transportation and maintenance. Transportation cost Louis over 100,000 l.,⁹⁴ and maintenance for a year would hardly have cost less. Altogether, Louis might have expected to pay 300,000 l. a year for his second expedition. On the earlier crusade, until Mansurah at least, Louis's army was larger than on the second and his campaign ran for six years. If the later account of his total costs is correct, his costs then would have averaged over 250,000 l. a year, about equal to his average annual royal revenue of 240,000 to 250,000 l. Since Louis's ordinary expenditures amounted to about half the royal revenue,⁹⁵ even with the lion's share of apostolic graces, he might have had to raise 100,000 to 125,000 l. a year from savings, current income, *aides*, and *tailles*.⁹⁶ But that was a royal expense: Henry III of England had only an average ordinary income of about 100,000 l. a year before expenditures.⁹⁷

In the next rank among crusaders were the princes, of whom Alphonse of Poitiers may stand as an example. An extant account of his household provides exact figures from February 2 to December 10,

93. Brastick, *Saint Louis et Alphonse de Poitiers*, pp. 115-116.

94. Augustin Jal, ed., *Placets adressés au Département des finances*, ed. Jacques J. Champollion-Figeac (Collection de documents inédits; 4 vols., Paris, 1841-1848), I, 307-325. This sum is calculated on the assumption that Louis contracted with Marsulius for twenty ships to be paid in 1254, at the price offered.

95. Strayer, "The Crusades of Louis IX," p. 479 and note 6.

96. The financing of Louis IX's first crusade has been described in detail by Jordan, *Louis IX*, ch. 4.

97. James H. Ramsey, *The Dover of the Constitution* (London, 1908), p. 271, where £81,000 is given as the ordinary revenue, but from this must be subtracted the £20,000 assigned to prince Edward from 1255.

1250, for his costs on Louis's first crusade.⁹² The largest amount, 10,225 l., was spent for the hire and provisioning of ships and galleys and the wages of mariners, presumably for the journey from Damietta to Acre and thence to France. The domestic expenses of the count and countess also came to about 10,000 l. Military costs included 4,695 l. for horses, 2,329 l. for armor, and 180 l. for weapons. For the service of the barons, chevaliers, mounted bowmen, and foot-soldiers who composed his *meuque*, Alphonse paid only about 3,000 l. The total expenditure amounted to more than 35,000 l. Since Alphonse left France seventeen months before this account began, and his expenditures before the defeat at Mansurah may have been much larger, the complete costs of his crusade must have been several times larger than those here recorded. In 1270 Alphonse raised 100,000 l. for his participation in what was generally a smaller crusade.⁹³ Even though Alphonse may have been extravagant, and though his expenses included his losses at Mansurah, yet his were the tastes and risks of crusader princes in the thirteenth century.

Of a baron's cost on this same crusade John of Joinville himself affords the best example. He tells of his financial preparations:

Because I did not wish to take away with me any penny wrongfully gotten, therefore I went to Metz, in Lorraine, and placed in pawn the greater part of my land. And you must know that on the day when I left our country to go to the Holy Land, I did not hold more than one thousand livres a year in land, for my lady mother was still alive; and yet I went, taking with me nine knights and being the first of three knights-bannere. And I bring these things to your notice, so that you may understand that if God, who never yet failed me, had not come to my help, I should hardly have maintained myself for so long a space as the six years that I remained in the Holy Land.⁹⁴

God's agent in this help was the king. When the crusaders reached Cyprus, Joinville had only 240 l. left, and the king took the proud young marshal into his pay. In July 1250 Louis again retained him for the duration of his crusade with a company composed of three knights-bannere, each with two knights as companions, making a total of ten knights. The king paid Joinville at the rate of 3,000 l. a year, of which he kept 1,200 l. for the maintenance of the whole company and paid each of the bannere 600 l. They appear to have made their own terms with their companions, perhaps keeping something like 240 l. and giving the others 180 l. The king's officers thought Joinville asked too

⁹² *Legeant de l'histoire des croisades*, III, pp. 399-400.

⁹³ Scribes, "The Crusades of Louis IX," p. 70.

⁹⁴ D. Frank Marshall, *Memories of the Crusades* (London, 1906), p. 164.

much, and he agreed that his terms were high. But he reminded the king that he had lost all his possessions in Egypt including horse and armor, the implication being that he would not ask as much as he was worth if he did not have to.¹⁰¹ It seems reasonable to conclude, then, that a baron could hardly take a company of ten knights on the crusade in 1250 for much less than 3,000 l. a year, and that Josville had been very rash to attempt it if his land was worth no more than 1,000 l. a year.

For the simple knight and the lower ranks of society the stipends promised by Louis and Alphonse in 1270 afford the best measure of the costs. To knights who took their meals at his table Louis gave 160 l. a year, but to those who undertook to maintain themselves he gave wages of 10 sous a day, or 182½ l. a year. In all cases the king appears to have furnished transportation. It seems fair to say, therefore, that the simple knight in the later thirteenth century needed roughly 200 l. a year to make his pilgrimage. By the same reckoning the light cavalryman and the footsoldier needed about 100 and 20 l. respectively.

If the cost of crusades varied with the rank and wealth of the crusaders, it varied also as western Europe experienced a rise in prices and in the standard of living during the crusading era. In 1193 Henry VI offered to pay his crusaders about 90 l. a year plus their maintenance. A little earlier at Acre Philip Augustus was paying the going rate of about 72 l. a year when Richard, with his usual chivalric magnificence, offered 96 l.¹⁰² These stipends indicate that costs increased two or three times between the Third Crusade and Louis's second expedition. So also Richard spent about 400 to 500 l. each for his ships and their sailors' wages for a year, while Louis a century later paid from 150 to 7,000 l.,¹⁰³ on the average seven to eight times as much, but the ships were probably larger, and the rate of increase between 1096 and 1191 cannot be stated. That costs rose, however, cannot be doubted. It is probable that the money needed by a common footsoldier with Louis IX would have sufficed a knight with Godfrey of Bouillon.

When costs of a crusade can be compared with the income of crusaders in the same period, the results are illuminating. At the time of the Third Crusade when the two kings were paying 72 and 96 l. a year to knights at Acre, it was held in England that a knight's fee should

101. Josville, *Mémoires de Saint Louis*, pp. 156-157.

102. *MGM, Letters*, II, 198; *Illustrations* — *regis Ricardi*, pp. 213-214.

103. *Pope Bull of Richard C.*, ed. David M. Shoup (Pope Bull Society, n.s., 3, London, 1925), pp. 3-5; *ibid.*, *Pope Alexander*, I, 287-403.

be worth roughly 80 li. a year.¹⁰⁴ If a knight had only 80 li. a year income and it cost him about that to maintain himself in the Holy Land, then he had nothing with which to prepare and transport himself as well as to provide for his estate and family in his absence. In other words, current income was insufficient for the simple knight to finance a crusade. For the higher ranks of the feudalty the matter is more complex: if a baron had an income of several hundred pounds, he could have gone on a crusade as a simple chevalier and paid the cost from his current income. But such a course of action would have violated the mores of the time; he was expected, in the words of Gregory IX, to take a "decent company" with him.¹⁰⁵ Thus Joinville set out as the leader of a company of ten knights, a number he might have supported for forty days in France, but which required him to pawn his lands and still have no more than a third enough for his crusade. Again, if 3,000 li. was the amount required for a baron to keep ten knights in the Holy Land, only a half a dozen or so of the barons of thirteenth-century England could have supported such an expedition from their current income.¹⁰⁶

The crusade was the most expensive adventure of medieval chivalry, often financially ruinous to the individual crusaders. Collective and corporative methods of financing the crusades were imperative. Burghers, princes, and popes made use of such methods almost from the beginning, their individual resources being insufficient for the kind of expeditions they desired. The general taxation which reached a climax in the Saladin Tihe offered hope that a satisfactory financial structure might be created for the great enterprise. But the Saladin Tihe had no real successors. It was the model for taxation by princes for secular purposes; it was the model for taxation of the clergy by popes who found other uses for their money. The Holy Land continued to depend on armies essentially supported by private means, which were not sufficient, and the failure to develop sufficiently fast and far social methods of financing the crusades must be considered a factor in the loss of the Holy Land.

Like all wars the crusades were unproductive economically but had significant economic effects through their financing. Not only did the crusade taxes provide a model for later taxation on income and wealth, but the borrowing and lending necessary for most of the crusaders

104. Stubbs, *Constitutional History of England*, 4th ed. (3 vols., Oxford, 1902), I, 287-288, *Royal French England* (London, 1893), p. 293. 20 pounds sterling.

105. *Register of Gregory IX*, I, no. 1076.

106. Foster, *Studies in the History of the English Feudal Society* (Baltimore, 1943), pp. 170-175.

stimulated credit formation and the development of credit institutions and instruments. Indeed, the money economy as a whole must have been stimulated by these great enterprises which took so much money. The transformation of gold and silver altar ornaments into coin for crusaders may have helped to heighten the inflation that occurred during the crusades, especially in the later twelfth century. The sale of land to finance crusades most assuredly helped to make the market in real estate which was bringing about a new social order in the age of the crusades. The principal beneficiaries of all these financial transactions were the bourgeoisie, who loaned the money, bought the land, sold the provisions, furnished the transportation, and generally benefited by the financial activity of the crusaders. The peasantry who went on the crusades may have sacrificed everything but their souls, but as a class they must have gained very materially through the greater demand for their products and the greater supply of land on the market. Those members of the lay nobility who used up their savings, or sold or pledged their lands, may sometimes have been heavy losers because of the crusades, but as a whole the nobility probably lost economic power only relatively to the gains of the burghers and peasants. It was almost certainly the clergy, and especially the monasteries, who were the chief losers, as time and again they were forced to share their wealth with the crusaders either by loans without interest or by direct taxes. In essence the crusades redistributed some of Europe's wealth out of the hands of the clergy and nobles into those of the bourgeoisie and peasantry.

V

THE INSTITUTIONS OF THE KINGDOM OF CYPRUS

The adoption by the kingdom of Cyprus of institutions which existed in the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem is well known to historians. Yet it is sometimes not sufficiently recognized that over a period of three centuries (1192-1489), these institutions underwent a development which profoundly modified them.

From 1192 to 1197 Cyprus formed a simple seignury, at first in the possession of the English king; then, when Richard the Lionhearted renounced his suzerainty, and his protégé Guy of Lusignan died in 1194, Guy's brother and heir Alnery (1194-1205) was clever enough to acknowledge himself the vassal of the emperor Henry VI, who sent him a royal crown. In the same year, 1197, pope Celestine III created

There is an extensive bibliography on the history of Cyprus in earlier volumes of the present work, II, 196, and III, 349-361. The documents of the kingdom have been briefly treated by George Hill, *A History of Cyprus*, II (Cambridge, Eng., 1948), 50-57. The high officers have been listed in the old work of Emmanuel G. Beaumont, *Les Pouvoirs d'outremer de Des Comtes de Poitiers*, 1849.

Nevertheless, the sources are abundant. Besides the *Description de l'île de Chypre* of Etienne de Lusignan (Paris, 1399), which, though still useful, must be used with caution, the *Livre de Philippe de Navarre* and the *Livre consacré aux Armées* (published under the title *Abriégé du livre des ordres de la cour des Bourgeois*), have been edited in *RHC*, I, 463-511, and II, 327-332, respectively. The chronicle of Leontius Machaberos (Makaberos) *Revue* concerning the *Island of Cyprus*, entitled "Chronicle," ed. and tr. Richard M. Dawkins (2 vols., Oxford, 1922) (in which the translation of terms respecting institutions is not always accurate), and of Pierre Boursier, *Chronique de l'île de Chypre*, ed. René de Mas Latrie, in *Collection des documents inédits sur l'histoire de France, Mémoires historiques*, V (Paris, 1868), are particularly useful. The invaluable *Histoire de l'île de Chypre sous le règne des princes de la maison de Lusignan* by Louis de Mas Latrie (3 vols., Paris, 1852-1861) should be supplemented by his "Nouvelles preuves de l'histoire de Chypre," *Bibliothèque de l'école des chartes*, LXVII (1875), 341-378; LXXXV (1875) 47-67, and LXXXV (1876), 99-124; and "Documents nouveaux relatifs de princes à l'histoire de l'île de Chypre," *Collection des documents inédits sur l'histoire de France, Mémoires historiques*, IV (Paris, 1865), 317-321. See also Jean Yvernaud, *Documents cypriotes des archives de Nicosie (XIV^e et XV^e siècles)* (Louvain [ougey] 1884).

a church of the Latin rite in Cyprus. Although the heirs of Isaac Comnenus (d. 1195) still laid claim to the island until 1214, the actual rise of the kingdom can be dated from 1197.¹

Imperial suzerainty occasioned difficult years for Cyprus, when Frederick II attempted to use his rights in order to nominate regents in 1228. King Henry I (1218-1253) was released from this dependency by Innocent IV in 1243, and the kingdom was from then on fully independent; the pretender Hugh of Brienne seems to have offered to become the vassal first of Charles I of Anjou, king of Sicily, and then of James I, king of Aragon-Catalonia, in exchange for their support, but without success.² Some authors of crusading plans (Pierre Dubois, Manuel Pilöti) proposed to transfer sovereignty to a prince who would be more useful for their plans. In 1303 there were plans for having the pope make a son of Frederick of Sicily king of Cyprus, in exchange for the

siège de Beyrouth, *Bibliothèque archéologique et historique*, 73 (Paris, 1962); "Un Évêque d'Orient laïque au XII^e siècle: Guy d'Ibelin, G.P., évêque de Larnaca, et l'évêché de son titre," *Bulletin de correspondance hellénique*, LXXIV (1950), 94-100; "Une famille de 'noblesse laïque' à Chypre au milieu du XII^e siècle: les Ibelin et la vassalité de Maritima," *Atti del convegno di storia di Agrigento (Percorsi internazionali di studi italiani e stranieri)*, 1 (1961), 29-32; and *Le Livre des rois: Ibelin et le secret du royaume de Chypre pour 1188-1189* (Nicosia, 1963). See also Francesco Bultrichi Pagliaro, *Prato della monarchia*, ed. Allen Briss (Cambridge, Mass., 1934).

Among the studies of institutions, I might be permitted to cite my own articles, now reprinted in *Orient et Occident au moyen âge, coutumes et statuts* (London, 1971), and *Les Institutions en la l'Orient et l'Occident au moyen âge* (London, 1977): "Païs d'Orient latin, les quatre baronnies des royaumes de Jérusalem et de Chypre," *ANQF*, no. 4, XXXVI (1952), 47-48 (Orient et Occident, no. 12), "La Révolution de 1268 dans le royaume de Chypre," *Bibliothèque de l'École des chartes*, CX, 1952, 106-123 (Orient et Occident, no. 14), "La situation juridique de l'Empire dans le royaume des Lusignan," *Problemes des provinces de l'Empire byzantin*, II (Nicosia, 1972), 221-229 (Orient et Occident, no. 17), "Chypre de protectorat à la domination vénitienne," *Revue de l'histoire des idées XI^e*, ed. Agostino Pertusi, 1-2 (Florence, 1971), 457-477 (*Les Relations*, no. 13) as well as books and articles cited in chapter VI of article V of the present work, "Agricultural Conditions in the Crusader States."

On ecclesiastical institutions see below, note 21. A chapter on institutions of the Lusignan Kingdom will appear in the *History of Cyprus*, to be published by Archbishop Makarios III Foundation, Nicosia.

1 On the date of Guy's death see Richard, "*L'abbaye cistercienne de Jbelin et le prince Saint Balak de Mispila*," *Epistola* of the Center of Scientific Research, Nicosia, p. 70 (pass. in Richard), *Orient et Occident*, no. 19. On the claims of Isaac's heirs see Heinrich Pichonius, "Ritter, Zypern und das Längfeld für Richard Löwenherz," *Archiv für internationale Geschichte*, CXXV (1966), 11-32; Rodtke (1964) Göttingen, "L'Empereur Isaac de Chypre et sa fille (1185-1187)," *Byzantion*, XXXVII (1962), 134-172; Walter Heitsch, "Der Deutsche Orden und die Rechtsentwicklung über Cypern," *Nachrichten der Akademie der Wissenschaften in Göttingen (Philologisch-historische Klasse)*, 1970, pp. 245-266.

2 *Les Rois de Sicile et de la Corse*, ed. Jean Guiraud, E. [Edouard] Courlet, and Guillaume Mollet (Paris, 1891-1902), p. 343 (no. 492); Claus Loeck, "An Offer of the Sanctuary and Exile of Cyprus to Alphonsus III of Aragon," *English Historical Review*, LXXXIV (1969), 101-108.

surrender of the island of Sicily to the Angevins.³ Most of these projects amounted to anything. But after his defeat at Hattin in 1187, king James (1198-1232) had to acknowledge his dependence on the Mamluk sultan of Egypt, who, from that time on, confirmed the kings of Cyprus in their office. The republic of Venice had to obtain the consent of the sultan in 1489 in order to take possession of the island.⁴

Amery's direct line died out in 1267. The high court recognized Hugh III (1267-1284), son of Henry of Antioch and Isabel of Lusignan, as heir to Hugh II, and thenceforth Cyprus was ruled by a branch of the princely house of Antioch. However, it took up the name and the traditions of the Lusignans: the Lusignan arms of a lion on a field of white and blue bars were quartered with the lion of Cyprus, the lion of Cilician Armenia, and the cross of Jerusalem. Further, the Lusignan colors, white and blue, were adopted for the silken cords on documents from which hung the king's seal.⁵

Rules for the succession were not firmly established. Preference was given to male heirs (in 1345 James I, a brother of Peter I, was chosen over Marietta, Peter's daughter), but Hugh III derived his rights from his mother, Isabel, and Charlotte, the daughter of John II, succeeded her father in 1458. The principle of choosing the heir closest to the last holder of the crown was retained: thus Hugh III was preferred to Hugh of Brienne, and Peter I was preferred to his nephew Hugh, the son of his older brother Guy, who had died in 1346 before their father, Hugh IV, did, although it was necessary for Hugh to have his second son, Peter, crowned in his own lifetime. Henry II (1285-1324) formally deprived the children of his brother Amalric of any claim to the throne in order to leave it to Hugh IV, the son of another brother, Guy.

In case of dispute, the high court decided. But in 1460 James (II), the illegitimate son of John II, appealed to the sultan Isma' and obtained from him the investiture of the kingdom, which his half-sister Charlotte and her husband, Louis of Savoy, had been requesting. This investiture legitimized the forceful takeover which had won him the crown. Likewise the high court intervened to nominate regents. The barons were able to set aside Henry II's mother, Alice, widow of Hugh I (1205-1218), in order to commit the regency successively to Philip and to John of Ibelin. Henry II's brother Amalric, titular lord of

³ *Les Rois de Sicile* VIII, ed. Georges A. L. Dugard, Marlier Pascon, André A. Tchernia, and Robert Perrot (4 vols., Paris, 1984-1989), II, 247-264 (no. 1242).

⁴ Richard, "Chypre de possession à domination viciante."

⁵ Richard, *Documents cyproïotes*, p. 133. These non-Lusignan "Lusignans", from 1267 on, are hereafter designated "de" rather than "of" Lusignan.

Tyre, obtained from the barons the government of the kingdom in place of his brother, who was declared incapable of ruling (1306).⁴ It was again the liegemen who, on the death of Peter I, gave the regency to his brother John, titular prince of Antioch, whose murder queen Eleanor brought about in 1375. Was it a high court decision in 1426 to give the regency to cardinal Hugh de Lusignan when his brother Janus was captured by the Egyptians? And was there likewise such a decision in 1473 to grant Catherine Cornaro, the widow of James II, the regency in the name of her infant son James III?

Amery of Lusignan had joined the crowns of Cyprus and Jerusalem by marrying Isabel, the widow of Henry of Champagne (1192-1197); the two crowns were separated at his death in 1205. However, when Conradia of Hohenstaufen died in 1268, Hugh III was acknowledged as his closest heir. From that time on the kings of Cyprus were simultaneously kings of Jerusalem. When the Frankish possessions in Syria were lost, Henry II had the idea of making Famagusta, which he endowed with high walls and franchises, the reflection of his lost kingdom. The cross of Jerusalem was displayed on his banners, on the seal of the bailiff of the comarc, and on the coins struck in the town's mint. And after he had been crowned king of Cyprus in Santa Sophia of Nicocia, each new king would go to Saint Nicholas of Famagusta to receive the crown of Jerusalem, as late as the year 1372.⁵

A third crown devolved on the king of Cyprus at the death in 1393 of Leon VI de Lusignan, king of Cilician Armenia. From then on the (de) Lusignans bore the title "king of Latin Jerusalem (with the number in order of the royal succession since Baldwin II, king of Cyprus, and king of Armenia". It is not known, however, whether the fortress of Corycus, which the kings of Cyprus held from 1360 to 1448, was regarded as forming part of the kingdom of Cilician Armenia.

The Lusignans thus considered themselves entitled to confer the offices and fiefs of each of their three kingdoms. They nominated a marshal of Armenia;⁶ after they received the crown of Jerusalem, they nominated a seneschal, a constable, a marshal, a butler, and a chamberlain of Jerusalem; and after they received the crown of Cyprus,

4 E. de Mas Latrie, "Note officielle de l'abolition solennelle par les barons au roi Henri II pour lui remettre au déshériter," *Revue des questions historiques*, XLIII (1887), 324-341. Cf. Charles Durrus, "Un Diplôme grec au XIV^e siècle: Raymond de Pin, comte de Chio et V en Orient," *Mémoires archéologiques et d'histoire de l'École française de Rome*, XLIV (1977), 1-28.

5 Richard, "La Situation juridique de Famaguste."

6 John de Taboris (Taboras) dated in 1402, a husband of Peter de Lusignan, the father count of Thess, in 1412, see Machaberas, *op. cit.* 680-681.

they nominated titulars of these same offices, as well as an admiral, a turcopole, a chancellor, and an auditor for the kingdom of Cyprus. In addition, after the seigniorial families of the Holy Land died out, while retaining the titles of the princes of Antioch and Galilee and the counts of Tripoli for their younger sons, Peter I and his successors accorded to their subjects the titles of counts of Edessa and of Jaffa, and lords of Sidon, of Casarea, and of Beirut. However, these titles did not include any territorial endowment, in contrast to the first titled seignery created in the kingdom of Cyprus, the county of Carpas (Karpassos; 1472).⁹

When Guy of Lusignan became lord of Cyprus, he concerned himself with attracting enough Franks to the island to stabilize its occupation and ensure its defense. Some came from the kingdom of Jerusalem or the other principalities of the Latin east, others came from the west, especially from Poitou. He distributed fiefs among them generously (his brother Aimery reputedly reduced the extent of these concessions). It was undoubtedly the domain of the "emperor" Isaac Comnenus, who had deprived numerous members of the Greek aristocracy of their possessions, which was thus parcelled out, but many great Greek landholders, especially among the laity, and a number of Venetians were also despoiled—one tradition has it that the archbishop had first to surrender half their possessions. In any case, it is certain that no Greek name is encountered among the vassals of the kings of Cyprus in the thirteenth century.¹⁰

Although generous, these feudal grants were never connected with important territories. There were no great seigneuries in Cyprus; most of them included no more than a single village (casal), or else a few scattered villages (one exception being the domain of Marethasa, belonging to the titular count of Edessa in the fifteenth century). Not all of them had even a fortified manor-house with a defense tower.

The customs of the kingdom of Jerusalem were imposed with respect to feudal law: only minor differences may be noted (as, for example, the fief being passed on only to the direct descendants of a deceased

⁹ L. de Mas Latrie, "Les Comtes de Chypre," *Bibliothèque de l'École des chartes*, XLII (1880), 375 ff., and "Documents nouveaux," pp. 421-423, Richard, "Pays d'Orient latin."

¹⁰ The "fusion of aristocracies which, without delay or arms, comprised a Greek nobility," may have commenced "within the fold of a population hostile to the invaders their rank and their prerogatives of year-to-year," to reemerge in the fifth century: Vasilios Lascaratos's review of G. Hill's *History of Cyprus in the twelfth century* (Constantinople, 1914), 209. The only Greek "nobles" known up to the fifth century is Constant Symeonides, died in 1318 in the account book of Palamitella, but more still servants of the king or the churches bore names which seem to indicate a Greek aristocratic extraction.

vassals.¹¹ Cyprus even conserved some practices which were tending to disappear elsewhere, in particular the right of the king to compel the heiresses of a fief to remarry, by offering them a choice among three men of their rank. The manuscript of the *Assises* indicates "comme dame doit estre requise d'espouser baron".¹² This obligation was derived from that of guaranteeing the services of the fief-holder in person.

Florio Bustron has given a precise definition of the military service of the vassals. The knight had to present himself to the army with four horses, the squire with three, the man-at-arms with two, and the turcopole (who was a lightly armed horseman, originally a Syrian) with one. Where the vassal was unable to guarantee this service—as in the case of a young unmarried woman or a widow who had not remarried, although other exemptions existed—the vassal had to pay a tax called "default of service", which was assessed according to the number of fees of knights or other warriors which he or she held.¹³ Under Hugh III, the vassals claimed that they were not obliged to serve the king overseas or outside the kingdom. Prince Edward of England worked out a compromise limiting the duration of such service to forty days.

In accordance with the obligation to give advice to the king, the vassals were summoned to attend his court. The high court was made up of liegemen who judged cases concerning fiefs and vassals. Its jurisdiction is specified by two customs which particularly concern the kingdom of Cyprus: the *Libre à un séné* and of Philip of Novara (mid-thirteenth century) and the *Libre consuefais des Assises*, or *Libre du Plédenet et du Plaidoyer*, written a century later.¹⁴

The high court was first of all an instrument of royal power, which elaborated the sentences promulgated by the king after the jury reported its decision to him.¹⁵ It had charge of maintaining the rights of the king as well as judging disputes between him and his vassals. In this regard, the vassals were the guarantors of the king's acts; the *Libre*

11. *RHC, Letz*, I, 303–304; also Lathé, *Manoirs*, I, 44–45. On the formula of homage see *RHC, Letz*, II, 303–304.

12. *RHC, Letz*, II, 307. An exemption was given to Jeanne de Flouzy for his wife, allowing her to remarry before the choice: Richard, *Documents cypriotes*, p. 124.

13. Florio Bustron, *Chronique*, pp. 462–463; Richard, *Documents cypriotes*, p. 121; *RHC, Letz*, II, 427–428, G. Hill, *History of Cyprus*, I, 168–178. The reality seems to have been very liberal in conceding such "defaults", which made possible concentration of fiefs in fewer hands.

14. Maurice Ousset, *Les coutumes de la terre des seigneurs de Salomon* (Paris, 1921), pp. 76–80, 127–153, 168–178. Philip mentions only the high court; the *Libre consuefais* deals primarily with the court of the bourgeoisie. Other works, though probably written in Cyprus (Geoffrey le Tert, James of Ibelin), are of no special interest for the kingdom.

15. See, for example, Richard, *Documents cypriotes*, p. 155; cf. *RHC, Letz*, II, 306.

des remembrances de la seigneurie of 1468-1469 includes an entire chapter entitled "des choses qui se font par la haute cour". By this time the participation of this court was entirely formal, since it was reduced to two or three knights who ordinarily belonged to the council of the king. But this participation symbolized the control which the court exercised over the development of the royal domain. In 1372 it forbade Peter II to give, sell, or exchange any elements of this domain because he had not yet reached the age of twenty-five.¹⁶

The high court was also the court of first instance before which cases concerning the monarchy itself and the royal succession were brought. It judged the rights of claimants to the crown, proclaimed the legitimacy of the royal succession,¹⁷ and nominated the regent or, as in 1432 on the death of James, the regency council.

It also played another role. This court, which passed sentences and kept its own records,¹⁸ was also the instrument by which the vassals and rear-vassals of the king expressed themselves as a group. As in Jerusalem, the latter formed a body which some texts, dated 1272 and 1324, called "the community of the men of Cyprus": they were the ones to voice their claims, through James of Ibelin, about overseas service; and it was to them that Henry II granted a "remedy", after his restoration, "de sorte que les gens ne soient pas perdans," by drawing up two charters, "dont l'une sera au pouvoir du roi et l'autre au pouvoir des hommes".¹⁹

In fact the noble class was divided. It is likely that the high court consisted only of men of high nobility. These were the men who supported the usurpation led by Amalric of Tyre in 1306; it was the knights of secondary rank who put Henry II back on the throne in 1310. But it seems that the arbitrary acts of Peter I, who ignored the prerogatives of the high court and of the community of men, created unanimous opposition against him. He was compelled to authorize "les hommes", among whom were his two brothers, to meet in order to present him with a list of grievances. On the day after his assassination, this list was transformed into a "remède" adopted by the high court, which stipulated among other things that thenceforth the *Livre de Jean d'Ibelin* would become the law code of the realm (1369).²⁰ The

16. *Marchaux, Histoire*, cap. 177.

17. There is a full description of the sitting of the court when Peter II was proclaimed king, *ibid.*, caps. 219-226.

18. *RHC, Linn*, II, 246.

19. *Ibid.*, II, 300, 409, 406.

20. I have identified this document as the minutes of the deliberation of the Regency, in "La Révolution de 1369" it must have been finally drawn up the day after the quarter of the

juridical theory of John of Ibelin, based on the *Arras de la logique*, could only strengthen the control exercised by the vassals over the crown.

In reality, although there was great respect throughout this period for this *Liwe* (which the Venetian administration would later have translated into Italian), the Cypriote nobility did not succeed in imposing its will on the monarchy. The vassals' rights did not prevent the regents named either by Frederick II or by John of Ibelin from exiling their adversaries and confiscating their goods, which led to the exodus of many Cypriote nobles.²¹ Amalric of Tyre imprisoned and exiled his brother's followers, and Henry II cruelly revengeed himself on Amalric's followers. Peter II confiscated the goods of his father's assassins, taking advantage of the fact that an attack on the island by the Genoese had defeated the party which had overthrown Peter I. John II seems to have deprived certain of his vassals of their fiefs in order to give them to others.²² But it was the advent of James II which provoked a real revolution. The great majority of fiefholders had remained loyal to Charlotte and to Louis of Savoy; James, who was besieging them in Kyrenia (1460-1464), confiscated all their fiefs and distributed them among his own supporters—Cypriote nobles, persons of lower birth, Italian or Spanish adventurers—and, when the defeated came over to his side, he gave them other fiefs, taken from the royal domain or from other vacant properties. The result of this immense upheaval was to modify profoundly the structure of the nobility, now completely shot through with new elements.²³

Among these were the descendants of a non-Latin bourgeoisie, often of Syrian extraction, which had grown rich either in trade or in the exercise of offices in the royal administration. Already, under Peter II, Thibaut Belpheuge (Abû-l-Farj), the bailli of a castral of the royal domain, who had raised a troop of mercenaries to fight against the Genoese, was raised to the rank of knight and tucopolier of the realm, before being executed for the murder of the king's confessor, who had warned the king against giving Thibaut the castle of Corycus in fief

king according to Peter W. Balfour, "The Murder of King Peter I of Cyprus (1282-1297)," *Journal of Medieval History*, VI (1982), 229-232. On the right to make common cause, claimed by the regents, see Machaeras, *Revue*, op. cit. 269-276.

21. Emile Bernier, "Les Français d'outre-mer en Asie et en Espagne au temps des Hohenstaufen d'Italie," *Revue historique*, LXXXV (1906), 225-226.

22. At least we see the king disposing of "his friends": *Documenta cypriota*, p. 146, note 2.

23. See my introduction to the *Liwe des remembrement*. On the structure of the Frankish nobility before the disturbances at the end of the 14th century, cf. René de (von) Collenberg, "Les Dispositions nobiliaires antérieures à l'Ordonnance relative aux régimes de fief des Nations d'Outremer III (1460-1464) VII (1522-1523)," *Archivum de l'École française de Rome: Moyen Age, Temps modernes*, LXXXIII (1977), 81-90.

(1376) Thomas Parek, cited in 1382, was also "a Greek bourgeois who had become a Latin knight".²⁴ After James II, the Greek or Syrian families which filled the offices founded families of knights and barons who held their fiefs first from the king, then under the lordship of Venice.²⁵

Unlike those of the Latin empire of Constantinople or the Norman kingdoms of Sicily, the dynasty which established itself in Cyprus does not seem to have retained any of the dignities or high offices which had existed under Isaac Comnenus. The king surrounded himself with a group of high officers who bore the titles of senechal, constable, marshal, butler, and chamberlain. The role of these officers, defined in the *Assises*, was probably not purely honorary: in 1367 the constable ordered the auction of the possessions of bishop Guy of Limassol, which was carried out by his *banner*, and, in 1468, it was to him that a farmer engaged by the king was subject.²⁶ But the royal household ("notre court") was organised into several offices which functioned apart from them. The principal office was the chamber, which was responsible both for supplies and for the upkeep of the lodgings, the clothing of the king and his servants, and the management of the royal hunts: the huntmen (*braconniers*) and the falconers came under the chamber. On the other hand, it was also the chamber which kept the royal treasure, and we shall find it again listed among the financial institutions. At its head was a squire, assisted by a scribe. The pantry, the butlery, and the stable constituted the three other services over which presided the *batû de la court*, who in the fifteenth century assumed the title of *maître de l'hôtel*.

Were the constable and marshal of Cyprus in charge of the army? In 1425 the army was commanded by Henry de Lusignan, the titular prince of Galilee (although we do not know whether he was constable); the titular marshal of Jerusalem, who made decisions concerning provisioning, was Baldwin de Noyes, who was above all the most trusted counselor of king Janus. The turcopoles of the royal army were theoretically subject to the turcopolier. Besides the contingents who fought

24. Machairas, *Archiv*, mss. 325-342, 364-379, 399.

25. The role of the queen, Helena Palaiologina (1442-1496), in the introduction of Greeks into the nobility has sometimes been exaggerated. It was limited to favouring certain Greeks who came with her, namely her foster-brother Thomas of the Morea, who became chamberlain of the kingdom. This is what led one chronicler of John himself married to a Comnenus) to complain that "the government of this kingdom has fallen mainly into the hands of Greeks and petty people." See *Ballade de Jean*, "El Maronismo de Ladislao de Serbia y Catala de Cipro," *Boletine de la Real Academia de Ciencias*, XXXVII (1913), 79-83.

26. Ryfford, *Un Evêque d'Orient à Paris*, pp. 131-132; *Levee des consuetudines*, n.º 46.

on horseback and who were equipped by the vassals of the king, the infantry comprised free men, Frankish or Greek bourgeois, Armenians, and Syrians; we know that those from Cyprus were compelled to serve on horseback.²⁷

From the thirteenth century on, however, the king also had to hire mercenaries. These were so numerous in the time of Peter I that the liegemen demanded in 1369 that no more than one hundred might be engaged without their consent. Beginning in 1373, however, the constable James de Laugman had to reinforce his army with Armenian mercenaries, with Bulgarians previously in the service of Genoa, and with eight hundred men that Thibaut Delpharage hired in Venice. James II conquered his kingdom with a Modenese contingent, but he formed a permanent army by engaging some men-at-arms coming from the west with their condottieri: Peter of Avila commanded an *escadre* of knights, while some *condottieri* had charge of the *soûlès de pié*. The Venetians would later expel from the kingdom all those Franks and Sicilians whom they judged to be unreliable.

The marshal, for his part, was responsible for the material organization of the feudal army. Undoubtedly it was with regard to this that a tax called *maréchausée* was levied on all owners of livestock: it was the marshal who had to replace horses lost by vassals in the service of the king. Moreover, his scribe (the *maréchaucier*) recorded the deeds which established fiefs in the *Livre des remembrances de la maréchausée*: it is likely that he controlled the administration of homage.

In the thirteenth century the kings of Cyprus had no navy and had to depend on the Genoese. The fall of Acre induced Henry II to construct some warships in order to ensure the security of the coasts of Cyprus and to pursue pirates. There soon appeared an admiral of Cyprus. Hugh IV maintained six galleys in the squadron of the "Holy Union", which combatted Turkish piracy, and the arsenal of Famagusta built some warships.²⁸ Its activity increased under Peter I, who entrusted the office of admiral to his most faithful aide, John Monstrey, whom the conspirators of 1369 pursued with hatred. Janus conducted privateering operations against the Modenese with "une galée et une galiote".²⁹ Finally, James II built for himself a small squadron of galleys and compelled his subjects to supply crews, and his captains

²⁷ Richard, *Livre des remembrances*, Introduction. Few men also went guard duty, especially along the coast.

²⁸ L. de Mas Latrie, "Nouvelles preuves," *Bibliothèque de l'École des chartes*, XXXIV, 82; Richard, *Documenta cypriaca*, pp. 32-49.

²⁹ *Extracrit du Livre Thibaut sur le passage au Terre-Sainte*, ed. Pierre H. Dopp (Louvain and Paris, 1958), p. 174.

conducted operations which the Hospitallers and the merchants complained of.

The exercise of justice belonged to the seneschal, who presided over the high court in the king's absence. Viscounts in Nicosia (and in Famagusta from the beginning of the fourteenth century) presided over the court of burgoises, which was made up of twelve jurymen drawn from the Frankish bourgeoisie. The viscount, a Frankish knight nominated by the king, had the responsibility for the administration of justice as well as the maintenance of the king's rights, according to the conditions revealed by the *Livre coutumeir*; he would have the orders and the laws of the king published and carried out. Henry II dismissed (in 1300?) viscount Hugh Pittau and his jurymen, who had refused to have enforced an ordinance which was contrary to custom.¹⁰

An assize of 1335 reveals four bailies, those of Famagusta, Limassol, Paphos, and Cape Andreas, each of whom exercised in his "diocese" a jurisdiction analogous to that of the viscount, which extended over a vast district called the viscounty.¹¹ Sergeants would assist these officers; they were placed under the direction of one of them who bore the title of *marthep* (Arabic, *mahzanb*).

Around the time of Peter I this scheme was modified by the division of the island into twelve counties at the head of which were either a viscount or a baillie, or more often a *chevalain*. A judgment rendered in 1406 by the captain and *chevalain* of Kyrenia shows that this officer was assisted by a court of four jurymen.¹²

For the non-Frankish population special courts existed. In Famagusta, whose population was predominantly Syrian, the court of the *re's* seems to have ultimately supplanted the court of the viscount. But it is also known through gravestones that there were Frankish knights who bore the title of "rass des Syriens de Nicosie". For the Greeks, some documents originating in Marthassa reveal a *nomikos* and a *taboularios*, whose titles are those of agents of the Byzantine judicial administration, some elements of which the Franks had thus conserved.¹³

10. *ANC*, *Leis*, III, 253 ff., 320-321.

11. *Ibid.*, pp. 322-324 (jurisdiction of the baillie of Famagusta); cf. Richard, "La Révolution de 1300."

12. Richard, *Livre des remembrances*, introduction.

13. Jean Derouaux, "Notes pour servir à l'histoire de Chypre," *Revue des études grecques*, XLV (1932), 55, 96-97. The last mention of a *re's* by name comes in Elias Salazar, "The 'Circulaire de Marthassa' a Count to the 'Rassemblement des Latins, Syriens et Grecs' of King Hugh I of Cyprus," in *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, LI (1970), 175-77. Cf. Richard, "La Cour des re's de Famaguste d'après un texte de 1406," in *Annales de l'Institut de Byzantinologie et de Philologie*, XII (1967), 363-780.

Each casal had its juryman, nominated by the lord from the local inhabitants, who undoubtedly assisted the seigniorial baillie in the exercise of domanial justice. It is likely that the widespread enfranchisement of the Greek bourgeoisie under Peter I resulted in the access of Greeks (and Syrians) to the functions of the jurymen of the viscount's court, initially reserved to Franks "de la loi de Rome".

With regard to the confirmation of contracts, Cyprus was still unfamiliar with notarial institutions, according to the evidence of Pegolotti around 1325, and the king recognized as valid only those enacted before the courts, such as the court of the viscount, or before other jurisdictions, such as that of the baillie of the cawers, which was competent in commercial matters. Beginning in 1311 at the latest, however, a new high official appeared, the auditor of Cyprus, whose role seems to have been that of authenticating the contracts which his scribe recorded in his cartulary; he also exercised the functions of the king's procurator in the high court.³⁴ But, in fact, it was already necessary to recognize as valid certain acts drawn up by notaries. The famous Genoese notary Lambert di Sambuceto was acting in Famagusta at the very beginning of the fourteenth century. In the fifteenth century there were numerous imperial notaries; at the very most, certain acts accepted by the latter would then receive the sanction of the viscount's court.³⁵

The role of the high officers became noticeably less important in the direction of affairs. However, as early as the fourteenth century certain persons bore the title of counselor of the king. In the acts of John II and James II almost all the knights who represented the high court in the acts bore this title. And in 1452 the titular count of Jaffa, James de Fleury, was titled "chef de son conseil" — a title which might be compared with that of *governador del reyno di Cipro*, which the admiral Muzio di Costanzo bore in 1473.³⁶ It seems that the king's council was a well-defined group, of which the holders of the high offices of the two realms formed a part, as also the *pourveours* and the baillie of the *secrète*, and undoubtedly other persons who were favored with dignities and pensions by the king. Without encroaching on the duties of the high court, they in effect supplanted the latter in the control of the government of the realm.³⁷

³⁴ Richard, "La Révolution de 1399," pp. 119-121.

³⁵ According to the testimony of John Aspiliotis cf. Richard, "Une Famille de 'vicaires vicars'"
³⁶ Richard, *Documents cypréens*, p. 125, L. de Mas Latrie, "Documents normans," pp. 415, 423. Florio Buxtorf translates the passage where George Buxtorf (sup. 102) calls Muzio "vicario" by "ch'ien vicer de Nicose" ("Documents normans," p. 402), which seems to be a misnomer.

³⁷ The structure of 1452, cited in the preceding note, gives the composition of the high court. All its members seem to have belonged to the king's entourage.

The acts of the government were drawn up by the chancery, whose head was a chancellor, initially a notable (an ecclesiastic of high rank, later Philip of Mézenc), later a simple notary, usually an Italian. It included a vice-chancellor, scribes, and a judge of the chancery, and would draw up the acts of the king according to a formulary which had evolved over the course of centuries. They were sealed with a leaden bull, which was replaced in the fourteenth century by a seal of wax on which the king was represented sitting in majesty.¹⁸

Although our knowledge of the administrative organization of the island is very scanty for the period of Isaac Comnenus's autonomous dominion, it may be assumed that, as in the other Byzantine provinces, the fiscal administration had been based on the division of the territory into units, the *casals* (*chōtrai*). In each *casal* a *katepôn* levied public taxes (*akéntefon, strowia*) and there were cadastal registers (*proktika*) in which were inscribed the names of taxpayers assessed by household for the collection of the *katepôn*. The duke had a bureau (*aktreron*) directed by a *proktôr*.

As far as can be seen, the Latins used this fiscal structure in organizing the kingdom. The division into *casals* provided the framework for the allocation of fiefs, and the management of the king's finances was ensured by the *secrète du roi*, or the *grande secrète* (as Philip of Novara calls it). Its head, the *baile* of the *secrète*, is often called *prôktoros* by Leontius Machairas. It may be noted, moreover, that when the Mamluks took over Nicosia (1416), several officers of the *secrète* placed themselves at their disposal, and that they appointed a *prôktoros*.¹⁹

The *secrète* formed a college. The *secrétaire*s assembled for deliberation; one of them had charge of the *Livre des remembrances* in which were registered the orders of the king of financial import, the leases (*apwntis*) of the revenues of the royal domain, the sales or exchanges made between individuals on property held of the crown by quit-rent or otherwise, and manumissions. It was the *secrète* which authorized expenditures by issuing writs of payment (*apodictes*) on the funds of the collectors, and examined the accounts of the latter; it also put domainal revenues out to farm.

Its personnel, other than the *secrétaire*s, consisted of scribes, sergeants, and a judge. At its head was a *baile*, who up to the time of

18 Richard, "La Diplomatique royale dans les royaumes d'Arménie et de Chypre," *Bibliothèque des Écoles des chartes*, CXLIV (1906), 49-66.

19 For what follows, see the *Livre des remembrances*, introduction.

James II was a Frankish knight, while the *secrétaires* came from the Syrian or Greek milieu which furnished scribes for all the administrations. Finally, a treasurer of the *secrétie* seems to have had charge of the money derived from the royal domain (*régalé*).

Peter I had created an office of inquests, and the "master of the inquests" made decisions concerning the royal domain without asking the consent of the high court (even though the *secrétie* recognized the "*chozes qui se lost par la haute cour*"). The hegemon obtained the abolition of the office of inquests in 1369.⁴⁰ Under James II, there were two persons of the nobility who were called *poursuours dou reyaume*; one of them bore the title of the "superior of our *secrétie*", and both were associated with the baile in the commands of the king as in the deliberations of the *secrétie*. These men seem to have formed a section of the royal council competent in financial matters.

The royal chamber also had its part in the management of finances: the chamberlain John de Surtia, under Peter I, and the heads of the chamber, Anthony of Bergamo and James Souleiman, under James I, had the responsibility for extraordinary taxation. From 1468 to 1472 James Zaplana was "governor of the royal chamber". A treasurer collected the sums which came from extraordinary revenues. In 1466 James II introduced a new tax, and created what was called a "new office" for the purpose.

The *régalé* (the royal domain), which furnished the monarchy with its ordinary resources, included all the cities of the realm: Nicosia, Paphos, Kyrenia, Famagusta, and Limassol. Each was fortified, or at least possessed a royal castle. That of Nicosia, where the king customarily resided, was enlarged by Peter I, who added the Marguerite tower, and by Peter II, who had this tower torn down along with the "Palace of the Counts" where the royal children were lodged, in order to build the New Castle. Country residences at La Cava, Potamion, and Akaki,⁴¹ built in the fourteenth century, permitted the sovereign to devote himself to the hunt. The ancient fortresses of Pentadaktylos, St. Hilarion, Buffavento, and Kantara likewise belonged to the crown, as well as the Chateau-Franc, which James I constructed at Sigouri in order to keep an eye on the Genoese of Famagusta. Thus, with the

40. Michalinos, *Rechts*, cap. 423 and *passim*. Doukias, II, 317; Richard, "Un Épisode d'Orientalisme," p. 125; "La Révolution de 1369," pp. 113-114 (before I mentionly thought that the office of inquests might have had an essentially judicial quality).

41. Michalinos, *Rechts*, caps. 33, 346, 394-395. According to George Bournias (cap. II), after the royal palace was burned by the Mamluks (Michalinos, cap. 495), the king adopted as his residence the quarters of Richard de la Marne. Cf. Camille Rautert, *L'Art portique de la Renaissance en Chypre* (Geneva, Paris, 1899), II, 314-322.

exception of some towers belonging to the chief vassals and the fortified residences of the Temple and the Hospital (La Castrie and Koloss), the king had at his disposal all the fortresses of the realm, where he placed his castellans (later captains, at least in the most important ones), and occasionally garrisons. These fortresses also served as state prisons.

In area and in revenues the royal domain was as great as or greater than those of all the vassals combined. In the diocese of Limassol the king, the vassals, and the military orders shared the territory more or less equally. The accounts of the church of Limassol for 1367 show that at this time almost all the villages of the royal domain were farmed out (as *apanes*). But in the years which followed, the king resumed their direct exploitation; royal bailies were charged with administering these villages, grouped into districts whose number, according to a list drawn up between 1310 and 1325, exceeded twenty. The *Libre des remembrances* contains acts relative to the appointment of the bailies, whose duties seem to have been essentially financial.⁴²

The principal plantations of sugar cane, regarding which the king negotiated with the merchants who refined sugar, the salt beds of Larnaca, and the fisheries of the lake of Limassol belonged to the royal domain and ensured the king substantial revenues. Dimes (the *gabellies*) were levied at the gates of Nicosia on the commodities taken to market; makers of fine cloth (camel, samite) had to pay a tax when they sold their products, to which had to be affixed the bull of the royal dye-works. Other taxes were levied on commodities put up for sale in the market. Among them figured a tax of Byzantine origin, the *comerc* (*kommerchion*), the responsibility of a particular baillie. In Famagusta, in the fourteenth century, the baillie of the *comerc* collected the dues that the merchants had to pay when landing their goods, and presided over a court which settled disputes of a commercial nature.⁴³

Pegolotti, who provides evidence on these last points, also reveals how the mint of Famagusta functioned. In the thirteenth century "white bezants" were struck, after the model of the Byzantine *hyperperon*. In the fourteenth century, the bezant became a money of account, and the kings struck *deniers*, *gross*, and *noisies*. Financial difficulties compelled them to devalue the coinage: one devaluation undoubtedly oc-

⁴² On the dues levied by the bailies on the peasants of the villages in the royal domain, cf. volume V of the present work, chapter VI, section B. It was only in 1323 that the monastery gave up the charge of a share from church lands, paid up to that time by the master L. de Més Laisle, *Affaires*, III, 426.

⁴³ Pegolotti, *Pratica del Comercio*, pp. 82-83.

curred in the first half of the fourteenth century, and another between 1440 and 1445.⁴⁴

The initiation of extraordinary taxes probably required the consent of the hegemen and prelates, but the king tended to perpetuate their levy. Thus the *testagium*, a yearly tax of two bezants on each inhabitant of the realm (the clergy being exempt) instituted in 1292 in order to pay the soldiers and to construct boats, was not abolished until 1306 by the rebellious hegemen, after fruitless efforts by Boouface VIII.⁴⁵ Under Hugh IV the maintenance of the ships which policed the sea was financed by a levy on merchants who brought merchandise from overseas.⁴⁶ In 1369 the hegemen demanded the suppression of the taxes created by Peter I: a tax for the maintenance of soldiers, another for the arsenal of Famagusta, a levy for the fortification of Nicosia, and another for the construction of galleys.

The Genoese invasion of 1373 severely impoverished the kingdom, all the more so as it cut off its income from the revenues of Famagusta. At first it was necessary to have recourse to expedients, notably the sale of enfranchisements to some *perovski* (Peter I had already extensively enfranchised the *perpouari*, the Greek burghers of the cities).⁴⁷ Further, a tax was created of one bezant per person, the *kephaleutikon*; a salt levy, which compelled each inhabitant to buy one measure of salt each year at a price fixed by the *senior*; and finally, a "royal tithe" on fiefs and rents, which was first levied in 1388 by a mixed commission of Genoese and Cypriotes in order to pay the war indemnity exacted by Genoa.⁴⁸ The salt levy and the royal tithe continued, in spite of numerous exemptions. But it was necessary to raise new taxes after the defeat of 1426, in order to pay the tribute owed to the sultan, which aroused the opposition of subject Venetians, who attempted to evade it (1448). James II, in his turn, after having sold exemptions and enfranchisements, obtained in 1466 the right to a tax of twenty percent on wages and incomes (the *rate*) for three years.

Cyprus thus had a fiscal regime which was very similar to that of the western kingdoms. Here also the royal domain, although quite sub-

44. *Ibid.*, pp. 82-83. Richard, *Descriptive dictionnaire*, pp. 18-19.

45. *Les Registres de Boulogne F30*, II, 140-141, 780-784 nos. 2469, 2114, 2069; L. de Mas Latrie, "Une office de l'administration," pp. 534-541.

46. Papadogi, *Praxis*, pp. 62-66.

47. Cf. Peter II's letter concerning the enfranchisements made by his uncle (1374) *Manuscr. Beza*, esp. 376. On the enfranchisement of the *perpouari* dressed up by John de Sionta see *Ibid.*, esp. 177.

48. *Ibid.*, esp. 519, naming the suppression by James I, at the same time, of the office of the "tithe" did this office originate with the receipt of the *capitulation*?

stantial compared to the holdings of the vassals and of the church, did not suffice to permit doing without extraordinary taxation.

The presence of colonies dependent upon the merchant cities of Italy, Provence, and Catalonia did not have the same characteristics on the island as in the Frankish states of Syria. The rights which the Pisans and Venetians had acquired in the time of the Byzantines, or of Guy of Lusignan, were modest. In 1232 Genoa received the first somewhat extensive privileges, thanks to the support of John of Ibelin. But it was not until 1291, at the time of the loss of their trading establishments in Syria, that the Pisans and Catalans obtained some privileges; the Pisans established some small colonies in which a privilege of 1321 permitted them to have parish churches.⁴⁹ Venice asked for a charter of privileges in 1302, but did not acquire it until 1328. Venice aspired to its own quarters in Nicosia, Limassol, and Famagusta. In fact, it was only in Famagusta that there were communities of privileged merchants: Sicilians, Provençals, Pisans, and Barcelonaans. Their main privilege was that of paying the comert at a very low rate; Pegolotti recounts how he managed to obtain the same favor for the Florentines when he was the factor of the Bardi in Cyprus (1324-1326).⁵⁰ Only the Genoese and the Venetians — who enjoyed a complete franchise — had any notable establishments there: a hall where their consul presided, a church, and a street of houses.⁵¹

They alone also played an important role in the history of the kingdom. Venice, for example, by threatening the king with a boycott, seriously affected the operations of Peter I against the Moulens, which had compromised Venetian interests by the sack of Alexandria. The boycott would have been all the more effective since the Venetians controlled practically all the exports of two of the principal resources of the monarchy, salt and sugar.⁵²

49 Richard, "Le Provençans itali et cyrili en Chypre au XIII^e siècle," *Symposium des Pénitents*, VII (1979), 142-163. Alamy's diploma for the Marcellians unit is discussed as a forgery: Hans Eberhard Mayer, *Marcellus Leonidenherrscher und die Alkamaritischen Fürstentümer der 12. Jahrhunderte* (Tübingen, 1972). The authentic privileges given the Provençals in 1232 (ibid., pp. 193-194) make no allusion to a permanent establishment. On the Pisan churches see Richard, *Quarante chypriotes*, p. 71, note 2.

50 Pegolotti, *Pratica*, pp. 76-77.

51 Vector seems to have had a model for the Venetians in Cyprus about 1296, the title "hall" appeared in 1306. Cf. Giovanni Major, "Saggi di testi venetiani in Oriente," *Archivio Veneto*, 56^a ser., XXXIX (1941), 117-124, a list which may be completed by consulting L. de Mas Latrie, *Histoire*, III, 440. On the existence of a council distinct from the hall, cf. *Leve des remercement*, no. 224, n. 1.

52 On salt, cf. Jean C. Houssat, *Politique économique de saint Louis* (Paris, 1971), pp. 223-232; on sugar see the entry in the *Leve des remercement*. Every year — in the fall, a

These two republics had to look after not only the interests of their merchants who traded in the kingdom or who put in at its ports, but also those of a considerable number of "white Venetians" and "white Genoese". These were descendants of Syrian protégés of Venice and Genoa who had established themselves in Cyprus after fleeing the Holy Land. They claimed to enjoy the exemptions granted to the Venetians and Genoese, and that their cases should come under the jurisdiction of the consuls of Venice and Genoa. This did not prevent them from acquiring land (the *Assise* forbade the sale of land to "gens de commune") or from holding administrative offices.¹¹

A quarrel between the Genoese and the Venetians, at the time of the coronation of Peter II in Famagusta, following an earlier conflict which had arisen under Peter I concerning the desertion of sailors who had claimed to be Genoese, led first to an order of the *podestà* of Genoa to his compatriots to leave the island, and then to the arrival of a Genoese fleet.¹² Peter II, captured by a ruse, had to consent to turn Famagusta over to the republic of Genoa as pledge for the payment of a heavy indemnity. This surrender was to last only twelve years, and reserved the rights of the king over the city (1374). James I had to give up Famagusta definitively on February 19, 1384. The city, with a band of territory surrounding it, was thus, in fact, independent of the kingdom until 1464. When James II repossessed it he preserved its peculiar status: the Greek bourgeoisie of the city continued to come under the jurisdiction of the court of the Syrians, and the royal writs drawn up at Famagusta were in Italian, not French.¹³

Venice, which had preserved its neutrality, maintained its privileged status in Famagusta, but its galleys put in at Larnaca when they came to pick up salt, or at Limassol to load sugar. The bailie of Venice, who represented the doge in the king's court, and who administered justice to subject Venetians, moved to Nicosia. Some Venetians began to take advantage of the difficulties of the crown, but the republic continued to be cautious in its attitude toward the Lusignans. When the Mamluks took Nicosia in 1426, the Venetian subjects gave them a warm welcome, thinking they would be treated as neutrals. But, in view of the king's

joint declaration arrived to take on sugar (Richard, "Une Famille de 'vénitiens blancs'"), Cf. Pierre Rader, "Note sur le trafic vinicole-oleagineux à la fin du moyen âge," *Byzantinische Forschungen*, V (1975), 260-328.

12. L. de Mas Latrie, "Nouvelles preuves," *Bibliothèque de l'École des chartes*, XXXV, 123-124; Richard, "Une Famille de 'vénitiens blancs'"; David Jacoby, "Génova, 1300 et protège de Venise et de Gênes en Chypre du XIII^e au XIV^e siècle," *Byzantinische Forschungen*, V (1975), 124-132.

14. On the first conflict see Machaeras, *Revue*, op. cit., 141-136.

15. Richard, "La Situation juridique de Famaguste."

need of money, the Venetian merchants and the signory itself granted some loans for which the domanial revenues constituted the security. Venetian interests were becoming increasingly tied up with the fate of the kingdom. Mark Cornaro and his brother Andrew played an important role in the service of John II; Andrew became the auditor of the kingdom under James II, who married his niece Catherine.

The bailie of Venice, who was designated every two years by the great council, and who was assisted by a vice-bailie and a council formed by visiting Venetian noblemen, was one of the important persons of the kingdom. It was his intervention which permitted Catherine to over-come the plot of November 1373. From then on, however, the republic designated two counselors to "assist" the queen permanently, while a *provveditore* commanded the Venetian troops stationed on the island. It would be sufficient, in 1489, to keep the queen at a distance and to nominate a "lieutenant of Cyprus" who, with the two counselors, formed a body of "rectors of the realm", in order to bring Cyprus effectively under the direct government of Venice.¹⁰

Because of the passing of the island under the domination of a Frankish dynasty, the Latin church had become the officially established church in the new kingdom of Cyprus.¹¹ The archbishop and the three bishops, with their chapters, seem to have received posita-

10. Richard, "Clôture du processus." The reforms introduced by Venice took careful account of the earlier constitution. With respect to the administration of justice, see L. de Mas Latrie, "Documents normans," pp. 341, 354. For a layout of the administration of the island by Venice cf. G. Hill, *History of Cyprus*, III, 742-779, and L. de Mas Latrie, *Mémorial*, III, 10 *pass.*

11. For the period of the establishment of the Latin church and its early difficulties with the Greeks, cf. volume II of the present work, pp. 423-429. In place of the short, old work of L. de Mas Latrie, "Histoire des archevêques latins de Chypre," *AOZ*, II (1824), 307-318, one may substitute John Mackinn, *A History of the Orthodox Church of Cyprus* (London, 1900), translated into Greek and augmented by Charalambos I. Papadopoulos (3 vols., Athens, 1923-1962), as a basic work of reference. It is unfortunately marred by the consequences of a state of permanent tension between Greeks and Latins. See also G. Hill, "The Two Churches," in *History of Cyprus*, III, 1041-1104; Joseph GR., "The Heterodoxies of the Greek Church in Cyprus, 1096-c. 1200," *Byzantinische Forschungen*, V (1977), 71-96. The history of the Latin church has been in part revived by the study of materials in the collection of *Instrumenta ecclesiastica* of the Vatik. Mus. Archiv., which has provided, in particular, the dossier of the succession of bishop Guy of Lusignan in 1367. Cf. Richard, "Un Évêque d'Orient latin," and *Documents chypriotes*, pp. 40-118. The important edition of the acts of the synods of the province of Nicosia (up to 1334) has been published in Madrid, Coviella, XXVI, vols. 211-262. The cartulary of Santa Sophia of Nicosia, published by L. de Mas Latrie as an appendix to vol. III of his *Mémorial*, was reprinted by John L. Labrousse, "A Register of the Cartulary of the Cathedral of Santa Sophia at Nicosia," *Byzantion*, V (1928-1929), 416-422. An important study of the Greek church and its relations with the Latins is Derronville, "Rexion grecque chypriote," *Revue des études byzantines*, XXXVII (1979), 1-122.

sion of the cathedral churches of the four episcopal sees (Nicosia, Famagusta, Limassol, and Paphos), but without the substantial endowment which these churches had enjoyed under the Byzantine regime. Their endowment remained relatively modest; it was increased by gifts from Frankish nobles, as the cartulary of Santa Sophia of Nicosia shows. But the bulk of their revenue came from tithes which, as in the kingdom of Jerusalem, were paid by the king and by the nobles on the revenue of their domains, as well as by the holders of certain "free" lands, in accordance with the concordat of 1222. From these revenues the bishop had to ensure the maintenance of his church, the payment of the prebends of the canons and of the "assises" of the rest of the clergy, and the pay of "parochial priors" of the few parochial churches of Latin rite. However, this allowed the maintenance of only very modest cathedral chapters.¹⁸

As in the west, the bishops of Cyprus felt it necessary to be assisted in the exercise of their episcopal duties by auxiliary bishops. Several bishops from the Holy Land thus established themselves in Cyprus at the end of the thirteenth century and on occasion obtained the administration of episcopal sees (the see of Tortosa was even united to that of Famagusta). Later their number decreased, and it seems that only one auxiliary served as *vicar in pontificatibus* in the four dioceses: Dimanche de Deux-Lions, titular bishop of Mesembria, in 1367; Salomon Cardus and Anthony Audeth, titular bishops of Tortosa, then Nicholas de Courtois, titular bishop of Hebron, who died in 1468.

The *Constitutio Cypria* of 1260 attributed to the Greek bishop the function of "vicar of the Greeks" under the Latin bishop. The Greek bishop resided in the same diocese, but in another city: Soli for the diocese of Nicosia, Lefkara for that of Limassol, Arminot (Poli) for that of Paphos, and Carpas for that of Famagusta. The bishop of Soli, however, enjoyed the possession of a second episcopal see, the church of St. Barnabas at Nicosia. Each of them was assisted by a chapter of Greek canons: in 1301 the deans of Soli and of St. Barnabas intrigued for the succession to the bishopric. Their endowment was likened to an episcopal *mensae*. In 1321 pope John XXII increased that of the bishop of Lefkara by placing under him the monastery of the Holy Savior of Lefkara.¹⁹ The Greek bishop had complete authority over

¹⁸ This comes from the accounts of the diocese of Limassol in 1367. Richard, *Documents cypréens*, pp. 41 ff. The tithes levy was introduced in Cyprus by the Frankish; Greek bishops were entitled, as before the conquest, to assess a tenth on the tithes of the Greek rite, as if a *decimarius* on the clerics.

¹⁹ Frédéric M. Delorme and A. L. Thoin, eds., *Acta Romanorum pontificum ab Innocentio I^o ad Benedictum XI^o (1234-1304)* (PC, Fontes, no. 3, V.2; Vatican City, 1954), pp. 115-

the Greek priests of his diocese, and he was the judge of the Greek laity for all matters within the competence of the church's courts, which is to say for the greater part of private law. He had to swear obedience (the oath was carefully phrased, according to the compromise reached in 1260) to the Latin bishop of the diocese, but it was rare that a Latin bishop ventured to visit the person who was canonically his subordinate, as did the Dominican Bérard, bishop of Limassol in 1295, who deposed bishop Matthew of Leftara as a "heretic".⁶⁰ It is noteworthy that some bishops, like Leo of Soli, did not hesitate to have recourse to Rome in order to strengthen their position. In the three centuries between 1260 and 1570, incidents provoked in general by excess of zeal on the part of some prelates, or of papal legates such as Peter de Pierre Chauxaigne in 1310 or Peter Thomas in 1360, were relatively rare; the two churches lived their parallel lives without interference. The Latin church, however, seems to have feared seeing its faithful pass to the Greek rite, and some measures were taken to prevent it. Meanwhile, the monarchy worried about limiting the access of *parèques* to the priesthood, seeing this as an indirect means of escaping their servile condition.

Among the Syrians,⁶¹ the Melkites (Syri) were grouped with the Greeks and were placed under the same bishops. The Maronites, Nestorians, Jacobites, Armenians, and Copts had their own churches, notably in Famagusta and Nicosia, and their own ecclesiastical organization; they were probably not constrained to perform an act of obedience to the Latin bishop of each diocese. However, archbishop Elias summoned the heads of these communities to a provincial synod in 1340, along with the Greek bishops, in order to obtain their adherence to the canons that he promulgated; and, after the Council of Florence, representatives of the pope came to demand their adherence to the church union which had been proclaimed there.

The establishment of Latin monasticism was accomplished in stages.

194, 109-124 (nos. 119-120, 122-123); Thiers, *ed.*, *Acta Isaacii I PAPE (1197-1219)* (1842, VII-2, 1902), pp. 79-80 (nos. 10).

60. Richard, *Descriptive de l'épiscopat*, p. 74, notes 1, 2. Despite this deposition, Matthew seems to have continued to officiate until his death (archbishop John refused to carry out the sentence laid on him). He was then replaced by Othman, abbot of the monastery of Anastasis, who asked Bérard to confirm his election: K. Hatzidakis, "Ἐκ τῆς ἐπιστολῆς τοῦ ἀρχιεπισκοπικοῦ κληρικοῦ," *Ἐκκλησιολογικὴ Συναγωγὴ*, XXXI (1928), 14-25 (for the oath taken to the Latin bishop, *ibid.*, p. 182; Cf. also Othmanis, "Bases synodales," pp. 11-12, 30, 33. On the parallelism of the Greek bishop and *Exarchus de Leucas*, *Description*, p. 84. Greek bishops were ordered in number from 14 to 4, after 1220, in order to assure exact congruence of Greek and Latin dioceses.

61. Richard, "Le Peuplement latin et syrien de Chypre."

It is not known to what extent any Latin monasteries replaced Greek monasteries; this was undoubtedly exceptional. It may perhaps have occurred in the case of the Benedictine monastery of the Cross in Cyprus (Σταυρωμένη), to which the monastery of St. Paul of Antioch was united after 1268, or in the case of the priory of Augustinian canons of Bellapais, which later adopted the Premonstratensian rule. But Latin monasticism was generally a matter of new foundations (the Cistercians of Beaulieu, and the Clerician sisters of St. Theodore). The religious who were expelled by the Mamluk invasion transferred their communities to Cyprus: thus the Benedictine sisters of Our Lady of Tyre and of Our Lady of Tortosa were in Nicosia. Franciscans, Dominicans, and Carmelites then established the centers of their respective provinces of the Holy Land in Cyprus. The Temple and the Hospital, which were well endowed there, likewise established their seats in Cyprus, on a temporary basis, after the fall of Acre. The Teutonic Knights and the order of St. Thomas the Martyr (or the order of the English) also had headquarters there.⁴²

The growth of Latin monasteries was paralleled by that of Greek monasteries. The concordat of 1222 had sought to limit the number of Greek monks, and it is possible that a part of their domains had been appropriated for the formation of fiefs. But the survival of large foundations which possessed some important domains, such as Kykkou, Mangana, Agros, Machaeras, and Enkleistra, and the two abbeys in Nicosia called "of the Men" (Andriō) and "of the Women" (Ierachio), is noteworthy. The Armenian prince Hapoun, who had become a Premonstratensian, asked Clement V to unite Mangana to Bellapais. The inquiry prescribed by the pope had no effect, and Mangana kept its independence. Now and again the emperors subject to these monasteries may have had to pay tithes; the pope exempted them from 1292 to 1301. Peter I was one of the benefactors of Kykkou, and Frankish nobles often gave evidence of their devotion to the monasteries. The Greek monasteries of Palestine, which like their Latin counterparts had lands on Cyprus, held on to them, as, for example, did that of St. Theodosius of the desert of Judaea and especially that of Sinai, which founded

42 Richard, *Documents historiques*, pp. 67-69, 101-120. The goods of the Temple, seized upon the arrest of the knights, whom Henry II punished severely for the help they had given Acon of Tyre (Ragib III) had already dealt with their poverty by taking the temple of La Capricieuse given to the Hospital, except for Palmedelle, which was given to the Greek patriarch of Jerusalem, Anthypap. The Hospital divided its share between the chief commandery (Kolonia) and the commanderies of Pissidia and Tenedos; in 1468, James II appears to have appropriated the revenues of these domains. Many knights of Rhodes entered his service.

a priory, St. Simeon of Famagusta, which pope John XXII endowed with privileges in 1334.⁴³

There were also many small abbeys⁴⁴ which were incorporated into the Frankish seigneuries as they had been in the great Byzantine domains, with the Latin lord now becoming the monastery's patron, investing the abbot, and sometimes donating an icon or having a church built. In the towns, the families which occupied high administrative posts also founded monasteries or churches such as St. John of Bihl or St. Nicholas tou Soulouary. Christians of eastern rite also had their convents, such as those of the Jacobites at Omorphita (Morfittes) and of the Armenians at St. Macarius. The Ethiopian convent of Jerusalem itself had a priory at Nicosia.

The Cypriot monarchy, which had to get the Holy See to intervene on several occasions to support it in its difficulties, tried to reconcile its concern for keeping the peace between the different religious communities with its attachment to the Roman church. It does not seem to have had any serious problems with regard to the latter, with the exception of crises caused by the conflicts between the archbishops of Nicosia and the Greek episcopate before 1260. The kings of Cyprus seem to have tried to have Cypriot subjects provided with ecclesiastical benefices, though with only partial success.⁴⁵ Henry II tried in vain to have his chancellor Henry de Gibelet promoted to the archiepiscopal see. The brother of James, Hugh of Lusignan, was archbishop-elect of Nicosia, then became a cardinal (he played something of a role in the Council of Basel and took part in the negotiations between France, England, and Burgundy). But John II could not get the pope's agreement for the nomination to the same see of his bastard son James, who remained a postulant until he became king.

⁴³ *Livre des remembrances*, no. 146, n. 1; Richard, "Un Monastère grec de Palestine et son domaine cypriote au début du XIII^e siècle," *Publications of the Second International Congress of Cyprus Studies* (Nicosia, 1962). Marie of Bithyn founded the convent of Paphosensis in 1260 to house the miraculous cross of Tikhon. On the Latin translation of Ruff de Collesberg, "Les Ordres religieux, autres que les ordres monastiques, accolés à Chypre de 1100 à 1250," *Epiphaneia*, VIII (1972-1973), 187-202.

⁴⁴ Cf. N. Kyzas, *Les monastères de Chypre* (Louvain, 1972). A good example is Saint Sabas, in the district of Paphos, in the possession of Baldwin of Ibelin from 1234. This abbey was the object of a proposed reform in 1266. It received a donation from James II in 1408 (*Livre des remembrances*, no. 117). The reputation that it belonged to the Latin rite in the 12th century is uncertain.

⁴⁵ Ruff de Collesberg, "État et origine du haut clergé de Chypre avant le Grand Schisme d'après les registres des papes du XIII^e et du XIV^e siècle," *Mélanges de l'école française de Saint-Nicolas de Myre* (Paris, 1969), 197-202; also, "Les Cardinaux Hugues et Laurent de Lusignan et l'administration de l'église latine de Chypre, 1270-1403," *Archivum historicum pontificium*, XX (1962), 21-28.

One remains struck by the loyalty which, on the whole, the peoples of the kingdom evinced for the Frankish dynasty. The only known popular rebellion was that of the peasants who rose up after the defeat of Khirokitia, electing several captains and even proclaiming one Alexius "king" at Lefkoniko: it was a sort of jacquerie, quite comparable to that which troubled the kingdom of France after Fontenoy.⁴⁴ The chronicler Leontius Machaeras, in the fifteenth century, shows himself to be a devoted subject of the Lusignans.

The various communities experienced a gradual coming together. Kings and nobles made pilgrimages to Greek monasteries; the confessor of king Peter II, a Latin priest, visited his mother, a religious in the Greek convent of St. Mamas of Nicosia; the Dominican James ("Esienne") de Lusignan had a brother who was a Basilian, the Audeths, who belonged to the Jacobite rite, established religious services in the Latin and even the Greek rite, and left legacies to Coptic, Jacobite, Armenian, Maronite, Greek, and Latin churches. One of them even became a bishop in the Latin church.⁴⁵ The use of Greek was so widespread among the Franks that queen Charlotte spoke it better than French, and Hugh Boussat took his personal notes in Greek.⁴⁶ Latin priests had to take measures to prevent their flock from adopting customs appropriate to the Greek church.⁴⁷

While the feudal institutions had been conceived for the purpose of strengthening the domination of the Frankish element, they gradually ceased to play this role. Greek and Syrian names penetrated little by little into the nobility, especially from the time of James II on. Rich burghesses had before that time acquired landed properties and become lords of fiefs. During the Venetian domination, the Syntaktikos and the Somomenos held first place among the *hegemen*,⁴⁸ but well before that time the royal administration had been filled with Greek and Syrian elements.

The feudal regime, though it endured until 1570, was probably no

44. Machaeras, *Reclat*, *op. cit.* 424-427.

45. *Ibid.*, *op. cit.* 564-570; Richard, "Une Famille de 'vénitien' à Chypre'."

46. Edijk Breyer, Paul Lemerle, and Vincent Laveret, "Le Vénitien à Chypre 1789" *Revue des études byzantines*, IX (1951), 47-105.

47. In a contrary sense, see the reflections of Leontius Machaeras respecting Thibault Belphragis's conversion to the Latin rite (*op. cit.* 579). The statute by Simon IV in 1472 of the rules imposed on Greek bishops by the Councils of 1289 (Jean Lefevre, *Historia*, III, 523-280) is evidence of the national transgression of these rules, especially with respect to sacerdotal jurisdiction. A 16th-century tradition has attributed the name of Helena Palaiologina with a reserved similarity of the Greek clergies, but I believe that these transgressions were an older phenomenon.

48. This is not an isolated case, as can be seen by a quick look at the schedule drawn up by the Venetian administration between 1584 and 1591, which includes a list of those enrolled

longer the essential characteristic of Cypriot institutions. Despite the rebellion of the *legemari* against Peter I, the Lusignan monarchy maintained itself as the real master of the kingdom. Iacuta, John II, and James II governed without concern for the control of the high court, which was completely transformed by the very composition of the nobility. The Latin church, whose wealth remained restricted, no more represented a force of opposition than did the Greek church. The cities did not play a political role. The very crises which the kingdom experienced, with the exception of foreign interventions, were more the result of court intrigues and palace revolutions than of more profound movements. It was indeed the permanence of a well-established monarchy which guaranteed the stability of the kingdom of Cyprus, a mosaic of peoples, but of peoples among whom a true symbiosis was achieved up to 1489, and even beyond while under the domination of Venice.

VI SOCIAL EVOLUTION IN LATIN GREECE

Latin expansion into Byzantine territory — "Romania" — took place in several closely related fields: in addition to military and political aspects, it had also economic, demographic, and ecclesiastical repercussions. Military expansion with its political consequences is no doubt

Published sources, studies, and bibliographies bearing on Latin Greece are numerous. There are only publications with a direct bearing on the subject of this chapter are cited here, especially those which have been published in the last twenty years or so as it presents new evidence or interpretation.

Treatments of the history of Latin Greece or parts of it, accompanied by extensive bibliographies, have appeared in several major studies. For the general background see the excellent account by Kenneth M. Setton, "The Latins in Greece and the Aegean from the Fourth Crusade to the End of the Middle Ages," in *The Cambridge Medieval History*, IV.1, ed. Jean Haverly (1964), 389-420, 508-534, and the detailed treatment in the first volume of his *The Papacy and the Levant (1204-1571)* (Philadelphia, 1976). Jean Longpre has studied the Frankish states in Greece in his *L'Empire latin de Constantinople et le principat de Morée* (Paris, 1948), and the same states in 1311 in volume II of the present work, pp. 325-374, and Peter Topping has dealt with Frankish Morée from 1311 to 1449 in volume III, pp. 316-386; see also Antoine Bon, *La Morée franque: Recherches historiques, topographiques et archéologiques sur le principat d'Achéa (1205-1460)* (2 vols., Paris, 1969), and the second edition of Denis A. Zakynthinos, *La Descente grec de Morée* (London, 1977; originally published in Paris and Athens, 1932-1933), with updated bibliography in vol. I, pp. 329-374, and vol. II, pp. 381-403. Western Greece has been extensively treated by Focky Thulin, *La Roumélie occidentale au moyen-âge: le développement et l'exploitation du domaine colonial vénitien (XIII-XV siècles)*, 2nd ed. (Paris, 1975), with an updated bibliography, pp. 467-481; see also Lucien Baumgar Rablert, "Venice and the Crusades," in volume V of the present work, chapter IX. An extensive bibliography has been compiled by Massimo L. Salvadori, "L'Italia di Crète verso il dominio occidentale: Problemi e ricerche," in *Atti del II Congresso del secolo XV*, ed. Agostino Pertini (Atti del I Congresso Internazionale di storia della civiltà veneziana, Florence, 1973), I-2, 473-514. On the history of the Crusades in Greece see Setton, in volume III of the present work, chapters VI and VII, pp. 167-277, and his *Constantinople of Athens, 1202-1458*, rev. ed. (London, 1975). Numerous studies published by Raymond-Joseph Looney, some of which have a bearing on the subject treated here, have been republished in his two volumes of *Byzantium at Franco-Greece (1204-1571)*, 1976-1978). The same holds true of the studies of Anthony Luttrell, republished in his *The Hospitallers in Cyprus, Rhodes, Greece and the West (1291-1486)* (London, 1975), and his *Latin Greece: the Hospitallers and the Crusades, 1291-1460* (London, 1982). German China has not been treated here; on this subject, see the recent book by Michael Balard, *La Roumélie grecque (XIIIe-début du XVe siècles)* (2 vols., Rome, 1978).

ruined for two centuries or more under Latin rule; such was the case with Crete, most of the Peloponnese (Morea), Aetolia, Boeotia, and Euboea, as well as numerous other islands of the Aegean. This chapter deals with these areas of Greece down to about 1450.

In the political sphere, the most striking result of the Latin con-

grecs sous l'influence (2 vols., Venice, 1880-1889), and *Chroniques inédites relatives à l'histoire de la Grèce au moyen âge* (2 vols., Athens and Paris, 1880-1889), for the period from 1200 on. Thérin, *Regestes des établissements de saint de Marie croisés de la Roumélie* (2 vols., Paris, 1858-1862), and *Colloquations des assemblées ecclésiastiques croisées de Roumélie* (2 vols., Paris, 1861-1870), cover the whole period.

Western documents bearing indirectly on Crete have been published by Agapitios M. Theodorides, *Apographai Nippones Symbolae Hystoriae*, 1225-809 (Athens, 1913), and *Thesaurusque in Hieronymi Germani*, 1281-1282 (2 vols., Athens, 1934-1937), and for the last seventy of the years eluded here, by Hippolyte Nadet, *Documents relatifs pour servir à l'histoire de la domination latine en Crète de 1291 à 1461* (Paris, 1892). Numerous files have been preserved in the Archivio del Duca di Castella, a branch of the Archivio di Stato in Venice. A selection from these documents has been made by Carlhand, *Das Archiv des Herzogs von Candia* (Zürich, 1899), and by Johannes Jägerhans, "Beiträge zur Verwaltungsgeschichte Kanadas im XIV. Jahrhundert," *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XLII (1904), 421-479. Systematic publication of files by the "Comitato per la pubblicazione delle fonti relative alla storia di Venezia" is already proceeding. P. Louis Vidoulos has edited two volumes of public documents, *Duqa di Candia, duqa* (1210-1226) (Venice, 1943), and *Duqa di Candia, Querquar Comitatensis* (1249-1256) (Venice, 1946). Freddy Thérin has edited *Duqa di Candia, Duqa e terre vicine* (1256-1265, 1465-1467) (Venice, 1975). Numerous unpublished documents appear in Giorgio Pothos, *Le Chœur deses in Grèce*, vol. 3, *Documenti venetiani* (Venice, 1976).

Nobler documents reflect accurately the rhythm of daily life and provide insight into social and economic structure and trends. Several hundred notarial registers are preserved in the Archivio del Duca di Castella; only five have been published so far, the last four in the Venetian "Pianta" series. Antonino Lombardo, ed., *Indirizzatori di Pietro Scordani* (1275) (Rome, 1942); Mario Chalandaris and Lamberto, eds., *Leonardo Morosini, duca in Candia* (1278-1281) (Venice, 1942); Raimondo Marone della Rocca, ed., *Documenti di Brionio, notaro in Candia* (1300-1302) (Venice, 1950); Lombardo, ed., *Zaccaria di Procla, notaro in Candia* (1312-1317) (Venice, 1948). Johannes Carlsson, ed., *Pierre Florio, duca in Candia* (1388) (Nadet, 1976). Bernhard Szachnig has summarized about fifty of public and administrative documents which are usually valuable, in *Reponse des arches cretois et des notariats* (1261-1319) *des archives du duc de Crète* (*Bibliothèque de l'École Polytechnique d'études byzantines et post-byzantines de Venise*, 9, Venice, 1970). Laurens, *Les Grands documents relatifs des Evêques*, 1267-1290 (Florence, 1975), has edited and commented on an important selection of documents and other papers bearing on Crete and the Aegean islands. The same author has summarized, edited, and commented on numerous documents in eleven studies republished in his *Byzantisme in Franco-Crète*, especially I, 529-548, III-124, and II, 141-207. The fifteenth-century work of Laurentius de Monachis, *Chronicon de rebus Hystorici de C. et annis MCCCLXV* (Venice, 1758), is based on an intimate knowledge of documents and is most precious for Cretan history. For Cretan Greece the reader will consult the oldest relative collection by Astruc-Paillet i Luch, *Diplomata de l'Oratoire cretois* (1201-1469) (Barcelona, 1907); the dating of twenty documents has been corrected by Lamberto, "Addenda et Supplementa Regesta et notaria per serva à l'histoire des arches cretois (1210-1294)," *AFH*, XXV (1955), 109-212, reprinted in his *Byzantisme in Franco-Crète*, II, 181-295.

Papal correspondence bearing on the Roman and Greek churches and relations between their members has appeared mainly in the collections published by the *Bulle française de Rome*; for details see Laurent E. Boyle, *A Survey of the Italian Archives and of the Medieval Holdings*

quest was the extreme fragmentation of Romania after 1204, in marked contrast to the earlier unity of Byzantium. To a large extent, this fragmentation explains the diversity of the political and social regimes maintained by the Latins, as well as the nature and orientation of the

(Thessalon, 1972), esp. pp. 125-127; see also the volumes edited on behalf of the PC, Pontus: see R. Britton (Notre Dame City, 1942-1966, and Rome, 1961 &).

Until recently only moderate attention has been devoted to the social history of Latin Greece. This chapter aims at reconstructing the dynamics of social evolution resulting from the encounter of Latin conquerors and union with the indigenous population, overwhelmingly Greek, for lack of space, small minorities with the Jews, the Slavs, the Albanians, and the Armenians have not been treated here. Besides, no attempt has been made to study isolated and non-federated areas in a comparative framework. This method has enabled us to trace Byzantine continuity in the social, legal, and institutional spheres. With the help of material elements in Latin Greece it has been been possible to supplement the available documentation on Byzantine Greece before 1204. This approach is illustrated in three recent studies by Jacoby, whose views differ on many points from those of previous authors. "The Extension of Two Societies: Western Conquerors and Byzantines in the Peloponnese after the Fourth Crusade," *American Historical Review* (LXIV) (1973), 373-396; "Une Classe fiscale à Byzance et en Roumanie latine: les *trapezites* de laec, *trapezites* ou *trapezoi*," *Actes du XIV^e Congrès international de l'histoire byzantine*, II (Bucharest, 1973), 139-152; and "Les États latins en Roumanie: Philanthropie sociale et iconoclasme (1204-1798 environ)," *XIV^e Congrès international d'histoire byzantine, Aspects et co-aspects*, I (Helsinki, 1976), 1 (Alders, 1976). The present chapter relies heavily on these studies, all reprinted in Jacoby's *Archives sur le Méditerranée orientale du XII^e au X^e siècle*. Peoples, societies, dominions (London, 1976), as well as on the same author's other articles already cited above; see also Jacoby's "Les Grecs de nos jours: le soutien de quatre siècles de la mer Egée aux XI^e et X^e siècles," in *Le Grand des mers Méditerranée*, ed. R. Augias (= *XIV^e Congrès international d'histoire byzantine*), Naples, 1969 (Naples, 1971), I, 195-200. On society in Byzantine Greece shortly before the conquest and on Frankish Greece, see the studies by Jacoby just mentioned.

Recent work on the Byzantine upper class is general in by Antoniadis P. Kallias, *Συνέτοπος στην παροικιστική εποχή: κλάση Φράνκων XII-XIV αι* (Athens, 1974) (in Russian), 77a (Appendix: *Antiquities IX to XIV Century*, ed. Michael Angelis (BAR International Series 22), Oxford, 1964), and especially Angelis, "Archons and Dynasts: Local Aristocrats and the Cities of the Latin Byzantine Islands," *ibid.*, pp. 224-233. On Byzantine Greece in particular see Judith Herrin, "Medieval Byzantine Provincial Government: Hellas and Peloponnese, 1180-1204," *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, XXX (1975), 231-264. Antonio Carlo, "Sulla presenza nel Peloponneso bizantina contemporanea alla conquista latina," *Giornale storico*, XVI (1973), 31-41, has contested the conclusions of Jacoby on the process. On Frankish Greece see also Longue, *Les Comptes de l'État byzantin: Recherches sur les comtes de la quatrième croisade* (Grenoble and Paris, 1978), a mine of information on many of the Frankish conquerors and their family background; his work, however, needs, additions and corrections. See also Giovanni Ottolenghi, *Die Comuni e l'Alto Vicario di una famiglia feudale tra XII e XIII secolo* (Padova, 1963).

On the class status of the Franks and the Greek aristocracy in Greece see Jacoby, "La Littérature française dans les lieux de la Méditerranée orientale à l'époque des croisades. Diffusion et évolution," in *État et fortune de la classe de guerre dans l'Europe et l'Orient latin*, *Actes du XIV^e Congrès international de la Société Roumaine pour l'étude des aspects romains (Ploiești-Motru, 1962)* (Bucharest, 1964), pp. 617-646, and also, "Eighty Years after the Latin Conquest in the Crusader States of the Eastern Mediterranean," *Mediterranean Historical Review*, 1 (1966), 151-158. On Byzantine and post-Latin sources: Angelis: I. Lucie-Thouvenot, *Peasant Society in the Late Byzantine Empire: a Social and Demographic Study* (Crusade, 1971) who refers to the pre-1204 period and Frankish Greece, yet does not offer convincing interpretations, and Topping, "La Région agreste dans le Péloponnèse latin au XII^e siècle," *L'histoire*

economic activity and demographic currents in this area after 1204. Although the conquest resulted in a definite break in the political sphere, it did not bring about a similar phenomenon in the social or economic field. Latin Romania witnessed the encounter of various ethnic com-

plex contemporaries, see I, X (1936), 255-269, reprinted in his *Studies on Latin Greece A.D. 1204-1913* (London, 1977). Carlini, *La Romania feudale nella storia sociale del XIV secolo* (Bologna, 1974), is a partly successful attempt to deal with the society and the economy of the Morea, cf. Jacoby's review in *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, LXXVIII (1969), 194-96. See also Carlini, "Rapports les vignes, rursale e domestica alla luce della formazione della rendita feudale nella Morea latina del secolo XIV," *Revue des études byzantines*, LXXXVIII (1974), 146-176.

On the Argos as *filles de Roum*, *Small early colonies sometimes in Romania of XIV secolo* (Naples, 1964), which should be corrected and supplemented by Jacoby, *La Péninsule*, part III, and "Constant, Thess or Vlachia?" (both cited above). In addition to his synthesis on the Venetian empire, Thieriot has published numerous articles, several of which are now available in his *Études sur la Romania grecs-vlanches 1204-1716* (Louvain, 1977), see especially "La Condition paysanne et les problèmes d'exploitation rurale en Romania grecs-vlanches," previously published in *Revue byzantine*, IX (1947), pp. 35-76, and "Villes et campagnes en Crète vlachienne aux XIV^e-XV^e siècles," reprinted from *Annales de la Compagnie internationale d'études de haut-est européen*, II (Athens, 1972), 447-459. See also Bournet, *Le Domaine vassalique à Crète au XIV^e siècle* (Naples, 1945), which includes numerous excerpts of unpublished documents. Bournet has dealt in several studies with legal problems in Crete, two of them are particularly relevant: *La Noblesse de l'Éparchie de Crète vlachienne 1215-1716* (Athens, 1974), is useful on the margin of military service in Crete, has mistakes about "feudalism" in the island. Her study on "Quelques aspects de l'état des non-latins en Crète au XIV^e siècle," *Revue byzantine*, IX (1972), 104-126, is partly based on unpublished sources, it requires correction on many points. Although dealing mainly with a later period, B. I. Bok, *Archipelagos turbanat: les Cyclades sous colonisation latine et occupation armée c. 1500-1717* (Geneva, 1962), proves useful for our purposes.

Setton has written of society in Catalan Greece in his *Catalan Domination and the Catalan Society in the Fourteenth Century: Studies in History of Small Latins* (Chambersburg, 1973), pp. 241-264. On the early years of the Catalan Company in the decade see Jacoby, "La 'Crise paysanne crétoise' et l'état crétois de Crète: Quelques aspects de leur histoire," *Journal des Savants* (1964), pp. 78-97.

Slavery in the eastern Mediterranean is treated in the recent work by Charles Verlinden, *L'Esclavage dans l'Europe médiévale*, II (Geneva, 1977), which reproduces all his previous studies on the subject; see also Elizabeth A. Zachariadou, *Slaves and Crusades: Western Crete and the Emir of Heraclea and Aydin (1298-1321)* (Istanbul, 1963).

Various aspects of social, economic, and religious antagonisms in acculturation between the Latins and the Greeks have been treated in numerous publications cited above and also recently in the following studies: Tsippling, "Vlachization in Venetian Crete (1204-1797)," *Fourth International Chronological Congress* (1974), Act. II (Athens, 1981), 595-597; also, "Co-existence of Greeks and Latins in Frankish Morea and 'Mataion Crete,'" reprinted in his *Studies on Latin Greece*. Thieriot, "La Synthèse dans les trois latins formés sur les territoires de la Roumélie byzantine (1202 à 1361): phéno-mène religieux," was, like the previous one, a paper for the XIV^e Congrès international d'études byzantines, *Recherches et co-recherches*, I, vol. I (Athens, 1978); see also also, "Église, béatification et diocèse en Crète vlachienne (de la conquête 1204/1213 au XV^e siècle)," in *Fourth International Chronological Congress*, Act. II, 494-500; in addition, Padiotis, *La Chaire latine en Grèce*, I (2nd rev. ed., Vienna, 1966), and III (mentioned above); Setton, *The Papacy* (cited above). See also Laron, "Quelques observations sur l'économie et la société de Crète vlachienne (ca. 1270-ca. 1361)," in *Revue de l'histoire des études et recherches de l'Université d'Athènes* (Athens, 1962), pp. 177-194, and his "Observations on the Revolt of the Fourth Crusade: Greeks and Latins in Part and Whole," *Adelphi et Byzantologia*, n.s., XII (1964),

munies as well as social groups and classes. The Latin conquerors faced an indigenous population, predominantly Greek, whose social structure, institutions, legal traditions, and mentality differed from their own. The encounter of westerners and Byzantines resulted in continuity in certain spheres, a break in others, and accommodation elsewhere. An investigation of the character, stages, and limitations of this encounter requires a survey of the structure of Byzantine society before 1204, an examination of the Latin impact, and an evaluation of the social, legal, and institutional evolution generated in both societies by the conquest.

Recognition of the clear-cut distinction between slaves and free men is fundamental to the understanding of Byzantine society.¹ Legally, all free men were equal; in practice, however, obvious social and economic differences existed, yet they did not generate legal classes, as in the west at the same period. The same holds true of imperial privileges granted on an individual basis or collectively: the grantees remained justiciable according to Byzantine common law. The classification of free men as "powerful" (*dynatoi*) or "weak" (*ptochoi*) lacked precision. It is indicative of the absence of a rigid system of social stratification and of well-defined legal classes; this was still the case in the twelfth century. A restricted measure of social mobility enabled men of lowly origin to gain access to the elite by displaying efficiency in the imperial administration or the army, or by serving powerful men. The status of the *paroikos* or dependent peasant was somewhat exceptional in the Byzantine framework, although legally free and answerable as such to public courts, he was subject also to personal restrictions and was tied to his lord by links of dependence of a legal nature.

In the western provinces, as elsewhere in the empire, land was the major source of wealth, power, and prestige. Society was essentially rural in character. It was dominated by an upper class lacking legal definition, embracing great landlords, imperial officials, and imperial dignitaries. The use of the term "archon" for all these powerful men

47-62. A. R. Lewis, "The Caroline Fallacy in Archaeology in Prehistoric Greece and the Islamic World during the Fourteenth Century," *Monist*, 72 (1969), 262-309, does not point to the main reasons for this phenomenon, examined below.

This study has been prepared with the help of a grant provided by the American Philosophical Society in 1972, and has been revised and updated since.

¹ On Byzantine slavery and the archonates see Jacoby, "The Economy," pp. 273-274, 279-283, and "Les États latins," pp. 4-5, where the reader will find extensive bibliographical references. See also Kaldellis, *Securitas* notes. On the Slav archonates of the Peloponnese see below, note 14.

clearly indicates that they were often identical. One occasionally would make a distinction between the rich landlord or *ktematikos* archon and the official in charge of civilian administration or the military officer, known respectively as *ktematikos* and *semmatikos* archon, who exercised authority from the urban center over a district which at times was limited to a city and its neighboring territory. In certain cases the emperor recognized the authority and traditional status of the chiefs of foreign populations which had settled in the empire; by conferring on them imperial titles, he strengthened their position. It is therefore not surprising that they too were considered as archontes. This was the case with the chiefs of Slav groups who preserved their tribal structure in the Peloponnese, such as the Melings of Mount Taygetus.

The great provincial landlords were not content with the power deriving from their estates. In order to enhance their prestige and social ascendancy they strove to acquire administrative or military functions within the imperial machine of government or honorary titles in the imperial hierarchy. Imperial grants of offices and court titles ensured their coöperation. On the eve of the conquest, several great landlords of Crete and the Peloponnese bore court titles, and some had close relations with the imperial court. A Cretan archon who was a *magistros* and "friend of the emperor" traveled to Constantinople and persuaded Isaac II Angelus (1183-1195) to grant an estate to the bishop of Calamona (Retimo) for his lifetime.² Leo Sgouros, an archon of Nauplia in the Peloponnese, married the daughter of ex-emperor Alexius III Angelus (1195-1203) in 1204. The association of the archontes with the church was often quite close, since some of their relatives served as church dignitaries or officials. Besides, the patronage of ecclesiastical institutions enhanced their prestige and, occasionally, also their income, whenever they obtained the management of these institutions and their property.

Powerful archontes also developed in their own interests a network of personal bonds of dependence, yet these always retained their private nature and were never recognized by law or sanctioned by custom. They were thus basically different from western vassalage. Dependents, real or fictitious relatives, and allies occasionally constituted a large family or a real clan.³ It is within this framework that the *archontopouloi* of Crete and the Peloponnese were to be found. In the early thirteenth century, these were not just "sons of archontes", but a par-

2. See text in Bournas, *Il Despotato*, p. 14, note 26.

3. See an example cited, p. 60, of the late thirteenth century, that families were supposed to include about two thousand *proi* or dependents.

ticular group situated at a lower rank than the archontes within the social elite.

Although landed property constituted the principal source of their income, many archontes resided in cities, especially in those which served as administrative, military, or ecclesiastical centers, such as Athens, Thebes, Monemvasia, Corinth, or Nauplia. Those who lived within the urban enclosure of a *kastros*—or the fortified acropolis overlooking a city—were sometimes called *kastrotes* or “dwellers of a fortified city”, as in Athens. Yet not all archontes lived in urban centers. The leaders of the Slav populations of the Tageros and most of the Cretan archontes presumably resided on their rural estates, in the midst of their followers and dependents; such would also be the case after the Latin conquest. It has already been mentioned that occasionally the emperor granted privileges to individuals, to ecclesiastical institutions, or collectively to the inhabitants of a city or territory, like those of Monemvasia. These privileges, which were mostly of a fiscal nature, did not entail a definitive alienation of state prerogatives or the development of private jurisdiction.

Among the various grants awarded, the *pronoia* has drawn particular attention.⁴ Literally “provision”, it consisted of a concession of state revenues to an individual who collected them directly; to effect this the emperor transferred to the recipient certain peasants and the imperial land they cultivated. The *pronoia* originated in the late eleventh or early twelfth century and became more widespread under emperor Manuel I Komnenos (1143-1180). It has been claimed that the *pronoia* was the counterpart of the western fief, the basis of the imperial military system, and a major factor in the so-called “feudalization” of the empire, which allegedly led to its downfall. Furthermore, the similarity between a *pronoia* and a fief supposedly explains why the Latin conquerors found it so easy to adapt to Byzantine conditions. The foregoing examination of Byzantine society has already emphasized that it differed fundamentally from feudal society. For our purpose here it is essential to discover how widespread the *pronoia* was in the late twelfth and early thirteenth centuries in the regions of Greece conquered by the Latins.

It is rather striking that no contemporary source ever mentions the existence of *pronoias* or *pronoia* holders. A privilege delivered in 1183 by the duke of Crete, Constantine Dukas, confirmed the property of George Skordilis and his brothers, members of an archontic family.

⁴ On the *pronoia* see Jacoby, “The *Encomiast*,” pp. 176-178, with bibliographical references to previous work on the subject.

Pronoia are mentioned in the preamble of this document, together with patrimonial estates, in what clearly appears to be a current for mula used by the imperial administration. The provisions of the privilege mention, however, only hereditary property. The preamble may therefore provide evidence as to the existence and diffusion of the *pronoia* in the empire, although not as to its extent. It certainly does not prove that *pronoiai* were to be found in Crete before 1204, nor can one deduce this from a grant of Cretan imperial land made in 1170-1171.³ The main argument in favor of a wide diffusion of the *pronoia* in the empire before 1204 rests on the Greek version of the *Chronicle of the Morea*. However, this is a late source deriving from a French original; it obviously reflects conditions existing in the second half of the fourteenth century in the principality of the Morea, an area feudalized after its conquest by the Frankish knights. The Greek *Chronicle* was presumably composed between 1341 and 1388 by a Greek archon, who was firmly integrated into the class of feudal lords of the principality.⁴ His work is therefore not a valid source for a description of Byzantine social and institutional realities at the time of the conquest, about a century and a half earlier. In view of his social standing, it is not surprising that the author was familiar with feudal institutions. His use of *pronoia* as the equivalent of *feif* and of archon as the counterpart of knight may be explained by the absorption of the archontes into the feudal hierarchy of the Morea, as well as by the evolution of the Byzantine *pronoia* in the period of the Palaeologi and the knowledge thereof in the principality; indeed the *pronoia* gradually evolved into a hereditary tenure, its military nature became more pronounced, and it then resembled the western *feif* more than it previously had.⁵

It should also be noted that the *Assizes of Romania*, a legal treatise compiled in the Morea between 1333 and 1346, had retained various provisions of Byzantine law as they existed before the Latin conquest.⁶ There is no trace, however, of the *pronoia*. Although called *feif*, the landed estates of the Greek archontes of the Morea mentioned in the *Assizes* were not analogous to Frankish *feif*, nor were they subject to feudal law; their transfer and succession, as well as the constitution

3. See Jacoby, "Les États latins," p. 7-8.

4. See Jacoby, "Quelques considérations," pp. 129-130 and 187 on this version; Jacoby, "The Chronicle of the Morea," pp. 304-350, attempts to prove that the prototype was written in Greek. It is impossible, however, to deal with the subject only on a literary and philological basis. The social context has to be taken into account, and it is unlikely that Greeks should have praised the deeds of the Franks before the latter did so.

5. See especially Jacoby, "Les Archontes grecs," pp. 429-439.

6. See Jacoby, *Les Assises*, pp. 73-82, on the dating of the *Assizes*, and pp. 32-36, on Byzantine law therein.

of a dowry, reveal that they were in fact patrimonial estates governed by Byzantine law. To sum up, there is no evidence of the *pronoia* before 1204 in the territories of Greece conquered by the Latins.⁹ This is rather surprising, considering the general evidence for its existence in the Byzantine empire. Specific references to Greece may be lacking because sources bearing on this region are scant, or because the diffusion of the *pronoia* in the empire may have been more limited, quantitatively and geographically, than is commonly assumed; at any rate, it is quite obvious that the *pronoia* was not the dominant form of possession of landed property at this period. The possible annexation of *pronoiai* by local archontes who assimilated them to their patrimonial estates is also to be taken into account, especially in the political context of the period immediately preceding, and contemporaneous with, the Latin conquest, with the disappearance of the curbing restraint of the imperial authority.

There can be no doubt that the weakening of the imperial government after the death of Manuel I Comnenus in 1180 enabled the expansion of the large estates, both lay and ecclesiastical, especially at the expense of the small landholders and the state. In 1198 Michael Choniates, the metropolitan of Athens, accused the *kastrenoi* inhabiting this city of using coercion to acquire land in the surrounding countryside. This evolution was accelerated at the time of the Latin conquest. Virtually independent for a few years, the great archontes were able to seize estates of the fisc and, as the Peloponnese, also appanages of members of the imperial family, as well as property of Constantinopolitan monasteries.¹⁰ It may be conjectured that the grant of such land to their followers enhanced their prestige and authority. The annexation of *pronoiai* at this period is not to be excluded. The Latin conquerors converted Byzantine cadastral registers with the help of archontes, as in the Morea,¹¹ and gathered oral evidence, as in Crete, which enabled them to detect instances of fraud.¹² It was thus possible

⁹ See Jacobus, "Las Antiochenas," pp. 451-463, this is also the case in the areas of Cozon and Modon and in the rest of the southern Peloponnese which came under Muslim rule in 1207; *ibid.*, pp. 424-425, 478-479. Carlier, "Della pronoia," states that the *pronoia* existed in the Morea before 1204. However, he (on p. 38) does not take into account that the rules of succession to the "life" of the archontes were entirely different from those applying to life in the areas from which the Latin originators.

¹⁰ On these estates in the Peloponnese see Jacobus, "Las Antiochenas," pp. 421-427.

¹¹ See the French version of the *Chronicle of the Morea*, *Libre de la conquête de la péninsule de Morée*, *Chronique de Morée (1204-1380)*, ed. Longnon (Paris, 1911), pars. 107, 120 and the Greek *Chronicle*, *Chronicon seu Moros*, ed. John Schmitt (London, 1894), verses 1649-1650, 1831-1832.

¹² *Ista in Bessar, R. Dondola*, p. 82, note 26.

to discover evidence of the usurpation of land that had belonged to the imperial fisc, yet no trace of *pronoia* was found. It may be that in the cadastal registers annexed *pronoia* had been disguised as patrimonial estates; as they were already inscribed before 1204 under the name of their beneficiaries, such deception would have been easier than for other land. This conjecture is no doubt tempting, yet only direct evidence will enable us to ascertain the existence and diffusion of the *pronoia* in the areas of Greece conquered by the Latins. For the time being, such evidence is lacking.

The collapse of the Byzantine provincial government shortly before 1204 also had other consequences: the great archontes took over its military, fiscal, and judicial prerogatives.¹³ Especially those who were invested with imperial power or bore court titles took advantage of the new situation.¹⁴ Leo Chamaretos ruled in 1205 over Sparta and the neighboring countryside; Leo Sgouros inherited the tyrannical power of his father in Nauplia and extended his sway over Argolis and the city of Corinth, where another archon succeeded him; in the southern Peloponneseus, yet another archon from the area of Modon convinced Geoffrey of Villehardouin to conquer the peninsula together with him. In Crete the heads of great archontic families fully exercised state prerogatives in the areas which they controlled. The social standing of these archontes, the means at their disposal, their ascendancy over their clients and dependent peasants, and the support they offered to the Greek clergy facing the Latin church, all marked them as leaders of the Greek resistance to the conquerors.¹⁵

In the region under consideration here, it is practically impossible to get a clear view of the groups of society situated below the archontes and archontopouloi. Sources referring to city-dwellers other than the archontes are totally lacking. Many questions concerning the status of the peasantry remain unresolved. Peasants subject to a lord or to an ecclesiastical institution and settled on their land were known as *paroikoi*. An issue hotly debated in recent years is whether there still existed free peasants paying fiscal dues directly to the state, or whether these peasants had all been assimilated to the *demourarioi*

13. On the general situation in the area see Haerens, "Evolution of Byzantine Provincial Government"; the author somewhat underestimates the role of the independent archontes.

14. The leaders of [the groups] settled in the Peloponnese had long before been granted court titles and fiscal privileges, and their traditional status and authority had thereby been strengthened; see the case of the Melitani in Filizte G. Akriotides, "Le Sittos, chef de groupes ethniques," *Polytechnikon, Festschrift Franz Dölger zum 75. Geburtstag* (Halleberg, 1964), pp. 25-38.

15. See Haerens, "Les États latins," p. 11.

paroikoi or dependent peasants of the state.¹⁶ Twelfth-century evidence from Crete does not help to clarify the matter. A charter of 1197 deals with the donation of property by a Cretan to the monastery of Patmos, where the grantor became a monk. According to another charter, drafted in 1193, the vendors of a vineyard had first offered it to the holders of adjoining plots, in accordance with Byzantine law, so as to enable them to exercise their right of preemption (*protimisiā*); thereafter, the vendors had asked two imperial officers for permission to proceed with the sale. At first glance, this would seem to indicate that they were *paroikoi* of the state, yet no such conclusion can be reached. The two Cretan charters do not inform us about the status of either the grantor or the vendors. Moreover, various sources indicate that the donation and sale of property, as well as the exercise of the right of preemption, were not peculiar to free peasants. Finally, the transfer of immovable property was severely controlled by the state, as such property was liable to fiscal dues; this may explain why imperial officials intervened in the sale of 1193. Thus the evidence of the two Cretan charters remains inconclusive.¹⁷ The rather meager twelfth-century sources on the Byzantine peasantry in general may be supplemented with later data from areas conquered by the Latins; this procedure is justified by the fact that various provisions of Byzantine law were preserved and applied under their rule.

There can be no doubt that even before 1204, the subjection of the *paroikos* to his lord had become very tight. The subjection of the *paroikos* may have become binding one year after he had been settled by a lord on his land. The acquisition by the lord of definitive rights to his person and that of his descendants was achieved after a period of thirty years, during which the peasant fulfilled his fiscal and manorial obligations. The course of a thirty-year prescription is not documented directly for the twelfth century, yet it can be inferred from later sources bearing on Latin Rumania. Moreover, it is quite likely that this prescription was already applied in the eleventh century, if not earlier.

16. Opposing views have been expressed by George Ostrogorski, *Quelques problèmes d'histoire de la paysannerie byzantine* (Belgrade, 1934), by Johannes Karamanlidou, in his review of this study in *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, L (1957), 367-382, and recently in *idem*, "Ein Problem der spätbyzantinischen Agrargeschichte," *Zeitschrift der deutschen Byzantinistik*, XXX (1981), 207-232, where he also deals with the pre-1204 period; this author claims that no dependent peasantry existed in Byzantium. Louis-Thémophilis, *Peasant Society*, pp. 142-222, 244 (especially 142-158), is of the opinion that the hereditary status of the *paroikos* was not extended to all his offspring before the fourteenth century; this would imply that the subjugation of the peasant to his lord in earlier times laid by the Latins was an innovation introduced by the conquerors. For a different interpretation, see below.

17. See Jacoby, "Les États latins," pp. 11-12.

The calculation of the thirty-year period extended not only to the subjection of the dependent person, but also to that of his descendants, at least of his male offspring. This confirms that the status of the *paroikos* was permanent during his lifetime, as well as hereditary. The *paroikos* remained legally free, in strict accordance with Byzantine law, as is clearly illustrated by the fact that he had access to, and testified in, imperial courts. Occasionally he was transferred from one lord to another, yet he could not escape his social status, while paradoxically the slaves became free when emancipated by his lord. When the *paroikos* had severed the link of subjection by migrating afar and was no longer inscribed on the cadastral registers as belonging to the estate of his lord, he became "unknown to the fisc" or "free" (*eleutheros*), that is, free of any specific fiscal obligations toward the state and of dependence on a specific lord. It should be emphasized that this "freedom" was only of a fiscal nature, and was temporary; it did not extend to the social status of the *paroikos*, which remained permanent and hereditary. Indeed, the imperial administration considered the *eleutheros* as a *paroikos* of the state or *demosiarios paroikos*, and the same rule applied to persons previously not subjected to any lord, but unable to explain their fiscal status: the assimilation of the latter group to the *paroikoi* of the state implies that the Byzantine peasantry as a whole was of dependent status. The temporary nature of the "freedom" enjoyed by the *eleutheros* is illustrated by the procedure implemented by the imperial administration: once located, he was settled on imperial or state land, or else granted to an individual or an ecclesiastical institution, and became again liable to fiscal dues. He was thereby fully reintegrated into the class of the *paroikoi*.¹⁷

Two documents seem to contradict the assumption that the status of the *paroikos* had already become hereditary before 1204. Imperial privileges delivered respectively to the monastery of Lavra on Mount Athos in 1079 and to that of Eleousa in Macedonia in 1156 granted them the right to increase the number of *paroikoi* exempted from fiscal dues whom they held in their subjection; the additional peasants were to be selected from among their descendants.¹⁸ The exercise of imperial rights over the descendants would seem to indicate that they did not belong to these institutions. A closer examination of these documents reveals, however, that the provisions of the grants aimed only

17. On the *eleutheros* see Jacoby, "Une Classe Sociale," pp. 129-132.

18. First in Paul Lemerle, André Guillou, and Nicolas G. Svoronos, *Actes de Lavra*, I (Archives de l'Église, VI) (Paris, 1970), pp. 283-285, no. 38, and Louis Petit, "Le Monastère de Notre-Dame de Philé en Macédoine," *Archives pontificales archéologiques vaticanes = Kirchengeschichte*, VI (1900), 28-29, 32-40; see also Comnénitsky, op. cit., pp. 26-30.

at the creation of additional exempted fiscal units. For this purpose, peasants could of course have been recruited, as in other cases, among the *paroikoi* of the state or the *ekκληρονο*, who were imperially freed of tax payments and of subjection to a specific lord. The imperial government was reluctant, however, to grant manpower which it considered as belonging to the state. Instead, it was stipulated that the new fiscal units should be constituted by peasants who were already established on the monasteries' lands. The issue was thus exclusively of a fiscal nature. The status of the descendants of the exempted *paroikoi* was not at stake, and no change in their status was contemplated: they were *paroikoi* of the monasteries before the imperial grants were made, and remained so afterwards.

It is already evident by now that the subjection of the *paroikos* to his lord entailed severe restrictions on his freedom. The lord could prevent him from leaving his land. However, migration did not necessarily sever the link to the lord; subjection was maintained as long as the *paroikos* paid the customary dues incumbent upon the fiscal unit for which he was responsible. The link of the *paroikos* to his lord was thus of a personal nature; he was not tied to the soil. Some degree of mobility among the *paroikoi* is indeed attested. In certain cases, it was due to economic incentives; in others, it was prompted by the urge of the *paroikos* to find a spouse: the high excess of males in many villages, as well as ecclesiastical prohibition of marriage between relatives, inevitably led to exogamy. It is therefore not surprising that members of the same family appeared occasionally in villages of the same lord or on the estates of neighboring landlords, as well as in a nearby city.²⁰

The economic and fiscal unit or *stasis* headed by the dependent peasant was liable to taxes known as *stoxoi*, as well as to labor services or *organeia* which he owed to the state; they were occasionally transferred by the emperor to an individual or an ecclesiastical institution. As a rule, the *stasis* included land. An eleventh-century legal decision rendered by the *megistos* Cosmas specified that land held according to the *paroikikon dikaiosin* or "law of the *paroikos*" belonged to the lord and could not be alienated by the *paroikos*.²¹ In practice, however, it was inherited, divided among heirs, or partly granted in dower. It may be assumed that in all these cases the lord did not object and possibly even agreed to the transfer of property, as long as the land was held

20. See Jacoby, "Παραστάσεις ἐκ ἀπογραφῶν ἐνδὲς τῶν αἰώνων XII, XIII et XIV αἰώνων," *Βυζαντινά χρονία*, VVI (1942), 173, 180-181, 184 (reprinted in Jacoby, *Βυζαντινά et ἀπογραφικά*).

21. *Texte de Théodore I. Uspenski*, *Archiv der Histoires* (Leningrad, 1917), pp. 1220v-1220r. No such position arose when land was held under a lease, as legal conditions were then duly specified.

by people subject to him and the obligations of the fiscal unit were fulfilled. Restrictions on the rights of the *paroikos* to his lord's land did not prevent him from acquiring full ownership of land and other property by purchase or through agricultural contracts; some of these provided for the division of newly planted trees or vines between the lord on whose land they were grown and the peasant who had supplied the labor. Thus the *paroikos* could come into possession of free property even on his own lord's land. Yet if the dependent peasant died without heirs of his body, his lord succeeded to the entire unmovable property situated on his domain, as well as to his chattels; this was a further mark of the *paroikos*'s subjection to his lord.²²

The impact of the Latins on this Greek society was particularly marked in the fields of political organization and social structures closely linked to each other. The nature of the encounter of conquerors and conquered varied, however, according to the nature of the new ruling elite. Some territories were conquered by knights who imposed a feudal superstructure upon Byzantine society; other territories came almost directly under the rule of Venice or the Catalans, both with non-feudal elites; and some territories went first through a phase of feudal rule before being occupied by Venice.

In the territories belonging to the first category, such as the Morea and the duchy of Athens, feudalism was introduced by knights who came mainly from the county of Champagne and the duchy of Burgundy;²³ in these areas of the west, feudalism was then in full bloom. In Euboea, which belonged to the third category of territories, it was introduced by knights from Lombardy and Tuscany, areas where feudalism was in regression as a result of the fierce onslaught of the communes. In many islands of the Aegean, Italian knights from these same areas, and the Venetians, imposed feudal institutions upon local society.²⁴

Despite significant differences in their respective backgrounds, the French and Italian knights and the Venetian lords of the Aegean brought with them political institutions and traditions, as well as attitudes and values, common to the whole of the feudal elite in the west toward

22. See Jacoby, "Les États latins," pp. 13-16. On these agricultural contracts see Jacoby, *Le Péloponnèse*, p. 37 and note 4; they were similar to the *comptum* or *coltampage* found in the west in the same period, yet in Byzantium they guaranteed property rights.

23. See Jacoby, *Le Péloponnèse*, pp. 28-30, 82-83, 85-86. Longuenes, *Les Compiègnais de l'Éléphantine*, shows that many crusaders were relatives or neighbors; others were vassals of the powerful feudal lords.

24. See Jacoby, *Le Péloponnèse*, pp. 183 ff., 237-239, 246-252, 271-273.

the end of the twelfth century.²³ In the areas from which they came (except for the city of Venice) society was strictly stratified, social status being virtually synonymous with legal status and transmitted by inheritance. Each class was governed by its particular legal system. Social promotion involving the crossing of class boundaries was largely restricted to the lower strata of society, when servile peasants became free. Promotion to the upper class of society was rendered most difficult by the development of class-consciousness within the ranks of the feudatories, illustrated by the ceremony of dubbing and the involvement of the nobility into an order, with its specific rituals, morals, and obligations, as well as a particular life-style and mentality. Personal bonds of a private nature, backed within the knightly class by vassalage, provided the backbone of social and political hierarchy, while judicial and legislative authority, as well as the right of taxation, were essentially vested in private hands; the concept of a state was alien to the minds of the members of the knightly class.

All these features of political institutions and social structure were transplanted by the feudal elite to Greece. Prerogatives exercised by the Byzantine imperial government until a few years before the conquest passed into the hands of the upper echelons of the Latin knightly class. The feudal hierarchy is best known in the principality of Achaea. At most, it had only three ranks below the prince: there were his direct vassals, whether liege men or feudatories of simple homage; among the liege men the barons enjoyed a special position as his tenants-in-chief. In turn, all the liege men of this first rank could have vassals of their own, and so too could those of the second rank. Social differentiation within the Frankish elite was pronounced, and the gulf between vassals of simple homage and greater feudatories was especially marked; members of the lowest stratum, among whom sergeants were included, were not members of the knightly class. This fact goes far to explain the gradual integration of Greek archontes within their ranks and, in some cases, even within the ranks of the knightly class. Besides, Italians of non-noble descent also gained access to this class, whose nature thus evolved in the course of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

A hierarchy of fiefs corresponding to that of the feudatories, knights

23 For what follows see Jacoby, "The Crusades," pp. 282-283, 287-293, 299-301-302. On the integration into the feudal hierarchy of Slavic and, occasionally in 1261, of Turkish leaders who were baptised see ibid., pp. 300-301. The description of the feudal hierarchy in the present work, vol. II p. 267, should be corrected. The social class of the knights was reflected in their life style, the books they read, and the literary works they composed, as well as in the wall paintings that adorned their mansions: see Jacoby, "La Littérature française" and "Knights' Values".

as well as sergeants, was also instituted. As the conquest proceeded, Latin knights assisted by Greeks consulted the Byzantine cadastral registers and divided into feudal tenements land previously held by the Byzantine *basileus*, the crown, and ecclesiastical institutions housed in Constantinople, land perhaps partly usurped by local archontes. The same holds true of the estates of absentee archontes or those opposing Latin rule, as well as numerous ecclesiastical properties, parts of which were secularized on various occasions. Enfeoffment of knights and mounted sergeants was restricted, however, by the prince and the barons, who were eager to preserve their political, social, and economic ascendancy. Many knights held only one fief, the standard yearly revenue of which was about 1,000 hyperpers, or part of a fief, and mounted sergeants half a fief or even less. The existence of money-fiefs and household knights further emphasizes the precarious standing of many feudatories and their dependence upon their lords.¹⁴

The feudal class in the Morea was more numerous than in other areas of Latin Greece and displayed strong cohesion, stability, and continuity. All these factors help to explain the important role of the Morea, especially after 1248 when its prince William II of Villehardouin received from emperor Baldwin II suzerainty over the islands of the Aegean. The main vassals of the prince, including the triarchs (*triazeroi*) of Euboea, the lords of Tenos and Myconos, and the dukes of the Archipelago, participated in court gatherings convened by him and, from 1278, occasionally by his representative or bailie; they also took part in military expeditions. They were thereby closely associated with the progressive growth and diffusion in their own territories of a body of law transcribed in the *Assizes of Romania*, whose final version in French was compiled between 1333 and 1346. This private legal treatise was based partly upon custom, imported by the conquerors from their native countries as well as from the Latin empire of Constantinople and the Latin kingdoms of Jerusalem and Cyprus, where the Latins faced political and military circumstances similar to those of the Morea, and rested in a virtual state of perpetual war. In addition, the influence of royal Capetian legislation and of the Angevin kingdom of Sicily is perceptible in the *Assizes*. Byzantine private law applicable to family possessions and agricultural exploitation, as well as various rules concerning the *paroikos* or dependent persons, were also incorporated, although the conquerors severely restricted their use when it conflicted with seigniorial prerogatives. Finally, the *Assizes of Romania* also embody legislation emanating from the princely court, and

26. See Jacoby, "The Emancipation," pp. 386-393.

legal principles based on sentences pronounced by various courts of the principality. As a result of immigration after the conquest, burghesses or non-nobles, coming mostly from Italy, soon constituted the majority of the Latin population in the Morea. Political power remained, however, in the hands of the knightly class, and the regime instituted by the conquerors bore a decidedly feudal aspect. The *Assizes of Romania* faithfully reflect the social, legal, and political realities of Frankish Morea.²⁷ This was not the case in all the territories of the Aegean where the *Assizes* were applied. In several of them, the process of "feudalization" was quite limited; it nevertheless had an impact on the structure of Greek society.²⁸

Other territories of Romania were conquered by non-feudal elites and therefore did not witness the imposition of a feudal regime. Such was the case in areas which came under the sway of Venice; in them the commune made use of feudal institutions and terminology which it had previously applied in its territories of the Latin Orient, as in the region of Tyre. This was the case when in 1207 Venice ceded Corfu to ten members of old Venetian families, with extensive prerogatives, and in the territories around Coron and Modon, two ports in the southern Morea. Feudal terminology was also applied in Crete after 1211, the year in which Venice began the colonization of the island, which it intended to keep under its direct rule. The settlers who belonged to the old Venetian families were called in Crete *militar* or *feudari*, knights or feudatories; they were provided with military tenements called *militiae*, *cavalleriae*, or *feuda*, for which they owed mounted military service. The *popolani* or members of non-noble families were given smaller tenures called *serventariae* or *sergeantries*, liable to service on foot.

Yet the use of this terminology should not be mistaken for the introduction in Crete of a feudal regime, which was totally alien to the social and political structure of Venice and the mentality of its citizens. This is clearly illustrated by the system of government imposed upon Crete and the areas of Coron and Modon. The rule of Venice in these territories not only succeeded that of Byzantium; in many respects it also bore a striking similarity to that of the empire, and contrasted markedly with the feudal regime introduced in other Greek territories. The supreme and direct authority of the state remained unrestricted, and expressed itself in numerous spheres. Venice inherited the estates of the Byzantine *fisc* and its *paroikoi* or *villani* (*villani*),

27. See Jacoby, *La Féodalité*, pp. 21-30.

28. See ibidem, p. 200.

as well as the ownership by the state of the floating peasant population. The commune also confiscated Greek imperial monasteries and two thirds of the other Greek ecclesiastical estates, keeping one third for itself and apportioning the rest in military tenements for Latin settlers. The grant of these tenements in Crete, as well as in southern Messenia, where they seem to have been rather rare, did not restrict the authority of the state, nor did they imply any privatization of its rights and prerogatives in the judicial or fiscal spheres, as in feudalized areas. These prerogatives were exercised by means of a highly centralized administration, closely supervised by the metropolitan authorities.²⁷ Venetian law was enforced in all spheres and supplemented by rules adapted to the specific needs of each Venetian territory.²⁸

In 1311 the duchy of Athens too was subjugated by non-feudal conquerors, members of the so-called Catalan Company, who settled exclusively in cities. The feudal regime and institutions introduced by the Frankish knights were immediately abolished, as was the use of the *Assizes of Romania*. In a way, it was as if the conquerors had succeeded directly to Byzantine rule; this was certainly the case in southern Thessaly, which was conquered by the Catalans in 1318 and 1319. At the outset, authority was vested entirely in the hands of the Catalan Company, whose institutions were supplemented by the customs of Barcelona, presumably introduced soon after the conquest; this reflects the urban character of the Catalan conquerors. No wonder, therefore, that their attitude toward the indigenous population was similar to that of the Venetians. The legal and social framework reflecting this attitude, which they created in 1341-1342, was maintained by the Catalans, in spite of their acceptance in 1312 of the kings of Sicily as supreme rulers. Sicilian rule introduced two new factors in the life of the duchy. Royal authority evidently curtailed that of the Company, which was nevertheless maintained as a corporation composed exclusively of Latin settlers and representing their predominantly urban interests. Besides, Sicilian rule introduced feudalism into the duchy. This complex regime persisted as long as the Catalan duchy existed.²⁹

²⁷ See Thiercy, *Le Royaume*, pp. 126-133; Bernard, *Le Despotat*, pp. 27-36, 12-18, 39-46, 45-48, 109-112, 124-125; Jacoty, *La Féodalité*, pp. 225-226, 295-297, and "Une Classe locale," pp. 128-152; Thiercy, *Le Royaume*, pp. 203-224, 251-254, *deuxième administration*.

²⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 225-240. On the rules applying to military tenures in Crete see Sarrailh, *La Histoire de l'Asie Mineure*, pp. 15-167. The conditional character of these tenures and the feudal terminology applied in Crete do not warrant the conclusion of Sarrailh (*op. cit.*, especially pp. 182-183) that Venice introduced feudalism in the island. The basic character of feudalism, the privatization of state prerogatives, is totally missing in Crete; see below.

²⁹ See Seign, *Catalan Domination*, especially pp. 79-86, 120-165, and "Catalan Society in Greece," pp. 262-276, 282-294. On the early legislation of the Company and the continuity

The island of Euboea or Negroponte, as well as those of Tenos and Myconos, about which we are less informed, may be included in the third category of territories alluded to above. Euboea was conquered in 1205 by Boniface of Montferrat and his vassals, who prevented Venice from taking possession of the two thirds of the island it had been promised by the other leaders of the Fourth Crusade in the treaty of March 1204. During the whole of the thirteenth century, except for the years 1255-1262, the authority of Venice in Euboea was restricted to its quarter in the city of Negroponte, which was progressively extended. Although Venice actively intervened in the political and feudal affairs of the island, whose main feudal lords were its vassals from 1211 on, it wielded no direct authority over their fiefs. It is only around 1323 that Venice began its territorial expansion in the island, which culminated in 1390 with rule over the entire island.³² At first, feudalism had continued in the island with Venetian rule. The imposition of the latter in areas previously governed by a feudal elite created a complex social, legal, and institutional regime, especially as Venice had to take into account existing structures. This is clearly borne out by its use of the *Assizes of Romania*, which were translated into the Venetian dialect, presumably in Euboea in the late fourteenth century. At the insistence of the feudal lords of the island, a version of the *Assizes of Romania* prepared by an official commission was sanctioned by the Venetian senate in 1452, and its dispositions acquired legal force. It soon became the only binding treatise of feudal law not only in Euboea, for which it had been prepared, but in all Venetian colonial territories, including even Corfu, which had never had any political or feudal link with the principality of Achaia. The continuity of feudal law was thereby ensured. It was applied by feudal lords as well as by Venice to feudatories, feudal tenements, and villenage. Byzantine private law regulated the civil affairs of the Greek population, restricting thereby the use of Venetian law. On the other hand, Venetian criminal and commercial law were fully enforced, as in Crete and southern Messenia.³³ A similar complex system prevailed in areas of Frankish Morea annexed by Venice, such as Nauplia and Argos in 1389, the hinterland of Coron and Modon from 1420 on, and Tenos and Myconos in 1390.³⁴

The Latin population established on Byzantine soil during the pe-

of its institutions see Jacovly, "La 'Compagnie catalane,'" pp. 37-103; as the nobility, feudallords, and the communes see Lucifora, "Vallées et Monastères," pp. 151-212.

32. See Jacovly, *Le Péloponnèse*, pp. 185-203, and "Catalans, Français et Vénitiens," pp. 227-261.

33. See Jacovly, *Le Péloponnèse*, pp. 95-113, 208-211, 269-270, 287-299, 306.

34. *Ibid.*, pp. 265-282.

ried of the conquest was gradually reinforced in numbers by migration, and its composition became more diversified.¹⁵ Except for the feudatories hailing from Capetian France, most new settlers, nobles as well as commoners, had lived in urban centers in the west, mainly in Italy, and were accustomed to urban life and occupations. It is therefore not surprising that they established themselves mainly in the cities of Latin Greece, especially in harbor cities, the centers of its most intense economic activity.¹⁶ This was also the case with the settlers whom Venice sent to Crete: in addition to rural military tenements, they were provided with houses in Candia or in Canea. These settlers resided only temporarily in the villages assigned to them. In Euboea many feudatories lived in the city of Negroponte. Even knights originating from feudal areas in the west, though accustomed to a different lifestyle, favored urban settlement. True, some of them lived in isolated mountain castles or fortified rural mansions, although they resided occasionally in the houses they held in cities. Most of them, however, lived in the repaired or enlarged acropolis or *kastros* of a city or elsewhere inside the city walls, whether in the Morea or in the duchy of Athens. Significantly, after their conquest of the duchy in 1311 the Catalans acted in the same way and succeeded their Frankish predecessors in each fortified area.

It is obvious that preference for urban settlement cannot be explained solely by economic considerations. Psychological factors of a more general nature also exerted a powerful influence in this respect: the tendency of the Latin conquerors and the western settlers who joined them to cluster behind the walls of a fortified city or acropolis arose from the urge for security of a minority group, conscious of its isolation in the midst of a numerous local Greek population. Events in Crete justified this feeling and clearly illustrate this phenomenon of aggregation: whenever a Greek rebellion threatened them, the Latins abandoned their rural holdings and took refuge in the cities.¹⁷ It is therefore not surprising that Venetian settlement policy was aimed at increasing the numbers of Latins in urban centers. This is illustrated by the building in Crete of a new city, Canea, as well as by the grant of houses to Venetian settlers in the island in the thirteenth century, already mentioned, and even more markedly in the following century. In 1301 twenty-four Venetian families were sent from Venice to Corin-

15. For what follows see Jacoby, "Les États latins," pp. 19-20.

16. Neville Odling, among Latins resided permanently in the rural area, close to Candia, where they engaged in land cultivation and the raising of animals: see Stopping, "Co-existence of Greeks and Latins," p. 19.

17. An example of 1285 in Buxton, *Il Dominio*, pp. 22-23.

and Modon in order to reinforce the number of Latins residing in these cities. In 1340 Venetian citizenship restricted to Romania was granted to the Latins inhabiting the Venetian quarter of the city of Negroponte and to others who would settle there. In 1353, after the Black Death, Venice promised full and unrestricted citizenship to Latins willing to settle with their families for a period of at least ten years in the cities of Candia, Canoa, Retimo, and Sitta in Crete, of Coron and Modon in the Morea, or in the Venetian quarter of Negroponte.

For lack of adequate sources, it is impossible to assess the relative numbers of the Latins and Greeks, yet the available information points to the fact that Latins remained a small minority. According to a list compiled around 1225, the principality of Achaea comprised 170 knight-fiefs and could muster some 450 mounted men. A report written in 1338 or somewhat later assessed at more than one thousand the number of knight-fiefs existing in the principality and territories subject to the suzerainty of the prince of Achaea. Even if accurate, this number is rather unimpressive, especially if the dispersion of the feudatories is taken into account. Moreover, it would be erroneous to multiply this number by a family coefficient in order to calculate the total knightly population. As all long-distance, voluntary, and individual migration is sex-selective, men accounted for an overwhelming majority among the knightly settlers; many of them arrived without a family, and subsequent immigration of relatives did not basically change the sex ratio (number of men to 100 women) within this group. The situation in this respect was worsened by the powerful class-consciousness of the feudal nobility and of the nobles hailing from Venice and other Italian cities who adopted their social ethos. Social exclusiveness, especially marked in the small group of the barons, was expressed in their matrimonial policy. Several Morean knights married daughters of noble families in areas in the west from which they originated and later brought them over to Greece. Most of them, however, wedded Latin noblewomen from the eastern Mediterranean whose families had come from Venice, other Italian cities, France, or neighboring areas. The smallness of the knightly class and its predominantly male composition, as well as frequent marriages in its midst, gradually increased the problem of consanguinity which restricted marriage within the group, or threatened the validity of marriages already contracted. Economic considerations no doubt further limited the chances of marriage opportunities within the same group. It is significant that in 1336 pope Benedict XII justified his dispensation for a marriage in Negroponte within the forbidden degrees of consanguinity by stressing the small number of Latin nobles and his desire to prevent intermarriage with Greeks.

In Venetian Crete, the organized and imposed migration of families inaugurated in 1211, reinforced by voluntary migration, eliminated at the outset the impediment of consanguinity. Yet the groups of settlers sent from Venice to Crete were also small. In 1211 it was decided to establish 132 *milites* and 408 *sergantes*; thus the arrival of 540 families or some 2,500 persons was contemplated. However, the settlers who arrived in successive waves in 1211, 1222, 1233, and 1252 did not reach these numbers. This is confirmed by the holding of military tenements by Latins who were not Venetians, although initially only the latter were to hold them; the acquisition of several *milicias* or *sergantes* by one settler also points to the same conclusion. In spite of a constant trickle of Latin settlers, the Latin population of the cities of the Venetian empire remained quite small. In 1302 Candia was almost totally empty; the year before, 24 Venetian settlers with their families, a small number indeed, departed for Coron and Modon. The population of Coron amounted in 1401 to 480 inhabitants, of whom only 80 were Latins. In the cities of the Catalan duchy of Athens, even the most populous, the Latins may not have numbered more than a few hundred.¹⁹

As a result of the conquest, society in Latin Romania was divided into two distinct groups: on the one hand, the Latin conquerors and the western immigrants who joined them; on the other, the indigenous Greeks and Slavs. Religious affiliation did not constitute an important factor in the relations between the members of the two communities, yet it became a basic criterion of social stratification and individual status, providing a convenient means of group identification. The Latins were those who recognized the authority of the Roman church and enjoyed the status of freemen, hence *Francus*, synonymous with *Latinus*, also meant free. The indigenous society remained faithful to the Byzantine church. It underwent a considerable change, although some thirteenth- and fourteenth-century sources seem to imply the contrary, and its internal structure was altered. In conformity with their own political and institutional traditions and concepts, the Frankish knights conceived of society as strongly stratified, each class being governed by its own set of laws. They therefore translated social realities into legal terms and ascribed to the local society a socio-legal system similar to the one proper to a feudal society. Conquerors of urban origin, such as the Venetians and the Catalans, applied a similar social stratification to the local population. On the whole, Greeks and Slavs, peas-

¹⁹ See Ancey, "Les Grecs latins," pp. 20-22.

ants and presumably city-dwellers, were relegated to the rank of villeins, regardless of their status before the conquest.

Those who escaped the process of debasement and leveling constituted numerically only a marginal element in the indigenous society: such were the archontes, the *archontopoulai*, and a few other Greek or Slav free men, as well as emancipated villeins or slaves. Thanks to their wealth, their social ascendancy, and their life-style, as well as to the fiscal exemptions they enjoyed occasionally at the time of conquest, the archontes differed considerably from the rest of the local population. They became under Latin rule a socio-legal class enjoying hereditary status and privileges. Only those who had belonged to their group, and their descendants, benefited from this evolution: once defined, their class became practically sealed and crossing its boundaries presumably impossible. The *Asteros of Romania* forbade free Greek archontes to unfree villeins; the same holds true in Venetian Crete. The free status of archontes and *archontopoulai* is illustrated by the fact that some of them were granted military tenures. In the treaty of 1299 between Venice and Alcaus Callerges, they appear alongside the Latins among those enjoying complete freedom. Moreover, the distinction between them and the villeins was recognized by Venetian courts.²⁹

In spite of the cleavage existing between the conquerors and the local population, archontes and *archontopoulai* were gradually integrated, in varying degrees, into the Latin social elite. In Frankish Morea, where they were particularly numerous, this integration began at the time of the conquest, when they submitted themselves to the authority of, and performed homage and swore an oath of fealty to, the leaders of the conquerors. On a personal and legal level they were integrated among the feudatories owing simple homage, the lowest stratum in the feudal hierarchy. Yet this integration did not affect the status of their patrimonial estates, which remained hereditary and were governed as before the conquest by Byzantine law. Toward the middle of the thirteenth century the integration of several archontes proceeded beyond this first stage; they were endowed with feudal tenements, many of them quite small, which were governed by feudal law. Some archontes were even dubbed by princes or barons; as a result, they became knights and were assimilated from a legal point of view to the liege men, their new status being hereditary. In this way they achieved so-

²⁹ See Saccy, "The Provençols," pp. 385-390, and "Les États latins," pp. 22-24. Only archontes who had sufficient proof of their status were recognized as such. This was not the case with Theodoros Makronastasiou, who fled from Constantinople in 1204 and became a *peripolus* in Crete: see Dimitrios Chalkiadakis, ed. Jean B. Pons, *Analogue grecs et données épigraphiques relatives aux provençols*, VI (Rome, 1891), vol. 126, no. 1.

cial integration within the feudal nobility. Their holding of non-feudal land exempt from military service produced some resentment against them in the ranks of the Latin feudatories in the first half of the fourteenth century. Nevertheless, their integration continued unabated and even gained considerable impetus as time passed.

Two factors prompted the princes and barons to loosen the rigid system of social and legal stratification imposed by the Latin conquerors: the growing need for administrative personnel capable of handling the complex Byzantine fiscal system and the Greek documentation, and the lack of sufficient military forces, due especially to a decline in the number of Frankish feudatories. In the second half of the fourteenth century, the integration of some of the Greek archontes expressed itself in their subjective identification with the values, attitudes, and class-consciousness, as well as the cause and history, of the Latin knights who had conquered the Peloponnese and other members of their class. This is well illustrated in the Greek version of the *Chronicle of Morea*, composed between 1341 and 1388. Yet the very existence of this version, no doubt intended for Greek-speaking feudatories, emphasizes that a cultural gap persisted between Greek archontes and Frankish feudatories. Moreover, several passages in this version emphasize the distinction between Greeks and Latins, especially in the religious sphere, although the author seems to have been an Orthodox Greek who accepted the supreme authority of the Roman church. Indeed, the religious distinction between Latins and Greeks persisted, in spite of some manifestations of religious symbiosis which will be discussed below. Inter-marriage between members of the two groups must have remained rare, certainly not common enough to obliterate Greek identity. Mixed marriages were contracted by members of the highest echelon of feudal society, obviously for political reasons, while others involved members of the lowest stratum of the non-noble feudatories, as implied by the *Assizes of Romania* (arts. 75, 125, 189). Illegitimate children born of Greek mothers who were vassals could not gain access to the feudal class, as Morean feudal law provided that in such cases "the offspring follow the status of the mother" (art. 174).⁴²

The eagerness of the archontes and other Greeks to achieve integration within the Latin elite may be ascribed to economic as well as social motivation. The conquerors confirmed their patrimonial estates and their hold on the peasants needed for their cultivation, which constituted the foundations of their power and social ascendancy, and endowed them with fiefs. These moves lifted the archontes to the level of

40 See Jacqué, "The Rhodenses," pp. 891-899, and *Le Péloponnèse*, pp. 30-32, 128

the Frankish feudatories and enhanced their social superiority within their own community. Administrative and military considerations already mentioned induced the prince and the barons of the Morea to encourage this process, thereby ensuring the loyalty, cooperation, and services of the Greek elite. As a result, the Greek population was deprived of an upper class willing to join the Greek church in its opposition to the Latins and to take the lead in this opposition, or to favor the Byzantine expansion in the Peloponnese begun in 1262.⁴¹

A similar process of integration, although somewhat different in nature, took place in the lordships of the Aegean. The conciliatory approach of Marco I Sanudo, duke of the Archipelago (1207-1227), toward the Greeks was expressed in his religious policy and illustrated by the willingness of twenty Cretan archontes to leave their native island and join him in 1213. The smallness of the class of Latin conquerors and archontes in the duchy no doubt led, from an early stage, to the integration of Greeks of a lower rank into the class of the feudatories. The Ghisi, lords of Tenos and Myconos, awarded tenements to Greeks and Latins whom they bound to be their vassals and whom they "ennobled" in return for military service. The imposition of feudal terminology and rules constituted a legal fiction, both useful and necessary. Yet no change occurred in the economic activity of these Greek feudatories, who continued to till their land. Their particular status and social promotion produced, however, a new stratification within the indigenous society.⁴²

The Venetian implantation in Crete, begun in 1211, was based on the military colonization of the island. It led to an expropriation of church land and the escapes of several archontes which drove the Greeks to rise against Venice in 1212. This first rebellion ended with the departure of twenty archontes from the island, yet most of their class remained in Crete. The division within their ranks, which dated back to the period preceding the conquest, prevented them from forming a united front against Venice, thus enabling the commune to rally them progressively to its cause by granting them various concessions. The settlement reached by Venice in 1219 with two rebel leaders may be considered as the first stage in the integration of the archontes within the ranks of the Latin elite. The commune granted each of them a half *muftia* in return for military service, an annual payment, and a promise of loyalty. In all respects, the two archontes were assimilated to the Latin holders of military tenements, yet at the same time they retained

41. See Jacoby, "The Hierarchy," pp. 387-403, and his "Largely Vassal," pp. 163-179.

42. See Jacoby, *La Féodalité*, pp. 342-350, 364.

their patrimonial estates, as well as their social position in Greek society. The same Venetian policy was applied on several occasions after 1219. In 1224 two *milítai* were granted; in 1233, several others; and in 1252 Greeks were to be endowed with some of the fifteen available; in 1263 two *milítai* and five and a half serpsantines, each a sixth of a *milíto*, were again granted. In 1299 Alexius Callerges obtained the restitution of confiscated *milítai*, and the commune granted him four more and allowed him to buy nine others, two to six of which were designated for his followers.

As in the feudal Morea, Venice integrated the archontes, yet according to its own interests, social structure, and institutions. The process of integration initiated in Crete in 1219 therefore differed markedly on many counts from that in the principality. It was neither progressive nor generalized, but took place in stages, and archontes enjoyed it only in exceptional instances, as a result of specific agreements arrived at with Venice after uprisings or as a reward for services rendered to the commune. The number of archontes benefiting from integration was therefore limited, although it steadily increased during the thirteenth century. The endowment of their followers with military tenements enhanced the social standing of the upper ranks of the archontes; so did their concern for the villeins oppressed by Latin masters, as well as for those who supported their successive rebellions and whose emancipation they managed to obtain or preserve, respectively. The concessions regarding villeins granted by Venice in 1299 to Alexius Callerges were particularly extensive. Venice even recognized the validity of the sentences pronounced by Alexius and the judges he had appointed during his long revolt, and he was allowed to receive voluntary payments and services from Greeks. All this implies considerable social ascendancy, not only over Greeks who were his followers or directly subjected to him, but also over Greeks subjected to Latin holders of military tenements or to the commune. It is therefore obvious that a network of social ties headed by the archontes existed alongside the social and legal relationship recognized by Venice.

The slow pace at which Venice succeeded in rallying the archontes to its cause explains the continuous role of the Greek church as a focus of opposition to foreign rule, both on a religious and on an ethnic level, and as a source of Greek popular resentment against the Latins. The alliance of the archontes with the Greek church, which enhanced their prestige, was also strengthened by the support lent on several occasions by the Byzantine emperors, such as John III Vatatzes and the Palaeologi, to those who rebelled. Although Venice granted military tenements to archontes in the thirteenth century, it remained suspi-

cious of the Greeks. In principle, military tenements could be alienated only in favor of Venetians, but in practice other Latins also acquired them; alienation was strictly controlled, however, especially in order to prevent Greeks from acquiring land held by Latins or by the commune. It is thus obvious that Greeks holding military tenements could do so only with the approval of the Venetian authorities. It is significant that Venice demanded hostages to ensure the implementation of agreements, at times even from the same archontes to whom it granted *miliziae*. In view of this ambivalent attitude, one of the concessions granted to Alexius Callerges in 1299 commands particular attention: the right of Alexius and those who had followed him during the rebellion to marry into Latin families. In order to evaluate properly the scope of this privilege, its context should be closely examined.⁴³

There can be no doubt that Venice implemented a policy of segregation in Crete. To be sure, marriages of prominent Venetians with Greek women had already taken place earlier in the century and in some cases may have been favored by Venice. Such was certainly the case, for instance, with that of Marco Venier, holder of a *milizia* in Crete, who by marrying the daughter of the Greek archon Nicholas Endamnonianos acquired Cengo in 1238 and thereby ensured Venice's control over this island.⁴⁴ George Iahna, holder of a sergeantry or sixth of a *milizia* in 1271, if not earlier, married into a branch of the Venetian Gradenigo family in this period.⁴⁵ Yet when the daughters of Manuel Dragondopoulos were granted in 1272 the right to marry Latins, this was no doubt considered a major concession made by the commune.⁴⁶

In 1293 Venice forbade all Latins holding military tenements or other land to marry into Greek families and threatened them with the loss of all their estates and with banishment from the island if they did so. Venice obviously feared that these estates might be transferred to Greeks who married Latin women. The decree stating this policy of

43. See Acemly, "Les femmes latines," pp. 26-28; Berneri, *Il Dominio veneziano*, pp. 71-72, has established evidence about non-Venetian and Greek holders of military or sergeanteries in the thirteenth century.

44. See Chrysos A. Maitavos, "Le Peuple degli Endamnonianos a Venise a Creta (1238-1271) al XIV secolo: Problemi di cronologia e genealogia," *Rivista di studi Bizantini e slavi* 11 (1972), 208-219, 217. Cengo was lost to emperor Michael VIII between 1261 and 1272. A member of the Venier family recovered the island between 1260 and 1269, again by marrying the daughter of a local archon; *ibid.*, pp. 212-216.

45. On the Iahnas and their economic activities in this period see Topfing, "Co-existence," pp. 18-19, and Lauro, "Qualques observations," pp. 194-197. In 1268 George's son Calabros had already attained his majority, hence the holding of the sergeantry by George at an earlier period.

46. *Text. in Creta, Bullerorum del Magister Cantablic*, II, 135, no. 72.

segregation in 1293 implied that such marriages were nevertheless taking place, although the commune was then fighting Alexius Callerges. In 1274, during the uprising of the Chortatzes clan, the commune decreed that rebellious *vassouli* would be banished from Crete or, if found in the island, reduced forever to the status of villeins of the commune. These offspring of marriages to, and especially illegitimate unions with, Greek women, obviously were considered free, a fact confirmed by the agreement of 1299 in which they are mentioned alongside the *archontes*, the *archontipouloi*, and the Latins. According to Venetian practice in Crete, only the offspring, whether legitimate or not, of a Latin or a free Greek father was considered free.

Various sources seem to imply that most *vassouli* of the upper class were the illegitimate children of Latin fathers and Greek mothers. The excess of men in the Latin population in Crete at all its social levels may well explain unions, legitimate and especially illegitimate, with Greek women. In 1319 Scorpelato Tiepolo was recognized as the illegitimate son of James Tiepolo, who had been duke of Crete in 1298, and of a Greek mother who presumably was a villein; his free status was confirmed by the authorities. In 1318 two Chortatzes attempted to prove, with the help of Greek and Latin witnesses, that they were "Latins and sons of Latins and Venetians"; they too were probably illegitimate sons of Venetian fathers. In 1302 the feudatories of Canaa protested against the holding of military tenements and offices, to which they alone were entitled, by *vassouli* and Greeks, as well as against the participation of members of these two groups in the assembly of the feudatories. Various sources seem to indicate that these *vassouli* were favored by the Venetian officers in charge in Crete because they were the sons of Venetian noblemen, such as the Tiepolos mentioned above.

Obviously, the holding of military tenements did not ensure Greek *archontes* of social integration within the Latin elite. The eagerness of the Callerges and their subordinate *archontes* to contract mixed marriages is therefore understandable, yet the number of such marriages remained quite small, limited, it seems, to the Callerges of Milopotamo, whose members married into the noble Venetian families of Sagredo and Zeno. Other *archontes* remained within their own community, especially those refusing to accommodate themselves to Venetian rule; intermittent rebellions broke out in the area of Canaa, and Venice remained suspicious. The acquisition by Greeks of Latin military tenures was prohibited in 1319, and in 1334 the authorities prevented Greeks from acquiring the estates of Andrew Callerges, who had died while heavily in debt. In spite of the favoritism displayed by Venetian

officers toward some Greeks, few sat in the great council of Candia.⁴⁷ In the fifteenth century Venice remained as uncompromising as before about segregation, and persisted in opposing the participation of Greeks in Venetian assemblies and their holding of high administrative offices. A decree to this effect was issued in Crete in 1422.⁴⁸

It has been claimed that the agreement concluded in 1299 by Venice with Alexius Callerges opened the way to a reconciliation between Venice and the Greek community of Crete, which eventually, in the second half of the fourteenth century, generated an alliance of Venetian feudatories with the Greek archontes.⁴⁹ It is significant that members of the Gradenigo and the Vener families, who had intermarried with Greek archontic families, plotted against Venice in 1353 and were among the leaders of the Cretan rebellion in 1363. Their attitude, however, does not seem to have been shared by the majority of the Latin feudatories of the island. Nor should we be deceived by the measures they adopted in 1363. The substitution of the standard of St. Titus, patron of Crete, for that of St. Mark, patron of Venice, the license granted to Greeks to become priests if they wished, and the adoption of the Orthodox rite by Leonard Gradenigo were all measures dictated by the circumstances of the revolt and the opposition to Venice. They did not derive from a progressive rapprochement between Venetian and Greek elites (at best limited in scope), but reflected the opportunism of the Venetian leaders of the rebellion, who were fully aware of the ascendancy of the Greek archontes over their followers and dependents and of the absolute need to ensure their support.

Venice also strongly opposed the unions, whether legal or not, of Latins and Greeks within ranks of society other than the elites, yet could not entirely prevent them. Some Latin notaries and craftsmen married Greek women in the late thirteenth and early fourteenth century, learned Greek, and became hellenized, and this phenomenon no doubt increased in scope in the following period. The appearance of *vanouli* in 1274 and 1299 as a particular group is no doubt significant, yet this is no indication as to their numerical importance. At any rate, they did not constitute a homogeneous social group, in all likelihood many, if not most, of them were illegitimate children of Latin fathers. Unlike the sons of Venetian noblemen mentioned above, the *vanouli* whom Venice hoped to recruit for its armies in 1363, along with Turks and slaves, were no doubt the offspring of illegitimate mixed

47. See Juvigny, "Les États latins," pp. 29-31.

48. See Thomas, *La Renaissance*, p. 486.

49. Ibid., pp. 153, 256-273, 281-282.

unions at the lowest ranks of society. Nevertheless Venice reacted strongly when in 1369 the authorities discovered that many Italian mercenaries recruited during the great Cretan rebellion of 1363-1366 had married Greek women of the island. The considerations which prompted Venice to oppose such unions were different from those involving members of aristocratic families; evidently Venice feared that women of lowly origin would escape their unfree status by marrying free men and that their marriage to the latter would undermine the mercenaries' allegiance to the state. It therefore dismissed in 1371 all mercenaries married to local Greek women, as well as all Greeks serving in the Venetian armies.²⁰

This examination of the social evolution in Crete leads to the conclusion that Venice persisted in its policy of segregation there, although it could not effectively enforce its ban on intermarriage at all levels of Cretan society. The religious policy implemented by the commune in Crete also points to the continuity of its segregationist attitude. Venice considered the Latin church an instrument of government, indispensable for the strengthening of its rule over former Byzantine territories. It was to serve the interests of the state, and therefore the Venetian authorities interfered in ecclesiastical appointments and closely supervised the activity of the Latin and Greek churches. Venice was well aware of the strong opposition of the Greeks, especially the Greek clergy, to any attempt to persuade them to join the Roman church or to enforce the union of the churches proclaimed in 1369 and 1439. On the whole, therefore, it refrained from supporting any action to this effect for fear of unrest. In fact, few Greeks joined the Latin church. Venetian suspicions were aroused by Greek religious unrest, constantly stimulated by the arrival of numerous Greek priests from Byzantine territories, especially around 1450.²¹ The commune's segregationist policy led to strong misgivings in Venice about the growing numbers of Latins attending services in Greek churches or having recourse to Greek priests. In 1349 the duke of Crete forcefully reiterated that such practices were prohibited, and imposed fines on all Latins and Greek priests involved in them. Significantly, this decree was to be publicly read every three months in all parts of Crete. It was promulgated anew

²⁰ See Jacovly, "Les États latins," pp. 29-32; Laron, "Quelques observations," pp. 177-178.

²¹ On Venetian religious policy in general see Barozzi, *Il Dominio*, pp. 396-420; Padellaro, *La Chiesa*, 2nd ed., I, 377-402, and III, 9-24; Thiers, *La Romania*, especially pp. 383, 386, 388, 391, 400-402, 429-433, who has been corrected on errors in the 1450's and 1460's by Minnecchini, *Sur un conflit synodaliste aux Églises latines (1453-1454) et sur synodalisme grecs (1460-1462) (Athènes, 1962) [in Greek]*; Thiers, "La Synétikon," pp. 24-32, and for "Églises, schisme et clergé," pp. 404-500.

in 1405.⁵² The same problem arose again in the following years.⁵³ Though Venice shared the opposition of the popes to religious symbiosis, its considerations were not exclusively of a religious nature. It combatted prostitution because it entailed the loss of Latin group identity and endangered the basic tenets of a rule based on segregation.

In Catalan Greece, the conquerors imposed a segregation similar to that implemented by Venice in thirteenth- and fourteenth-century Crete. In 1311 the *kastros* of Livadia was handed over to the Catalan Company by several of its inhabitants, presumably archontes. They and their descendants were rewarded with the grant of the status of Franks or Latins, thus constituting an exception to the rule. However, then full integration as *freemen* within the class of the conquerors was prevented, since the Company decreed in 1311-1312 that Greeks could not marry Catholic women. This ban was extended even to Greeks who had joined the Roman church. Catalan legislation was somewhat more lenient than Venetian legislation in Crete, since Latins could marry Greek women; several such marriages occurred in the upper class of Latin society.⁵⁴ The Company also prohibited, presumably in the early years of its rule, the acquisition of real estate by Greeks. The link between this provision and the interdiction of marriage of Latin women to Greeks is obvious. As in Venetian Crete, land was the source of political and military power, and its transfer to Greeks was to be prevented, or at least strictly controlled.⁵⁵ Further social integration, which was contrary to the policy of the Company, was only exceptionally granted. Such was the case in 1362, when two Greek notaries and their male offspring, though remaining Orthodox, were authorized to marry Latin women. One of them also obtained the right to acquire and alienate real estate like the Franks or Latins. In 1360 the latter privilege was also granted to the Greek mistress of the military commandant of Athens, by whom she had borne several children; she was also awarded personal freedom on the same occasion.⁵⁶ Few Greeks of the Catalan duchy of Athens seem to have joined the Roman church, and some

52. Venice, *Archivio di Stato, Carte di Candia*, *volume 20, fol. 38'-39'* (known as *memorandum*); manuscript edition by Emiliano Barbieri, *Legatione veneta. I capitoli di Candia* (Venice, 1940), pp. 124-125.

53. Venice, *Archivio di Stato, Senato, Secreta*, reg. 7, fol. 39' (unpublished), in 1418, and see below, note 91.

54. Tietz in *Enthell-Lisch, Diplomaten*, pp. 352-354, nos. 363-369. On legislation in 1311-1312 see above, note 51. On Latins marrying Greek women see Bellon, *Châtelain de Livadie*, p. 252.

55. Tietz in *Enthell-Lisch, Diplomaten*, p. 362, no. 394; see also p. 477, no. 397.

56. See above, note 34 and her situation in note 51. He was Ramon de Bellahon; she was Zoe of Megara.

of these were induced to do so for opportunistic reasons; their return to the Orthodox faith was punished by the confiscation of their property.⁷⁷ On the whole the Greeks remained within their community, as implied by the case of the two notaries mentioned above. The prolonged excommunication of the Latins residing in the Catalan duchy no doubt weakened the Roman church within its boundaries, but the outcry of pope Urban V in 1363 that almost all the Latins had gone over to the Orthodox rite seems to have been an overstatement.⁷⁸ As a rule, social segregation based on religious affiliation was strictly maintained in Catalan Greece.

It is significant that both in Venetian Crete and in the Catalan duchy of Athens social segregation was enforced by legislation. In spite of some variations due to different local conditions, one perceives a striking agreement between the behavior of the conquering elites of urban origin in these two areas. Everyday life and the pursuit of similar or joint economic activities brought Latins into close contact with the ruled, especially in urban centers, and hardly any factor save religion differentiated them from the Greeks, whose numbers were vastly superior. The constant threat of assimilation into the surrounding Greek society endangered their social supremacy and political prerogatives. The ruling Latin elite therefore resorted to institutionalized segregation in order to preserve the separate group identity of the Latins. The knights of the feudal Morea did not have recourse to such measures. Their class-consciousness and sense of social superiority and the strictly stratified structure of society, as well as their life-style and particular occupation, which matched their status, all created a deep gulf between them and most Greeks and ensured social segregation.

In spite of substantial differences among the various regimes established by the Latins in Romania, the evolution of the bulk of the indigenous population ran along parallel lines. Both in feudal and non-feudal areas one finds similar social institutions, rules, and phenomena, which go back in part to the Byzantine period. It would be erroneous, however, to assume that the conquest resulted solely in a change of masters for the dependent peasants. The Latins assimilated the entire subjugated indigenous population, rural as well as urban, to the *proiokoi*, or *villani* (*villani*) as they were called by the Latins.⁷⁹ Only the *archontes* and *archontopoukoi*, as well as a few free and emanci-

⁷⁷ See in Rühlé I. Uch, *Diplomata*, pp. 380-391, no. 292.

⁷⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 316-319, no. 253.

⁷⁹ The equation applies to a Crete text, see Bernard, *Il Despotato*, p. 105, note 100.

pated *paroikoi*, escaped debasement. Thus most free men sank into a state of dependency. Moreover, in spite of continuity in the use of the term *paroikos*, a major change occurred in the status of these men and women: Byzantine *paroikoi* were legally free, but under Latin rule the villeins were considered unfree, and as such constituted a legal class from which they could escape only by a formal act of emancipation. The presumption of subjection was so well established that the status of freedom became exceptional and had to be duly proven by those who enjoyed it. In addition to its legal aspect, the subjection of the villeins was also expressed in the attitude of the Latin lords toward them. This attitude was similar to that of their counterparts in the west, where the dependency of the peasantry entailed a definite note of inferiority and contempt. No doubt it differed from the attitude of the Byzantine lord toward his *paroikoi*, who were legally free and had access to imperial courts. It may be assumed, however, that under the influence of the Latins a change also occurred in the relationship of Greek lords with their own *paroikoi*. To some extent, continuity prevailed in Venetian territories, where the commune had succeeded to the Byzantine state: it owned villeins known as *villani communes*, similar to the *demoiariot paroikoi* in the empire. Moreover, the commune assimilated to its own villeins "non-inscribed" villeins (*agnati*) or "foreign men" (*exteri homines*), Greeks not subject to any lord; this practice was similar to that applied to the *eleutheroi* in the empire. No such precedence in the acquisition of new manpower existed in feudalized territories, where this former right of the state was now exercised by all feudal lords. There were also *villani militum* included in the military tenements granted by Venice to Latins, and occasionally to Greeks. Villeins could also be owned privately as patrimonial property if they were *exire feudum*, not part of a military tenement. Villeins of the state were obviously not to be found in feudalized areas, in which the prerogatives of the state had been transferred into private hands.⁴³

Like the Byzantine *paroikos*, the villein inherited his status from his father; illegitimate children born from a free father and a dependent mother were considered villeins according to feudal law, but free under Venetian rule, in accordance with Roman law.⁴⁴ The dependence of the villein extended to his descendants, and enforcement of the thirty-year prescription resulted in perpetual subjection to the lord: the *Ascriber*

43. See Jacoby, "The Class Society," pp. 146-151; the number of villeins handling fiscal units in a *Comita* (civilian island) town seems to testify that. *Ibid.*, p. 149, note 54.

44. For feudal law see Jacoby, *Le Féodalisme*, pp. 30-31, 309, on the basis of the *Ascriber of Romania* (ed. Baccaro), nos. 75, 174, 189; for Venetian rule see Sansovino, "Qualunque rispetto dei parenti," pp. 110 ff.

of Romanian attest it for the Morea; it is also documented in the fifteenth century for Euboea; and in 1430 it was specified that in Crete the calculation of the period extended to the direct male ancestors of the person whose status was debated. The enforcement of the prescription in these three areas, each with a different regime, implies that it was applied continuously since the conquest, and also valid in the Byzantine period. Cases regarding the subjection of villeins were indeed decided on the basis of testimonies regarding their lineal ancestors.⁴² Besides, Venetian officials in Crete were ordered to reclaim all fugitive villeins of the commune, whether heads of fiscal units or their sons inscribed on the cadastral registers within these units. The purpose of this inscription, as well as that of the eldest brother when only orphans were left, was to ensure the subjection of these villeins to their lord. It is therefore not surprising that the villan could be transferred with his wife and children, if the latter were less than sixteen years old. At this age fiscal responsibility was reached, and the son could be removed from the fiscal unit headed by his father or widowed mother, or his elder brother or sister if only orphans were registered as belonging to the fiscal unit.⁴³

The subjection of the villan to his lord was extremely rigorous, regardless of whether the lord was an individual, an institution, or the state as in Venetian territory. The villan was a mere chattel who could be owned jointly by several lords, enfeoffed, held in seigns, exchanged, or sold. As his labor constituted a source of income, he might even be leased for a definite period extending from a few days, especially during the peak of the agricultural season, to several years. If he was removed by the state from a property in Venetian territory or killed by accident by a large man in a feudal area, he was replaced by another villan. His lord was entitled to remove him from his holding and take his movable goods, provided he left him the means necessary for his sustenance and for the fulfilment of his fiscal obligations. In the case of transfer or lease for a definite period, the temporary lord exercised the prerogatives of the legitimate lord, except in the realm of criminal justice.⁴⁴

As a rule, the lord determined where the villan should reside. In

42. See Jacoby, "Une Classe Sociale," pp. 143-145.

43. On this rule see note 13. Barrow, *Il Despotato*, p. 91, notes 10 and 11.

44. See *Aspects of Byzantium* (ed. Barrow), note 25, 107, and also 117, 171, 211. Jacoby, "Une Classe Sociale," p. 147; Barrow, *Il Despotato*, p. 91, note 107; Thiersch, "La Condition paysanne," pp. 48-61, 84; Santalucia, *La Noblesse de Jérusalem*, p. 172, note 23, p. 178, note 28, p. 179, notes 25, 26, and 40; p. 182, note 42. On the jurisdiction exercised by the holder of a lease see Jacoby, "Les Fiefs laïcs," p. 37, and *Le Féodalisme*, p. 209.

this respect the condition of the state's villeins in Venetian Crete seems to have been somewhat better. Since the domain of the commune extended over large sections of the island, there was more room for mobility. The agreement of 1299 with Alexius Callerges specified that villeins other than those belonging to military tenements should be allowed to reside where they wished. In 1313 it was decreed that villeins of the state might dwell in Candia or in a village, at will, without fear of being regarded as villeins of feudatories; they were, however, forbidden to leave Crete or the land they held and were compelled to fulfill their obligations to the commune, such as the payment of the *villanagia*, an annual tax amounting to one hyperper imposed upon state villeins. In 1334 the Venetian authorities refused to exempt villeins inhabiting Candia from this tax, for fear that this might lead to a massive exodus of peasants from rural areas to the city. At any rate, the commune exercised strict supervision over its villeins. In 1339 those of Crete were ordered to register in the district where they had settled within fifteen days of their arrival; the following year the authorities discovered that in the area of Candia many state villeins had exhibited false privileges of enfranchisement which they had purchased, *inter alia*, in order to be allowed to settle wherever they wished.⁴³

In spite of the restrictions imposed upon the mobility of the villeins, their migration is abundantly documented for Latin Greece. Besides economic or matrimonial considerations of an individual nature, as in the Byzantine empire, catastrophic events, as well as the general conditions prevailing in the area, explain this mobility. Frequent revolts in thirteenth-century Crete, warfare between Latins and Byzantines in the Morea, the raids of the Catalans in the peninsula and in Euboea from 1311 to 1329, the activity of Latin – and in the fourteenth and fifteenth century also of Turkish – pirates, all these increased the number of fugitive villeins. Besides, famous and recurring waves of plague after the Black Death of 1347–1348 prompted them to seek refuge elsewhere. In 1401 the Venetian authorities complained that many Greeks fearing service in the navy had fled to Anatolia. The extreme political fragmentation of Greece after 1204 no doubt provided villeins many opportunities to abandon their residence and thereby sever the link of subjection.⁴⁴

The lord had the right to recover a villan who had abandoned his residence without permission. After locating the fugitive, he appealed

43. See Jacoby, 'Les Deux villes,' p. 38, and 'Les Cretes de mer,' pp. 182–183.

44. See Jacoby, 'Une Charte locale,' p. 142; for the Catalans till 1329 and the Turks see also Jacoby, 'Confines, Term et Vassalage,' pp. 238–264. For 1401 see Nodding, *Documenta inedita*, p. 116.

to a competent court in order to prove his subjection and obtain the intervention of state officials in Crete or, if in feudalized territories, that of the prince, the barons, or other feudal lords exercising high justice. In Venetian territories the state villsains were recovered by officials. Any unilateral action by the lord to reclaim his villsains was prohibited, as the Cretan feudatories were reminded in 1349. Moreover, the commune imposed heavy penalties on fugitive villsains and those who provided them with shelter, often with the intent of holding them permanently. While awaiting the verdict of the court, the fugitive was usually imprisoned at the expense of the lord who claimed him; if the lord did not provide for his sustenance, he forfeited his rights over the villsain.⁸⁷

The legal capacity of a villsain was also restricted in other ways. We are particularly well informed about the Morea. He could neither contract marriage himself nor marry off his daughter, especially if the spouse was dependent upon another lord, without the permission of his own lord; the latter was compelled, however, to accept a marriage which had been contracted, even by a female villsain with a free man, whereby she acquired permanent freedom. A villsain was tried by his lord in civil cases, although criminal jurisdiction was the exclusive right of the prince and the barons. A villsain wronged by his own lord could not lodge a complaint against him, nor appeal to a superior lord; his testimony was valid only if it concerned a portion or the boundaries of a fief, but not a liege man in a criminal case. If a villsain fled, died without offspring, or willed his property without the consent of his lord, the latter inherited his goods. This rule also held in favor of a foreign lord whose land he had cultivated under a contract providing for the division of newly planted trees or vines.⁸⁸ In Venetian territories criminal justice was an exclusive prerogative of the state, and all villsains were tried in state courts, whether or not they belonged to a military tenure, an individual, or the commune. These courts also dealt with civil cases, especially those involving control over state villsains.⁸⁹ Unfortunately, there is no information about the exercise of civil justice by Latin lords or Greek archontes.

The continuity of certain aspects of the Byzantine fiscal system is well documented, yet this system underwent important changes as the

87 See Jordis, "Une Classe Sociale," pp. 142-143; more on Statelich, "Quelques aspects du statut," pp. 110-112, 121-122; Basil Vasilich, *Deux siècles de la Grèce (quatrième siècle avant J.-C. à 1349)* (February 4, 1949).

88 *Aspects of Byzantine (and Roman) law*, 42, 43, 123, 174-175, 184-186, 189, 190, not yet shown, note 67.

89 Thirlot, *La Romania*, pp. 225-229.

Latins adapted it to their own needs and concepts. The debasement of many free men who had become villeins under Latin rule obviously entailed the imposition of heavier fiscal obligations upon them. It will be remembered that the Byzantine *paroikos* owed dues and labor services to the state. After the Latin conquest, this remained the case with Venetian state villeins only. All the other villeins, whether in Venetian or in feudal territories, were bound to provide dues and services to their lord; if the land on which they dwelt was leased to an individual or an institution, the temporary lord was entitled to collect them, as illustrated by evidence from Venetian Messenia.

The rights of the permanent or temporary lord, as well as those of the commune, also restricted the legal capacity of the villein in the economic sphere. As a rule, he could not borrow, engage in trade, or alienate movable property without the consent of his lord. The *Anstiges of Romania* (art. 215) clearly distinguish between villeins who borrowed for sustenance and those who incurred commercial debts, even with the permission of their lord, which was considered more serious. A similar distinction between indebtedness and a trade operation is to be found in Venetian Crete; the villeins of the commune were allowed to borrow and to engage in trade, unless they had been explicitly forbidden to do so.

The alienation of real estate presented a particular problem, as this property was taxable and had to be registered in the cadastral registers. It was therefore necessary for villeins to obtain the agreement of their lord, or that of the commune, for villeins of the state. In 1292 a state villein living in Coron made his will after its clauses had been approved by Venetian officials. Lack of approval entailed the cancellation of sales.⁷⁹ On the other hand, the acquisition of property was not restricted, as it was indirectly of advantage to the lord. It may be assumed that in many cases, the person entering an agreement with a villein was aware of the latter's status and limitations; however, this was not always the case. In 1319 the commune ordered the official brokers operating on its behalf in Crete to disclose the status of the borrower to the other contracting party before the latter provided a loan to, or accepted surety from, a villein, to enable the lenders to protect their interests and prevent them from being defrauded by villeins. Villeins are seldom mentioned in notarial documents; either they concealed their status, or else the parties to a contract did not consider that it need be stated explicitly. In any case, it seems evident that the overwhelming majority of the Greeks involved in agricultural con-

⁷⁹ The state could not be alienated: *Anstiges of Romania* (ed. Roussot), art. 215.

tracts, loans, or the purchase of animals were villeins. It would be a mistake to consider them as free when their status is not specified;⁷¹ cross-checking with judicial documents will no doubt confirm this assumption.

Manumission of villeins does not seem to have been practised on a large scale, except in special circumstances; such was the case in 1299 at the request of Alexius Callerges. The manumission of a villein belonging to a military retirement obviously reduced its value. It was therefore subject to approval by the prince in the Morea, presumably by the chief lord in each of the various lordships of the Aegean, or by the commune in Venetian territory. On the other hand, the Latins and the Greek archbishops of Crete could free, without restriction, villeins whom they held in full ownership. In Venetian territories the commune also manumitted villeins who belonged to other lords and compensated the latter for the loss by granting them "non-inscribed" or state villeins. Manumission was granted by lords mainly as a pious act, and by the commune as a reward for services or loyalty. According to Venetian sources of the first half of the fourteenth century conditional freedom was granted in Crete to Greek sailors newly established in the island and to Greek villeins settling in Candia as long as they would serve aboard the ships of the Venetian navy.⁷²

In certain cases a villein could redeem himself by paying a large sum to his lord.⁷³ In 1434 the Venetian senate decided that state villeins in Crete should be able to do so if they paid to the commune 50 ducats or more, which at the time amounted to some 250 hyperpers. This fiscal expedient was regarded as particularly useful because Venice was then at war in Lombardy and in urgent need of income. Besides, manumission on a large scale would have reduced administrative expenses involved in the collection of the yearly *villanaggio* of one hyperper. It seems unlikely, however, that many state villeins took advantage of the offer, as the sum required was huge compared with the yearly tax they paid, equivalent to the price of several oxen, even one of which peasants often found it difficult to afford.⁷⁴ Yet there can be no doubt that many

71. As assumed by Barrow, *Il Dominio*, p. 88, and by Thieriot, "La Condition," pp. 39-41.

72. See Jacquier, "Une Classe libre," pp. 147-148, and "Les Esens latins," pp. 41-42, and "Les Esens des grecs," pp. 183-184.

73. A case for 80 hyperpers is mentioned in 1386: see Samuels, *Le Statut des "Joueurs"*, p. 175, note 21.

74. Ibid. in Morea, *Documents inédits*, pp. 365-366. For the approximate rate of exchange of the ducat around this date see Thieriot, *Le Romanin*, p. 432. The price of a slave was 1500 livres, between 27 and 40 ducats: see Verlinden, *L'Esclavage*, II, 479-481. In 1416 oxen were bought from villeins in the west and the center of Crete for 15 hyperpers, and sold in the eastern part for 60 hyperpers: see Thieriot, *Le Romanin*, p. 405.

villains aspired to freedom. In 1415 social unrest spread among the villains of Crete, when several of them claimed that they were free men and should be treated as such.⁷¹ No doubt the demographic contraction of the fourteenth and early fifteenth century — due to catastrophic events and the recurring plague — had increased the pressure of the lords on their villains and, on the other hand, the awareness of the latter that the economy of the island and the prosperity of their lords depended on them. Enfranchised villains were not always entitled to move freely. In Crete the commune occasionally imposed residence in inland cities on its former villains. The loss of the document granting enfranchisement, disobedience, or rebellion involved a return to the unfree status.

Freedom was so exceptional that free Greeks who were not archontes or archontopoulai sometimes specified their status in documents, for fear of being mistakenly considered villains. This was especially so in cases involving residence in a rural area or agricultural work. In 1301 a free Cretan Greek indebted to a Latin promised to reside for four years in a village of his and pay him dues "as do the other free inhabitants of this place"; in 1352 a plot of land was leased to four Cretan Greeks who stated explicitly that they were free. On the basis of documents bearing on the area of Patras in the northern Morea it has been claimed that communities of free peasants still existed in the fourteenth century in certain areas of Latin Greece. A closer look at these documents reveals, however, that this assumption is not warranted: a vineyard thought to be the holding of a free peasant was in fact part of a seignorial domain.⁷²

Slaves frequently appear in Latin Greece.⁷³ The political fragmentation of the area and the frequent warfare were fully exploited by numerous pirates who raided the islands of the Aegean and the coasts of continental Greece. They were joined by Catalans from the duchy of Athens from 1311 to 1329, as well as by Turkish pirates, whose activity in the area steadily increased thereafter.⁷⁴ It is therefore surprising that Greeks constituted a majority among the slaves on the markets of Latin Greece in the first half of the fourteenth century. Gradually the proportion of Slavs from the Morea increased, and for

71. See Thirlas, *Le Roumains*, p. 287.

72. See Jacoby, "Les États latins," pp. 40–42.

73. On the whole subject see Verriolien, *L'Esclavage*, II, 806–809, 874–875; Santucci, "Quelques aspects de l'esclavage," pp. 112, 114–115, 117–118, 120–122, and Zachariadou, *Trade and Crusade, passim*.

74. See above, p. 210.

a short period in the late fourteenth century Bulgarians in particular became numerous. In addition to the Black Sea the Turkish emirates of Anatolia constituted an important source of supply. The flow of slaves was considerably reduced by the Ottoman conquest in the following century.

Slaves were to be found in the Morea, in Venetian Messenia, and in the Catalan duchy of Athens, whence many of them were shipped to Crete.⁷⁹ This island was the main emporium for the slave trade to the west, although many slaves remained there. Considered mere chattels, they were owned by Latins and Greeks of all ranks of society engaged in various occupations, by members of the Catholic and Greek clergy, and even by Jews. In spite of his status, even a villain might own a slave,⁸⁰ while the reverse was of course impossible, this is a clear mark of the slave's inferior status, also implied by the *Assises of Romania* (art. 219). Female slaves were bought for domestic purposes and served in cities as well as in rural areas; we may assume that such was also the case with most male slaves. A shortage of agricultural manpower in the second half of the fourteenth century partly explains a substantial rise in the price of male slaves; it induced the Venetian authorities to promote in 1393 and 1397 their import to Crete, in order to settle them on abandoned land held by Latin feudatories.⁸¹ Even earlier manumitted male slaves were occasionally bound to reside in a village of their former master and to provide some amount of agricultural work for a specified number of years. All of them seem to have paid a yearly sum to their former masters.⁸² In certain cases, slaves were allowed to redeem themselves, although it is not always clear how they managed to gather the means to do so.⁸³ In 1315 the Venetian authorities of Crete decreed that slaves who were taught by their masters the trade of a carpenter or a calker would be freed from servitude; from this text it is not clear whether the commute was opposed to any such training or approved of it. Manumission did not necessarily become effective when granted; its enforcement might be postponed for a specified period, sometimes several years. Slaves could

79. See also Setton, *Catalan Domination*, p. 42, and Santucci, "Qualques aspects du statut," p. 122, on a sale by Candace around 1342.

80. A case in Crete (1002) in Verilidou, *L'Ecdésiasme*, II, 223.

81. *Ibid.*, II, 273-278. Contrary to Tcherni, *Le Récensé*, pp. 314-315, who relies on a shipment which arrived in Crete in August 1388, there is no reason to assume that slaves were imported there for agricultural work.

82. See Santucci, "Qualques aspects du statut," p. 122, note 38, and Verilidou, *L'Ecdésiasme*, II, 228-229.

83. A case in 1364 for 40 hypocausti see Santucci, *Algerie*, p. 107, no. 45.

be married. An abandoned infant slave became free if not claimed, in conformity with Roman law.⁸³ To sum up, although certain rules applied to slave and villein alike, the latter enjoyed a superior status.

Economic factors no doubt played an important role in shaping the pattern of daily coexistence of individuals belonging respectively to the Latin and Greek communities; these factors also generated divergent and even contrasting attitudes and feelings.

Land remained, as before the conquest, the principal source of income in Greece.⁸⁴ Whether held in full ownership or as a conditional tenement, it was mostly in the hands of the Latins, who expropriated the Greeks' land on a large scale and replaced them as landlords. In contrast to the Byzantine period, land became under Latin rule a double source of revenue for the landlords: income deriving from agricultural exploitation and income from what had been public taxes, especially in feudalized areas and, to a lesser degree, in Venetian territories, as a result of the transfer of fiscal state prerogatives into private hands. Land seems to have yielded good returns: it provided knights with means to maintain an appropriate standard of living, and its temporary or permanent acquisition was considered a good investment, as illustrated by the commercialization of military tenements in Crete.⁸⁵ On the whole, Greeks were prevented by social and legal barriers from substantially enlarging their landholding and getting their share of a prosperous agriculture increasingly geared to export. It may be assumed that this situation generated some degree of resentment within the ranks of the Greek elite, further enhanced by its exclusion from the economic benefits deriving from power positions in feudalized areas, as well as from governmental offices in Venetian territories and Catalan cities.

83. Rutil Veldich, *Charte de Cavellia* (Rueil, vol. 100 and 151, *Saint-Denis, Albanais*, p. 265, no. 115); a case of posthumous inheritance in 1286; idem, "Quelques algériens," p. 125, notes 60 and 61, and on the status of vassals in cases of alienated parvages, 404, pp. 114-121, 117-120.

84. On the economy of Latin Greece see Jacoty, "Les États latins," pp. 42-49. On the others, in particular see numerous documents in Pflaumer, *L'Asie-Mineure*, and Longuen and Topping, *Documents* also *idem*, *La Merle d'Asie*, pp. 128-129; Carlier, *Le Récueil des chartes*, pp. 10-113, and "Rapport sur les affaires civiles et diplomatiques," pp. 248-279, as well as the sources by Jacoty of Longuen and Topping, *Documents*, and of Carlier's book (see bibliography above). On Venetian territories see Berman, *Il Dominio*, pp. 47-103, and his *Studi*, pp. 107-132; Lauro, "Qualche osservazione," pp. 175-198, and his "Osservazioni on the Results of the Fourth Crusade," pp. 47-54 (5). Zachariades, *Trade and Crusades in Thira*, *La Romania*, pp. 309-340, 408-418. Notarial documents and Venetian complaints stored in place provide evidence of the extensive reliance of Greek traders who were Venetian or foreign subjects on ships belonging to Venetians. On piracy see especially Carlier-Morgan, "The Venetian-Greek Commerce of 1276," *Byzantische Zeitschrift*, LXIX (1970), 40-408.

85. Presumably because of the very low gross prices, when prices paid in the thirteenth century for military services are recorded by Berman, *Il Dominio*, appendix p. 14.

In the Morea the archontes benefited from grants of land, generally on a moderate scale, and some of them served in the princely and seigniorial administration; these two economic facets of integration into the ruling elite provided them with partial compensation for the loss of their social standing.

The holding of large estates by the Latins influenced not only the attitude of the Greek elite toward them, but also that of the peasants. The constant presence of Latin lords on these lands or in their vicinity, or, in the case of Italian landholders in the Morea, of their agents engaged in improving agricultural exploitation, their endeavor to ensure growing profits in a true commercial spirit, and a manpower shortage due to demographic contraction all brought heavy pressure to bear on the dependent peasantry, especially in Crete. The ethnic cleavage in the island was exacerbated by economic factors; it is therefore not surprising that Cretan peasants were often willing to join the archontes and the Greek clergy in opposing Venetian rule.

On the other hand, the expanding demand in Venice for agricultural products from Greece, grain and wine in particular, as well as raisins, cheese, wool, and hides, encouraged the cultivation of numerous plots of land and the raising of animals by landowners, lessees, and sharecroppers belonging to almost all ranks of society. It also afforded seasonal work for hired laborers. Latins and Greeks appear side by side, at times as partners, in numerous business contracts involving investments, loans, and labor in agriculture and the raising of animals.¹⁷ The same holds true with the manufacturing of goods and the supply of services, as well as local and regional commerce on land and at sea. Greeks, however, suffered from various restrictions in maritime trade. Villeins were not allowed to leave the territory in which they lived. Thus, for instance, those of Crete were barred from traveling outside the island. In addition, Venetians and especially Venetian citizens seem to have acquired since the 1270's at the least a dominant position in regional maritime transportation. This activity was partly integrated into the pattern of long-distance commerce and transportation dominated by itinerant traders and ships operating from Venice, and enjoying a favored status and the commune's protection. Some members of prominent Venetian families such as the Cornaro, Ghisi, Morosini, and Sanudo, who had settled in Crete, also participated in regional

17. See above, note 14. The production and trade of Cretan grain was monopolized in 1281 and the following decades by massive purchases made by the commune at guaranteed prices higher than those on the free market.

trade and shipping. In fourteenth-century Morea Florio-Bart and south Italian traders largely monopolized the export of agricultural produce and its transportation to the Angevin kingdom of Sicily.

Activity related to manufacturing, trade, and shipping was mainly concentrated in urban centers. By crossing class and community boundaries, similar or joint economic activity led to social intercourse, tempered ethnic tensions somewhat, and opened the way to accommodation on a daily level between Greek and Latin city-dwellers. It is precisely this phenomenon that so worried the ruling elites in non-feudal territories and prompted them to enforce institutionalized ethnic segregation, as illustrated in Venetian Crete from the thirteenth century on and in the Catalan study of Athens in the fourteenth century.

This rapprochement occasionally extended to another sphere of daily life. Within a few years after the conquest, the Greek clergy was deprived of its higher ranks and of educated priests, who fled Latin rule,⁸⁰ yet it displayed a considerable vitality. Two factors explain its influence on the Greek community, especially in rural areas. Greek monks and Greek priests were to be found in cities and villages alike; besides, the latter lived among the laymen and shared their fate, as most priests were villeins.⁸¹ This situation contrasted sharply with that of the Latin clergy. Catholic priests were not numerous enough to attend to the religious needs of the Latin population, which was scattered all over Latin Greece, often in very small groups: in 1210 Othon de la Roche, the "great lord" of Athens, asked pope Innocent III to provide priests for all castles and villages in which twelve Catholics were settled.⁸² Besides, Latin priests were seldom present in rural areas or inland cities; most of them resided in coastal cities, where the major part of the Latin population dwelt. Finally, members of the higher Latin clergy were often absent from their sees and offices.⁸³ It is therefore not surprising that growing numbers of Latins turned to Greek priests and attended their religious services. It may safely be assumed, however, that this religious symbiosis was not generalized and occurred only in places where Latins were few. In 1322 pope John XXII com-

80. For ecclesiastical Greece see Harris, "Realities of Byzantine Provincial Government," p. 263, and Thiriet, "Le Synodisme," pp. 21, 28, 33, for Crete, see Douzet, *Le Dux de Crète*, pp. 102-103.

81. See above, note 58. Thiriet, "Le Synodisme," pp. 21-26, and his *Église, laïcs et clergé*, pp. 449-459, as well as Zantidis, "Quelques aspects du statut," pp. 121-122 for Crete, and numerous cases in Loupoulin and Topping, *Documents*.

82. As mentioned in a letter of Innocent III, no. XIII, ep. 16, in PL, 216, col. 216.

83. See below, *Documents inédits*, II, 236-271, 285; Douzet, *Documents inédits*, pp. 181-182, 267, 302-304; Fédiche, *La Cherson*, III, nos. 459-470, 512, 536-540, 582, 595, 648; Thiriet, *Le Rouman*, pp. 402-406; and his *Église, laïcs et clergé*, pp. 471-473.

plained bitterly that in the Morea Latins mingled with Greeks at religious services.⁵¹ The same phenomenon is attested in Crete by numerous sources, yet it is significant that a decree issued in 1349 specifically prohibited minor Venetian officials in the inland areas from having recourse to Greek priests.⁵² It remains to be seen what impact this process had on the relations between the Latins and the Greek population.

The social, legal, and institutional framework established by the Latins in their respective territories shortly after the conquest no doubt conditioned to a large extent the attitudes and behavior of the Latin rulers and settlers toward the indigenous population, and vice versa. In spite of the diversity of regimes, certain basic features were common to all areas of Latin Greece: such were legal and social stratification and, broadly speaking, the deterioration in the status and condition of the Greeks. Daily coexistence affected, however, the pattern of relations between the two communities and their respective members, yet not to the same degree or in the same manner everywhere. In feudalized areas coexistence produced legal and social, but not religious or cultural, integration of the Greek elite into the Latin upper class. In non-feudal areas, even this limited integration remained exceptional. Institutionalized segregation was steadily enforced by Venice in Crete, yet proved effective at the level of the elites only. It seems to have been more successful in the Catalan duchy of Athens. Whatever the case, in the period under consideration here intermarriage seems to have remained a marginal phenomenon in Latin Greece, and coexistence never developed into an assimilation of the Latins to the Greek population.

In the fourteenth century the crossing of religious boundaries occurred in both directions, yet was apparently limited in scope.⁵³ More important in this respect was the religious symbiosis spreading in inland areas, which, however, was restricted to common religious practice. It derived no doubt from the practical needs of Latins and did not necessarily imply a change in religious affiliation, nor was it tanta-

⁵¹ Letter to Constant Barrocco, *Annuaire archéologique*, XXIV (Bar-in-Duc, 1873), cols. 187-188.

⁵² See above, note 52. Common religious services in churches were quite exceptional: see Thieriot, "Le Église orthodoxe d'un franciscain catholique en la région de Venise (1454)," *Polychronion* (Athens, 1970) 10, pp. 496-504.

⁵³ See above, notes 51 and 57; also especially Thieriot, "Églises, bulles et cirques," pp. 483-495, and Laïos, "Quelques observations," pp. 387-396, who refers to mixed marriages which no doubt promoted the Latins' assimilation.

moving to conversion to Orthodoxy. Furthermore, it did not generate mutual accommodation between the Greek and Latin communities at large, nor did the spreading knowledge of the Greek language among Latins or social and economic intercourse between them and the Greeks, attested from the thirteenth century on, achieve this result. About 1220 Greek priests of Latin Morea cooperated with their fellow Greeks of Epirus,⁹¹ and in 1244 Greek monks living in the duchy of Athens collaborated with those of Epirus or Nicaea.⁹² About 1330, more than a century after the imposition of Latin rule, Marino Sanudo, an acute observer of Latin Greece, described the situation in Cyprus, Crete, Euboea, Rhodes, and other islands, as well as in the Morea, as follows: "Although these places are subjected to the rule of the Franks and obedient to the Roman church, almost all the population is Greek and is inclined toward this sect [the Greek Orthodox church], and their hearts are turned toward Greek matters, and when they can show this freely, they do so."⁹³ Venice was perfectly aware of this crucial fact, which explains its segregationist policy and its reluctance to enlist Greeks in the armed forces and navy, unless absolutely necessary, on a temporary basis, and on a limited scale.⁹⁴

It has been claimed that Venice's attitude toward its Greek subjects became more lenient from the late fourteenth century on, against the background of the Ottoman advance in the Balkans.⁹⁵ This statement requires some qualifications. It is true that the commune became somewhat more attentive to the wishes of the Greek population in its territories and adopted a more flexible attitude on practical matters, such as the training of Greek archers in order to ensure the coastal defense of Crete.⁹⁶ With that it is significant, as noted above, that it basically maintained its stance on mixed marriages, the participation of Greeks and *venetici* in political assemblies, and their holding of high state offices, as well as on religious symbiosis. The anti-Venetian unrest stimulated in Crete and Corfu from the mid-fifteenth century on by the arrival of Greek priests from Byzantine and Turkish territories leads to the conclusion that Sanudo's statement about the Greek attitude towards the Latins remained largely valid in this period. He had rightly

91 See *Descriptio Christianorum*, ed. Hirs, VII, cols. 87-88, no. 22.

92 *Les Règles d'Étienne IV*, ed. Ét. Dugès, I (Paris, 1884), pp. 112-113, no. 477 (April 28, 1244).

93 "Lettera del Rege di Romania," ed. Hagl, *Chronicarum graeco-romanae*, p. 143.

94 On its vacillating policy on this last matter see Jacoby, "Les États latins," p. 28, and "Les Grecs de mer," pp. 181-183, 191, also Thiers, *La Romania*, pp. 492-493.

95 Thiers, *La Romania*, pp. 301-302, 370 ff.

100. See Jacoby, "Les Grecs de mer," p. 185.

perceived that Greek religious affiliation was the source of Greek ethnic awareness.¹⁰¹ It is only later, in the nineteenth century, that Latin acculturation proceeded further, and accommodation between Latins and Greeks emerged in the territories remaining under Venetian rule.

101. For this reason Greek priests may have persisted to know no language other than their own, as suggested by a trial held in Corfu in 1642; see Thieriot, "Églises, écoles et clergé," pp. 493-506.

VII

THE OTTOMAN TURKS AND THE CRUSADES, 1329-1451

A. Turkish Settlement and Christian Reaction, 1329-1361

The fall of Acre in 1291 did not end the crusader peril for the Moslem world. Western Christendom was still unchallenged at sea in the eastern Mediterranean, and its forces had the advantage of being able to land at any time anywhere on the coasts, which therefore remained

General works on Ottoman history include Joseph von Hammer-Purgstall, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches* (10 vols., Pest, 1827-1851, repr. Graz, 1963), largely superseded; Istvan W. Zsoldos, *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches in Europa* (7 vols., Hamburg, 1849-1863, repr. Darmstadt, 1963), still important for Ottoman relations with Europe; Niccolò Iorga (Nicolas Jorga), *Geschichte des osmanischen Reiches nach den Quellen dargestellt* (3 vols., Götting, 1908-1913, repr. 1963), based on contemporary sources and reliable, still essential; and Kemal H. Karpat, *Osmanlı tarihi* (4 vols., Ankara, 1947-1959).

General histories relevant to the Ottomans are Wilhelm Heyd, *History of commerce in Levant as well as in Europe*, in *Four Volumes* (2 vols., Leipzig, 1861-1896; repr. Leipzig, 1936, Amsterdam, 1967); Ludwig Foa, *The History of the Papacy from the Close of the Middle Ages, to Frederick I. Austria*, vols. I-VI (London, 1891-92); and Aziz S. Aly, *The Crusade in the Later Middle Ages* (London, 1938).

Other histories relevant to our subject include Frederick W. Haseck, *Christianity and Islam under the Sultan* (2 vols., Oxford, 1929); *Mémoires offerts à M. Nicolas Pacha par ses amis de France* . . . (Paris, 1712); Dorothy M. Vaughan, *Europe and the Turk, a History of Alliances, 1120-1700* (Liverpool, 1954); and Franz Schnitzer, *Asien und Abhandlungen zur Geschichte Südosteuropas und der Levante*, I, *Südosteuropas Geschichte der Südosteuropäer-Gesellschaft*, no. 3, Munich, 1943.

A long list of Ottoman documents published in various countries is contained in the introduction to *Les Sultans et Ambassadeurs Ottomans*, *Handbook of Ottoman-Turkish Diplomacy*, by Andrew S. Erasmovetz, ed. Thérèse Holm-Ess (The Hague and Paris, 1961). Journals frequently publishing Ottoman documents include *Türk ve Osmanlı arşivleri yayımları* (Istanbul, 1908-1911), *Balkan* (Balkan Historical Society, Ankara, since 1917), *Türk arşivleri* (Ankara, 1948-1961), *Türk arşivi* (Faculty of Letters, University of Istanbul, since 1950), *Prilog, za opsebitno filologiju* (Orientalist Institute in Sarajevo; annually since 1935), *Mouvements turcs hors des frontières musulmanes d'aujourd'hui* (Islam, since 1957), *Fontes Historiae Bulgariae*, etc.

the boundaries between Islam and Christendom. The Christian's predominance on the sea was acknowledged by the Mamluks.¹ In fact, in the period after 1291 a blockade—ordered by pope Nicholas IV (1288-1292)—of Egypt, Syria, and Turkey seriously threatened to cut the supply lines of commodities vital to the Mamluks—arms, timber,

XV-XVI, *Fastes ottomans* (Istanbul, since 1964, and Belgrad (Turkish Historical Society, Ankara, since 1964). See also *Asya Kütüphanesi* (2 vols., Istanbul, 1934-1940), incomplete guide to the collections of documents in the Topkapı Sarayı archives (TKS); M. Tayyib Gökalp, *XIV-XVI asrında Eskiçağ ve Papa L'Papa* (Istanbul, 1952), a collection of archival documents important for power foundations in Istanbul, Ottoman traditions, and legends; *İslâm-i Aşker-i İsmail-i Arslan*, ed. Hüsnü İsmail (Turkish Historical Society, Ankara, 1954), Ottoman survey book of Aleppo, dated 1432; and *İsmailiye Feridü* (Bagd., ed., *İsmailiye as-salibi* (2 vols., Istanbul, 1939) is locally analyzed by İbrahim Bekirhan-Özdemir, *Beherinler ve İsmailiye'nin Eski ve Yeni Osmanlı Devleti*, *Orhan ve Murad I* (Istanbul, 1967).

Major collections of documents are *Orhan Çarşısı*, ed., *Mikrochiron de la France dans le Levant* (4 vols., Paris, 1887); Georg E. Miller, ed., *Documente sulle relazioni della città papale col' Oriente cristiano e col turco fino all' anno MDCCCX* (Documenti degli archivi vaticani), no. 3, Florence, 1879; Vladimir Lamazsky, ed., *Secrets d'Etat de Héracl* (St. Petersburg, 1884, repr. New York, 1948; *Leipsig, Héracl et ses secrets pour servir à l'histoire des croisades au XIV siècle* (3 vols., Paris and Bucharest, 1899-1910), and Freddy Thiéry, ed., *Aspects des délibérations du Sénat de Héracl concernant le Levant* (3 vols., Paris and The Hague, 1914-1962).

Major murals of interest include G. Georgios Arsenak, "Gregory Palamas among the Turks and Documents of his Captivity as Historical Sources," *Speculum*, XXXVI (1961) 164-111; Anton der Johannes Schöberger, ed. Karl F. Hermann (Munich, 1839), or J. Stefan Teller, *Anton der Johannes Schöberger in Europa, Asien und Afrika, 1396-1412*, with notes by Philipp Braun (Halle/Saale, London, 1878). He was captured in 1396 and served the sultan for six years; *Bertrandon de la Bertrandon Voyage d'Orient*, ed. Charles Schefer (Paris, 1892), and "Dernière de Louis" (*Comptes-Rendus Académie*), *Historia turcorum* (1390-1314), ed. Leo Ullrich (Göttingen, 1948).

For Ottoman chronicles see *Belgrad, Die Geschichtschreiber der Osmanen und ihre Werke* (Leipzig, 1877). The earliest surviving account of Ottoman history in Turkish is in Altınoluk's definition of the *İsharetname* at the constant Sultanate (1462-1481); the text was first published by Nihal Atsız as *Osmanlı tarihleri* (Istanbul, 1949), pp. 1-35 (printed summary, with historical data too brief and too vague). Early Ottoman traditions, apparently composed in classical form under Orkhan (1326-1362), are lost, but their contents are partially known from compilations made under Bayezid II (1481-1512). *Aslıki Türk-ülale vatanı* and there in faithful detail in the *Yıldırım-ülale*; *Tarikh-i Osman*, ed. Atsız as *Yıldırım-ülale vatanı* (Istanbul, 1949), pp. 79-103, 11. Richard P. Howard, *New History of the Ottoman Empire* (Hannover and Cologne, 1979), legendary folk tales are mixed in with greater historical accuracy, providing critical use of this important source.

The second and third compilations—*İskân* (in French 1514) and the anonymous chronicle—used some of the same sources as the first. For discussion see İnalcık, "The Rise of Ottoman Historiography," in *History of the Middle East*, ed. Bernard Lewis and Peter M. Holt (London, 1962), pp. 152-147; Vahid L. Mithaq, "The Bertrandon of Ottoman Historiography," *ibid.*, pp. 148-179; and also, *Naghi's History of the Ottomans: the Sources and Development of the*

1 David Appleby, "Seljuqs," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 2nd ed., 3 (Leiden, 1969), 343-346, 349; "The Seljuqs in the Mamluk Kingdom," *Islamic Culture*, XXX (1951), 39-104; İnalcık, "The Rise of the Turkish Mamluk Principality in Armenia, Syria, and Crete," *Byzantinische Forschungen*, IX (1963), 179-211.

iron, and most important of all, slaves. Since these materials and slaves were imported from Turkey or through the Aegean Sea from the Black Sea, the islands of the eastern Mediterranean acquired major importance in western strategy. As a result of this new situation, the *uj* (frontier) Turcomans in Anatolia, dependent on the export to Egypt of

The Crusades, 1964). The version on Ottoman history added by Ertel to *Le Destin d'Unser Paché* (see below) is an original compilation of the earlier chronicles which sheds new light on various controversial points.

On the Turkish preoccupation in Anatolia see Uzunçarşılı, *Anadolu beylikleri*, 2nd ed. (Ankara, 1969), a general survey; Paul Wittek, *Das Osmanische Reich: Studien zur Geschichte des Islamismus im XIV.-XV. Jahrhunderte* (Graz, 1934); Barbara Fleming, *Landesherren und Herrscher von Phrygien, Pisidien und Lykien im Spätmittelalter* (Wiesbaden, 1964); Mustafa C. Yücel, *Gereksiz-ajdamlar tarihi*, 1398-1429 (Ankara, 1954); Tamer Bayraktar, *Devlet-i Arifi* (Istanbul, 1968); Hakkı Akın, *Ajdlar-ajdamlar tarihi* (Istanbul, 1968); Mustafa C. Yücel, "Foca f. Hakkında der verummenen d'Foca mülken an XIII. yüzyıl," *Journal asiatique*, CCXXXIX (1951), 325-354; Adnan S. Biri, "Mülken-i Karakoyunlu tarih-i hükümler-i emir-i karakoyunlu," *Belleten*, XXVIII (1954), 179-221; John Woods, *The Approach: Asia, Constantinople, Empire* (Milwaukee and Chicago, 1970); Frank Steiner, *Ältere Karaköylü*, I (Ankara, 1967); Sabahattin Tükel, "Der Osmanli-Karaimen verummenen-i hükümler-i emir-i karaimen," *Yeni dünya* (1962), 42-74; and M. Yusef Yücel, *Kauf Karaköylüleri Akademi de devleri*, 1398-1429 (Ankara, 1970).

For a comprehensive analysis of conditions in Byzantine Anatolia and the frontier areas see the pioneering works of Hermann Paul Kaptein, "Bemerkungen zur Byzanzgeschichtlichen Ethnogenese," *Mitteilungen zur orientalischen Geschichte*, I (1901-1902), 20-212; "Kaiserliche Hofstadt Foca's Werk über den armen Mythos in der türkischen Kaiserzeit," *Königl. Geogr. Anstalt*, II (1907-1908), 261-300, 404-422; *Les Origines de l'empire ottoman* (Paris, 1915); and "Osmann Imperatorgenese und Osman mülken," *Belleten*, VII (1945), 219-269. Foytik's work has been regarded by Friedrich Gies, "Das Problem der Entstehung des orientalischen Reiches," *Zeitschrift für Orientalistik und verwandte Gebiete*, II (1924), 244-271, by Franz G. Thurnham, "Beitrag zur Geschichte der Ächt in Anatolien," *Isis*, IV (1924), 1-47, and idem, "Ächt," in *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 3rd ed., I (Leiden, 1960; repr. 1963), 321-325; and by Wittek, "Deux chapitres de l'histoire des Turcs de Roum," *Byzantion*, XI (1936), 285-319 and idem, *The Rise of the Ottoman Empire* (London, 1939). See also Ernst Hutter, *Die Geburt einer Grossmacht: die Osmanen 1299-1480*, ein Beitrag zur Genese des türkischen Reiches (Berlin, 1966).

On the struggle for the Aegean see Max Scharounski, *Das osteuropäische Problem der Zeit der Eroberung des türkischen Reiches nach russischen Quellen, 1291-1400* (Leipzig and Berlin, 1913); Irina Mikhailovna Sagan, *Le Destin d'Unser Paché, Sultanat d'Anatolie* (Bibliothèque byzantine, Descriptive, no. 2, Paris, 1954); Paul Tamarit, *L'Empire d'Asie, Aspects et Hérédité: Recherches sur "Le genre d'Unser Paché"* (Bibliothèque byzantine, Études, no. 2, Paris, 1977), 160-161; and Angèle E. Levent, "Mélange Soudan Turcille, Byzantisme and the Turks," *Spoudaion*, XLV (1970), 174-192.

On Tinos, the Chiosans, and the war see M. Naif Yücel, "Beylik-i L. İstihale Anadolusuna," II (Istanbul, 1967), 369-373; Maria M. Alexandrovna-Dimitrova, *Le Commerce de Tinos en Anatolie* (1482) (Bucharest, 1962), reviewed by Isidore in *Belleten*, XI (1947), 340-342; Zeki V. Toprak, "Tinos Osmanlısı," *ZDMG*, CVIII-2 (1978), 279-296; Isidore, *Belleten*, XXXVII (1973), 191-196; and Anatoly F. Novoseltsev, "On the Historical Evolution of Tinos," *History Journal*, II (1953), 150-151.

No systematic or objective history of Ottoman-Byzantine relations exists. For partial treatise see Oskar Hahn, *Die Expansion der Byzantiner in Asien: Eine aus der Türkei für die Türkei des Sultans in der Türkei des Sultans*, 1333-1373 (Wien, 1850; repr. London, 1972); Peter Charanis, "The Ottoman Empire in Byzantium during the XIVth Century," *Byzantion*, XV

their timber and slaves, were brought into a closer relationship with the Mamluks.

One crucial development in the ensuing period of struggle between Islam and Christendom was the rise in the first half of the fourteenth century of Turkish navies manned by sea ghaзіs,¹ who were later to

(1340), 208-230; idem, "The Strife among the Palaiologoi and the Ottoman Turks, 1370-1402," *Byzantion*, XVI (1942-1943), 366-384; George Ostrogorsky, *History of the Byzantine State*, tr. John M. Hussey (London, 1956); Jean W. Barkin, *Islam in Palaeologia, 1391-1425: A Study in Late Byzantine State-society* (New Brunswick, N.J., 1969); Agapitos E. Bakalopoulos, *Crusade of the Greek Nation, 1291-1342*, tr. Jani Ideou, vol. I (New Brunswick, 1970), and Lefevre, *Constantinople and the Latins: the Foreign Policy of Andronicus II, 1282-1328* (Cambridge, Mass., 1972).

Byzantine chronicles are indispensable for Ottoman history before 1451; John Constantynides, *Historiarum libri IV*, ed. Ludwig Schopen (CSNR, 7 vols., Bonn, 1929-1932); also in PG, vol. CLIII, ed. analyzed by Valérie Porret, *Chronographes, Année d'Istet et Nicomède* (Paris, 1842), and by Lefevre, I, *Envoi*, in the light of *Manuscripta Crispina* (1298-1360) and other contemporary sources. For the period 1360-1400 no Byzantine chronicle comparable to these two exists. For 1400-1442 the most important source is Doucas (Douchas), *Historia descriptiva*, ed. Ioannides Bekker (CSNR, Bonn, 1834); also in PG, vol. CLXVI, tr. Harry J. Magouliaris in *Decline and Fall of Byzantium to the Ottoman Turks (Byzantine neo-byzantine, 1340-1452)* (Detroit, 1918). Doucas should be supplemented by George Sphrantzes, *Chronicon mirum*, ed. Bekker (CSNR, Bonn, 1838), also in PG, vol. CLXV, tr. Markos Philippides in *The Fall of the Byzantine Empire* (Austrian, 1902). For 1408-1463 see also Laonikos Chalkokondyles, *Historiarum summariorum*, ed. Eugen Dörfl (2 vols. in 3, Budapest, 1923-1927); cf. Akhis Nisus (Kamii), *Die türkische Prosopographie bei Laonikos Chalkokondyles* (Hamburg, 1933). Charles (Karol) Hagl, *Chronique prince-murmur latine de Jean raietou* (Paris, 1878; repr. 1966), is still useful.

For the Ottomans and the Balkans a systematic bibliography is the *Bibliographie d'études balkaniques* (Sofia, since 1946). Each Balkan country publishes a journal devoted to Balkan studies: *Balkan Studies* (Sofia), since 1946; *Annuaire des études sud-est européennes* (Belgrade), since 1952; *Studia orientalia* (Tirana), since 1963; *Studia balkanologica* (Sofia), since 1964; *Balkanska* (Belgrade), since 1969; and *Georg-Danubio-Aegeum antiquarium* (Istanbul, since 1972). See also *Compendia Balkica*, *Geschichte der Bulgaren* (Prague, 1876); Stanko Stancjević, "Die Biographie des Kaisers Lazarus von Konstantin dem Philosophen als Geschichtsschreiber," *Archiv für slavische Philologie*, XCVI (1896), 409-472, source in: Matthias Bonin in *Leben und Werk des Despoten Stefan Lazarović*. Köttingen, 1956; Stjepan Novaković, *Die Serben und Türken*, tr. K. Kordanić (Zagreb, 1897); Ferdinand Štúr, "Die Schlacht bei Nikopolis (25 September 1396)," *Wissenschaftliche Mitteilungen aus Budapest und der Hungarologie*, VI (1896), 291-337; Arnold, *Geschichte der Serben* (2 vols., Götting, 1901-1902; repr. Amsterdam, 1961); Constantin Marinovic (Mironovic), "Alphonse V, roi d'Aragon et de Naples, et l'Alliance de Scutari-berg," *Mémoires de l'Académie roumaine de Paris*, I (Paris, 1913), 7-132; Du Meaux, "Vlad Dracul et ses successeurs," *Cronica istorică*, II (1923), 1-135; Aspin, *The Crusade of Nikopolis* (London, 1936); François Paul, "Charles de Bulgarie: son action humanitaire," *Mémoires d'histoire générale*, II (Ca), 1930, 135-318; Bonn, "Türkenherrschaft und Türkensiege bei der Balkan-erobung," *Welt als Geschichte*, II-IV (1946), 134-139; Georg Schuchman, *Geschichte Südosteuropas* (Münch., 1950); Ivan Dušev, "Le Croquis mappe et la prise de Constantinople dans la littérature slave contemporaine," *Byzantinistica*, XIV (1952), 14-34; XVI (1953), 328-330; and XVII (1954), 271-340; Brander Dymally, "Bosna," in *Encyclopedia of Islam*, rev. ed., I, 1361-1373; III (1971), "Armenien," III, I, 420-428; idem, "Balkan-berg," *ibid.*, IV, I (1971-1972), 136-140; Rüdiger Erdel, *Draculović (Ragusa) et la Légende du Moyen Age* (Paris and The Hague, 1941); Giuseppe Valentini, ed., *Acta albanica recentia, seculorum XIV et XV* (20 vols., Munich, 1947-1976), and *Index*, I.

2. Al-Umari, *Descriptio ad usum p'essibile ad usum*, ed. Barthelemy (Leipzig, 1929), pp. 43-52.

form the nucleus of Ottoman sea power. The emergence of these sea ghazis can be seen as a continuation of the Turkish expansion movement toward the west. Turkish azabs (from Arabic 'azab, bachelor, youth), the fighting men on these flotillas, were identical in origin, motivation, and organization to the frontier ghazis. One of the first results of this new set of circumstances was a northward shift of the main field of action, eventually leaving Egypt and Syria out of the actual struggle.

The Turkish conquest of western Anatolia from the Byzantines in

"L'Empire ottoman," (*Actes du premier Congrès international des études byzantines et sud-est européennes* . . .) (Sofia, 1964), *Stavros de l'Occident bulgare des siècles*, 1961-1971, III (Sofia, 1969).

On Hungary, Austria, and the Ottomans see Josef von Aquilanti, *Geschichte Kaiser Sigismund* (4 vols., Hamburg, 1830); Alfons Huber, "Ludwig I. von Ungarn und die ungarischen Vasallenfürsten," *Archiv für österreichische Geschichte*, LXVI (1884), 1-44, printed separately (Vienna, 1885); Leopold Kupferbauer, *Die Könige Ungarns mit der Osmanen bis zur Schlacht bei Mohács*, 1226, 2nd ed. (Vienna, 1899); Oskar Beckhausen, *Der König Kaiser Sigismund gegen die wachsende Weltmacht der Osmanen, 1382-1407* (Gotha, 1902); Isop, "On Matthias and the campaigns against the Jean Hunyadi in 1448," *Revue historique de l'est-est européen*, III (1912), 11-27, and Lajos Előss, *Matthias der Hungarier* (Budapest, 1952).

On the passing Italy and the Ottomans after the references to see Konrad M. Sime, *The Papacy and the Levant, 1204-1571* (4 vols., Philadelphia, 1970-1982). Other works will surely include Ludovico Sadi, *Storia della colonia dei genovesi in Galata* (2 vols., Turin, 1821); Saverio Ricossa, *Storia diplomatica di Napoli* (20 vols., Naples 1838-1861, repr. 1925), I, 309, *Philippe de Méphise, 1377-1401* (Paris, 1904); Camillo Masini, *La Battaglia di Gattopoli e la guerra vanto-turca* (Naples, 1902); Idem, *Storia della marcia italiana del reame di Napoli alla caduta di Costantinopoli* (2 vols., Lugano, 1902-1903); Francesco Caruso, "La Politica orientale di Alfonso di Aragona," *Archivio storico per le province napoletane*, XXVI (1902), 3-93, 380-404, 515-404, 774-852, and XXVIII (1903), 134-312, and William Miller, *The Latins in the Levant. A History of Frankish Greece (1204-1566)* (London, 1908, repr. 1964).

More recent works include Paul, "Crise d'Afrique e la crociata contre l'Islam," *AR*, 828, XX (1938), 7-40; Balaban, "Le Viatico musulman della loro contro i Turchi durante il secolo XV," *Chironi rivista del quindicennio* (Florence, 1937), pp. 11-73; Anthony Luttrell, "The Crusade in the Fourteenth Century," *Europe in the Late Middle Ages*, ed. John B. Hald, John R. L. Highfield, and Beryl Smalley (London, 1965), pp. 123-134; Eugene I. Cos, *The Great Charter of Serris* (Princeton, 1967); Paolo Prota, *Moneta e il Sacro* (Florence, 1975); Michel Balard, *Le Romanisme grecque (1204-1453) de l'Église à l'État* (2 vols., Paris and Geneva, 1976), as 4^e "La Rola della Un Teofila e la Teofila", special issue of *Il Medio*, XXXII/2-4 (1978).

On the crusade of Varna see the anonymous chronicle, *Gespéche-Sainte-Hélène à Jérusalem* (Paris, ed. Jacobin and M. Ojko (Antwerp, 1970); Lajos Fekete, "Das Decretum über die Schlacht bei Varna," *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XIV (1913), 254-276; O. Salfer, "Hungenkronik und Schlacht bei Varna (1444-1445)," *Historisch-ethnographische*, XG-XXII (1919-1921), 1-64; Paul, "Histoire de la Croisade de Varna: la question de la paix de Szeged et de sa rupture (1444)," *AR*, 832, XXII (1913), 144-158; Halacha, *The Crusade of Varna: Discussion of Contemporary Problems* (New York, 1902); and Jan Długosz, "L'Année 1444," *Revue internationale de l'histoire de l'Europe pendant les siècles de la Renaissance*, *Classe d'histoire et de philosophie*, supp. no. 6 (Cracow, 1910).

For the Ottoman viewpoint of Hunnic wagonburg tactics see M. Wail, *Die Hunnische Wagonburg* (Berlin, 1889); Jan Długosz, *Hunnische Wagonburg* (Berlin, 1911); and *Gespéche-Sainte-Hélène*, ed. Jacobin and Ojko.

the second half of the thirteenth century had not caused serious alarm in the west, since western Christendom was then primarily concerned with the fate of the last remnants of the crusader states on the Syrian coast and with the restoration of the Latin empire in Constantinople. The Turkish warrior-nomads had been active on the Selchûkid-Byzantine frontiers for a long period of time without making a determined attempt at invasion, and, in any case, their repulsion was thought not to be a difficult task for the Byzantine state. In the crusade projects drawn up around 1300 the Turkish invasion of western Anatolia was regarded as a minor question to be dealt with by the crusader army on its way to Palestine.

Today most historians try to explain the collapse of Byzantine rule in western Anatolia by focusing on certain "unwise" policies of the Byzantine government. But it seems clear that the fundamental reason for the collapse is the mass migration of the Turcomans (Türkmen) westward in the last decades of the thirteenth century, an event reminiscent of the first Turkish invasion of Anatolia after the battle of Manzikert (1071). Christian Europe became aware of the significance of the Turkish advance only in the early fourteenth century, when Latin possessions and commercial traffic came increasingly under attack by the Turcoman ghazis, fighters for Islamic holy war (*jihād*) operating on the Aegean Sea. Thus, with Islam issuing a direct challenge to Europe on the sea, an entirely new situation arose in the long struggle between Islam and Christendom.

The gravity of the threat on the Aegean was clearly seen by Marino Sanudo "Torsello" (1270-1337). A tireless propagandist for a general crusade against Egypt since 1306, Sanudo had by 1320 developed the view that the first objective of a crusade should be the expulsion of the Turks from the Aegean.¹ Indeed, coupled with an effective military organization and with the revival of the holy war, the mass movement of the Turks toward the west assumed, after the first successes, such a magnitude that there was soon talk of a Turkish peril for all Europe.

When a new Turkey with great demographic potential and a heightened holy war ideology emerged in the old Selchûkid (Seljuk) frontier zone, east of a line from the mouth of the Sakamari (Indus) river to that of the Sakarya (Sangarius), a thrust by this explosive frontier society against the neighboring Byzantine territory in western Anatolia was almost inevitable.

1. Lelov, "Marino Sanudo Torsello," p. 399. Cf. Auzas, "The Crusade in the Fourteenth Century," in volume III of the present work, p. 115.

Thus westward expansion had been accomplished in four stages: the seasonal transhumance movements of Turcoman nomadic groups into the Byzantine coastal plain; the organization of small raiding groups under ghazi leaders, mostly of tribal origin, for booty raids or for employment as mercenaries; the emergence of successful leaders capable of bringing local chiefs together as their clients, for conquest and for the establishment of *beyliks* (principalities) in the conquered lands, on the model of the principalities founded in the old Selçûkîd frontier zone; and finally, the involvement of these ghazi beyliks, with definite political and economic goals, in the regional struggle for supremacy in the Aegean and in the Balkans.

In the 1320's and 1330's, Turkish groups acting as ghazi raiding parties or mercenary companies joined together under the command of powerful leaders such as Umur Paşa (1334-1346) of the Aydıno dynasty or Orkhan (1326-1342) and his eldest son, Süleiman Paşa, of the Ottoman house; only through them could the Byzantines hope to acquire sizable mercenary aid from Anatolia. Through alliance with the Byzantines the Turcoman begs in turn could provide employment and booty for the ever-growing number of gazis gathering under their banners for raids on an increasingly larger scale in the Balkans. At this stage neither Umur nor Orkhan was interested in conquest or settlement of overseas lands.

Between 1329 and 1337, while Umur was launching his spectacular sea expeditions from Samsun, the Ottomans, fighting against the Byzantines in northwestern Anatolia, were also making important conquests, including Nicaea on March 2, 1330, and Nicomedia in 1337. Their first significant advances came during the period 1329-1334, when Umur too was engaged in hostilities with the Byzantines. Though our sources give no hint of an alliance or actual co-operation between Umur and Orkhan, circumstances made them natural allies in this period, and again from 1342 to 1346, when Umur was giving strong support to John VI Cantacuzenus against his rivals in Constantinople.⁴ The efforts of the latter to secure military aid from Orkhan failed, instead, with the assistance of Ottoman troops, Cantacuzenus was able to seize all the Black Sea ports except Sinopoliis from the hands of his enemies. The marriage of his daughter Theodora to Orkhan in June 1346 cemented Cantacuzenus's alliance with the Ottoman principality, by

4 For this period see Karaman, *L'Émirat d'Aydin*, pp. 145-174, 204-217. Lascaris refers to the translation into French by Hildolf-Seyna, *Le Destin d'Umur Paşa*. Cf. Lascaris, "The Hospitallers at Nicaea, 1306-1411," in volume III of the present work, pp. 295-297, footnote pp. cii (in note I, above).

then the strongest of the Turcoman states. Once in full power in Constantinople (February 3, 1347), however, Cantacuzenus appeared to turn to a policy of coöperation with the Latins against the Turks, offering in 1348 to continue the Byzantine alliance with pope Clement VI (1342-1352) and Humbert II of Viennois (d. 1355).⁵ This policy, however, was intended primarily to thwart the plans of Stephen IV Dushan, the Serbian king (1331-1355), who in 1345 had proclaimed himself "emperor of the Serbs and Greeks".

By 1347 Dushan's advances had become a major threat to the existence of the empire, as he was seeking Venetian assistance in the conquest of Constantinople.⁶ Under the circumstances Cantacuzenus had to maintain close relations with the Ottomans, the only source from which he could expect substantial military aid; it was this situation that led to the Turkish settlements in Europe.

While the Turks of Aydia were effectively neutralized by the capture of the castle in Smyrna (Izmir), which the pope had decided to keep as a check upon them, the Ottoman Turks were becoming more and more involved in Balkan affairs, especially after they had firmly established themselves in Karasi, facing Thrace.⁷ Uzun's death in the spring of 1348 led to Aydia's decline as a threat to the Latins, but it also served to strengthen the position of the Ottomans, bringing under their banner an increasing number of ghazis. The leaders of the ghazis in Karasi appear to have collaborated with the Ottomans to bring about the union of the two states, and the Ottoman conquests in Thrace in the next decade were to be basically the work of ghazis from Karai.

Immediately after the first conquest in Karasi, the area was made into an Ottoman *uj* (frontier) sanjak with İpsa (Pogae) as its center, under the leadership of Süleiman Paşa, an ardent advocate of frontier war (ghaza), who was to become responsible for the shaping of Ottoman western policy. The new frontier sanjak had important sea bases at Lampasacut (Lapseki), Aydinlik (near Cynosus), and Kemer (Keramides?), which from Byzantine times had sheltered corsairs who preyed on the merchant ships traveling between the Dardanelles and the Bosphorus. In 1352 the principal Ottoman army was to embark from Kemer for their conquest of the isthmus of the Gallipoli peninsula.

5. See Raymond J. Lemay, "Antiochian grecs auprès du Pape Clément VI (1342)," in *Orléans Christiana periodica*, XX (1953), 178-196; Lemay, *L'Eurasie*, pp. 224-228; Setton, *The Papacy and the Levant*, I, 302-303. Cf. Denis Constantinides, "Byzantium and the Crusades, 1281-1354," in volume III of the present work, pp. 63-65.

6. Iuvenciu, *Geschichte der Serben*, I, 386-387, 396; Thiers, *Résumé*, I, no. 169.

7. Lemay, *L'Eurasie*, pp. 219-222. The area around Pergamon (Berghama) and Troy itself (the Dardanelles appears to have been organized as a frontier sanjak under a branch of the Karai dynasty, first under Yakublu Beg and then under Süleiman Beg.

We cannot tell with certainty which of the Turkish groups active in Thrace in this period came from the Ottoman dominions. On two occasions Byzantine historians speak specifically of Ottoman armies sent over to Thrace: the first came shortly after the meeting of Orkhan with Cantacuzenus at Scutari (Üsküdar) in 1346, when Suleiman Pasha, at the head of an army of ten thousand, was sent to Thrace against the Serbs. Evidently the Ottoman soldiery engaged rather in the usual booty raids, and soon returned home to Anatolia. In 1350, when Stephen Dushan threatened Thessalonica, a second large Ottoman army, reportedly twenty thousand in number, again under Suleiman Pasha, proceeded along the Aegean coast of Thrace together with the Byzantine forces under Matthew Cantacuzenus, son of John VI, while John VI Cantacuzenus and co-emperor John V Palaeologus sailed by sea to Thessalonica. Before the armies reached their objective, however, Orkhan stated that he was threatened by Turkish emirs, his neighbors in Anatolia, and called Suleiman back; after a raid into Bulgaria, the latter returned.

A crisis parallel to that of Byzantium also helped to make possible the Ottoman passage into Europe: the conflict between Genoa and Venice over the Byzantine heritage in the eastern Aegean. The Venetian-Genoese war (1350-1353), which caused the dissolution of the anti-Turkish coalition in the Aegean, gave rise to a new power alignment in the area. While the Venetians moved closer to Cantacuzenus and king Peter IV of Aragon-Catalonia (1336-1387) and his Catalans in the Levant, the Genoese allied themselves with the leading Turkish emirs, Kiliç (Kilic) Beg of Aydın and the Ottoman Orkhan. During the war the Turkish emirs provided the Genoese not only with badly needed provisions but also with military aid. Cantacuzenus, always hoping that Byzantine sovereignty might be reestablished in Chios and the two Phocaean, then in Genoese hands, actually concluded a treaty of alliance with Venice in May 1351. Venice promised to mediate between the emperor and Stephen Dushan.

Both the Venetians and the Genoese sought the alliance of the Ottomans in this all-out war for the control of the waterways to the Black Sea. The Ottomans controlled the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus, and their aid to Pera was of crucial importance. Despite the solicitations of the Venetians and Cantacuzenus, the Ottomans chose to support the Genoese, a logical policy for them to follow since the Venetians were known to be the principal contender against Turkish westward expansion in this period, while the Genoese showed themselves to be generally cooperative. Apparently the Genoese-Ottoman treaty was the first treaty concluded between the Ottomans and a western nation.

(The document itself is not extant, and its exact date is not known.) During the war the Ottomans supplied the Genoese with one thousand archers, who were stationed at Pera and on the Genoese ships.¹

The Ottomans apparently took part in the defense of Pera in the summer of 1351, when, following a surprise attack by the Venetians, the city was besieged by joint Venetian-Byzantine forces. Orkhan himself, at the head of his army, arranged an interview with the Genoese admiral Paganino Doria at Chalcedon to the south of the Bosphorus.² The major clash between the two parties took place on the Bosphorus on February 15, 1352. Judging from a Genoese document of a later date, praising the role Orkhan played on the occasion,³ he must have taken an active part in this crucial battle between the Genoese armada under Doria and the allied fleets of Venice and Aragon. Abandoned by his allies and surrounded in Constantinople by victorious Ottoman and Genoese forces, Cantacuzenus had to accept a treaty of peace with Doria, signed May 6, 1352, which forbade the use of Greek territories or seamen by the Venetians against the Genoese, and recognized the Genoese possession of Pera within its new limits.⁴

Thanks to Genoese assistance, the Ottomans were provided with a safe means of crossing the Straits whenever they wished, aboard Genoese ships, while the Genoese in turn secured Ottoman protection for Pera and commercial privileges within Ottoman dominions. A first example of this cooperation occurred in 1352 when the Ottoman forces under Süleiman and his brother Khalil were ferried across the Bosphorus on Genoese ships for raids into Greek territories in Thrace.⁵ Commercial ties between Pera and Bursa (Brusa) would be of considerable benefit to the development of both cities. Bursa was soon to become a terminus for caravans bringing silk from Iran, and the silk trade was one of the sources of Pera's renewed prosperity. Pera, in turn, was to be the Ottomans' market for obtaining western commodities, principally the fine woolsens much in demand in the Near East.

In 1352 the Ottomans were still at war with Byzantium. Their collaboration with the Genoese in the siege of Constantinople, coupled with the invasion of Thrace by an Ottoman army under Süleiman, must

1. Canalis Marinos, "Le Relations des Génois, Florentins, Vénitiens et Turcs," *Ann. della Società degli studi storici periti*, XXVIII (ser. 3, 5, 1896), 709-713, cited by Jorga, *Geographie*, I, 192, Hirsch, in Reynaud, 5, 508.

2. Jorga, "L'union de Grèce et l'Orient et l'émancipation des Turcs en Europe," *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XV (1906), 211.

3. Luigi T. Belgrano, "Prima serie di documenti riguardanti la colonia di Pera," *Ann. della Società degli studi storici periti*, XXII (1877-1884), 123, 128, cited by Hirsch, in Reynaud, 5, 507.

4. Documents published by Sack, *Bella Colonia dei genovesi in Galata*, II, 216.

5. Jorga, *Geographie*, 5, 192.

have been decisive in inducing Cantacuzenus to abandon his western allies. He hastened to make peace with the Ottomans, still with the idea that he could use them as he had Umur's ghazis, to further his own interests in protecting the empire against Stephen Dushan and in replacing the Palaeologus on the Byzantine throne. Dushan, in turn, chose to protect John V Palaeologus (1340/1393) in the civil war which broke out again in Thrace in the summer of 1352 and lasted through the summer of 1356. Allied to the Venetians in return for a promise to relinquish the island of Tenedos, John V mobilized a Serbian-Bulgarian army in Demotica to set out against Matthew Cantacuzenus in Adrianople. Suddenly an Ottoman army of ten thousand men under Suleiman arrived to oppose the allied army, and inflicted a crushing defeat on it at Pythion in October 1352.¹³ This was the first Ottoman victory over the Serbs, who were to be until 1389 the major contenders against Ottoman expansion into the Balkans.

John V Palaeologus fled, and took shelter at Tenedos under Venetian protection, finally leaving Cantacuzenus free to claim the throne. Suleiman then entered Adrianople as an ally of Cantacuzenus, which the Ottoman epic fancies as the first "conquest" of the city by the Ottomans. Suleiman returned home after this meeting, but he left behind a small Turkish force that took up winter quarters in a site reportedly assigned by Cantacuzenus, at Tzympe (Jibla), a small fortress on the coast north of Gallipoli. As a bridgehead on the western shore of the Marmara sea, the occupation of Tzympe was important as a harbinger of the Turkish settlement in Europe to come.

The historian Nicephorus Gregoras asserted that Cantacuzenus himself gave the Turks the fortress, and that they lived in Tzympe with their families under a qadi with their own mosque, forming a military colony in the pay of Cantacuzenus.¹⁴ The latter, in reply, tried to absolve himself of responsibility for the incident by saying that the fortress was taken by the Ottoman Turks during the events of 1351-1352.¹⁵ In Ottoman tradition Tzympe was captured by surprise by a small group (seventy men) with the aid of a native Greek.¹⁶ However that may be,

13. *Istehak*, loc. cit. The Ottoman tradition on Suleiman's victory over the Serbs is to be found in *Yusein-Eddil* (Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS. Marsh 313), fols. 21-22, on this source see Ismail, "The Rise of Ottoman Historiography," pp. 152-167.

14. *Iorga*, *Constantinople*, II, p. 194.

15. *Iorga*, "Lettres," p. 212. The Venetian accusation that the Genoese with two small ships took the Turks across the Straits, and that they were responsible for their settlement in Europe (Hoyk, op. cit., II, 44-45) must have some truth in it. We know that Suleiman's forces were transported to Thrace by the Genoese in 1351.

16. *Siirüshah-i Erzurü*, ed. Tinnar (Istanbul, 1908), p. 12.

once settled in Trympe¹⁷ Eje Beg, accompanied by Melik Beg, the converted son of Azen, Greek lord of Gallipoli, formed fresh forces amounting in a few days to two thousand men from the Anatolian to the European coast on Greek ships found in the port of Trympe. Azen, failing to overcome them, shut himself in his castle. In Biga Süleiman Paşa put the new frontier thus established around Trympe under the command of Eje Beg, who, it seems, had formulated the original plan to organize the ghazis under the protection of the Ottoman state into a permanent settlement on the European side of the Dardanelles.¹⁸

A new and decisive development in the settlement of Turks in Thrace was, according to the Ottoman sources, the transfer under Süleiman Paşa himself of a regular army, three thousand in number, by ship from Kemer to Kosta-Dere, a valley near Trympe that led up to the Hexamilion on the heights dominating the isthmus of the Gallipoli peninsula. Süleiman set up headquarters at Boleyir on the heights of the Isthmus and organized his ghazis into two fronts, one against Gallipoli under Eje Beg and Öküz Fâdî, the other against Thrace under Halîl İlbeg and Evrenos (Evreniz), all from Karai. Gallipoli was put under constant pressure by the ghazis, who also tried to cut off its sea communications.¹⁹ In the north Süleiman Paşa succeeded by 1354 in subduing the area between Saros bay and Megah-Ağorta (Mihal-Kara), thus penetrating deep into Thrace.

Determined to maintain themselves in Thrace, the Ottomans pursued their traditional policy of *istimlak*, whereby they tried to win over the native population through friendly and conciliatory treatment, while deporting to Anatolia any Greek military elements capable of organizing resistance.

The Turkish settlement in Thrace caused consternation in Byzantium, but the situation was militarily hopeless. The number of Byzan-

17. According to Şevket Çelebioğlu, p. 83, the first fortress conquered by the Ottomans in Thrace was not Trympe but Akhis-Burgaz. A village by the name of Akhis-Burgaz in the Kosta-Dere area near Gallipoli is mentioned in the Ottoman survey books of Gallipoli dated 1475 (İstanbul, Beşiktaş Library, Cevdet no. 61-774, in the *Âşâh Paşa* which became, *op. cit.*, p. 124) Akhis, Limon or Akhis-Burgaz became the target of Ottoman attacks, but only after the conquest of Field (Thrace). The Ottomans, he says, after coming to Field, burned the ships lying at Akhis-Limon.

18. The Ottoman tradition ascribes the original idea to the Ottoman leaders, Süleiman or (more likely) Orkhan. Allegedly Eje Beg was Süleiman or Biga, or Süleiman met his father, Orkhan, at Bursa, and got the idea for a permanent conquest of Thrace. These forms were evidently later additions intended to ascribe the original idea to the Ottoman hero.

19. They let no ships arrive or disembark at Gallipoli (*Âşâh Paşa-nâme*, *op. cit.*, p. 124).

time and Catalan soldiers employed by the empire had greatly diminished, as Cantacuzenus himself admitted, as a result of the recent civil war, so the emperor had for some time been dependent on the Turkish troops sent by his son-in-law Orkhan. The only means left to him to exert pressure on Suleiman were diplomatic, through Orkhan. It appears that Orkhan and the emperor finally signed a treaty providing for the evacuation of the area occupied in Thrace in return for the payment to Suleiman of ten thousand gold pieces.²⁰

The earthquake of March 2, 1354, which demolished the walls of Gallipoli and other fortifications in the area, completely altered the situation. Exposed to the raids of the surrounding Turks, most of the towns' population either took shelter in the few fortified places still left standing or fled to Constantinople by sea. The ghazis immediately took possession of Gallipoli and other abandoned sites. The Ottoman tradition says that on this occasion "since there were innumerable 'Franks' (Catalan mercenaries?) in Gallipoli, it was impossible to capture it. There was nothing more for the ghazis to do but pray for its fall. And then, early one morning the walls suddenly collapsed. Its commander left in a ship."

Suleiman was in his capital, Egea, in Anatolia, when the earthquake occurred. He hurried quickly to Gallipoli and took steps to secure the Turkish presence in the newly occupied places, repairing fortifications and bringing more ghazis and whole colonies of settlers from Anatolia to settle in and reinforce the defenses of the abandoned towns.²¹ While he was there, he led his ghazis on a raid for booty into Bulgaria, though sparing Byzantine lands out of respect, apparently, for the recent peace treaty with the emperor.

In the face of Cantacuzenus's protest to Orkhan that Suleiman's occupation of Byzantine cities was against the terms of their peace treaty, Suleiman replied that he had not taken them by force but had simply occupied some abandoned towns. It appears that there was quite a lengthy exchange of views before Orkhan, in exchange for forty thousand gold pieces, agreed to try to persuade his son to heed the emperor's demands. For Cantacuzenus this was a critical issue, upon which his very survival on the Byzantine throne depended, as he was accused by his opponents of "delivering the empire and the Christians into the hands of the Turks".²² The people of Constantinople were in a state

²⁰ Cantacuzenus, *op. cit.*, III, 343, refers repeatedly to such a treaty.

²¹ On this point *'Asiatic Archaeology, loc. cit.*, and Cantacuzenus, *loc. cit.*, concern not in particular the important document of *Politeuomeni-Sulchani, Askercheri*, pp. 137-140.

²² Nicephorus Gregoras, *Byzantine History*, II, ed. Scholten (CNSP, Bonn, 1898, 2nd rev. ed., by Ingeborg Bethler (Götting, 1875), p. 324.

of great agitation, anticipating that the Turks might even attack the city, when on November 22, 1354, John V Palaeologus suddenly appeared from his exile on Thessos. In the face of the threatening mobs of the city, Cantacuzenus had no recourse but to resign.

With the fall of Cantacuzenus, Byzantine politics took on a more belligerent orientation, the first stage of which, it was believed, ought to be the resumption of negotiations with pope Innocent VI (1352-1362) for a crusade against the Turks, in exchange for the union of the churches. As early as December 20, 1355, John V Palaeologus, formally promising the union of the churches, always a precondition for papal coöperation, asked for immediate military aid (five galleys and fifteen transport ships with five hundred horse and a thousand footmen within six months), and the preparation of a large-scale crusade against the Turks.²³ That the emperor was in a desperate position was further shown by his promise to send his son Manuel as a hostage to the pope's court at Avignon. At this point, however, it was difficult for the pope even to secure money to maintain the defenses of Smyrna, always his primary concern.

In the summer of 1356, letters sent by the pope to Venice, Genoa, Cyprus, and the Hospitallers asking them to give military aid to the emperor were left unanswered. Even Venice, which was expected to be the most concerned about the Ottoman menace to Byzantium, remained passive. The Ottoman occupation of Gallipoli coincided first with Venice's war against Genoa, and then—despite the efforts of Peter Thomas, the papal nuncio, to bring about peace, while in Buda on his way to Constantinople in 1356—with resumption of the war between Venice and Hungary in April 1357. It is true that the Venetian barle in Constantinople warned his government in time about the imminent danger created by the Ottoman settlement in Thrace. As early as 1354, during the panic caused by the news that Gallipoli had fallen, the barle had written that the Greeks of Constantinople thought they had best put themselves under the protection of a strong Christian government such as Venice, Hungary, or Serbia.²⁴ The short-sighted and avaricious senate, however, was interested not in considering any steps to be taken against the Ottomans, but rather in forcing the emperor to pay heavy interest on its loans and to strengthen the existing ruinous trade privileges.

23. Hasek, *Un Empereur de Byzance à Rome*, pp. 29-36, see also Setton, *The Papacy*, I, 225-226.

24. Idem, "Lettres," pp. 277-280; later published by Hasek, *Geschichte der Bulgaren*, p. 369. The barle was Matthew Taron.

Although Peter Thomas's mission to Constantinople as the pope's nuncio, which lasted from the end of May to November 1357, did not produce the results hoped for by both sides, it is significant nevertheless as the first sign of papal awareness of the immediacy of the Ottoman threat to Byzantium. Following Peter Thomas's mission the pope began to mention Romania and Constantinople side by side with Smyrna as areas that had to be defended against the Turks. It is safe to say that it was at this time that western Europe began to see the Ottomans as the principal enemies of Christendom, and to make Gallipoli one of the principal targets of crusading activities.

When Peter Thomas arrived in Constantinople in the spring of 1357, he found that the emperor was away on campaign against the Ottomans, who had advanced rapidly through Thrace since the fall of Gallipoli in March 1354. As both Byzantine and Ottoman sources account, immediately following the earthquake and subsequent capture of Gallipoli Süleiman busied himself in creating a strong Turkish bridgehead there. One of the earliest Ottoman traditions says: '[after the capture of Gallipoli] Süleiman sent word to his father: 'Now a great number of people of the Islamic faith are needed here so that the conquered fortresses can be settled and the country around them be made to flourish. We need also many *ghazî yoldaş* (ghazi companions) to garrison and reinforce the conquered fortresses.' Orkhan agreed with the proposal. First they deported over to Rumelia the Arab nomads who had arrived in Karai. These remained for some time in the area around Gallipoli . . . [while Süleiman made further conquests in Thrace]. Every day new immigrants came over from Karai. Settling down, these commenced ghazi activities. Briefly speaking, Islam was so strengthened that whenever they attacked, the infidels were unable to resist them.'²³

The capture by Phocaean corsairs of prince Khalil, the eleven-year-old son of Orkhan, in the early summer of 1357,²⁴ and the sudden death of Süleiman soon afterward, put Orkhan in a difficult position, compelling him to come to an agreement with John V, as it was only through him that Orkhan could hope to secure the release of his son from captivity. From Gregory's detailed account of the event it becomes clear that the agreement involved Orkhan's promise to cease all aggression against Byzantine territory, to stop any aid to Matthew Cantacuzenus in Thrace, to reimburse all expenses incurred in the outfitting of ships to be sent against the Phocaens, and to cancel the

23 'Akkik Paşa-nâmâ, op. cit., p. 124, Istanbul, 'Arab Canal Dönem-i Western Anadolu in the Fifteenth Century,' *Asiatic Studies* (Istanbul), X (1961), 226-270.

24 Between early June and July, not John's issue in Sarissa, *The Papacy*, I, 222.

outstanding debts of the emperor.²⁷ It appears that John V even hoped to recover the territory occupied by the Ottomans in Thrace, since the aggressive Suleiman was now dead. Thus in his answer to the pope's letter dated July 21, 1357, the emperor was able to communicate to Innocent VI some signs of success over his enemies and high hopes for the future.²⁸ For the ghazis the agreement, signed under duress, was a great sacrifice. It meant the cessation of warfare and the abandonment of the Turks who had recently settled in Thrace.

After his rescue of Khalil from the captives in the early summer of 1358,²⁹ John V conceived a plan that would maintain peace with the Ottomans. Following the example of Cantacuzenus, he secured Orkhan's agreement to the engagement of his daughter Irene, then almost ten years old, to the Ottoman prince in Constantinople. He then returned Khalil to his father at Nicomedia. Furthermore, he had the promise of the old Orkhan that Khalil was to succeed him on the throne at his death. After Suleiman's death prince Murad, with his tutor Lala Shahin, took his place in Gallipoli as frontier lord. Khalil, in his apportionment in Nicaea, died soon afterward, in 1359.

The Ottoman tradition³⁰ is important for the historian of the crusades since it seems to corroborate a disputed account given by Philip of Mézières, the biographer of Peter Thomas, on the crusaders' campaign against the Ottomans in 1359. Back in Constantinople in the autumn of 1359 as the pope's apostolic legate in the east, Peter Thomas had brought with him a small crusading force composed of Hospitaliers, Venetians, Genoese, and English soldiers on Venetian galleys. He found John V engaged in hostilities with the Ottomans, Khalil having by that time returned home, and perhaps died. According to Philip the crusaders, joined by Greek forces, captured and burned Lampuscu, an Ottoman transit port on the Asiatic side of the Dardanelles. During their return to their ships they were attacked by Turks waiting in ambush. Fleeing in disorder with the legate at their head, the Christians barely escaped a massacre.

Turkish tradition mentions an engagement on the plain adjoining

27 Ostrogorsky, "Byzanz, das Imperium des Orients usw.," *Zentralblatt für Bibliothekswissenschaft*, V (1912), 49-50.

28 Setton, *The Papacy*, I, 328.

29 See Parson, *Constantinople*, pp. 296-305 largely. "Lament," p. 225, but the date gives 1356, in error.

30 *Asiyyun-nâm*, *Iskânât-i Âl-i Orkhan*, ed. *Genie de die alt-orientalischen archaischen Chroniken* . . . I (Berlin, 1922), 18, a ghazî tradition in Orkhan, *Asiyyun-nâm-i Orkhan*, ed. Franz Balkasir (Hamburg, 1925), p. 19, states Uzun Paşa encouraged Suleiman not to abandon his conquest in Europe.

Saros bay on the Aegean, and gives the impression that it occurred shortly after the death of Suleiman in 1352. At that time the Byzantines might have made a show of force there just to intimidate (he ghazis into evacuating. But it is also plausible that in 1359 the crusaders made an attack at Saros bay as well as at Lampsaqus. At any rate, this was the first Ottoman engagement with a crusading force, and seems to show that Philip's account is in general reliable.

A vigorous Ottoman onslaught started in Thrace under the leadership of prince Murad and his tutor Lala Shahin in 1359. Matthew Villani reports³¹ that in 1359 Turks appeared before the walls of Constantinople, the first Ottoman threat against the imperial capital. He may have been referring to an event that is described in *The Anonymous Ottoman Chronicles*³² as Murad's surrounding a fortress "near Istanbul" in A.H. 761 (October 23, 1359–October 13, 1360).³³ The following year the Ottoman army systematically occupied the fortresses on the two main roads between Constantinople and Adrianople, isolating the latter city and finally forcing it to surrender in the early spring of 1361.³⁴ To facilitate their rapid occupation of Thrace and its capital Adrianople, the Ottomans appear to have shrewdly made Matthew Cantacuzenus's cause their own, claiming that they were acting to protect the rights of the house of Cantacuzenus in the district of Adrianople, from which he had been driven out. The Ottoman ruler seems to have been exploiting his traditional role as a "supporter" of the rights of Cantacuzenus, his brother-in-law, and it would seem that there were still partisans of the Cantacuzeni in the region.

In connection with the Ottoman offensive between 1359 and 1361, the report of a conspiracy between Lala Shahin and the partisans of Cantacuzenus against John V's life should be mentioned. Rumors of the conspiracy reached Italy at the beginning of 1360, with emphasis on the role played by the Ottomans, who were suspected of desiring through it to lay hands on the imperial city.³⁵ Orkhan died in 1362, and was succeeded by his son Murad I (1362–1389).

31. Matthew Villani, "Turchia," *MSA*, XIV (Milan, 1729), 549–550. He also tells us that in 1356 the Hospitallers of Rhodes destroyed a Turkish fleet of 27 vessels returning from a raid on the Thracian coast.

32. See note 30.

33. See İnalcık, "The Conquest of Edirne," in *The Ottoman Empire: Conquest, Organization and Economy* (London, 1978), no. 111, p. 275.

34. *Ibid.*, pp. 175–179. İbrahim İnalcık, "La Conquête d'Adrianople par les Turcs," *Revue d'histoire*, I (Paris, 1962), 431–441, assumes that Hacı İsmail and other frontier begs in Thrace acted independently of the Ottomans that conquered Adrianople about 1360.

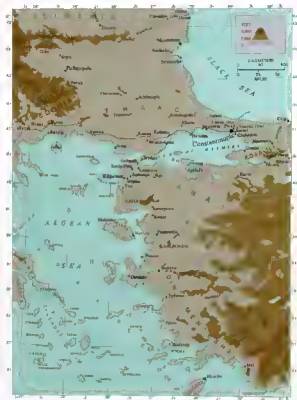
35. See Paret, *Contestations*, pp. 396–398; Inalcık, "Lalies," pp. 120–121.







3. Coastal Erosion



Geographic Institute, Copenhagen

3. The Straits and the Aegean



10° 20° 30° 40°





9. The East and the Levant in 1300



11 The Ottoman Empire, 1453-1922



12. Manganese and Medicine in the Thompsons' Century



B. Ottoman Conquests and the Crusade, 1361-1421

In the papal declarations of the second half of the fourteenth century propaganda for the crusade began to be formulated as a defensive struggle to save Europe from the Turks. But actually this meant, at this period, to protect the Latin possessions and interests in Greece and the Aegean Sea against the growing Turkish threat. Also it meant to save Byzantium and eastern Christendom, since the aid was expected to entail the submission of the Greek church to Rome, with resulting advantages for the papacy's position in the west. Throughout the period 1300-1453, however, the campaigns against the Turks turned into full-fledged crusades only when they coincided with the interests of the Venetian colonial empire in the Levant or those of Hungary for its sphere of influence in the Balkans. For Venice it was vital to keep its control over the coasts and islands strategically important for its sea communications with the Levant: Dalmatia, Albania, the Ionian islands, the Morea, and the Aegean, while Hungary under the Angevin king Louis I "the Great" (1342-1382) embarked upon building an empire from the Adriatic to the Black Sea with complete control of the Danubian countries: Dalmatia, Serbia, Bosnia, Wallachia, and Moldavia.

It is therefore important for the historian of the crusades to find out at what particular times these two great powers found the Ottomans a major threat to their interests, and, in the face of this challenge, how they intensified their activities to establish their own control in the threatened areas and consequently tried to mobilize the forces of Christian Europe in "crusades". In the following pages we shall focus our attention on these points.

During the Ottoman expansion in the Balkans the Serbs, Venetians, and Hungarians had to deal first with the frontier begs, and when these Christian states made a major attempt at driving them away they were faced with the Ottoman army under the sultan, the phaos of the ghazis. The Ottoman military frontier zones in the Balkans moved forward in successive waves: first, from 1354 to 1361, as far as the Maritsa river; second, from 1361 to 1383, up to the Balkan mountain range, to Sredna Gora in the north and to the Strymon (Struma) river in the south; third, from 1383 to 1393, in the Dobruja, along the Danube, and in the Skopje-Kosovo area; and fourth, from 1393 to 1454, in Albania, Thessaly, upper Serbia, and Vidin. At each shift of the mili-

lary frontier the hinterland came under the direct rule of the Ottoman central government. It was only under Mehmed II (1451-1481) that the Morra, Serbia, and Bosnia would be annexed to the Ottoman empire, making the Balkans south of the Danube a compact Ottoman territory with the exception of some ports or strongholds still under Venetian or Hungarian control. However, it was only with the conquests of Bayazid I "the Thunderbolt" (1389-1402), who extended the Ottoman boundaries to the Danube in the north, Skopje and northern Albania in the west, and Thessaly in the south, that Hungary and Venice felt, for the first time, the Ottoman threat to their zones of interest as an imminent danger.

In the case of Venice it should be pointed out that as a result of Bayazid's annexation of the maritime beyliks of western Anatolia in 1389-1390 the Ottomans had become a threatening sea power in the Aegean, and Bayazid challenged the Venetians on the sea and the Straits by converting Gallipoli into a fortified arsenal and naval base on the Dardanelles and by building a castle, Anadolu-Hisar, on the Bosphorus. It was these developments that finally led to the crusade of Nicopolis in 1396.

Hungarian designs on the Balkans go back to the Angevin king Louis I "the Great" (1342-1382), who benefited in the period 1362-1364 from the Ottoman advance into Bulgaria by extending his sway over the lands south to the Danube. The Byzantine emperor John V Palaeologus saw Hungary as a powerful ally in his plans to recapture Anchialus (Pomorie) and Mesembria (Nesebar) on the Black Sea from the Bulgarians and to drive the Turks out of Europe. In 1365 Hungarian and Byzantine envoys were at the papal court in Avignon to promote a crusade against the Ottomans, and, in his bull of January 22, 1366, pope Urban V (1362-1370) declared a crusade the avowed purpose of which was the expulsion of the Turks from Europe. In the winter of 1365-1366 the emperor himself made a surprise visit to Buda, the Hungarian capital, to induce Louis to move.¹⁶

In the face of the Hungarian-Byzantine threat, Bulgarians saw no alternative but to make peace and an alliance with the Ottomans. The latter supplied tsar John Alexander (1331-1371) with forces or let him use Turkish mercenaries on the Danube against the Hungarians, and on the Black Sea coasts against the Byzantines in the period 1365-1367.

16. Ostrogorsky, *op. cit.*, pp. 471-482; see the important study by Paul Hiley, "The Turkish Crusade . . ." in *Bulgarian Studies as Interdisciplinary Discipline*, VII-VIII (1972), 41-112. See also, *The Papacy*, I, 286-291.

In response to the pope's call to a crusade the count of Savoy, Amadeo VI, a cousin of the Byzantine emperor, arrived with a crusading fleet of twenty galleys (stronger than previously thought by historians)¹⁷ at the Dardanelles. He captured Gallipoli from the Ottomans late in August 1366; then, passing to the Black Sea, he took Anchialus and Mesembria from the Bulgarians for the Byzantines in October, and finally laid siege to Varna, though still awaiting the promised crusader army of the Hungarian king. The crusading plan to go to the aid of the Byzantines was eventually postponed, and in 1367 Ottoman forces appeared before Sopotoli, which had been conquered by Amadeo VI in the previous year. In 1367 the Bulgarians, with the support of Ottoman forces, also threatened the Hungarians in Vidin, and the Hungarian king had to ask the coöperation of the Wallachian vojvode Vlad I (ca. 1360-1372) against them.¹⁸ By then the Byzantines had become more apprehensive of Louis's crusading plans than of the Turks. The Angevin king's plans included the conversion to Catholicism of the Orthodox peoples of the Balkans and the capture of Constantinople. The first move by Louis was the subjection of the Bulgarians to his sovereignty, and the establishment of his control in the Vidin area. In 1366 he had created the banat of "Bulgaria", which included Vidin, Orshova, Mühlenbach (Sebest), and Temesvár.¹⁹ In April 1367 the Byzantine emperor hastily made peace with the Bulgarian tsar John Alexander, which displeased Louis. Hungarian possession of Vidin did not last long, and Louis's crusade project remained only a dream.

It is not correct that after the conquest of Adrianople (Edirne) in 1361 Murad, then still only a prince, had made it the capital city of the Ottoman state. Upon the death of his father Orkhan in March 1362 Murad I had hurriedly come to Bursa (the capital until 1402), and had then moved to defend the Ankara area against the Anatolian emirs of Eretna and Karaman. Lala Shahan, commander-in-chief of the Ottoman forces in Rumelia, in coöperation with the frontier beys Evrenos and Hajji-İlbeğ, was responsible for the Ottoman activities in Europe into the 1370's. Because of the fall of Gallipoli in 1366 and the constant threat from the Byzantine stronghold of Pegae (Kara Hisar) on the southern Marmara coast, Murad found it risky to cross over to Europe before 1373. Thus, despite initial advances in the Maritsa valley and toward the Serbian principality of Srems in the south, the

17. Setton, *The Papacy*, I, 286.

18. Jorga, *Gazetier*, I, 230-231; for the oft-repeated legend of Louis IX's crusade against the Ottomans see Olinaple I. Brătianu, "L'expédition de Louis IX de Hongrie contre le prince de Valachie Radu I. Basarab," *Revue Historique de l'est-est européen*, II (1925), 4-6.

19. Huber, "Ludwig I. von Ungarn," p. 32.

Ottoman begs remained in general on the defensive. This situation also explains why they chose cooperation with the Bulgarian tsar and why the Byzantines embarked upon feverish efforts to drive the Turks out of Thrace in the period 1364-1371. These Byzantine activities had been preceded by contact through the patriarch Calistus with the despot John Ugljesha, prince of Serbia, in 1363-1364, and by intense Byzantine diplomatic activity in the courts of the pope and the Hungarian king to promote a crusade in 1365-1366; they were highlighted by John V Palaeologus's visit to Italy and conversion to Latin Catholicism in Rome in 1369.

A Serbian army under Ugljesha and his brother Vukashin attempted to take Adrianople in 1371. The Ottoman frontier forces inflicted a crushing defeat on the Serbs by a surprise night attack at Chernomen on September 26, killing both brothers. "With the defeat of Maritsa (Chernomen) began the Turkish domination over the southern Slav."⁴⁰ Turkish raiders overran Macedonia and invaded as far as Thessaly and Albania.⁴¹ An interesting document⁴² granting protection and exemption from taxes to the monks of the monastery of Saint John Prodrome near Serres attests to the Ottoman influence in Macedonia in 1372/1373. According to the early Ottoman traditiones Murad I, on his way to the Dardanelles to support the ghazis who had informed him of the Serbian attack on Adrianople, had first to stop and reduce Pegasus, which threatened his retreat.⁴³ Thus it can be said that in 1371 the Byzantine-Serbian alliance was a fact, and while the frontier begs of Rumelia had to meet the Serbian army, Murad had to fight the Byzantines at Pegasus.

The Ottoman victory at Chernomen seems to have caused alarm at the threat of an Ottoman invasion of Italy. Exaggerated rumors spread about Ottoman plans for conquering Albania and the ports on the Adriatic.⁴⁴ The pope invited France, England, and Flanders to unite for a crusade, and wanted the Christian rulers in the Levant, including the Byzantine emperor, to send delegates to a meeting at Thebes to discuss joint action against the Ottomans, but no such meeting took place.

King Louis of Hungary, however, showed his concern by taking an

40. Jireček, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 428; Haliczki, *Empireen*, pp. 188-212.

41. Dölger, "La Campagne turque," *Byzantinistische Arbeiten*, loc. cit.

42. Elizabeth A. Zachariadou, "Early Ottoman Documents of the Prodrome Monastery (Serres)," *Byzantio-Byzantinica*, XXVIII (1990), 1-12.

43. A close critical examination of the early Ottoman traditiones has not yet been done; see Haliczki in *Historians of the Middle East*, pp. 132-147.

44. Setton, *The Papacy*, I, 328-329.

only to go on a crusade the following year, and asked the Venetians and Ragusans to build galleys for him. But his intentions were of an other nature. The Ottoman victory at Chernomen and ensuing raids served Louis's old plans to strengthen Hungarian control over the Danubian lands. Louis's "crusade" was actually one against Orthodox "schismatic" peoples of Serbia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria. By May of 1356, following the dismemberment of Stephen Dushan's empire, Louis had already declared a crusade against "schismatics".⁴⁵ Under the king's protection the Franciscans were zealously pursuing their conversion efforts in the Balkans. This policy totally alienated the Orthodox population and princes in the Balkans from Hungary, and prepared the way for the Ottomans, who often appeared with their policy of *irtimâler* or "reconciliation" as protectors of the Orthodox church and local princes. Actually the Hungarians and Turks, pressing the Slavic nations from north and south, were helping each other's advance until the day they faced each other. However, in 1373 Murad at the request of the Venetian senate sent a force of 5,000 mercenaries against the Hungarians in Dalmatia.⁴⁶

After Chernomen the Serbian princes in Macedonia—Mark Kraljević, the despot Dragash Đukanović, and his brother Constantine—agreed to pay tribute and to serve in the Ottoman army. Serbia came back under Greek rule under Manuel Palaeologus, the future emperor, but the frontier beg Evrenos established a march there under Delo Balaban, who carried on *ghazi* warfare against Manuel. Not only the Serbian princes of Macedonia and the new Bulgarians near Shishman, but also emperor John V after his return from Italy (October 28, 1371), had to recognize Murad's suzerainty after Chernomen.⁴⁷ The emperor's visit to Italy and his conversion to Catholicism had failed to bring about a naval crusade, or secure the coöperation of Hungary, which was considered the only land power capable of driving the Turks back to Anatolia. By the time of John V's visit to Europe the Ottomans seem to have supported an anti-western faction in Byzantium, with Andronicus IV, the ambitious son of the emperor, at its head. From then on the Ottoman ruler, as suzerain of the Byzantine emperor, shrewdly manipulated and profited from disputes for power in the Palaeologian family, which erupted as civil wars in 1373, 1376-1379, and 1390.

45 Heller, "Lustig I was Ungarn," p. 22.

46 *RPSS*, LVII (1748), col. 176, cited by Herbert A. Gibbons, *The Foundation of the Ottoman Empire: a History of the Osmanli* (1280-1481) (Oxford, 1916), p. 149; for early relations between Murad I and Venice see Thiers, *Négoties*, I, no. 423 (1365).

47 Charnick, "The Serbs among the Palaeologi and the Ottoman Turks," p. 292.

Murad also exploited the fierce rivalry between the Venetians and the Genoese for possession of Thessalonica in the war of Chioggia, 1378-1381. In October 1376, when Andronicus promised Thessalonica, key to the Dardanelles, to the Genoese, Venice occupied the island. Andronicus captured Constantinople and the Byzantine throne with Ottoman and Genoese support. At the beginning of 1377 he delivered Gallipoli to the Ottomans after ten years of Byzantine possession. Those Byzantines favoring the western alliance and a crusade were against the surrender of Gallipoli, but the populace and senate approved Andronicus's decision. As a vassal of Murad, the emperor was not actually in a position to block the passage of the Turks anyhow. In the face of the coöperation among Murad, Andronicus, and the Genoese, Venice took John V's side. But the latter could recover his throne (July 1, 1379) only after promising more favorable tributes of vassalage to Murad—a military contingent for his campaigns, a yearly payment higher than before, and the surrender of Philadelphia, Byzantium's last important possession in inland Anatolia.⁴¹

The rapid Ottoman expansion was considerably assisted by the defeatism and hopelessness among the Greeks and other Balkan nations. In his criticisms, the pro-western Demetrios Cydonios reflects this psychology by attacking those coöperating with the Turks among the high-placed while, he says, the populace, especially city dwellers in the grip of poverty and shortages, also favored Ottoman rule. The church was openly discussing whether the Turks were preferable to the pope or not. On various occasions the Greek church was unwilling to give up its income from land rents to finance military preparations against the Ottomans. Turkish sovereignty was often presented as an inevitable consequence of divine judgment for the sins of the Christians.⁴² The Ottomans steadily promoted the same idea, and in their *istimret* propaganda they promised a peaceful and prosperous existence under their rule; in general, they delivered what they had promised.

From 1373 on, assured of Byzantine coöperation, the sultan could cross with his army over to Europe without fear of being cut off from Anatolia. The Ottomans were encouraged by international developments in this period. Following the death in September 1382 of Louis

⁴¹ *Ibid.*, p. 239; Peter Schoderer, "Der Orientalische Philadelphismus im 14. Jahrhundert (1290-1290)," *Orientalische Christiana periodica*, XXXV (1947), 404-405.

⁴² Doulos, "La Coopération impie," pp. 406-409; Steven Vryonis, *The Decline of Medieval Hellas and the Process of Islamization from the Eleventh through the Fifteenth Century* (Berkeley, Los Angeles, London, 1970), pp. 406-421; Hans Seeck, *La Vie intellectuelle et politique à Byzance sous les premiers Paléologues* (Brussels, 1962).

I of Hungary, who had styled himself "king of Serbia, Dalmatia, and Bulgaria", Hungary was in the grip of an internal struggle for succession. Even the Serbian knez László I (1371-1389) in the Morava valley and Bosnia, who supported the Angevins for the Hungarian throne, was involved in the struggle against Louis's successor Sigismund (1385-1437).¹⁹ At the same time, the rivalry between Venice and Hungary for Dalmatia prevented these two powers from acting jointly against the Ottomans for the whole period until 1394. Also the Genoese-Venetian rivalry over Tenedos and the waterways to the Black Sea, which caused a destructive war between the two republics, neutralized these maritime powers in respect to the Ottomans, who had been allied to the Genoese since 1352. The diplomatic revolution leading to the Hungarian-Venetian alliance would come only after the Ottoman occupation of Bulgaria in 1393.²⁰

By the treaty of June 3, 1387, with Genoa, Murad I renewed commercial privileges granted previously by Orkhan.²¹ Genoese documents of the period show that the Ottomans maintained close commercial relations with the Genoese and were visiting Pera. It also appears that the Ottoman Porte did not openly challenge Venice during Murad's reign (1362-1389). The republic continued to purchase wheat from the Ottoman territories (Thrace?) and even hoped to be allowed by Murad to establish a colony at Sotarik, just across from the rival Genoese colony at Pera, making diplomatic attempts in 1365, 1368, and 1384.²² In brief, the Ottomans succeeded in maintaining the neutrality of the Italian maritime powers which were in control of the Straits during the period when Murad embarked upon his extensive conquests in the Balkans.

In 1383 Murad, crossing the Straits, established his headquarters in Adrianople and sent an army under the grand vizir Khayreddin Paşa and Evrenos to conquer the rich coastal plains and cities of western Thrace between the lower Nestos (Menes) and the Strymon (Struma). The Ottomans employed their navy under Azab Beg to cut off aid from the sea. Kavalla (Christopolis), Drama, Zichoe, and Serres in this region, which had been under blockade for many years, surrendered on terms.²³ The raiders extended their activities as far as Albania and the

19. Jireček, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 272.

20. The best analysis of *Viscontian Diplomacy* of this period is still Schrevelius, *Das orientalische Problem 1361-1408*.

21. Hryciak, in: *Revue de l'Est*, II, 379-380.

22. *Ibid.*

23. The city of Serres was taken only in 1385 but the metropolitan had already come under the control of the Ottoman frontier forces under Gökü Mahmut in 1372. The Ottoman chronicles

Morea, and Thessalonica and other cities were attacked. After the campaign of 1383, however, the center of the new Ottoman march under Evrenos was Serres, and the Strymon river became the new border.

In 1385 a larger campaign in the Balkans was organized under the sultan. The operations were conducted in two directions. An army under the beglerbeg of Rumelia and Evrenos invaded Macedonia and took the plain of Thessalonica; though without success against the city itself, it captured Verres (here or Kara-Ferye in Turkish sources). Monastic surrendered and raiders forayed as far as Charles I Tocco's territory in Epirus.¹⁰

While the army under the beglerbeg was advancing on the ancient Via Egnatia, the main army under Murad himself followed the famous military route in the Maritsa valley toward Danubian Serbia. He was able to cross the historic pass of the Nuhova river and in the autumn of 1385 he captured Nish,¹¹ only fifty miles from knez Lazar's capital, Krushevac. The Serbian ruler saw no alternative to accepting the Ottoman overlordship under the heavy conditions of dispatching a contingent of one thousand men to Murad's campaigns and paying 800 *akke*¹² (about 140 pounds) of silver annually as tribute. At this time Hungary was too involved in its internal struggle over the succession to intervene.

The course of events leading to the historic battle of Kousovo-Polje is described thus in the earliest Ottoman tradition.¹³ In 1385 the Karamanids, taking advantage of the absence of Murad and the Anatolian forces, had invaded the disputed area in Hamid which had been conquered by the Ottomans in 1381. In the summer of 1386 Murad's Ottomans defeated the Karamanid Alideddin Ali in a pitched battle

gates to the disposition; see particularly the conquest of "Black" Cherni in the anonymous *Tredžbi-l'Ali Vrhovca* (Paris, Bibl. nat., MS. suppl. turc 1047), fol. 17'. I variant agree with the interpretation of Balducci-Salviati, "La Prise de Serbie," *Archivum historicum, Societas academica Dacoromana*, IV (1885), 12-24. The date of the final conquest is established by Ostrogorsky, "La Prise de Serbie par les Turcs," *Byzantion*, XXXV (1903), 303-319; and *idem*, *Serbia Olden* (Belgrade, 1902), pp. 156-160.

10 Ottoman conquests east of the late Byzantine empire by Murad and Nuhud confirm the chronology and order of events. *Atika Paşa* adds the anonymous chronicles are more faithful to their original sources. My chronology is based on a critical study of these sources. The date of the conquest of Verres (1383/1384) is confirmed in Christian sources; see *Reich, Geschichte der Serben*, II, 303, and Silberstein, pp. 18, pp. 75-76.

11 Serbian source (see *Reich, Geschichte der Serben*, II, 118) give the date as 1386.

12 10,000 *akke* in Neuber, *Gefährdung der albanesischen Chronik der Medinet Medinet* (Münster, 1887), 1-12; and *idem*, *Die albanesischen Chronik der Medinet Medinet* (Münster, 1887), 1-12.

13 *Reich, op. cit.*, p. 71, and *idem*, *Die albanesischen Chronik der Medinet Medinet* (Münster, 1887), 1-12; for Serbian source see *Reich, Geschichte der Serben*, II, 118; for Ottoman source see *Reich, Geschichte der Serben*, II, 118; for Ottoman source see *Reich, Geschichte der Serben*, II, 118.

at Frék Yazma, where the Serbian contingent fought on the left wing.³⁹ Upon the return home of the Serbian contingent, which complained of harsh treatment in the Ottoman army, Lazar renounced his allegiance to Murad and tried to bring about a coalition of the subjected Balkan states against the Ottomans. The defeat at Plochnik on August 27, 1388, of an Ottoman frontier force under Kanaka Shakin,⁴⁰ who had invaded Bosnia in collaboration with Balsha, lord of Scutari, encouraged tsar Shishman and despot Dobrotich, the Bulgarian rulers, and Tvrtko I, ruler of Bosnia (1353-1381), to form a coalition with Lazar. This was followed by an agreement between Sigismund, king of Hungary, and Lazar, who accepted the obligations of vassalage as under Louis I.⁴¹

In order to secure his rear in his campaign against Serbia, Murad sent Ali Pasha Chandarli, the new grand vizir, against Shishman and Dobrotich in the autumn of 1388. Ali, at the head of the forces of Rumelia, made a swift raid into Bulgaria, and in the spring of 1389, when Murad crossed the Danubianles, Ali continued operations in Danubian Bulgaria, where tsar Shishman had taken refuge in Nicopolis. Turnovo, the capital of Shishman, surrendered (but was not occupied) and the tsar finally submitted in Nicopolis. Then Ali Pasha joined the sultan's army near Philippopolis (Plovdiv; Filibe) and the whole army marched in the direction of Kosovo-Polje. The Christian lords of Kátsendi (Konstantin) and Turnok (Sani) joined Murad's army. The Anatolian emirates, including Karaman, had responded to his call and sent contingents for this crucial confrontation between the forces of Islam and Christendom.

The Serbian army included contingents from Bosnia under Vlatko Yakovich and from Croatia under ban John Horvath, as well as mercenaries or volunteers comprising "Franks, Vlachs, Albanians, Hungarians, Czechs, and Bulgarians". In the western Balkans (Ragusa, Albania, and Bosnia) cannon was known by 1380, and reliable Ottoman and Serbian sources attest to its use at the battle of Kosovo in the summer of 1389.⁴² The Ottoman victory at Kosovo marks the estab-

39. A contemporary Ottoman source in Pasha, *op. cit.*, p. 79, dates it as the spring of 795/1392. Another contemporary source, Veli Agha's *Iskân u Akâm*, ed. Zeynep Östörkel, (Istanbul, 1928), p. 102, is not clear here in its chronology; it contains complementary details on Murad's conquests in Serbia.

40. Kanaka Shakin is often confused with Lala Shakin, beglarbey of Rumelia under Murad I.

41. Hefner, "Die Gefangenenerlösung der Edelfrauen Elisabeth und Maria von Ungarn und die Kämpfe König Sigismunds gegen die magyarischen Fürsten und die übrigen Reichsfürsten in den Jahren 1386-1395," *Archiv für österreichische Geschichte*, LXVI (1883), 523; Jireček, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 309.

42. See D. Petrović, "Fire-arms in the Balkans," in *War, Technology and Society in the Middle Ages*, ed. Warren I. Perry and Michael E. Hays (London, 1973), pp. 144-172.

lishment of Ottoman overlordship in Serbia and the beginning of the Ottoman-Hungarian rivalry over this key area between the Balkans and Central Europe. On the battlefield Murad I was assassinated, and Lazar was captured and executed.

Stephen, the new knez (1389-1427), and his mother Milica under the threat of Hungarian invasion readily accepted the protection of and vassalage to Bayazid I, the new sultan, and her daughter despina (lady) Olivera was given in marriage to Bayazid. Ottoman garrisons were stationed in the important fortresses on the Danube, including Golubatz. In the autumn of 1389 Sigismund invaded Serbia and took Boroch (Bor) and Chetina in upper Serbia. The following summer Ottoman-Serbian forces fought together against the Hungarian host.⁴³

Bayazid had to return to Anatolia in haste since the Anatolian vassal emirs, in alliance with Aladdin Ali of Karaman and Dairhaneddin of Sivas (Sebastia), upon learning of the death of Murad I at Kosovo had initiated an uprising.⁴⁴ Bayazid was occupied in Anatolia warring against the emirs from 1389 to 1392. During this period he annexed the maritime emirates of Sarukhan, Aydin, and Menteshe in western Anatolia and the old Seljukid emirates of Germiyan, Hamid, and Kastamonu, and extended his control to the Amasya region, where he was challenged by the powerful ruler of Sivas. By his conquests in Anatolia Bayazid established his authority and greatly increased his power, and in 1393 he returned to the Balkans to assert his sovereignty over the Christian vassal states, which had, during his absence, slackened their ties to the Ottoman state and come into the orbit of Hungary and Venice.

The urgent problem for the Ottomans was to reassert control over Danubian Bulgaria. In 1391 with Sigismund's support Mircea cel Bătrân ("the Old"), voivode of Wallachia (1386-1418), had invaded northern Bulgaria as far as Karnobad, while Bayazid was occupied in Anatolia. In late 1392 Bayazid exchanged embassies with Ladislaus, king of Naples (1386-1414), a rival of Sigismund for the Hungarian throne.⁴⁵ The following summer Bayazid invaded Bulgaria, taking Timovo on July 17, 1393, and placed his son Shishman in Nicopolis as an Ottoman vassal to guard against Hungarian-Wallachian encroachments. Prior to his campaigns into Greece, Hungary, and Wallachia, Bayazid called all the Ottoman vassal princes to a meeting in the winter of 1393-1394

43 Lindell, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 124.

44 The main source is Ammannat, *Revue de Roum*, pp. 363-367-368.

45 Mikerevich, *op. cit.*, pp. 47-48.

to make sure of their loyalty and coöperation;⁴⁶ the meeting place was Verria, not "Serrai" (Serres) as reported in some Byzantine sources.⁴⁷ As the new Byzantine emperor, Manuel II (1391-1425), himself confirms, the appearance of the vassal princes before the sultan was a custom and condition of Ottoman suzerainty.

Bayazid's next moves were an invasion of Thessaly and the county of Salona on February 20, 1394, and the occupation of Thessalonica on April 21. Bayazid's insistence on direct control of the strategic cities and areas in the Balkans frightened his vassals.

Though authoritarian in his dealings with his vassals, Bayazid had shown a conciliatory attitude toward Venice after the annexation of the emirates of western Anatolia in the winter of 1389-1390. In May 1390 he reconfirmed the capitulations made under the Aydin dynasty, in response to the mission of Francis Querier. Venice would not have opposed the Ottomans if its commercial privileges and maritime security had been guaranteed. But in 1391 the corsairs of western Anatolia, now under Ottoman control, had begun their attacks against Venetian possessions in the Aegean and the Morea, forcing the senate to take new defense measures and send protests to the sultan. Construction of galleys in Constantinople, Thessalonica, and other ports for the Ottoman navy in the spring of 1392 caused great concern in Venice. Manuel II was then acting as a loyal vassal of the sultan and appeared to be using Ottoman power to block Venetian dominance in the Aegean and the Straits.

As under Umar Paşa half a century earlier, the Turkish navy had once again become an aggressive and threatening power. In the spring of 1392 the Venetian senate gave orders to their "captain of the Gulf" to proceed to the Aegean and attack Ottoman warships on the open sea. The reappearance of the threat of Turkish sea power under Bayazid led Venice to consider reviving the Latin League in the Aegean, with the participation of Lesbos, Chios, Rhodes, and Cyprus.

In the summer of 1392 the Ottoman navy sailed to the Black Sea to coöperate with Bayazid's army against Suleiman, emir of Kastamonu, so Venetian apprehension of an immediate Ottoman attack faded. In 1394 after the Verria meeting Venice welcomed Manuel's request for aid against the sultan, who wanted to establish full control of Constantinople.

46. See Barber, *Manuel II*, pp. 112-113.

47. The fact that the meeting-place was Verria, not Serres (Serrai), was first indicated by Karl Hopf, and after him by Silliman-Smith, *op. cit.*, p. 75. In the Ottoman records the date is given (mistakenly) as after 798/1395.

The despot Theodore Palaeologus (1382-1407) had become an Ottoman vassal in 1388, in order to gain Ottoman support for his struggle against the Latin barons, and especially for his fight against Venice for Argos. According to the famous inscription of Paros, he said he was ruling in the Morea in the name of the sultan.⁶⁸ But when, after the meeting of Verrai, Bayazid required the surrender of Argos and other strategic places in the Morea, Theodore managed to flee to the Morea, where he made an alliance with Venice against the Ottomans by the agreement of Modon on May 2, 1394. He surrendered Argos to the Venetians and then with their assistance captured Monemvasia from the Ottoman garrison.⁶⁹

But the major event leading to the crusade was Bayazid's invasion of Hungary in 1394. We learn from a later Ottoman document⁷⁰ that in that year the Ottoman army under the sultan himself entered Hungary near Belgrade,⁷¹ attacked Slankamen, Tiel, Bacsakerek, Temesvár, Carashova, Caransebeth, and Mehadia deep in Transylvania, and then turned south into Wallachia in the direction of Nicopolis. There Mircea barred the way to the Ottoman army at the mountain pass of Rovine near Argesh, his capital. On October 10, 1394, Bayazid's army escaped disaster only after a fierce battle at Argesh in which the vassal Serbian princes Mark Kraljević and Constantine Dejanović and several Ottoman begs fell.⁷² The sultan crossed the Danube at Nicopolis on ships supplied by tsar Shishman, who was placed there by Bayazid in 1393 when Tirnovo, his capital, was occupied by the Ottomans. Suspicious of Shishman's secret relations with Mircea and Sigismund,⁷³

68. Lelovitis, "Pour l'histoire de Paléologue au XIV^e siècle (1382-1404)," *Études byzantines*, I (1902), 164-171. Turks from western Asiaella had appeared in the Morea as mercenaries in alliance with the date of Michael IX Palaeologus (1294-1320). According to Lelovitis, Ottoman Turks interfered in Morean affairs following their conquest of Thessalonica in 1387. Theodore wrote to Murad's court to offer his allegiance in 1391.

69. *Ibid.*, 162-164.

70. See *Actes du 2^e Congrès international d'études byzantines* (Istanbul, 1905), p. 126; the original is in the Topkapı Sarayı archives, no. 4374. Apparently it was a report prepared for Mehmed II for a campaign in Hungary or Wallachia.

71. The Topkapı document says that there was no fortress at Belgrade at date that whereas the Force européenne (BM, cat., MS. suppl. tom. 1047) speaks of the slope of Belgrade for a month.

72. On the basis of a document dated October 1395 concerning a donation made by Helen for the soul of her father, Constantine Dejanović, G. S. Radović, "La Chronologie de la bataille de Rovine," *Revue historique de l'est et du sud-est*, V (1928), 126-128, puts the date of the battle at May 12, 1395, the date of Constantine's death as found in Serbian annals. But now the Topkapı document provides new details supporting October 1394. On the basis of Radović, *Diastémata*, p. 10, gives interesting details.

73. According to von Achenbach, *Geschichte Kaiser Sigismunds*, I, 19, von Shishman had shifted to the Hungarian side.

Bayazid, once across the river, seized and executed Shishman on June 3, 1395,⁷⁴ and appointed Vlad voivode of Wallachia. Mircea took refuge in Transylvania in March 1396 and joined Sigismund in Kronstadt (Braslow). Together they descended on the Danube and in May recaptured Little Nicopolis on the north bank, opposite Nicopolis, and installed a Hungarian garrison. The Hungarian army was, however, harassed by Vlad on his way back home.⁷⁵

Thus in 1393-1395 the whole of Bulgaria was annexed to the Ottoman empire, and Wallachia came under an Ottoman vassal prince.⁷⁶ On the Danube front Drivena (Silistra) and the Dobruja, long disputed between Bulgarian and Wallachian princes, became the seat of an Ottoman frontier lord. Nicopolis, which was in Ottoman hands, became the key fortress for control of Bulgaria and Wallachia. Farther to the west at Vidin, the Bulgarian tsar Sratsimir (Sratimir) was a loyal vassal of the sultan, and an Ottoman garrison was stationed there. To restore Hungarian influence and control in the area, Sigismund saw that he needed the support of the whole of Christian Europe, and especially of Venice. Just at this juncture Venice, as we have seen, abandoned its neutral attitude and decided to enter the struggle and to support any joint undertaking against the Ottomans.

The Ottoman invasion of Hungary in 1394 aroused genuine concern in pope Boniface IX (1389-1404) in Rome.⁷⁷ In October the pope issued, upon Sigismund's appeal, a bull for a crusade against the Ottomans.⁷⁸ On December 23 a Byzantine envoy arrived in Venice requesting aid and urging war against Bayazid. In early 1395 Venice became the center of the negotiations for a crusade. Reversing its cautious policy vis-à-vis the Ottomans, the senate decided to try full coöperation with Hungary. Venice also promised to send a fleet to the Dardanelles to cut off Ottoman communication between Anatolia and Rumelia. Sigismund secured a Burgundian-French contingent for the crusade, but there were rumors in France that John Galeazzo Visconti of Milan, threatened by the French, had exchanged embassies of friendship with the Ottoman sultan.⁷⁹ Ladislas of Naples, the rival of Sigismund, was another Italian ruler in contact with "the enemy of Christendom". A

⁷⁴ The Topkapı document, no. 6774.

⁷⁵ See Aschbach, *op. cit.*, p. 72.

⁷⁶ The Topkapı document claims that Mircea was a tributary of the sultan prior to the campaign of 1394.

⁷⁷ See also, *The Papacy*, I, 342-343.

⁷⁸ Sigismund's letter to the pope in October 1394, mentioning Bayazid's ravages of Hungary, must have been written before the battle of Angora on October 30.

⁷⁹ See Seebo, *The Papacy*, I, 347 and note 94.

Byzantine-Hungarian alliance was signed in Buda in February 1396 and Venice was informed about it in March.

Without this Balkan background the crusade of Nicopolis cannot be adequately explained. Western participation in the crusade appears to be grossly exaggerated in western accounts. The crusaders from western Europe, "une multitude de chevaliers sans experience, sans ordre,"⁸⁰ was apparently quite a small contingent, and yet they intended "to conquer the whole of Turkey and march into the empire of Persia, . . . the kingdom of Syria, and the Holy Land of Jerusalem".

Vlad of Wallachia, an Ottoman vassal, was attacked from the north by Stephen Lackovich, the vojvode of Transylvania, but the Serbs under Stephen Lazarevich joined Bayazid's army. The Ottoman strategy was to delay the advance of the crusaders by resisting them in the fortified cities, in order to give the sultan, who was at the head of his army besieging Constantinople, time to gather his forces. The crusaders met resistance at Vidin and Rahova in late August and were held up by a stiff defense at the stronghold of Nicopolis (September 8-10). Bayazid surprised the crusaders at Nicopolis, and the ensuing pitched battle ended in a complete victory for the sultan (September 25, 1396),⁸¹ who won fame throughout Islam as a ghazi.

Sigismund, Philibert of Neillac (soon to be grand master of the Hospitaliers), and a few other leaders escaped down the Danube in a small boat, and John of Nevers and several other captive nobles were held for ransom, but most of the crusaders who survived the battle were enslaved or slaughtered by the infuriated sultan. The shocked reaction of western Europe to this disaster led to disillusion with the crusade idea and refusal to participate in similar expeditions for nearly half a century.

Venice took part in the crusade, but the small Venetian fleet of four galleys under Thomas Mocenigo, captain of the Gulf, was instructed not to engage in military operations beyond the northern Aegean and to stay with the members of the Aegean league—Rhodes, Chios, and Lemnos. By his naval preparations at Gallipoli and strict ban on wheat export to Venice, Bayazid had taken measures against the republic.⁸²

⁸⁰ Jorga, *Affaires des romains*, III (Bucharest, 1937), 362.

⁸¹ See the discussion of the size of the crusader army in Sisson, *The Papacy*, I, 351-353. Delbrück's estimate of ten thousand for the Ottoman army is indicated by the Ottoman account (Pam 1047), fol. 22^v-23^r "upon the news of the invasion [Bayazid] hurried to Nicopolis taking with him an army of ten thousand select men." Each man had a pair of horses to go at maximum speed. At Timara (Romanian border) joined the sultan. For details of the battle see Sisson, *The Papacy*, I, 353-355.

⁸² Sallwachsath, *op. cit.*, pp. 256-268.

After Nicopolis Venice had to take more serious steps to protect Constantinople and Euboea.

After his victory Bayazid turned against Byzantium, which he held responsible for the crusade; now its conquest appeared easier than ever. The sultan's pressure on Constantinople in October 1396 is confirmed by Venetian and Genoese documents, as well as by the Ottoman chronicles.⁸³ Venice feared that the fall of Constantinople was quite imminent, and hastily sent instructions dated October 29, 1396, to Moonigo to take appropriate measures.⁸⁴ Ottoman tradition makes it clear that immediately after the battle of Nicopolis Bayazid turned his army against Constantinople and demanded the surrender of the city. Negotiations were concluded by the emperor's pledging allegiance, with the payment of a yearly tribute of ten thousand gold ducats and the establishment of a Turkish quarter in Constantinople with a qadi and a mosque. (Our source adds that the Modens from Göynük and Taraklı-Yeniça who were settled in the quarter were driven out of the city after Bayazid's defeat at Ankara by Timur [Tamerlane] in 1402.) Apparently the sultan never gave up his intention of taking the city, but temporarily acquiesced to the peace offer of the emperor⁸⁵ at a time when pressing problems in Anatolia confronted him.

While Bayazid was occupied in Anatolia, first in conquering Karaman territory and then in fighting against sultan Burhānoddin of Sivas in the Amasya area in 1397, and the following year in capturing several cities in the Euphrates valley from the Mamluks, Manuel II was busy sending diplomatic missions to try to persuade the courts of France, Rome, and Venice to send a crusade to deliver Constantinople from its fate.⁸⁶ In 1397 Venice was seriously concerned about the alleged plans of the ex-emperor John VII to surrender the city, and took naval measures to prevent it.⁸⁷ Marshal John Boucicault's fruitless expedition (1399) and Manuel II's visit to European capitals in quest of aid (1400-1402) did not bring about any change in the situation.⁸⁸

83. *Ibid.*; Thiriet, *Asie mineure*, I, no. 794.

84. *Ibid.*, nos. 797, 798; see Sifert-Vieljeux, *op. cit.*, p. 383, thinks that references in the documents belong to the period before the battle of Nicopolis; cf. Setton, *The Papacy*, I, 328. The letter of the venetian of Pera summoning the Venetians is dated October 28, 1396; for the sultan's siege of Constantinople after Nicopolis see *Asiatic Researches*, *op. cit.*, 67-68; Noddi, *op. cit.*, p. 78.

85. In his letter dated July 1, 1397 (see Burton, *Manuel II*, pp. 124-125), Manuel II speaks of three years of hard times in the war against Bayazid I.

86. *Ibid.*, pp. 145-146.

87. *Ibid.*, pp. 128-129.

88. Setton, *The Papacy*, I, 370-385; Burton, *Manuel II*, pp. 124-129.

Manuel's departure for Europe made the sultan furious,⁸⁹ and he forthwith demanded that John VII surrender the city.⁹⁰ A naval league against the Ottomans comprising the Hospitallers, the Genoese of Chios, and James Crispo, the duke of the Archipelago (1397-1418), was then considered by the Venetian senate.⁹¹ Byzantium's salvation, however, would come from the east. In 1400 Timur captured Sivas, an Ottoman city since 1398, and on July 28, 1402, he defeated Bayazid at the battle of Ankara and made him a prisoner;⁹² he died in captivity a few months later, probably by suicide.

Between 1402 and 1413 Bayazid's sons Süleiman (in Adrianople), Mehmed (at Amasya), and İsa (at Bursa) fought for the succession. Their civil wars kept them too weak and divided to threaten Constantinople, Venice, or Hungary, which enjoyed the respite without making any serious effort to strengthen their defenses against the inevitable resurgence of Ottoman power. The eventual winner, Mehmed I, ruled for eight more years, but deliberately made no military or diplomatic moves to destroy the unwonted calm.

C. *The Struggle for the Balkans, 1421-1451*

During the civil war, however, Byzantium had learned the most efficient way to check Ottoman aggressiveness and obtain concessions. At the accession on June 25, 1421, of Mehmed I's son Murad II, who was declared sultan in Bursa at the age of seventeen,⁹³ Manuel II set Mustafa, Murad's uncle, free in the Balkans, where he was joined by many leaders of the Ottoman forces, including powerful frontier begs.

Mustafa had agreed to return to the emperor Gallipoli, the rich coastal plains of Thrace, Thessaly, and the Black Sea coasts, thus restoring the Byzantine empire to its boundaries prior to Bayazid I's conquests. The Turkish dynasties in Anatolia, which Timur had restored to their principalities, also rebelled against Murad II. The young sultan had to recognize the occupation of Hamid-ül by the Karamanids. Juneyd,

89. See patriarch Markianos's letter, *ibid.* of 1399, *ibid.*, pp. 200-201.

90. Thieriot, *Réponses*, II, no. 981.

91. See Jorga, *Mémoires et notes*, I, 185-186, 115.

92. On Timur's campaign see Adamantios-Dorson, *Le Campagne de Timur en Asie Mineure* (1402).

93. For Murad II see İnalcık, "Murad II," *İslâm Araştırmaları*, VII (Istanbul, 1960), 591-615.

a pretender to the principality of Smyrna, had joined Mustafa in Rumelia. The Ottoman state was again in danger of dissolution.

Under the circumstances, Murad's government at Bursa followed the same conciliatory policy with the Christian states as his father's had in 1413. It was ready to accept all the Byzantine demands, except the surrender to the emperor of Gallipoli and of Mehmed's two infant sons as hostages. Murad made agreements with Serbia and Hungary through his ambassadors as his father Mehmed I had done against Mura, his rival in Rumelia in 1413. Venice approached both sides to make the most of the situation. It wanted Venetian merchants to receive the same treatment that they enjoyed in Constantinople and an export permit for 10,000 *modii* (about 20,000 tons) of wheat annually from the Ottoman possessions.⁹⁴

In the final encounter near Bursa (end of January or early February 1422), Mustafa lost the day as a result of the defection of the frontier beys and of Juneyd, whom Murad recognized as sovereign in Smyrna. With the Genoese ships brought by John Adorno, podestà of New Phocaea, Murad was able to cross the Dardanelles and capture and execute his uncle in Adrianople.⁹⁵

In the spring the victorious sultan came to lay siege to Constantinople. Supported by guns and a navy, this siege, from June 20 to September 6, 1422, was the most serious theretofore made against the Byzantine capital. Venice was alarmed, and took measures to protect its merchant ships trading with the Black Sea ports from Ottoman naval forces. However, the proposal of a naval demonstration against the sultan before Constantinople was rejected by the senate. At this point the cautious doge Thomas Mocenigo (1414-1423) tried to avoid a war against the Ottomans. His bailie in Constantinople, Benedetto Emo, was instructed to offer mediation for peace negotiations between the sultan and the emperor.⁹⁶ At any rate, military aid to Byzantium under siege could not be sent before the following spring. But help came to Byzantium from Anatolia. The Germiyanids, Karamanids, and Jandarids responded favorably to a Byzantine diplomatic move for an attack on the Ottoman territories in Anatolia. These Anatolian emirs convinced Ilyas, the tutor of Murad II's brother Mustafa, who was then only thirteen years old and living in Germiyan, to rebel and sent forces to support him.⁹⁷ Upon hearing the news, following an unsuc-

⁹⁴ Thierri, *Argenteo*, II, no. 1823, instructions to Benedetto Emo dated October 10, 1421.

⁹⁵ Isidore, "Mehmed II," p. 68.

⁹⁶ Thierri, *Argenteo*, II, nos. 1854, 1815, dated August 26, 1422.

⁹⁷ A newly discovered Ottoman source, Osman Turan, *Türkî Sal-nâmî* (Ankara, 1954), pp. 25, 60, is particularly important for the younger Mustafa's activities; cf. Encos, in Magidale,

cessful final assault on August 26, the sultan lifted the siege of Constantinople.

The Ottoman threat had led Manuel II to seek closer relations with the west, and in particular with pope Martin V (1417-1431). In response the pope sent messages to various western rulers requesting aid to Byzantium, and his legate, the Franciscan Anthony of Massa, arrived in Constantinople on September 10, 1422, to negotiate church union, but these negotiations were not fruitful. More practical results were expected from diplomatic contacts with Venice and Hungary.

Since 1411 Sigismund, "emperor of the Romans and king of Hungary", had championed the deliverance of Italian Christians and Byzantium,⁹¹ and since 1416 Manuel II had been trying to reconcile Hungary and Venice for the purpose of starting a crusade against the Ottomans. In this effort, Manuel was joined by king Vladislav II Jagiello of Poland (1386-1434), who had received the Byzantine ambassador Philanthropenos in August 1420.⁹²

Actually, Venice shrewdly made the most of the crisis of 1421-1423. In the wake of the Ottoman siege of Constantinople, the senate agreed to strengthen the Byzantine fleet by ten galleys (October 1422). In the Morea, Venetians sought to take over the remnants of the Frankish principalities⁹³ and threatened to join the Greeks in order to hold the Ottoman forces at the newly constructed Hexamilion wall on the Isthmus.⁹⁴ In the spring of 1423 Murad was still threatening the Byzantine empire. Now free of challenges from his rivals in Anatolia and his brother Mustafa (late January 1423) Murad sent Turakhan, the powerful frontier beg in Thessaly, to invade the Morea on May 22, 1423, and destroy the Hexamilion fortifications.⁹⁵ Turakhan's cam-

p. 164; *Isopse, Notes et extraits*, I, 324; also, "Sur les deus Petrosides Musahs," *Revue historique de l'est et du levant*, X (1902), 12-13.

91. Barkan, *Manuel II*, pp. 327-329, 368.

92. *Ibid.*, pp. 326-329.

93. Setton, *The Papacy*, II (Philadelphia, 1978), 12-14.

94. Barkan, *Manuel II*, pp. 360-364.

95. *Ibid.*, p. 369, note 123, see especially "Basil Hahender." Defeated by the forces sent by Murad II under Mihail-oghlu, Murad's brother Mustafa took refuge in Constantinople (December 26, 1422). With the emperor's support he went to Selçuklu (Sivas), apparently hoping for cooperation from disaffected elements in Anatolia. But under the attack of the Rumelian forces, he retreated to Kaya-li (the Ptolemais area) where he was recognized as sultan. Mörne (Görk) opened his gates to him, Mustafa's Government began, and seems to have established his control over the greater part of Ottoman Anatolia. On the advice of his tutor Turgut Paşa, Murad II set out from Adrianople and attacked Mustafa in Mörne in winter. Taken by surprise and betrayed by his tutor Öym, Mustafa was captured and executed (February 20, 1423). Murad's forces had to fight against the Jendek and Karakomak forces during his advance against Mustafa.

purga was apparently a move to discourage an attack on the rear of the Ottomans, who were now concentrating their forces on Thessalonica, which had been under blockade since the spring of 1422. But, to the disappointment of the Ottomans, Thessalonica, the second city of the Byzantine empire, passed by agreement under Venetian sovereignty on September 14, 1423. Since the city had been under Ottoman rule from 1387 to 1402, and paid a tribute of 100,000 *akçe* to the sultans while under the Byzantine rule thereafter, the Ottomans considered the Venetian occupation a hostile act. The Venetian ambassador, Nicholas Giorgio, sent to make an agreement, was arrested in the winter of 1424, and the Venetian offer to pay a tribute of 1,500-2,000 ducats for the city was rejected. An Ottoman army estimated to consist of five thousand men was holding the city under siege.

The Venetian-Ottoman war for Thessalonica lasted seven years, with dangerous implications for the Ottomans. While on the one hand the republic made several diplomatic attempts to have the sultan recognize the Venetian occupation of Thessalonica in return for some concessions and payment of tribute,¹⁰¹ on the other hand it tried to incite a crusade or form a regional coalition against the Ottomans. A Venetian fleet under Peter Loredan was at Gallipoli in June 1424, blocking the Straits to all Ottoman ships.

To divert Ottoman forces, Venice then encouraged Juneyd in the Smyrna area to rise against Murad. The Ottoman sultan had difficult times in his war against this energetic fighter, who attempted to raise the Karasunids and other emirs in Anatolia against the Ottomans. Given this dangerous situation, Murad had to sign a peace treaty with Byzantium (February 22, 1424) which accepted payment of a yearly tribute of 300,000 *akçe* (about 10,000 gold ducats) and the return of lands occupied since 1402 on the coasts of the Marmara, Aegean, and Black Seas except the castles of Mesembria, Derkos, and Zeitounion (Lamia).

In collaboration with Venice, Juneyd planned to send Ismail, an Ottoman pretender, to Rumelia, but Murad again secured Genoese co-operation to blockade Juneyd from the sea. Juneyd's elimination in 1425 deprived Venice of an efficient ally. In the spring of 1425 the Ottoman-Venetian war flared up on the Thessalonica front. The Venetians occupied Cassandra and Kavalla and at the same time attempted to use a "false" Mustafa as a pretender to the throne. In 1425 the Ot-

For Turakhan's raid into the Marmara see Inge, *Monks of catharism*, I, 497, and Peter Dipping's account in volume III of the present work, p. 164; cf. Setton, *ibid.*, III, 309.

101. See Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 22-26.

toman corsairs from Palatin (Balat) and Ephesus (Ayasoluk) struck Euboea, Modon, and Coros while war spread in Albania with the Ottoman siege of Durazzo.

During the crisis of 1421-1424, the Ottoman frontier lords on the Danube and in Macedonia, southern Bosnia, and Albania had been able to protect Ottoman interests in the buffer zones against Hungary and Venice. During this period, while the buffer states—the Serbian despotate, the kingdom of Bosnia, and the vojvodate of Wallachia—were forced to accept vassalage or give up strategic points to Hungary and Venice, the Ottoman frontier lords had supported rival parties or pretenders in these buffer states and intensified their raids into these countries.

Coupled with the energetic stand of the Ottoman frontier lords, the war between Hungary and Venice for Dalmatia relieved the Ottomans of the danger of a "crusade" in the Balkans during this period.

Venice, however, because the principal beneficiary of the changing conditions in the Balkans, in addition to having seized the Dalmatian ports of Zara, Spalato (Split), Sebenico (Shibenik), and Traù (Trogù) from Hungary between 1412 and 1420, the republic had extended its sway in northern Albania had Montenegro following the death of Balsha in 1421. This policy had led Venice into war against Stephen Lazarevich, the Serbian despot, in the years 1421-1423.¹⁰⁴ In this fight Stephen found Ottoman frontier forces an efficient ally, and from then on he recognized Murad as his suzerain. By the peace treaty signed on August 12, 1423, however, the despot had to recognize Venetian occupation of Scutari, Alessio (Lesh), and Dulcigno. Later, in 1426, the Ottoman frontier lord İlyas Beg was included in the treaty as a witness or guarantor.¹⁰⁵ This expansion of Venetian control can be considered as a counter to the Ottoman expansion in Albania—the occupation of Ciroa (Akchahuar) in 1415, and that of Avlona, Berat, and Pyrgos in 1420.

Hungary also exploited the situation by reinforcing its position in Serbia, Bosnia, and Wallachia in the period 1419-1429. During this period Sigismund was particularly active in extending Hungarian control in the northern Balkans and lower Danubian basin, even claiming sway over northern Bulgaria by supporting a Bulgarian prince's claim to the throne.

¹⁰⁴ Jorga, *Geographic*, II, 304, footnote 6, "Die Biographie Stefan Lazarevich," pp. 459-470.

¹⁰⁵ İlyas Beg may be İlyas, sultan of Charakir near Berat, see *Silber's Affairs*, *Annuaire*, *Annuaire*, vol. I, 1841, no. 361.

Mircea had died in 1418 and his sons Michael and then Dan II recognized Hungarian suzerainty in Wallachia. The situation apparently caused great concern in Murad's court, and the sultan ordered frontier forces to support Radu II ("the Simple", or "the Bald"), another son of Mircea, against his brother, culminating in the invasion of Wallachia in 1423.¹⁰⁶ Hungarians and Ottomans fought on the Danube as supporters of their respective candidates for the Wallachian throne. Following his attempt at an agreement in 1424, the sultan, now freed of his Anatolian enemies, organized a large-scale campaign against Wallachia and Hungary under the beglerbeg of Rumelia with the participation of all the frontier lords. At the head of his army, Sigismund himself encountered the Ottoman army at Golubatz and Orshova, and blocked their way.¹⁰⁷ The Venetians in Thessalonica received with joy the news of the Ottoman failure on the Danube.¹⁰⁸

Upon the termination of the truce in 1426, the Ottoman-Hungarian rivalry over Wallachia and Serbia escalated. First the Ottomans drove Dan away from Wallachia early in 1427, and Sigismund had to come to reinstate him on the Wallachian throne in the spring. His forces then retook Giurgiu and crossed the Danube. There Sigismund built the fortress Szendrőgyörgy, and settled German forces as a barrier against the Ottomans. At this point, the death of the Serbian despot Stephen Lazarevich on July 19, 1427, and the dispute over his heritage brought the rivalry of the two powers on the Danube to a point of crisis. Stephen had arranged his succession in favor of George Brankovich, lord of upper Serbia, under Hungarian protection; Brankovich would be a vassal of the Hungarian king, by an agreement signed in May 1426.¹⁰⁹ According to the agreement upon the death of Stephen, Hungary would inherit Belgrade, Golubatz, and the banat of Machva on the west side of the Danube. Even before the death of Stephen in 1427, the Ottomans had reacted against this arrangement and, by invading George's lands, had forced him to recognize Ottoman suzerainty, to cede the area between Krushevents and Kossova, to wed his daughter Mara to

106. *Asanagoston, Mehmedin Âh Döndü* (Istanbul, 1954, ed., NE, suppl. 200, 1947), p. 11 tells us that following the execution of his brother Mustafa (early 1423) Murad II ordered a massive attack against Wallachia, and then he then made peace with "Döndü" on condition of the payment of a tribute; according to Jorga, *Geschichte*, I, 376, Ottomans were advanced as far as Kresnad (Bucovina).

107. Sigismund was at Orshova on August 16, 1423; Jorga, *Geschichte*, I, 391. The *Asanagoston Mehmedin* claims an Ottoman surprise attack and victory at Golubatz against the king's forces in 1423/1425.

108. Jorga, *Geschichte*, I, 391.

109. Jurek, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 135; Ignaz A. Budak, *Geschichte von Ungarn*, ed. Ernst Klein, II (Leipzig, 1889), 372-373.

the sultan, and to guarantee coöperation against the Hungarians.¹¹⁰ The Ottomans, in return, had promised George military aid against his rival, king Tvrtko II of Bosnia, who had laid siege to Brebovitsa.

In the summer of 1422, frontier forces under Ishak Beg of Skopje staged a raid into Bosnia, and went as far as Croatia. Under the pressure of the Ottoman frontier forces Tvrtko II had accepted Hungarian protection since 1422,¹¹¹ and now demanded aid. After the death of Stephen in July, the Ottomans and Hungarians moved to invade Serbia to prevent each other from taking over the land. While Sigismund occupied Belgrade in the autumn of 1422, the Ottoman forces invaded upper Serbia, capturing Krusevac and Golubats, as well as the island of "Jan-adasi" (identified as New Orshova) in the Danube. As noted above, Murad had already forced Brankovich, the new Serbian despot (1427-1456), to recognize Ottoman suzerainty, and to pay tribute. But now the despot chose as his heir Frederick of Cilly, Sigismund's son-in-law.¹¹²

When military action around Thessalonica was intensified, the Venetian senate had accepted the necessity of an alliance with Hungary (October 1425). Now not only Byzantium but also Florence¹¹³ and Savoy, as well as Poland, urged Hungary to reach an agreement with Venice.

Sigismund organized his conquests into two *banats* (military frontier provinces), Machva and Belgrade, against the Ottomans. Opposite Golubats (Galambóc), now in Ottoman hands, he built the fortress Lázlóvár.¹¹⁴ Thus a strong defense line was created against the Ottomans from Garga on the lower Danube to Severin, while Wallachian, Serbian, and Bosnian princes recognized the protection and suzerainty of the Hungarian king. Sigismund once again emerged as the champion of a crusade against the Ottomans. Planning his crowning as emperor in Rome, he declared his determination to reach a full agreement with the pope to achieve peace and unity in Italy so that he could eradicate the Hussite heresy, and, as an ultimate goal, could fight against the Ottomans and deliver the Holy Land.¹¹⁵

110. The main source is Hrobsky, *op. cit.*, pp. 161-162.

111. In 1418 Sigismund married Bosna and was crowned "king of Bosnia and Serbia"; see Fritzsche, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 147.

112. Fritzsche, *op. cit.*, II, 174. Frederick succeeded his father Herman II in 1433 and died in 1454.

113. Bachmann, *Der Kaiser*, pp. 92-93; see Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, I, 351-357, 409-410; Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 25; Bachmann, *Monats* II, pp. 375-379.

114. Fritzsche, *op. cit.*, II, 174.

115. For his appeals to the Florentine embassy in September 1422, see Bachmann, *Der Kaiser*, p. 92.

In April 1428 a strong army of twenty-five to thirty thousand Hungarians and six thousand Wallachians under voivode Dan II, as well as Lithuanian contingents, arrived before Golubatz. The Turkish fleet on the Danube was eliminated. Murad rushed with fresh forces to the aid of the hard-pressed Golubatz, and Sigismund decided not to risk a pitched battle as he had done at Nicopolis in 1396.

A cease-fire for the retreat of the Hungarian army to the west side of the Danube was agreed upon early in June 1428. Continued negotiations eventually resulted in a three-year truce between the two powers. While Sigismund took pains to explain to Venice and pope Martin V his reasons for making peace with Murad, the Ottoman sultan in his turn tried to prove to sultan Barbay of Egypt (1422-1434) that the peace was necessary and that Serbia and Bosnia were once again forced to recognize Islamic overlordship.¹¹⁶

The Ottomans now controlled Serbia through their strongholds of Golubatz and Krushevat, as well as Ishak Beg's forces in Skoplje. Brankovich built for himself a new capital at Smederevo (Semendria) between Golubatz and Belgrade,¹¹⁷ and accepted full vassalage to the sultan – payment of a yearly tribute of 50,000 gold ducats and provision of an auxiliary force of two thousand for the sultan's expeditions.

Sigismund, taking advantage of the Ottoman crisis and the intensification of the Ottoman pressure on the buffer states, resumed in the period 1421-1428 efforts to realize the plan of a Danubian empire originated by Louis the Great. The struggle resulted in a compromise, or rather a postponement of the question, because of the powerful Ottoman reaction. The Ottomans, when they found themselves in a better position, would resume their aggressive policy in the region against Hungary, and this would give rise to a series of crusading activities in the west, on Hungarian initiative.

Disappointed by the armistice between the Hungarians and the Turks, Venice's hopes revived when new developments threatened the Ottomans on their eastern borders. During the Ottoman siege of Golubatz the Karamanids, apparently in collaboration with Hungary,¹¹⁸ had moved against the Ottomans, forcing Murad to surrender the much-disputed Hamid area. Through the mediation of the king of Cyprus, James (1398-1432), Venice entered into negotiations for an alliance

116. The sultan's letter is in Perleth, *op. cit.*, I, 365-365.

117. The anonymous *Redif* gives the date as EDI (October 22, 1427-November 11, 1428).

118. Idris Karam, *Historia croata – against Hungarians: Sigismund's letter* (22 vols., *Poslije otidit*, 1778-1806), V, 385, cited by Jorga, *History of serbia*, I, 302.

with the Karamanids.¹¹⁰ Not the most disturbing news for the Ottomans was the campaign of Shāhrukh, son of Timur, in Anatolia, which gave rise to great expectations throughout Christian Europe. Since 1416 Shāhrukh (1405–1447) had showed his determination to maintain the status quo established by Timur in Anatolia and not let the Ottomans press and annex the Anatolian emirates, those of the Karamanids and Jandarids in particular. The contemporary sources attribute to him a grandiose plan to invade the Ottoman dominions in Anatolia and Rumelia and return to Azerbaijan via Moldavia and Kaffa.¹¹¹ But in 1429, when he invaded eastern Anatolia, his immediate concern was to crush the rising power of the Turcoman Karakoyunlu there, which threatened Timurid rule in Azerbaijan.

The common danger brought the Ottomans and Mamluks much closer to each other. Apart from the Timurid threat, the project of a Karamanid-Cypriot-Venetian alliance was against the interests of the Mamluks, who had invaded Cyprus in 1426 and made king Janus a vassal, while the Karamanids were considered to be under Mamluk protection. At any rate, this Mamluk-Ottoman rapprochement would continue in the future, and turn against western Christendom, Rhodes in particular, in the coming decades.

On March 29, 1429, Venice finally declared war against the Ottomans, whose growing naval power and continual attacks on Falsoma and other Venetian possessions in the Aegean had become distressing. By early March a Turkish fleet had appeared before Thessalonica.¹¹² The senate believed that the Ottomans had decided to finish this dispute once and for all.

During the long struggle for Thessalonica, the Ottoman tactics consisted of naval attacks on the Venetian possessions and merchant marine in the Aegean,¹¹³ while sustaining a long blockade which aimed to force the city to surrender by ruining its trade and starving its inhabitants, a tactic successfully used by the Ottomans against other cities with strong fortifications and large populations since the fall of Bursa

110. Bergh, *Geographie*, I, 406; Idem, *Notes et extraits*, I, 102; the senate's decision is dated August 28, 1424.

111. *Foris*, op. cit., II, 152.

112. Bergh, *Notes et extraits*, I, 486–488; the Ottomans succeeded in capturing two Venetian ships; the report is dated March 29, 1429. Venice, at this time, attempted to use the false "Mystic" (pretender of the Christian sultan, at Thessalonica to cause divisions in Murād's army; see *ibid.*, I, 488–490, dated May 10, 1429.

113. The Ottoman attack on Falsoma, Modon, and Cypris in the spring of 1428 was particularly disastrous, reminiscent of the sack of Limas Pasha in the previous century; see Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 37.

in 1526. As vividly reflected in Venetian correspondence, Venice had to feed the city by sea, mainly from Crete, and eventually the starving populace turned against their new masters. The Ottomans had sympathizers and supporters among the Greeks, especially the Greek clergy.

Venetian tactics were to cut off the Ottomans' passage between Anatolia and Rumelia at the Dardanelles, to support the Karamanids, and to chase the Ottoman fleet away from Thessalonica.¹²³ In June 1429 the senate offered Sigismund a new project of alliance with emphasis on the occupation of the Dardanelles and Gallipoli.¹²⁴ During the summer and autumn Murad had to watch with anxiety Shāhrukh's movements on his borders in Anatolia, and be content with the raids of his frontier forces in the Morea and Albania, while the Venetian fleet under Andrew Mocenigo threatened Gallipoli.

Shāhrukh's victory against the Karakoyunlu in the battle of Salmās on September 17-18, 1429, emboldened the Venetians, who reminded Murad of the danger from the east.¹²⁵ Shāhrukh returned to Azerbaijan for the winter, and Murad called the Anatolian forces under the able general Hamza, conqueror of Smyrna, to Europe in February 1430. Thessalonica was taken on March 29, 1430. In his letter to his friend the Mamluk sultan Barsbay, Murad II presented it as a victory for Islam, and considered it as the elimination of a great danger to the Ottoman state.¹²⁶

The fall of Thessalonica came as a surprise to the Venetians; Silvestro Mocenigo was then cruising off the coast of Epirus. In the summer of 1430, while Shāhrukh was still in Azerbaijan, the Venetian fleet attacked Gallipoli and cut off all communications on the Straits. Acting on behalf of the sultan, Hamza signed a peace treaty in July 1430 (ratification September 4, 1430). Venice recognized the Ottoman possession of Thessalonica, and guaranteed security for Ottoman communications on the Straits. By agreeing to pay a yearly tribute of 236 ducats Venice also recognized Ottoman overlordship at Patras, where Latin rule was challenged by the Greeks and Turks. For his part, the sultan recognized Venetian sovereignty over its Albanian possessions — Durazzo, Scutari, and Antivari (Bar). Seven years of occupation of Thessalonica and the resulting Ottoman war had cost the republic over 700,000 ducats.

123 *Istori, Note et cartelle*, I, 490, instructions to the captain-general Andrew Mocenigo, dated May 13, 1429; for the Karamanids see *ibid.*, I, 302.

124 *Ibid.*, I, 494.

125 *Ibid.*, I, 505, note 3.

126 *Forûdâs*, *op. cit.*, I, 190.

The capture of Thessalonica marked the resumption of an aggressive Ottoman policy in the Balkans, the first goal being the strengthening of their rule in Albania and Epirus. The despotate of Ioannina (Yiouna) was occupied, and Charles II Tocco accepted Ottoman suzerainty over Arta in 1430, while Venice took the Ionian islands of Leucas (Santa Maura), Zante, and Cephalonia under its protection.

In the following year Tarakhan made his power over the Morea felt by demolishing the Hexamilion fortifications once again. But Albania would be the main arena of the Ottoman-Venetian rivalry in the ensuing half century. So close to Italy and so vitally important for Venetian communication with the world outside the Adriatic Sea, Albania received sustained attention and support from Venice, Naples, and the papacy against the establishment of Ottoman rule, and this support — in addition to the particular characteristics of the land and people — was responsible for the long and stiff resistance the Ottomans encountered.

Albania was considered by the Ottomans as a base to invade Italy and by the Italian states as their first defense line and as a bridgehead for a crusade against the Ottomans. During the fifteenth century the papacy's growing concern and zeal to organize crusades against the Ottomans was more related to the direct Ottoman threat to the papal states than to the deliverance of the Holy Land. The Aragonese kings of Naples fought in Albania against the Ottomans for their own security from the 1430's on,¹²⁷ and an Ottoman invasion of the Ancona area was felt to be an imminent danger throughout the second half of the fifteenth century. It was, however, the Venetians' naval superiority, as well as their building of strong defense lines on the islands in the Adriatic and Ionian seas and along the Albanian coasts, that really deterred the Ottomans from an invasion and gave a sense of security to the Italians. The Ottomans almost never planned or attempted an invasion of Italy without first eliminating the Venetian factor either by an agreement or by direct occupation of the Venetian bases in the area. Interestingly enough, throughout this period from 1430 on Ottoman diplomacy tried to further its Albanian policy by taking advantage of dissensions among the Italian states, between Venice and Milan or between the papacy and Venice or Naples. In any event, the period from 1430 to 1479 witnessed a crucial struggle between Venice and the Ottomans for the control of the Albanian coasts, the first defense line of Venice and Italy.

Thanks to an unusual wealth of documentation on Albania from

127. See Comma, "La Politica orientale di Alfonso di Aragona," loc. cit., Narbonne, "Bibliographie V," pp. 7-125.

the Italian archives for this period,¹²⁸ and to the recently discovered Ottoman surveys of the country,¹²⁹ we are now able to evaluate the Italian involvement as well as internal conditions of the Albanian insurrections from 1432 on. Following their conquest of Thessalonica and Janina the Ottomans made a survey of Albania in 1431-1432. The Ottoman survey book of 1432, which includes additional entries down to the mid-fifteenth century, shows that several Albanian seigniorial families were deprived of part of their lands, which were given to the Ottoman timar-holders, and Albanian clans in general resented being subjected to Ottoman taxation and the control of a centralist administration. Since the Ottomans could not establish complete control of the seacoast, and since Venetians gave refuge and aid to the rebels, rebellion became endemic in Albania in this period. But the actual situation was much more complex because Albanian lords shifted their loyalty between Venice and the Ottomans according to circumstances. Moreover, as was the case in the Morea, Serbia, and Bosnia, the Ottoman frontier begs in Albania acted as local lords, and achieved a kind of political equilibrium in the region.

During the Thessalonica war the northern Albanian lord John Castriota, father of Scanderbeg, had accepted Venetian protection, but after the fall of Thessalonica the Ottomans forced him to recognize the sultan's overlordship. The rebellion in southern Albania, apparently a direct outcome of the Ottoman survey of 1432, proved to be much more serious.¹³⁰ Under the leadership of local lords Thopia Zenevisti and George Araniti, whose lands had been given to Ottoman soldiers, a series of insurrections broke out in the coastal and mountainous areas, and Ottoman timar-holding sipahis were massacred. Despite several reprieves at the hands of the Ottoman frontier begs, Albanian rebellion simmered until 1443, when Scanderbeg turned against the Ottomans and took on the leadership of the Albanian resistance.¹³¹

Emerging at a time when Christian Europe was ardently preparing for a crusade to drive out the Ottomans from the Balkans, Scanderbeg was destined to become the symbol of the crusade (once a Moslem, he had returned to Christianity), and later, after his successful guerrilla warfare against the Ottomans, and defeating four armies under the sultans in 1448, 1450, 1466, and 1467, he would be acclaimed

128 See Meloni, *Acta albaniensia recentia*, vols. XV-XIX.

129 The Ottoman survey of Albania dated 1432 is printed in *Silveti defter-i ahval-i Arvanid*, ed. Isaković.

130 See Isaković, "Anararshia" in *Grupeti historikopolitike pasqyruar te Isakender Beg Dyzakutia Muzaka*,² Fierë ve Janinë, 1-2 (1952), 152-173.

131 For Scanderbeg see Isaković, "Isakender Beg," pp. 136-146.

throughout Italy as the defender of the faith and of Europe. In 1430 pope Nicholas V (1447-1455) called on all the Christian powers to assist him. Scanderbeg finally had to acknowledge the suzerainty of king Alfonso I of Naples (March 26, 1450) and agree to hand Croia over to the king's forces. In 1457 pope Calixtus III appointed Scanderbeg "captain-general of the Holy See." But historical reality was far from the Christian or humanistic Europe's image of him. Most of the time he acted as a mercenary or clan chief subordinated by Venice, the king of Naples, or the pope. Also, far from achieving national unity, he restricted his sphere of activity to northern Albania. Once, in 1438, an Ottoman *subashî* of Croia himself, he had rebelled against the sultan in 1443 to recover his father's domains, when the Ottoman sovereignty in the Balkans was on the verge of collapse. Scanderbeg's ambition was often challenged by other Albanian clan chiefs, resulting in local feuds.

While the Ottomans and the Italian powers, including the papacy, confronted each other in the sensitive area of Albania, the real front of the struggle between Christian Europe and the Ottoman empire was the middle Danube, though these two fronts were often connected, as when in 1404 Sigismund made contact with the defeated Albanian lords. Later, in 1448, John Hunyadi would try to combine his operations in the Balkans with Scanderbeg's. After the capture of Thessalonica, the Ottoman pressure had increased to strengthen Turkish control of the buffer states of Wallachia, Serbia, and Bosnia. Through his embassy in 1431, Sigismund and in his turn asked the sultan to recognize his overlordship of these countries.

In 1434 the Hungarian king got the upper hand in the struggle for suzerainty by receiving to his court the allegiance of the rulers of Serbia and Bosnia, and the king's protégé, Vlad II "the Devil" (or "the Dragon", Dracul), replaced the Ottoman favorite, his brother Aldea, in Wallachia. The following year Shāhrūkh's renewed campaign against the Karakoyunlu in eastern Anatolia and the Karamanid attack against the Ottomans were most encouraging news for the king.¹¹² Shāhrūkh invited all the Anatolian emirs, including Murad II, to recognize his overlordship in July 1435. To punish the Karamanids, Murad waited for the return of Shāhrūkh with his powerful army to Central Asia.

Sigismund died January 9, 1437, and Hungary plunged into an internal crisis over the succession. A terrible peasant insurrection against excessive exploitation by feudal lords broke out in Transylvania in the

spring of 1437, culminating in the battle of Bobalna. Ottoman pressure was one of the excuses to increase the tax burden on the peasantry. The Ottomans thought it was time to attack and restore their power in the middle Danube against Hungary. In 1438 the sultan himself at the head of his army invaded Hungary. According to an Ottoman document¹³³ Murad crossed the Danube at the Kamen, near Vidla, bombarded Severin, attacked Mchadia and Mühlenbach, and after following the river Maros (Mureş) laid siege to Hermannstadt (Szabes), the center of Transylvania, while his raiders forayed all over the land. He returned through Wallachia and crossed the Danube at Giurgiu. In this campaign the Serbian and Wallachian princes, as loyal vassals, led the Ottoman army. The Transylvanian peasantry profited from the Ottoman invasion to take up arms against their rulers again in 1438.¹³⁴

Believing that Hungarian resistance had collapsed, the Ottomans occupied the Serbian despotate; Smederevo fell August 27, 1439, and the frontier beg İsa of Skopje laid siege to Yajce (Jajce), capital city of Bosnia, and forced king Tvrtko II to pay a yearly tribute of 2,500 ducats. The Serbian silver mines at Novo Brdo, vitally important for supplying silver to Italy via Ragusa, were captured by the Ottomans, and in 1439 the export of silver to the west was prohibited.¹³⁵ In 1440 Murad II, in order to crown his successes, attempted to capture Belgrade, the gate to central Europe, which had been occupied and fortified by the Hungarians since 1427. His defeat at Belgrade and the emergence of John Hunyadi swung the pendulum in the reverse direction. Hunyadi reorganized the Hungarian frontier forces, and, perhaps more important, took into his service Hesseite mercenary troops who with their wagonburg tactics were to revolutionize warfare in the Balkans. Ottoman raiders, invading Transylvania under the frontier lord Mezid, were crushed in 1441, and the reinforced Ottoman army of Rumelia under the beglerbeg Şehabeddin, which was sent to make up for the defeat in the following year, failed miserably. Hunyadi's victories set off vibrations throughout Christian Europe and heightened the crusading spirit in the west.¹³⁶

[133] Jusick, "Byzantium and the Origin of the Crusade of 1444 under the Light of Turkish Sources," *Actes du XII^e Congrès international des études byzantines*, II (Belgrade, 1946), 129-135.

[134] Stefan Patai, *La Révolte paysanne de Transylvanie des années 1437-1438* (Bucharest, 1946), pp. 34-107.

[135] The Christian conquest of Novo Brdo, a center of silver production, took place on June 27, 1441, see Jusick, *Geschichte der Serben*, II, 178.

[136] Pope Eugene IV (1431-1457) celebrated the victories resulting "in vain slaughter of the infidels" as signs of God's democracy for Christians; see Salzman, *The Papacy*, II, 68.

The negotiations for the union of the Greek church with Rome and for a crusade were taken up in Rome more zealously than ever when, in the wake of the fall of Thessalonica, the Byzantines had serious fears of the Ottoman capture of Constantinople. The Golden Horn was then closed off by the chain at its entrance. Emperor John VIII Palaiologus (1425-1448) himself left for Italy on November 24, 1437, to attend the council in Ferrara (and then, from February 1439 on, in Florence) and finally to conclude the union of the Latin Catholic and Greek Orthodox churches. This time high dignitaries of the Greek church, including the patriarch Joseph II, accompanied the emperor. The union of the churches was declared in Florence on July 6, 1439. For the crusade, the real objective of the Greeks, a plan was offered to the council by John Torcello (or Torzello), the emperor's "chambellan".¹³⁷ In their efforts to persuade the west to launch a crusade, the Greeks claimed that to defeat the Ottomans it was sufficient to invade the Balkans with a crusading army of 80,000. In the Balkans, he added, not only would the regular forces of the Serbian despots, the Greeks of the Morea, and the Albanians join the crusaders, but also Christian soldiers in the service of the sultan, 50,000 in number, would desert to the side of the west. According to Torcello, the bulk of the Ottoman soldiery were not as well armed as the westerners. To sell the project the Greeks further asserted that the recovery of the Holy Land would be an easy task for the westerners after the Ottomans' defeat.¹³⁸

The union was the decision of the ruling elite, who saw the sole hope for the salvation of Byzantium in full co-operation with the west. It was, however, a decisive step which opened a critical period ending with the fall of Byzantium.¹³⁹ Thus far the emperors, anticipating the protests of the conservative Orthodox masses and a strong reaction on the part of the Ottomans, had acted with caution on this matter. As soon as John VIII was back in Constantinople, the sultan sent an envoy to inquire about what had occurred in Florence. The emperor tried to conceal the real political objective of the union,¹⁴⁰ but as is clear from the contemporary Ottoman sources¹⁴¹ the Ottomans were fully aware of the negotiations for preparation of a crusade against

137 On Torcello see *ibid.*, II, 46, note 163.

138 Torcello's report is in *Barbaros of La Broquerie*, ed. Schafie, and see *La Broquerie's* criticisms, pp. 263-274; cf. *Somers, The Papacy*, II, 46, note 167.

139 Sphrantzes, ed. Bellier, p. 173, ed. Vasil Gecov (Bucharest, 1960), p. 171.

140 Ducas, *op. cit.*, II, 114-115; *ibid.*, p. 118.

141 *Chapman-Sells, Akkari*, pp. 2-4, see also *Perfidis, op. cit.*, I, 623-624, and *Papa, BM* 424, MS. arabe no. 4474, fol. 113^v-114^r.

themselves, and from this time on a strong party, mostly from among the military leaders, claimed that unless Byzantium were eliminated there would be no security and no future for the Ottoman state. In *Ghazavât-i Sultan Murâd*, a recently discovered, well-informed account of the events between 1439 and 1444, the crusades of 1443 and 1444, as well as the Karamanid attacks in Asia Minor, are all attributed originally to the activities of Byzantine diplomacy. Though basically reflecting the view of the anti-Byzantine party, the claim is largely confirmed by our western sources, which tell us about activities of Byzantine diplomats in Rome, Venice, and Buda in those years.¹⁴²

Hungary, exposed directly to Ottoman attacks after the Ottoman occupation of Serbia, was prepared, under the leadership of the regent John Hunyadi, to launch a decisive war against the Ottomans. In their efforts toward this end, the Hungarian aristocracy agreed in 1440 to have Ladislas (Vladislaw III), king of Poland, as their king (László IV), provided that he vigorously pursue the struggle against the Ottomans. Hungary found that Byzantium was equally interested in the launching of a general crusade. As early as February 1442 the Byzantine envoy, John Torsello, was in Venice with the mission of visiting Buda, Rome, and other European capitals for the realization of such a crusade.¹⁴³ Once the union was realized pope Eugenius IV (1431-1447) showed great enthusiasm for the crusade. In February 1442 he appointed cardinal Julian Cesarini as papal legate to Hungary; on January 1, 1443, he invited the Christian rulers to a general crusade against the Ottomans, and in May 1443 he named his nephew Francis Condalmer commander of the fleet to cooperate with the crusader army from Hungary.¹⁴⁴ Although Venice was typically cautious enough not to engage in a direct conflict with the Ottomans, it was supporting the preparations, and agreed to build a crusading fleet of ten galleys when funds were made available.¹⁴⁵

Encouraged by the Ottoman reverses in the Balkans and by the Byzantine emperor,¹⁴⁶ the Karamanid Ibrahim Beg had made raids into the disputed territory of Aksehir (Philomelium) and Beyshehir in late 1442, and again in the spring of 1443. Murad II forced him to sign

142. See Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, II (Paris, 1899), index, p. 336, at: Jean VIII Paléologue; Halucki, *The Crusade of Hama*, pp. 32-33. Halucki tries to prove that there was no coordination by king Ladislas of Hungary or Sigismond of the treaty of Adrianople of June 12, 1444. Dejeuville, "L'Union 1441," was critical of Halucki's thesis, and *Ghazavât-i Sultan Murâd* now supplies Ottoman evidence that Halucki is incorrect; see below, note 148.

143. Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, II, 85; Thiers, *Algerie*, III, no. 2508.

144. Sarrailh, *The Papacy*, II, 98-99.

145. Thiers, *Algerie*, III, nos. 2606, 2620; Sarrailh, *The Papacy*, II, 75, note 151.

146. Ghazavât, p. 4.

a peace agreement after a swift and particularly brutal raid into Karaman in the summer of 1443, and then returned to Rumelia in the autumn. The crusaders' army under Ladislas, the Hungarian king, John Hunyadi, *voivode* of Transylvania, and George Brankovich, despot of Serbia, crossed the Danube at Belgrade early in October, when the Ottoman provincial cavalry had been scattered and returned home. The crusading enthusiasm inspired by Hunyadi led a great number of volunteers to join the regular forces of the Hungarian magnates. The whole army, estimated to consist of 25,000 men, included an important mercenary force hired with funds given by the Serbian despot, and, in addition, a contingent of 3,000 Serbian and 5,000 Polish soldiers. As in 1396, the bulk of the army consisted of Hungarians, which demonstrates the fact that the "crusade" was basically a Hungarian undertaking.

The Ottoman chronicle, *Ghazavât*,¹⁴⁷ clarifies many important points concerning "the long campaign". In explaining the successes of the Christian army, the Ottoman sources in general emphasize the disagreement and lack of cooperation between the Ottoman frontier forces under Turakhan and the sipahi army under Kasim, beglerbeg of Rumelia. These sources are silent, however, on the most important battle of the whole campaign, which took place at Bolvans in the plain of Nish on November 3, 1443. Here the Ottoman forces mustered under Turakhan and Kasim were defeated in their attempt to halt the advance of the crusaders. Piroi and Sofia soon fell and, according to *Ghazavât*, Bulgarians welcoming and helping the invading army elected a "vladika" as their head in Sofia. The sultan, who had been in Sofia, had burned down the city before his retreat. In a letter to the Venetian senate from Sofia dated December 4, 1443, cardinal Cosarini proclaimed the "flight of the sultan".

To protect the Maritsa valley leading to his capital, Adrianople, the sultan fortified all the passes through the Balkan range, and met the crusader army at Zlatitsa pass. Exhausted by cold and hunger, the Christian army was beaten at the battle of Zlatitsa and forced to retreat on December 12, 1443.

In pursuit of the enemy, the sultan fell upon the Christian army at Melchiticha near Sofia on December 24.¹⁴⁸ His attack failed mainly because the crusaders sheltered themselves in their camp, surrounded by war-wagons reinforced by guns. It was this tactic which made possible

¹⁴⁷ For a comparison of the information supplied by *Ghazavât* with western sources, see my notes in the volume of this work (Aubrey, 1978), pp. 94-111.

¹⁴⁸ *Ghazavât*, 22-23, states that sultan Murad was present at the battle.

the long retreat under constant attack by the harassing Ottoman forces. On January 2, 1444, at the mountain pass at Kunovitsa, between Plovdiv and Nish, Hunyadi inflicted a defeat on the pursuing Ottoman army; among the captives was Mahmud, husband of the sultan's sister. The retreating crusader army reached Belgrade on January 25. When he reached Buda safely the king dismounted and went barefoot to the church in gratitude to God. The pope sent a consecrated cap and sword to the king, and throughout Europe the victory was celebrated with great joy and religious fervor. Never before had a Christian army advanced so deep into Ottoman territory. Following the crusade, the Ottoman military structure throughout the Balkans seemed to dissolve as local lords in Ottoman service tried to gain their independence, among them Scanderbeg in Albania and despot Constantine Palaiologus in the Morea. Vlad II Dracul turned against the Ottomans and recognized Hungarian suzerainty, thus impairing the Ottoman position in Bulgaria.

During the summer of 1444 there was panic among the Turks in Rumelia and, as *Ghepardî* put it, the well-to-do were leaving Rumelia for Asia. There, however, the Karamanid Ibrahim Beg had renewed his attack and occupied the territory in dispute in the spring of 1444.

The sultan had made contact with the king of Hungary as early as January 1444, promising to revive the Serbian despotate as a buffer between the two countries.¹⁴⁹ The sultan's wife Mara, George Brankovich's daughter, played an important role in the opening of negotiations in March and April of 1444. Hoping to recover his despotate, Brankovich did everything possible to realize this peace. He attempted to persuade Hunyadi to work for peace by giving up to him his own small domain in Hungary (Vilagos and 120 villages). Actually, Hunyadi agreed to this to gain time to prepare the crusade. "The long campaign" was to be completed in 1444, and the Ottomans driven out of the Balkans. Later, Hunyadi was to be promised the kingdom of Bulgaria. It is obvious that for him "peace" was a war trick.

The Hungarian-Serbian embassy to the sultan concluded a peace treaty in Adrianople on June 12, 1444. The sultan had to agree to the revival of the Serbian despotate, which had been annexed to the Ottoman empire in 1439. The Ottomans even had to surrender Golubats, the principal Ottoman fortress on the Danube since 1422. In return, the king recognized Ottoman rule over Bulgaria. The Hungarians and

149. For the treaty of Adrianople (or Sengulhis) and the period between 1443 and 1453 in general, see Jusicki, *Flotă de la imperiul otoman în secolul XV* (Austria, 1954).

the Ottomans both promised not to cross the Danube to attack. The Serbian despot was to remain under the sultan's suzerainty as a tributary prince. Vlad Dracul was included in the peace treaty as an Ottoman tributary prince but under Hungarian protection. The sultan solemnly ratified the treaty by oath in the presence of the ambassadors. In order to take the oaths from the king, the despot, and Hunyadi and to implement the surrender of the fortresses in Serbia to the despot, the sultan sent Baha-oghlu Sulaiman¹⁵⁰ to Hungary. By the peace treaty Hungary had attained the objectives it had pursued for decades. Beyond this, any continuation of war would have to be a real crusade to eliminate Ottoman rule in the Balkans and rescue Constantinople.

Already, however, on April 15, 1444, the king had given his oath in the presence of cardinal-legate Cesarini to continue the crusade that summer.¹⁵¹ But there was strong opposition in Hungary to the continuation of the war. In April the Hungarian diet did not approve the preparations for war. Those in favor of peace gave priority to improvement of internal conditions in Hungary and Poland, while the war party believed in the potential success of a crusade and its advantages for the king's position in Hungary. The pope's legate Cesarini and John de' Reguardati, the Venetian envoy in Buda, vigorously supported the partisans of war. Already, in the winter, the Venetian senate had formally notified the king of its resolution to join the crusade and send a fleet to the Straits to cut off Ottoman communications between Asia and Europe; this fleet left Venice on June 15, 1444. At this point Venice expected the imminent collapse of the Ottoman empire, and planned to occupy Gallipoli, Thessalonica, Albania, and even some ports on the Black Sea. The news of the departure of the fleet reached Hungary in July and definitely had a strong influence on the decision to go to war. In his letter dated July 30, 1444, John VIII Palaeologus told the king that it was the most opportune moment to destroy the Ottomans, since Murad II had crossed over to Anatolia, and that the peace treaty had thus served its real purpose.

Despot Constantine in the Morea promised his military coöperation with the crusaders, and had already taken the offensive. Byzantine diplomacy also appears to have been responsible for the coöperation of the Karamanids with the despot and Hungary.¹⁵² Within the Balkans Scanderbeg and Gjin Zenevsi in Albania, as well as the Albanians and Vlachs in Thessaly, were in rebellion, and king Tvrtko II

150. László, in 1473, the Ottomans refused at the siege of Constantinople.

151. See above, note 142.

152. Iamblich, *Flotilla above*, p. 33.

of Bosnia had recovered Srebrenitsa. All these developments during the summer made the Hungarian court believe that the chances for success of a crusade could not be better at any other time.

Murad II had crossed over to Anatolia against the Karamanids on July 12, 1444, but instead of fighting he signed a peace treaty with them in early August at Yealabekhis, giving up the long-disputed area to them. Then, believing he had guaranteed peace in the east had won by eliminating the main issues of conflict with the Hungarians and the Karamanids, he abdicated in favor of his son Mehmed II, then only twelve years old, thus leaving all power in the hands of the grand vizir Chandarli Khah. A fierce rivalry soon broke out between Khah and the tutors of the young sultan for power in Adrianople. The Byzantine emperor then released the Ottoman prisoner Orkhan, who went to the Dobruja to win over the frontier raiders to his cause. An uprising of the Hurufi dervishes in Adrianople occurred at the same time, in the summer of 1444. This chaotic state of affairs in the Ottoman empire was used as a further argument by those in the Hungarian capital advocating a crusade.

On August 15, 1444, at Szegedin, by taking the oath in the presence of Balta-oghlu Suleiman, the sultan's ambassador, king Ladislas completed the formal ratification of the treaty concluded in Adrianople on June 12.¹³³ The king did so upon the insistence of the despot, since otherwise Balta-oghlu would not evacuate and surrender the fortresses in Serbia. On August 4, 1444, while negotiations continued at Szegedin on this key point, the king proclaimed under oath a manifesto to the Christian world about his firm decision to continue war against the Ottomans. The Venetian senate, however, thought this was not a sufficient guarantee, and decided to act cautiously in its relations with the sultan. It can be concluded that Ladislas, and Hunyadi in particular, were determined to continue the war against the Ottomans in 1444, but did not want to jeopardize their diplomatic success of the recovery of the Serbian despotate for the sake of a "formality". Besides, cardinal Cesarini assured the king that an oath sworn to an "infidel" without the pope's approval was not canonically binding, and reminded him of the possibility of excommunication if he violated his solemn promises for the crusade.¹³⁴

The crusaders' army, 16,000 men under Ladislas and Hunyadi, crossed the Danube near Belgrade on September 18-22, 1444. The Serbian

133. *Ibid.*, pp. 1-52; Fek, "Crisis d'Annona," pp. 42-43; also, "Anteur de la croisade de Vienne," p. 172.

134. Ziskewitz, *Czechoslavak*, I, 672-674.

despot George Brankovich remained neutral. According to *Ghazawir* the native Bulgarian peasants again cooperated with the invading army. The Wallachian army, 4,000 to 7,000 strong, under Vlad Dracul, joined the crusaders near Nicopolis. The Christian high command decided to capture Adrianople, the Ottoman capital, without wasting time on the way at the fortresses of Vidin, Nicopolis, Turnovo, and Provadiya (Provdi), which put up stiff resistance, while Shumen and Petrich were taken by storm. On November 9 the Christian army besieged and took Varna on the Black Sea, where it was to establish contact with the crusading fleet, which included eight papal, six or eight Venetian, four Burgundian, and two Ragusan galleys.¹⁵⁵ The fleet was not successful in blocking the passage of the Anatolian army under Murad, who was hastily called from Bursa to assume the high command on October 20, 1444.

The Ottoman army forced the crusaders to a pitched battle before Varna on November 10. All passages for possible retreat of the Christian army were intercepted. At the battle, both wings of the Ottoman army were routed, and then Ladislas with his heavy cavalry charged straight on Murad's camp, where the decisive battle took place. The scattered Ottoman cavalry gathered around the sultan's flag and fought back. "When the king," *Ghazawir* says, "saw that the Christian troops began to scatter in defeat around him, he was panicked and did not know what to do. Although he tried to rearrange his troops he failed. While he was running to and fro alone one of the Ottoman soldiers struck him a strong blow with a mace, which threw him off his horse. The janissaries and azabs crowded around him and struck him with their axes." Ladislas's death was followed by a general debacle of the crusader army. Hunyadi, however, was able to retreat safely, thanks to his wagon-burg tactics.

There is a consensus that Varna was a turning point in eastern European history. In Poland, those opposing the idea of a crusade against the Ottomans got the upper hand,¹⁵⁶ and Hungary entered another crisis of succession. Now Ottoman control in the Balkans was reestablished more firmly than ever. Murad II resumed the Ottoman throne in 1446 as a result of grand vizir Khalk's maneuvers against his rivals, Zaganus and Shehabeddin, tutors of the young sultan Mehmed II. In order to reassert Ottoman sovereignty, Murad embarked upon a series of campaigns against despot Constantine in the Morea (autumn 1446) and Scanderbeg in Albania (1448 and 1450). Hunyadi did not give up

¹⁵⁵ Saitou, *The Papacy*, II, 85-86. On the crusade of Varna see below chapter VII.
¹⁵⁶ Balachy, *From Phoenix to Beast* (Rome, 1980), pp. 73-74.

his struggle against the Ottomans after Varna. In 1443, while a Venetian fleet under Alvise Loredan came to watch the Ottomans on the Dardanelles, the Wallachian voivode Vlad Dracul, with the support of Hunyadi, reconquered Giurgiu from the Ottomans, and the following year Vlad defeated an invading army under the frontier beg David (spring 1446).

In 1448, when Murad attacked Scanderbeg in Albania, Hunyadi invaded Serbia as far as Kosovo, where a fierce three-day battle ended with Ottoman victory (October 17-20, 1448). In this connection, two points should be made: first, by now the Ottomans had learned *wagenburg* (in Turkish *sebur-jengi*) tactics and increased their firepower. Second, since the 1444 agreement of Vésztőbél the Karamanids had cooperated with the Ottomans; a Karamanid contingent fought against the Hungarians at Kosovo in 1448. Also, in this period, a sense of solidarity and friendship ruled the relations between the Ottomans and the Mamluks, who were both threatened by the Timourid Shāhrukh and by the crusaders. The Mamluks, vassals of the kings of Cyprus since 1426, tried unsuccessfully to subjugate the Hospitallers of Rhodes by sending a fleet against the island in the summer of 1444.

Perhaps most important of all, the defeat at Varna sealed the fate of Byzantium. The union of the churches and the idea of the crusade suffered a deep setback in all the Greco-Slavic world. The Greeks and other Balkan peoples accommodated themselves to the idea of living under an Islamic state rather than under the Catholic Venetians and Hungarians. It should be added that by this time the Ottoman state was fully transformed into a classic Islamic *malanate* with all its underpinnings, and that an actual social revolution was introduced into the Balkans by a state policy efficiently protecting the peasantry against local exploitation and the dominance of feudal lords and extending an agrarian system based on state ownership of land and its utilization in small farms in the possession of peasant households. As early as 1432, Bertrandon of La Brocquière, a Burgundian spy, had observed that Murad II had immense resources in his hands with which to conquer Europe if he wished to do so.¹²⁷

127 *Le Voyage d'Outremer* (Belgrade, 1908), p. 132: "Vil royaume ouvrier le peuplé de q'il a et en grant nombre, Vro le peuplé ouvrier q'il royaume en le combat, et aussi il voy l'empereur chet et en compaignie une grant partie."

VIII

THE CRUSADE OF VARNA

The defeat of the crusaders under king Sigismund at Nicopolis on September 25, 1396, ended, for almost half a century, any concerted military opposition to Ottoman expansion in the Balkans. The European provinces that had been overrun by the Turks remained tributary

The letters of Aeneas Sylvius Piccolomini, a secretary to Frederick III in Vienna, were edited by Rudolf Wölgast, *Der Briefwechsel des Aeneas Sylvius Piccolomini* (Pontus rerum ecclesiasticarum, Abtheilung II, vols. LXX, LXXI, LXXVII, and LXXVIII, Vienna, 1896-1898). His writings, *Opera postea edita omnia*, were published in Basel, 1531 (repr. Frankfurt am Main, 1907). The *Commentarii* were translated into English by Florence A. Gregg and Lorena C. Gahan (Smith College Studies in History, vols. XXII, XXV, XXX, XXXV, XLIII, Northampton, Mass., 1917-1917). The Latin text of the *Commentarii de gente Christi Bartholomaei* was published with English translations by Danya Hay and Wáldid E. Smith (Oxford, 1967).

Some of the sources for the crusades in the fifteenth century have been treated by Nicolas Jorga, *Notes et extraits pour servir à l'histoire des croisades du XVe siècle* (2 vols., Paris, 1899-1906). The deliberations of the Western princes have been summarized by Freddy Thiéry, *Algèrie des délibérations de l'état de Naples concernant le Royaume* (2 vols., Paris and The Hague, 1870-1911).

The principal Greek sources for the events are Laonicus Chalcocondyles, *De Origine et rebus Byzantinis* (ed. Ioánnis Ioánn. CSFG, Bonn, 1843, and ed. Eugen [Jesse] Daskal, *Historiarum de moreis*, 2 vols. in 3, Bucharest, 1912-1917), George Sphrantzes, *Chronicon mirum* (PG, 136, and ed. Vasile Gheorg, Bucharest, 1946), and Ducas, *Allegoria byzantina* (ed. Bekker, CSFG, Bonn, 1815; and ed. Ducas, *George novo-hermann* 1341-1361, Bucharest, 1913).

The naval campaign is narrated by John (Johann) of Wartha, uncle of the Burgundian admiral William of Wartha, in *Recessus et cronica et archiepiscopus latoris de re Genui Aragonie, a princeps armatus Regis*, ed. Wilhelm Hardy and Edmund L. C. F. Hardy (Bella Series 59, 2 vols., 1864-1896; repr. Neudruck, Leichlingen, 1965-1972). The records of expenditures for the Burgundian fleet are in the Archives de Nord, Lille, and have been partially abstracted by Harel and Bernard Prost, *Archives municipales de la ville de Lille des comptes des deux de Bourgogne de la maison Harel*, 1411-1472 (2 vols., Paris, 1902-1913). An examination of the archives 1501 published by Léop. E. J. de Labande, *Les Deux de Bourgogne: Études sur les Armes, les Arts et l'Industrie pendant le XV^e siècle*. (part 2, 2 vols., Paris, 1849-1852).

The deliberations of the Reichstag for Albert II were edited by Christ. Beckhaus, *Deutsche Reichsversammlungen* (vol. XIII, Stuttgart, 1823), and by Heinrich Weigel (ibid., vol. XIV, Stuttgart, 1831, both vols. repr. Cologne, 1872; those for Frederick III by Hermann Hertz, Ludwig Quide, and Walter Klemmer (vols. XV-XVII, Stuttgart, 1903), comprising valuable reports on the progress of Turkish arms. The acts of Frederick III in the Hain-, Her-, and Steuerviertel, Vienna, Joseph Chmel, ed., *Regime chronologico-diplomaticum Frederici IV. Romanorum regis Imperatoris Habsburgensis* (Vienna, 1814; repr. Hildesheim, 1967), and supplemented by Adolph Bachmann, ed., *Urkunden und Aktenstücke zur österreichischen Geschichte im Zeitalter Kaiser Friedrichs III. und König Georgs von Böhmen, 1440-1461* (Pontus rerum ecclesiasticarum, Disquisitiones et acta, XLII, part 2, Vienna, 1879). See Heinrich Keller, *Das Reichstagsjahr König Albrechts II* (Vi-

vassal states, while sultan Bayezid I concentrated on consolidating his control over Anatolia, in which the Ottoman state had emerged as the most powerful among the many Turkish principalities.¹ Consolidation meant conquest of the Selchukid and Tarcoman emirates that had

crus. 1823), and Schenkel Nassiri, ed., *Frankfurt Nachrichtenverzeichnisse, 1594-1812* (Frankfurt, 1864-1872), for reports of Albert's campaigns.

Documentary material relating to Poland has been edited by Augustus Thomas in three important series: *Novae manuscriptorum historiarum Hungarorum scriptura illustrata* (2 vols., Bonn, 1879-1882), *Novae manuscriptorum Poloniarum et Lithuanicarum* (4 vols., Bonn, 1880-1884), and *Novae manuscriptorum Slavonarum scripturae illustratae* (2 vols., Bonn, 1863-1872). August Schellwien and Joseph Szajkál, eds., *Manuscripta mediaevalia et humaniora ex scriptis Poloniae illustrata* (18 vols., Cracow, 1874-1927; repr. New York and London, 1962) contains 11-4, 2 (1876), X2 (1895), XIV (1894), *Codex apudolensis laurenti electi quatuor*, vol. 1-3 nos. 1384-1444, ed. Szellwien, vol. 1-2 nos. 1444-1492, ed. Szajkál; vol. 2 nos. 1503-1444, ed. Anzani (Lwów), vol. 3 nos. 1503-1505, ed. Lwów. See also August Chankowski, ed., *Poloniae scripta polonicae et lithuanicae scripturae illustratae*, series I, fasc. 2, *Acta Vladislavi Jagiellonicus regis* (Poznań, 1895).

The most important narrative source for the history of Poland in this period is Jan Długosz, *Historia polonica* (2 vols., Leipzig, 1781-1782). Długosz (1453-1480) was secretary to bishop Zbigniew Oleśnicki, a constitutional adviser to Jagiello's policies, a view that is reflected in Długosz's work, written at the bishop's request. Another historian of Poland, Martin Kromer, wrote a history of Poland inspired by Długosz, *De Graecia et totius gentis Polonicae* (Basel, 1559). Kromer was secretary to bishop Peter Gómski of Cracow (1538-1545) and then to prince Sigismund Augustus, and in a position to see archival material.

Philippe Desjardins of San Olegario (1437-1496), called Callisto III, was abbot of Krzeszów and led to Poland when imprisoned in a plot against pope Paul II. He lived in the house of Gregory of Szabolc, humanist Latin tutor to the prince of Poland, and wrote a life of Oleśnicki and a history of the reign of Vladislav III, *Philippus Callisto episcopus apudensis historiae scripta per germanum in Hungaria et totius gentis Polonicae per Vladislavum Poloniam et Hungariae regem*, ed. Sacerdoti Konstantino (Münster: Polonicae Polonicae historiae, VI, Cracow, 1893), 18-162, and Iratze Lichstein, ed., *Wladislaw III von Ungarn* (Zaklad Nauk o Kulturze Austrijskiej PAN, Warszawa, 1958), 162-163, ed. 163, Warsaw, 1959.

Of the Hungarian sources Janis Thurocz (*Thronicus de Thronico*), a procurator at the court of Matthias Corvinus, wrote a history of Hungary, *Chronica Hungarorum* (Vienna, 1711, in *Scriptores rerum Hungaricarum*, I, and a Hungarian edition, ed. Miksa-Görb, in *Manuscripta Hungarica*, Budapest, 1957); although it was based on contemporary sources it is not always reliable. A more accurate source is Antonio Bonfini, *Historia Romanorum ac Hungaricarum rerum abbas PP et abbas* (Cologne, 1498), a history of Hungary to 1498, the last thirty chapters of which survive.

A fascinating account of the civil war in Hungary by Elizabeth's lady-in-waiting is *Aus den Denkwürdigkeiten der Kaiserin Katharina*, 1629-1641, ed. Stephan F. L. Hoffmeyer (Leipzig, 1846). Some interesting reactions to the Turkish invasions in Transylvania are in Franz Ehrenmann and Carl Wenzel, eds., *Ungarische Geschichte der Deutschen in Siebenbürgen* (4 vols., Hermannstadt, 1892-1897). For Hungarian-Hungarian relations see Imad Gábor and Lajos Thallóczy, eds., *Diplomatarium relationum interpublicarum regum Hungariae* (Buda-pest, 1887).

The Ottoman sources for this period are sparse, and those which speak of Várha add little truly links; see chapter VII, above, for their evidence. Várha wrote a history as Persian from 1510 to his own time in 1552 entitled *Eight Paradise Affairs* (*Asrar-i Sefid*) in the August of sultan Salim I. Nefisi wrote a history *Özbekistan-ı al-İslamiyye* (*Christ des Miris*) (*İslamiyye* and *Nefisi*), ed. Theodor Németh and Franz G. Bencsik (2 vols., Leipzig, 1951-1953), which

1. See Heil Jankó, chapter VII, above.

evolved during four centuries of Turkish invasions. Bayazid conquered and annexed the two largest of these states, Karaman (1397) and Sivas (1398), thereby extending an empire that stretched from the Euphrates to the Danube.

provides a fairly reliable chronology of events. *Tabakat* (1336-1399) were a universal history entitled *Crown of History*, relying heavily on Nizari and valuable for the policies of Murad II, part of his history was translated into French by Antoine Galland in the 18th century in *Arabic histories*, and exists in manuscript in the Bibliothèque apostolique, Salle des manuscrits. Fonds Français 4074 and 4075.

For the struggle with the Turks in Hungary see Victor von Buchmann, *Der Kampf Kaiser Sigismunds gegen die verheerende Weltmacht der Osmanen, 1393-1457* (Gießen, 1892), and Wilhelm Hoyer, *König Albrecht II, 1457-1459* (2 vols. in Prager Studien zur dem Gedenken des Österreich-erinnerndes, XI and XII; Prague, 1906-1907). In addition to the older multivolume works on Ottoman history by Lange and Joseph von Hammer-Purgstall, valuable recent studies are Halil İnalcık, *The Ottoman Empire in the Classical Age, 1300-1600*, in Norman Itzkowitz and Colin Imber (New York, 1971), and Erhan Yılmaz, *Die Geburt einer Grossmacht: die Osmanen* (Berlin, 1964). These articles give insight into the methods and objectives of Turkish conquest. David Angew, "Cristian Aspectul de la cucerirea de popoarele turcice par lui Turco," *Byzantinologia*, XVII (1956), 228-275; Omer Lütfi Barkan, "Les Déportations ottomanes: méthode de développement et de colonisation dans l'empire ottoman," *Revue de la Société des sciences historiques de l'Université d'Ankara*, XI (1949-1950), 67-122, and İnalcık, "Ottoman Methods of Conquest," *Studies Islamica*, II (1954), 101-120.

For Cosroe's life see Paul Bédari, *Géographie Cosroïte* (Kailentz, 1892); Heinrich Richarz, *Chiosios Cosroïte* (1796-1844. In: *Der letzte Aufbruch in Basel am 8. September 1491* (Münster, 1977); Ernst F. Joch, "Cosroïte Cosroïte," *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, LI (1965), 104-121; Roger Mait, "Cosroïte Cosroïte," *Dictionnaire d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastiques*, XII (1951), cols. 236-246; the latest edition of Puggie Brundis in Angelo Mai, ed., *Spécialité Cosroïte*, X (1844), 374-385; and Vasilevich de Birkoff, *The Hesperian History: Lives of Shastrosian in the Fifth Century*, in William George and Emily Watts (London, 1918).

A careful study of Polish objectives in 1440 is Vincent Zarubinski, *Władysław III Król Polski von Polen Erhebung auf den ungarischen Thron* (Leipzig, 1867). For the diplomatic negotiations see David Angew, "Die diplomatische Vorbereitung der Schlacht von Varna (1444)," *Gesellschaftliche Beziehungen für historische und soziale Wissenschaften*, II (1911), 218-234. See Franz Brügge, "Vas. Anarchy in Albania: Vor- und Nachspiel der Schlacht bei Varna, 1444," *Oriens*, III (1906), 228-263 (esp. in the English and bibliographic see *Orientalische Studien*, I, 1, Munich, 1902). In the edition of Murad II. For his battles and expeditions see Alfred Hübner, "Die Kämpfe zwischen Ungarn und den Türken, 1440-1445," *Archiv für österreichische Geschichte*, LXXVII (1866), 179-307, and Leopold Kapeller, *Die Kämpfe zwischen den Osmanen bei der Schlacht bei Varna (1444)*, 2nd ed. (Vienna, 1899).

For discussion of the alleged peace of Szeged see Angew, "Le Traité de paix de Szeged avec les Turcs (1444)," *Revue de Hongrie*, VII (1910), 215-262; Jan Dabrowski, "L'Armée 1444," *Bulletin international de l'Association polonaise des sciences et des lettres: Clavis d'histoire et de géographie*, supp. no. 6 (Cracow, 1950); Francis Pall, "Histoire de la croisade de Varna: la question de la paix de Szeged et de la rupture (1444)," *AR. 852*, XXI (1940), 144-152; and Oskar Haliczki, *The Crusade of Varna: a Discussion of Contemporary Problems* (New York, 1943). For his letters and reports of Cosroe see Pall, "Cosroe d'Ankara et la croisade contre les Turcs," *AR. 852*, XX (1939), 57-68. For his policies of Alfonso V of Portugal see Francisco Carrer, "La Política colonial de Alfonso V de Portugal," *Archivos de la provincia española*, XXXVII (1902), 3-93, 386-404, 515-634, 774-822, and XXXVIII (1903), 154-212; Constantino Manríquez, "Alfonso V, el Algarve y de Nápoles, el Dilema de Smolensko," *Archivos de la España moderna en Francia*, I (Paris, 1923), 7-135; and three articles by Pall: "Los Reinos entre la Hosa

garded Serbia as a tributary state since 1389, when Murad I defeated the Serbs at Kosovo Polje. Then challenged, Murad II led an army against Golubats, which he captured, almost taking Sigismund prisoner in the process. A peace was made which recognized George Brankovich as the despot (1427-1456) of a Serbian kingdom that served as a buffer between the two powers. Sigismund now established Belgrade as the bulwark of Hungarian defense against the Turks, Murad fortified Golubats, while Brankovich established himself at Smederevo, at the confluence of the Danube and Morava rivers. Sigismund concentrated his efforts on fighting the Hunites, who at Domalfice on August 14, 1431, decisively defeated a crusading army led by the papal legate, cardinal Julian Cesarini.

When the peace between Hungary and Serbia expired in 1431 Sigismund claimed territory in Serbia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria. These small principalities found themselves caught in a conflict between two empires with little chance of continued independent existence. By 1434 Murad had decided on a more aggressive policy in the Balkans. His objective was to expand the Ottoman territory and transform tributary vassal states into provinces of the Ottoman empire, a pattern followed in subsequent expansion.³ The more immediate objectives of the new aggressiveness were to halt Venetian advances in the Morea (Peloponnese), occupy the strategic Serbian fortresses as a prelude to an attack on Transylvania, and strengthen Ottoman control over Wallachia. Byzantium still attempted to play the role of a great empire, although the territory of the "empire" amounted to little more than the capital and the Morea. The Ottomans repeatedly besieged Constantinople, but these sieges were doomed to failure since the city could be supplied by sea and the Ottomans had not yet developed a significant moral force.⁴

The Byzantines sought aid from Catholic Europe; however, they realized that little was to be expected from the west until the schism that had since 1054 separated the Latin and Orthodox churches was healed. Moreover, the disunity of western Europe, competing nationalisms, and the desolation caused by the Hundred Years War had con-

3 Josef von Aschbach, *Geschichte Kaiser Sigismunds*, IV (Hamburg, 1867), 269 ff.; Paul Wittek, "Die in Ostbalkanien & im grossen Konstantinopel," *Berue des études orientales*, XII (1910), 1-24; Constantine Giromel, *Geschichte der Serben*, II (Paris, 1911; repr. Amsterdam, 1967), 123, 144. On Sigismund's crusades against the Hunites see Frederick G. Heymann in volume III of the present work, chapter XVII.

4 Aschbach, *The Ottoman Empire*, pp. 17 ff., and Weiss, *Die Geburt einer Grossmacht*, pp. 237 ff.

vinced the Byzantines that any significant military aid was highly unlikely.³ The only source from which Byzantium could expect concerted military action was the papacy, so Manuel II Palaeologus had continued negotiations concerning union, sending emissaries to the Council of Constance.⁴ With the removal of the Ottoman threat after Ankara, all initiative for union had vanished, and negotiations were postponed. Manuel made few effective diplomatic overtures to the west between 1402 and 1412, though he did send representatives to the Council of Constance, but not to the Council of Pisa. He concentrated his efforts in the east, recovering Thessalonica, rebuilding the Hexamilion wall, and consolidating Byzantine power in the Morea.

The Byzantines could not, however, reasonably expect aid to be sent until union was achieved, an objective that Manuel nevertheless attempted to postpone and otherwise prevent from reaching fruition. He realized that for the Byzantine populace and clergy this was an unacceptable price to pay for military aid, and he warned his son and heir that it was an unattainable objective.⁵

The accession of Murad II meant for Byzantium a period of renewed warfare. Almost immediately Constantinople was besieged, from June 10 to September 6, 1422, but the city could not be taken as long as the Turks could not maintain a naval blockade. In the following year the Turks destroyed the Hexamilion, overran the Morea, and attacked Thessalonica. In a desperate effort to save the city, the despot Andronicus Palaeologus gave it to the Venetians, from whom Murad II, nevertheless, captured it in 1430. And yet the conciliatory gestures of pope Martin V (1417-1431), including the suggestion of convening an ecumenical council that would have met the requirements of the Greeks and defraying the cost of the Byzantine delegates, met with resistance in Constantinople. On July 1, 1425, Manuel died and John VIII became sole emperor (d. 1448), and negotiations continued. When Mar-

3. John W. Baker, *Manuel II Palaeologus (1391-1425): a Study in Late Byzantine Statecraft* (New Brunswick, N.J., 1969), pp. 280 ff.

4. Raymond J. Lemay, "Les Dominicans byzantins Théodore et André Chrysobolus et les négociations pour l'union des Églises grecque et latine de 1412 à 1420," *APF*, IX (1929), 1-61. In early 1404 Manuel sent a delegation led by Nicholas Epistemonemachus, his son Andronicus, and John Blafytenus.

5. On June 12, 1422, Martin V appointed Anthony of Mena as apostolic nuncio to Constantinople. Although he had no audience with Manuel on September 16, by November 14, with Manuel recovering from a stroke, John VIII and the patriarch replied that only an ecumenical council could settle the differences between the churches. On November 2, 1423, these discussions were reported to the fathers at Pisa, and further discussions were proposed. *CF* Oll, *op. cit.*, pp. 127-300.

tin V died on February 28, 1431, a Greek embassy was en route to Rome to discuss a union council. It turned back at Gallipoli when news of the pope's death reached the crusaries.

Eugenius IV (1431-1447) continued Martin's policies, and fully accepted the concept of convening an ecumenical council to end the schism and reunite the Latin Catholic and Greek Orthodox churches. In competition with the conciliarist prelates of the Council of Basel, who "deposed" him on January 24, 1438, he conducted lengthy and intricate negotiations with John VIII, resulting in the emperor's arrival at Ferrara in March 1438, accompanied by the patriarch Joseph II and other Greek prelates. On April 9 the council, considered by the papacy but not by the conciliarists a continuation of the Council of Basel, was formally opened. Early in 1439 fear of the plague led it to move to Florence, where intensive discussion culminated in a decree of union, signed on July 5 by Latin and Greek participants, including the emperor.

This act of union represented an agreement based on political necessity, which was accepted by the higher Greek clergy. It did not take into account the hatred of the Latins by the Byzantine population and the regular clergy, who would unite successfully to prevent its implementation. Nevertheless, Eugenius could point to a very solid achievement, one which tipped the scales decisively in his favor in his struggle with the conciliarists. Thereafter Eugenius steadily reestablished papal authority. He could claim the overwhelming acceptance of union by the Byzantine hierarchy, supported by the patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem, as well as envoys of Alexius IV Comnenus, the emperor of Trebizond, the Georgians, Ruthenians, and Wallachians. John left Florence on August 26 and sailed from Venice on October 19, arriving home on February 1, 1440, only to learn of his wife's death and to face strong opposition to union.

In January 1439, well before the formal consummation of union, John VIII had had Isidore of Kiev open negotiations for aid from the papacy and the western rulers. Eugenius had responded with a delegation of three cardinals, who promised that the pope would provide the Greeks with transport and with three hundred soldiers and two ships as a permanent garrison for Constantinople. If the city were attacked, Eugenius would send ten ships for a year or twenty for six months, and if an army were needed the pope would attempt to have the European rulers send contingents to form a united army. John agreed to these proposals and requested that this agreement be placed in writing and sealed, and that arrangements be made with banks in Venice,

Genoa, and Florence for its fulfillment.¹ All parties to these negotiations realized that if Constantinople were to be adequately defended, both a land army and a naval squadron acting in unison would be needed.

Any land offensive against the Ottomans would have to cross the Balkans, presumably starting from a base in Hungary, which was part of emperor Sigismund's domain. Sigismund of Luxemburg had acquired a claim to the Hungarian crown in 1385 by his marriage to Maria, daughter of king Louis the Great of Poland and Hungary, and in 1387 had been recognized as king by the Hungarian estates. He had added the title "king of the Romans" in 1410 and that of Bohemia in 1419, though the latter was not accepted by the Czechs until 1436, after a series of unsuccessful crusades against the Hussites. He was finally crowned emperor in 1433. After Maria's death he had married Barbara of Cilly, who in 1410 bore him a daughter, Elizabeth, the heiress to his kingdoms. In 1411 he obtained from the Hungarian estates the promise that they would recognize the right of Elizabeth to the throne and elect a man to rule with her, a stipulation that was to be important during the events of 1439-1440. Elizabeth married Albert V of Hapsburg, duke of Austria, in 1422, and in 1434 the estates agreed to Sigismund's proposal that Albert should succeed him, though insisting on a formal election at the time of his accession.²

By late autumn 1437 Sigismund was in Prague, sick, and realized he was dying. He sent a message to Elizabeth and Albert to meet him at Znojmo in Bohemia, where he planned to hold a meeting of the Bohemian magnates and elicit from them recognition of the couple's rights to the throne. He reached the city on November 21, gravely ill, and obtained the promises he sought, although a formal election would still be necessary. He died on December 9 and was buried in Grosswarden (Nagyvárad) in Hungary. At his death the imperial throne and

1. Georg Haimann, ed., *Epistolae pontificales ad Concilium Florentinum spectantes*, 3 vols. (Rome, 1940-1946), II, 47, in *Concilium Florentinum, Documenta et scripturae*. On June 3 Benjamin indicated to John that loans of 80,000 florins had been negotiated from Florence and Venice. On September 23 Eugenius wrote to John VIII mentioning the promise that had been made of 100,000 fl., 117-118 and 117-120, where the pope wrote to the Council of Basel, in October 3, outlining his plans for a crusading army supported by a fleet.

2. The original agreements are lost, and we are dependent for our information on a letter written by Eitzschek during the civil war to Frederick III, published in Anton F. Gollner (Gollér), ed., *Annalen mährisch-böhmischer Fürstenthümer* (Vienna, 1762), 93 f. The 1434 agreement is also mentioned as a loan from Caspar Schick to Frederick III, in *Deutscher Reichs-Archivrat*, IX, 421. For the arrangements at Sigismund's death see W. Eitel, "Der letzte Kriegstest des Kaisers Sigismund," *Abhandlungen der Institute für österreichische Geschichtsforschung*, XX (1908), 478-482.

those of Hungary and Bohemia fell vacant. The papacy now sought to encourage and support the claims of Albert to Sigismund's possessions in the hope that Hungary, Bohemia, Germany, and Austria would be united, and thereby more effectively oppose Ottoman expansion.

After the burial Albert and Elizabeth went from Grosswardein to Bratislava to meet with the Hungarian estates, which made Albert promise to devote his energy to Hungary and not to accept the German crown without their express permission. He was to reside in Hungary and to keep the border between Austria and Hungary unchanged, lest Hungary become absorbed into the empire. In mid-December 1437 Albert and Elizabeth accepted these conditions and were elected king and queen of Hungary; they were crowned on January 1, 1438. On March 18 Albert was unanimously elected "king of the Romans", and with Hungarian approval he accepted the German throne on April 29. As for Bohemia, the estates were divided between adherents of Albert and of Casimir, the thirteen-year-old brother of king Vladislav III (Władysław) of Poland. Albert was elected king by a majority of the diet on December 27, 1437, but the Utraquists – the radical Hussites led by archbishop John Rokycana – held a rump election in March 1438 and elected Casimir king.

Albert accepted this throne in Vienna on April 16; then on April 20 the Polish estates accepted the throne for Casimir and opened hostilities by sending two armies into Bohemia in support of his claim. At this time the most powerful person at the Polish court was the bishop of Cracow, Zbigniew Oleśnicki, a devoted conciliatist who worked to have the abuses of the church corrected by the council. He sought the union of Poland and Hungary, under Polish hegemony, but opposed Casimir's acceptance of the Bohemian throne from the Hussite "heretics". Albert was crowned in Prague on June 29, and on August 12 defeated the Polish invaders at Kutná Hora. A Polish army of possibly twelve thousand men under Vladislav then invaded Silesia, but was thrown back by the Hungarians under Stephen Rongoroy, who in October stopped another Polish army which had advanced to within one mile of Breslau. Although the Polish estates led by Oleśnicki urged Vladislav to make peace, his Polish army again invaded Silesia in the early summer of 1439 while the Ottomans were attacking Transylvania and Serbia, convincing Albert and the Germans that the Poles and Turks had formed an unholy alliance. Finally a truce was arranged under papal auspices, since the Ottoman threat had now assumed serious proportions.¹⁰

10 See Jensen, *Prostředky Božského zproštění*, I, 405, for Vladislav's appeal for recog-

In the summer of 1438, as the Council of Florence debated theology and Albert was occupied in Bohemia, Murad II crossed into Europe with a large army, intent on subjugating Transylvania. He compelled Vlad II Dracul, the voivode of Wallachia (d. 1446) and a vassal of Hungary, to accompany him with his army. Although unsuccessful in attempts to take Hermannstadt (Sibiu) and Kronstadt (Brasov), the Turks burned and pillaged for over six weeks, and captured, by unreliable contemporary estimates, between seventy and eighty thousand prisoners.¹⁰ Fearing that the sultan planned to attack Serbia and Hungary, Albert invested John Hunyadi with the banat of Săbreny and the responsibility for defending the border.

Murad then demanded that George Brankovich, despot of Serbia, surrender to him the city of Smederevo, on the Danube east of Belgrade. Brankovich fortified the city but then, realizing that it could not withstand a siege, fled to Ragusa and on to Hungary, leaving his son Gregory to defend the city. At the end of May 1439 Murad invaded Serbia, besieged Smederevo, and sent raiding parties to devastate the territory between the Danube and Temesvár. Albert summoned the royal army and the Hungarian nobles to join him at Saegedin, which he reached on July 29, finding there only twenty-five thousand men. Defections and dysentery reduced their number to six thousand, too few to relieve Smederevo, which Gregory surrendered to Murad on August 29.¹¹ The sultan decided on a permanent extension of the empire, establishing Bosnia and Albania as Ottoman provinces under a governor at Skopje.

Albert withdrew to Buda and traveled toward Vienna, fatally ill with

ration of Cadmus's rights to the throne. On April 26, 1438, Eugenius appointed John Zrinski and John Berislav, archbishop of Baranja, as his legates to the peace negotiations. *Deutsche Reichsgeschichte*, XIV, 344-347. Ottobach led the Polish delegation and Caspar Schlick represented Albert of Österreich. "Caspar Schlick als Kaiserer Friedtraher III.," *Mitteilungen der Institute für Österreichische Geschichtsforschung*, VIII, Ergänzungsband (1901), 213-240. A one-half train was arranged on May 24 to last until September 25; see Georgy Poppe, ed., *Cadmus diplomatische Hauptwerke aristocraticae ac civilis*, XI (Budapest, 1894), 134 and 240, for a letter of Vladislav and Cadmus dated from 4 Trans Carova, to the papal legates promising to observe the truce.

11. *Deutsche Reichsgeschichte*, XIII-2, 324-325, which also contains reports of the Turkish destruction. Vlad Dracul had been formally vassalized by 1436, and Albert continued to address him as a vassal; see Jorge, *Manuel des royaumes et de la couronne serbienne*, IV (Paris, 1897), 45-72, and Georgy Ottobach, "Die Türkenzüge in Serbien und im Hinter des 15. Jahr hunderts," *Zeitschrift für Geschichte Osteuropas*, II (1897), 293-412. Albert had been warned by the Ragusans on March 3 that the Turks were preparing an expedition across the Danube, see Gutschik and Thümling, *Diplomatenwesen*, pp. 421-422. Albert, however, continued to divert large numbers of troops to the northern border, fearing a Polish attack; cf. Jorge, *Manuel des royaumes et de la couronne serbienne*, II (Prague, 1895), 287-288.

12. Jorge, *Geschichte des serbischen Reiches*, I (Zürich, 1898), p. 421.

dysentery. After writing a will to safeguard the heritage of the child Elizabeth was expecting, he died at Neuzemý on October 27, 1439, at the age of forty-two. His preoccupation with securing the crowns of three kingdoms had permitted the Turks to expand their Balkan conquests at the expense of Hungary, and had thwarted Eugenius's hopes for a crusade. The struggles over the succession to the Hungarian throne were to delay the crusade for another five years, and diverted the energies of the papacy to involvement in Hungarian and Polish affairs.

Elizabeth sought to have herself proclaimed regent in Austria and Hungary, but she realized that Bohemia would not accept her nor her future child. On February 22, 1440, she gave birth at Bratislava to a son, Ladislas (V) "Posthumus". After Albert's death the Hungarians had invoked the agreement of 1411 and opened negotiations in Cracow for Elizabeth's marriage to the sixteen-year-old Vladislav III of Poland, which remained stalled during her pregnancy. Then, on March 8, these negotiations culminated in a treaty recognizing Vladislav as king Ladislas (László) IV of Hungary, but the thirty-six-year-old Elizabeth refused to accept him as husband or king, and appealed for recognition of her son Ladislas, whom she placed under the guardianship of duke Frederick III of Hapsburg, Albert's successor as king of the Romans (1440-1452, emperor 1452-1493). Both Ladislas and Vladislav were crowned by the rival Hungarian factions, which were respectively supported by the Austrian and Polish armies.¹² As Elizabeth and Vladislav opened hostilities, Murad II besieged Belgrade, the key fortress protecting Hungary. Under the command of János Thallóczy the garrison defended the fortress for six months, during which the Turks reportedly lost thirty thousand men.¹³

For two years the civil war continued indecisively, with actual warfare limited to occasional skirmishing as each army devastated the lands of its adversaries. Elizabeth steadily lost ground, as her support in Hungary was eroded by the open illegality of her actions and the destructiveness of her German troops and Bohemian mercenaries, while Vladislav and Olénicki won her adherents over with acts of leniency and grants of clericalcy.¹⁴ In the spring of 1443 Eugenius attempted

12 Elizabeth was supported by the nobility Eszterházy László and by the Silesian counts Michael Kautz, Frutten Colley, and Stephen Rungger; cf. István Kertész, *Hűvölcs kritikája magyarországi királyi korszaknak*, XII (Poz. 179), 324.

13 Diapens, *Historia polonica*, XII, col. 748, describes Belgrade, "quid sit opifera portus, et praeus in Ungarum introitus, et obsidione vallatus," 748, and cf. Thaurus, *Chronica Hungarorum*, I, cap. 38.

14 Kertész, *op. cit.*, XII, 326, and Diapens, *Historia polonica*, XII, col. 779. Elizabeth sold

unsuccessfully to negotiate a truce; on February 12, 1442, with the civil war at its height, he appointed cardinal Julian Cesarini legate to Hungary with a twofold commission: to establish peace and to organize the crusade against the Turks, under the leadership of Vladislav.¹⁷

After an effort to enlist Venetian support for the planned crusade, and an unsuccessful attempt to meet Frederick III in Vienna, Cesarini joined Vladislav at Buda on May 27, and with Olódnicki away at Csecow soon became the principal adviser of the young and highly impressionable king.¹⁸ By August he had arranged a ten-month truce and a meeting between the two monarchs to enter into a permanent peace. On November 24 Vladislav and Elizabeth met at Győr, where they negotiated for three weeks under Cesarini's auspices; on December 16 they signed a treaty of peace. Suddenly, on December 24, 1442, Elizabeth died; her supporters claimed she had been poisoned on Vladislav's orders.¹⁹ Cesarini sought to have the treaty accepted by Frederick, who was carrying on the war in the name of Ladislas, but not until May 1444 did Frederick confirm it, under pressure from Eugenius. Only then was Vladislav free to turn his full attention to the Ottoman threat.

Following his unsuccessful attempt on Belgrade in 1440, Murad had taken Novo Brdo with its valuable silver mines in 1441, while Turkish raiding parties plundered as far as Belgrade before being defeated by Hunyadi, who pursued them to Smederevo.²⁰ In 1442 Murad sent Mehid Beg into Transylvania with a large army, which plundered and burned as far as Hermannstadt (Sibiu) and then moved northwestward. On March 18 they defeated Hunyadi near Alba Julia (Weissenburg), killing its bishop George Lepés, but a week later Hunyadi and Nicholas of Ujlak (called Ujlaki) decisively defeated them at Szendrő, killing

the royal jewels to pay her mercenaries, who plundered everywhere. *Kellie, Anstalts*, II, 812, indicates that on August 3 she poured the "house crown" for 2,500 florins. By December she had borrowed 2,000 florins against her Austrian estates, and by 1442 she and János Csákányi to Frederick for 1,000 florins; cf. *Matth. Rödl, Hunyadi János magyarságunk védelmében* (12 vols., Pest, 1852-1894), X, 112-113, and Ignác A. Pauler, *Geschichte von Ungarn*, ed. Ernst Kula (Leipzig, 1899), 443 ff.

17. *Notmann, Erländer*, III, 92-93.

18. See Mein, "Julian Cesarini," *loc. cit.*, and the funeral oration of Poggio, which is factual but unimpeachable, in *Mein, loc. cit.* See *Čiastkowski*, *op. cit.*, pp. 41-42, for the receipt of the Venetian letter to Cesarini. For the truce see Elizabeth's treaty of August 1442 with Nicholas Hun and Stephen Báthory from Budaörs (Prensburg).

19. Cf. János Chaz, *Geschichte Polens*, IV (Orten, 1877), p. 121, in *Geschichte der europäischen Staaten*, and Ladislaus von Szalay, *Geschichte Ungarns*, III (Budapest, 1875), 51, for a discussion of the allegations.

20. *Weiser*, *op. cit.*, p. 227, and *Isidori, The Ottoman Empire*, p. 20. See Wilhelm Schmidt, *Die Geschichte der Pforte in Siebenbürgen* (Hermannstadt, 1865). As Vladislav's accession Hunyadi was count of Transylvania; he was named voivode of Transylvania by Vladislav (1440-1450).

Mezid Beg.²⁰ Later in 1442 Hunyadi defeated two other Ottoman armies which had been devastating Wallachia.²¹ On January 5, 1443, Cesarini wrote to Venice announcing the treaty signed by Vladislav and Elizabeth, the latter's death, and Hunyadi's third victory on December 1.²²

The legate and the Venetians had been planning, throughout the fall of 1442, a crusade consisting of a land army setting out from Hungary supported by a fleet stationed in the Dardanelles.²³ The fleet's objectives were to cut communications between Anatolia and Europe, protect Constantinople, and join with the crusaders to capture the Turkish fortresses on the Danube while the main Ottoman forces were kept in Anatolia. In the reign of Murad II his European fortresses and cities were normally garrisoned sufficiently to defend the area; however, the sultan's army was kept in Anatolia during the winter months, coming to Europe only for a specific campaign. Thus a crusading army stood a good chance of overwhelming the Turkish garrisons if a naval blockade was established in the Dardanelles, since the Ottomans did not possess a navy to oppose a fleet. Constantinople could always be supplied by sea during a siege and communications with the west kept open. On September 15 the Ragusans offered, in a letter to Cesarini, to arm one galley to join a fleet in support of a land army for the duration of the campaign; they estimated that a fleet of twenty-eight ships would be required to blockade the Dardanelles effectively.²⁴

On January 1, 1443, with the civil war ended, Eugenius issued a bull levying a tenth on the entire church in order to raise funds for arming a fleet.²⁵ On January 2 the Venetian senate wrote to duke Philip III of Burgundy (1419-1467) requesting aid for the crusade, and on Janu-

20. Thurocz, *op. cit.*, ch. VI, and Chalcovondylas, *ed. better*, p. 251. KISTO, *op. cit.*, XIII 298, gives the inscription from the tomb of the bishop in Adra Julia from which we know the date of the battle: "Die Vltimo Martii anno domini millesimo CCCCLII secundo" and of Ragusines, *Die Abregé*, pp. 92 ff.

21. *Historiae Hungaricae Monumenta*, series I, XXXII, 148. For a description of the battle see Iorga, *Concheșter din amănunțel* Buchar, I, 425 V, and Kállai, *Die Schlachten*, p. 29.

22. Iorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 108-109, the legate responded to Cesarini, and pointed out that the title was yielding insufficient funds for the fleet. The vice-chancellor, Francis Confalonier had come to Venice on August 2 against a battle, and then there could be peace. The Venetians stated that the delays were detrimental to the Christian cause.

23. Cesarini was in Venice in late March, and explicated his objectives to doge Francis Forster (1421-1427); cf. Domenico Carcano, "Eugenio IV e la crociata di Varna," *Archivio della Società romana di storia patria*, LXXXI (old series, X, Rome, 1958), 45-61.

24. Iorga, *Notes et extraits*, II, 290.

25. Hebraeus, *Epistolae*, III, 66-72. The bull contains the glorious victories in Hungary and the necessity of having a land army and a fleet to fight the Turks. The cardinals have agreed to give a tenth of the income from their benefices and Eugenius has given one fifth of his income from annates and "service crassament"

ary 9 Eugenius requested ten galleys from Venice, to be armed at papal expense and sent to the Dardanelles. On April 3 the senate wrote Eugenius, confirming their offer to provide the ten galleys if the pope would pay to have them armed.²⁶ On May 8 Eugenius appointed his nephew, cardinal Francis Condalmer, legate and captain-general of the papal fleet.²⁷ On June 14 Eugenius and Alfonso of Aragon and Naples concluded peace and an agreement whereby Alfonso was to send six galleys to the Dardanelles for six months; they were, however, never sent. By July both the pope and the senate realized that preparations for a crusade could not be completed in 1443, and on December 17 Eugenius wrote to Ragusa that he hoped to have a fleet in the Dardanelles by the following summer.²⁸

In addition to the pope and Venice duke Philip of Burgundy supported the crusade. Since the crusade of Nicopolis in 1396, when Philip's father John the Fearless was taken prisoner, the idea of a military expedition against the Turks had been a recurrent theme of Burgundian eastern policy. In 1421 Philip and the duke of Bedford, John of Lancaster, had sent Gilbert of Lannoy to the east, and in 1432 Philip had dispatched Bertrand de La Broquière to Palestine, Syria, and Anatolia to report on the military situation.²⁹ In 1439 John VIII sent his chamberlain John Torcello to the duke with a plan for a war against Murad and the deliverance of the Holy Land.

Philip was also supporting the Knights Hospitaller in defense of Rhodes against the Mamluks of Egypt. In 1440 Murad signed a treaty with the Mamluks aimed at Rhodes. The lack of a navy had prevented the Ottomans from attacking the knights, who could not be placed on the defensive by Egyptian warships. Early that year sultan Iskmak az-Zahir (1438-1453) sent a fleet of nineteen galleys against Castel-
 horizzo, an island belonging to the Hospitallers off the coast of southwestern Anatolia. The knights dispatched eight galleys and four smaller ships, and forced the Mamluks to retire. On September 25, 1440, an Egyptian fleet appeared off Rhodes, but soon retired to Cyprus, and

26. *Iorga, Notes et extraits*, III, 121-122. Leonard Vener was the Venetian ambassador at the papal court. The previous October 20 the senate had learned of Eugenius's intention from Vladislaus; see *ibid.*, III, 102-103. News of the last victory was circulated throughout western Europe; Hexter, "Die Kruppa," pp. 179-202.

27. *Haefliger, Epistolae*, III, 79-80.

28. *Iorga, Notes et extraits*, III, 126-127. On May 26, 1443, the Venetians wrote to Condalmer stressing the importance of having a fleet in the Dardanelles to support the crusading army; see *ibid.*, III, 126-127, and III, 134, for Leonard Vener's letter of July 4 concerning sending a fleet the following year.

29. Oscar Gersbach, "Bourgeois and the Crusades, 1334-1453," in volume III of the present work, p. 94.

then to Egypt. The knights prepared to repel a second expected attack and appealed to the duke of Burgundy, who sent three ships under Geoffrey of Thoiry.³⁰ This squadron sailed from Sluys to Bruges, then to Lisbon, where Geoffrey inspected some ships the duke was having built there, then into the Mediterranean and the Black Sea. Little fighting occurred, and the squadron returned to Villefranche in mid-1442, Geoffrey having gained some knowledge of the eastern Mediterranean.³¹

Meanwhile, the Byzantine envoy Theodore Caristinas again visited the duke at Chalon-sur-Saône early in 1443 and appealed to him to send warships in support of the planned crusade. Philip responded by sending an embassy to Venice to request four galleys, which he would pay to have armed. He informed Caristinas of this decision and offered to send in addition the three galleys and one galiot that were being built at Villefranche and two of the ships that had been sent to Rhodes, making a total of ten ships to form the Burgundian squadron. Thus by the spring of 1443 diplomatic efforts had resulted in commitments for a fleet of twenty-one ships, including one from the Ragusians, seven less than the Ragusan government deemed necessary to establish an effective blockade of the Dardanelles.³²

As preparations for the fleet progressed, Cesarial sought to have the army mobilized. In early January 1443 and again on April 9 he addressed the estates in Buda, urging them to undertake an expedition against the Turks, who had been defeated by Hunyadi in 1442, and informing them of the tribute levied by the pope to support a fleet. At first the estates declined to take action, postponing a decision until their next meeting in June. During that meeting letters arrived from Ragusa and from Hunyadi in Belgrade, informing the Hungarians that sultan Murad II had crossed to Anatolia, handed over the government to his young son Mehmed (II), and retired to Bursa. Hunyadi advised that the Rumanian fortresses were lightly garrisoned and that a

30. Knorr Rasm, *Storia della marina dell'oriente di San Giovanni di Gerusalemme, di Rodi e di Malta* (Rome, 1926), p. 29. Thoiry, whose appointment is dated March 23, 1441, had, according to Knorr, been in the Levant; he was a Knight Hospitaller and governor of the island galleys.

31. Marinovich, "Philippe le Bon," p. 124, and "L'île de Rhodes au XVe siècle et l'ordre de Saint-Jean de Jérusalem d'après les documents inédits," *Mémorial de l'Association des Études de l'Est* (Paris), V (1921) 126, 127; Varesse City, 1943, 382-401.

32. This number is based on the estimate made by the Ragusians in a letter to Burgundy dated February 10, 1444, found in Isidore Krulick, *Daljeznost (Rapport et le Levant au moyen âge* (Paris and The Hague, 1961), p. 124, and Gletech and Thelivory, pp. 451-454. The diplomatic efforts of that spring were intense indeed. Theodore Caristinas had visited the duke of Burgundy while Hagopas had effectively put together an alliance of Venice, the papacy, Burgundy, and Ragusa. Even Alfonso of Aragon had joined. See Marinovich, "Missions et quelques ambassadeurs byzantins," *Annales de l'Institut de philologie et d'histoire orientales et slaves*, X (1952) 421.

army of thirty thousand could drive the Turks out of Europe.³³ These reports led the estates to vote a subsidy and support for a crusade.

The sources for the first "long expedition" are sparse. We have a letter from Hunyadi to Ujlaka, Vladislav's report to the dogs of Venice, a poem by Michael Beheim, and the chronicles of Callinachus, Dágoz, and Chalcocondyles.

Vladislav issued a royal summons to his vassals, and Cesarini and Brankovich left Buda with the royal army on July 22, 1443. Dágoz reports that the king spent the rest of the summer arming his men, obtaining horses, and awaiting the contingents he had summoned from Poland and Wallachia.³⁴ Estimates of the size of the army range from Beheim's of fourteen thousand to Dágoz's of twenty-five thousand (which is too large), with about six hundred supply wagons. The army moved southeast, probably passing through Szegedin, crossing the Danube at Petrovaradin (Peterwardein), and sometime in October arriving at Belgrade, where they joined forces with Hunyadi, designated by Vladislav as "*capitaneus exercitus generalis*". From Belgrade the army proceeded southeast to the Turkish stronghold of Kruguyevatz, which they captured and burned. Thence the army continued southeast along the Morava river to Aleksinatz, where news reached them of the approach of a Turkish force. Vladislav and Cesarini decided to encamp while the two voivodes, John Hunyadi and Ujlaka, reconnoitered with a force of twelve thousand men.

The voivodes reached Nish, which was held by a small Turkish garrison, and took the city, which they plundered and burned. They learned that three Turkish armies were converging on Nish to meet and march against the crusaders, but succeeded in defeating all three before they could link up. On November 3 word was brought that yet another Turkish force, combined with the remnants of the defeated armies, was advancing past Hunyadi's left flank toward the royal camp. Hunyadi returned to Nish, where he defeated this fourth attack,³⁵ capturing Murad's chancellor and many Ottoman officers. Hunyadi, it is

33. Christ, *Monasterium cum europaeischen Geschichte aus Archiven und Bibliotheken* (Vienna, 1837), 3-2, 114 ff.

34. Dágoz, *Historia polonica*, XII, col. 755, " . . . plures gentes ex regno Petrarum et terra Wallachiae." See the poem of Michael Beheim in Thomas von Birklin, ed., *Quellen und Forschungen zur europäischen Geschichte, Literatur und Kunst* (Vienna, 1849) pp. 32-36, and Deane, ed. Beheim, p. 267, for estimates on the number of troops.

35. Rappaport, *Die Kämpfe*, pp. 49-51. Hunyadi wrote of his exploits to Ujlaka on November 8 when he had returned to the royal camp; see Kézai, op. cit., XII, 232-234. He states that he had twelve thousand men, had captured Nish, and had defeated the force under the Beg,

said, took four thousand prisoners and brought the king nine Ottoman banners as trophies. Vladislav wrote to Venice of victories over Ottoman armies numbering thirty thousand men. We are not sure of the precise dates, but *Aeneas Sylvius* states that these battles all took place by November 3, 1443.³⁶

Hunyadi returned to camp sometime before November 9, when he wrote to Ujlaki. The army now marched southeast from Nish past Bela Palanka and Piroz to Sofia, which they reached in late November or early December. They stormed the city, which they sacked, pillaging and burning everything.³⁷

Then the crusaders advanced toward the Maritza river, through the pass of Trajan's Door, planning to attack Philippopolis (Plovdiv) and then march down river to the Turkish administrative headquarters in Rumelia at Adrianople (Edirne). Murad, who had resumed the throne and crossed the Straits with a large army, had his troops block the key pass, through which the old Roman road ran to Adrianople. The Hungarians swung east toward the Zlatitsa pass into the Topolnitsa valley, but this pass was blocked by trees and ice and defended by an army under Murad's son-in-law Khalil Pasha, beglerbeg of Anatolia.³⁸ The Hungarians attempted unsuccessfully to force the pass, and were halted for three days at the castle of Sladagora. The sources agree that the main battle took place on December 24, 1443, lasting all day and into the night. The crusaders used artillery in an attempt to dislodge the Turks, who threw trees, boulders, and ice into the pass and showered arrows down on them. From subsequent negotiations we know that the sultan's son-in-law was taken prisoner.³⁹ Unable to advance farther in winter, short of food and supplies, the crusaders decided to return to Hungary and attempt another expedition in the spring.

As the crusaders returned to Hungary the sultan sent Kasim Pasha at the head of Rumelian cavalry and Anatolian troops to attack the

a second pass, and Thoulouk Beg. He had captured many Balkan prisoners and released Christian prisoners, among whom were many babies.

36. Information on these battles is given by *Aeneas Sylvius* in a letter dated January 11, 1444 (in *Watten, Der Drachentöter*, LXI-2, p. 281). In a letter to bishop Leonard Luttering of Passau, dated October 26, 1445, *ibid.*, pp. 362-379, he states that thirty thousand Turks were killed.

37. *Thürmer*, *op. cit.*, chap. 48.

38. *Ducas*, ed. *Bekler*, p. 218. The Balkan historian *Sakellari* describes the route taken, see the French translation, *Annuaire ottoman*, p. 83.

39. *Ducas*, *Historie grecque*, XII, cols. 776 ff., gives an account of this battle. *Aeneas Sylvius* describes the battle in his letter of October 23, 1445, saying that Hunyadi and his men tried to force the pass. *Chaboudoufina*, ed. *Bekler*, p. 403, states that the Hungarians could not get through the pass and were forced to turn back because of a lack of supplies of *Ducas*, ed. *Bekler*, p. 218.

crusader army, which they followed over the Istar and the Nishava, joining battle at the Kunovitsa pass. Brankovich was guarding the pass, which the Turks attacked. Hunyadi and Vladislav, who were already through the pass, left the wagons guarded by infantry and joined the battle near the river on the eastern side of the pass. The engagement ended in a complete victory for the crusaders. The battle, the last of the "long expedition", took place on January 5, 1444, under a full moon.⁴⁰ Short of supplies and horses, the crusaders burned much of their baggage and wagons before returning to Belgrade, where Hunyadi and his men remained for the winter. He refused Brankovich's request to winter in Serbia and help him reconquer it. Vladislav and Cesarion returned to Buda, where they arrived in February and were greeted as conquering heroes. A service of thanksgiving was held in the cathedral, where a "Te Deum" was sung and the captured Turkish weapons were displayed. The victories were announced to the European princes, long accustomed to hearing only of Christian defeats at the hands of the Turks.

One result of the victorious campaign of 1443 was the successful revolt of the Albanians under George Castriota, known as Scanderbeg (d. 1468). Castriota had been sent from Albania as a hostage to the sultan's court and trained at the military academy of Enderun in Adrianople, where his accomplishments earned him the title of beg (tacked onto his Turkish name of Iskander as Scanderbeg). He was co-commander of one of the armies defeated by Hunyadi near Nish. After the battle he fled to Albania, where he gathered forces and captured Croia from the Turks. By the summer of 1444 he was leading a revolt against the Turks with the aid of the Venetians and Alfonso V of Aragon, king of Naples. Some historians have claimed that Scanderbeg formed an alliance with Vladislav, but this has been proved false through letters included by Arnæus Sylvius in his work describing the events of Kosovo in 1448 (which Marinus Barletius, who first printed them, confused with Varna in 1444).⁴¹ Scanderbeg was in no position at the time of the second campaign to create any sort of diversion in support of the crusade.

Letters of congratulation and embassies arrived in Buda during the next few months praising the victories and urging the king to undertake another expedition in the spring.⁴² The victories had demonstrated

40. Kupačević, *op. cit.*, pp. 75-77.

41. Paff, "Les Relations entre la Hongrie et Scanderbeg," pp. 131-141, and "Scanderbeg et l'union de Constantinople," pp. 3-25.

42. Constant wrote to the Venetians about the victories, and on January 13, 1444, the senate decided to send a secretary to Buda to offer the republic's congratulations, see *Iorga, Nècle et*

that Turkish arms were not invincible. The sultan had, however, been able to halt the crusaders by crossing into Rumelia with his army. It was now clear that any future success against the Turks would depend on preventing the Ottoman forces from crossing the Dardanelles, which could be accomplished only by a naval blockade. Without a navy the Ottomans were powerless to challenge such a blockade.

Now work on the galleys was accelerated, with the objective of having a fleet in Levantine waters for the 1444 campaigning season.⁴³ The victories of the so-called "long expedition" of 1443 resulted in an upsurge of diplomatic efforts to gain military support. On February 8 Ragusa offered to arm two galleys to join the combined fleet, and on the tenth in a letter to Eugenius urged the pope to hasten the arming of his galleys so that they would be stationed in the Dardanelles by summer, when the crusaders were in the field, since this was the only way to halt the transfer of Turkish reinforcements from Anatolia. They also advised Eugenius to urge Vladislav to have his army in the field by the time the fleet would be ready.⁴⁴

On March 3 the Venetian senate learned that Cesarini and Vladislav had returned to Buda. They appointed John de' Reguardati emissary on March 6, instructing him to proceed there with all possible speed; even his route was specified. He was to assure Cesarini that the senate had done all in its power to have the papal galleys armed, and had already prepared the bulls and levied the taxes in its territories. He was to encourage the Hungarians to undertake a second expedition; he was to keep Venice's allies informed of progress on the galleys and to report back to Venice on preparations undertaken in Hungary; and he was to negotiate for the territories requested by Venice when victory was attained.⁴⁵

On March 13 the senate decided to have ten galleys chosen in the

ambasci, III, 143-147. On March 25, 1444, Alfonso of Naples sent a letter of congratulation based on information he had received from Ragusa, see Gubich and Thürlinger, *Diplomatarium*, pp. 363-364.

⁴³ *Istria*, *Notes et notices*, III, 256-257. On January 15, 1444, the senate sent an emissary to Buda and voted to pursue the collection of the taxes in Venetian territory. On February 2 they urged Cesarini to arm those galleys his which he had found; see *Ibid.*, III, 149-150. Meanwhile the Ragusans wrote to Eugenius on February 10, offering to arm two galleys which would join the allied fleet, and urging the pope to complete the arming of his galleys.

⁴⁴ Krčić, *Dobrović*, p. 226; Gubich and Thürlinger, *Diplomatarium*, 421-424. The Ragusans acknowledged the pope's letters of November 9, December 13 and 17, in which he solicited support and named Christopher Columbus as legate.

⁴⁵ Since Ujfalvi, ed., *Lettere e relazioni di ambasciati veneziani durante i pontificati papali*, III, = *Advocatus apud sanctam litteram apostolicam constantinensem*, IX (Zagreb, 1878), 112-116, for the appointment of John de' Reguardati. On March 26 Reguardati was further empowered to present his credentials to Branković; *Ibid.*, 126-127.

arsenal, armed, and dispatched as quickly as possible, even though funds from the pope had not arrived; Condulmer was authorized to select the commanders for these papal galleys, subject to the senate's approval. On March 21 the Venetians voted to permit Condulmer to spend the twelve hundred ducats collected in Venice on arming the papal galleys.⁴⁶ The senate had also ordered the preparation of four galleys for the duke of Burgundy, informing him on March 21 that his envoys had found them ready, and that the ten unarmed galleys were ready for the pope. The senate and the duke were concerned about Eugenius's preparations, and they responded to his inquiries of February 10. With Condulmer in Venice, the senate expressed the hope that their arming would soon begin. The senate knew nothing certain about efforts by any other Italian cities, but claimed that these fourteen galleys would suffice to guard the Dardanelles. Venice would not promise to send Venetian ships for a predetermined time, although the republic was prepared to offer some of the galleys at sea near Gallipoli.⁴⁷ On April 20 duke Philip appointed Wierin of Wierin captain-general of the "auxiliary army" (i.e., the Burgundian squadron) being sent to Constantinople, and instructed him to go to Venice to oversee the work on the galleys requested by him. Sometime after April 20 he left Bruges with thirty-one Burgundian emissaries with money for sixty days for the trip from Bruges to Venice.⁴⁸

On May 12 the senate wrote to Reguardati in Buda that the papal galleys would sail from Venice in a few days, to be joined in the Levant by Venetian ships. They reported that the Burgundian envoy, Wierin, had arrived in Venice to oversee the arming of the four ducal galleys and had informed the senate that Philip the Good was having an additional three galleys and one galley refurbished at Nice (more accurately, at Villefranche), to be joined by another warship. The senate instructed Reguardati to urge Vladislav to start the expedition soon, since the time was favorable and the galleys were being completed; however, they could accomplish nothing without the land army that they were meant to support. On the same day the Venetians responded to Cesarini's letters of April 25 and 28 informing them of Vladislav's firm intention to undertake a second expedition in the summer. The senate reported to Cesarini on the imminent departure of the papal, Venetian, and Burgundian galleys.⁴⁹

46. *Iorga, Notes et extraits*, III, 162-163, and *Thiers, Résumé*, III, 116. Cf. *Croisade*, op. cit., 1-3, 27-29, and *Lévesque, L'artillerie*, XXX, 167.

47. *Croisade*, op. cit., 1-3, 25-26.

48. *Archives des Flandres*, Lille, reg. 10763, fol. 107.

49. *Iorga, Notes et extraits*, III, 167-168, and *Thiers, Résumé*, III, 111-112.

Thus, throughout the spring of 1444 the Venetians were encouraging the Hungarians to begin a second offensive, pressing the arming of the papal galleys, and overseeing the departure of their own ships. After the encouraging news from Hungary the Venetians decided to commit their own galleys, thus engaging the sultan in a full-scale war. They realized that any delay in the departure of the fleet would be disastrous, and so ordered the galleys to sail no later than May 21 under penalty of heavy fine to the patrons, while protesting vigorously to Condulmer the lack of payment for the arming of the papal galleys.⁵⁰

On June 4 and 5 the legate informed the senate that the papal galleys were armed, and that some had sailed and others were ready to sail, while two galleys were still awaiting the remainder of their rigging. On June 17 the doge wrote to the duke of Crete, Thomas Duodo, instructing him to use the tenth collected there to purchase biscuit and bread for the fleet.⁵¹ By June 17 the Venetian galleys were prepared to sail, had the senate instructed their captain, Alvise Loredan, that both he and Weyna, as commander of the Venetian and Burgundian galleys, would be under Condulmer's command. The republic, however, wanted to avoid war with the Mamluks, which would endanger their Levantine possessions, so Loredan was not to attack Mamluk ships at sea; the fleet had been armed for war only against the Turks. Loredan was not to allow the galleys to touch at Rhodes although Condulmer would probably request them to do so. The galleys were not to attack Mamluk ships encountered in the Dardanelles supporting the Ottomans, nor were the Burgundian galleys to be allowed to go to Rhodes, as had been agreed to by duke Philip.⁵²

We know from a letter of the senate to Cesarini dated July 4 that Condulmer sailed from Venice on June 22 with seven papal galleys and eight Venetian galleys; the Burgundian galleys were to leave in two or three days. The senate agreed to Cesarini's request to send eight or more galleys from those that were to be stationed in the Dardanelles up the Danube to Nicopolis to support the crossing of the crusaders.⁵³ The

50. Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 169-170. On May 21 the senate accused the pope of delaying work on the galleys. The Venetians reminded Condulmer of their efforts, and remarked that the galleys should be the honour of St. Mark since they were armed with Venetian money.

51. Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 172-173, and Thiers, *Résumé*, III, 112. The fleet was reported in Ragusa by early July, and preparations were under way there for its reception; see Kofal, *Defence*, p. 339.

52. Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 173-174, and Thiers, *Résumé*, III, 114. The senate threatened the patrons with death if they disobeyed these orders.

53. Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 175-176. This plan was discussed in Venice before the fleet sailed and had three successful Florentine support. This letter was addressed to Condulmer, who was at Pola.

Venetians again wrote to Reguardati instructing him how to proceed in the negotiations concerning those territories requested by Venice, which included Gallipoli and Thessalonica. The Byzantine envoy, who had denigrated Venice's contributions, was to be reminded that the republic had spent thirty thousand ducats for the papal fleet in addition to six to eight galleys sent under the banner of St. Mark.¹⁴

By July 5 the two Ragusan galleys had been outfitted and were ordered to sail the next day. The great council gave instructions that the funds collected from the clergy of Ragusa were to be given to Condulmer to be used for provisioning the galleys en route. With victory in the air the Ragusans now put in their bid for territories they wanted.¹⁵

Warna left Venice on July 6 with one galley; on July 7 the senate ordered two other Burgundian galleys to sail during the night, while the last was to leave at noon on the eighth.¹⁶ The Burgundians had promised the Byzantine ambassador to send four additional ships, and early in 1443 the duke had appointed Geoffrey of Thoiry and Regnault de Conflans, a Knight Hospitaller, captains of the three galleys and one galliot that were at Villefranche. They were to oversee the arming and repair of these ships and sail to the Adriatic to join Warna, under whose command they were to proceed to the Dardanelles.¹⁷ At the same time the duke chose Alfonso de Oliveria, a gentleman of the household of the Portuguese-born duchess Isabella, to oversee the arming of the two additional ships at Villefranche.

In the summer of 1444 rumors were in the air of a planned Mamluk attack on Rhodes. The grand master, John of Lastic, appealed to Eugenius, who had the cardinal "of Thessalonica", Jean le Jeune (Johannes Juvenis), write to Warna at Venice requesting him to go to Rhodes to aid the knights and then to proceed to the Dardanelles. Thus the Venetians forbade, instructing Loredan not to touch at Rhodes. Warna communicated this to the cardinal of Thessalonica, who wrote to Geoffrey and Regnault directing them to sail directly to Rhodes. They left

¹⁴ *Ibid.*, III, 177-178.

¹⁵ *Ibid.*, III, 175, and Thiriet, *Algerie*, III, 24, *Evén.*, Dubouche, pp. 319-320. The Ragusans wanted Ardon and Canosa and the surrounding areas. On June 2, 1444, the great council wrote to Vladislav and Casimir about territory.

¹⁶ *Ibid.*, *Notes et extraits*, III, 179. John of Warna, *op. cit.* *Harby*, V, 39-41, is confused in his chronology; he states that Loredan and Condulmer sailed on July 22, instead of a month earlier. He has Warna leaving Venice on July 25. For Warna's departure date see also his letter in the Archives du Nord, Lille, no. 80994, 1444, and Histans, *De Bransbach's plannen*, pp. 38-41.

¹⁷ Archives du Nord, Lille, no. 39246; the appointment was made at Bruges. For a full discussion see Degryse, "De Bourgondische expeditie . . ." pp. 227-265.

Villafrañche in July and sailed along the coast of North Africa to Lam podusa, where news reached them that a Mamluk fleet had attacked Rhodes. The Burgundians sailed to the island, where they engaged the Egyptian fleet and then joined the knights in a successful defense of the city, after which they sailed on September 28 to join Wavrin at Constantinople.⁵⁵

By July 17 the two Ragusan galleys had joined the papal-Venetian galleys at Modon in the southern Morea, and on August 19 the Ragusan government instructed its captain to remain with the fleet for six months.⁵⁶ By late August the fleet had reached the Dardanelles, as the Ragusans reported to their ambassador at the Bosnian court on August 26, informing him that the galleys would be at Gallipoli by the end of the month. From the information reaching them the Ragusans thought that more than twenty-five galleys would be in the Dardanelles by early September, and this was an accurate estimate: ten papal galleys, eight Venetian, two Ragusan, four Burgundian under Wavrin, four Burgundian ships under Geoffrey of Thoiry, and another two under Oliveria made a total of thirty ships.⁵⁷ It was a fleet sufficiently large to blockade the Dardanelles effectively and prevent an Ottoman army from crossing.

In the spring and summer of 1444 peace negotiations were begun between Murad II on the one hand and Vladislav, Hunyadi, and Brankovich on the other. These negotiations caused apprehension among Hungary's allies, and have remained a subject of contention not only among contemporary writers but among historians ever since.⁵⁸

Although the "long expedition" did not achieve a lasting success, it had reversed the almost uninterrupted series of Ottoman victories.

55. For account of Geoffrey of Thoiry's amblessee see Maclean, "De Novissima et 'Tirpi in Bithynia,'" pp. 127-260; Iorga, "Les Armées 'normandes,'" pp. 9-26. The Mamluks attacked the city of Rhodes on August 16, 1444, and besieged it for forty days. After a desperate battle on September 14 the Mamluks withdrew on September 24. The news of the successful siege reached Venice on October 14. Jean le Jeune, *Mémoires de Thévenot* (1624-1652), was created a cardinal in 1629 but kept his bishopric.

56. Kiskö, *Dobrovnik*, p. 361. On July 14 the Venetian senate permitted the government of Corfu to open negotiations with the Turks and the inhabitants of Acton (Malta) and Argyntharion in order to obtain these places and to allow the Turks possession of they had already left their castles. The approach of the fleet had caused panic among the Turkish garrisons. Iorga, *Notes et mémoires*, III, 179-180.

57. Kiskö, *Dobrovnik*, p. 361.

58. The significant medieval historians on the negotiations at Szegedin include Halmi, *The Crusade of Prince Dobrovnik, 1444-1445*; Pall, "Caractères d'ensemble et la croisée contre la Turquie"; Augst, "Le Troisième pape de Szegedin," pp. 174-192; and particularly Pall, "Maison de la croisée de Varna," pp. 144-158, where he convincingly disproves the thesis of Halmi.

In the spring of 1444 Murad was thus under attack from the Hungarians, in Albania, in the Morea, and from Ibsakum Beg in Karman. While Vladislav and Cesarini were en route back to Buda in January 1444, a Turkish emissary arrived in camp and requested the king to set a date for the reception of an embassy from the sultan. Again in March a Greek monk arrived from Brankovich's daughter Mara, one of Murad's wives, repeating the sultan's offer to restore her father as despot, and to return his sons Gregory and Stephen, who had been blinded.⁴² He found these proposals acceptable, since he urged the Hungarian diet to accept peace when it met in Buda in mid-April. Vladislav and Cesarini did not want peace and, on April 25 and 28, the legate wrote to Venice that the king and the barons had sworn to him that they would lead another expedition against the Turk in the summer.⁴³ The senate accepted this assurance and continued with the preparations for the fleet. Nevertheless, sometime in May and June emissaries did arrive in Adrianople from Vladislav, Brankovich, and Hunyadi, even though the latter was voivode and a vassal of the king. Our sources for these negotiations are the reports of Ciriaco de' Pizzicollì (1391-1452) of Ancona, an Italian humanist who was present in Adrianople at the sultan's court in May and June, and who sent reports to his friend Andreolo Guastinaui-Barca of Chios, enclosing copies of important official documents.

Around June 12 Ciriaco wrote to his friend that Vladislav's Serbian emissary Stojka Gladanich arrived in Adrianople with Vitislao, representing John Hunyadi; Athanasius Prashak, metropolitan of Semendria (Smederovo), and another unnamed emissary; and Bogdan, Brankovich's chancellor, escorted by sixty horsemen. Gladanich's credentials were dated April 24—nine days after Vladislav had sworn to lead an expedition—and empowered him to conclude a treaty, which was to be sworn to by Murad in the royal emissary's presence.⁴⁴ In his report on these negotiations the papal collector Andreas de Palasio wrote that Hunyadi and Brankovich were carrying on these negotiations without consulting the king.⁴⁵ However, the letters of credence prove other-

42. Kritz, *Dobrovod*, p. 171. On March 5, 1444, the government of Ragusa placed a boat at the disposal of a monk who is described as a messenger from Mara. He was to be taken to Spalato (Split) and from there to the despot George; the grand council confirmed this decision on March 6.

43. Venice, Sen. Secres., Reg. 16, fol. 71; see Giuseppe Valentini, *Acta Albanica rerum italicarum XIV et XV, XVII (1454-1504)*, no. 462, p. 174, for the senate's reply to Ciriaco dated May 12, 1444.

44. Excerpted in Halász, *The Crusade of Huny*, p. 82.

45. Lefitzki, *Crden gromozda*, II, 468, and Džigont, *Albania polonica*, XII, col. 78, who repeats the statement " . . . maximum pauci . . . imperatoris incognito rego."

wise. It is probable that Vladislav regarded the embassy as unimportant, as merely a tactic to induce the sultan to leave Rumelia.

Brankovich requested the release of his sons, the return to him of the conquered towns and fortresses, particularly Golubats on the Danube, and the granting of favorable terms to Vlad Dracul, voivode of Wallachia. Brankovich and Vlad were, however, to remain Turkish vassals. Negotiations stalled on the surrender of Golubats, which with Belgrade guarded the routes that armies invading Hungary would take. On June 12 Murad agreed to all the requests and swore to a ten-year truce, appointing Saliman Beg and Varnas, a Greek, his emissaries to Vladislav to obtain his oath. On that day Murad wrote to Vladislav informing him of his emissaries' appointment and looking forward to a ten-year peace.⁶⁶ Murad wanted peace with the Hungarians so that he could move his army to Anatolia, without concern about an attack on his European provinces. By granting generous terms to Brankovich he deprived the allies of the Serbian army, and ruptured the alliance erected by Cesarini.

Ciriaco wrote to the Hungarians of the threat to Murad in Anatolia, and reported the events to John VIII Palaeologos. The Byzantines had planned to create a diversion by attacking the Turks from the Morea, the attack to be led by the two despots, the emperor's brothers Theodore (now lord of Selymbria) and Constantine Dragases, who was the more powerful in the Morea.

In February 1444 Constantine successfully established his power north of the Isthmus of Corinth, crossed the Hexamilion, and reduced Boeotia and Thebes.⁶⁷ The Byzantines had been encouraged by the victories of 1443, and were alarmed at the news of a peace treaty, but not seriously enough to halt their attack. Only the Ragusans instructed their ambassador in Buda to secure the city's interests in any peace that was concluded.⁶⁸

The treaty that had been negotiated in Adrianople on June 12 was concluded in the hope of inducing the sultan to cross to Anatolia, thereby assuring the forthcoming crusade a greater chance of success. This was recognized by Ciriaco, who wrote a letter to John Hunyadi that same day from Adrianople, informing him of what had occurred and wishing him success on the forthcoming expedition.⁶⁹ Ciriaco and

⁶⁶ See Haldic, *The Chronicle of Piers*, pp. 88-92, for the sultan's letter of June 12, 1444, to Vladislav. The Turks agreed also to release prisoners.

⁶⁷ Dionysius A. Zakythinos, *Le Despotat grec de Moree*, I (Paris, 1852; repr. London, 1875), 130 ff.

⁶⁸ Jacpa, *Notes et extracts*, II (Paris, 1899), 405.

⁶⁹ Haldic, *The Chronicle of Piers*, pp. 86-87, and Johannes A. Fabricius, *Bibliotheca latine medice et apud eandem athenis*, ed. Giovanni A. Mann, VI (Padua, 1754), addenda, p. 13.

met the Christian envoys, and still looked forward to a crusade. He did not expect the peace to be kept by the allies, and when he reached Constantinople on June 24 he wrote again to Hunyady more openly than he had been able to from Adrianople. In this letter he spoke of the peace which Murad had had to accept in order to protect Rumelia from attack while he was fighting Ibrahim Beg. Ciriaco reported that the sultan did not believe the peace would last long. Indeed Adrianople's defenses were being strengthened. As soon as Karaman had been subdued, Murad would invade Hungary, and take revenge for the crusaders' victories. This peace was simply a means by which the sultan could buy time. Again Ciriaco urged the voivode to attack the Turks that year.⁷⁰

The treaty had meant as little to Vladislav, who, throughout June and July, continued to prepare for the crusade. He wrote to the Florentines and the king of Bosnia, Stephen VI Thomas, reassuring them of his preparations for a second expedition.⁷¹ Vladislav had been informed by letters and by the return of his envoy of the agreement concluded at Adrianople, by which he was bound by the letters he had given Gisdarich. He was invited to come to Sargedin on August 1, where he would meet the Turkish envoys and swear to the treaty. Vladislav arrived there sometime in late July, and what occurred there is best described in the most reliable contemporary accounts: the report of the Venetian ambassador Reguardati and Cesarini's report to the senate, which was summarized in the instructions it sent to Alvise Loredan on September 9. Reguardati's report to the senate confirms Cesarini's, thereby establishing its accuracy, and both were used by the senate as the basis of the instructions issued to the captain of their fleet. The senate was concerned about the negotiations, Loredan was, nevertheless, instructed to support the crusaders if they should set out. Whatever had occurred the Venetians concluded to plan for hostilities against the Turks.⁷²

There has been controversy among modern historians about whether or not Vladislav ratified the treaty of June 12 in Sargedin in late July. Some Polish historians have attempted to prove that he did not ratify it and, therefore, did not perjure himself in the manifesto he issued on August 4. Nevertheless, it has been convincingly demonstrated that Vladislav did just that. He ratified the treaty around July 26, then swore

70. Halaski, *The Crusade of Varna*, pp. 70-71, and Fall, 'Ciriaco d'Ancona,' p. 443.

71. *Iorga*, II, 466-467. For Vladislav's letter to Florence on July 2, 1444, and *Iorga*, II, 467, for the letter of July 24 to the king of Bosnia, in which Vladislav again confirmed his intention to lead the crusade.

72. *Iorga*, *Notes et extraits*, III, 187. The text is in Ljaski, XXI, 475-478.

a few days later to lead a crusade.⁷³ Even if Vladislav had not ratified the treaty, this would have broken the promise given in the letter to his emissary Gladanich of April 24, had this, one way or another, this emotional young king had perjured himself. Other contemporary sources charged that the king had indeed perjured himself, and these sources had unusually good access to persons close to the events.⁷⁴

On August 4 Vladislav issued a manifesto in which he renewed his oath to lead a crusade, naming September 1 as the date on which this crusade would start out. It mentions the closed and sworn treaty and the arrival of the Turkish emissaries who sought his oath. Throughout the events of the spring and summer the king had behaved in a confusing and often contradictory manner. On April 15 he promised the diet to lead a crusade, yet on the 34th he issued letters to Gudanuch giving promises to the sultan. By July he assured the Florentines of his intentions to fight, and on the 25th left for Szegedin to receive Turkish emissaries who would obtain his oath to confirm the treaty. Then on August 4 he again swore to lead a crusade.

Hunyadi had used the negotiations as a tactic to induce Murad to go to Anatolia at the head of his army. It also provided him the time to make sure the allied fleet would be in the Straits by the time the land army took the offensive. Eugenius had put together a powerful naval alliance that could effectively mount a blockade, although it was not always certain he was one of its most consistent supporters.

News of the peace caused doubts among the allies. Wavrin learned of it from some Turks at Gallipoli. Cesarini put these doubts to rest by writing to Condulmer, to whom he stated that peace had not been concluded. On September 5 he wrote to John VIII Palaeologus, who was further reassured by letters from Vladislav and Hunyadi. Ciriaco of Ancona wrote to King Alfonso at Naples, and wrote to Cesarini on September 19 informing him of the victory of the Knights Hospitaller over the Mamluk fleet, in which the Burgundians had played a prominent part.⁷⁵

What is certain is that George Brankovich had achieved his own objective through the peace negotiations. He ratified the treaty on August 15, after Vladislav had decided to proceed with the crusade. Murad

⁷³ See Pall, *Cruciae Historiae*, pp. 62-63, for the contrasting arguments advanced to support the maintenance of the treaty by Vladislav.

⁷⁴ Another Syrian Peshkashian wrote of the king's perjury; see Wolke, *Der Bruckwunder*, especially 176, 173-174, 186-188. For Wavrin's testimony see Hardy, ed., *Chroniques*, V (1266), 41-42.

⁷⁵ From a copy of Ciriaco's *Commentarii* deposited in the Bibl. Apost. Vaticana, Cod. lat. 3280, fol. 11^v-11^r, cited by Salmon, *Papacy and the Levant 1268-1273*, II, 87, note 22.

had also bought time and had succeeded in splitting the alliance. Brankovich's defection resulted in the loss to the Hungarian army of 8,000 men, almost a third of the entire force of the "long expedition". This loss was to prove a fatal one to the crusaders. He entered Smolecovo on August 22, and soon thereafter his sons were restored to him.⁷⁶ In addition to depriving the crusaders of important forces, the remaining Turkish garrisons were strengthened by the soldiers freed from defending the Serbian foramen. Some places along the crusaders' route would now be able to withstand their attack.

The neutrality of Serbia also meant that the crusaders, rather than cross the mountains to Adrianople, would have to take the route down the Danube across Bulgaria to the Black Sea, and from there to Constantinople to join the fleet. This route was protected by well-garrisoned castles and cities, necessitating long sieges and the resulting delays. Once the land forces had joined the fleet then, in conjunction, they would attempt to conquer the Ottoman strongholds.

Throughout the spring of 1444 Vladislav prepared for war and assured his allies of his intentions, in spite of the negotiations. The Hungarian nobles, as we have seen, were summoned to a diet in Buda on April 15 to discuss support for a crusade, for which it voted approval and levied a special tax. Some of the most powerful ecclesiastical and lay magnates agreed to accompany the king. Venice was informed of these events by Reguardati by early May.⁷⁷ However, the negotiations at Adrianople in June and the meeting in Szeged in late July delayed the expedition beyond the normal campaigning season, and thereby seriously impaired its chances for success. The sultan crossed to Anatolia on July 12, and thus the delay in the commencement of the expedition had achieved the important objective of removing Murad across the Straits. It had, however, also given him the time he needed to attack Karadeniz and end the danger there by concluding a peace treaty. The two months of June and July were to prove a serious loss to the crusaders; however, the fleet was in position in the Straits by late July.

Our main source for the route of the crusaders and the climactic battle is Andreas de Palatio, the papal collector of the tithe, who accompanied Vladislav and was an eyewitness to the battle. His letter from Posen dated May 16, 1445, describes these events in detail.⁷⁸

Vladislav was still in Buda on July 24 when he wrote to the king of

⁷⁶ Halaski, *The Crusade of Varna*, p. 35.

⁷⁷ Jorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 367-368.

⁷⁸ Printed by Lowyck, *Contra apostolica*, II, no. 398.

Bosnia.⁷⁹ In early July he had planned to have his troops assembled at Grosswarden by the 15th. At Szegedin on August 4 he issued a manifesto designating September 1 for the start of the expedition. His Polish subjects, however, opposed his undertaking another expedition against the Turks. When the Polish diet met at Piotrków on August 26, Oleśnicki led the campaign to have the magnates request the return of the king to Poland. Cesarini's influence over the king meant that a successful crusade would strengthen the pope's position, a result completely at odds with Oleśnicki's support of the conciliarists. Moreover, there were serious problems in Poland – a dispute with Lithuania over Podolian territory that he asserted required the return of the king. Vladislav had written to the diet reporting the peace terms offered at Adrianople, and on August 26 the diet sent a message urging him to accept the terms and return to Poland.⁸⁰ This the king refused to do, replying to the diet on September 22 en route to Varna. The king was, however, supported by Polish nobles who had accompanied him: Jan Koniecpolski, the chancellor, and Peter of Szamkociny, the vice-chancellor, who together directed the foreign policy of Poland. The decision of the diet did deprive Vladislav of some Polish reinforcements, which were not significant even in 1443.

The commencement of the crusade caused panic in Adrianople. Orkhan, a grandson of Bayezid who had taken refuge with the Byzantines, was freed and went to the Dobruja, where he attempted to raise a revolt against Murad. In Adrianople the sultan's twelve-year-old son was not able to control events when a power struggle broke out between the grand vizir Chandarli Khald and his rivals Zaganuz and the beglerbeg of Rumelia. Then a fire in Adrianople, caused by rioting of the janissaries, destroyed a considerable part of the city.⁸¹

From Szegedin the crusaders proceeded to Temesvár and headed southeast, crossing the Danube at Orshova on September 20 with sixteen thousand knights and two thousand wagons.⁸² The army had much the same contingents as the previous year, although depleted by the defection of the eight thousand Serbs.

On September 24 they crossed the Timok river, which formed the frontier with the Ottoman vassal state of Bulgaria, and reached Florentin, then marched to Vidin on the Danube by September 26. It was

79. See Iorga, *Notes et extraits*, II, 467, for the report of the Hungarian ambassadors to the Roman curia in this connection.

80. Lenczky, *Cronica apudensis*, I, 140–142. The masses reminded Vladislav that they had agreed to his coronation at the Hungarian throne because of the Turkish threat.

81. Isidori, *The Ottoman Empire*, pp. 20–21.

82. Iorga, *Historia polonica*, XII, col. 880; Iorga, *Notes et extraits*, III, 161–169.

decided that, because of the time of year and the necessity of joining the fleet, they would not attempt to take the city. The route led east to Nicopolis; to turn south there across the Balkan mountains would have been the quickest, however, the two thousand wagons prevented them from taking this route.

On October 16 the army reached Nicopolis. Since Vladislav did not have sufficiently powerful artillery to attack the strong walls, he contented himself with burning the suburbs. Vlad Dracul, the voivode of Wallachia, had met the king near Nicopolis with four thousand mounted soldiers who were to accompany the crusaders under the command of Vlad's two sons. He was apparently shocked to realize the smallness of the crusading forces, and Dăgoș reports that Vlad attempted to persuade Vladislav to turn back by remarking that Murad was able to bring more men on a hunting party than Vladislav had brought for a crusade.⁴² Vlad, who had offered no support the previous year, was probably supporting Vladislav as a result of Hunyadi's efforts at Adrianople to have Wallachia included in the agreements and accorded favorable terms.

The crusaders remained at Nicopolis for two or three days, then followed a Roman road to the coast. It is possible that the army marched along the Danube, crossing the Yacou river, turning southeast to Shumen (Szumen) and thence east to Nova Pazar. Callimachus has Hunyadi leading the army with three thousand Hungarians and the Wallachians, followed by the wagons with the king leading the remainder of the troops.⁴³ The crusaders plundered and burned all along their route, not even sparing the Orthodox churches. On October 24, according to Dăgoș, Vladislav addressed an offer to the Turkish strongholds of Shumen, Mahoracz, Provadiya, Varna, Kavarna, and Galata offering the defenders safe conduct to Adrianople if they surrendered these places without a struggle; he used Turkish prisoners to deliver his messages,⁴⁴ which were spurned.

Around October 25, according to Michael Behem, the crusaders were at Shumen, where they assaulted the city for two days, capturing it the third day. A tower with fifty Turkish soldiers was bitterly defended until the crusaders set it on fire, thereby killing the defenders. Here Vladislav encamped for seven days. He sent a detachment of five hundred men to attack Timovo, but three hundred of them were lost in the unsuccessful attack on the town.

42. Dăgoș, *Historia geturilor*, 703, col. 306; Palam, in Lascari, *Cronica episcopilor*, II, 24.

43. Callimachus, cf. Krastovskii, pp. 146-147.

44. Michael Behem in von Karajan, ed., *Quellen*, p. 133.

On November 4 the crusaders again started out, crossing an and plateau and reaching a castle (possibly near Kaspichan) which was taken by storm. The army remained here for two days besieging and then plundering the castle. On November 7 the army arrived at the city and castle of Provadiya, which was located atop a high mountain.⁴⁶ The crusaders opened a breach in the wall through which they gained entrance, capturing the castle and — according to Palatin's report — killing five thousand Turks. There Cesarus received a letter from Francis Conduclmer reporting that the sultan had made peace with the emir of Karaman and on October 16 had crossed the Bosphorus with his army, consisting of thirty thousand to forty thousand men.⁴⁷

En route to the Dardanelles Wavria's galleys had stopped at Tenedos (Bozja-ada) to search for the site of ancient Troy,⁴⁸ arriving at the entrance to the Dardanelles two days later. There Gourvin Quiéret, carrying the duke's pennant, landed and successfully engaged the Turks. Then the Burgundians sailed to Gallipoli, where they joined with the papal fleet and where they found cardinal Conduclmer suffering from fever. Conduclmer and Wavrin, each with two galleys, sailed to Constantinople to meet with John VIII. Wavria left the Burgundian galleys under the command of Gourvin Quiéret and Peter Vas, who together with the papal galleys maintained the blockade at Gallipoli. Here in late September they were joined by the galleys from Rhodes under Geoffrey of Tholuy.⁴⁹ By September 19 the victory at Rhodes was known to Ciriaco at Constantinople. On September 27 he visited the Christian fleet at Gallipoli.

At Constantinople, according to John (Jehan) of Wavrin's chronicle, the plan of the blockade was decided upon. The papal galleys, those of Venice, and two Burgundian galleys were to patrol between Gallipoli and Lampascus, at the Dardanelles. Some of the galleys, possibly the Ragusan, were stationed in the Bosphorus. Early in October news reached the fleet that the sultan was marching toward the Dardanelles with the intention of forcing a crossing there. Wavrin left the galleys under Vas and returned to Constantinople with Quiéret to confer with the galley captains stationed there.⁵⁰ Wavrin and the others realized that the gal-

46. Callimachus, *ed. Krestovskaia*, p. 148; *Diogenes, Historia poliorum*, XII, *ed. Kitz*, and *Lactantius, Historiae manifestarum Hereticorum* (Frankfurt, 1781), p. 513, confirm that the city was taken by storm.

47. Estimate of the number of men in the sultan's army taken from the funeral oration delivered by Poggio Bracciolini, in *Med. Spéculum*, X, 374-384.

48. Wavria, *ed. Hardy*, V, 38.

49. Dagryze, "De Bourgondienne expedition," p. 246.

50. Wavria, *ed. Hardy*, V, 44-45, and Adrien Hugues, "Un Chevalier planté à la croisée de Constantinople, 1444-1445: Gourvin Quiéret, Seigneur de Dardel," *Revue roumaine de la*

leys stationed in the Bosphorus were in serious danger of being sunk by cannon which the sultan had had mounted on the Asiatic shore. The strait was narrow enough to enable the Turks thereby to prevent the ships from remaining on patrol there. During Wavrin's inspection the Turks demonstrated the effectiveness of this tactic by firing on them from the Anatolian fortress of Anadolu Hisar.⁵¹ Quéret and Jean Bayart, another Burgundian, returned to John VIII to persuade him of the necessity of having Byzantine troops secure the European shore of the Bosphorus: "Il est impossible que galées se puissent tenir au destroit tant que les deux rivages seront occupés par les Turqs." So pitiful was the state of the emperor's resources that all he could promise was two Byzantine galleys; he had no other support to give.

Unable to cross at the Dardanelles, the sultan and his army marched to the Bosphorus. On October 15 Khalîl Pasha with seven or eight thousand Turkish soldiers, with cannon and artillery, were taken across by the Genoese of Pera in their boats⁵² and occupied the European shore of the Bosphorus.

On October 16 the sultan arrived at the Anatolian shore with what Wavrin estimates at three or four thousand soldiers and five to six hundred camels. During the night the Turks had moved cannon into place on the European shore, and on the morning of the sixteenth they began bombarding the galleys. The fleet attempted to advance but, being bombarded from both shores, was forced to retire. Moreover, it was hampered by adverse winds and the unwillingness of the Venetians to risk their ships' being sunk by cannon. Thus, the fleet made no serious attempt to prevent Murad's forces from crossing. The sultan with his troops then crossed under the walls of Anadolu Hisar, the narrowest point of the strait, where Europe and Asia almost touch. On the evening of the sixteenth a storm arose which forced the Christian galleys into port, thereby enabling the bolder Turks to cross over unopposed. The Byzantine galleys, which had attempted to come close to shore, were badly damaged by the cannon. The fleet had waited in vain for two or three months for the arrival of the crusaders. Had Vladislav not delayed crossing the Danube until the third week in September,

Société des explorateurs de l'Orient, XXXVIII (1918), 42 E. "Pour Val" was a Catalina owned Pierre Vauparis de Savoyen.

51. Wavrin, ed. Hardy, V 47, "... la mer y estoit si serrée que une calverine porroit tirer des bords à l'autre, cest à savoir de la Turquie en Grèce, et de Grèce en Turquie, et que j'observai les Turcs de ceul chenal tireront souvent par dessus les galées." See ibid., pp. 47-51, for the crossing by the Turks.

52. The Genoese participation is documented in Wavrin, ed. Hardy, V, 46; Eginetto wrote in 1444, "Genuenses Assensum in Europam impetrare petierunt," in Bazzani, *Avvenire ecclesiastica*, ed. ann. 1444, ed. Thonon, vol. XXVII (Paris, 1887), 293.

but crossed on September 1, the crusading army could have been at Constantinople by October 16 and effectively prevented the Ottoman crossing.

Murad joined his son Mehmed and Khalil Pasha, who had gathered all the available troops in Rumelia, numbering seven to eight thousand additional men. Loredan dispatched a letter to Ceproni, but by the time it reached him Murad was already close to Varna.

Meanwhile, on November 8 the crusaders stormed the castle of Michelich, perhaps located on the upper Devnya lake about four miles from the sea.⁵³ Palatin reports that a detachment of crusaders found and burned on the Kamchiya river a Turkish flotilla of twenty-eight ships, which were apparently to be used on the Danube. On November 9 the king arrived at Varna, where the city and Galata, Marcropolis, and Kavarna surrendered to him, the Turkish garrisons having fled. Vladislav and the crusaders encamped in front of the city. On the evening of November 9 the crusaders saw the campfires of the Turks about half a mile away. Vladislav ordered the outposts of the camp to be strengthened, all soldiers to remain armed, and a council of war to be called for the early morning of November 10.

Murad had arrived in Adrianople in late October and from there marched to Nicopolis, whence he followed the crusaders; on November 5 he was at Shumen.⁵⁴ On the night of November 9 he encamped in the position from which he intended to attack, controlling the heights above Varna with the crusading army between him and the sea. The only line of retreat, to the north, was a wasteland.

The crusaders decided to take the offensive, and formed their line in a crescent stretching from the lake in front of the walls of the city back toward the Black Sea. On the far left was Hunyadi, with five banners of his soldiers and the Hungarian barons. In the middle was Vladislav with his Hungarian and Polish troops.⁵⁵ Here where the king's banner flew, together with the banner of St. George carried by Stephen Bihori of Transylvania, some two thousand troops were stationed. The right wing was composed of Hungarian troops under five banners, including Cesarini's. Between the king and Cesarini were stationed the banners of the bishop of Bosnia, Rafail Herceg; Simon Rougotyn, bishop of Erlau; and Francis Thalkercy, ban of Croatia. At the far right were John Dominia, bishop of Grosswardein, and some Polish

53. Michael Palatin in *Koröper*, ed., *Quellens*, p. 125.

54. *Diagorai, Historiarum partium*, XII, col. 105.

55. Palatin, in *Levitsky, Clades apostolorum*, II, 29.

troops. Hunyadi kept a reserve force of Wallachians behind the center of the line. The entire line stretched for about five thousand feet and thus was inadequately defended by twenty-five thousand men. The army had only light artillery, which consisted of small-caliber cannon and catapults and which do not seem to have been used in the battle.

Opposite the left wing of the crusaders the sultan stationed the European mounted cavalry under David Pasha, to the left of which were the Anatolian mounted troops under Karaga Beg. Facing the right of the crusader line were the *askariya*, irregular mounted troops who served for plunder and fought in a free-wheeling manner, outside the discipline of the regular Turkish soldiers, and the *asabi*, Turkish footsoldiers from the provinces. In the center behind the mounted Anatolian and European cavalry stood the sultan, surrounded by the janissaries. The cavalry were arranged in rectangles, each divided into squadrons.⁹⁶ The Ottoman army may have numbered sixty thousand, although it is uncertain how many men the sultan actually had under his command.

For three hours after stationing themselves the crusaders awaited the Turkish attack. The battle began with an attack by the *askariya* and *asabi* on the crusaders' right wing, which was thrown back by Rozgonyi and Thalióczy. Reportedly at one point Murad contemplated flight from the battlefield, and was constrained by his janissaries. When the *askariya* attacked, the Anatolian sipahis moved forward; after the first assault failed the *askariya* again attacked, engaging the forces under Thalióczy and Simon Rozgonyi. Then Cesarini and Thalióczy were attacked from the left by the sipahis; their lines broke and they sought the refuge of the wagon barricade. The bishops of Grosswardein and Erlau could not maneuver quickly enough and were caught between the city and the lake. Both attempted to make it across the swampy terrain to Galata and failed; apparently they were killed.⁹⁷ The Turks reached the seacoast and the barricade of 2,000 wagons, defended by only two hundred men.

Meanwhile Hunyadi and Vladislav attacked the Anatolian sipahis, driving them back some four thousand feet, killing Karaga Beg, and effectively driving the Anatolians from the field. The camels of the sultan's army apparently frightened the horses of the crusaders, preventing the king and Hunyadi from moving forward. Hunyadi placed Vladislav in his former position, requesting him not to move without his instructions. The left wing of the crusader army was engaged in battle with the Rumelian sipahis. Hunyadi charged to the attack there,

96. Kappeler, *Der Kampf*, pp. 78-81.

97. *Diogenes, Historia Prætorum*, XII, cols. 394-395.

leaving the king with his household troops as a reserve force. This attack resulted in a forward movement of the Hungarian force, driving the entire right wing of the Ottoman cavalry from the field and leaving only the janissaries with Murad in the center.

Chalcocondylas relates Vladislav's Polish troops urged him to attack the janissaries and not to allow Hunyadi all the glory of victory.⁹⁸ Vladislav charged into the janissaries, who ambushed him and beheaded him, placing his head on a lance held above the army. Hunyadi was unable to come to Vladislav's aid quickly enough, and when the news of the king's death spread the army panicked and fled the field. The wagon barricade may not have been taken until the next day, when Stephen Báthori was killed. The Turks did not follow the retreating crusaders; Murad remained for three days on the battlefield and then returned to Adrianople. Sometime during the battle or soon thereafter Cesarici was killed. Various reports of his death circulated; the only certain fact is that he did not leave the area alive.⁹⁹ Hunyadi fled and reached the Danube, where he was taken prisoner by Vlad Dracul, who released him after some time.

Incredibly, the crusading army had nearly carried the day. Had Brankovich and his 8,000 Serbs been at Varna with Vladislav, it is possible that the victory might have been a Christian one. The Turks had suffered heavy losses, and had turned possible defeat into victory through the reckless act of the king. Even then the triumph was not immediately evident when, at the day's end, both armies withdrew to their camps. Indeed it was reported that Murad was not sure that he was the victor for three days. But if the Turks had suffered heavily, the crusaders had been crippled. They could not have withstood another battle. At Varna the Turks had employed muskets for the first time.¹⁰⁰

The failure of the crusade sealed the fate of Byzantium nine years later. Varna brought the Turks to the walls of Belgrade in 1448 and to the walls of Vienna a generation.

98. Chalcocondylas, ed. Bekker, p. 137.

99. Chalcocondylas, ed. Krilakowski, p. 179, states that Cesarici was killed while fleeing the battlefield. Wierwa, ed. Hardy, I, 51, says that Cesarici made it to the Danube where he was drowned by the Wallachians; Thomson, op. cit., p. 251, says merely that he was killed. On June 1 1440, Agostino Sforza wrote to Giulio Fieschi Barozzi at Milan that Cesarici was killed by the Hungarians (in Wolke, *Der Briefwechsel*, LXI-2, 596; Dlugosz, *Historia polonica*, XII, col. 410) says that he was killed by the Wallachians. By November 13, 1444, news of the battle had reached Vienna, since on that date Agostino Sforza wrote in the name of Milan reporting that the fleet was being accused of treachery. They were, however, not able to keep guard because of a lack of provisions, and Murad was able to cross into Europe with forty thousand men. He reported that there was no certain news about Vladislav and that Cesarici had been killed (in Wolke, *Der Briefwechsel*, LXI-2, pp. 462-493).

100. Issleib, *The Ottoman Empire*, p. 21.

IX

THE OTTOMAN TURKS AND THE CRUSADES, 1451-1522

A. Mehmed the Conqueror's Empire, 1451-1481

At the accession of Mehmed II to the throne in 1451 all the enemies of the Ottomans were confident, remembering the desperate condition of the Turkish state during his first sultanate (1444-1446).¹ Ottoman client states in the Balkans and Anatolia, as well as Byzantium,

Besides the works cited in the Bibliographical note to chapter VII, above, the following are useful for the period 1451-1522: Behnen Schmechel, *The Shadow of the Crescent: the Renaissance Image of the Turk (1451-1517)* (New York, 1947); Agostino Bassano, "Unos fraumi grand di Maometto II," *Storisch-ethnographische Zeitschrift*, XLVIII (1914), 398-419; Konstantin Mihailovic, *Admiralty of a Janissary*, tr. Benjamin Seale and Vera Seale (Ann Arbor, Mich., 1977) - he was captured in 1451 and returned to Constantinople in 1463; T. Spangberg Cassonakis, *Perle vauze de Portugal des Rois*, ed. Charles Schefer (Paris, 1896), important for the organization of the Ottoman state under Murad II; Carl Gyllen, *Reiser: die europäische Türkenreise des XVI. Jahrhunderts*, vol. I, 1591-1730 (Gießen and Berlin, 1962); Michael Chabodas (Bukharest), *History of Mehmed the Conqueror*, tr. Charles T. Riggs (Princeton, 1954); Johannes Hellen, *Joannis von Capistrano: ein Leben im Kampf der Reform der Kirche* (Frankfurt a/M, 1959) Georg Weig, "Johannes von Capistrano, der Heilige des Hochheiligen Johannes Bart," *Historische Zeitschrift*, X (1843), 19-46; Franz Bollinger, *Der Quellenwert des Berichtes über den Einsatz von Bischof, am 21/22 Juli 1454* (Münch., 1957); Wilhelm Fritzsche, *Marino Carracci, König von Ungarn, 1458-1490* (Freiburg im Breisgau, 1893); Heinrich Ullmann, *Kaiser Maximilian I.*, vol. I (München, 1894); Bollinger, "Kaiser Maximilian I. 'gehobene Predigten' mit dem Osmanen (1502-11)," *Zeitsch. für Kirchengesch.*, XV (1936), 262-236; Constantino Marone, "Le Pape Calixtus III (1455-1458), Alliances d'Armées von de Naples, et l'offensive contre les Turcs," *Bulletin International de l'Académie des Sciences*, XIX (1918), 77-87; Carl Gyllen, "Zur Problematik der Kreuzzüge und der Türkenkriege im 16. Jahrhundert," *Revue des études turques et ottomanes*, XII (1975), 97-115.

On Mehmed the Conqueror see Christakis and Barmatz (below), and Dennis Bay (a high official, close to the sultan), *The History of Mehmed the Conqueror* (publ. with it by Halil Inalcik and Rizaia Murayik (Mikavogolis and Chicago, 1979), the most detailed and authoritative

¹ For the first sultanate of Mehmed II, 1444-1446, and for the period 1451-1452 see Ismail, *Perle d'or*, pp. 13-136.

issued threats and even launched attacks against the Ottomans. In Anatolia Ibrahim Beg of Karaman not only seized control of several fortresses in the Hamid area, but also encouraged pretenders to intensify their activities in the provinces of Gerniyan, Aydin, and Meneshe. Under these threatening circumstances Mehmed II moved to confirm the treaties made during his father's reign with the Serbs and the Byzantines. He agreed to cede Ahja-Hisar (Krusheva) and some other frontier fortresses to the Serbian despot George Brankovich (1427-1456). As for the Byzantine emperor Constantine XI (1448-1453), not only did he take control of areas extending as far as Chorus, but he also demanded that a yearly payment of 300,000 akcha should be paid to meet the expenses of the pretender Orkhan Chelebi, who was sequestered in Constantinople.

Mehmed sent Karaia Pasha to Sofia to counter a possible attack by the Hungarians, while he himself set out with the army in May to deal with the situation in Anatolia. As Mehmed marched eastward the Byzantine envoys made new demands on him, threatening to release the pretender Orkhan Chelebi. By ceding the port and fortress of Alanya, Mehmed sought to make a peaceful settlement with the Karamanid Ibrahim Beg, and he made preparations for a prompt return to Adrianople (Edirne). When the janisaries demanded increased wages, he reorganized the corps, giving decisive evidence of his resoluteness and power. But as a ghazi leader he needed prompt military

book in Turkish on Mehmet, the Great, *Mehmed-i Âli Osman, Dâfir VII*, ed. İsmailiyye Turan (Ankara, 1954), the most important compilation by an Ottoman historian, İsmaili; *First Great Turkish Empire: its rise and fall*, I (Ankara, 1954), emphasizing Christian domination in Mehmed II's early years; Babinger, *Mehmed the Conqueror and his Time*, tr. Ralph Manheim ed. William C. Hickman (Princeton, 1978), with added footnotes in notes published after the original 1953 German edition; reviewed by İsmaili in *Speculum*, XLXV (1980), 408-427; and İsmaili, "Mehmed II," in *Jahrbuch Anatolien*, VII (1955), 598-733.

On Jean de Lévis Thénart, *Opus-Scutum* (Paris, 1893), still the basic work, well documented; Hans Pflaum, *Die Baugeschichte der Renaissancepaläste mit den Türken* (Wiesbaden, 1946); Ünal H. Erteygil, *Sultan Gazi Osmanlı, 1411*; Babinger, *Imperialgeschichte türkischer Herrscher aus der grossen türkischen Zeit im Osman Reich* (Münch., 1963); İsmaili, "A Case Study in Renaissance Diplomacy: the Agreement between Isma'el VIII and Bayezid II in Diers Fat 100," *Journal of Turkish Studies*, III (1976), 289-330; and J. Lefort, *Documenta prima de re archiepiscopii de Topkapı Sarayı, correspondance à l'Empereur de Constantin* (Ankara, 1981).

For military technology see David Appleton, *Guns, powder and Firearms in the Mamluk Kingdom: a Challenge to a Medieval Society* (London, 1954), reviewed by İsmaili in *Speculum*, XLII (1957), 501-512; Dr. Fuat Çiğ, "Firearms in the Balkans," in *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*, ed. Vernon J. Perry and Malcolm E. Pope (London, 1975), pp. 164-194; and also, "The Socio-political Effects of the Diffusion of Firearms in the Middle East," *ibid.*, pp. 212-223, and the old but still useful article by John M. Lefort, "The Great Cannon of Muhammad II (A.D. 1464), Recently Presented to the British Government by the Sultan. . .," *The Archaeological Journal*, XLV (1884), 361-380.

victories as proof of his ability and his commitment to restoring Islamic superiority in the Balkans.

In order to establish his authority Mehmed and his former tutor Zaganuz resolved to take the offensive. On returning from the Karaman campaign he gave orders to Chandarli Khalil Pasha in August 1452 for the construction of a fortress, Rumenli-Hisar, on the European shore of the Bosphorus opposite Anadolu-Hisar, as a first step toward a siege of Constantinople. Thus the city was completely cut off from the sources of its food supply in the Black Sea, and reinforcements to the Ottoman army could pass unhindered from Anatolia.

Chandarli Khalil Pasha, a capable diplomat, had already taken steps to ensure Venice's neutrality by renewing the terms of the Venetian-Ottoman agreement on September 10, 1451, and had accommodated Venetian demands with regard to the question of wheat export, a sensitive issue for Venice. Similarly, a three-year armistice with Hungary had been signed on November 20, 1451, again granting concessions. In the fall of 1452 the Ottoman frontier lords in the Morea took the offensive, but although the Byzantine emperor had sent an envoy to Venice in the winter of 1451-1452 he had been unsuccessful in stirring the west into military action. There was a general belief in Christian Europe at this time that the Ottomans would not immediately undertake the siege of Constantinople.

Actually Mehmed II thought that the grand vizir, Chandarli Khalil, presented the greatest obstacle to his plan for the conquest of Constantinople. Chandarli feared that in the event of a successful conquest he would lose all his influence, whereas a major military setback would place the Ottoman state in a dangerous position. The young sultan believed that Chandarli might not fully coöperate with him in his attack. In a war council before the siege, the sultan's warlike policy was received with enthusiasm by those such as Zaganuz who expected their own power to benefit from the changes which victory would bring. The more cautious party, represented by Chandarli Khalil, laid stress on the impregnability of the walls, as well as on the dangers from the west, but the war party, with the sultan at its head, was in the majority and Chandarli had to acquiesce.

During the actual siege, which lasted for fifty-four days (April 6-May 29), these opposing viewpoints would again come to the fore at two critical junctures. The outcome of the siege depended largely on the time factor. Both the Byzantines and the Ottomans were influenced throughout the course of the siege by rumors of the approach of land or sea forces in aid of the city. In the final week of May word that

John Hunyadi had crossed the Danube and that a crusader fleet had set out for the Bosphorus was spread among the Ottoman army. These rumors and the sultan's attempts to secure the surrender of the city through peace offers engendered concern and unrest among the Ottoman troops, who criticized the young Mehmed for "exposing his people and the state to utter destruction by entering into an undertaking whose accomplishment was impossible". In the war council which was then convened Chandarli again drew attention to the dangers involved in provoking the western world, and emphasized the necessity of ending this dangerous war by reaching some sort of understanding with the Byzantines. Chandarli's arguments were countered by Zaganus, who stated his conviction that the Christian rulers would, as in the past, fail to unite for common action, and that even if they were able somehow to field an army the superior Ottoman forces were equal to the challenge. Thereupon, the decision was taken to make a general assault on May 29, and it was left to Zaganus to organize the attack. The sultan proclaimed it in these terms, "the stones [buildings] and the land of the city and the city's appurtenances belong to me; all other goods and property, prisoners and foodstuffs are booty for the troops." Three days of sack were granted.¹

The western and the Turkish sources agree that the eventual success of the Ottomans came chiefly as the result of two events: the breaching of the walls by the Ottoman artillery bombardment, and the disputes which arose between the Byzantines and the Latins defending the city. After the wounding and withdrawal from the fight of the Genoese surprise commander John Grusinianni-Longo the whole defense collapsed. The Ottoman army entered the city through a large breach made by bombardment in the wall. Emperor Constantine was killed in hand-to-hand combat. The Ottoman and Byzantine sources also agree in reporting that Mehmed the Conqueror (Fatih) felt sadness as he toured the looted city, his future capital. The inhabitants were enslaved and taken away, either into the tents of the army outside the city or onto ships. After he visited Hagia Sofia he proclaimed "to his vizirs and

2. For Christian sources on the conquest see Edwin A. Paen, *The Destruction of the Greek Empire and the Story of the Capture of Constantinople by the Turks* (London, 1902); Steven Runciman, *The Fall of Constantinople* (London, 1965); Bellenger, *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time*, tr. Mardinian, pp. 82-105; Agostino Perroti, *La Caduta di Costantinopoli: le reali condizioni del contemporaneo* (Florence, 1974); J. R. Melville, *The Siege of Constantinople by the Turks: Seven Contemporary Accounts* (Amsterdam, 1977); and the bibliography in *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XLVI-XLIX (1953-1956). For western sources see Isidori, "Mehmed II," *Annales Anecdotes*, VII, 546-551, the most important Ottoman source for the conquest is Bektas Bey, ed. Isidori and Mijsberg. See also Giovanni B. Piccini, "Sulla Nave papale in Oriente al tempo della caduta di Costantinopoli," *Monumenti archeologici*, XI (1911), 415-427.

his commanders and his officers that henceforth his capital was to be Istanbul".

The conquest of Constantinople opened a new chapter in the history of crusading activities in Europe. Until the death of Mehmed II in 1481 the popes did their utmost to convince the western nations that organization of a crusade under papal leadership was the most immediate and pressing task facing Europe. In this new phase of crusading activities the keynote was that now western Christendom itself was in direct danger from an aggressive Islam and that a crusade, if launched, would defend Europe and its Christian civilization. The immediate goal of a crusade was no longer the deliverance of the holy places but of Constantinople, and the expulsion of the Turks from Europe. In his vow for a crusade Calistus III (1455-1458) would seek forgiveness for postponing for a time the sacred goal of recapturing the holy places.

The Ottoman success radically altered the strategic situation at the expense of Christian Europe. For western Christendom, perhaps the most important consequence of the Ottoman conquest was the loss of European control of the Straits, which deprived the west of an important strategic advantage, the ability to cut communications between the European and Asiatic territories of the Ottoman empire. Though this strategy had never proved as effective as crusading plans had called for it to be, largely because of Genoese intransigence, nevertheless it had had a restraining effect on the Ottomans. Even more important than its effect on military strategy, Ottoman control of the Straits isolated the Italian colonies on the shores of the Black Sea and left them at the mercy of the Ottomans.

In his plans to build a "universal" empire, Mehmed fully appreciated the strategic significance of the Straits as a check on Venetian seapower. During his thirty-year reign he created a series of defense lines from Tenedos to the Black Sea to make Istanbul invulnerable from the sea. With bases at Gallipoli, Izmit (Nicomedia), and Istanbul, and protected by these strong defenses, his strengthened navy became a real challenge to Venetian seapower and an effective instrument in his empire-building. In 1454 Mehmed sent his navy, fifty vessels in all, to the Black Sea to compel the submission of the states and colonies there. The navy first attacked Akkerman, forcing the submission on October 5, 1455, of Peter III Aron, voivode of Moldavia, to the sultan with a yearly tribute of 2,000 gold ducats.

As a result of his capture of the seat of the Camars, Mehmed considered himself their successor, and laid claim to all the territories which the Byzantine emperors and formerly ruled. The inspiration for his

expanded empire may be linked to several sources, including the Turco-Mongol concept of empire and the Islamic caliphate, but we know for certain that the possession of the Byzantine throne carried a great personal significance for Mehmed. In directing his conquests against the Christian world of the west, Mehmed was now able to justify his claim to be the successor to the Roman empire. The idea of founding a "universal" empire always lay behind Mehmed's plans in his efforts to pursue his conquests and military campaigns and to raise the ruined city of Istanbul to the status of a great and wealthy capital city, sometimes at the expense of the other cities of his realm.

As successor to the Byzantine emperor, Mehmed concentrated his immediate efforts on eliminating, one by one, all the dynasts who were in a position to lay claim to the throne of Byzantium. First he disposed of David Comnenus, the last emperor of Trebizond (1438-1461, d. 1463), next the two despots in the Morea, and then the Cantacuzen family in Lesbos and Aenos, whose sons had married into the Palaeologian house.

In the concept and methods of Mehmed II's conquests the outstanding feature is his abandonment of the beylik system of semi-autonomous rule by local magnates and princes in Rumelia and Anatolia in favor of outright annexation, by which he attempted to accelerate the process of establishing a centralized empire. By so doing Mehmed revived the aggressive policy of Bayezid I (1389-1402), which had been abandoned in favor of a policy of compromise during the civil war of 1402-1413 and the sultanates of Mehmed I (1413-1421) and Murad II (1421-1451). The capture of Constantinople had signified the final victory of the group of military men who pursued a policy of war and annexation over the group favoring caution and compromise. It was not until somewhat later in his reign that Mehmed was able to realize his centralizing ambitions in Anatolia, but he proceeded without delay in the Balkans.

Following the old Ottoman policy Mehmed incorporated into the imperial war machine the pre-Ottoman military groups.¹ Both among the timariot cavalry forces and as separate and intact groups, Christian soldiers played an important role in his army. The proportion of Christian timar-holders in the Balkan provinces as recorded in the survey registers of Mehmed II's time ranged from three percent to over thirty percent. The *voyvods*, who had constituted a group of lesser importance as peasant-soldiers, were present in large numbers in Bulgaria,

1 See İnalcık, *Fikih devleti*, pp. 137-184; idem, "Ottoman Methods of Conquest," in *The Ottoman Empire: Conquest, Organization and Economy* (London, 1979), vol. 1, pp. 222-225.

Macedonia, Albania, and Serbia. The registers also show that the system of rewarding certain groups with tax exemption in return for service to the state was to a large extent preserved under the Ottoman regime. Mehmed's reason for leaving the local institutions and groups intact in certain areas such as Serbia and Bosnia was his concern to preserve these areas as secure and loyal frontier zones along the borders with Hungary.

During Mehmed II's reign more than at any other time the Ottoman state took on the role of champion in the holy war against the Christian world. He was aware that in the west the idea of European unity and of combining forces in a crusade was embodied by the pope, whom the Ottomans considered their arch-enemy. The cornerstone of Mehmed's strategy was to avoid a crusade from the west, and in particular to escape the necessity of battling simultaneously on two fronts, in Rumelia and in Anatolia.

The fall of Constantinople was looked upon as a major disaster in the west, and stirred up a strong reaction throughout Europe. Pope Nicholas V (1447-1455) was successful in establishing peace and a *ligue* among the Italian states in 1454, and invited all the governments in Europe to the preparation of a crusade. There is no doubt that the Ottoman court was well informed about these initiatives. Mehmed quickly moved to sign a treaty with Venice on April 18, 1454, in order to neutralize the republic and ensure that it would not provide the naval support on which success of the crusader plans so heavily depended. Venice for its part benefited from the treaty, which recognized its trade privileges within the Ottoman empire, with only a minimal customs fee of two percent for goods entering and leaving the empire. The republic also retained the right to maintain a *baile* in Istanbul as a permanent representative at the Porte to look after Venetian interests. By agreeing to pay tribute for their colonies in the Black Sea and in the Aegean, the Genoese also reached an understanding with the sultan. However, the Knights Hospitaller of Rhodes, on the direct orders of the pope, announced that they would never pay a yearly tribute. An Ottoman naval campaign of 1454 into the Aegean under the command of Hamza Beg accomplished little.

It appears that in January 1455, when Mahmut Paşa was appointed grand vizir, a more decisive policy toward the Aegean islands, aimed at direct Ottoman control, was adopted.⁴ Mehmed had already declared war against Rhodes and Chios, and now, accusing Domenico Garfagnino,

4. Zeynel, *Osmanlılar*, cf. M. Nail Yılmaz (*İstanbul*, 1922), p. 101.

the lord of Lesbos, of siding with the Chians, he also threatened him with invasion. Lesbos managed to secure a reprieve by agreeing to raise its tribute to ten thousand ducats.⁵ Still pursuing the new more aggressive policy, however, the Ottomans occupied Old Phocaea in December 1455 and Amos toward the end of January or February 1456, in addition to the islands of Imbros and Samothrace, which belonged to a branch of the Gattilusio family. The Ottoman initiative seems to have been prompted by both a dynastic rivalry over the possession of these islands and Ottoman concern over an attack by the crusader fleet which was being readied by the pope.⁶ Under the eunuch Ismail the Ottoman fleet also occupied Lemnos upon the invitation of the Greek islanders, who rose up against Nicholas Gattilusio in May 1456. The unsuccessful intervention against the islanders by Nicholas's brother Domenico, prince of Lesbos, enraged the sultan.

The fate of the northern Aegean islands had become a major concern in the papal court too. After the fall of Imbros and Samothrace the island of Lesbos itself was in imminent danger. Domenico sent urgent appeals for aid to Genoa and the pope.⁷ Genoa sent a warship with reinforcements, and Calixtus III gave priority to this issue, giving orders to accelerate the pace of preparations of the papal fleet. Alarmed by the implications of the Ottoman advance for the security of Euboea, Venice considered for a moment the occupation of Lemnos and Imbros for itself.⁸ The sultan's new policy of direct control was obviously motivated by his concern to safeguard his western flank and Istanbul before setting out against Belgrade, as planned for the following spring. Control of these islands was to be one of the principal issues between the Ottomans and Christian Europe for the next two centuries. Actually preparations for such a naval attack had been on the drawing board ever since the fall of Constantinople in 1453.

Despite the peace achieved in Italy by the treaty of Lodi on April 9, 1454, and conclusion of a defensive and aggressive alliance against the Ottomans for a period of twenty-five years among the Italian powers on February 25, 1455,⁹ realistic statesmen such as Francis Sforza, duke of Milan (1450-1466), Cosimo de' Medici in Florence (1434-1464), and

5. Davis, *Decline and Fall of Byzantium to the Ottoman Turks* 1340-1452, or Harry E. Magoulias (Daresis, 1973), p. 224.

6. Crivellius, in Riggs, pp. 385-386.

7. William Miller, "The Cardinal of Lesbos (1455-1462)," *Byzantinische Zeitschrift*, XNII (1913), 433.

8. *Ibid.*

9. Ludwig Pastor, *The History of the Popes from the Close of the Middle Ages*, or Frederick E. Astlebury, II (London, 1894), 273-276.

Alfonso I of Naples (1442-1458) were not convinced by the exaggerated reports of an imminent Ottoman invasion. Outside Italy in Christian Europe we find the same indifference to the pope's call for the crusade. While Venice and the papacy were interested in heightening crusading zeal for their own purposes, these potentates coolly considered the Ottoman threat as a check against the ambitions of their powerful rivals in Italy. Their indifference has puzzled modern historians, but in actuality an Ottoman invasion of Italy in 1453 was only a remote possibility, in view of the fact that the Christian powers, principally Venice and Aragon, had a clear naval superiority in the Mediterranean. In addition, Christian outposts in Albania, the Morea, and the Aegean posed a serious obstacle in the way of any Ottoman advance. Also Hungary, which was threatening the Ottomans in Serbia, had become Mehmed's main concern at this time.

The preparation of the papal fleet, for which the date of departure had been fixed as March 1, 1456, was as usual delayed by various mishaps. The fleet, consisting of sixteen galleys with 5,000 soldiers and 300 cannon,¹⁰ was finally able to put out to sea only in mid-June 1456. One goal of the expedition was to divert some of the Ottoman forces from the Hungarian front, and another was to release Chios and Lesbos from their submission to the sultan, and secure their coöperation in recapturing the northern Aegean islands occupied by the Ottomans. In this way the revival of the Christian League against the Turks in the Aegean would be realized.

Chios, however, would not agree to repudiate its allegiance to the sultan and join the papal forces. It had already agreed to pay Mehmed 30,000 ducats in indemnity and to raise its yearly tribute to 10,000 ducats.¹¹ The Chians were anxious not to jeopardize their trade with the sultan's dominions, which was vital to their existence.

The papal fleet occupied Lemnos and Imbros by agreement and Thasos by force, and left garrisons for their defense. The Turkish navy was absent during all these operations, obviously because it was engaged on the Black Sea during the Belgrade campaign in the summer and because of the mariners' annual abandonment of their ships in the autumn. Despite a tendency among western historians to minimize the importance of this papal intervention in the Aegean, the sources indicate that it created a grave situation for the Ottomans, especially in view of developments in Lesbos. Upon the arrival of the crusaders'

10. Miodot, *op. cit.*, *Concetta dei comandatori Veneti nach den Quellen*, I (Görlitz, 1908), 82; Parler, *op. cit.*, II, 296; Ducas, *ii. Magnolia*, p. 256.

11. Ducas, *ii. Magnolia*, pp. 254-255.

navy at Mytilene, Domenico and Nicholas Gattilusio, as Critobolus informs us, declared their repudiation of the sultan's authority.¹² Nicholas, who had been expelled from Lemnos by Mehmed, advocated a policy of resistance to the Ottomans. Twelve trustees of the papal fleet stayed on at Mytilene.¹³

Mehmed sent a powerful fleet under Ismail, governor of Gallipoli and admiral of the fleet, against the Gattilusii in the spring of 1457.¹⁴ Judging from the great preparations for the Ottoman fleet, it can be said that the sultan had in mind annexing Lesbos as he had the other northern Aegean islands. The papal squadron retreated to Chios. The Ottoman admiral laid siege to the fortress of Molybdos without result and subsequently left the island, returning to Gallipoli on August 9. Domenico, declaring that the papal navy was incapable of protecting him, turned to the sultan and offered his submission by sending a tribute; in 1458 Nicholas accused him of aiding Mehmed, and had him executed. During the course of 1457 both the Chians and William II Crispo, the duke of the Archipelago, had followed in Lesbos's footsteps and agreed to submit to the Ottomans.¹⁵

Lemnos and Thasos, still in Christian hands, were put by the pope under the protection of the grand master of the Hospitallers after the return of the papal fleet to Italy in 1458. The Venetians and the Catalans each wanted these strategic islands for themselves, but Calixtus III refused their request. After Calixtus died, the new pope, Pius II (1458-1464), planned to put them under the Genoese.¹⁶ At any rate, in 1457-1459 the Latins were trying to create on these islands bases for defense and for attack against the Ottomans, but in 1459-1460 Mehmed occupied them, ending the squabbles. A compromise with the Greek population, who resented the Latin occupation, enabled the sultan to take over these islands easily: he agreed that the despot Demetrius Palaeologus, an Ottoman protégé in the Morea, would take possession of the islands in return for recognition of Ottoman suzerainty, with the payment of a yearly tribute of three thousand ducats. Upon the conclusion of the agreement Zaganuz Pasha, the new Otto-

12 See Critobolus, in Ruggie, pp. 139-139; Miller, *op. cit.*, pp. 431-434, thinks that the Gattilusii continued paying their tribute to the sultan, but the tribute was taken to the sultan in August 1458 (Ducas, p. 256) before the papal fleet arrived at Mytilene in the autumn.

13 Ducas, in *Isophrasidis*, p. 256; Miller, *op. cit.*, p. 434, thinks that the fleet departed in August.

14 The fleet comprised 150 sail and most carried cannon and siege engines.

15 For the details see Miller, *op. cit.*, p. 432; Critobolus, in Ruggie, p. 139, puts it after the campaign against the Misis in 1458.

16 Miller, *op. cit.*, p. 434.

man military operations, it was under orders to avoid direct confrontation with the Ottoman forces.²²

Pius II showed himself just as enthusiastic and determined as Calixtus III for a general crusade of all Christian nations "to free Europe from the disgrace of Turkish domination". According to Ferdinand Gregorovius, "the deliverance of Constantinople was the ideal of his pontificate."²³ The congress summoned by the pope for this purpose convened at the time when the Ottomans were in the process of evicting the papal forces from the northern Aegean islands.²⁴

The news of the fall of the Serbian despotate in June 1459 and the arrival in Mantua of the envoys from the directly threatened kingdoms of Hungary and Bosnia galvanized a short-lived Christian European alliance. To muster the forces needed to overcome the now powerful army of the Ottomans was considered impossible, yet, prompted by cardinal Bessarion, a Greek refugee in Rome, the decision was taken to declare a general crusade of European nations for three years starting in 1460. However, before setting out on his campaign against Trebizond, Mehmed was able to sign an armistice with the Knights Hospitaller of Rhodes.

Meanwhile in Albania the struggle against the Ottomans continued. Up until 1463, when Venice openly took the Albanian rebels under its own protection, both the king of Naples and the pope were actively involved on that front. They provided the rebel leader Scanderbeg with money and supplies and even sent troops. Before setting out on the Trebizond campaign, however, Mehmed also negotiated an armistice agreement with Scanderbeg.

The pope had convinced Hungary, the Ottomans' major rival in Europe, that it should participate fully in the planned crusade. Conflict between the Ottomans and Hungary was inevitable because of the rivalry over Serbia. In 1451 when Mehmed II came to the throne the Serbian despot George Brankovich had seized the fortress of Alaia-Hisar (Kruševats) and its environs, but on learning of the Ottoman capture of Constantinople he offered to return it. The sultan responded by sending an ultimatum in which he laid hereditary claim to all knez Lazar's former territories in the Morava river valley including Smederevo and Golubats, but promised to give up to Brankovich the Vuchitr-Lab region (Vilak-ili), which had belonged to the despot's father, Vuk.

²² E. H. Miller, *op. cit.*, p. 436. Ottoman eyewitness accounts are given by Ewerl in *Die Türkenzeit*, pp. 100-105, and Turcan Bey, *op. cit.*, pp. 102a-103a.

²³ Fretter, *op. cit.*, III, 78, 79.

²⁴ *Ibid.*, III, 85-96.

During Mehmed's campaign into the Morava river valley in 1454, the fortresses of Ornel (Ornoliden) and Sitrye-Hisar (Sitrovitsa) were captured by the Ottomans, and the despot took refuge in Hungary. When the Ottoman army withdrew, John Hunyadi from Belgrade and the Serbs in the Krasovo area turned to the offensive in the fall of 1454. Hunyadi devastated the Vidin-Nish area, but the Serbs were beaten in the south.

In Mehmed's second Serbian campaign in 1455 he concentrated his forces against southern Serbia and Vuk-ih. He took possession of a number of silver-producing towns, Trepča, Novo Brdo (June 1, 1455), and the Lab valley. The despot's desperate appeal for a crusade did not yield any result and he had to give up all hope of recovering the silver mines of Novo Brdo, the source of his wealth and power. By limiting his demands to the return of Vuk-ih to the Ottomans, Mehmed managed to reach a unilateral peace agreement with Brankovich to the exclusion of the Hungarians. The despot also agreed to pay a very large yearly tribute and to provide troops.

Once the Serbian despotate was neutralized, Mehmed II prepared a major campaign to oust the Hungarians from Belgrade and invaded Hungary in 1456. Twenty-one cannons, as well as a fleet of two hundred vessels, sixty-four of them galleys, were to be used in the campaign. Although internal dissension and hostility with the emperor Frederick III (1452-1493) weakened Hungary's defense, it received strong support from the papacy with the declaration of a crusade against the Ottomans and the sending of a papal fleet to the Aegean. The fiery preachings of the Franciscan friar John of Capistrano and the arrival of crusaders whom he had recruited from among the populace of Hungary and Germany gave the movement much the appearance of the earliest crusades. Mehmed's huge army caused panic in Italy, where many thought that Hungary could not resist the sultan's attack and that he intended to move his army into Italy after conquering Hungary.²³

Although Mehmed's guns demolished Belgrade's defenses and a group of janissaries actually entered the city, Hunyadi was able to bring in reinforcements by breaking the blockade on the Danube (July 14). Thus the general assault was repulsed (July 21) and the sultan was forced to retreat (July 23).²⁴

²³ See also, *The Papacy*, II, 172.

²⁴ While Catholic sources (see Bellenger, *Der Gassenkrieg*, and Lotze, *The Papacy*, II, 172-182) give credit for the victory to John of Capistrano and his "crusaders", the Ottoman chronicles (especially Tursun, *Res-Kasidi*, and Hird) confirm the Venetian and Hungarian stories by relating Hunyadi's key role. The Ottoman sources stress that Hunyadi first repulsed the sultan's

This major victory sent powerful vibrations throughout Christian Europe. Pope Calistus III wrote that now he looked forward "not only to the recovery of Constantinople but also to the liberation of Europe, Asia, and the Holy Land."²⁷ The activity of the pope's fleet in the Aegean in 1457 was thought to be a preliminary to the deliverance of Constantinople. Pope Pius II made contact with Uzun Haasan, ruler of the Akkoyunlu Turcomans (1466-1478), and the Georgians in an attempt to encircle the Ottomans from the east.²⁸

In 1456 George Brankovich died and a dispute over the Serbian succession brought on a new crisis, with Mahmed supporting George's son Gregory against his brother Lazar II (1456-1458). About this time another dispute which had arisen between the two Greek despots in the Morea, Demetrius and Thomas Palaeologus, had confused the situation in the south, so Venice intervened and claimed the Morea as part of its own sphere of influence. In Albania too the situation had deteriorated for the Ottomans in 1457, when Scanderbeg defeated the Ottoman forces in Albulena. In response to these threats the sultan in the spring of 1458 sent Isa Beg with reinforcements against Scanderbeg, while he himself set out for the Morea with an army, and he dispatched the pretender Gregory to Serbia with an army under Mahmud Pasha. In response to a number of concessions on the part of Mahmud Pasha the Serbs surrendered a few fortresses in various parts of the country, including Golubats. However, an army under the personal command of the Hungarian king Matthias Corvinus (Hunyadi, 1458-1490) in nearby Smolecevo continued to pose a threat, and Mahmud withdrew his forces to the area around Nish.

At this juncture the sultan, having conquered these areas in the Morea formerly subject to emperor Constantine XI, arrived with his forces in Skoplje (Üsküb) and met with Mahmed Pasha. Matthias, following his father's example, waited to act until the onset of autumn and the expected annual disbanding of the Ottoman army. Mehmed II,

Islam by his victory over the Ottoman fleet on the Bosphorus he was able to bring his army to the fortress by ship. After a week of intensive cannon fire, the sultan gave the order for a general assault. The janissaries who stormed the city were killed and slaughtered by thousands; the assault ended in complete failure. Now the Ottoman battle was in full Hungary with her small army out of Belgrade by a fogged river. Skopje was not, however, deserted, as the Ottoman cynicism historian Terzioz makes clear. As Ottoman sources tell us, those attacking the Germans in their trenches were John of Capistrano's "armies." According to the Ottoman sources these first succeeded, and advanced as far as the sultan's camp, but then were repulsed and massacred.

²⁷ Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 103, note 87: the pope's letter to archbishop Austine Prædical of Florence written in August 1456.

²⁸ *Austreyr Bryer*, "Liberation in Belogian and the Georgian and Anatolian Embassy of 1466-1468," *Bull. Karaisk (Review de Karaiskology)*, XIX-XX (1963), 175-198; John Woods, *The Akkoyunlu* ... *Ottomans and Chicago*, 1976, p. 161.

however, responded with exceptional measures, and remained in Skopje until at least November 1458. The king, who crossed the Danube and attacked Tihata, was forced by the Ottomans to retreat. In the spring of the following year the sultan himself led an army into the field against Smederevo. The Serbs came to Sofia in June 1459 to surrender the keys to the fortress; the Serbian despotate was once again annexed to the Ottoman empire. Next Mehmed crossed to Anatolia and took Amasia (Amestria) on the Black Sea from the Genoese without a battle.

Pope Pius II received the news of the surrender of Smederevo as an unmitigated disaster for the west, and consequently during the deliberations at the Congress of Mantua in 1459 the launching of a crusade was officially announced. As a result of the establishment of despot Thomas's control over the Morea with western support, Pius regarded the Morea as an excellent base for operations against the Ottomans. The sultan, however, invaded the Morea in 1460 and annexed the entire region, with the exception of a few fortresses on the coasts which belonged to Venice. The capture of Argos by the Ottomans finally convinced the Venetians of the necessity of declaring war (July 28, 1463).

Meanwhile, new developments in Wallachia and Bosnia had made inevitable the outbreak of an open conflict between the Hungarians and the Ottomans. In 1461 Mehmed had sought to regain the allegiance of the voivode of Wallachia, but Vlad III Tepesh ("the Impaler") had responded by allying himself with the king of Hungary instead, and even went so far as to take advantage of the sultan's absence during the Trebizond campaign to attack Ottoman outposts across the Danube. Consequently, in the summer of 1462 Mehmed invaded Wallachia, and appointed in Vlad's place his brother Radu III ("the Handsome"), who was living in the Ottoman palace. The king of Bosnia, Stephen Tomasevich (1461-1463), who espoused the western Catholic cause against the Ottomans, did not hesitate to hand some fortresses over to the Hungarians (1462). But because of the internal religious division his situation was hopeless, and Bosnia too was conquered by the sultan in 1463.

By 1463 this uninterrupted series of invasions convinced the Ottomans' two great rivals, Hungary and Venice, that the time had come for decisive action on their part. At long last the pope's efforts bore fruit, and Venice and Hungary signed a mutual offensive and defensive pact. The pope now believed that the crusade would become a reality. Signing an agreement with Venice and Burgundy, he set May

1464 as the date for the departure of a crusade. A plan was even prepared for dividing the lands of the Ottoman empire among the Christian states in case of victory. It provided that Venice would take the Morea, Bosnia, Africa, and the coastal part of Epirus; Scanderbeg would take Macedonia; the remaining parts of the former lands of the Byzantine empire (mainly Thrace and Thessaly) would be divided between the Greek dynasty and Hungary would take all of Serbia, Bosnia, Bulgaria, and Wallachia.

The western powers, promising Scanderbeg financial support, persuaded him to go on the offensive, thereby disregarding the terms of his agreement with the sultan. The major rival to Ottoman power in eastern Anatolia, Uzun Hasan, ruler of the Akkoyunlu Turcomans, entered into negotiations with Venice for a pact against the sultan. As early as the summer of 1463 the allies began their offensive. Venice retook Argos in September and the walls of the Hexamilion were quickly reinforced. A number of towns and cities in the Morea rose up in revolt and sided with the Venetians, and the Moslems remaining in the peninsula had to take refuge in a few fortresses over which they maintained control. On December 16 the king of Hungary attacked and captured the Bosnian capital Yajtsa (Jajce). The Venetian fleet patrolled the waters outside the Dardanelles, threatening to strike at any moment.

Mehmed, faced with these threats on all sides, took drastic steps. Despite the fact that winter was already near, he immediately sent Mahmud Pasha with a strong army to the Morea. In order to strengthen the empire's naval forces he established a new shipyard at Kadrga-liman in Istanbul, and in order to assure the safety of Istanbul he ordered that matching fortresses be built on either side of the Dardanelles at Kilitbahr and Sultaniye (Chanakkale). The Venetians were defeated in the Morea, and were once again forced to give up the peninsula to the Ottomans. While the sultan himself was on the way to the Morea to reinforce Mahmud Pasha, on reaching Zidonion he learned of the successful conclusion of the campaign and changed the direction of his march toward Bosnia. In the summer of 1464 he besieged Yajtsa in an attempt to expel the Hungarians but was unsuccessful. On his return to Sofia in September he learned of the Hungarian king's entry into Bosnia and sent a force under the command of Mahmud Pasha, who forced Matthias to withdraw. Thus Mehmed had achieved success in meeting the allied threats on every front. Pope Pius II, who had hoped to lead the crusader army in person, died at Ancona August 15, 1464, and the crusade collapsed.

During 1465 Mehmed opened peace negotiations with Venice and Hungary because of the need to deal with the confused situation in

Karaman, but no agreement could be reached. In the spring of 1466 he set out against Albania to punish Scanderbeg. After conducting operations against the Albanians in the highlands, he constructed a strong fortress, Elbasan, in the low country in central Albania, as a base against those Albanians who were continuing resistance from their strongholds in the mountains. After the sultan's departure Scanderbeg, with support troops sent by Venice, defeated Balaban Beg, who was pressing the fortress of Croia, and besieged the newly constructed fortress of Elbasan. Outraged by Scanderbeg's actions, the sultan himself set out on his second Albanian campaign in 1467. In order to intimidate his enemies, he attacked the Albanians mercilessly and sent raiding parties against the Venetian ports, including Scutari and Durazzo. Thus Albania became one of the principal arenas of the Venetian-Ottoman war. Venice achieved little military benefit from the alliance with king Matthias, but as a result of the agreements reached with Uzun Hasan and Pir Ahmed, the end of Karaman, it was now possible to mobilize a large land force in Asia against the sultan.

Before Uzun Hasan emerged as an ally, Venice had taken advantage of the sultan's Karaman campaign of 1466. In 1469 Venice had sent out its fleet from Euboea and struck repeated blows against the Rumelian coastline. The islands of Lemnos and Imbros were occupied, and the important commercial centers of Aenos and New Phocaea were sacked and burned. Then the Venetian fleet moved on to the Morea nad, after capturing the fortress of Vostitsa, reinforced it as a base for future actions. At this time the Ottoman fleet had been occupied in operations in the Black Sea against the Genoese.

This daring attack led Mehmed to a decision to retaliate with a major blow against the enemy, and he chose Negroponte on Euboea as the target of his attack. During this campaign the Ottomans achieved tactical superiority, and while his fleet monitored the movements of the Venetian fleet, a land force under the personal command of the sultan built a bridge linking the island with the mainland; thus he was able to bring over his army, which succeeded in subduing the fortress on July 11, 1470. The loss of Negroponte aroused great concern not only among the Venetians but throughout the west, and there was general fear that the Ottomans had now established complete control of the Aegean. On Christmas day 1471 pope Sixtus IV (1471-1484) assigned six cardinals to the task of stimulating interest in Europe for the launching of a crusade against the Turks. A pact was signed between Venice and Naples for the formation of a crusader fleet, but the rest of Europe remained aloof.

Aware of the dangerous situation during his campaigns in the east, the sultan tried to neutralise his western rivals by peace offensives. In July 1471 he sent an envoy to Venice to offer peace. Since he insisted on complete control of the Aegean islands, the Morea, and Albania, and in particular on the payment of a yearly tribute, the negotiations broke down in March 1472.

Uzun Hasan, engaged in a life-and-death struggle with the Ottomans, the outcome of which would determine the future of eastern Anatolia, readied himself for battle with every military and diplomatic weapon at his disposal.²⁹ In the winter of 1470-1471 an Akkoyunlu embassy visited Venice, Rome, and Naples seeking an agreement against the Ottomans. Under the impact of the fall of Negroponte, and despite the sultan's peace offensive in 1471 and 1472, Venice reached an agreement with Uzun Hasan which included the following cardinal points. To aid Uzun Hasan with firearms Venetian ships would bring arms and a small landing party to the coast of Karaman, to be met there by forces sent by Uzun Hasan. After his expected victory Uzun Hasan was to become master of most of Anatolia and make the Ottoman sultan promise to refrain from building fortresses on the coasts and to allow free access for Venetian shipping into the Black Sea. In addition to this, he was to secure the return to Venice of the Morea and Euboea as well as Lesbos. The Venetians assured Uzun Hasan that they were capable of entering the Straits and capturing Istanbul. In the summer of 1472 an Akkoyunlu Karamanid army invaded Ottoman territory as far as Akshehir in central Anatolia, but on August 14 the invading army was routed by the Ottomans.

The large crusader fleet, composed of about 37 galleys from Venice, Naples, Rhodes, the papacy, and Cyprus, had been wreaking havoc along the Mediterranean shores of the Ottoman territories all summer. Adalia (Antalya) was sacked and burned in August and Smyrna (İzmir) on September 13. In the spring of 1473 the fleet, in co-operation with the forces of the Karamanid Kaum Beg, took the fortresses of Corycus, Siglin, and Seleucia (Sibfke). The sultan took all possible measures to counter the Akkoyunlu-Christian attack. In the winter he had hastily sent a force of raiders (*akıncılar*) from Rumelia to the area around Silvas, and in the spring he arrived in person with his large army and advanced in the direction of Erzurum against Uzun Hasan. The Akkoyunlu were cut off from communication with the Christian force which landed at Corycus, near Tarsus on the Mediterranean coast.

²⁹ For Uzun Hasan and his struggle against Mehmed II see Woods, *The Akkoyunlu*, pp. 47-157.

At the decisive battle of Bashkent on August 11, 1473, Mehmed emerged triumphant and imposed harsh terms on Uzun Hasan. The latter was to cede the fortress of Kara-Hisar and to promise never again to violate Ottoman territory.

Mehmed took a defensive stance vis-à-vis Hungary in the period 1471-1473. Despite Matthias's attempts at intervention, the sultan managed to build a strongly fortified castle on the Danube at Shabatz (Bögitrdelen) to ensure the security of Bosnia. In the years after 1471 he sent his raiding forces not against Hungary but against the Austrian lands of Matthias's rival emperor Frederick III, and even sent an envoy to Matthias proposing peace. In 1473 a Hungarian envoy was sent in return but he was kept waiting until the completion of the Uzun Hasan affair, and was not granted an audience with the sultan.

After his victory against Uzun Hasan Mehmed listened to the envoy's demands, which included the abandonment or demolition of the two fortresses on the Danube, the Avula (Havile) ramparts opposite Belgrade and the fortress of Golubari (Gügerjinlik). Not only were these demands rejected by the sultan, but he countered with a demand of his own for the ceding of the fortress of Vayta in Bosnia, and ordered a raid against Hungarian territory. In this raid (winter 1474) Mihail-oghlu Ali advanced as far as Varid. Because of his ongoing war with Poland, Matthias was unable to capitalize on the opportunity in 1473, and had to leave the raid of 1474 unanswered. It was not until 1475 that the king was free to launch his counterattack. He captured the fortress of Shabatz on February 15, 1476.

Meanwhile the sultan, who was busily making preparations for a campaign against Moldavia, made an offer of peace. Disregarding the offer, the Hungarian king proceeded to build three wooden forts on the Danube for the purpose of gaining control of the Smederevo region. The sultan, upon his return from the Moldavian campaign, immediately set out for Smederevo, disregarding the exhaustion of his troops, and demolished the three forts. Thereafter Hungary was neutralized by Matthias's war against the Hapsburgs. Not only did Matthias withhold his support from the Venetians, but he let his father-in-law, the king of Naples, make an agreement with the sultan. But after formalizing the peace with Venice in 1479 the Ottoman raids against Hungary were resumed. While the frontier begs attacked Transylvania the new governor of Bosnia, David Pasha, accompanied by a large *askari* force, crossed the Sava river and carried out extensive raids in Hungary.

From 1474 on the sultan intensified the war against Venice. In 1477

Suleiman Pasha was sent against the Venetian possession Lepanto, but as a result of the timely arrival of naval assistance it was able to resist capture. Evrenuz-oghlu Ahmed blockaded the Venetian fortress of Croia in Albania, and managed to repel naval reinforcements as they attempted to land on the shore. In the autumn of 1477 Iskender Pasha, the governor of Bosnia, led an army against Venetian territory in northern Italy and advanced over the Isonzo and Tagliamento rivers, wreaking havoc on the plain opposite the city of Venice itself. In the following year a similar raid was carried out against Friuli.

Finally in April 1478 the sultan himself set out on campaign against the Venetians in Albania. Proceeding directly to Scutari he immediately besieged the fortress, which resisted all the assaults. After cutting off access to it from the sea by a blockade Mehmed returned with the main part of the army. Helpless to save Scutari and fearful because of the recent raids for Venice itself, the republic resumed peace negotiations in December 1478. On January 15, 1479, a peace treaty was signed, bringing an end to this long war. Its principal provisions were that Venice agreed to evacuate Scutari and hand it over to the Ottomans, gave up claims to Croia and the islands of Lemnos and Euboea, and agreed to pay a yearly tribute of 10,000 gold ducats, in return for which it was to enjoy freedom to engage in commerce.

Since the sultan had by this peace treaty effectively neutralized the major enemy sea power, he was now able to turn his attacks against Rhodes, Italy, and the papacy without worry. The rivalries existing among Naples, Venice, and Milan, as well as their general opposition to the policies of the papacy, played into Mehmed's hands, and Venice encouraged him to take immediate action against the kingdom of Naples.

In the spring of 1480 he sent Mesih Pasha with a fleet against Rhodes while simultaneously launching Gedik Ahmed Pasha with another fleet against southern Italy, thus opening a new phase in his conquests. After a fierce ninety-day siege starting on May 23, 1480, the Ottomans were forced to retreat from Rhodes with severe losses.

Gedik Ahmed, the conqueror of Karasman and the Crimea, managed to capture the islands of Lemnos (Santa Maura), Cephalonia, and Zante belonging to the Tocco dynasty, and also found an opportunity to meddle in the internal politics of the kingdom of Naples in 1479. In the summer of 1480 he set out from Avlona with a fleet of 132 ships carrying 18,000 men and on August 11 captured Otranto. After reinforcing the fortress and transforming it into a base for operations, he began carrying out raids. The capture of Otranto was regarded as the first step toward the capture of Rome, and the pope fell into a panic,

even thinking of fleeing to safety outside Italy. Gedik Ahmed returned to Rumelia in order to collect fresh troops for renewed attacks, but in the spring of 1481, as he was preparing to cross the Adriatic with reinforcements, the news of Mehmed's death was sent by his son, the new sultan Bayazid II (1481-1512), along with an urgent request for his return to the capital to meet the threat posed by Bayazid's brother Jem Sultan.³⁰ Otranto was quickly retaken by the Neapolitans, and Italy was spared further Ottoman invasions.

B. The Ottomans, the Crusade, and Renaissance Diplomacy, 1481-1522

The death of Mehmed the Conqueror on May 3, 1481, gave rise to an internecine struggle for the throne between his sons Bayazid and Jem. Bayazid II, supported by Isak Pasha, Gedik Ahmed, and the janissaries, who had rebelled at the death of Mehmed, succeeded in taking control of the capital. Jem's attempts to challenge his brother's control in the years 1481 and 1482 met with defeat at the hands of Bayazid, who had collected the main forces of the empire under his banner. The state of civil war in the Ottoman empire gave rise to great expectations in the Christian world. The papacy was hopeful that the civil war would lead to a territorial division of the empire,³¹ and it was believed that this was the most opportune time to strike a decisive blow against the Ottomans. After his final defeat at Ankara in June 1482, Jem took refuge in Rhodes, relying on the promise of the Hospitallers that he would be transferred to Rumelia to continue the fight.

Actually the Hospitaller grand master, Peter of Aubusson, kept him as a prisoner because Bayazid made generous offers to the knights in exchange for their promise to keep him guarded.³² Up until the time of his agreement with the knights of Rhodes (December 14, 1482), fol-

30. This analysis of Mehmed II's relations with Christian Europe is based in general on Institut, "Mehmed II," in *Index Anghellensis*, VII, 306-332; also on Balthazar, *Mehmed the Conqueror*; and Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 304-362; see my review of Balthazar's book in *Speculum*, LXXV (1960), 408-427.

31. Johann W. Zolnerow, *Geschichte des venezianischen Reiches in Europa*, II (Gotha, 1824), cxxx, Darmstadt, 1943), 479; for the civil war see the contemporary Ottoman *Amelkelle* in "Estado da Leste," ed. Uzun, pp. 164-167.

32. Tuzcan, *Ottom-Selam*, pp. 80-85; obviously Jem was deceived by the knights. See his biography, Vahid, ed. *Mehmed Aziz Qasimov*, UNB, pp. 7-8.

lowing the execution of the overbold Gedik Ahmed Pasha (November 18), sultan Bayazid's position both internally and internationally was weak, as the janissaries, the *ulama*, and other factions reacted against any continuation of Mehmed II's centralizing policy. The knights of Rhodes immediately began negotiations with the other leaders of the Christian world for the undertaking of a crusade against the Ottomans. There were two courses open to the western powers: they could either follow a war policy and send a crusader army against the Ottomans with Jem as a figurehead, or else simply use the threat of sending Jem to check the sultan, forcing him to seek peaceful relations with the west. In effect, the sum of 45,000 gold pieces sent annually by the Ottoman sultan, ostensibly for the maintenance expenses of prince Jem, acted as a kind of tribute which softened the stance of the western powers and led them to choose the second alternative.³³ Nevertheless, the position of Jem as a hostage in the hands of European states gave rise to new developments in relations between western governments and the Ottomans.

The Ottoman diplomatic efforts were on the whole successful in realizing their primary aims, which were to prevent a crusade and to keep Jem from joining forces with either the Mamluk sultan of Egypt or the king of Hungary, the two principal rivals of the Ottomans, who were both in a position to use Jem in a most effective way against Bayazid. To achieve this goal, the Ottomans made use of diplomatic means as well as military threats, seeking to exploit for their own benefit the rivalries existing among the Christian powers in Europe. During this period the Ottomans did everything in their power to deepen the divisions between the Italian states, encouraging and giving their support to the weaker states in their struggle against the dominant powers in the Italian scene. These weaker states constantly used the threat of Ottoman intervention on their behalf as a check against the incursions of their enemies.

Bayazid confirmed the peace treaty with Venice on January 16, 1462. Several new concessions not present in the 1479 agreement were added at this time, a sign that Bayazid indeed felt the need for continuation of peaceful relations with this maritime power.³⁴ The advantageous terms granted to the Venetians achieved the effective neutralization of

³³ Pichlerman, *Die Zusammenkunft*, pp. 84-86.

³⁴ Bayazid agreed to exempt the 10,000-gold-piece tribute paid by the Venetians to Mehmet II and lowered the customs duties for Venetians from five percent to four, see Hasković, "Pactum firmis greci di Massimiliano II," pp. 258-269.

the republic, which was perennially the Ottomans' principal rival on the sea, as the Hungarians were on the land.

Since both the Ottomans and the Venetians were at war with the king of Naples, the agreement took the form of an alliance. From the Ottoman documentation³⁵ it appears that Bayazid would even have been content to have Jem in the custody of Venice. The Venetian authorities kept the sultan informed of Jem's movements in Italy and France, and of the progress of the major powers' intentions and plans, but naturally all this was done in such a way as to influence Bayazid's policy in favor of Venetian interests. Taking care to preserve their friendly relations with the Ottomans, the Venetians, as a rule, would not participate in the councils being convened to make plans for a crusade. But they too appreciated the value of the custody of Jem in western hands as a check on Ottoman actions, especially on the sea.

Under the circumstances, the peace agreement concluded in 1484 between Bayazid and Ferdinand (Ferruccio) I, the king of Naples (1458-1494), can be considered a further Ottoman diplomatic success. The invasion of Otranto by the Ottomans in 1481 had caused panic in Italy. The news of Mehmet II's death had reached the pope on June 2, 1481. Sixtus IV did not, however, relax his efforts to organize a general crusade against the Ottomans. This crusade was to be joined by all Italy, and, if possible, by the entire Christian world. After recapturing Otranto from the Ottomans on September 21, 1481, King Ferdinand, following the traditional policy of the Aragonese dynasty, set about stirring up a rebellion in Albania. Accordingly, Klada set out from Naples, captured the Albanian coastal fortresses of Himara and Sopot, and established contact with Albanian leaders in 1481. Despite the pope's wish that the crusader naval force which set sail to subdue the Turkish garrisons at Otranto be sent on against Avlona,³⁶ the Ottoman naval base in Albania, his desires were not heeded. By this time the papacy had already made plans to arrange with Venice for the removal of Ferdinand from the throne of Naples.³⁷ Because of the ensuing war of Ferrara in Italy, enthusiastic invitations for a crusade following the capture of Jem by the Hospitallers produced no result.

Hüseyin Beg, Bayazid's ambassador to European governments in con-

35. Letter to Erzurum, Sultan-Camii, from Yaghaçi Sarıf archives (cited hereafter as TKS), no. 2407. "Why do the Venetians not capture Jem while there is a chance for us? It is time for them to show their friendship"; cf. Vladimir Lamantsev, *Secrets d'Etat de Venise* (St. Petersburg, 1884; repr. New York, 1940), p. 302; Thomas, *op. cit.*, p. 106.

36. Paillet, *The History of the Pope*, tr. Astorlen, IV (London, 1896), 342.

37. *Ibid.*, IV, 374. It is noteworthy that the 500 Ottoman soldiers who joined Naples' forces as mercenaries played a significant role in the battle of Campomorto (1482).

nection with Jem's affairs, reported that the king of Naples was very anxious to make peace with the sultan.³⁸ Ferdinand enthusiastically acknowledged the receipt of the peace and friendship offers of Bayazid and stressed "the friendship and brotherhood which exists between the two of us".³⁹ He also added useful information about Jem which he had collected through his spies.

The Ottomans, however, in the winter of 1484, probably as a result of Venetian encouragement, prepared a large fleet, and it gave rise to the fear of an imminent Ottoman invasion in Italy. Thereupon the pope informed Ferdinand about his move to prepare a crusader fleet and invited the Italian states, excluding Venice, to contribute to the expenses, estimated at 200,000 ducats.⁴⁰ Actually, this was a plan to organize an Italian coalition under the pope's leadership, against Venice as well as the Ottomans. Ottoman diplomacy, in its turn, skillfully made use of the fear aroused by the naval preparations to guarantee Jem's firm detention. In the following years the Hospitallers and Venice were able to keep the Ottoman fleet from entering the Aegean by use of the threat of sending a crusader army with Jem. It appears that in these years, Bayazid's great fear was that Mamluk sultan Kalitbay of Egypt (1468-1496) might gain control of Jem. Bayazid, therefore, made attempts to have his brother assassinated. The grand master Peter of Aubusson, judging from his correspondence with Bayazid,⁴¹ purported to co-operate with this plan in order to obtain extra money from the sultan.

All during this period Bayazid sought particularly active diplomatic relations with all Christian governments involved with Jem and the proposed crusade. He created a spy network to keep himself informed of political developments in various countries of the west.⁴² Since the sultan personally conducted all these activities, the *seraglio* replaced the *divan* (imperial council) in foreign affairs.

In order to assure himself of Jem's confinement, Bayazid addressed a letter to the French king in which he said: "It has been agreed between us and the grand master that a specified amount of money shall

38. TKS, no. 2457, reproduced by Eringhan, *op. cit.*, p. 189. It can be dated May 1484; cf. Thomas, *Opus*, pp. 104, 106.

39. TKS, no. 2488, reproduced by Eringhan, *op. cit.*, p. 202.

40. Thomas, *Opus*, pp. 123-126.

41. *Ibid.*, pp. 126, 127.

42. The point is clarified by the reports in the Topkapı Sarayı archives, partially published by Eringhan; Selimkhan Tuzel, *Sultan II Bayezid'in Yemen Heyet'i* (Istanbul, 1946); Tuzel, "Iskani Rum'un yekâne Cihan meclâsile İslâm devleti Sarayı'ya gâhib-i kâmil," *Balkanlar*, XXVI (1962), 539-555; and Victor E. Minors, "The Mission of an Ottoman Secret Agent to France in 1485," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1965), pp. 112-132; Kubaş, *Doğumdan günce*. — *Çerkes Sultan*.

be regularly sent to him for the livelihood of my brother on condition that he be kept guarded in a safe place within your domains and never let leave for another country. . . . Our hope is that friendship between the two of us be established."⁴³ However, Hüseyin Beg, Bayazid's envoy in the west, was not able to see the ailing king Louis XI, who died on August 30, 1483, after which events took a new turn.

At the time of Bayazid's accession to the throne in May 1481, the Ottoman state was at war not only with the king of Naples and the knights of Rhodes, but also with Hungary. Bayazid's first move was to announce a campaign against Hungary and to order his troops to assemble at Sofia under the command of the beglerbeg of Rumelia.⁴⁴ Actually these activities might be considered as a strategy to combine under his command the military forces of the empire for the impending struggle for the throne. Taking advantage of the situation Stephen "the Great", the voivode of Moldavia (1457-1504), entered Wallachia in the summer of 1483 and marched as far as Turnu on the Danube, raiding the Ottoman territory to the south of the river. In the autumn king Matthias Corvinus of Hungary too gathered a large force along his southern borders (according to his letter, 32,000 men), entered Serbia, and advanced as far as Krushevaia.⁴⁵ This raid greatly worried the Ottoman government, and the grand vizir Davud Pasha hurriedly returned to Sofia from the battle against Jeni.⁴⁶ Frontier warfare continued in 1482 and 1483.⁴⁷ The king of Hungary controlled all northern Bosnia, including Yajnac, and further planned to occupy Hercegovina and establish it as an independent kingdom for his bastard son.⁴⁸ In the meantime he was awaiting aid from Italy and Germany to complete the large-scale preparations for war against the Ottomans.

Despite Matthias's moves to take Jeni into his custody, Jeni was transferred to France, whence he later made fruitless attempts to es-

43. TKK, no. 8073, in *Ergebnis*, op. cit., p. 356; It does not have been written in early 1484. Hüseyin was in France in the summer of 1483, and returned to Rhodes on January 28, 1484, see *Thames*, *Öğret.*, pp. 119-123.

44. *Hayat Pasha sarfi*, MS. in Istanbul, University Library, 42a.

45. *Christophorus Jankich, Geschichte des Serben*, II (Göttingen, 1906; repr. Amsterdam, 1967), 211.

46. *Die Kaiman*, vol. VIII, MS. 126; *Ergebnis*, *Geschichte*, II (Göttingen, 1906), 264.

47. During the period 1480-1483 Turkish raiders in the Apennine districts of Calabria and Sicily were particularly active; see Leopold Kappeler, *Die Kämpfe Ungarns mit den Osmanen bis zur Schlacht bei Mohács, 1526*, 2nd ed. (Vienna, 1899); Franz Ewald, "Der Einfluss des Osmanen in die Gegenwart," *Abhandlungen des kaiserlichen Hofrathes für Siedler*, IX (1859), 175-205; Wilhelm Neumann, "Die Türkensoldaten nach Kroatien," *Zeitschrift-Forschungen*, XIV (1875), 84-109.

48. *Zeitschrift*, op. cit., II, 698-700; Kappeler, loc. cit.

cape to Hungary and to enter Rumelia.⁴⁰ On their part, the knights of Rhodes took great precautions to assure that Isen would not escape or be kidnapped.⁴¹ The danger of Isen's entering the Balkans through Hungary was ever-present. Bayazid was well aware of the plan through the reports of his spies.⁴² With this in mind, he sent a sizeable force with orders to build two fortresses on the banks of the Morava river, located on the main route of advance of Hungarian armies through Serbia into the heart of the Balkans. The sultan himself waited in readiness in Sofia until the completion of the two fortresses in the spring of 1483.⁴³ Finally, in the autumn of 1483, Matthias signed a five-year armistice with the sultan and turned all his military might against the German emperor, whom he accused of attempting to instigate the Ottomans to attack him. After a series of victorious battles he entered Vienna in June 1485. It is noteworthy that during this period the Ottoman frontier warfare against Hungary stopped. It was agreed that raids involving less than four hundred men should not be considered a cause of war.

In fact, Bayazid did not want to be involved in a dangerous war against Hungary, the mainstay of the crusading armies. In order to strengthen his own control over the Ottoman throne, however, he was obliged to initiate a holy war against Christians; the janissaries were exerting pressure on him to declare such a war. He chose to attack the weakest Christian enemy, and made his war objective the principality of Moldavia. In his effort to establish control of Wallachia, Stephen, though an Ottoman vassal, had rebelled and launched an attack against the Ottomans in 1481. But before initiating the campaign, the sultan had to be certain of the Hungarians' neutrality, and therefore made the offer to Matthias of a five-year armistice, no mention being made of Moldavia. Bayazid conducted a successful campaign in Moldavia, and annexed Kilia and Akkerman to his empire (1484).

Matthias, who was fully involved in the west with the war against the emperor, was obliged to renew his armistice with the sultan and to recognize the *de facto* situation and be content with the sultan's promises that Stephen would be "treated well."⁴⁴ The Moldavian vo-

40. Hürriir, pp. 8, 23; see Isakelli, "A Case Study," and document TKS 6071, in Eriyilcan, *op. cit.*, p. 195. Isen sent his agents to Hungary in early 1483 (Thomas, *Djengiz*, p. 108).

41. *Ibid.*, pp. 106-107.

42. Document TKS 6071, in Eriyilcan, *op. cit.*, p. 173; Thomas, *Djengiz*, p. 108.

43. These two fortresses were called the-Kasid Kalesi and Hiran (today Ruse) of Oriza, Gerschlöcher, II, 361.

44. Matthias threw the blame for the Moldavian defeat on his chancellor, Peter Václav, the archbishop of Kalocsa, whom he accused of neglecting the terms of the peace agreements made with the sultan in 1483. It is difficult to ascertain whether the Ottomans understood the Mol-

vode was left no alternative but to turn to Poland for assistance in his struggle against the Ottomans.

In May 1485 Jem had been moved to the Hospitaller castle of Boislamy, but early in 1486 the grand master and Innocent VIII (1484-1492) agreed in theory that he should be brought to Italy. In 1487 the pope began serious efforts to bring Jem to Rome as a solution to his domestic problems. The war with Ferdinand had again taken a serious turn, posing a severe problem for the papacy. Ferdinand then tried to present himself as Bayazid II's ally in Italy, giving the sultan his full coöperation in the matter of Jem.¹⁴ From then on, the king steadily informed the Ottoman court on the project of the pope for a crusade with Jem. By pursuing this policy of friendship with the sultan, he protected his lands from the danger of Ottoman raids, thus being able to concentrate his forces against the pope. The plans for coöperation with the Ottomans envisaged by the condottiere Boiccolino Guzzoni, who had captured Osimo in the papal territory, caused great concern in Rome. Guzzoni first approached the Ottoman governors in Albania, and finally established relations with the sultan in 1487. Word spread that Guzzoni was prepared to seize the March of Ancona in the papal territory, Jem's planned place of residence.¹⁵ It seems that Guzzoni's offers were not taken seriously in Istanbul.¹⁶ All the same, the pope tried to take advantage of the alarm aroused in Italy by the incident, and to get Venice to move into action against Ferdinand of Naples. The papacy's best chance was to bring Jem to Rome and take command of a crusade participated in by the Christian states of Europe. While the pope, Matthias, and the Egyptian sultan were each striving to get hold of Jem and to use him for their respective political objectives, Bayazid now saw that it was best to keep Jem in France.¹⁷

diplomatic campaign with the utmost knowledge of Matthias. For Matthias's policy of appeasement toward Bayazid in his later years see Otfried Meiss, "Urkunde des Friedensvertrages zwischen König Matthias Corvinus und dem türkischen Sultan, 1488," *Berichte zur Sprachwissenschaft, Volkskunde und Literatur-Geschichte, Philologie* (Deutsche Akademie der Wissenschaften, Berlin, no. 3, 1965), pp. 140-143.

14 The pope charged that members of the Hospitaller army, tired of Ferdinand's oppression, thought of selling the Ottomans to their aid, and that the pope demanded them (Pius II, op. cit., IV, 262).

15 Tiziano, *Diary*, pp. 138-141.

16 *Ibid.*, pp. 170-171.

17 Bayazid II promised to send the French king some sacred relics from Istanbul, which became an object of diplomacy during the present see Robinson, "Kontingenzschaden am Osmanen Hof im XV Jahrhundert," *Berichte der Deutschen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philosophisch-Historische Klasse Sitzungsberichte, Jahrgang 1956, II* (Göttingen, 1956); also, "Sultan Mehmet II. und sein Heiliger Rock," *ZDMG, CVIII* (1956), 264-273.

In his attempts to obtain Jem, the Mamluk sultan chose as his go-between Lorenzo de' Medici (1469-1492), apparently because of Lorenzo's influence in the courts of France and the papacy, as well as his extensive banking operations. In the spring of 1488 Lorenzo Spinelli, one of Lorenzo de' Medici's agents in France, offered the French king one hundred thousand gold ducats in the name of Ka'itbay for the delivery of Jem.⁵⁸ Since papal nuncios had already been granted permission to take Jem to Rome by the French government, which believed that this was in the best interest of Christendom, the Egyptian and Hungarian requests were declined. In order to foil his enemies' plans, Bayazid had instructed his envoy, Anthony Ciritho, to say that he was ready to sign a peace agreement with king Charles VIII of France (1483-1498) and to make peace with the entire Christian world, as well as to pay a considerable sum of money.⁵⁹ Moreover, Bayazid offered a military alliance, promising the king aid against his enemies. Even more surprising was the Ottoman sultan's promise to deliver the city of Jerusalem to the French, after its capture from the Mamluks. All of this would be in exchange for the king's promise to keep Jem guarded in France.⁶⁰ The sultan's offers impressed the king's council, and orders were sent out to stop Jem on his way to Rome. But in the end the nuncio succeeded in putting Jem aboard a boat belonging to the knights of Rhodes, bound for the papal state. The Ottoman prince entered Rome on March 13, 1489.

Jem's transfer from French territory to Rome to be put directly under the pope's custody was considered in Istanbul as the beginning of a crusade, and caused alarm. Bayazid II, sending an envoy to Rhodes, declared the transfer of Jem to Rome a breach of the pact between the Porte and the order, and took a threatening attitude toward the Hospitallers. On the other hand, the negotiations of the Mamluk ambassador in France and later in Rome to obtain Jem to use against the Ottomans were followed with anxiety that this was a greater and more immediate danger.

The Mamluks of Egypt were involved from the beginning in the intense international struggle to obtain Jem to use him in their fight against the Ottomans. Especially after war broke out between the Ottomans and the Mamluks in 1485, Ka'itbay, sultan of Egypt (1463-

58. Thomas, *Opus*, p. 185; Bédarride, "Lorenzo de' Medici e la corte ottomana," *Archivum historicum italicum*, CXXI (1903), 253-254; also, *Spécialisation des projections*, p. 68.

59. Ernest Chazotte, *Négociations de la France dans le Levant, 1480-1490*, Paris, 1846, citée; Bédarride, "Négociations," pp. 17-18.

60. Thomas, *Opus*, pp. 217-218.

1496), did his utmost to bring Jem to Egypt.⁴¹ After Jem's transfer to Rome in 1489, he seemed to prefer to join Ka'itbay, a Mamluk ruler, rather than Matthias, for his fight against Bayazid. Even if Ka'itbay could not use Jem directly in the Egyptian campaign against the Ottomans, Jem's participation in a crusade from the west would divert Ottoman forces from the Egyptian front. This coöperation between Christian Europe and the Islamic state of Egypt, once the sole protagonist of Moslem holy war against Christendom, indicates that during the fifteenth century, in the east as well as in the west, political expediency superseded strict religious ideology.

Now that Jem was in Rome, the power and influence of the pope were greatly enhanced, and papal diplomacy became increasingly complex. While Matthias was pressing the pope to deliver Jem to him as the only power capable of fighting against the Ottomans, the pope declared his decision to convene a congress to be attended by the delegates of all the Christian states in Europe to prepare a crusade.⁴² At the same time, the Egyptian ambassador in Rome proclaimed Ka'itbay's willingness to join an anti-Ottoman league, should Jem be delivered to him, and promised to return all the Christian territories conquered by the Ottomans.

The *Türkenkongress*, which opened in Rome on March 25, 1490, was the logical outcome of the papal diplomacy of bringing Jem to Rome. The pope declared that this was the most favorable moment to take action against the Ottomans. It was believed that Jem was prepared, in the event that he obtained the Ottoman throne through Christian help, to withdraw from the Balkans, even to give up Istanbul.⁴³ Sultan Ka'itbay of Egypt would be invited to participate in the war against the Ottomans. But with the unexpected death of Matthias Corvinus on April 6, 1490, all the plans for the crusade fell through. In addition, the struggle between Charles VIII and the emperor Maximilian (1493-1519), as well as that between Ferdinand of Naples and Innocent VIII, started up once again.

While the Ottoman war against the Mamluks in Cilicia continued, a crusader attack from the west would have created a most dangerous situation for the Ottoman empire. Ottoman tactics all during the Jem

41 Jem's mother Chelchek Kharun, a refugee in Egypt, was urging the sultan through his wife to free her son and bring him to Egypt; see an intelligence from Egypt to Bayazid II: TEZ no. 4006/1, signed by Yörük; for Chelchek Kharun in Egypt see Ibn-lydi, *Anda? az-zahr f' wa'id? al-shahid*, ed. Muhammad Mustafa, III (Cairo, 1962), 290.

42 Pastor, *Geschichte der Päpste*, III (Freiburg, 1899), 211-224.

43 Francesco Guicciardini, "Il Sultano Djem alla corte di Alessandro VI," *Prospett.* II (1967), 96-103.

crisis were to neutralize the west by aggressive diplomacy, sending envoys with lavish promises, presents, money, and relics on the one hand, and to discourage Christian attack by showing strength by building up a strong navy ready to strike and launching large-scale raids on the Danube and Bosnian frontier on the other hand. Friendly relations were sustained with Venice, whose seapower was thought to be of crucial importance for a crusade against the Ottoman empire.

In the face of the dangerous situation following Jem's transfer to Rome in 1489, Bayazid used the same tactics and found Innocent VIII quite amenable to negotiation. The grand master of Rhodes, Peter of Arbuston, who was the central figure in east-west relations during the Jem crisis, now offered his mediation in drafting an agreement between the sultan and the pope. Bayazid promptly sent his envoy to Rhodes.⁴⁴ The prime concern of the grand master and the pope at that time apparently was to neutralize an Ottoman offensive against Rhodes and Italy. Moreover the pope, always short of money, wanted to receive a regular and substantial income for acting as custodian of Jem Sultan.⁴⁵ The earliest document attesting to Innocent VIII's interest in establishing relations with the sultan is dated December 23, 1489.

To negotiate with Bayazid, the pope employed Giovanni Battista Gentile, a Genoese merchant in Istanbul.⁴⁶ In a letter dated May 17, 1490,⁴⁷ the sultan wrote to Innocent VIII that through the grand master he had learned with great satisfaction of the transfer of Jem to Rome, and that he was hoping that an agreement about his custody would soon be reached with the pope. Later a Genoese Dominican, Leonard of Chiarvari, who apparently lived in Pera, was employed as an envoy in the pope's relations with the sultan.⁴⁸ In the late spring or summer of 1490, Leonard came to Rome in the company of an Ottoman envoy to negotiate the terms of Jem's custody.

Upon the transfer of Jem into the custody of the pope in Rome, the Porte had lost the guarantee under the pact with the grand master of Rhodes that Jem would not be delivered to the enemies of Bayazid II. Innocent, in his turn, needed an agreement with the sultan to receive the yearly payment of forty thousand gold ducats which he was entitled

44. Thomas, *Opus*, p. 264.

45. For the pope's financial difficulties see Foster, *op. cit.*, III, 270-272, 281-284; Thomas, *Opus*, p. 187; Philaretus, *op. cit.*, p. 88.

46. Balgänger, *Spätmittelalterliche Briefschafften*, pp. 64-75.

47. *Ibid.*, pp. 64-68.

48. *Ibid.*, pp. 69-71.

to move in accordance with the concord signed with the French king.⁶⁹

Bayazid had chosen for this crucial mission an important man of his court, the *kaygı-bekı* Mustafa Beg, and was ready to send him to the pope via Rhodes in March. But because of Innocent's crusade maneuver, the Ottoman embassy was delayed four months, until the *Türkenkongress* ended its sessions in Rome on July 30, 1490.

Mustafa's visit to Rome made it possible for Bayazid to establish direct contact with the pope and to disclose the secret practices and pretensions of the grand master. Mustafa's disclosures proved that Peter of Aubusson was concealing his special agreements with the sultan, which were all secret and verbal, and that he had received much more money than was stipulated in the written agreement. Also, in another meeting between Mustafa and Innocent, in the presence of the cardinals, Mustafa's clarifications demonstrated that the grand master's claim that Bayazid II wanted only the Hospitallers to be the guardians of Jem was not true. It became evident that in all his dealings Peter had regarded Jem as his own personal prisoner rather than the prisoner of the order or of any other authority.

In his letter to the pope,⁷⁰ Bayazid II said that he was pleased to learn that Jem had been conveyed to Rome, and hoped that Jem was being maintained at the Vatican on the same terms as the grand master had undertaken his custody some years before. The sultan's ambassador declared that if the conditions were accepted, which meant the relinquishment of the idea of using Jem in a crusade against the Ottoman empire, the sultan would keep peace with Christendom. Mustafa himself, in the information he gave to the Hungarian lords,⁷¹ claimed to have made an agreement with the pope, sworn to by an oath as is required in the Christian religion, to the effect that Innocent would keep Jem in custody and not let him attack Bayazid's lands, and that in return the sultan would not harm the pope's country.⁷²

In the secret instructions given by the pope to his envoy,⁷³ his nephew

69. Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 406.

70. The letter was written in Greek; for a Latin version of it see Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 411, note 7.

71. *Bevârî Şâhîrî*, TKS, 95; Hadime 1635.

72. For every year the Anatolia area within the papal state was a target of Ottoman raids; see Inghel, *Notes et extraits pour servir à l'histoire des croisades au XIV^e siècle*, 1479-1505, V (Bruxelles, 1813), 157-159, 162-164; Jean Delmas, "Les Fronts des Croisades à l'Occident: Ancona et Chiavari," *Quelques études*, 224 (Ancona, 1970), 26-46; Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 397.

73. See the text of this important document in Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 419, note 15, and 421, note 13.

George Bocciarelli, Innocent gave details of how the "pension" or "tribute" should be paid—in Venetian gold ducats every year on December 1. The pope's dispatch of a nuncio to collect Jem's pension can be considered as a positive indication that an agreement, verbal and secret, was reached between the pope and Mustafa.⁷⁴

As a result of the agreement made by Mustafa in Rome in January 1491, the Ottoman Porte believed that a crusade was not likely in the near future, and this belief must have encouraged the Turks to resume their aggressive policy against Hungary. The internal conflicts and Maximilian's invasion of Hungary following Matthias Corvinus's death in 1490 had created extremely favorable conditions for the Ottomans to consolidate their position on the Danube. Inactive for a long time, the frontier forces were impatient to resume their raids into Hungary, which they believed was now incapable of putting up serious resistance. The Hungarian ambassador to the sultan, Emerich Csobor, was unsuccessful in his attempt to renew the truce ending in 1491.⁷⁵

In the same year Bayezid II concluded a peace agreement with Egypt and made large-scale preparations for a campaign on land and sea for 1492. The secret preparations, construction of a large fleet—"eighty sails including thirty galleys"⁷⁶—in particular, gave rise to speculations in Italy about the real target of the Ottomans. Venice and Naples took defensive measures, and both demanded that, for their common safety, the pope use the instrument in his hands, Jem Sultan.⁷⁷ By June the Venetians were reassured about the sultan's plans.⁷⁸

Suleiman Pasha, the Ottoman frontier lord at Smederevo, had invited the Hungarian ban of Macra, Nicholas of Ujlak, an opponent of king Ladislas VI (1490–1516), to recognize Ottoman suzerainty, and surrender Belgrade, promising to add to his possessions the Ottoman fortresses of Alnja-Hisar (Krushewatz) and Zvornik. Bayezid, who himself did not give much credit to the reportedly favorable disposition of the ban, suggested that, in case the ban changed his mind about surrendering Belgrade, the army should change its destination toward the Adriatic Sea to crush Albanian rebels and subjugate Montenegro. When in Sofia at the head of his army, he received the news that the Hungarian ban had indeed changed his mind, and that the Hungarians were united to resist the sultan, so he set out with the bulk of his

74. See Isidori, "A Case Study in Renaissance Diplomacy," pp. 209–220.

75. See Ignaz A. Prester, *Geschichte von Ungarn*, ed. Ernst Klein, III (Leipzig, 1874), 249.

76. According to a Venetian intelligence report of May 1, 1492; see Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 425. In 1491, 20 galleys, 3 fustas, 80 galleys, and about 200 smaller ships or transports.

77. See Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 423–426.

78. *Ibid.*, II, 426, note 28.

army to invade northern Albania. On the Hungarian front, raids under the frontier begs Mihail-oghlu Ali and Süleiman Paşa, as well as the blockade of Belgrade, were foiled by stiff Hungarian resistance.

Before he left Istanbul for this campaign on April 6, 1492, Bayazid had shown his intention to keep peace with the pope by sending an envoy to Innocent VIII with 40,000 gold ducats along with valuable relics, including the alleged iron head of the lance which pierced Jesus's side at the crucifixion, which Innocent had specifically requested through his ambassador Boicardi. The delivery of the 40,000 ducats and the generous gifts was indeed a positive indication of Bayazid's appeasement policy toward the pope and of the existence of an agreement between the two parties about the custody of Jem and keeping peace.

Venice, the only maritime power able to curb the Ottomans, chose to avoid conflict, and continued to honor the 1479 agreement. It was undoubtedly Venice among all the western powers which best exploited the Jem situation via-à-vis the Ottomans. While functioning as an indispensable source of information for the Sultan concerning Jem's position in Europe, Venice used the conflict between the Ottomans and Mamluks, nominal suzerains of Cyprus, and in 1489 managed to bring the island under its direct rule.⁷⁹ Neither the Mamluks nor the Ottomans, who were at war with each other, were in a position to challenge the Venetian takeover of Cyprus. While the pope was encouraged by the republic to enter into negotiations with the Mamluk sultan for the delivery of Jem, a Venetian ambassador, Peter Diedo, was hurriedly sent to Cairo to explain to the Mamluk sultan Ka'itbay that the Venetian claim of sovereignty over Cyprus was a move taken only to prevent the island's falling into the hands of the Ottomans. Further, Diedo claimed that since the Mamluks lacked a fleet to protect Cyprus, Venetian possession of the island would be beneficial to both parties. Venice agreed to all the conditions which had been imposed by the Mamluks on the Lusignan dynasty of Cyprus, including the payment of a yearly tribute of 8,000 gold ducats.

The loss of Cyprus to Venice was, until 1571, an irreparable setback to the Ottomans in the eastern Mediterranean. Furthermore, Venice strengthened its position on the vital waterway between Aden and Italy by forcing the Porte to recognize Venetian sovereignty over the island of Zante by an agreement reached on April 22, 1494. It also strengthened the fortifications of Corfu, key point of the Venetian main-

⁷⁹ See George F. Hill, *A History of Cyprus*, III (Cambridge, Eng., 1948), 315-70. The Ottomans made their first move on the island after the Venetian takeover.

tine empire. Thus a naval operation against Venetian possessions in the Morea and the Adriatic Sea, as well as an Ottoman attack on Italy, was made strategically impractical, and the threat from Avlona, the only important Ottoman base outside the Dardanelles, was greatly reduced.

From 1491 on, however, Venetian-Ottoman relations had become increasingly strained. The rivalry for control of the Albanian and Montenegrin coast, as well as the uneasy situation in the Morea, where Venice controlled the most important ports and naval bases, including Navarino, Modon, Corca, Monemvasia, and Nauplia, were among the factors which created an explosive atmosphere. The arrival of the Ottoman fleet on the Albanian coast and the unexpected invasion of Albania by an army under the command of the sultan himself posed a direct threat to Italy and the Venetian possessions in the Adriatic Sea. A Venetian fleet was sent to Corfu, and the fortifications on the island were substantially strengthened. The landing of an Ottoman frontier force at Gasha, only fifteen miles from Senj itself, caused alarm in Venice, and the republic requested that the pope demand, using the threat of *Jem*, that the sultan evacuate the fortress.⁸⁰ By 1493 the fear of an Ottoman invasion of Italy brought Venice, Milan, and the papacy closer together, and a league was formed on April 25. Venice now actively supported the pope in his crusade effort, and assured him of its full participation. It even requested that the pope mention in the agreement that *Jem* would be handed over to Venice. The republic promised to open hostilities as soon as Maximilian declared war against the Ottomans, for according to Venetian strategy, Austria had replaced Hungary as the strongest land power in such a crusade.

The resumption of *ghazî* activities by the Ottomans had annoyed not only Venice but also Maximilian, who after the death of Matthias Corvinus in 1490 had emerged as the protector of the Christian lands in Central Europe. Maximilian, as a result of the large-scale attacks of the Ottoman frontier forces against neighboring lands on the Danube, became an ardent advocate of a crusade against the Ottomans.⁸¹ On the eve of the French invasion of Italy, he even favored the idea of *Jem*'s delivery to the Mamluk sultan in exchange for promises to join the Christian league.⁸²

80. Thomas, *Opus*, pp. XII-XII.

81. Joseph Pilsch, "Der St. Georgsturnier und Maximilian I. Türkensieger," in *Festschrift Professor Karl Eder zum 70. Geburtstag*, ed. Helmut J. Mahr-Aaschberg (Grazbruck, 1929), pp. 33-35.

82. For Maximilian's instructions to his ambassador to Rome, Maxquard Brünicher, see Thomas, *Opus*, pp. 441-446.

Ottoman aggressiveness after 1492 can be explained by several factors. The Ottomans had concluded peace with Egypt in 1491, at the urgent request of the Hafsid ruler Zakariya II of Tunisia, alarmed by the Spanish reconquest. The fall of Granada on January 31, 1492, celebrated as a Christian retaliation for the conquest of Constantinople, gave rise to intensification of the *ghazat* spirit in the Islamic world in general. Moreover, following the death of Matthias Corvinus and the ensuing internal confusions in Hungary, the Ottomans hoped to capture Belgrade, thus increasing pressure through the frontier forces' operations against the Austrian and Hungarian dominions.

In 1492, during a large-scale raid in Croatia, heavy Ottoman casualties, reportedly ten thousand men, were suffered when the army fell into a trap near Villach. But the successful raid in 1493 under the able general Ya'kub Pasha, governor of Bosnia, into Slovenia, Croatia, and lower Styria was crowned with his victory at Corbova (Krbava) on September 9.⁴² In the following year the large-scale raids continued in Croatia and Transylvania, and Paul Kisilesi, Hungarian frontier commander, made retaliatory raids into Ottoman Serbia. Thus a serious situation had arisen in Central Europe too, about which pope Alexander VI (1492-1503) expressed great concern during his negotiations with the Porte. A truce between Hungary and the Ottomans was concluded only at the beginning of 1495, when Charles VIII's invasion of Italy caused a general reaction against France in Europe. The Ottomans then concentrated their forces against Poland.

In 1494 the pope and the king of Naples had united against the French in an attempt to stop Charles VIII in his invasion of Italy, and had used the threat of Ottoman intervention. Now Alexander's Italian policy was in open conflict with the crusade plan. In response, the pope's adversaries, Charles VIII and the pro-French cardinals, denounced the pope for betraying the interest of Christianity by establishing secret ties with the Ottoman sultan. Indeed, the papal policy of attempting to use Ottoman power against its immediate enemies, while at the same time continuing its crusade plans, is a spectacular example of Renaissance Italy's pragmatic balance-of-power diplomacy.

Threatened by a French invasion, the new king of Naples, Alfonso II (1494-1495), now backed by the pope,⁴³ hurried his agent Camillo Pandone to Istanbul to request military aid, a contingent of six thou-

⁴² Milan Jovanović, *Republika protiv Lake i Krbave* (Zagreb, 1916); Johann C. von Engel, *Standskämpfe und Geschichte von Delmerien, Croatten und Slavonien* (Halle, 1798), pp. 364-367, details in Ottoman sources—Baba, *Reis-Kemal*, and the anonymous *Chronicon*.

⁴³ The pope for his part wrote to Sigismund II that Alfonso's undertakes should be spared,

said Ottoman soldiers. He said he was ready to pay them, that is, to employ them as mercenaries, a practice employed for centuries by other Christian governments in Byzantium and the Balkans.

Alexander's envoy, the Genoese Giorgio Boccardi, was already in Istanbul.⁸⁵ Using the excuse that he needed money immediately in order to prepare the resistance against the French invasion of Italy, the pope requested that the year's allowance for Jem be sent in advance. The pope's envoy told Bayazid that the French king planned to capture Jem, take the kingdom of Naples, and from there attack the Ottoman empire.⁸⁶ Alexander also called on Bayazid as a true friend to put pressure on Venice to abandon its neutrality and join the resistance against the French.⁸⁷ Bayazid reacted promptly and sent three ambassadors to Italy to encourage the papacy, Naples, and Venice to resist Charles VIII. The ambassadors arrived in Italy in November 1494, at the time when Charles entered Florence (November 17). In Venice, on November 21, the Ottoman envoy, who was anxiously watched by the French ambassador Philip of Commaignes, criticized the republic for its neutrality and threatened to launch an Ottoman attack on Italy should Venice refuse to join the resistance.

On November 20 Kasim Chavush, who had been sent with the money requested for Jem (40,000 gold ducats), accompanied by Boccardi, was attacked by French partisans near Ancona. All the money and the sultan's letters to the pope were captured.⁸⁸ The next day in Florence, the French king, attempting to rival Maximilian, made a declaration before his march to Rome that his purpose in this campaign was to fight the Turk and deliver the holy places, and that his expedition to Naples was only a necessary first step.⁸⁹ In order to humiliate Alexander, the seized letters, five in number, together with Boccardi's testimony about the fulfilment of his embassy, were immediately published in Florence. The document most incriminating for the head of the church was the sultan's letter proposing that the pope assassinate

see Thomas, *Djenn*, p. 326. On Ottoman-papal relations in the period 1489-1495 in general, see also Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 381-402.

⁸⁵ He left Rome in June and passed on to Istanbul till the end of September 1494, see Thomas, *Djenn*, p. 326.

⁸⁶ In September Charles VIII invited Peter of Andousses to come to Rouen from Theolog to give him his expert opinion on the king's plan for a crusade against the Ottomans; see Thomas, *Djenn*, p. 328.

⁸⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 325-327; Foster, *op. cit.*, V, 423.

⁸⁸ Pierre Fournier, *Il Interdicato di Massimo e l'ingenuità ottomana alla fine del secolo XV* (Milano, 1876); Hans J. Eberling, *Sultan Bayazid II. Beziehungen zu Markgraf Friedrich II von Brandenburg* (Münchh., 1963), p. 40.

⁸⁹ Paul Guerin, 'La Différence de la Chaire papale en France à la fin du quatorzième siècle,' *Revue d'histoire diplomatique*, XXVI (1912), 323-329.

Jen and offering 300,000 ducats for the delivery of the corpse to the sultan's man at one of the Ottoman ports.⁵⁰ Bayazid also promised that no Christian state would be the subject of attack, and in order to show his good faith, the sultan had even taken an oath on the Koran in the presence of Boociardi. While there is no doubt about the authenticity of the other letters, written in Greek with the sultan's monogram, this particular one, in Latin, is believed by some scholars to be a forgery.

Deserted by the Christian powers, the pope finally had to agree, on January 15, 1495, to all the points insisted upon by the French king, as preliminary to his plan for the crusade against the Ottomans—the delivery of Jen and free passage through the papal territory for the occupation of the kingdom of Naples. Charles VIII entered Naples in triumph on February 22. Three days later Jen suddenly died, evoking the usual accusations of murder; the basis for the containment of Bayazid died with him. Charles abandoned plans for a crusade against the Turks, and turned his attention to his European enemies, but not until 1499 was Jen's body returned to Bayazid by Frederick, king of Naples (1497-1501).

The anti-French coalition of March 31, 1495, linking pope Alexander VI, emperor Maximilian, Venice, Milan, and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain in a so-called Holy League against Islam, was followed by the outbreak of the Italian wars, involving western Christendom in a long internal struggle from which sultan Suleiman I, "the Magnificent" (1520-1566), would benefit by expanding his empire into Central Europe. The new pattern of diplomacy in the west, introduced in Renaissance Italy during the fifteenth century, would in the sixteenth bring the Ottoman empire into the European state system in an alliance with France against the Hapsburgs.

After Jen's death the Ottomans continued to be one of the important elements in the balance of power in Italy.⁵¹ They followed with great concern the progress of the negotiations for an alliance between Venice and Louis XII against Milan, for an alliance between the great naval power, Venice, and France might indeed lead to the realization of a crusade. Bayazid took a supportive attitude toward the anti-Venetian dispositions of Naples, Mantua, and Florence, rivals of the republic. In return for Ottoman military assistance—that is, the

50. Flusin, *Opus*, p. 329, says, "non credendum ut mirari non debeat"; for a discussion of the problem see Flusin, *op. cit.*, I, 423-428; Kurling, *op. cit.*, p. 42; Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 457.

51. See Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 508-542.

supplying of mercenary forces—these states offered to pay annually 50,000 gold ducats.

The Ottoman government strictly enforced its prohibition of grain export to Venice, which was of vital importance to the republic. Anxious to avoid the outbreak of a war with the Ottoman empire, Venice brought forth several proposals for conciliation. In 1497-1498 the Venetian ambassador Andrew Zanchani offered a yearly tribute of 3,000 gold ducats for the peaceful possession of Cephalonia and Cattaro (Kotor), while agreeing to give up its claims on the territory of Montenegro. However, in confirmation of its sovereignty over the coastal areas in Montenegro, Venice sent out a fleet to the bay of Cattaro in June 1497.⁵²

The Ottomans realized throughout the period of the Jem affair that without a strong navy they could not feel secure in their position in the Balkans and exert an effective influence on the course of events in Italy. After 1489 the Ottomans feverishly pursued their efforts to strengthen their fleet. In 1497 they started the construction at the Istanbul shipyards of two huge *köks* (coasters or navies) of 1800 tons, considered to be the largest warships of the time.⁵³ On June 16, 1499, the Ottoman fleet finally set out from the Dardanelles toward Rhodes (Rodos), causing alarm to spread from Rhodes to Egypt and Venice. After the arrest of all the Venetian subjects in the Ottoman dominions, which meant a declaration of war against Venice, it was learned that the real objective of the expedition was the Morea. While a sizeable force was sent as a distraction against the Venetian possessions in Dalmatia and Albania under Iskender Pasha, the frontier commander in Bosnia, another army under the command of the beglerbeg of Rumelia, Mustafa, was simultaneously directed toward Lepanto.

The success of the military operations depended on the ability of the Ottoman navy to repulse the Venetian sea forces and to complete the encirclement of Lepanto from the sea. The sultan himself, on the summer pastures of Greece, impatiently awaited news of the arrival

52. On the Venetian-Ottoman war of 1499-1501 see main sources, Martin Savoca, *I Diari*, I-III, ed. Guglielmo Berchet (Genoa, 1879), has been exploited by historians since Joseph von Hammer-Purgstall and Zichmann, and more recently by Spyrid N. Fiskin, *The Foreign Policy of Turkey, 1481-1517* (Istanbul, 1948), pp. 33-47, and Setton, *The Papacy*, II, 551-514. As for the main contemporary Ottoman sources, İdris, *Has-Kıssâ*, and the numerous *İzmirî* have been used more recently by Bursal, *op. cit.*, pp. 174-226. Ottoman ghazvnames dealing with such individual campaigns are listed by Agâh S. Levend, *Gazv-nâmeler* (Ankara, 1954), 19-22. A critical use of these sources is still needed.

53. On the sultan's fleet and the two coasts, the Ottoman and Venetian sources give details on particular see von Bunsen, *op. cit.*, pp. 33-46. The Ottoman fleet, 260 or 300 vessels, was larger than the Venetian fleet, but the latter had a greater number of warships.

of the fleet. As the Ottomans had no base in the Morea, the fleet experienced great difficulty and delays in getting supplies and reinforcements along the way to Lepanto. At the sea battle, which took place near the island of Prote (Prodano or Barak-ada) on August 12, 1499, the Venetians were not successful in intercepting the Ottoman fleet, and suffered losses. On three separate occasions the Venetian fleet, reinforced by the French and Rhodian squadrons, attempted to block the progress of the Ottoman navy toward the Gulf of Corinth. From each of these skirmishes the Ottomans emerged successful. On August 25, after thirty-three days of constant pursuit by the allied fleet, the Ottoman sea forces eventually reached Lepanto, and the Venetian fleet withdrew to its base at Corfu. On seeing the arrival of the Turkish navy and the withdrawal of the Venetian fleet, the commander of the place surrendered on August 28, 1499. The victory was particularly significant since it was the first time that the Ottoman navy had been able to challenge the Venetians successfully on the open sea.

The fall of Lepanto caused deep concern about the Ottoman danger in Europe. In the autumn of 1499 pope Alexander VI appealed to the European states to unite for a crusade and in May 1500 ordered the collection of a crusading tithe. In his crusading bull of June 1, 1500, he put stress on the danger of the invasion of Italy by the Ottomans, since he said that the Ottomans now had a stronger navy and had started to seize all the strategic ports on the coasts.⁷⁴ The Venetians, for their part, were doing their utmost to convince Ladislaus, the Hungarian king, to join the crusade and fully to involve the French king Louis XII, their ally (1494-1500). In the Venetian war against the sultan, a French squadron had already cooperated with Venice against the Ottomans in 1499. Venetian diplomats were also trying to induce John Albert, king of Poland (1492-1501), to join the crusade, since as a result of the king's ambitions in Moldavia, Poland had twice been invaded by large armies under the frontier beg Bali Beg in 1498. Bayazid thought he could foil the crusading plans by diplomacy, sending one envoy to persuade the Hungarian king to sign a peace treaty and another one to Rome in February 1500 to try to see the pope.⁷⁵

In the following year, when the Venetians and French made proposals of peace, the Ottomans responded haughtily, demanding the payment of an annual tribute as well as the surrender of Coron, Modon, and Nauplia in the Morea. In the face of these excessive demands, Venice sought to convert its war against the Ottomans into a

⁷⁴ *Summa, The Papacy*, II, 526-527.

⁷⁵ *Ibid.*, II, 524.

full-scale European crusade. Now the pope undertook serious steps for its preparation among the Christian nations, including Wallachia, Moldavia, and even Russia. On his part, Bayazid encouraged Venice's rivals in Italy and permitted the establishment of a Florentine consal in Istanbul, besides promising a large amount of military aid to Naples – but insisting in return that they surrender Otranto. Thus, after having eliminated the Jan question, the Ottomans unhesitatingly returned once more to the expansionist policy of the time of Mehmed the Conqueror.

In the following campaign season the Ottoman goal was the capture of the fortresses of Modon and Coron in the Morea. As a result of the delays in the arrival of the heavy artillery transported by the ships, the siege of Modon, heavily fortified by the Venetians, was drawn out. Although the siege had begun in March, the fleet did not arrive until July 17; only after its arrival was the fortress surrounded by both land and sea. Despite the intervention of the Venetian fleet Modon fell after a final assault on August 16, 1500. Following the Ottoman capture of Modon, Coron surrendered without resistance a week later.

Upon the arrival of the news of the fall of Modon and Coron, the pope dispatched three legates to European governments to urge them to join the crusade and cooperate in collecting crusading tithes. Alexander was particularly eager to join the French in Naples against king Frederick (1497–1501) for the partition of the kingdom of Naples, so he joined the French-Spanish League on June 29, 1501. The allies declared that the partition was a necessary step to secure peace and unity against the Ottomans, while Frederick put his hopes in the sultan's intervention and aid. Lodovico, duke of Milan, who was also known as the sultan's protégé, tried to break the Venetian-French alliance by promising Venice his good offices for a peace with the Porte.

A crusader fleet composed of French, Venetian, papal, and Spanish ships set out in the fall and easily seized the island of Cephalonia and the fortress of Navarino (on December 3, 1500), which had been in Ottoman hands since August. The Ottomans were on the alert, however, and had assigned Khadim Ali to guard the Morea while Iskender Pasha attacked the Venetian possessions in Dalmatia.

In 1501 Christian fleets individually undertook raids, causing the Ottomans difficulties. The Venetian forces, attempting to land at Avlona, were destroyed on August 15, 1501, by the Ottomans, who then conquered Durazzo. An allied squadron of eighty ships, including forty galleys, landed forces on Lesbos and began the siege of Mytilene, its capital. This move threatened Istanbul itself. The French ships, twenty-six in number, set sail for the Dardanelles to block the arrival of the

Turkish navy, according to an Ottoman report.⁹⁶ The Ottomans experienced great difficulties in bringing reinforcements to the besieged from Anatolia. Besides, since it was outside the regular campaign season, it was hard for the Ottomans to mobilize the navy. Eventually, when a land army under Hersek-zade and the beglerbeg of Anatolia reached the shores opposite the island, they found that the enemy had already raised the siege and left the island with their fleet. Meanwhile on May 28 an Ottoman fleet, under the command of the famous seaman Kemal Reis, captured Navarino in co-operation with the land forces. In this battle three galleys and one galleon were captured from the Christians. The Spanish fleet under the command of Gonzalvo Fernando, raiding the Anatolian coasts, inflicted great damage by burning and plundering. Ottoman sources report that in July 1501 the Christian fleet landed at Cheshme near Smyrna and slaughtered the population.⁹⁷

It is noteworthy that in these years the Christian nations attacking the Ottoman homeland and the Dardanelles demonstrated, on the whole, their naval superiority and control of the seas. In 1502 this became even more pronounced. While a Venetian fleet was making a surprise attack against Thessalonica and Makri (on the Thracian coast), the main allied fleet – Rhodes, France, the pope, and Venice – made a landing at the island of Leucas (Santa Maura) and seized the fortress. Under these circumstances the Ottomans were well disposed toward Venetian peace offers. In 1502, while Bayazid threatened Venice with the preparation of a huge armada of five hundred ships, his vizier mentioned to Valerio Marcello, the Venetian bailie, now released from prison, the advantages of peace. At the same time, the Hungarian ambassador in Istanbul was exerting pressure on the sultan for peace, and a treaty was concluded at Istanbul on August 10, 1503.

An agreement with Venice was drawn up in September 1502 and signed December 14, but due to the Ottoman insistence on the return of Leucas and on payment of a war indemnity, the final ratification act was delayed until August 10, 1503. In the end Venice agreed to return Leucas and, as in the 1479 treaty, to pay an annual sum of 10,000 gold ducats to the Ottomans. In return, the Ottomans agreed to permit the residence of a permanent bailie in the Ottoman capital and to return the goods confiscated during the war, as well as to give up the island of Cephalonia to the Venetians. The Ottomans, however, retained their conquests in the Morea – Lepanto, Modon, and Coron – and Durazzo in Albania.

⁹⁶ *Ibid.*, op. cit., p. 229 (TCS, no. 202, Istanbul copy, no. 29).

⁹⁷ *Ibid.*, op. cit., p. 267.

The conclusion of the peace agreement between the Ottomans and the Venetians met with the disapproval of the pope and the rest of the Christian world. Without Venice the crusade could not be continued. Despite the efforts of pope Julius II (1503-1513) Venice remained faithful to the peace with the sultan. At the same time, following in the footsteps of Timur and Uzun Hasan, Shāh Ismāʿīl (1501-1524), the founder of the Safavid dynasty in Persia and a formidable rival of the Ottomans in the east, approached Venice for a joint attack against the Ottoman empire. In 1508 the shah's ambassador to Venice was well received by the dogs, Leonard Loredan (1501-1521). While expressing interest in future cooperation with Persia, the dogs explained that it was not the time for Venice to break off the peace agreement with the Ottomans.

The next few years were marked by intense diplomatic activity but no major hostilities. The League of Cambray against Venice (1508) tried to enlist both Hungarian and Ottoman support. The emperor Maximilian I promised Dalmatia to Hungary, but it chose neutrality in Europe and a peace treaty with the Turks, for one year in 1510 and then for five years in 1512. Maximilian declared himself, at the diet of Augsburg in the spring of 1510, the leader of still another crusade against the Turks, but secretly attempted to secure joint action with the Ottomans against Venice, which in turn requested Turkish frontier forces for use as mercenary troops.⁹⁰ Neither side achieved its objective.

Paralyzed by a struggle for the succession among the Ottoman princes, and by a terrible insurrection in 1511 of the Turcoman Kizilbash heretics in Anatolia, the sixty-four-year-old sultan Bayazid II had to pursue a peace policy in Europe, making sure that none of the rival powers emerged strong enough to launch a crusade. Shāh Ismāʿīl of Persia threatened his eastern borders, and, as spiritual leader of a powerful *qāḍī* order, helped incite the Turcoman revolt. Bayazid was thus fully occupied in defending the empire and developing its commercial and economic strength. Having established Ottoman naval power in the Aegean and eastern Mediterranean, he supported the "Moriscos" of Spain and the Moslems of North Africa against Spanish attacks, sending sea-phans who eventually became the Barbary corsairs.⁹¹

In the Indian Ocean the Portuguese not only terrorized Moslem merchants and pilgrims, but entered the Red Sea and threatened Mecca and Medina. A Mamluk fleet was destroyed by the Portuguese in 1509

⁹⁰ Hallinger, "Kaiser Maximilian," pp. 208, 221, 223-233.

⁹¹ See Andrew Hays, "The Moriscos on Ottoman Fifth Crusade in Sixteenth-Century Spain," *American Historical Review*, LXIX (1960), 1-25; also, *The Portuguese Frontier: a History of the Sixteenth-Century North-African Frontier* (Chicago and London, 1972); and Jacob T. Mosser, "A Curious Moroccan Appeal to the Ottoman Empire," *Al-Andalus*, XXXI (1966), 281-303.

at Daa, off the Gujarat coast, and the Egyptian sultan Kansuh al-Ghuri had to accept aid and experts from his Ottoman foe to build a new fleet at Suez to drive the Portuguese out of the Red Sea.¹⁰⁰

Bayazid's orderly administration, resembling that of his grandfather, Murad II, rather than that of his father, Mehmed II, earned him the sobriquet 'Adil, "the Law-Abiding", in contrast to his father's "the Conqueror". His son Selim I "the Grim" (Yavuz), despising Bayazid's pacific policies, won the janissaries' support and deposed his father in April 1512. By massive military campaigns he defeated the Safavids of Persia in 1514 and destroyed the Mamluk state in 1516-1517,¹⁰¹ doubling the territory and financial resources of the empire by annexing eastern Anatolia, Syria, Egypt, and the Hejaz. He thus won the distinction of being the protector of the holy cities of Mecca and Medina, and assigned his admiral Selman in 1517 to defend Jadda against a Portuguese fleet. Selim completed the transformation from a frontier state to a powerful empire, easily a match for the Holy Roman empire of Maximilian I (1493-1519) and Charles V (1519-1556). During his brief reign he paid little attention to Europe, however, and thus does not figure importantly in crusades history.

At his premature death in 1520 he was succeeded by his son Suleiman I "the Magnificent" (or "the Law-Giver", Kanuni; d. 1566), who in true ghazi fashion inaugurated his reign with the conquests of Belgrade (August 30, 1521) and Rhodes¹⁰² (December 20, 1522). He was to challenge Charles V successfully both in central Europe and on the Mediterranean, and to consolidate the Ottoman position in the European state system as a secret ally of Francis I of France against the Hapsburgs. Charles would attempt to revive the crusade against both Suleiman and Francis, but this had become a different world, in which the crusading idea was anachronistic and irrelevant, long before its final failure in 1556. The capture of Belgrade and Rhodes may be considered either as the final victories of the Islamic counter-crusade or as the start of a new phase of the continuing struggle between the Ottoman empire and western Christendom.

100. See Isakli's review of *Asiatic, Chagatai and Persian in the Mamluk Kingdom*, in *Balikesir*, XVII (1956), 581-585.

101. See Mustafa M. Zaidi, "The Mamluk Sultan, 1516-1517," in volume III of the present work, chapter XLV; Isakli, "The Rise of the Ottoman Empire," in *The Cambridge History of Islam*, vol. I, *The Central Islamic Lands*, ed. Peter M. Holt, Ann K. S. Lambton, and Bernard Lewis (Cambridge, Eng., 1970), pp. 314-315.

102. See Ettore Rossi, "The Mosquitieri at Rhodes, 1421-1522," in volume III of the present work, pp. 121-122; Isakli, "The Heyday and Decline of the Ottoman Empire," in *The Cambridge History of Islam*, I, 326; and Sartori, *The Papacy and the Levant*, vol. III (Philadelphia, 1944).

X

CRUSADER COINAGE WITH GREEK OR LATIN INSCRIPTIONS

Throughout the crusades the great eastward movement of armies and pilgrims was accompanied by a heavy and persistent flow of money. This we can judge from the ill-recorded evidence of hoards deposited in the area of the crusading states, and, more generally, from the profound economic and monetary changes in both western Europe and the Levant, of which the crusades were the apparent cause. Each of the crusader states in Syria and Palestine issued in due course its own currency—three of the four on a substantial scale—and other minor and more ephemeral currencies were issued by Frankish authorities in the area from time to time. The direct monetary consequences of the crusades, therefore, were not negligible.

On the other hand, the princes who led the First Crusade came from lands in which money did not yet play a major economic role, a fact reflected in contemporary assessments of the importance of things. Financial matters do not therefore figure largely in the accounts of the

The principal work on the coinage of the crusades is Gustav Schenker's *Monetae et de Cruces lites* (Paris, 1871-1882; repr. Gine, 1954). This was founded upon and expanded the pioneering work of F. de Steinhilber, *Monetae et de Cruces lites* (Paris, 1847). Schenker's work is one of the great classics of nineteenth-century numismatic scholarship, and it is still the indispensable handbook for the study of the coins of the crusades, but two factors have made it out of date. The progress of research in Byzantine and related numismatics, particularly in the later period, has resulted in the removal to the Byzantine sphere of several coins which Schenker attributed to the Franks; and the discovery in recent years of much new material (the result of growing world-wide interest and work in coins) has made other abundant, which Schenker thought rare and has produced some alterations of his own.

Schenker's book covered the whole of the Latin east. If this chapter were to cover the necessary background of every Christian state to which attention has been given in the volume, *A History of the Crusades*, it would have had to go even further to treat the coinages, for example, of the emerging Spanish kingdoms or of the Genoese, English or the Baltic. Even to have covered the coins of the Latin east or the generally accepted states, including Languis, Cyprus, the kingdom of the Haphtal in Rhodes, the Genoese in Cilicia and Lesbos (Mytilene),

chroniclers. Since, moreover, no mint records of the crusader states are extant, we are largely dependent upon the numismatic evidence, on the surviving coins and the circumstances of their survival, for our knowledge of the circulating medium among the crusaders, and how it changed in the two centuries from the Council of Clermont to the fall of Acre.

There were, as far as we know, no coins struck by the crusaders while they were actually on their way to Jerusalem. Armies have a constant need for money, but they rarely mint it for themselves, and never do so when they are on the move. The money that the crusaders had, therefore, they either took with them, often exchanging it on the way, or received by way of subsidy from the Byzantine emperor, or looted, or acquired in the form of ransom payments.

A. *The Money They Took with Them*

Before they started on the expedition, the princes made estimates of the traveling money which they would need.¹ Peter the Hermit col-

and the Franks in Greece and the Latin empire of Constantinople, would have involved a complete revision of Schramberger and the writing of a work on a scale comparable to that of the original.

It has been thought best therefore to limit the scope of this chapter to the money and coinage of the crusaders in the eastern sense, namely to the Latin states in Syria and Palestine from the First Crusade until 1291. This limits scope for a brief but reasonably complete and illustrated catalogue of the coins known to have been used by the Franks in these states.

For information outside the scope of this chapter, but relating to the monetary background of areas treated in volumes II and III of *A History of the Crusades*, the reader is referred to Jacques Teyssie's contributions on the Latin Orient, published in the second volume of the thirty-volume *Monumenta Commissionis Sinarum et Japonicarum Research* (DMP-87 (Copenhagen, 1907) and 1908-11 (New York, 1913)).

Important public collections of coins of the crusaders are to be found in the Cabinet des Médailles of the Bibliothèque nationale, Paris, in the Department of Coins and Medals of the British Museum, London, in the American Numismatic Society, New York, and in the Israel Museum, Jerusalem.

The author is grateful to these custodians of public collections and private owners who have allowed him access to their cabinets. He particularly wishes to thank Mr. John J. Gorman, who has given him not only that privilege, but generous advice and hospitality as well. However, it must also be asserted that there is important material which is as far unpublished and which the author has not seen. In the present state of crusader numismatics many of the attributions in the catalogue may have to be revised in the light of fuller knowledge. For information on some eleven's financial transactions during the Third Crusade the reader is referred to the 'Acre Archives' in Dorothy's Sale Catalogue of Western Manuscripts, London, 25 Oct. 1907, pp. 24-35, which was published too late to be incorporated in this chapter.

1. William of Tyre, *Historia rerum in partibus transmarinis gestarum*, I, cxi (RHC, Græc.

lected gifts from the devout princes of Christendom to minister to the necessities of the poor and needy during their pilgrimage. The wagon containing this entire treasure was carried off by Bulgarian raiders as the pilgrims were on their way to Constantinople.¹

Raymond of Aguilers gives a list of the coins that the crusaders principally used among themselves: "Picavina, Cartenses, Manesi, Lucenses, Valentinienses, Mergomni et duo Fogesi pro uno intorum"²—the billion deniers of Poitou, of Chartres, of Le Mans, of Lucca, of Valence, of Melguet, and of Le Puy, these last being worth one half the value of the others.

It is instructive to compare this list, which accords, so far as it goes, with the western coins of the late eleventh and early twelfth centuries which turn up in stray finds in Syria and Palestine, with the roll of the leaders of the crusade and the coins which they and their followers used in their homelands. Although there were no kings among them, most of the leaders from France excused the *far monetae*. Within the empire this right was not so widely distributed at that time, but the leaders from Germany and Italy also were closely connected with those who did exercise rights of coinage.

These then are the coinages which the leaders issued or with which they were associated at home:

Godfrey of Bouillon and Baldwin of Boulogne: The dukes of Lower Lorraine as such did not issue coins, nor did Godfrey strike any for his territory of Bouillon. In France, however, their father Eustace II struck a scanty coinage as count of Boulogne, and possibly their brother Eustace III did also.³

Bohemond, Tancred, and Richard of the Principate: None of these princes issued coins in southern Italy. However, Robert Guiscard, father of Bohemond and grandfather of Tancred, and Roger Borsa, Bohemond's half-brother, issued extensive coinages in copper and some gold coins also. Their uncle, Roger, struck a similar coinage as count of Sicily.⁴

1. 47). William's statement may amount to no more than an intelligent man's belief that no one would go on a crusade without a little forethought about the probable cost. Doubtless some crusaders' forward financial planning consisted in buying bonds on whatever cash they could get.

2. *Ibid.* I, vii (RHC, Occ., I, 35).

3. Raymond of Aguilers, *Historia Francorum qui ceperunt Hierusalem*, 1004 (RHC, Occ., VI, 375). Aguilers MS reads: "Manes, Lucenses, Valentines, Melgromnes."

4. Florent Puy d'Avant, *Les Monnaies Médévales de France* (Paris, 1858-1862), III, 272.

5. Giulio Sanfelice, *Spagnatori generali delle monete carlate in Italia* (Paris, 1912), IV, 8, 10.

Raymond of Toulouse: Raymond passed as the richest of the crusading leaders. The actual coinage of Toulouse in the name of Raymond himself was not very extensive, but his overlordship included many other mints. The most important of these was undoubtedly that where he exercised the right of coinage as count of Melgueil.⁶ Two who took service with Raymond were also possessors of mints of their own. Gaston of Béarn inherited from his father Centulle the mint of Morlaas, which struck (always in the name of Centulle) the most prolific currency in Gascony.⁷ Gerard of Roussillon was the heir to a somewhat sparser coinage. He succeeded to the county of Roussillon in 1102, and deniers are extant bearing his name; these are mentioned by the name of *rossillon* in a charter of 1112.⁸

Robert of Flanders: The coinage of the counts of Flanders dates from the end of the tenth century, but it was not yet of great extent or importance by 1100. The various coins of Robert himself, and those struck by his cousin Clementia of Burgundy as regent during his absence on the crusade, are known in only a few examples.⁹

Robert of Normandy: The coinage of Normandy had much degenerated by 1100. The light and much-debased Norman *denier* was of only local importance by that time, and was supplemented even in Normandy by the heavier and more highly valued deniers of neighboring Maine and Anjou.¹⁰

Adhémar of Montpel, Bishop of Le Puy: The anonymous coinage of Le Puy was extensively used in Auvergne. These coins, which were of low intrinsic value, passed at one half the value of the denier of Melgueil. The vernacular expression *paucageois* came in due course to signify a fractional coin, both among the Franks in the east and in the kingdom of France.¹¹

6. *Ibid.*, II, 268. The coinage of Melgueil continued in the hands of the counts of Toulouse until 1213, when as a consequence of the Albigensian Crusade it was granted by Innocent III to the Bishop of Maguelone.

7. *Ibid.*, II, 168.

8. A. Engel and Raymond Serrus, *Trésor de numismatique du moyen âge* (Paris, 1894) II, 447.

9. Serrus, "Une Page de l'histoire numismatique de la Flandre (1070-1100)," *Revue belge de numismatique* (1889), p. 184; W. Engel, "Der Fund von Lindevoert, Westf.," *Zeitschrift für Numismatik*, XXV (1905), 227-244; Claude Riché, *Les monnaies féodales d'après le Trésor de la Bibliothèque* (Paris, 1907), pp. 43-45, 160-170.

10. Poy d'Avant, *op. cit.*, I, 26-32. For the coins of Anjou and Maine see *ibid.*, I, 159-206.

11. *Ibid.*, I, 337-342.

Hugh of Vermandois: The single specimen of a denier in the name of Hugh is of doubtful authenticity. There is, however, a series of anonymous deniers of Saint Quentin, the principal city of the county of Vermandois, some of which date from this period;¹² this was a coinage of moderate importance. Hugh's brother, Philip I, issued a fairly extensive coinage as king of France.¹³

Stephen of Blois: The coins of Stephen's county of Chartres and the related issue of his county of Blois formed one of the most important currencies in France at the end of the eleventh century.¹⁴

Baldwin of Flanders: No coins are known for Baldwin as count of Hainault, but he struck a few pieces at Saint Omer, as claimant to the county of Flanders. They are as rare as the coins of Robert.

The coins therefore which Raymond of Aguilers mentions correlate tolerably well with the coinage traditions of the leaders of the crusade. The coins in his list which remain to be accounted for are the coins of Poitou, of Lucca, and of Valencia.

The deniers of Poitou were one of the most plentiful coinages of France; the Poitevin mint of Melé was supplied from Carolingian times by the silver mine there.¹⁵ The Poitevin connection with the crusade was always strong, and of course the count of Poitou, William of Aquitaine, was a leader of the abortive crusade of 1101.

The deniers of Valencia were, with those of Vienne (also frequently found in Syria and Palestine), one of the principal currencies of the Rhône valley.¹⁶ Valencia lay on the main route which would be followed

12 *Ibid.*, III, 383-384.

13 Jean Lohr, *Les Monnaies des rois de France* (Paris, 1935), pp. 4-11.

14 *Peux d'Anjou*, op. cit., I, 226-241.

15 *Ibid.*, II, 1-36.

16 *Ibid.*, III, 3. For the coins of Vienne see *Ibid.*, III, 36. The association of deniers of Valencia with the Latin east is discussed in B. M. Hirsch, "Coins of Lucca, Valencia, and Antioch," *Manuscript Studies for Numismatists* (1946-1948; published 1972), pp. 415-470. Deniers of Valencia were also present in the Barbarossa hoard recently discovered in Cilicia; see Wolfgang Hoes in *Offenbacher Jahrbuch der Numismatik* (Jahrbuch der Numismatik), Teil 10, XXXV (1964), 212-224. Information on this hoard, which was probably deposited by German crusaders accompanying the emperor Frederick Barbarossa on the Third Crusade, has become available too late for inclusion in the text of this chapter. It will be published in detail by Dr. Ulrich Klau of the Württemberg-Landesbibliothek, Stuttgart.

The biggest single element in the hoard, which is entirely of silver, is made up of pinnings of Philip of Hohenberg, archbishop of Cologne, and many of similar material struck by Frederick himself as his mint at Aachen. A significant portion consists of episcopal issues from Strasbourg and the Lorraine episcopates of Metz and Toul, and pinnings struck at the archbishop of Salzburg's mint at Füssen in the eastern Alps. There is a useful contribution from the Deu-

by any pilgrim of northern or central France making the pilgrimage by way of Provence or Italy. It will be recalled also that the cleric Bernard of Valence became the first Latin patriarch of Antioch.

The mint of Lucca was one of the four imperial mints of Italy, and the only one situated in Tuscany. Its significance for the crusades is that it supplied the coinage for Pisa, which under the direction of its archbishop Dalmbert was the first of the Italian maritime communes to give naval and economic support to the movement.

Briefly therefore it can be stated that of the coins mentioned by Raymond of Aguilers, the *picarvial* were contributed originally by the Poitevins, the *cortenses* by the followers of Stephen, the *maney* by Robert's Normans, the *lucenses* came with the fleet, the *volentunenses* and *papes* with the Provençals; and those who traveled down the Rhône valley, and the *margares* were originally brought by the followers of Raymond of Saint Gilles. All are found in Palestine and Syria.¹⁷

There is nothing in the chronicler's list to represent the home coinage of the Lorrainers and the Flemings on the one hand or of Bohemond's Normans on the other. To some extent this may reflect the fact that Raymond of Aguilers was with the Provençal army, but the surviving coins confirm his account. It must be assumed that these others brought less of their own money with them, which would have made them more heavily dependent upon subsidies. In Bohemond's case we may note that his kinsfolk's coinage in southern Italy was mostly copper, which does not usually travel, being reckoned rather worthless far from home.

What the Normans did bring with them, however, was a generation's experience of Byzantine money and minting practice in the outer marches of the empire. Moving in effect from one Byzantine frontier area to another, at Antioch and Edessa (where they were an important element in count Balduin's following) they were quick to resume the striking of coins on their own. Their coins, though of the local pattern, were yet not so different from those to which they were accustomed in Italy.

from Athens and Ioannina, and from Würzburg, as well as English markings and coins from France, Italy, Cilician Armenia, and Antioch.

¹⁷ Dorothy M. Cox, *The Typology of French Seigneurial and Crusaders' Coins* (ANQ, NMA, no. 39, New York, 1933), pp. 34-42; himself, "Some Hoards and Their Finds from the Latin East," *ANQ, Museum Notes*, XIX (1977), 143-152.

B. *The Money They Encountered en Route*

The specie which the crusaders first met in quantity was Byzantine coin acquired in the form of subsidies. William of Tyre records¹⁸ how at Constantinople duke Godfrey, one of the leaders less well provided with funds from his own land, received from the emperor Alexius as much gold coin as two men could carry on their shoulders and ten measures "de acriis denariis". Palcher of Chartres, in what may be another account of the same episode, tells us that after the capture of Nicaea "junxit imperator de auro suo et argento atque pailis proceribus nomina dari, pedibus quoque distribui fecit de cunctis suis aeneis, quos vocant tataricos."¹⁹ These coins were the copper *tetartem*, which were placed at the lowest point in the scale of Alexius's newly reformed coinage.

The monetary reforms of Alexius have only recently been elucidated.²⁰ His coinage embodied a far more sophisticated monetary system than any which the Franks, except probably Bohemond's Normans, had experienced before. It was based upon the gold hyperpyron, 20½ carats fine. The fractional pieces were an electrum coin, valued at one third of the gold, and a billion piece, the *aspron trachy* or *stamnon*, valued at one forty-eighth. The copper *tetartem* were in the system below these three, but their precise value in relation to them has not been established. In the frontier areas, some of the pre-reform coinage of earlier emperors, which included gold coins substantially less pure than the hyperpyron, was still in circulation along with the reformed coinage.

In describing the cost of living during the siege of Antioch in the winter of 1097-1098, the anonymous historian of the First Crusade mentions that the price of a donkey was eight *perperati* (hyperpyra) "qui appropinquabant ex solidis denariis".²¹ This quotation of an exchange rate which is equivalent to 180 deniers for one hyperpyron, or to 3½ deniers for one billion *aspron trachy*, implies that an exchange market was already well established. However, the first actual record of an exchange transaction between crusaders and Byzantines dates not from the First Crusade but from the Second. Odo of Deuil records²²

18. William of Tyre, II, 26 (RHC, Occ., I, 39).

19. Palcher of Chartres, *Historia Hierosolymitana*, I, 2 (ed. Helmut Hagenmeyer Hildesheim, 1913), RHC, Occ., II, 133-134.

20. Michael F. Hendy, *Coinage and Money in the Byzantine Empire 1025-1261* (Dumbarton Oaks, 1969).

21. *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, ed. Louis Bréhier (Paris, 1924), p. 76.

22. Odo of Deuil, *De profectione Ludovici VII in Orientem*, 20, 21, ed. in Virginia G. Barry (CUIOC, 42; New York, 1961), pp. 40, 66.

the bewilderment of his economically untutored countrymen when they were first confronted by the intricacies of the Byzantine coinage. He also suggests that they were given a very bad rate of exchange against their own money. Indeed it would not be surprising if the Franks were cheated from time to time by the Byzantine money-changers. However, when in 1147, under the walls of Constantinople, the pilgrims received one copper *stamena* (by which name Odo must intend the billon aspron *trachy* of the reformed coinage) for two of their deniers, instead of having to give five deniers as they had done at the imperial frontier and as they were to do again as they crossed Anatolia, it appears that they were treated by the emperor Manuel to an especially favorable rate. In any case they got a better bargain than their grandfathers had at Antioch fifty years earlier.

Underlying Odo's complaint, which is couched in rather obscure language as if the chronicler himself did not really grasp what the issue was, there appears to have been a complete misapprehension on the part of the Franks as to the nature of Byzantine subsidiary coinage. Their own deniers were worth their intrinsic value and no more. The Byzantine billon on the other hand was worth one forty-eighth of a hyperpyron not intrinsically but because a powerful government was to maintain that as its value, which was a much more advanced monetary concept.

At least no misunderstanding arose in the valuation of gold, to the use of which the crusaders took readily, although gold coin was not generally available in their homelands. As they moved east they encountered Byzantine gold of both the reformed and the pre-reform coinage. In William of Tyre's story of count Baldwin II of Edessa, who pledged his beard and tricked his Armenian father-in-law, Taron, into redeeming it for him, the ransom price is stated in gold *mickarfinar*, the debased gold *nomisma* struck by Michael VII.²³ Later, when Baldwin as king of Jerusalem was ransomed for a sum of one hundred thousand of these coins, William described them as the principal currency of those regions.²⁴ It was only much later, when Baldwin III was married to Theodora, niece of the emperor Manuel, in 1158, that William mentioned the hyperpyron as making up part of the bride's dowry.²⁵

The coinage of the Saracens when the Franks first encountered it was in as much disarray as their political system. Like the coinage of the Byzantine empire it was based upon gold, the silver having been drawn away, presumably by the high value given to it in Latin Christen-

23. William of Tyre, XI, in *OPAC*, *Chr.*, I, 476.

24. *Ibid.*, XII, in *OPAC*, *Chr.*, I, 576; Chloé Morvan, "Le Michaeléon et les monnaies à 10 din de Xénakia," *Revue de numismatique*, III (1962), 369-374.

25. William of Tyre, XVII, in *OPAC*, *Chr.*, I, 827.

dom, as much as a century before the First Crusade.²⁶ The most plentiful Islamic gold coinage in the area consisted of dinars struck by the eleventh-century Fatimid caliphs at mints in Egypt and Syria.²⁷ The Franks became accustomed to give and to receive these coins, to which they gave the name *beasus servacemari*, in ransom payments and tribute. In due course they themselves came to strike imitations of them.

The only coins struck by the emirs and sultans with whom the crusaders first came into immediate contact were copper pieces for local circulation.²⁸ There is no evidence that the Franks used these in their own transactions, but it is to be noted that the very first coins that the Frankish leaders struck in their own names were likewise copper coins of low value for local use.

C. The Coins Minted by the Crusaders

The actual minting of coins by the crusaders themselves was instituted shortly after their settlement in the east and continued, with some interruption, until their expulsion nearly two centuries later. Their minting operations may be divided broadly into three phases. The first phase, a period of crude quasi-Byzantine copper coinage in the northern states of Edessa and Antioch, began a year or two after the First Crusade and ended soon after the eclipse of the Normans at the "field of blood" in 1119. The second phase, a period of typically Frankish denier coinage at Antioch, Jerusalem, and Tripoli, ran from about 1140 until after Hattin. The last phase, characterized by new monetary experiments and some proliferation of minting authorities, lasted from the Frankish revival until the extinction of the Latin settlements in 1291.

THE FIRST PHASE

The coinage of the first phase is limited to Edessa and Antioch. All the coins are made of copper and are struck on thick flans. They run

26 Andrew M. Watson, "Back to Gold—and Silver," *Economic History Review*, 2nd ser., XCV (1967), 1 ff.

27 See George C. Miles, *Paternal rules in the Collection of the University Museum, Philadelphia, and the American Numismatic Society* (AMS, NMS, no. 121, New York, 1952).

28 Stanley Lane-Poole, *Coins of the United Kingdom* (Imperial Museum Open Hall, London, 1873); Paul Guerin, "Monnaies des Bouchaouas," *Ann. num.*, 3rd ser., XII (1884), 307-238, 433-440; XIII (1895), 389-402; and XIV (1896), 213-222, 306-315.

in series, starting with clean blanks, but thereafter overstruck one on the other. The inscriptions are in Greek at Edessa, in Greek or Latin at Antioch. It appears that the weight of the coins was not particularly important, since the weight range within each issue is very large.

We cannot tell which were the very first coins minted in the name of the leaders of the crusade. There are coins of both Edessa and Antioch which, on numismatic evidence, must date from before 1104. From their general aspect it seems clear that they were struck more for the use of the native population than for the Franks.

Edessa, of course, was not conquered from the Turks, but was taken over from its Armenian ruler by Baldwin of Boulogne's coup d'état. Its inhabitants, according to William of Tyre, were native "Chaldeans" and peaceful Armenians ignorant of the use of arms and familiar only with the business of trading.²⁹ The Armenian rulers of the city had not, however, struck coins.

We cannot tell whether the decision to issue coins there was taken by Baldwin I or Baldwin II. Documentary evidence is lacking. The numismatic evidence, so far as it goes, would tend to put the initial date after rather than before 1100, the year when Baldwin I departed to become king of Jerusalem. Yet the decision to institute a coinage accords rather well with what we know of Baldwin I—his thirst for sovereignty and his single-minded intention to acquire and efficiently to administer a state in the Levant. Since Edessa, of all the crusading states, was the least dislocated by the shocks of the crusade, it is not impossible to envisage the issue of coins there before 1100.

There is nothing very Frankish about the first Edessene coins.³⁰ By numismatic convention they are called *folles*, by analogy with the Byzantine copper coins of the period immediately before Alexios's reform, which they much resemble. In weight, in general aspect, and presumably in purpose, though not in type, they also resemble copper coins issued at this time by Turkish atabegs and emirs ruling neighboring districts of northern Syria. They weigh mostly 6½ to 8½ grams, and they proceed in a succession of issues, each overstruck on a previous one.

This practice of overstriking was normal in the Byzantine empire at this epoch, and is also found in the copper coinage struck by Bohemond's kin in southern Italy.³¹ We do not know the reason for it.

²⁹ William of Tyre, XVI, 14 (RHC, Gr., I, 787).

³⁰ John Parsons, "The Early Coinage of the Counts of Edessa," *Num. Chr.* 7th ser., XV (1915), 105-102.

³¹ Philip Grierson, "The Salernitan Coinage of Gisulf II (1073-1077) and Robert Guiscard (1077-1085)," *Papers of the British School at Rome*, XXIV (new ser., XI, 1956).

It cannot be because there were no facilities for making fresh blanks, since in the case of Edessa, at least, the first coins of each series are struck on fresh blanks. Presumably it was an economy measure, since the value of the coins was not high and the issues were frequently changed. From our point of view, the advantage of the practice is that it enables us to set out the issues in the correct order and to date them approximately, but the coins are hard to decipher, and the overstrikes make the later issues quite hideous.

There were at least seven issues (nos. 1-7) and probably more in the early years, though some of these are represented now by only a handful of surviving specimens. The first (pl. I, no. 1) was struck on clean blanks and in a wholly Byzantine style. It is identified as a coin of Baldwin by the reverse inscription - *BAΔN* in the angles of a jeweled cross.

There follow one more issue in Baldwin's name (pl. I, no. 2) and three (pl. I, nos. 3-5) in the name of Richard of the Principate, Bohemond's cousin, who was regent of Edessa from 1104 to 1108 when Baldwin II was a prisoner of the Turks. The inscriptions are in Greek. Baldwin's coin reads *XBΘK* in the angles of a cross, initials which may be taken to signify *Χαίρετε βασιλεῦ βασιλευσιν κτίται*. Richard's legends are all variations on the theme *Κόμης βασιλεῦ Πριγκίπων*, Lord save Richard. A touch of Frankishness begins to creep in with the design of Richard's third (pl. I, no. 5): the circular inscription around the cross is common on western deniers of this period but unknown on the Byzantine coinage.

The next issue (pl. II, no. 6) is anonymous. It could be Richard's or Baldwin II's. The type, however, is interesting: it is the first appearance on the crusader coinage of an armed knight. The only precedent for this figure, so characteristic in our eyes of these military states, and destined to become, in one aspect or another, one of the classic types of the Latin coinage in Syria, is a coin of count Roger of Sicily⁵² which dates from about twenty years before. Richard's followers in Edessa would have been familiar with the Sicilian coin, and the adoption of this type at Edessa may be ascribed to Italo-Norman influence.

Incidentally, what little we know of Richard (his rapacity toward his Edessene subjects is almost all that is recorded of him)⁵³ gives us a possible clue as to the purpose of these frequent type changes, three at least in three years. It seems likely that they were some kind of re-

⁵² Sanders, *op. cit.*, no. 179.

⁵³ Matthew of Edessa, *Chronica* (RSC, *Arm.*, II, 80-81).

was done: we may suppose that coin was called in at intervals and a fee charged for its release in a new form.

About the year 1110 the last of the large Edessene coins was struck, a piece (pl. II, no. 7) reverting to a more Byzantine style with a jeweled cross on the obverse and count Baldwin's name and title in Greek written across the field on the reverse. There was then a change. The weight of the Edessene coinage was reduced to an average 4½ grams and a new series was begun on clean blanks. All these issues (pl. II, nos. 8-11) bear the name Baldwin and the image of the count in armor. The first and most sophisticated shows the count holding a cross in his hand and the inscription ΒΑΛΔΟΥΙΝΟΣ ΔΟΥΛΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΚΡΟΣ, Baldwin servant of the Cross. The later issues, all overstruck, are somewhat cruder. On none of them does Baldwin have a territorial title, but they must come from Edessa, since their source is always northern Syria. The weight reduction may reflect the ruler's desire to bring his coinage into line with that of Antioch.

There are no coins which can be ascribed with any certainty to the counts Joacelin. The last coins of Edessa, as our knowledge stands at present, belong to a curious issue (pl. II, no. 12) nearly all the surviving specimens of which appear to come from a single hoard, as yet unpublished. They are of copper, but may be alloyed with a little silver. They apparently come in two distinct weights, though the standard of each is so erratic as to admit the possibility that all are of one denomination. The inscription is in Greek: ΤΗΣ ΚΡΟΣ ΝΙΚΑ, the Cross conquers, and ΒΑΛΔΟΥΙΝ ΧΟΜΙ, count Baldwin. They are struck with neat dies, but on blanks which are often rough and some of which may bear traces of a Kufic inscription.

In most aspects, especially in their Greek inscription, their absence of territorial title, and their erratic weight standard, these still belong to the first phase of crusading coinage. In other respects, however—in the thin fabric of the lighter ones, the circular inscription around the cross, and the possible presence of silver in the alloy—they look forward to coins of the second phase. With one possible exception, they are the only Edessene coins to point to this transition.

The exception, a doubtful one, is represented by a single unprovenanced and broken coin (pl. II, no. 13). This, although not certainly part of the Edessene series, is probably best considered here, since it appears to link the last coinage of count Baldwin with the period after he became king of Jerusalem. It is a billeted coin and it has a Greek inscription on either side: + ΒΑΛΔΟΥΙΝΟΣ ΔΕΚΙΝΟΤΗΣ in five lines and ΕΝ ΧΩ ΝΙΚΑ disposed in the angles of a cross. The title

clearly points to a date after Baldwin's becoming king of Jerusalem, but the fabric and the language of the inscription suggest that it should be ascribed to one of the northern Frankish states. Metcalf and Willis³⁴ classify the piece without comment as a coin of Antioch struck by Baldwin during his years of regency in the principality (1119-1126). However, the coin may equally well belong to Edessa, to the eighteen-month interval between Baldwin's consecration as king at Easter 1118 and his investiture of Joscelin with that country in the late summer of 1119. That the coin was struck in the kingdom of Jerusalem is possible but unlikely.³⁵

In considering the coinage of Antioch we must recall that the city on the Orontes, unlike Edessa, was once an imperial mint. However, as there is no evidence that the mint was reopened when the city was recovered by Byzantine arms in 969, the issue of coinage there by the crusaders is probably independent of that earlier tradition and should be interpreted as an assertion of sovereignty on their part. The Antioch mint seems never to have been a bone of contention between the prince and the emperor in the long dispute about the prince's status and Byzantine overlordship. It was not, however, until well into the reign of Roger of Salerno that the coins gave the ruler any title; before that their only territorial reference was the image of St. Peter, first patriarch and patron saint of Antioch, which appeared on five of the first eleven issues.

All the early copper coins of Antioch are of the light but erratic weight standard of the later armed-man coins of Edessa. There are some rare issues among them, but as a rule they are more plentiful than those of Edessa. The order of the principal issues is reasonably clear and is established by the pattern of overstrikes. Four issues of Tancred (nos. 16-19) as regent for Bohemond I are followed by three of Roger (nos. 20-22) and maybe two of Bohemond II (nos. 157, 23).

The first of Tancred's coins (pl. III, no. 16) shows a bust of St. Peter, neatly engraved, and a reverse inscription in Greek, Lord save thy servant Tancred. Such use of the local patron saint is found in the provincial coinage of the Byzantine empire; St. Theodore appears on the

34. Metcalf and F. J. Willis, 'Crusader Coins in the Museum of the Order of St. John, at Clerkenwell,' *Numism. Chr.*, 7th ser., XIX (1977), 136.

35. The inscription affirms the hypothesis that this is a coin of Baldwin I, the first Latin emperor of Constantinople, whose seal, with the name legend, is engraved on the title page of *Études Cluses, Recherches sur les monnaies des comtes de Flandre* (Brussels, 1842). However, the fabric of the coin is quite unlike that of Byzantine coins at the time of the Latin conquest.

coinage of Trebizond at just this time.²⁴ The parallel is strikingly reinforced by the similarity in appearance of Theodora on the Trebizond coins to the bust of Tancred himself as he appears on his second issue (pl. III, no. 17) at Antioch. This portrait has sometimes been said to show Tancred wearing a turban, and therefore to demonstrate how quickly the crusading princes adopted oriental manners.²⁵ The prototype of the Greek soldier-saint is a more convincing explanation of Tancred's bizarre appearance.

Tancred's third issue (pl. III, no. 18) has the reverse inscription *DSPT* for *Domine Salvum Fac Tancredum*, the Latin transcription of the invocation *κύριε βοήθη* which is found on coins of both Antioch and Edessa. On account of its Latin legend this coin was once ascribed to the principality of Galilee, which Tancred held as a fief of Godfrey of Bonillon before 1100. That ascription is still sometimes made, but it cannot be correct since the coins have been found with others at Antioch²⁶ and take their due place in the succession of overstrikes, forming the undertype of coins of Roger and of Tancred's last issue (pl. III, no. 19), a coin of conventional Byzantine aspect with a bust of Christ on the obverse and Tancred's name in Greek on the reverse.

Roger made three successive issues of copper coins, the first two (pl. III, nos. 20, 21) with Greek inscriptions, the third (pl. III, no. 22) with a Latin one. All share the essentially Byzantine iconography of the early crusader coins, but the first two bear images not used by Roger's predecessors, the Virgin *orans* and St. George slaying the dragon. The St. George coin is chiefly remarkable for its reverse legend, which sets out Roger's title as prince of Antioch. It is the only coin of the first phase to state a territorial title, and it may possibly be interpreted as an example of the assertiveness characteristic of usurpers.

The problems of the early coinage of Antioch center upon the attribution of coins in the name of Bohemond. One of these indeed (pl. III, no. 23), a coin with the reverse inscription *BAIMYNOC* set in the angles of a cross, is not difficult, since it occurs overstruck on coins of Roger. This must therefore be ascribed to Bohemond II and, since it follows hard on Roger's coins, to the early part of his reign before his arrival in the east in 1126 to take up his inheritance. This close se-

24. Simon Bréchet, "The Mint of Trebizond under Alexius I and the Comnenes," *Nouvelles Clés*, 7th ser., XVII (1977), 132.

25. For a rehearsal of the role of this coin as evidence for the rapid christianization of the crusaders see Raymond C. Smith, *Crusading Warfare 1097-1193* (Cambridge, Eng., 1978), p. 41, note 1.

26. Dorothy B. Waage, *Antioch-on-the-Orontes*, IV, part 2 (Princeton, 1952), 89.

quence is an incidental but not weighty argument against the attribution of the ΒΑΛΔΟΥΝΟΥ ΔΕΧΗΘΗC coin (pl. II, no. 13) to this period at Antioch.

Two other coins bearing the name Bohemond or an abbreviation of it are more difficult to place. One of these (pl. III, no. 14) shows a bust of St. Peter on the obverse and the letters BHMT in the angles of a floriate cross on the reverse. Schlumberger ascribed it to Bohemond I.³⁹ The main arguments for giving so early a date to this rather scarce coin are its primitive style and the arrangement of the brief inscription about the cross, like that on Baldwin's first coin of Edessa (pl. I, no. 1). There is also the negative argument that this coin is not found overstruck on Tancred's coins. However, it would be reassuring if a specimen could be found overstruck by one of Tancred's issues.

For the other coin in Bohemond's name (pl. III, no. 15) there is even less on which to build a hypothesis. It exists in a single specimen, unpublished until now. On the obverse we find St. Peter again, but neatly engraved in the style rather of Tancred's first issue (pl. III, no. 16) than of the coin (no. 14) just considered. The reverse inscription is in Latin: RO[AMV]NDVS SERVVS XPI. The coin is overstruck, but the under-type is not identifiable.

This may be the immediate predecessor of Tancred's first issue, or it may come just after that issue, in which case Tancred's first St. Peter coins must be put back to before Bohemond's release from his Danishmendid prison in 1102. That, however, would suppose that there was a plentiful issue (no. 16) by Tancred during his first regency, an interlude of two years from which this coin (no. 15) is the sole survivor, and then a resumption of prolific coinage (nos. 17-19) by Tancred with his second regency in 1104. It makes more sense to suppose that all Tancred's issues followed hard upon each other.

It is tempting, in the absence of further evidence, to relate the new coin to Tancred's first St. Peter coin, which it so much resembles in iconography, in style, and in the meaning, if not the language, of the inscription. However, even if new evidence is discovered which makes it necessary to ascribe it after all to Bohemond II after 1119, still this piece, the most uncompromisingly Latin of all the coins of the first phase, interestingly reinforces the two points which must strike anyone who examines the early coinage of the crusaders. One is the close parallel with the coinage of the Normans in southern Italy, which is also an overstruck coinage in copper given to inexact alternation between Greek and Latin. The second point is the genuine religious

³⁹ Schlumberger, *Numismatique*, p. 43.

service which these coins transmit, counterbalancing to some extent the evidence of the crusaders' boundless rapacity which emerges from some accounts of the crusader Lord save thy servant Thimcred; Baldwin the servant of the Cross; Bohemond the servant of Christ. We are accustomed to the appearance of the saints in the iconography of later medieval coinage, and the *Kyrie Eleison* invocation is found on the coins of the Byzantine emperor and on the seals, though not the coins, of the Normans in Italy. But even if their inscriptions do contain an element of ostentatious humility which may have had a political purpose, these coins, with their absence of territorial title, are still impressive. There is something in them of that spirit which allegedly prompted Godfrey of Bouillon to refuse a crown in the city where his God had worn a crown of thorns.

THE SECOND PHASE

During the twelfth century the coinage of western Christendom consisted almost entirely of silver or billon deniers (*denari*, pence, or *pfennige*) issued at various weights and fineness by different feudal authorities. One of its characteristics was a tendency to crystallize into what are known to numismatists as "immobilized types" – forms and designs remaining essentially unchanged for decades on end. The principal coinages of France and those of the imperial mints of Italy were prime examples of this.

Coinage in western Christendom⁴⁰ was the king's monopoly if he could enforce it, but if not, not. In France the *jus monetae* was still widely distributed, a legacy of the breakdown of political cohesion in late Carolingian times. A number of coinages, notably those of the counts of Anjou and Champagne in the north and those of the counts of Toulouse and dukes of Aquitaine in the south, were more important than the king's own, but royal authority was gradually strengthened, and by the end of the century royal coinage was predominating. In Germany, on the other hand, the imperial prerogative was weakened and dispersed, so that by 1200 the imperial mints were at best competing as equals with those of the great feudatories, notably the ecclesiastical servants of the empire and the secular lords of the march. In northern Italy coinage, to begin with, was largely restricted to the

40. For a general discussion of twelfth-century coinage in western Christendom see Gies' *Money*, *Monnaie des royaumes de France* (Princeton, 1970), pp. 111–121, and Pirenne, *Centre in History* (London and New York, 1989), pp. 53–66.

imperial mints—Pavia, Milan, Verona, and Lucca—but increasingly the communes either asserted or were granted their own minting privileges. Only in England, in southern Italy, and in the Spanish kingdoms was the right of coinage more or less exclusively held in royal hands.

Among the crusaders coinage was not exclusively royal insofar as the *ius monetar* was vested in all four rulers of the Latin states. They, however, kept it to themselves, permitting even less encroachment by their barons during the twelfth century than did the king of England. Nor did the privileges and immunities granted to the Italian communes within certain cities extend to the operation of a mint. Yet otherwise, in monetary as in political affairs, the principal outside influences in the Latin states came from France and the maritime communes of Italy.

It is not in itself surprising that twelfth-century Frankish princes should have used silver and billon coinage. That rulers in Syria and Palestine should do so, however, implied an important reversal of the economic and monetary trends of nearly two centuries. Such coins were quite exceptional in that part of the world, and their appearance there was a sign that in the wake of the crusaders' conquest silver, the valued currency of the west, was drawn eastward. This was either because the west was sending heavy subsidies for their support, or because the Latins established in their new lands economies which, in monetary terms, were an eastward extension of the system already operating in the west. Probably both causes were at work, but they worked slowly; if the crusading princes did not start to issue silver coinage on a regular basis before about 1140, this was because until then there was little silver about. Even when regular silver coinage was established, it was accompanied by far more subsidiary issues of copper coinage than was ever normal in the west.

It may be that some of the earliest silver coins struck by the crusaders were in fact imitations of western coins. It has been argued that some of the cruder and later varieties of the *denari* of Lucca, the *lucensis* of Raymond of Aguilers' catalogue, were actually struck by the Pisans, and that some may even have been minted in the Holy Land, where various hoards of them have been found.⁴¹ The existence of a dealer of Chartres from an eastern source and with a retrograde inscription possibly adds a little more weight to this theory that the first silver minted by the crusaders consisted of copies of the coins which they had brought with them.⁴² It raises, however, the important juridical

41. Murray, *loc. cit.*

42. This coin, which is unpublished, is in the author's collection.

question whether they were issued by the Latin princes or minted *sub rosa* by the Italian communities.

The first deniers of Frankish type and bearing the name of a crusading prince are apparently coins of Bertrand (Bertram) of Tripoli (pl. VIII, no. 63). A very rare anonymous coin of the same type and with the same reverse legend (pl. VIII, no. 66) is also ascribed to Bertrand. Since Bertrand died in 1112, the coins ascribed to him are outliers, struck quite early during what we have called the first phase of crusading coinage and antedating all other Frankish deniers by at least twenty-five years. They cannot therefore be fitted into any neat pattern of monetary development in the Latin states, and they are the more extraordinary in that Foulques, Bertrand's more active and longer-lived successor, apparently struck no coins in twenty-four years. Bertrand's coins, which are closely related in type to those which he struck as count of Toulouse before he left for Tripoli in 1109, are represented by only a handful of surviving specimens.

Regular coinage of silver deniers seems to have begun more or less contemporaneously in Antioch and Jerusalem about 1140. The new phenomenon appears to reflect two facts: a steady enough inflow of silver to sustain coinage of this kind and the presence of a Frankish population big enough to demand it.

At Antioch the denier coinage was instituted by Raymond of Poitiers some time after his marriage in 1136 to Constance, the successor of Bohemond II. His issue came after a period of some fifteen years in which there was either no coinage at all, or at most some irregular issues of anonymous copper coinage of this fabric but otherwise of primitive aspect (pl. IV, nos. 24-26), which may be ascribed to these years on the somewhat inadequate ground that they fit in badly almost anywhere else.

Raymond's new coins (pl. IV, no. 27) have on the obverse a neat profile bust and the circular inscription *RAYMONDVS*; the reverse simply gives the name of the city *ANTIOCHIE* around a short cross. A profile portrait was quite exceptional in French coinage at that date, but normal in England, whence Raymond was summoned to Antioch in 1136, and also in Navarre and Aragon, kingdoms bordering on his native Aquitaine.⁴³

Several varieties of Raymond's denier have been noted.⁴⁴ It was evi-

⁴³ Another possible prototype for the profile portrait is the head of St. Maurice as it appeared on the denarii of Vienna.

⁴⁴ Nicolle, "Silver Coinage of the Crusading Principality of Antioch," *Numism. Chr.*, 7th ser., IX (1909), 205.

dently struck over quite a long period, and maybe at varying fineness. A copper coin (pl. IV, no. 28) is also ascribed to Raymond.

Raymond was succeeded in 1149 by his son Bohemond III. To him are ascribed a series of deniers (pl. IV, no. 30) bearing the name *BOAMVNDVS* with a profile portrait similar to that on Raymond's coins in the last phase of their evolution. Their reverse inscription reads *ANTIÓCHIA*, a change in spelling which may be helpful for the classification of the anonymous copper coinage (pl. IV, no. 29; pl. V, nos. 35-36). The bare-head deniers of Bohemond continued in issue for some fourteen years, during which there was a gradual deterioration in their execution.⁴³

About 1163 the bare-head coins were replaced by a new issue whose principal feature was a profile bust wearing chain-mail and a helmet marked with a cross. The form of this helmet, with its prominent nasal, is very similar to that shown in two well-known illustrations of crusaders in action dating from about 1170, the mural in the Templar church at Cressac (Charonte) and the miniature plan of Jerusalem in a manuscript in the Royal Library, The Hague.⁴⁴ As a coin type, however, this armed bust is unprecedented.

The helmet deniers (pl. IV, no. 31; pl. V, nos. 33, 38, 39) remained in issue as an immobilized type until the 1220's. At least eight distinct issues have been noted and their relative chronology established, although their precise order is not beyond dispute.⁴⁵

Both the bare-head and the helmet deniers were accompanied by sporadic issues of minor coinage in copper or very debased billon of varying types (pl. IV, nos. 29, 32; pl. V, nos. 34-37, 40). By a misleading convention these have also been labeled deniers. It is much more likely that they were fractional pieces, *maillies* or *poignées*, forming part of a comprehensive monetary system.

King Fulk struck a plentiful coinage in his home county of Anjou.⁴⁶ His followers from France no doubt carried large numbers of deniers engravés to Palestine, where they figure prominently among the finds of Frankish coins.⁴⁷ Fulk, however, struck no coins of his own as king

43 *Ibid.* p. 248; Metcalf, "Coins of Latakia . . .," p. 413.

44 Both illustrated in Thomas S. R. Brown, *Knights and Strongholds of the Crusaders* (London, 1971), pp. 62, 63.

45 Derek F. Allen, "Coins of Antioch etc. from *Al-Jihān*," *Norw. Chr.*, 56 (1972), 200-210; Metcalf, "The Majestic Hoard of Thomas' Coins of Bohemond III of Antioch," *ANS, Museum Notes*, XVI (1972), 70-107, and "Billon Coinage of Antioch," *Ibid.*, XVI, 124; Robertus Pinner, "The ANS Hoard of Antioch Deniers," *Ibid.*, XVIII (1973), 75.

46 *Four Offsets*, op. cit., I, 294.

47 Metcalf, "Some Hoards and Story Finds . . .," p. 145. See also the essay quoted in vol-

of Jerusalem, and quite possibly struck no coins in Jerusalem at all.

If he did, there are two issues of coins which could be ascribed to him, though both are anonymous. One of these (pl. VII, no. 58) features a church steeple symbolically towering over two flanking minarets; on the other (pl. VII, no. 60) a patriarchal cross is set between two palm branches and stars. Both are scarce, but the recent discovery of a fractional *maïlle* or *obole* for each (nos. 59, 61) suggests that they were normal and regular issues and not just temporary or emergency striking. Their weight of about one gram for the deniers and some of their stylistic features suggest a fairly early date, and their provenance, where this is known, suggests that they circulated in the Latin kingdom. However, their rarity and the near-indecipherability of their inscriptions are more suggestive of the tail-end of a coinage than the beginning of one. Their placing here in the coinage of the crusades is very tentative.⁵⁰

More characteristic of the confident beginning of a new coinage by a vigorous political power are deniers and *oboles* with the obverse inscription REX BALDVINVS and the Tower of David on the reverse (nos. 41–44). These are among the most plentiful of all crusader coins, and it says much for the intractability of crusading numismatics, without documents or satisfactory hoard evidence, that it is not even certain whether they were introduced by Baldwin II or Baldwin III. The more generally held opinion is that the initiative was Baldwin II's, but it may be that they were started by Baldwin II and continued as an immobilized type through the reigns of Fulk and Baldwin III. If this second alternative proved to be the case, the anonymous coins (nos. 58–61) described in the last paragraph would probably have to be pushed further back in time, making them almost contemporary with the rare deniers of Bertrand of Tripoli (pl. VIII, no. 65).

The Baldwin coins are divided into two classes, one of coarser style (pl. VI, nos. 41, 42) and another of neater workmanship (pl. VI, nos. 43, 44) whose letter-forms incorporate many anomalies and curlicues. The very earliest deniers, of coarse workmanship, read DE IHERVSALEM instead of DE IERUSALEM on the reverse.⁵¹

note IV of the present work, is 3. Of course deniers *supra* were also struck by King Richard and carried out with the Third Crusade; see Cox, *op. cit.*, pp. 1–2.

50 Arnold Spink, "Two Rare Crusader Coins of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Numismatic Chronicle*, XCVI (1977), 104. For the *oboles* see also, "Two Crusader Oboles," *Ibid.*, CXLII (1962), 160.

51 The fullest treatment of the Baldwin deniers is in Monnet, "Coinage of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem in the Name of Baldwin," *Numism. Chron.*, 76a ser., XCVI (1976), 71. They are also discussed in Vinea, "Monumenti di numismatica dell'Oriente latino," *Atti numism.*, 6th ser., VII (1966), 30.

Amalric continued the issue of deniers and oboles, and some of his coins also have the same curious letter-forms as we find on some of the Baldwin pieces. Amalric's coins (pl. VI, nos. 45, 46) read AMALRICVS REX, on the reverse the Tower of David is replaced by a schematic representation of the church of the Holy Sepulcher. They continued as an humobilled type probably until well after Saladin's conquest of Jerusalem in 1187. It would be surprising in the light of several medieval practice if Baldwin IV had reverted to the Tower of David type of his namesake and uncle. The hoard evidence, such as it is, contradicts this idea.

The last coins of the Latin kingdom before Hattin are copper coins in the name of Guy (pl. VI, no. 49). The type is interesting; a crowned facing bust of the king on the obverse and a domed building on the reverse. Schlumberger identified this building as the Templum Domini (the Dome of the Rock), since its form is quite distinct from the church of the Holy Sepulcher as shown on the Amalricus deniers, while it approximates closely to the Dome of the Rock as it appears today and as it is represented alongside the Holy Sepulcher and the Tower of David on the reverse of the royal seals of the kings of Jerusalem.⁵³ However, the building on Guy's coin has an opening in the roof, which was a feature of the Holy Sepulcher but not of the Dome of the Rock. Representations of all these buildings are conventional rather than realistic, and the Holy Sepulcher in particular is shown in a wide variety of forms in documents of the period. The assumption must be that the building more sacred to the crusaders was intended in this instance.⁵⁴

It has usually been assumed that the mint for the coinage of the kingdom was at Jerusalem itself. Yet the existence of two quite distinct styles for the Baldwin deniers points to the possibility of two mints.⁵⁵ Acre and Tyre have been proposed in place of the capital, but the question is still quite open. More recently Beirut has also been suggested as the possible mint of an enigmatic late-twelfth-century issue of anonymous copper coins which bear the inscription TVRRIS DAVIT and were once attributed to the siege of Jerusalem in 1187 (pl. VI, no. 48).⁵⁶ These coins, which have the Tower of David on the obverse and an eight-

⁵³ Schlumberger, *Failliment Châlonnais*, and *Adrien Mesnard, Epigraphie de l'Orient latin* (Paris, 1902), p. 2.

⁵⁴ I am indebted to the Rev. John Williams for this observation.

⁵⁵ This question is discussed in Mesnard, "Coinage of the Latin Kingdom," loc. cit.

⁵⁶ Christopher Salama, "The Beirut Denier Coinage and the Regency of Raymond III of Tripoli (1184-86)," *Norw. Num. Obs.*, 7th ser., XV:2 (1976), 21.

pointed star on the reverse, show characteristics of both Tripoli and the Latin kingdom.

The most extraordinary of all the coins of Jerusalem (if coins they be) are gold pieces struck in the names of Baldwin and Amalric,¹⁴ and possibly even Fulk. They do not fit into the neat pattern of typically Frankish coinage of the second phase. Indeed they fit into no normal numismatic pattern whatsoever, since they survive only in fragmentary form.

A reconstruction of the fragments, some of which are segmental while others are irregularly shaped bits, points to coins of about the size of a dinar. One side has a hexagram and the legend CIVITATIS : HIERUSALEM; another side has a star device and the legend + SIGNVM BALDWINI REGIS. There are variant inscriptions, one of which seems to include the name AMALRICVS, while another suggests FYLCONIS. This is the only gold which bears the name of a crusading ruler or principality. The practice of cutting up coins in order to make fractional values was not abnormal elsewhere in the twelfth century, but this is the only instance in which the complete pieces do not survive. We may speculate whether they were struck specifically in order to be cut up, and if so, why. As the fragments have almost always been found in groups, it is unlikely that they were intended for scattering as alms.

The twelfth-century coinage of Tripoli was less prolific and less rich than that of Antioch or Jerusalem. It was, as we have seen, exceptional in its early beginnings with the scanty coinage of count Bertrand. Thereafter there was no identifiable coinage for thirty years. Even then, when Jerusalem and Antioch began their heavy coinages of silver, Raymond of Tripoli (we cannot even be sure whether it was Raymond II or Raymond III) made only sporadic issues of small copper and very debased billon coins (nos. 67-69). Only one issue of reasonably fine deniers (no. 70) appears to have been made before 1187, and that was by no means plentiful.

The principal characteristics of the Tripolitan coinage are the large number of anonymous issues and the heavy Provençal influence in the choice of designs. What appears to be the earliest coin of Raymond of Tripoli, a copper *poingreue* (perhaps) of very erratic weight (pl. VIII,

14 J. D. Beady, "A Firm Attribution of Late Gold Coinage to Twelfth-Century Jerusalem," *ANS, Museum Notes*, XCII (1978), 113. This covers only some of the fragments, of which more have since become available. A good selection is in the collection of the American Numismatic Society, New York.

no. 67), has a short cross pattée with an arrowhead at each end of the cross; a cross resembling this was adopted for the arms of the count of Toulouse. Another early piece (pl. VIII, no. 68), of very debased billon or copper, has on it a paschal lamb with a processional cross. This type was first used by Alfonso Jordan on coins which he struck as count of St. Gilles (1112-1148);⁵⁷ a similar coin of Alfonso Jordan's successor Raymond V (1141-1194) has been found near Tripoli.⁵⁸ Finally, the type of the crescent moon and star (no. 69, pl. VIII, no. 70), which was to become the Tripolitan type par excellence and was used for the only good deniers of Raymond III, was closely related to deniers struck by Raymond V of Toulouse and St. Gilles for his marquisate of Provence.⁵⁹ The confusing duplication of names as of colotypes is itself a measure of the continuing relationship between Tripoli and the Midi.

One more design commonly found on the coins of Tripoli is the city gate or castle. This, which is not unlike the Tower of David but has a door in it, was presumably derived from the count's seal, which in common with the seals of many other barons had a representation of a tower on the reverse.⁶⁰

The castle count (pl. IX, nos. 73, 75) are all anonymous, as also are some of the crescent and star coins (pl. VIII, no. 72). It has been assumed that these must have been struck during one of the periods when the count was in captivity, and Raymond III's long imprisonment from 1164 to 1171 is especially cited as their probable date of issue. Probably those years, when there were heavy losses at Jerusalem and Antioch, were also a period of mining activity at Tripoli, but there is no reason especially to associate the anonymous issues with Raymond's absence. Anonymous coinage was commonplace in the Levant as in the west in the twelfth century, and in an age of immobilized types, when even the death of a ruler did not necessitate the removal of his name from the coinage, still less need his name be removed because he was confined in a Saracen prison.

In the years before Saladin's conquest only one baron of the Latin kingdom, the lord of Sidon, appears to have struck a coinage of his own. There are some rare deniers rather doubtfully attributed to Gerard (fl. 1153-1164) (pl. XI, no. 94). More certainly attributable are almost equally scarce deniers of his son Reginald (pl. XI, no. 95), which

57. *Prosp. Orient.*, op. cit., II, 253.

58. The coin cited, no. 37189 is in the Blandin's collection.

59. *Prosp.*, II, 253.

60. Schumacher *et al.*, *Styllographie*, p. 56.

bear his name RENAIDVS and a castle on one side, an arrow on the other. The castle doubtless derived from Regnald's seal;⁸¹ the arrow was a canting symbol devised for Sadon (Saitte – *segetia*). These coins probably date from before Hattin, since Regnald lost his barony in the same campaign as Guy of Lusignan lost his kingdom. However, he was subsequently regranted part of his fief by Saladin, and his coins therefore may possibly date from the obscure period which elapsed between this recovery and his death about 1204. Whichever date is correct, and whether he usurped or was granted the right of coinage, his action shows how the barons were encroaching upon the royal power in those years; yet the fact that his was the only baronial mint to be established so early shows in a sense how respected the regalian right still was, in spite of the incapable hands in which it rested for much of the time.

A list of barons allegedly enjoying minting rights was compiled by Schlumberger.⁸² This was based upon a misreading of the *Assises*, which were in any case too late to be a reliable authority. The right of coin referred to in that document was the right to the use of a lead seal, not the right to a mint.

THE THIRD PHASE

Saladin's conquest of Jerusalem, by taking away so much of the territory of the Latin states, profoundly altered their economy. Thereafter they appear as precarious but wealthy maritime communities, necessarily concentrating on commerce but engaged also in some industry and specialized agriculture. They enjoyed a final hectic prosperity during the years of political détente with Saladin's successors, until the approach of the Mongols ruined the commerce of the hinterland on which they depended economically, and the rising power of the Mamluks extinguished them altogether.

Their prosperity was an extension of the increasing economic activity of the whole of Latin Christendom. In this expansion the lead was taken by Italy, and in no field so obviously as that of monetary change and development.⁸³ The old quasi-imperial coinages of north-

⁸¹ *Ibid.*, p. 57.

⁸² Schlumberger, *Manuscrits*, p. 108. The argument that Schlumberger was mistaken in this was first advanced by René Chénou de Bréville, "Le Droit de coin dans le royaume de Jérusalem," *Syria*, XXXII (1942-1943), 244-257.

⁸³ For thirteenth-century coinage in Europe see Grierson, *Monnaie de moyen Age*, pp. 125-204, and Parham, *Coin in History*, pp. 63-101.

ern Italy declined in importance as mining rights were granted to the communes, among them Genoa in 1139 and Pisa in the reign of Frederick Barbarossa. The coinage of Venice in particular grew in scope and importance, and in 1201 Enrico Dandolo introduced the silver *grossi* of 24 denarii in order to facilitate the heavy payments for material and wages which the republic was making in the course of fitting out the Fourth Crusade.⁴⁴ A monetary development which was crucial to the advance of the commercial revolution in Europe was thus directly linked to the history of the crusades.

Within a few years many other Italian communes, Genoa, Pisa, and Ancona among them, followed Venice's lead in the issue of larger-multiple coins. Finally in 1252 Genoa and Florence began to mint gold,⁴⁵ a sign that the eastward flow of silver which had marked the earlier phase of the crusades was now matched by a counterflow of gold.

The principal characteristic of French coinage during the same period was the increasing extension of the royal money at the expense of the feudal, a change which was largely brought about by the policy of Philip Augustus; it was in Philip's royal currency, the *livre tournois*, that major financial business was transacted during the Third Crusade. Not all the feudal coinages were eclipsed, however, and those which survived were, if anything, more plentiful and more vigorous than before. Among them were those of some notable crusaders: the Poitevin and Aquitanian deniers of king Richard I,⁴⁶ the deniers of Provins and Troyes struck by count Henry of Champagne and his successors,⁴⁷ the coins of Hugh IV, duke of Burgundy,⁴⁸ and those of Hervey of Donz, count of Nevers.⁴⁹ The coins of Provins and Troyes, which were the currency in which the business of the Champagne fairs was transacted, would have enjoyed a wide circulation in any case, but the abundance of the others may well be connected with the financing of crusading expeditions.

44. H. Papadopoulos, *Le Monnaie de Venise* (Paris, 1895), I, 81, see also Donald E. Queller "A Note on the Re-organization of the Venetian Coinage by Doge Enrico Dandolo," *Antique Numismatic Monographs*, LXXVII (1975), 167-172.

45. Roberto S. Lopez, *Settlements made in 2 rhinets all' oro nel secolo decimoquinto* (Naples, 1915), and "Back to Gold, 1252," *Economic History Review*, 2nd ser., IX (1958-1959), 227-228.

46. L. M. Howden, *Anglo-Gallo Coins* (London, 1936), p. 2.

47. *Frays d'Henri*, *op. cit.*, III, 262-252.

48. *Ibid.*, III, 286.

49. *Ibid.*, I, 284. The correspondence between those who struck feudal coins in France and those who minted on the Third and Fifth Crusades is traced in Cox, *op. cit.* For the German coins that were taken on the Third Crusade see note 36. Two notable German crusaders whose coins are present in the Barbarossa hoard are the emperor Frederick himself as iudex Geoffrey of Würzburg.

The introduction of heavy silver and gold coinage in France was the work of Louis IX, who in 1266 instituted the silver *gros tournois* and the gold *écu*.⁷⁰ Louis's monetary reform illustrates the curious interaction of the Latin states with France in monetary matters, since about the same time Bohemond VI of Tripoli and Antioch introduced a silver *gros* of the same weight and fineness as the *gros tournois*. The appearance of the *gros tournois*, with its concentric circles of inscription, also seems to derive from that of coins circulating in the east with which Louis and his crusading companions would have been familiar.

The counterpart of these important monetary changes in the west was the reappearance of silver coinage and the relative decline of gold in the east.⁷¹ This was heralded by Saladin's resumption of silver coinage at Damascus in 1174-1175.⁷² The Selchūkids (Seljuks) of Rūm took it up in 1183-1186,⁷³ and the Christian kings of Cilician Armenia some fifteen years later.⁷⁴ The Nicaean coinage of Theodore Lascaris (1202-1222) was predominantly silver,⁷⁵ while that of Trebizond was exclusively so from the reign of Manuel I (1234-1263).⁷⁶ Only in Egypt did the older pattern persist, with a plentiful coinage of gold *dinars* and little else until the end of the Ayyūbid dynasty in 1252.⁷⁷

Quite apart therefore from the political upheaval caused by Saladin's conquest, important changes were to be expected in the currency of the Latin states. Nevertheless, for a few years the coinages of Antioch and Tripoli at least continued with little alteration. Both principalities persisted with their "immobilized" coinages, Antioch with the helmet deniers and Tripoli with the star deniers. On the latter the barely perceptible substitution of RAMYNDVS (pl. IX, no. 74) for RAMYNDVS (pl. VIII, no. 71) marked Bohemond of Antioch's assumption of power soon after the death of Raymond III in 1187. De-

70. Blanchet and A. Dénoulet, *Manuel de numismatique française* (Paris, 1916), II (by Dénoulet), 165, 167-125.

71. Watson, *op. cit.*, pp. 2-4.

72. Paul Hing, *The Coinage of the Ayyūbids* (London, 1902), p. 36.

73. Stanley Lane-Poole, *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum* (London, 1877), III, no. 92.

74. Paul Z. Bobrowska, *Coinage of Cilician Armenia* (JANU, 1904), no. 147, New York, 1942), pp. 16, 58.

75. Houbert, *op. cit.*, p. 226.

76. Otto Rosenfeld, *Die Münzen der Kaiser von Trapezunt* (published with an introduction by W. Hahn, Braunschweig, 1904).

77. Andrew S. Elvick, "The Significance of Fineness of Gold Coins Circulating in Egypt at the Time of the Crusades," *Journal of the American Numismatic Society*, LXXXIV (1914), 162-166.

niens of Bohemond, as later abbreviated to BAMYNIY (pl. IX, no. 76), are the most abundant of all Tripolitan issues. As some of the later helmet deniers of Antioch are also among the commoner varieties of that common type, it seems that both coinages were issued with renewed vigor after 1200. At Antioch an issue of helmet deniers in the name of Raymond Roupen (pl. V, no. 38) signals the years of his control there from 1216 to 1219.

In the kingdom of Jerusalem, Saladin's conquest and the removal of king Guy temporarily destroyed the juridical basis on which the coinage had been produced until then. Gradually, however, the kingdom was reconstituted; the extent to which the royal coinage too was reconstituted depends upon the interpretation which is put upon the Holy Sepulcher deniers in the name of Amalricus (pl. VII, no. 52).

We have seen that these coins probably continued in issue as an immobilized type through the reigns of Baldwin IV and Baldwin V. It is reasonable to suppose that, like the helmet deniers of Antioch, they continued still longer, possibly until the 1220's. The best argument for this is that hoards deposited in the 1220's contain large numbers of them.⁷¹ The theory is also supported by the fact that certain coins of John of Brienne (pl. VII, no. 55) are of the same type.

Apart from the Holy Sepulcher deniers, the coins of the Latin kingdom struck after 1187 are rather scanty. Some are anonymous. At one time it was argued that the TVRRIS DAVIT coppers (pl. VI, no. 48) were siege pieces struck at Jerusalem after Hattin but before Saladin took the city, but it has been pointed out that they were struck over a longer period than that theory would allow.⁷² They do appear, however, to have been struck somewhere in the Latin kingdom in the closing years of the twelfth century, as does an anonymous billon denier (pl. VI, no. 47) with a patriarchal cross on the obverse which reads MONETA REGIS and REX IERUS. The ascription of this one, however, to the crusaders' encampment before Acre, when the kingdom was in dispute between Guy of Lusignan and Conrad of Montfermat, is possibly too fanciful.⁷³ Anonymous coinage at this period is not so exceptional that we must necessarily ascribe it to a time of political vacuum. It is probably safer to assume that, when political conditions were critically uncertain, no coins were issued at all.⁷⁴

71. H. Longuet, "La Trésoire de Kamis en Orient latin," *Rev. numm.*, 48 ser., XXXVII (1935), 102-103. See also the table in Weiss, "Monnaies et monies," p. 70.

72. Saladin, "The Tower David Coinage," p. 70.

73. Schickelmeier, *Monnumismat.*, p. 70.

74. For the siege of Jerusalem it must be affirmed that the account of Errol (JRG, *Chr.*,

The first coins which can be given a definite place in the renaissant kingdom are copper *poitevins* in the name of Henry of Champagne (pl. VI, nos. 50, 51). These show his modest feudal title, COMES HENRICVS, and, exceptionally for Frankish coins,¹² the denomination and the mint, PVGES D'ACCON. Two issues are extant, a fairly plentiful one with fleur de lis reverse (pl. VI, no. 50) and a rare one, represented now by a single specimen, with a hexagram in place of the fleur (pl. VI, no. 51). Both of these motifs are found on the French feudal coinage, but neither, curiously enough, in Henry's own county of Champagne.¹³

There are three issues of coins in the name of John of Brienne (nos. 53-55), the last coins struck for the Latin kingdom in the king's name. All are exceptional in one way or another. Two of John's issues are datable. These are billon deniers with a crowned facing bust and the prominent mint name of Damietta (pl. VII, nos. 53, 54). John occupied Damietta in 1219. He was at pains to assert his regalian rights there against the papal legate, Pelagius, and his authorization of these coins probably had as much to do with that struggle as with economic requirements. Nevertheless, the coins would have been useful for paying an army which had been campaigning in the Nile delta for eighteen months, and the bullion for them presumably came from the captured city.

The other coin of John (pl. VII, no. 55) has no mint-name, and the type is the conventional Holy Sepulcher of the Amalricus deniers. The importance of this piece lies in its weight, which at 2.70 grams is about three times that of the average denier. Fortunately another and even rarer coin (pl. VII, no. 56) of the same type and weight (but without John's name) gives us the denomination. This coin was a *drengem* or *dirhem*, in one sense a forerunner of the dirhems that were to be struck at Acre with Arabic inscriptions, but in another sense the first silver

12. It is both specific and circumstantial: Bullion of Brillon and the pariah, and in concert, ordered that the Holy Sepulcher be stripped of its silver covering and that this silver be issued for payment to the knights and engineers defending the city. See also, "Thomastown: homography of the Tower of David and the Holy Sepulcher," *Numism. Chm.*, VII ser., XIX (1979), 128, marshals the arguments for regarding an identifiable and separate series of coins as the case, but his article, although informative on the homography of the coins in question (no. 62), falls short of proving the case. There is no reason to suppose that special coins were struck, indeed, the authorities might be thought to have had other preoccupations than the designing of a new coinage, and it is more likely that the mint was asked with some that it was already equipped to make, namely Amalricus deniers. However, either way, it is correct to reflect that some of these coins may be made of silver taken from the very movement that figures on the reverse.

13. Not so at all exceptional for Arabic coins.

14. The hexagram (type of David) coin is published by Jones, "Two Rare Crusader Coins," p. 102, who also discusses the origin of the marks of both coins.

grosso of the Latin Orient. It was struck only some ten or fifteen years after Enrico Dandolo's Venetian grosso, and antedated almost every other such coin in Italy.

A curious parallel to John's *gheros*, unpublished until now, is found in the coinage of Tripoli. This is a coin of the BAMVND' star type (pl. IX, no. 77), of fine silver and probably weighing, when struck,¹² something over two grams, or about the same as a Venetian grosso. This coin cannot be dated surely within twenty years, but a date before rather than after 1240 seems likely. Wherever it is finally put, it confirms the view that the late "economic" phase of the Latin states was a time for monetary experiment.

It has sometimes been maintained that in the years after 1187 the regular rights of the kings of Jerusalem were much weakened and that the "Livre au Roi",¹³ which appeared to reassert those rights, was in fact expressing a nostalgic yearning for conditions which were gone for good.¹⁴ One reason given for this is the proliferation of baronial coinage in these years. The evidence does not support this argument. There was no wholesale usurpation of the royal monopoly of minting. A strict examination of the baronial coins reduces the number of issuing baronies to three—Beirut, Tyre, and Sidon.

The coinage of Beirut (nos. 84–88) consists of deniers in the name of John of Ibelin and anonymous copper pieces which, to judge from their appearance, are probably contemporary.¹⁵ The obverse type of all of them is a castle or city gate, doubtless taken, like the similar type for Reginald of Sidon and the counts of Tripoli, from the lord's seal.¹⁶ John's coinage was no brief emergency issue: there are two distinct deniers with minor varieties of each, and they are at least as well minted as any other coins of the Latin kingdom. It is an attractive theory to associate this coinage with John's dispute with the emperor Frederick, but deniers of both types are found in the Kassab and Tripoli hoards, both of which are associated with the Fifth Crusade, and

¹² The only known surviving coin, which is in the author's collection, is badly clipped. It weighs 1.96 grams, but an original weight of 2.00–2.20 grams is a fair estimate.

¹³ *Livre au Roi*, vol. CHANC. Lat., I, 617). The passage reads, "qui livre au dñe aver pœr, excommunié au comte labourant, dñe il robe, par droit au par l'assise." The minting of coins was a crime punishable by loss of life.

¹⁴ For a statement of this point of view see Jonathan Riley-Smith, *The Feudal Nobility and the Kingdom of Jerusalem 1174–1277* (London, 1972), p. 147.

¹⁵ But this was not Schliemann's judgment; see *Münchener Zeits.*, p. 118 Nos. 84, 85, and 86 are shown on pl. X.

¹⁶ Schliemann et al., *Sigillographie*, p. 40.

are thought to have been deposited about 1221.⁸⁹ Surprisingly, therefore, since John of Brienne was a strong king who knew his rights and his relations with John of Ibelin were not bad, this coinage seems to have begun and maybe ended some years before the lord of Beirut became heavily engaged in constitutional disputes with his suzerain. Whatever the cause of its issue, the Beirut coinage was not continued by John's successors.

The coinage of Tyre is all very late. Philip of Montfort was granted the lordship in 1246 by Henry I of Cyprus acting as regent of the kingdom; Philip was succeeded by his son John in 1270. By the time Philip was invested with Tyre, the lordship accounted for half the total area of the Latin kingdom, and the king's regalian rights were indeed of less account than they once were.

Two issues of coins are known for Philip (pl. X, nos. 89, 90) and two for John (pl. X, nos. 91, 92), all rare and rather ill-struck in copper.⁹⁰ Three of them feature a porch with columns. At first sight this appears to be a throwback to an early Frankish coinage type, the so-called temple type of Charlemagne.⁹¹ In practice it is more likely that the building shown is the edicule of the Holy Sepulcher as restored in 1048.⁹²

The most extensive, and also the most puzzling, of the baronial coinages is that of Sidon (pl. XI, nos. 93-99). It is not plentiful, but it comprises several different types, most of which are difficult to date. As we have seen, Sidon's coinage started early, but after Saladin's conquest Reginald's coinage probably ceased, and the city was not recovered by the Franks until 1227. Reginald's heir, Balian, was closely associated with the royal government, he was appointed one of Frederick's lieutenants in 1229, and held that position either alone or jointly until his death ten years later. At first he occupied a central position politically, mediating between Frederick and John of Ibe-

89. See Lequeval, *op. cit.*, p. 175, and Cox, *op. cit.*, p. 35. There was no coin certainly struck in the Latin states in the years 1220-1230 that it would be possible to give a post-1225 date to both issues, if that were necessary. However, the problem of seven coins of Henry I of Cyprus (1218-1237) in Kessab, and those obtained from Tripoli, argues against the latter date for Tripoli. It should be accepted therefore that the Sidon coinage dates from the reign of John of Brienne.

90. The coins of Tyre are reclassified by A. John Salmon, "Saint-Croix Crusade," *Society's Numismatic Chronicle*, LXXIV (1964), 44.

91. For a discussion of this type see Grierson, "Money and Coinage under Charlemagne," in *Karl der Grosse. I. Historische Mitteilungen und Geschichte* (ed. W. Braunfels et al., Düsseldorf, 1965), p. 119.

92. J. Wilkinson, "The Tomb of Christ: an Outline of its Sacred History," *Livest*, IV (1972), 41-42.

lan's baronial party, but after 1235 he threw in his lot with his peers.

For some years after Balian's death his widow Margaret seems to have exercised authority in Sidon. In the only contemporary account of the coinage of Sidon, Joinville⁹³ refers to it as the lady Margaret's currency. Her son Julian is credited with little political ambition. After he assumed control he found that the lordship's revenues were not enough to support its feudal obligations, and he turned Sidon over to the Templars in 1260.

It is probably safe to assume that the currency to which Joinville referred, in which Louis made his offering at the tomb of Walter of Brienne in Sidon in 1252, was the coinage of anonymous deniers of reasonably good billon which read D E N I E R D E S S E E T E and show an unidentified domed building on the reverse (pl. XI, no. 99). These are the only coins of Sidon plentiful enough to warrant Joinville's description of them as a proper currency, the only ones also which are fit for a king's offering.

From this it may be deduced that all the other coins (nos. 93-96) of Sidon are of poor quality. They survive for the most part in such bad condition, and their legends are so garbled, that we can identify them as from Sidon only by the arrow, which first figured on the coins of Reginald. The persistence of this device owes less to continuity than to the apathy of the pun on the city's name.

All conclusions about the coinage of Sidon must be tentative. It is unlikely that Balian would have resumed coinage in defiance of Frederick's regalian rights as long as he was actually a royal official giving even half-hearted support to Frederick's policies. It is unlikely therefore that any of these later Sidon coins were struck before about 1235. The appearance of the good billon deniers, which in fabric are rather like coins struck by Frederick himself in Sicily, is consistent with their having been minted some time during the two decades 1235-1255. The poor-quality arrow coins and the related issues may be subsidiary pieces dating from the same time, but they are more likely later, the monetary expression of Julian's financial difficulties.

The modest coinages of Beirut, Tyre, and Sidon comprise the whole story of baronial minting in the Latin kingdom. The attribution of coins to Ibelin stems from a misreading of certain Montfort coins of Tyre.⁹⁴ A coin is published (pl. VII, no. 63) for the mint of Jaffa,⁹⁵ but since it is anonymous and Jaffa was intermittently in the hands

93. *John of Joinville, Mémoires*, ed. François Michel (Paris, 1858) p. 140.

94. Schreier, *op. cit.* p. 61.

95. Schreier, *Numismatique*, p. 116.

of the crown, this must be assumed to be a royal issue until proved otherwise. The myth of a more substantial baronial coinage originated partly from these misattributions, but chiefly from Schlumberger's misinterpretation of the *Ausages of Jerusalem* and the long list of potential baronial mints which consequently appeared in his standard work on the subject.

Nevertheless, if the baronial coinages of the Latin kingdom in the thirteenth century seem scanty, they should be seen against a background of royal and princely coinage that is far from plentiful. There are no coins of the Latin kingdom in the name of Frederick or of his son Conrad, though Sicilian coins of both of them are common, many bearing the title of king of Jerusalem;⁹⁶ and these, to judge from thirteenth-century finds, began to play a significant part in the monetary circulation of the Latin states at this epoch.⁹⁷ The most important coinages minted at this time in Palestine were the coins with Arabic inscriptions struck at Acre. There are no coins of Antioch which can be said with certainty to come after the last of the helmet deniers, which date from not much after 1230.

At this late stage most of the circulating medium in what remained of the Latin states was provided from abroad. The increasing importance of Sicilian coinage in the area has already been mentioned. Among Italian coinages, those of Genoa and Venice were also much in evidence. The crusades of the brother and son successively of Henry III of England were the probable cause of the transfer of Henry's fine silver pence to the area in fair numbers. Even the new coinage of Portugal, which was a sort of call for crusaders coming by sea from northern Europe, found its way into the local circulation. Less surprisingly, the coins of Cyprus were introduced in increasing quantity. Almost no country of western Christendom goes quite unrepresented in the stray finds of coins of this period in the Latin east, but still France predominates, as it did from the time of the First Crusade.⁹⁸

Yet the mints of the Latin states could still display surprising originality. One example of this is an anonymous gold dinar (pl. VII, no. 57) showing the Agnus Dei and an appropriate Latin inscription. Since the coin is not only anonymous, but also carries no indication of where it was minted, it is only because of the oriental provenance of the few surviving specimens that it can be attributed to the Latin states at all.⁹⁹

⁹⁶ *Saraceni*, *op. cit.* V, 38, 39.

⁹⁷ *Ibidem*, "Some Hoards and Stray Finds," p. 148.

⁹⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 142-148.

⁹⁹ This coin was published by Grieco, "A Rare Crusader Dinar with the Christ Victor

It was probably struck during the reaction against Arabic inscriptions and Islamic professions of faith on the coinage which took place after the visitation of Odo of Châteauroux and the ensuing strictures of Innocent IV.¹⁰⁰

The most vigorous revival of minting activity in these latter days of the crusading states occurred at Tripoli. After the plentiful issues of *BAMYNIVS* deniers (pl. IX, nos. 74, 76) and the solitary *dirhem/gros* (pl. IX, no. 77) mentioned above, almost nothing was minted at Tripoli except possibly some anonymous pieces with garbled legends (no. 64) and some rare and debased deniers (no. 78, pl. IX, no. 79) whose late date is indicated by their French inscriptions. Then one of the last two counts, probably Bohemond VI, introduced a substantial *gros* of fine silver weighing 4.30 grams (pl. IX, no. 80). The first issue of these coins was of entirely traditional Tripolitan type, with an eight-pointed star as the main feature of the reverse. On a second issue (pl. IX, no. 82), by Bohemond VII certainly (the regnal number is stated, for once), the star was replaced by a handsome castle.

The significance of these coins is that the *gros* was of exactly the same weight as the French *gros tournois*. The normal presumption would be that the greater prince influenced the lesser in a matter such as this, and that the Tripolitan coin was first issued some time after Louis's reform of 1266. This is still probable. However, the Tripolitan money differed from the French in that each issue was accompanied by an identical coin of half its weight (2.10 grams) (pl. IX, nos. 81, 83). We have seen that a coin of this weight, equal to that of a Venetian *grossa*, was struck at Tripoli some years earlier (pl. IX, no. 77). Some of the initiative therefore certainly lay with the counts of Tripoli, and, once that point is granted, the possibility has to be taken seriously that the larger Tripolitan *gros* was the prototype for the *gros tournois* and not vice versa. This would involve counting the smaller coin as the *gros* and valuing the larger one as a double *gros*, a reversal of the conventional position.¹⁰¹

So far as coinage is concerned, Tripoli is the only one of the Latin

Expanded," *ANS, Medieval Money*, VI (1954), 169-172, and it was reconsidered by Peck, "Medieval money," pp. 89-91.

100 See chapter XI, below.

101 It is a modern idea to classify all these denominations as "double" or "half". Medieval practice was to refer to a certain value as money of account, such as *gros* of 8 deniers or *gros* of 12 deniers. Even so, the medieval mind might work by progression, either from the larger coin to the smaller or from the smaller to the larger. The history of the Tripolitan coinage suggests that this might with the smaller *gros* and proceeded to the larger. The French on the other hand started with the *gros tournois* and did not produce a smaller *gros* until some twenty years later.

states which went down with its colors flying. The Aleppo hoard, which is thought to consist largely of booty carried off from the sack of Acre, was made up entirely of gold coins from western Christendom. Monetarily speaking, Acre at the close was a Frankish outpost and nothing more. But the castle coins of Bohemond VII, whose design, the castle and the cross, is so traditional to crusader coinage and so symbolic of crusading life, are among the finest of all the coins ever struck by the Franks in Syria and Palestine. They are also the last. Part of their beauty today lies in the fact that they mostly survive in fine condition. They were not in circulation for long before Tripoli surrendered to the onslaught of the Mamluks.

CORPUS OF COINS

County of Edessa

BALDWIN I (1098-1100) or BALDWIN II (1100-1104)

1. *Æ* (P I)

Obv. Bust of Christ facing, between IC XC.

Rev. Jeweled cross on two steps, Φ A Δ H in angles.

6.5-8.7 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 177, Schlumberger 20 (pl. I, 5).

BALDWIN II (1100-1104)

2. *Æ* (P I)

Obv. Bust of Christ facing

Rev. Long cross on two steps, the arms flanked by two pellets,
X B B K in angles.

7.2 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 178

RICHARD OF THE PRINCIPATE, regent (1104-1108)

3. *Æ* (P I)

Obv. Bust of Christ facing, between IC XC, within beaded outer circle.

Rev. K ϵ | BOHO | PKAP | Δ Δ in four lines across the field, within beaded outer circle.

4.5-8.3 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 178, Schlumberger (pl. II, 2).

4. *Æ* (P I)

Obv. Broad jeweled cross potent, within beaded outer circle. No inscription.

Rev. K ϵ | BOHO | PKAP | Δ Δ in four lines across the field, within beaded outer circle.

4.6-7.6 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 178, Schlumberger (pl. II, I).

5. *Æ* (Pl. I)

Obv. Bust of Christ facing, between IC XC, within outer circle.

Rev. Short cross within inner circle; ΚΘΣΠΗΚΑΡΑ in outer circle.

5.0-7.0 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 179.

RICHARD OF THE PRINCIPATE, regent, or BALDWIN II (ca 1106)

6. *Æ* (Pl. II)

Obv. Armed man standing to left, holding a drawn sword before his face and a long shield behind him, all within outer circle. No inscription.

Rev. Patriarchal cross within outer circle, large pellets in the middle angles of the cross; two arcs ending in trefoils springing from the outer circle and ending in the lower angles. No inscription.

6.3-10.2 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 179; Schlumberger 18 (pl. I, 1 & 2).

BALDWIN II, restored (1106-1115)

7. *Æ* (Pl. II)

Obv. Broad jeweled cross potent, within outer circle. No inscription.

Rev. ΒΑΛΔ | ΟΥΙΝΟ | ΚΟΜΗ (or variant) in lines across the field, within outer circle.

4.6-9.3 g.

Numb. Chr., 7-XV (1975), 180; Schlumberger 19 (pl. I, 3 & 4).

8. *Æ* (Pl. II)

Obv. Armed man walking to left, holding up a small cross in his right hand and with his left hand on the hilt of his sword, ΒΑΓΔΟΥΙΝΟCΑΟ ΚΑΟΤΥ, all within outer circle.

Rev. Long cross fleury standing on floriate base, pellet in each angle of the cross, all within outer circle. No inscription.

3.2-4.2 g.

Schlumberger 21 (pl. I, 7).

9. *Æ* (Pl. II)

Obv. Armed man walking to left, as no. 8. Inscription placed irregularly in the field reading downward. ΒΑΓ before the figure, ΑΟΥΙΝ behind it.

Rev. Cross fleury standing on floriate base; usually a pellet in each angle of the cross and a pellet at each end. No inscription.

2.4-4.6 g.

Schlumberger 21 (pl. I, 8 & 9).

10. *Æ* (Pl. II)

Obv. Armed man standing facing, holding a long cross in his right hand and resting his left on a patterned shield. Inscription reading downward: BAFA to left of the figure, M to right.

Rev. Short cross, B A & M, each letter placed at one end of the cross.

2.3–4.9 g

Schlumberger 21 (pl. I, 10 & 11).

11. *Æ* (Pl. II)

Obv. Armed man standing facing, with a drawn sword in his right hand and a long cross in his left. Inscription above the figure in the field: A, all within outer circle
A N

Rev. Bust of Christ facing, between IC XC

2.4–3.8 g

Schlumberger 22 (pl. I, 12).

12. Billon (Pl. II)

Obv. Short cross patée with forked left arm and a pellet at each of the other ends, all within inner circle. + CTAVPOCHKA within outer circle.

Rev. + BA | FAOY | UNXO | MN (or variant) in four lines across the field, within outer circle

0.9–5.4 g. This exceptional weight range may comprise two distinct denominations, one in the range 1.0–2.0 g and the other in the range 3.5–5.5 g.

Rev. numis. 3-XV (1897), 333.

Edessa or Antioch

BALDWIN II, king of Jerusalem (1118–1131)

13. Billon (Pl. II)

Obv. + | BAAΔ | OYINOC | ΔACTO | THC.

Rev. Long cross IC XC NS KA in angles.

2.38 g. (broken).

Numis. Chr., 7-XIX (1979), 138.

Principality of Antioch

BOHEMOND I (1098-1100, 1102-1104)

14. AE (Pl. III)

Obv. Nimbate bust of St. Peter facing, holding a long cross over his left shoulder. Vertical inscription in field: ^T P to left of bust, ^Q Π ^E to right, all within beaded outer circle.

Rev. Long cross fleury standing on floriate base, B H M T in angles, all within beaded outer circle.

3.3-5.4 g

Schlumberger 43 (pl. II, 4).

BOHEMOND I (1098-1100, 1102-1104) or BOHEMOND II (1119-1130)

15. AE (Pl. III)

Obv. Nimbate bust of St. Peter facing, holding long cross, jeweled at the ends, over his right shoulder, Θ to left, all within beaded outer circle.

Rev. ΔΘΥ | ΝΟΥ | ΣΕΡΥΥ | ΧΡ in four lines across the field, in beaded outer circle.

3.78 g

One specimen in private collection.

TANCRED, regent (1100-1102, 1104-1112)

16. AE (Pl. III)

Obv. Nimbate bust of St. Peter facing, holding long cross over his left shoulder. Inscription in field: ^Q Π E to left, ^T Θ C to right of bust; all within beaded outer circle.

Rev. + | ΚΕΒΟΗ | ΘΗΤΟΔΥ | ΑΟΟΟΥΤ | ΑΝΚΗ | + in six lines across the field, within beaded outer circle.

1.9-6.5 g. A piece weighing 2.55 g. is struck on a scyphate flan Schlumberger 44 (pl. II, 6).

17. AE (Pl. III)

Obv. Facing bust of Tancred, bearded, wearing a helmet topped with a jeweled cross and holding a drawn sword over his right shoulder. ΚΕΒΟΗ ΤΑΝΚΡΕ (or ΚΕ ΒΟΗΗ ΤΟC ΑΘΥΑΘΗ ΤΑΝ, or variant), all within beaded outer circle.

Rev. Long cross pomme standing on floriate base. ΙC ΧC ΝΙ ΚΑ in angles, all within one or two beaded outer circles.

1.8-9.2 g.

Schlumberger 45 (pl. II, 7).

18. *Æ* (Pl. III)

Obv. St. Peter nimble, standing, his right hand in benediction, his left holding a processional cross. Vertical inscription: $\overline{\text{PM}}$ to left of figure, $\overline{\text{TPV}}$ to right; all within beaded outer circle.

Rev. Long cross, $\overline{\text{DSFF}}$ in angles, all within beaded outer circle. 2.6-4.3 g.

Schlumberger (pl. V, I).

19. *Æ* (Pl. III)

Obv. Bust of Christ facing, between $\overline{\text{K}}$ $\overline{\text{X}}$ within outer circle.

Rev. Long cross pommée on floriate base, $\overline{\text{TA NK FH}}$ in angles, all within outer circle.

1.9-3.7 g.

Schlumberger 45-46 (pl. II, 8).

ROGER OF SALERNO (1112-1119)

20. *Æ* (Pl. III)

Obv. The Virgin Mary crans, wearing a jeweled mantle, $\overline{\text{MH}}$ $\overline{\text{OP}}$ by her head.

Rev. + | $\overline{\text{KBOH}}$ | $\overline{\text{STACM}}$ | $\overline{\text{AOYALP}}$ | $\overline{\text{OTHPID}}$ | + (or variant) in four or five lines across the field, within outer circle. 2.4-7.6 g.

Schlumberger 48 (pl. II, 11).

21. *Æ* (Pl. III)

Obv. St. George astatue, mounted on a horse galloping to right, and slaying a dragon. Inscription in field: $\overline{\text{G}}$ to left, $\overline{\text{PMWPHOC}}$ to right; all within beaded outer circle.

Rev. + | $\overline{\text{POTAMP}}$ | $\overline{\text{RPHKJ}}$ | $\overline{\text{OCANTI}}$ | $\overline{\text{OXI}}$ (or variant) in four or five lines across the field; within beaded outer circle.

2.6-3.7 g.

Schlumberger 48 (pl. II, 12).

A specimen in the Bibliothèque nationale weighing 5.05 g. is overstruck on a follis of emperor Leo VI (Schlumberger, pl. II, 13).

22. *Æ* (Pl. III)

Obv. Christ standing, blessing; $\overline{\text{K}}$ $\overline{\text{X}}$ by his head, all within outer circle.

Rev. Long cross with a pellet at each end, $\overline{\text{DS}}$ $\overline{\text{SAL}}$ $\overline{\text{FP}}$ $\overline{\text{AO}}$ in angles; within beaded outer circle.

2.3-5.0 g.

Schlumberger 47 (pl. II, 10).

BOHEMOND II (1119-1130)

23. *Æ* (Pl. III)

Obv. Bust of St. Peter, nimbate, facing, with long cross over his left shoulder. Vertical inscription in field: $\frac{\Theta}{\Pi}$ to left, ET to right of bust.

Rev. Long cross springing from floriate base with pellet at each of the other three ends, BA HM VM & OC in angles; all within beaded outer circle.

2.6-4.9 g.

Schlumberger 49 (pl. II, 14).

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1120-1150)

24. *Æ* (Pl. IV)

Obv. Bust of St. Peter, nimbate, facing, holding a long cross over his right shoulder. Inscription on other side of bust. Θ HM, all within outer circle.

Rev. Cross moline with flours or torseils facing inward in the angles, within beaded outer circle. No inscription.

0.9-1.4 g.

Schlumberger 493 (pl. XIX, 1 shows variant with the cross on the apostle's left shoulder).

25. *Æ* (Pl. IV)

Obv. Armed man holding banner, on horse galloping to left. No inscription.

Rev. Long cross patée; ANTO in angles.

0.8-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 56 (pl. III, 11). This type is probably derived from that of the seal of the prince of Antioch, the earliest recorded example of which is of Raymond of Poitiers (Schlumberger *et al.*, *Sigillographie*, 33).

26. *Æ* (Pl. IV)

Obv. As no. 25, but mounted figure to right.

Rev. As no. 25.

0.8 g.

Unpublished

RAYMOND OF POITIERS (1136-1149)

27. *Æ* or billon denier (Pl. IV)

Obv. Bare head to right, within beaded inner circle, the neck breaking through the circle; + RAYMYNVS

Rev. Short cross pattée in beaded inner circle, + ANTIOCHIE
0.7-0.9 g.

Notes. *Cfr.*, 7-IX (1969), 233, which postulates five varieties distinguished by their lettering and the extent to which the neck breaks through the inner circle.

28. *Æ* (Pl. IV)

Obv. Three bars disposed in Y shape, curiously formed RAR in angles.

Rev. AN | TIOC | HIE in three lines across the field
1.0-1.3 g.

Schlumberger 51 (pl. II, 19).

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1140-1180)

29. *Æ* (Pl. IV)

Obv. Cross with pellet in each angle, within beaded inner circle; + PRINCEPS

Rev. Abstract ornamental design incorporating small cross, bar, and loop, all within beaded inner circle + ANTIOCHIE, sometimes retrograde.

0.8-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 58 (pl. III, 15). The spelling ANTIOCHIE suggests an early date, but the epigraphy and fabric suggest a date nearer to 1180.

BOHEMOND III (1149-1201)

30. Billon denier (Pl. IV)

Obv. Bare head to right, within beaded inner circle,
+ BOHAMYNVS.

Rev. Cross (sometimes with pellet in first angle) within beaded inner circle, + ANTIOCHIA.

0.6-1.0 g.

Notes. *Cfr.*, 7-IX (1969), 348 ff., which postulates three consecutive issues distinguished by the modeling of the head and the epigraphy, and dates them to the years 1149-1163.

31 Bilion denier (Pl. IV)

Obv. Helmeted bust to right, with cross on helmet and chain-mail on neck, crescent to left and five-pointed star to right of head, all within beaded inner circle. + BOHMYNDVS

Rev. Cross with crescent in second angle, within beaded inner circle. + ANTIOCHIA.

0.8-1.1 g.

Numer. Chr. 5-XV (1935), 200-210; *ibid.*, 7-IX (1969), 261. This appears to be the earliest of the helmet deniers and dates from ca. 1163.

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1163-1180)

32 *Æ* (Pl. IV)

Obv. Helmeted bust to right, with cross on helmet and chain-mail on neck; branches on either side. No inscription.

Rev. Grid of four bars crossing at right angles with a pellet or annulet in each compartment, all within a tressure of eight arches. No inscription.

0.3-0.6 g.

Schlumberger 59 (pl. III, 17).

BOHEMOND III (1149-1201) or BOHEMOND IV (1201-1232)

33 Bilion denier (Pl. V)

Obv. Helmeted bust to left, with cross on helmet and chain-mail on neck, crescent to left and five-pointed star to right of head, all within beaded inner circle. + BOHMYNDVS

Rev. Cross with crescent in second angle, within beaded inner circle. + ANTIOCHIA (or ANTIOCHIA).

0.8-1.1 g.

Numer. Chr. 5-XVII (1937), 200-210; *ibid.*, 7-IX (1969), 257-267, ANS, *Museum Notes*, XVI (1970), 93-109. Eight varieties of the mobilized type, dating from ca. 1143 to ca. 1220, have been classified, distinguished by the style of portrait, punctuation, and apoglyphy.

34 *Æ* (Pl. V)

Obv. Fleur-de-lis between pellets, within inner circle; + BOHMYNDVS.

Rev. Cross with pellet or star in each angle; + ANTIOCHIA.

0.6-0.9 g.

Schlumberger 52 (pl. III, 1). This appears to have been the principal fractional accompaniment to the helmet deniers. The several unclassified varieties were perhaps changed *pari passu* with the helmet issues.

ANONYMOUS (period *ca.* 1200)35. *Æ* (Pl. V)

Obv. Three-towered castle with double-doored gate, three small bushes in the foreground. No inscription.

Rev. *AN* | *TOC* | *HX* in three lines across the field, the inscription divided by thin lines.

0.6-0.8 g.

Schlumberger 57 (pl. III, 12).

36. *Æ* (Pl. V)

Obv. 2 and four pellets in beaded inner circle, + *PRINCEPS*, sometimes retrograde.

Rev. Cross with crescent in one angle and pellets in the others; within beaded inner circle + *ANTIO HX* (or variant).

0.6-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 58 (pl. III, 14).

BOHEMOND IV (1201-1232)

37. Billon or *Æ* (Pl. V)

Obv. Cross patée with annulet at each end and pellet in each angle, within beaded inner circle; + *BOHEMYNDVS*.

Rev. Crescent and six-pointed star, within beaded inner circle, + *ANTIOCHIA* or variant.

1.0 g.

Schlumberger 53 (pl. III, 3).

RAYMOND ROUPEN (1216-1219)

38. Billon denier (Pl. V)

Obv. As no. 33, + *RV* P. INV3.

Rev. As no. 33.

0.6-1.0 g.

Numis. Chr., 7-IX (1969), 265.

BOHEMOND IV (1201-1232) or BOHEMOND V (1232-1251)

39. Billon denier (Pl. V)

Obv. As no. 33.

Rev. As no. 33.

0.5-0.9 g.

Numis. Chr., 5-XVII (1937), 200-210; *ibid.*, 7-IX (1969), 257-267.

This last (post *ca.* 1200) issue of the helmet denier is distinguished from earlier varieties by its cruder style and lighter weight. It is unlikely to have been struck much after 1232.

40. *Æ* (Pl. V)

Obv. ϵ in sometimes beaded inner circle; + $\text{BOA}\mu\text{V}\mu\text{NDV}$ or $\text{BOA}\mu\text{V}\mu\text{NDV}$ (one variety reads + $\text{ANTIOCH}\epsilon$).

Rev. Cross in inner circle; + ANTIOCHIA (or beaded version, e.g. one variety reads NDCHT).

0.7-0.8 g.

Schlumberger 37 (pl. III, 13 & 14)

Kingdom of Jerusalem

BALDWIN III (1143-1162)

41. *Billon denier* (Pl. VI)

Obv. Cross in beaded inner circle; ϵ (or +) REX BALDVINVS .

Rev. Tower in beaded inner circle; ϵ (or +) RE HIRVSALM (variants read RE HIRVSALM and RE HIRVSALM).

0.95 g. (average).

Numis. Chr., 7-XVIII (1978), 71; *Rev. numis.*, 6-VIII (1966), 92. The two variants seem likely to be the earliest issues.

42. *Billon maille or obole* (Pl. VI)

Obv. As no. 41; ϵ REX BALDVINVS .

Rev. As no. 41; ϵ (or +) RE HIRVSALM .

0.45 g. (average)

Numis. Chr., 7-XVIII (1978), 75; *Rev. numis.*, 6-VIII (1966), 92.

43. *Billon denier* (Pl. VI)

Obv. As no. 41. REX BALDVINVS , neat lettering, X and A decorated with annulets.

Rev. As no. 41; + RE HIRVSALM , neat lettering, A decorated with annulets.

0.97 g. (average).

Numis. Chr., 7-XVIII (1978), 76; *Rev. numis.*, 6-VIII (1966), 92.

44. *Billon maille or obole* (Pl. VI)

Obv. As no. 43.

Rev. As no. 43.

0.46 g. (average).

Numis. Chr., 7-XVIII (1978), 79; *Rev. numis.*, 6-VIII (1966), 92.

AMALRIC (1162-1175) and his successors (to ca. 1200)

45 Billon denier (Pl. VI)

Obv. Cross with pellets or annulets in second and third angles, all within beaded inner circle; - AMALRICVS REX

Rev. Holy Sepulcher in beaded inner circle; + MC IERUSALEM
0.9 g. (average).

Schlumberger 35.

46 Billon maille or obole (Pl. VI)

Obv. As no. 45.

Rev. As no. 45

0.4 g. (average).

Schlumberger 35.

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1190)

47 Billon denier (Pl. VI)

Obv. Patriarchal cross between A and Ω within beaded inner circle, MONETA REGIS.

Rev. Cross in beaded inner circle, + REX IERUSA (or IERANN)
0.6-0.8 g.

Schlumberger 91 (pl. III, 27); *Rev. numis.*, 2-X (1845), 297.

48. AE (Pl. VI)

Obv. Tower of David, monogram between two annulets or pellets, within beaded inner circle, TVRRIS with annulets or pellets between letters.

Rev. Eight-pointed star within beaded inner circle, + DAVIT with annulets or pellets between letters

0.6-0.9 g.

Numis. Chr., 7-XVIII (1978), 85-92.

GUY OF LUSIGNAN (1186-1192)

49 AE (Pl. VI)

Obv. Facing head, crowned and bearded, within beaded inner circle + MDGYDOD

Rev. Dome of building within beaded inner circle, IERUSALEM.
0.9-1.4 g.

Schlumberger 38 (pl. III, 25). Schlumberger identified the building on the reverse as the Dome of the Rock as shown on seals of the Kingdom, but the indication of a hole in the dome suggests that the Holy Sepulcher is represented.

HENRY OF CHAMPAGNE (1192-1197)

- 50 *Æ* pengrois, Acre (Pl. VI)

Obv. Cross pattee with annulets in each angle, within beaded inner circle; + COCLES HENRICVS.

Rev. Fleur de lis within beaded inner circle; + PYGES DACCON
0.7-1.5 g. A pedfourt in the Bibliothèque nationale weighs 9.6 g.
Schlumberger 92 (pl. III, 28).

- 51 *Æ* pengrois, Acre (Pl. VI)

Obv. As no. 50

Rev. Hexagon with a circle at its center and annulets in the angles, within beaded inner circle; + PYGES DACCON

0.8 g.

Numis. Chr. 7-XVII (1977), 145.

AIMERY OF LUSIGNAN (1197-1205) and his successors (to ca 1220)

- 52 Billon denier (Pl. VII)

Obv. Cross with annulets in first and fourth angles, within inner circle. AMALRICVS REX.

Rev. Holy Sepulchre, in inner circle; + DE IERUSALEM

0.6 g. (average)

Cot. (ANS, NNM, no. 59; 1933), p. 50; Rev. numis. 4-XXVIII (1933), 167

JOHN OF BRIENNE (1210-1225)

- 53 Billon denier, Damietta (Pl. VII)

Obv. Head facing, wearing triangular crown with pendants, in inner circle; + IOHANNES REX

Rev. Cross with annulets in second and third quarters, in inner circle; + DAMIETA.

0.6-0.8 g.

Rev. numis. 4-XXXVI (1933), 173; Schlumberger (Supplement) 6 (pl. XX, 4). This coin and the next must date from the Franks' occupation of Damietta in 1219

- 54 Billon denier, Damietta (Pl. VII)

Obv. Crowned head facing, in inner circle; + DAMIETA (or variant punctuation).

Rev. Cross with pellets or annulets in second and third quarters, within inner circle; + IOHANNES REX

0.6-0.9 g.

Rev. numis. 4-XXXVI (1933), 173; Schlumberger 93 (pl. III, 31)

55 *A dragon or darkness* (Pl. VII)

Obv. Cross with pellets or bezants in second and third quarters, within inner circle; + IOHANNES BAP.

Rev. Holy Sepulchre, within inner circle; + DQBRVSALEM

2.2-2.5 g. There is a pierced specimen (2.6 g.) struck on a scyphate flan.

Schlumberger 92 (pl. III, 30). In view of the cross signature on the text coin it seems reasonable to ascribe this one also to Acre.

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1220-1240)

56 *A dragon or darkness, Acre* (Pl. VII)

Obv. Cross pattée, sometimes with pellet or bezant in second quarter, within inner circle; DRAGHA ACCONNIS (ACÇONEN or ACCONENS).

Rev. Holy Sepulchre, within inner circle; + SEPVLCHRI DQHINI (various punctuations).

2.1-2.5 g.

Schlumberger (Supplement) 4 (pl. XX, 3)

Kingdom of Jerusalem (?)

The coins in this section are certainly some of the Latin states in Syria and Palestine, but the evidence on which they are attributed specifically to the kings of Jerusalem is by no means conclusive.

57. *N dinar* (Pl. VII)

Obv. Paschal Lamb's emblem to left, holding standard, within inner circle. Inscription in two circles: + AGNVS DEI QVI LIT, (inside) + PECCATA DNYNDI

Rev. Cross with pellet in first angle within inner circle. Inscription in two circles: + XPISTVS VINCIT · XPISTVS REG. (inside) + XPISTVS IMPERAT.

3.3-3.6 g.

Rev. numis., 4-VIII (1966), 89.

58 *Bilon denier* (Pl. VII)

Obv. Cross pattée within inner circle, + SAHACADQA (?)

Rev. Church towering over two flanking minarets. No inscription
0.8-1.0 g.

Numis. Chr., 7-XVIII (1977), 124

59 Billon obole.

Obv. Cross pattée within beaded inner circle. *ms.* N.A.

Rev. Church towering over two flanking minarets. No inscription.

0.43 g.

Namık Çhr. 3-11 (1982), 160.

60 Billon denar (Pl. VII)

Obv. Patriarchal cross on block between two branches and stars.
No inscription.

Rev. Cross pattée, in beaded inner circle; + I CAVI CISA (or + YICAVCIS, retrograde).

0.7-1.1 g.

Schlumberger 493 (pl. XIX, 3), *Numismatique Circulaire* (Feb. 1966), p. 32.

61 Billon obole.

Obv. Patriarchal cross on block between two branches and stars.
No inscription.

Rev. Cross pattée in beaded inner circle. + CAVS.OCIV retrograde.

0.35 g.

Namık Çhr. 3-11 (1982), 160.

62 Billon denar

Obv. Tower of David with four flags, two protruding from each side, within inner circle. + TYRAVS DAVIT (?), retrograde.

Rev. Holy Sepulchre, showing rock tomb and edicule, within inner circle; + [SEPVLCRVM] DOMINI (?).

1.0-1.2 g.

Namık Çhr. 7-XIX (1979), 122.

63 Billon denar, Jaffa (Pl. VII)

Obv. Cross pattée in inner circle; ++ DENARIVS.

Rev. Building with high central tower and lower flanking towers, in inner circle, ++ KOPPHNS.

0.7 g.

Schlumberger 110 (pl. IV, 29). The question whether this coin was struck by royal authority or that of a count of Jaffa still remains open.

64 Billon denar

Obv. Two vertical bars with a small cross above and an annulet below, all within inner circle. + IKONON or variant.

Rev. Cross pattée with pellet in each angle, within inner circle. Similar inscription.

0.4-0.5 g.

Namık Çhr. 7-XX (1980), 100. Schlumberger ascribed this coin to Tripoli, and others have followed him, but the evidence for any attribution is slight. It is probably to be dated after 1290.

County of Tripoli

BERTRAND (1109-1112)

65 *Æ* or billon denier (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Cross pattee within beaded inner circle; + S TRIMONS CO

Rev. TRS and four pellets within inner circle; + TRIPOLIS CIVI

0.8 g.

Schlumberger 100 (pl. IV, 1)

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1112)

66 *Æ* denier (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Cross within beaded inner circle; + TRIPOLIS.

Rev. TRS and two pellets within inner circle; + TRIPOLIS CIVI

0.8 g.

Schlumberger 101 (pl. IV, 2).

RAYMOND II (1134-1152) or RAYMOND III (1152-1187)

67 *Æ* (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Cross with angle pellets or annulets in the upper angles and three in the lower angles, within beaded inner circle, MONETA TRIPOLIS.

Rev. Short cross pattee with annulet at each end, RAIMUNDI COMITIS (or COMITI).

0.8-1.2 g. (but there exists an exceptional piece of 2.3 g.).

Schlumberger 104 (pl. IV, 3). The author is not inclined to accept the theory that these coins were struck by Raymond of St. Gilles.

68 *Æ* (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Cross with pellet in each angle, within beaded inner circle; + RAIMUNDVS COMES

Rev. Lamb (or horse?) to left with processional cross behind, within beaded inner circle; + CIVITAS TRIPOLIS or + TRIPOLIS CIVITAS.

0.9-1.1 g.

Schlumberger 105 (pl. IV, 4); see also Poey d'Avant, II, 253 for the related coins of the county of Saint Gilles.

69 *Æ*

Obv. Crescent and star of eight rays with pellets between the rays, within inner circle; + RAIMUNDVS.

Rev. Cross with three pellets at each end and scepters in each angle
No inscription

1.2 g.

Schlumberger 102 (pl. IV, 5).

RAYMOND III (1152-1147)

70. Billon denier (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Cross with pellets in first and second angles, within beaded inner circle; + RAYMONDS COMS. Initial cross and letters RAYMONDS and C decorated with pellets and/or double bars.

Rev. Crescent and star of eight rays with pellets between the rays, CIVITAS TRIPOLIS. Letters CS and PO decorated as on obv.

0.9-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 102 (pl. IV, 4).

RAYMOND III and his successors (to ca. 1200)

71. Billon denier (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Cross pattée within beaded inner circle, in RAYMONDS COMS.

Rev. Star of eight rays with annulets in angles, in beaded inner circle; in CIVITAS TRIPOLIS.

0.6-0.9 g.

Cox (ANS, NNM, no. 59; 1933), p. 55.

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1180-1200)

72. *Æ* (Pl. VIII)

Obv. Crescent and star of eight rays with pellets between the rays, within beaded inner circle; CIVITAS TRIPOLIS (or variant).

Rev. Long cross, the ends branching into fleurons of three pellets, in the angles scepters with pellets at the top. No inscription.

0.9-1.3 g.

Schlumberger 103 (pl. IV, 6).

73. *Æ* (Pl. IX)

Obv. Creteolated gate or castle with double doorway, within beaded inner circle; + CIVITAS (or variant).

Rev. Cross with circle at the center, globules at the ends, and crescents in the angles, set either straight or saltire-wise in beaded inner circle, + TRIPOLIS.

0.6-0.9 g.

Schlumberger 103 (pl. IV, 9, 10, 11).

BOHEMOND (IV of ANTIOCH) (ca. 1187-1232)

74. Billon denier (Pl. IX)

Obv. As no. 71, + (or R) RAYMONDS COMS.

Rev. As no. 71.

0.81 g. (average).

Rev. manu., 4-XXCVIII (1935), 175.

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1200-1230)

75. *Æ* (Pl. IX)

Obv. Cross with circle at center, globules at the ends, and pellets in each angle, within beaded inner circle; + CIVITAS

Rev. Crestated tower, in beaded inner circle; + TRIPOLIS

0.6-1.1 g

Schlumberger 103 (pl. IV, 12, 13, 14) This type comprises several varieties, distinguished principally by the conformation of the tower on the reverse

BOHEMOND (IV of ANTIOCH) (ca. 1187-1232)

BOHEMOND (V of ANTIOCH) (1232-1251)

BOHEMOND (VI of ANTIOCH) (1251-1274)

76. Billon denier (Pl. IX)

Obv. Cross pattée within inner circle; + or BAMYND COMS

Rev. Star of six (or sometimes eight) rays with annulets or pellets between the rays, within inner circle; + or CIVITAS TRIPOL'

0.4 g (average)

Schlumberger 104 (pl. IV, 15) Some varieties have a pellet in the first angle of the cross.

77. *Æ* gros (Pl. IX)

Obv. Cross in beaded inner circle; + BAMYND COMS

Rev. Eight-pointed star with annulets in angles, within beaded inner circle; + CIVITAS TRIPOL'

1.9 g (broken).

Unpublished.

78. Billon denier

Obv. Cross pattée, in beaded inner circle; + BAMYND COMS

Rev. Star of six rays, annulets between the rays, in inner circle; + CITE TRIPOL.

0.4 g.

Unpublished (Bibliothèque nationale, no. 4154)

79. Billon denier (Pl. IX)

Obv. Cross pattée, in inner circle; + B-O-COMS

Rev. As no. 78

0.3-0.4 g.

Schlumberger 105 (pl. IV, 25).

BOHEMOND (VI of ANTIOCH) (1251-1274)

- 10.
- A*
- gros (of tournois weight) (Pl. IX)

Obv. Cross patée in frame of four arches and four angles with drops in the spandrels, all within beaded inner circle; + BOHEMONDVS COMES

Rev. Star of eight rays with pellets between set in treasure of eight arches with drops in the spandrels, all within beaded inner circle; + CIVITAS ITRIPOL-I

4.3 g

Schlumberger 105 (pl. IV, 19).

- 11.
- A*
- gros (of Venetian or half-tournois weight) (Pl. IX)

Obv. As no. 10.

Rev. As no. 10.

2.1 g.

Schlumberger 105 (pl. IV, 20).

BOHEMOND (VII of ANTIOCH) (1274-1287)

- 12.
- A*
- gros (of tournois weight) (Pl. IX)

Obv. Cross patée in treasure of twelve arches, all within beaded inner circle; + SEPTIMVS BOHEMONDVS COMES

Rev. Three-towered castle in treasure of twelve arches, all within beaded inner circle; + CIVITAS ITRIPOLIS I SYRIÆ

4.3 g

Schlumberger 106 (pl. IV, 21).

- 13.
- A*
- gros (of Venetian or half-tournois weight) (Pl. IX)

Obv. As no. 12.

Rev. As no. 12.

2.1 g.

Schlumberger 106 (pl. IV, 22).

Lordship of Beirut

JOHN OF IBELIN (1195-1236)

84. Billos d'azur (Pl. X)

Obv. Cross with crescents in first and fourth angles and annulets in second and third, all within beaded inner circle, + IOHNS DE IBELINO (or IBELINO).

Rev. Twin-towered gate within beaded inner circle, + CIVITAS BEIRUT.

0.8-1.0 g.

Rev. numis., 4-XXXVIII (1935), 175, 6-VIII (1966), 97; Cox (ANS, NNM, no. 59; 1933), p. 53.

85. Billos d'azur (Pl. X)

Obv. Cross, sometimes with crescent in second and third angles, within inner circle; + IOHANNES.

Rev. City gate, in inner circle; + DE BEIRUT.

0.6-0.7 g.

Schlumberger 116 (pl. V, 10).

86. Billos d'azur

Obv. Cross pattée with annulets in first and fourth angles, within beaded inner circle + IOHNS D'IBELINO.

Rev. Crow-tailed tower, annulet below, within beaded inner circle; + DNS BEIRUTUS.

0.9 g.

Rev. numis., 6-VIII (1966), 97.

ANONYMOUS (period ca. 1200-1250)

87. *Æ*

Obv. Towered city gateway, in inner circle, + DE BARYTH.

Rev. Interlace pattern interspersed with pellets. No inscription.

0.6-1.4 g.

Schlumberger 111 (pl. V, 27).

88. *Æ* (Pl. X)

Obv. Towered city gateway, within inner circle, + DE BEIRUTENSE (or + DE BEIROTOLE).

Rev. Interlace pattern interspersed with annulets. No inscription.

0.6-1.25 g.

Schlumberger 111 (pls. V, 12, & XX, 11).

Lordship of Tyre

PHILIP OF MONTFORT (1246-1270)

89. AE (Pl. X)

Obv. Cross with pellet or annulet in each angle, within beaded inner circle, + PHILIP.

Rev. Building with tall steeple between two pellets or annulets, all within beaded inner circle; SIRE-D SVR.

0.7-1.3 g.

Numismatic Circular (March 1966), p. 61.

90. AE (Pl. X)

Obv. Cross within beaded inner circle, + PHILIP.

Rev. Portico of four columns, within beaded inner circle; + D-SVR.

1.1-1.5 g.

Schlumberger 28 (pl. V, 14).

JOHN OF MONTFORT (1270-1283)

91. AE (Pl. X)

Obv. Cross within beaded inner circle, + IOH SIRE.

Rev. Portico of four columns, within beaded inner circle; + D-SVR.

1.1-1.4 g.

Numismatic Circular (March 1966), p. 62.

92. AE (Pl. X)

Obv. Cross within beaded inner circle, + IOH SIRE.

Rev. Portico of two columns with arched doorway between, within beaded inner circle; + D-SVR.

1.2-1.3 g.

Numismatic Circular (March 1966), p. 62.

Lordship of Sidon

REGINALD GRENIER (d. ca. 1204)

93 Billon denier (Pl. XI)

Obv. Tower within inner circle; + REXALDVS.

Rev. Arrow pointing left, within inner circle; + SYDONVS
0.8-1.3 g.

Schlumberger 114 (pl. V, J). This coin is probably to be ascribed to the period before Saladin's capture of Sidon in 1187, but Reginald survived until about 1204 and by then the Franks had recaptured part of the lordship and maybe controlled the city. A date after 1187, though unlikely, cannot be ruled out for these coins.

ANONYMOUS (date uncertain)

94 AE (Pl. XI)

Obv. Arrow between groups of three pellets, within outer circle; +
S R A D

Rev. Six-pointed star-like figure with globules at the ends, within
inner circle; + S I D O N

0.9 g.

Bibliothèque nationale (no. 4177); cf. Schlumberger (Supplément) 7 (pl. XX, 6). Schlumberger ascribes the coin engraved in this plate, which shows the reverse inscription retrograde, to Gerard, father of Reginald and lord of Sidon in the mid-twelfth century. The inscription on the *obv.* of the *BN* coin is by no means so convincing. Compared with the most reverse legend it appears to be deliberately obscure, and the case for the reading GIRARDVS is by no means conclusive. Were it not for the ambiguity of the obverse inscription there would be no difficulty in classifying this with the other coins of Sidon with beaded legends, for which the mid-thirteenth century seems the likely date.

ANONYMOUS (after 1220?)

95 AE (Pl. XI)

Obv. Arrow between groups of three pellets, within inner circle;
//SYD//N

Rev. Holy Sepulcher, within inner circle; inscription illegible //P//
0.7-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 114 (pl. V, 7).

96. *Æ* (Pl. XI)

Obv. Formless budding (presumably Holy Sepulcher) surrounded by a cross, within inner circle. Garbled inscription.

Rev. Arrow between two pellets within wavy circle. Garbled inscription *[[[V]VQD]]]*.

0.7-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 113 (pl. V, 6).

97. *Æ* (Pl. XI)

Obv. Arrow between groups of three pellets, within inner circle. Inscription illegible.

Rev. Six-pointed star-like figure with globules at the ends, within inner circle. Inscription illegible.

0.5-1.0 g.

Schlumberger 114 (pl. V, 4 & 5).

98. *Æ* (Pl. XI)

Obv. Arrow pointing downward between two crescents and four annulets, within outer circle. No inscription.

Rev. Six-pointed star-like figure with globules at the ends, within outer circle. No inscription.

0.6-1.2 g.

Namsmatic Circular (March 1964), p. 62.

99. *Billon denier* (Pl. XI)

Obv. Cross pattée in wavy circle, + D E N I E R

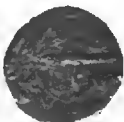
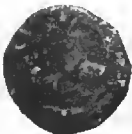
Rev. Holy Sepulcher, in inner circle, + D E S E R T E

0.4-0.8 g.

Schlumberger 115 (pl. V, 8).



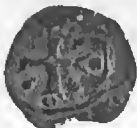
1



2



3



4



5

I. Coinage of the county of Edessa



6



7



8



9



10



11

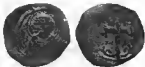


12

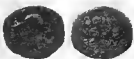


13

11. Coinage of the county of Edessa



14



13



16



17



18



19



20



21



22



23

III. Coinage of the principality of Antioch



24



25



26



27



28



29



30



31



32

IV Coinage of the principality of Antioch



33



34



35



36



37



38



39



40



V. Coinage of the principality of Antioch



41



42



43



44



45



46



47



48



49



50



51

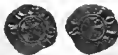
VL Coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem



52



53



54



55



56



57



58



59



60

VII. Coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem



65



66



67



68



70



71



72

VIII. Coinage of the county of Tripoli



73



74



75



76



77



79



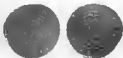
80



81



82



83

IX. Coinage of the county of Tripoli

Beirut



84



85



88

Tyre



89



90



91



92



93



94



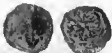
95



96



97



98



99

XI. Coinage of the lordship of Sidon

XI

CRUSADER COINAGE WITH ARABIC INSCRIPTIONS

A. The Islamic Context

CURRENCY IN THE MOSLEM WORLD

In the Islamic lands, the crusaders encountered monetary systems quite different from the one they knew in Latin Europe, where the only coins until the thirteenth century were small, often debased, silver deniers (pennies). The Moslems, in contrast, used gold dinars, silver dirhams, and copper *fulūs* (*fula* is the singular). Not every part of the Islamic world had coins in all three metals at the same time. Systems varied from place to place, even within the realms of dynasties such as the Fatimids, Aiyūbids, and Mamluks, and evolved during the two centuries the crusaders were in Syria.

Some features, nevertheless, were general among the Moslems whom the crusaders met. In the Moslem lands, as elsewhere in pre-modern

For the coinage of the major Islamic dynasties in contact with the crusaders, see, for the Fatimids, George C. Miles, *Fatimid Coins in the Collections of the University Museum, Philadelphia, and the American Numismatic Society* (ANS, Numismatic Notes and Monographs no. 12), New York, 1913, a catalogue of one major collection, only two with references to all previous work; for the Aiyūbids, Paul Babel, *The Coinage of the Ayyubids* (Royal Numismatic Society Special Publication, no. 12), London, 1969; for the Mamluks, idem, *The Coinage of the Mamluk Sultans of Egypt and Syria* (ANS, Numismatic Studies, no. 12) (New York, 1964). Both these latter are encyclopaed, including all coins known at the time of publication. The standard references for all the Arabic coins of the crusaders is Paul Babel and Jacques Yvon, "Monnaies à légendes arabes de l'Orient latin," *Rev. numism.*, 64th ser., 1 (1959), 115-161, the abbreviations BY used frequently below indicate the variety numbers established by them. The most recent general classification of the crusader gold remains is Adam A. Gordon and D. M. Metcalf, "Neutron Activation Analysis of the Gold Coinage of the Crusader States" (similarly GMT, in *Mintology in Numismatics*, ed. Metcalf and W. A. Oddy, 1 (London, 1963), 119-132, supplemented with some additional references by Metcalf, *Coinage of the Crusades and the Latin East in the Ashmolean Museum*, Oxford (London, 1963), pp. 3-14, 40-44. For the crusader Arabic dirhams, the standard survey is Michael L. Babel, "Thirteenth Century Crusader Issuances of Argyreid Silver Coinage: a Preliminary Survey," in *New Eastern Numismatics, Iconography, Epigraphy and History, Studies in Honor of George C. Miles*, ed. Dickson E. Lawryson (Berne, 1974), pp. 393-409.

1. That section is by Babel.

economies, precious metal coins were struck from bullion or non-current coins that were brought to the mint by the government or by private persons. Charges for materials and labor were levied proportionately on the coins struck from the material brought in by the customer. Private persons had to pay a government seigniorage (mint tax) in addition. As a result, the amount of bullion in the coins received by the customer was less than the amount of bullion brought in. In other words, coins were a manufactured product with a value (buying power) greater than an equivalent amount of the raw material from which they were made. The difference in value between coins and the bullion in them was fundamentally a result of the mint charges, but was also affected by such factors as inconvenience of minting, transport charges to the mint, reluctance of individuals to reveal holdings of precious metals, and many other intangible factors which can be summed up as the result of supply and demand in a given place at a given time. As legal tender, only current coins could be used for payments to the government and in most transactions between private parties, and this legal constraint was sufficient to keep their money value above their intrinsic (metal) value. If a coin issue was demonetized (abolished as legal tender), its value would drop to the value of the bullion in each coin, causing a loss to the possessor at the time of demonetization.

In a minting regime such as that described, coins can be exchanged by count only if the proportional variation in weight of individual coins is less than the difference between the value of the raw metal in them and their value as coins. If coins circulate by count, and some coins vary from the normal weight by more than total mint costs, it may become profitable to withdraw these heavier coins from circulation to melt and return to the mint, obtaining more coins with a higher money value from the same amount of bullion. There may be a tendency to set aside heavier coins, with a higher intrinsic value, for savings, while returning lighter coins to circulation, and it may become profitable to clip the edges of coins, retaining the same money value while profiting from the bullion value of the clippings. These practices, if they become common, will result in a general lowering of the average weight of the issue in circulation and thereby force weighing of payments in self-defense.

For a government to force its coins to circulate by count, it must either set minting charges high, creating a large difference between their bullion value and their money value, or control the weight of its coins very precisely.² Some Moslem coinages are known to have circulated

² For a fuller discussion of monetary theory relating to pre-modern mints see Cline 7.

by count, suggesting that one of the two latter conditions obtained, but in the crusader period most precious metal issues were weighed out in transactions. A payment of 100 dinars, for example, took the form of an amount of coins equal in weight to 100 times the current standard weight of the dinar, an amount which might be more or less than 100 individual coins. The process of weighing was recognized as an inconvenience, but was considered normal. Almost every transaction required a balance, with standard weights supplied or regulated by the government.³ To alleviate the inconvenience somewhat, coins were often sealed in purses, with a label indicating the content by weight; these purses, if sealed by government agencies or reputable money-changers, could be passed from hand to hand like large-denomination notes today. A form of check, *raḡla*, also was used in payments.⁴ It is important to realize, therefore, that while the words "dinar" and "dirham" meant respectively "a gold coin" or "a silver coin", a payment of a certain number of dinars or dirhams meant transfer of that many weight units of the coinage in question—the number of coins was immaterial.

Because the intrinsic value of precious metal coins was close—even though not equal—to their monetary value, it would have been impossible for any government to guarantee effectively the relationship of denominations in two different metals. To do so would have meant to back up the relationship by standing ready to exchange either for the other at a set rate, but that was impossible in practice because of fluctuations in the prices of the metals. (It is impossible even in the twentieth century, as shown by the abandonment by all governments of precious metal coins with a defined legal tender value. The fixed relationships of modern coins and notes are possible only because their intrinsic worth is far less than their nominal value.)

Herrmann, *Trésors monétaires et monnaies de la période arabe et abbasside*, *Annales numismatiques*, X (1972), 1-31.

3. The major complaint at the crusader era was the new dirham coinage introduced by Saladin in Syria and Egypt at the late twelfth century, which circulated by count at least some of the time. Other currencies would include most copper issues, which were probably sold by the ruler against payment in silver or gold coins at a price far above the value of the copper in itself, many small transactions in Syrian market money of Saladin's coin refers to a rule that transactions of less than five coins could be by count), and informal payments—an one weighed a coin before using it as a hepper. On the other hand, no known Mediterranean Islamic gold coinage of the period 1050-ca. 1450 would have circulated by count, although the western Mediterranean dinars of the type introduced by the Murshidids probably did.

4. Salzman, G. F. *Coins, A Mediterranean Society*, 3 vols. (Berkeley 1967-1978), I, 225-246, discusses means of payment in thirteenth-century Egypt and Syria in detail. For the evidence for weighing see also Baum, "The Functions of Filigree and Assayed Grain Weight," *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, XXIV (1981), 79-81.

In the Moslem world and almost all pre-modern economies, current gold and silver coins were related in value only by the marketplace, like different national currencies today. Governments could fix values only in certain transactions (for example, in denominating salaries in one currency while paying them in another) and sometimes might attempt to decree relationships in private transactions, but such decrees were widely evaded and impossible to enforce. In normal times values were fairly stable, so that people could have a notional rate for the relationship of the dinar and the dirham, but in any substantial transactions involving both coins the exchange rate had to be set by negotiation. The value of foreign coins in local currency was also determined by supply and demand, not by precious metal content; moreover, if payments were made by weight, local weights would have been used to measure foreign coins, so that varying coin weight standards would have no effect on value. To be sure, metal content set a floor value for any coin, but its actual equivalency in local currency was set in the marketplace.

ISLAMIC GOLD COINAGE

The major Moslem mints for gold coinage in the vicinity of the crusaders were Cairo and Alexandria in Egypt, and Mosul and Baghdad (named *Madinat as-Salam* on coins) in Mesopotamia. A few other mints in the region issued gold occasionally. For gold coinage, the Euphrates was a clear dividing line between two different systems. The dinars of Mosul (pl. XII, no. 1) and Baghdad (pl. XII, no. 2) did not circulate in Syria and did not influence the coinage of the crusaders. The issue of both these mints continued the Selchûkid Iranian tradition. For the eleventh and first half of the twelfth centuries, their coins are rather scarce, but after about 1160 the representation of both becomes more continuous, while for the thirteenth century (until the Mongol conquest) the coins of these mints are common, large, well engraved, and quite pure, although completely irregular in weight,¹ a general characteristic of gold coins east of the Euphrates from the tenth to the fourteenth centuries.

Egypt first minted gold coins under Islam in 786 and immediately became one of the principal centers of gold coinage in the Moslem world, issuing dinars continuously and abundantly throughout the Ab-

1. Arlette Nélis, "Le Monnayage d'or des sept derniers califes abbassides," *Studia Islamica*, XLVI (1976), 165-175.

biṣṣad, Tulunid, and Ikhshidid periods.⁶ In northwestern Africa and Sicily the Fatimid monetary system included dinars, quarter dinars, and small silver dirhams. These coins were distinguished from those of the Sunnī Abbāsid realms by the presence of certain SHFI inscriptions, by different weight standards, and especially by a design so obviously different that even illiterates in Arabic could distinguish the two coinages.

The conquest of Egypt by the Fatimids resulted in the introduction of their monetary system there, replacing the previous Abbāsid-style coinage. Under al-Muʿizz (in Egypt, 969-975) and al-Azīz (975-996), the Fatimid dinar was closely controlled in weight, and it is said by a contemporary to have circulated by count,⁷ but under al-Ḥākim (996-1021) a series of changes began. In a. n. 400 (1009/10), and then again in 404, the design of the dinar was substantially altered. The coinage of his successor, az-Zāhir (1021-1036), was at first much like the last issues of al-Ḥākim, but new major changes were made in 420 (1029/30) and 424 or 425. Again, the earliest coinage of al-Mustaʿīn (1036-1094) is like the third type of az-Zāhir, but changes in arrangement and content of inscriptions were made in 430 (1038/9), 435 (pl. XII, no. 3), and 438, while in 440 (1048/9; pl. XII, no. 4) and 474 (1081/2; pl. XII, no. 5) radically different designs were introduced. Under al-Mustaʿīn (1094-1101) in Muḥarram 490 (1096/7),⁸ another substantive change was made in the design of the gold coinage (pl. XII, no. 6). Thereafter Fatimid gold coinage was unchanged in appearance until the end of the dynasty (pl. XII, no. 7), except for the issues of az-Zāhir (1149-1154).

The purpose of these new issues is not clear in every instance, and there is no need to discuss them in detail here, but it can be said in general that such obvious changes in the appearance of the coinage were not merely cosmetic, but marked changes in the monetary function of the coins. Contemporaries, it is clear, regarded the different issues as different monies, related to each other by fluctuating exchange rates;⁹ put another way, each new issue became the standard current legal tender, while the previous issue was usable only to pay off debts

⁶ Egypt may have minted dinars before 756, but they cannot as yet be identified. Dinars of the late Ikhshidid period are scarce coins, perhaps as a result of the shortage of gold dinars after the Fatimid conquest, which would have brought most of the previously circulating dinars to the melting pot (Ibn al-Muqaddas, *Adab al-adib*, ed. Ayman Fu'ad Sayid, II (Cairo, 1985), 194).

⁷ *Al-Muḥallā* (al-Muqaddas), *Adab al-adib*, II, 194; cf. *al-Muḥallā*, ed. Martin J. de Goeje (Leiden, 1886), 194.

⁸ Ibn al-Muqaddas, *op. cit.*, II, 82.

⁹ For example, Göttsch, *op. cit.*, I, 229, citing a Genoa document of about 1060 which distinguishes between "hard" dinars (the name on issues of 425-440) and "soft" dinars (the

denominated in it, or for export, or as bullion. The kinds of monetary change that the new types marked might have included changes in the weight standard or metal alloy of the dinars or of the silver dirhams (which were changed in parallel with the dinars), changes in the way standards of alloy or weight were enforced, changes in the terms on which coins were issued from the mint, or changes in the weight standards used to measure out payments. The determination of which of these factors was behind any particular change rests upon a more careful study of Fātimid coinage than has yet been made, as well as a re-examination of the written sources.

Al-Mustansir's coinage was the prototype for one group of crusader imitations, although most of the imitations do not precisely reproduce any of his coins. Balog and Yvon cite an issue struck from 1043 to 1047 (pl. XII, no. 3) as prototype for these crusader varieties 3-16,¹⁰ but there does not seem to be any good reason for this short-lived issue to have been selected in particular. BY 3-16 have only four horizontal lines of inscription on the obverse, unlike any of al-Mustansir's issues. It is more realistic to say that these imitations merely reproduce, after a fashion, a coin type introduced first in 1043 or 1044 but retained with variations until 1048 or 1049, then reintroduced in 1081 or 1082 and retained until al-Mustansir's death in 1094. All the dinars of these years have the words "Alī" and "Ma'add" at the top of the obverse and reverse field inscriptions, as do the imitations, but none of the originals have only three lines of inscription below these words as do the imitations. Probably the crusader die cutters attempted to reproduce only the general appearance of the prototype, condensing four or five lines into three. Most of these imitations are extremely barbarous, and their makers could have had no idea of the meaning of the inscriptions they attempted to copy. Very likely the coin they had before them was an example of al-Mustansir's last issue, which was struck in Egypt and Syria for about twelve years and ended only some three years before the First Crusade (the type was retained for a few years after al-Mustansir's death, but no longer with his name or the words "Alī" and "Ma'add").

The concentric inscription type that interrupted the "Alī-Ma'add" type may also have been imitated, but very sparingly if at all. Balog and Yvon list only one such coin in their corpus.¹¹ There may, how-

note of 440-474), as well as between Damascus and Egyptian dinars of the same kind. These latter seem to the modern observer to be externally identical except for the mint names.

¹⁰ Balog and Yvon, *op. cit.*, pp. 143-146.

¹¹ BY I, a coin in the American Numismatic Society (2000.999.14974); its attribution is problematic (pl. XVI, no. 43); see below, p. 425.

ever, be others still attributed to the Fāṭimids in various collections. One example might be a dinar of Miṣr, 443, in the British Museum with a gold fineness of only 89.1 percent according to Oddy's measurement.¹² All the crusader imitations of al-Mustansir's issues are attributed in the next section to the county of Tripoli.

The last Fāṭimid type, beginning in 490 (1096/7), bears the words *ʿalī ḡāḡib*, "high standard (of fineness)" (pl. XII, no. 6),¹³ and this issue, like its predecessor, was usually higher in fineness, probably as close to pure gold as technology permitted at the time, although this standard was not always maintained during the issue's century of life. On the other hand, the *ʿalī ḡāḡib* coins do not seem to have been struck to any weight standard. This mattered little, since dinars were usually weighed in payment.

It was this type that was most extensively imitated by the crusaders, specifically the issues of the caliph al-ʿAmir (1101–1130), whose dinars would have been the most common in circulation in the earliest years of the crusading principalities. According to Metcalf's chronology (below, pp. 441–442), these imitations would have begun at a date around the middle of the twelfth century and continued until the third quarter of the thirteenth; they are attributed to the kingdom of Jerusalem.

Egypt's rulers took pride in the high quality of their gold coinage, and the mint discriminated against foreign gold coins, even those of nearly the same level of purity. Generally speaking, this high quality was maintained, with few exceptions, Fāṭimid gold coins are better than 90 percent pure, and most are as pure as contemporary technique permitted.¹⁴ Nevertheless, it would be gathered from what has been said that the picture of the Fāṭimid dinar as the "dollar of the Middle Ages", absolutely standard in weight and purity from the beginning to the end of the dynasty, is seriously misleading. Both the weight standard (or the standard of the weights used to measure transactions) and the purity of the Fāṭimid dinar were changed from time to time; contemporaries were well aware of these variations, but to reconstruct the exact sequence of changes will require a more minute study of the coinage than has yet been made.¹⁵

Egyptian dinars issued under the Ayyūbid sultan Saladin do not seem

12. Oddy, "The Gold Coinage of Fāṭimid Egypt Reconsidered," *Nomismatica in Francigenia*, 1 (London, 1982), 116, no. 311, plate 7.

13. For *ḡāḡib* as a synonym for "standard", or more precisely "standard fineness", see Ibn Khalkān, *Al-maṣāḍir*, 1, ed. Ezzat M. Qamḥawī, *Minhaj al-ṣayyid al-ḥaṣṣ* (Paris, 1936), 407. For more, see William MacGuckin de Slane, *al-ḥaṣṣ*, XIX (1867), 460; Eng. trans. Franz Rosenthal (Chicago, 1952), no. 42, New York, 1971), 1, 464.

14. Oddy, op. cit., pp. 79–118.

15. For a fuller discussion of these problems see Ross, "The Function," pp. 81–81.

to be materially different from those of the last Fātimids. The change in government and religion led to some modifications in the inscriptions and small changes in the arrangement, but the basic coin design, with brief central horizontal inscriptions surrounded by prominent circular legends, is much the same (pl. XII, no. 8). It has been asserted that Saladin abandoned standard weight for his gold coinage, but this in fact had happened long before, in 490 (1096/7); if the range of variation of Saladin's dinars is larger than that of al-'Ādil's, this is probably a result of the larger number of coins available for study. It has also been asserted that Saladin debased his dinars significantly, but some of the low-fineness coins assigned to him may be crusader imitations. The alleged debasement of the dinar in his reign cannot be confirmed until careful numismatic study has separated his genuine coins from their crusader imitations.¹⁶

It was not until the reign of al-'Ādil Abū-Bakr I (1200-1218) that any substantive change in the appearance of the Ayyūbid dinar is seen (pl. XII, no. 9). In the first year of his reign a new dinar type with long horizontal inscriptions and a single marginal legend was introduced, or rather revived from the eleventh century. The mint alternated between the old and new designs during al-'Ādil's reign, but by the time of al-Kāmil (1218-1238) the new type was definitively adopted and maintained until after 713 (1313/4). Major variations on this type include the introduction of Naskhī script instead of Kufic after 622 (1225/6), and al-Zāhir Baybars' use of a lion or leopard on dinars as his personal symbol (pl. XIII, no. 10), an innovation not maintained by his successors. There is no evidence to suggest that any of the changes after Saladin's time reflected a change in the weight standard, fineness, or other monetary functions of the Egyptian dinar, but the Ayyūbid and Mamluk gold coinage has yet to be examined rigorously on these points.

Misr, the official name of Fustat, the commercial center of the Cairo metropolis, is the usual mint name on Fātimid Egyptian dinars. In 516 (1122/3), however, unspecified problems at the Fustāt mint led to the opening of an additional mint in the administrative center al-Qāhirah, that is, in Cairo properly speaking.¹⁷ After 525 (1130/1) this mint ceased

16. Cf. Andrew S. Farnsworth, "The Standard of Purity of Gold Coins Circulating in Egypt at the Time of the Crusades," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, LXXIV (1954), 162-166, a work published before the existence of crusader imitations of Ayyūbid gold was suspected.

17. *Al-Biḥār*, *Dirah al-nawā'il*, vol. 1 (*dirah fi al-dīnār al-ḥaqīqī wa-l-ḥakī*) (Cairo, 1270/1855), I, 445. An issue of al-Fātimid dated 594 (1200/1) is also known from a mint in Cairo, but this mint apparently opened only in this year for some special purpose.

operation, but in the troubled times of al-Āqad (1160–1171) a mint was again opened in Cairo and produced the bulk of his issues. This was apparently the only mint in the city under the Aiyūbids and Mamlūks. A second regular mint was established in Egypt at Alexandria in 465 (1072/3)¹⁶ and operated regularly into the fifteenth century. A mint also operated in Qūs in Upper Egypt from 517 (1123/4) to 519.

In eleventh-century Syria a number of towns had mints for the Fāṭimids: Aleppo, Damascus, Tiberias, Ramla (which used the name *Fāṭima*, Palestine, on coins), Tyre, Tripoli, Acre, and Ascalon.¹⁷ Of these, only Tyre may have minted continuously throughout the Fāṭimid period, but even there the record has gaps. The first four mints mentioned, all located inland, apparently ceased to operate in the 1060's, probably as a result of the Selchūkid conquests in Syria. Production of Fāṭimid dinars was left to the port cities Tyre, Tripoli, and Acre – the latter issued dinars for the first time just as the inland mints were closing down, perhaps not coincidentally. The last recorded date for Acre and Tripoli is 495 (1101/2) while production at Ascalon began in 503 (1109/10), at the time of Tripoli's capture by the crusaders, and continued until 510 (1116/7). The last date recorded for Tyre is 517 (1123/4) (pl. XIII, no. 11),¹⁸ just before it was taken by the crusaders (1124). According to a much later Arab writer, the crusaders kept the mint of Tyre open for three years after its conquest, striking coins in the name of al-Āmir.¹⁹ *Dīnār Šarī*, "Tyre dinar", was the generic Arabic term for the crusader Arabic gold coins, but only a small proportion of these imitations actually bear the mint-name Šūr.²⁰ These last three major Fāṭi-

16. The various references to the *ḥuṣṣa* or *ḥuṣṣat* of Alexandria before 465 are all in the plural; those that have been carefully examined have turned out to be misattributions. For example, the coin of the University Museum, Philadelphia, ascribed by Milon to the year 451 (Milon, *Monnaies Chéennes*, no. 258, pl. III; the coin is on loan to the American Numismatic Society, 1062.11862, pl. XVI, no. 48) is an imitation or counterfeit; its date is indistinct, but its type was not introduced until 474 (1081/2). It may well be a crusader imitation, as its gold fineness is approximately 78.3 percent by specific gravity measurement, the same as that of many crusader *ḥuṣṣas*.

17. The table in Milon, *op. cit.*, pp. 96–51, is still valid for the terminations dates of Fāṭimid Syrian issues, except for Šūr (Tyre).

18. The unique dinar of that date is unpublished, in the collection of the American Numismatic Society (1953.131.5).

19. Ibn al-Kaṭīb, *Kitāb taḥṣīn al-ʿuṣra*, ed. Iḥṣān Ḥabīb (Beirut, n.d.), V, 201. Fr. transl. MarCrahan de Saine (Paris, 1843–1845), III, 454; see below p. 441.

20. It seems odd that only a few crusader *ḥuṣṣas* can be assigned to Tyre, as will be seen below. Robert Lewis, "The Supply of Money and the Direction of Trade in Thirteenth-Century Syria," in *Coinage in the Levant from the Fourth Oxford Symposium on Coinage and Monetary History*, ed. Peter W. Seligman and Michael HARR (International Series, no. 77, Oxford, 1980), p. 91, has explained this anomaly with the suggestion that from the late twelfth century, if not earlier, the word *Šūr* was a calque on the French term "le Syon".

and Syrian mints for gold — Tyre, Tripoli, and Acre — are also the most likely locations for the mints that issued the crusader gold imitations.

After the Fatimid *dirham* mints closed, Moslem Syria had little gold coinage of its own. The mint of Damascus began issuing *dirhams* in 530 (1135/6) and continued for about ten years, striking coins of Fittimid style with the names of the 'Abbasid caliphs and the Selchukid sultans of the east, but these coins are quite scarce today, suggesting a small issue (pl. XIII, nos. 12).²³ In 583 (1187/8) *dirhams* were struck for Saladin in Damascus, perhaps to process the booty from Jerusalem and his other conquests in that year, but no other Moslem Syrian gold coins are known until the reign of Baybars (1260–1277).²⁴ For the most part, Syrians used imported Egyptian or crusader (*šarf*) *dirhams* in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.²⁵

In addition to the coins listed in Syria, Egypt, and Mesopotamia, there are also a very few Rüm Selchukid issues in gold, from Konya beginning as early as 573 (1177/8), and from Silvas.²⁶

23. *Revue de Numismatique, Recueil de Numismatique*, ed. Henry P. Lantier (Lyon: 1905), p. 167, trans. Roger La Zérouille, *Revue de 1875 à 1905 (Damascus, 1915)*, p. 216 (where the text's description of the metal content of the coins is misinterpreted as a list of denominations). Published examples of this series are few: one is in Stanley Lane-Poole, *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum* (London, 1887–1890), II, 45, no. 48.

24. For the Damascus *dirham* mint of Saladin see Böing, *Arabisches*, p. 71, no. 79. The first Damascus *dirham* of Baybars, with an illegible date, has recently been discovered in the collection of the German National Museum. Otherwise, Moslem gold minting in Damascus is known only from the reign of Kalim (1279–1298) onward (idem, *Islamisches Jahrbuch*, p. 120). The *dirham* attributed to Hama, 562, by Böing, *Arabisches*, p. 108, no. 204 (now in the collection of the German National Museum, where it was introduced by one of the present authors), is surely spurious. The mint name is somewhat unclear but is probably al-Jabalutayn (Aman al-Din). It is, incidentally, not impossible that the introduction of gold minting at Damascus was a response to the cessation of crusader gold minting in or shortly after 1258.

25. Ediphan, *Antiquité, Histoire des prix et des valeurs dans l'Orient médiéval* (Paris, 1899), pp. 229–240, and Böing, *op. cit.*, pp. 71–93, provide precise figures for the use of *šarf* and *šarf* *dirhams*. For example, the wage of a household by Mir al-Din (d. 1274) yielded in the year 600 (1211–12) 9,000 *šarf* *dirhams* per month (Abd al-Rahmān, *Kitāb al-awṣāf wa'l-ahwāl al-sharīfīya*, ed. Muḥammad Ḥamad Muḥammad Aḥmad [Cairo, 1958], I, 23). A wage of money is a Moslem slave employment for some working class, so this is surely an example of the use of *šarf* *dirhams* among Moslems which bears witness. Another example, cited by Lewis (ibid.) is a statement of the price of grain in Damascus at 1178/9 in *šarf* *dirhams*. The debate over the use of crusader coins by Moslems has perhaps been overdone. Since Syria had no mint for gold during most of the 12th and 13th centuries, and since it is known that crusader *brevelets* were used by Moslems for certain transactions, and perhaps even trade payments, it can only be assumed that these *brevelets* were used by Moslems in further transactions among themselves. The only alternative would have been reserving such coins for other transactions with the crusaders in dealing them to the Moslem coast in Egypt and Mesopotamia for exchange. It does not necessarily follow that crusader coins predominated in the gold money in circulation, and only a tiny minority of transactions were large enough to make gold coins appropriate.

26. Böing and Corbett Arick, *Islamisches Jahrbuch, muslimische numismatische Mittheilungen* (Leipzig: 1906), no. 1866 (Konya, 1171), and *passim*.

ISLAMIC SILVER COINAGE

The eleventh and most of the twelfth centuries have been regarded as an era of "silver famine" for the Moslem Near East, with little or no silver coinage, but this is a misconception, as shown not only by the frequent references in Arabic written sources to transactions in dirhams, but also by the increasing repertoire of silver coins of Egypt and Syria found by numismatists once they began looking for them.²⁷ It is nevertheless true that the full-weight good silver dirham of the eighth to tenth centuries vanishes from the central Islamic lands in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, and it seems that many areas, especially east of the Euphrates, almost totally ceased coinage in silver for some time. The silver coinage of Egypt and Syria that survives from this period is difficult to study for a variety of reasons,²⁸ and the present state of numismatic knowledge is fragmentary indeed. Only a few generalizations can be made at this time. The region east of the Euphrates can be dealt with summarily: dirhams disappear completely, as far as is now known, in the early eleventh century (except in the farthest east) and do not reappear until the thirteenth century.

The type of small dirham characteristic of Egypt and Syria in the Fatimid era first appeared in Sicily or North Africa under the Aghlabids in the ninth century. This coinage was continued by the Fatimids and introduced by them to Egypt and Syria when they conquered these lands in 969. It is difficult to say if Egypt had any substantial dirham coinage before that date, for only a handful of Egyptian Ikhshidid dirhams are known. As with the absence of late Ikhshidid dinars, the paucity of Ikhshidid dirhams may be a result of the recoinage forced at the beginning of the Fatimid period. On the other hand, Egypt had no Islamic silver coinage at all before 787, and Egyptian dirhams are rare throughout the 'Abbasid and Tulunid eras.

²⁷ Claude Cahen, "Monetary Circulation in Egypt at the Time of the Crusades and the Reform of Al-Kamil," in *The Islamic Middle East (750-1000)*, ed. Aron L. Udovitch (Princeton, 1971), pp. 315-316; Böling, "History of the Dirham in Egypt from the Fatimid Conquest until the Collapse of the Mamluk Empire, 356-822 A./966-1317 A.D.," *Rev. numm.*, 93: 207-311 (1981), 109-148.

²⁸ The silver coins of the period are small and much alloyed with copper, making them especially liable to corrosion, which usually renders the inscriptions partially illegible. Judging by those that survive, they were not particularly well struck to begin with; the dies are larger than the coin blank, so that only a part of the inscription appears on the coin. Sometimes most of the coin surface is blank, with only one or two letters to be seen. As a result, only a small proportion of the coins can be attributed with certainty to a specific date and place. The small dark-colored bits have often been overlooked or ignored as scientific archaeological excavations, and they are of no interest at all to the field diggers who, for better or worse, are the main source for numismatic finds from the Near East.

In the reign of al-Hakim difficulties which are not yet clearly understood occurred, ending up in the recoinage of A.H. 400 (1009/10), when, for the first time, the gold coinage was changed in appearance during a caliph's reign.³⁰ It is possible, in fact, that this and the subsequent changes in the design of the gold coinage mentioned above are related much more to changes in the silver coinage than in the dinar. At any rate, the evolution of Fatimid silver coinage in the eleventh century will not be understood until the metrology and silver content of each of the successive types is studied separately. The general picture, however, is one of decline in the fineness of the silver, accompanied naturally by lower exchange rates against the dinar, which remained relatively constant in fineness.³¹ At the end of the century, references to dirhams in Egypt are seldom encountered in the written sources, while surviving examples of such dirhams from the late years of al-Mustansir and the reign of al-Musta'li are few.

The new dinar type introduced in 490 (1096/7) was accompanied by a new dirham.³² The designs of the two denominations are similar, but there was also a change in the fabrication of dirhams. Previously they were thin and circular, probably cut or punched out of silver sheets before striking, but after 490, and until the beginning of the thirteenth century, dirhams were struck on squarish chunks of silver cut by a chisel from a long ribbon-shaped ingot. Usually two opposite edges of the coins can be seen to be cut, but sometimes "longue-shaped" dirhams are found with three rounded edges and one cut, evidently the end of an ingot.³³ This dirham type endured into the Ayyubid era with only the necessary changes in inscription (pl. XIII, no. 16).

Several contemporary descriptions of the Ayyubid Egyptian mint specify that these dirhams were to be 30 percent silver and 70 percent

30. Al-Maqrī, *Ighrār al-awṣāf al-ḥaqīq al-sharīfah*, ed. Muḥammad Maḥmūd Zaydī and Muḥammad al-Shaykh (Cairo, 1940), pp. 15–16, 64–65. The problems arise in 397 according to the first passage, in 398, according to the second, but al-Maqrī does not say that the change in the coinage occurred in the same year, only that the alterations continued until the reform. The change in the appearance of the coinage does not occur until 402.

31. Ibid., "History," p. 122; Goyon, *op. cit.*, I, 264–281.

32. Both old- and new-type dirhams are known from the reign of al-Musta'li (a new-type block de four is published by Bédig, "Études numismatiques de l'Égypte médiévale: Période fatimide et ayyoubide, nouvelles observations sur la technique de monnayage," *Bulletin de l'Institut d'Égypte*, XXXIII (1951), 7 ff; the ANS has another (1913.46.1, pl. XIII, no. 14) as well as a dirham of the older type (1913.12.13; unpublished, pl. XIII, no. 13). Ibn-Maḥmūd, *op. cit.*, II, 62, mentions a reform of the dinar in 491, and it seems reasonable to suppose that the new dirhams were introduced at the same time. The change is, probably wrongly, attributed to al-Aḥmar's reign by al-Sayyid, *Qawā'id al-munḍabihāt*, II, 156 (ed. 1298, II, 325).

33. Bédig, "Études numismatiques de l'Égypte médiévale, III. Fatimides, Ayyoubides, premiers Mamelouks, leurs techniques monétaires," *Bulletin de l'Institut d'Égypte*, XXXV (1953), 408–429.

copper, a statement largely confirmed by a small number of modern analyses.³³ It seems likely that this was the intended fineness from the beginning. The weights of these little coins are quite irregular, ranging from less than half a gram up to more than two grams; for payments, they were weighed against a standard of about 2.95 grams per monetary dirham. The exchange rate during the twelfth and early thirteenth centuries was between 35 and 40 monetary dirhams per dinar.³⁴ In the Ayyūbid period, when these dirhams had to be distinguished from other silver coins, they are often identified specifically as "black" dirhams, but this term is seldom used earlier—they are simply called dirhams. A small number of larger round-flan dirhams of twelfth-century Fāṭimid Egypt survive; these have the same design and inscriptions as the square coins, vary widely in weight (from 2.25 to 3.60 grams), and judging by appearance (which can be misleading) have the same silver purity as the square coins (pl. XIII, no. 15).³⁵ Probably these should be regarded only as an alternate physical form of the standard dirham with the same monetary value (weight for weight). These Fāṭimid large black dirhams are not to be confused with the new dirhams introduced by Saladin, discussed below. The latter were a currency separate from the black dirham and intended to replace it. Ayyūbid large black dirhams have not been found.

In 622 (1225/6), under the Ayyūbid sultan al-Kāmil, a change was made in the small dirhams because of certain difficulties with the existing silver issues, but as contemporary sources make clear, the change was only in the method of manufacture.³⁶ The new "round" or

33. Ibn al-Hakam, *Qirṭab al-dīnārīn*, ed. Yūsuf Sayyid al-Nayak (Cairo, 1941), pp. 321–323; al-Makharraz, *al-Minhaj*, 1000, Cairo. "Le Frappe des monnaies en Egypte au XII^e siècle d'après le *Minhaj* d'al-Makharraz," in *New Eastern Mediterranean, Geography, Epigraphy and History Studies in Honor of George C. Miles*, ed. Dickson E. Kanyajian (Beirut, 1974) p. 128. Ibn al-Nayak, *Kashf al-sirr al-ṭayyib bi-dīnār al-dīnār al-ṭayyib*, ed. 'Abd al-Rahmān Fakhri (S. Ans, 1966), pp. 83–84, 87, 1000. Elsewhere, "Estimate from the Technical Museum on the Ayyūbid Mint in Cairo," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XV (1953), 440–442. For modern analyses see Bakog, "History," pp. 133, 138.

34. Goyon, *op. cit.*, I, 379–383. It is often assumed that the rate 40 : 1 corresponds to a 100% for pure silver (naṣṣab) dirham of 174 : 1, the idea is mathematically incorrect, 40 : 1 for 30 percent fineness is equal to 32 : 1 for pure silver. An exchange rate of 32 : 1 is attested only for the second half of the 12th century (*Ibid.*, I, 386–387, 390), on the other hand, 32 : 1 is attested by one document of the twelfth century (*Ibid.*, I, 387, no. 59).

35. Bakog, "Notes on Some Fatimid Round-Flan Dirhams," *Nouvelles Chres.*, 72a, no. 1 (1964), 173–179.

36. Described by Ibn al-Nayak, *op. cit.*, pp. 83–84, who states that they are to be 30 percent silver. The change may have been a restoration of the black dirham standard, for al-Kāmil's early dirhams are different in fabric and design from previous black dirhams and may have been less fine or otherwise unsatisfactory. Al-Kāmil has been usually accused of a "reformed fraud" because al-Maqrīṣī, two centuries later, erroneously states that his new dirhams were two-thirds

"globular" black dirhams were made by striking blanks produced by pouring molten alloy over a cone so that the drops fall into water; their fineness, however, was unchanged. These continued to be struck in Egypt until the reign of Baybars. In his reign or later, the older cut ribbon technique was reintroduced. The last known are from the reign of al-Sālih Ismā'īl (1342-1345).³⁷ Although the fabric of Mamluk black dirhams is similar to earlier ones, it is not known if their fineness was the same.

In the eleventh century Fātimid dirhams were also issued at Syrian mints, apparently according to the same system that obtained in Egypt. Silver minting did not, however, cease in Syria at the time of the closure of the Fātimid gold mints mentioned above, although it seems to have diminished considerably. Debased silver coins are known bearing the names of Tughtig of Damascus (497-522: 1104-1128), Alp Arslan (507-508: 1113-1115) of Aleppo (but probably struck in Damascus) (pl. XIII, no. 17),³⁸ and the Bōrid Ismā'īl of Damascus (526-529: 1132-1135), as well as dirhams corresponding to the brief gold series from Bōrid Damascus, 530-540 (1135-1146). Generally the designs of these coins are inspired by contemporary or past Fātimid issues, but the names on them are those of Selchūkids, the 'Abbāsīd caliphs, and local Turkish Syrian rulers. Their debasement is such that it is difficult to be certain in some instances whether they are intended to be dirhams or copper *faḥḥa*, but at least some are surely billon (heavily alloyed silver).³⁹ One billon issue of Aleppo, probably of 479-487 (1086-1095), is also known.⁴⁰ More of these coins will probably be found as numismatists become aware of their existence, but nevertheless they seem to be excessively scarce and probably were not issued in large quantities. None are known after 541 (1146/7). Neither these nor the preceding Fātimid silver issues were imitated by the crusaders, probably because the Franks' own small debased pennies fulfilled the same monetary function.

silver while they are in fact less than one-third, but there is no evidence that al-Karrāḥ himself made such an altered claim, which would have fooled no one.

37. *Index, Medieval Eastern*, p. 372, no. 284.

38. *Kawāl al-Dīn, Kawāl al-Dīn al-Dīn al-Dīn al-Dīn al-Dīn*, in *ANC*, Cr., III, 604 mentions that Alp Arslan's name was put on the coinage of Damascus after his conquest of the city in 506 (1113); the *ANC* coin of Alp Arslan is probably this issue.

39. Only a few examples of these series have been published. Lane-Poole, *Coinage*, IX, 294, no. 503 (a billon dirham of Tughtig); *Coinage*, *Eastern*, "Seljuks period," *Seljuks* *Armenian* *Dirham*, II (1971), 578, no. 3894 (a billon dirham of Damascus, no. 530-540). Others enter in public and private collections.

40. Lutz Röck, "Usulien Silbermünzen der Seljuken und ihrer Nachfolger aus Nordsyrien," *Abhandlungen Numismatischer Zeitsung*, XII, no. 1 (March 1962), 15, no. 2.

Saladin's conquests in Syria began a new era in the history of the Islamic dirham. He introduced for the first time in two centuries the minting of full-weight good silver dirhams at Damascus, where the earliest recorded date on his new dirhams is 571 (1173/6), the year after his occupation of the city (pl. XIII, no. 18).⁴¹ By the following year, 572 (1176/7), silver dirhams were being struck in Aleppo with the name of the Zengid atabeg, Isma'īl ibn Mahmūd (pl. XIV, no. 20).⁴²

Saladin's new dirhams departed from previous Islamic practice in having the main inscriptions on both sides enclosed in a square, which was in turn enclosed in a circle with subsidiary inscriptions in the sectors between the square and the circle.⁴³ When Saladin took Aleppo in 1183, he introduced full dirhams there as well, but with the central inscriptions enclosed in a hexagram, or "seal of Solomon", like pl. XIV, no. 21, a coin of his son al-Zāhir.⁴⁴ Dirhams with one or the other of these designs were struck at several Ayyūbid mints in Syria (including, at one time or another, Gaza, Hamah, and Hama) as well as in towns in upper Mesopotamia and beyond, including Akhiat, Harran, Hija Kafil, Manbij, Mardin, Malayfariqa, Nusayr, and Edessa (al-Ruha'). They were issued by the Artukids as well as by Ayyūbid princes, and also by the crusaders, as will be seen (pl. XIII, no. 19, a coin of Damascus, 1242/3, is one of the prototypes for the crusader dirham). Both the square-type and hexagram-type dirhams were accompanied by analogous half dirhams, which probably circulated at par with the full dirhams (on a weight-for-weight basis) and are not to be confused with the black dirhams of Egypt, a separate currency.

In Shawwāl 583 (1187), Saladin ordered the introduction of these dirhams in Egypt to replace the Egyptian black dirhams, intending to relieve the populace of the necessity of weighing dirhams in transactions. The innovation did not succeed, however, possibly because the fineness of the new dirhams (in Egypt) was not consistent: some were pure silver and others only half silver.⁴⁵ At either fineness, the

41 Ignace Fattouh, *Mustafā al-Muḥammadī, I* (Beirut, 1962), II, no. 405.

42 Unpublished, in the ANS collection (1911.108.4). A published example, of 574, is in Lamb-Pope, *op. cit.*, II, 213, no. 601.

43 The design was new for dirhams, but was adapted from the prestigious Mamlūk gold *ḍinār* of the eastern Mediterranean.

44 This design was quite new, and was noted by the historian Ibn al-ʿIṣī (quoted by Abū al-Faḍl, *op. cit.* [Cairo, 1285/1271], II, 47).

45 The variation in fineness probably explains the conflicting reports by al-Maqrīṣī in the *Shawāhid al-ʿaṣr* (*ʿaṣr al-ʿaṣr*), ed. and trans. David Easton, "Études de numismatique et de métrologie musulmanes," *Revue Numism.* X (1909), 126-128, he states that the new dirhams were half silver and half copper, but in the *Kaṭṭāb al-ḥaṣṣ* (*al-ḥaṣṣ al-ḥaṣṣ*), ed. Zayn al-Dīn (Cairo, 1904) I, 98, the new dirhams are said to be of pure silver. These coins are very

new dirhams with their stable weight might have been acceptable and have replaced the irregular black dirhams as intended, but the populace apparently considered unreliability in alloy a greater disadvantage than the inconvenience of weighing out the black dirhams with their stable 30 percent silver content. The black dirham continued to be issued in Egypt throughout the Aiyūbid period and into the Mamluk era, but full dirhams, of Damascus type, were also struck in Egypt under al-'Adil I and from the 1240's until 1260; their fineness is unknown.

In the latter year Baybars introduced a new dirham, analogous in appearance to his gold coinage and with 70 percent silver. This was the standard silver issue of the rest of the thirteenth and first half of the fourteenth century in both Egypt and Syria (pl. XIV, no. 23).⁴⁴

Following Saladin's initiative, silver coinage spread to Anatolia, Mesopotamia, and Iran in the thirteenth century. The Seljuks of Rūm produced massive issues of dirhams from Anatolian mints, with a design quite different from Saladin's; Cilician Armenia issued quantities of silver trams; and the Ayyūbid caliphs began minting dirhams in the 1230's. Under the Mongols, silver coinage became the standard currency of Iran by the end of the thirteenth century, in complete contrast to the situation only a century before. None of these coinages, however, is relevant to that of the crusaders.

ISLAMIC COPPER COINAGE

In general, copper coinage disappeared in the Moslem world in the ninth century, not to reappear until the twelfth or later. Egypt, for example, had no copper coinage after 872. In areas without copper currency, everyday transactions were probably carried out with cut-up dirhams, with standard commodities, or by accumulating transactions at neighborhood merchants until the total bill was large enough to pay with a dirham. In Fatimid and Aiyūbid Egypt, the small somewhat debased dirhams had a value low enough for everyday minor purchases.

There are, however, exceptions to this general situation. One area

marks today. The two in the AMS were analyzed by Professor Adon A. Gordon of the University of Michigan Department of Chemistry. One (1972.238.146), dated 1252, contained 72 percent silver, while a second (1972.238.138), pl. XIV, no. 23), of 1246, was 71.7 percent fine. Note that the later coin is the poorer, but it would be hazardous to draw conclusions as to the temporal or geographic of the two fineness levels from only two examples.

44. Bailey, *Muslimah Sahārah*; Bates, "The Coinage of the Mamlūk Sultān Baybars I Adālah (1244-1260) Coinage," *AMS, Museum Notes*, XLII (1977), 161-181.

where copper persisted longer than elsewhere, and returned sooner, was northern Syria. The earliest datable issue in the crusader period bears the name of Ridwan, ruler of Aleppo (1095-1113; pl. XIV, no. 24), but there are many anonymous coins of fabric and style similar to this issue, some of which may be earlier than his reign (pl. XIV, no. 25).⁴⁷ These coins are irregular in shape, but most often polygonal, with straight edges; the blanks appear to have been cut from thin sheets of copper with shears. They bear images of various kinds—a lion, elephant, or bird—or complicated geometrical figures. Their inscriptions are sparse and often cryptic. On the basis of provenance and a general similarity of style, they have generally been attributed to the Selchūkids of Syria, and perhaps because of Ridwan's name, Aleppo is regarded as their center of manufacture, but until they have been carefully studied, these identifications should be accepted only tentatively. These coins are probably the original *qirāṭs*, a term that is known first in an account of the death of Ridwan, who left behind dinars of gold, black dirhams, silver coins, and *qirāṭs*.⁴⁸ This notice and others throughout the twelfth and into the thirteenth century suggest that *qirāṭs*, which means literally "papyrus" or by extension any rough brown paper, came to designate copper coinage in general in twelfth-century Syria. Looking at the coppers of the Selchūkids of Syria, one can see how the appellation may have arisen, because either the thin sheets of copper or the thin, often rectangular, coins themselves may have brought to mind sheets of brown paper.

It is not known how long these coins were struck. They were probably replaced by a copper issue of the Zengid Nur-ad-Dīn (1146-1174) struck on normal round flans with images borrowed from Byzantine coppers, but with his name and title in Arabic (pl. XIV, no. 26). These are generally attributed to Aleppo. Nur-ad-Dīn also minted copper coinage in Damascus, with a purely inscriptional issue bearing his name and the caliph's in bold tall script (pl. XIV, no. 27). The mint and date of issue are inscribed in the margin of these coins, but the dates most often are illegible; the earliest so far recorded is 558 (1162/3).⁴⁹ This particular Damascus issue was also called *qirāṭs* and was continued by Saladin and his successors until 611 (1214/5), when it was abolished.⁵⁰

47. Miles, "Islamic Coins," in *Antioch-on-the-Orontes*, IV, 3, *Coinages and Islamic Culture*, ed. Frederick G. Waage (Princeton, 1948), pp. 110-121.

48. Ibn al-Bīrī, quoted in Ibn al-Farrā, *Ṣiḥḥ al-sharḥ wa-l-maḥḥ*, no. VI, no. 1, 73 verso (this reference was provided by Professor Charles Cohen).

49. Miksa Elzevitz, *Nur ad-Dīn, un grand prince musulman de Syrie au temps des croisades (1146-1174)* (Damascus, 1967), III, 821, noting a coin in the Damascus Museum.

50. Al-Maqrīzī, *Subḥ*, I, 136.

but small copper coinage continued to be called *qirāt* in Damascus until at least as late as 720 (1320/1).³¹

Since the crusader states of northern Syria also issued copper coins beginning in the early twelfth century, and Latin Europe had no indigenous copper coinage, the possibility exists of some influence between the crusader coppers and the early polygonal *qirāt*. The two series, however, are, with rare exceptions, not very similar in appearance. The crusader coppers are adaptations of Byzantine types, while the images on the Moslem coins are neither Byzantine nor Frankish but rather traditional Near Eastern. The crusader coins are also dissimilar in fabric, being struck on round, probably cast, flans, although a few thin polygonal crusader coppers are known, perhaps overstruck on Moslem *qirāt*.³² It is not even clear which series antedates the other, since Miler's tentative attribution of a Moslem issue to the time of the Selchūkid Maḥk-Shāh (d. 483/1092) is unconfirmed. At most, it may be that the crusaders conquered a population using copper coins and issued their own coppers to meet an existing economic need. A single reference indicates that the Moslems referred to the crusader coppers also as *qirāt*.³³

There are two other important Moslem copper coinages of the crusader era. One, the large image-bearing coppers of eastern Anatolia and northern Mesopotamia, evidently began as a Moslem adaptation of the heavy anonymous coppers of Byzantium, because the earliest issues, under the Dānišmānīd Aṣṣir Ghāṣ (1104–1134) and Muḥammad (1134–1140; pl. XIV, no. 28), bear only Byzantine inscriptions and images.³⁴ Later issues have Arabic inscriptions combined with a wide range of different images, including Byzantine images from coins or wall paintings, types copied from pre-Islamic coins (Greek [pl. XIV, no. 29], Roman, Parthian, and Sasanid), personifications of planets and other astronomical phenomena, and traditional Near Eastern royal images. Such coppers were struck by Dānišmānīds, Artukids, Zengids, Ayyubids, Rum Selchūkids, and several minor Moslem dynasties. It has often been suggested that the use of images on this coinage evinces crusader influence, or issuance for trade with the crusaders, but in fact

31. *Ibid.*, II, 265, where the coins are described as “faïen which are called *qirāt*”; see *Asiatic* esp. chs. on 242, 243, 266, and 267 for other references to *qirāt* in the 13th century.

32. Gustave Schlumberger, *Numismatique de l'Orient latin* (Paris, 1878), plate II, nos. 4–5; *Medall.*, *Coinage of the Crusades*, plate 3, no. 48.

33. Aḥī-Shamṣī, *Nikāyat as-sultān Bī ḥabīb al-Malik*, ed. al-Baṣ al-Malik (Cairo, 1908), p. 75.

34. Emile I. Whittin, “A Contribution to Dānišmānīd History: the Figured Copper Coins,” *ANS, Museum Notes*, XXX (1960), 133–144.

there are no images derived from Latin Europe, or any other evidence linking these coins with the crusaders. Rather, the large coppers are generally found only in the regions where they were struck, and must have had an important place in the local monetary systems, judging by the abundance of surviving specimens. The large coppers gradually disappear during the thirteenth century, subsequent to (perhaps because of) the introduction of *dirhams* in their region.¹³

Copper coinage was reintroduced to Egypt in 612 (1225) by the Aiyūbid sultan al-Kāmil. Initial difficulties resulted in several withdrawals of the new currency under the Aiyūbids, but by the time of the Mamluks copper *fulūs* were an accepted part of Egypt's currency. These Egyptian coppers, however, do not seem to have circulated outside Egypt and have little relevance to the crusaders.¹⁴

B. Crusader Arabic Gold Issues¹⁵

The kings of Jerusalem and the counts of Tripoli struck, in addition to billion deniers of western pattern, gold coinages for their domains. These coins, called *bizanti saraceni* or *bizanti saraceniati* in the Latin sources, were issued in considerable quantities. From sometime before the reign of Baldwin III (1143–1163) until 1251 these beans imitated more or less faithfully Moslem *dirhams*, especially those of the Fatimid caliphs al-Mustansir and al-Āmir. The issues of these long-reigning caliphs can be presumed, although there is no useful archaeological evidence, to have been the normal currency in Syria in the first decades after the establishment of the Latin kingdom. After 1251 the inscriptions on the coins were Christian, but still in Arabic. The imitations of al-Mustansir's coinage (prototype, pl. XII, nos. 3, 5) are probably to be attributed to the northern principalities, while the coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem was exclusively of the type of al-Āmir (prototype, pl. XII, no. 6). The best of the imitations are

13. The best general catalogue and discussion of the series in its historical context is often, *The Public Figure: Political Iconography in Medieval Manuscripts*, Ph.D. dissertation, New York University, 1979.

14. Hasmoune Kabbū, *The Physical Space of Egypt, A.H. 564–1606/5. 1098–1881* (London, 1972), pp. 163–164, 188–189, 195–197; Jan L. Beckwith, "Crusader Monetary Policy: Copper," *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, XLX (1976), 22–47; Balguy, *Appendix*, pp. 154–160. The argument put forward by Balguy and others that glass pieces were used as small change in Egypt is countered by Bury, "The Prouce," *passim*.

15. This section was written by Hasmoune, with additions and modifications by Bury.

elegant and legible, but the inscriptions and dates they bear are those of the prototype and irrelevant to their historical interpretation. Other specimens are blundered and meaningless to varying degrees. The evidence for their geographical and chronological attribution is therefore from finds of these coins in association in hoards; from analyses of their metal fineness, the relative proportions of trace elements in their alloys, and their weight standards; and from contemporary literary texts, Latin and Arabic.²⁴

The official status of these coins (which have long been recognized as belonging in some sense to the crusader principalities)²⁵ is proved by documentary sources, in which they are sometimes referred to explicitly as, for example, *bezanti auri saracenati de moneta regis Hierusalem* (gold saracenate bezants of the coinage of the king of Jerusalem). They were intended to circulate within the Latin states, and there is little if any evidence to suggest that they enjoyed an international role, except that they are sometimes found in Cilician Armenia, and finds and literary references show that they were used in the Moslem hinterland of the crusader states, for Moslem Syria had little gold coinage of its own in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The idea that they were widely current in the Mediterranean world, however, is a canard. They were, rather, one element (the other being billon) in a national coinage under tight control.

Although the bezants were imitations, they were not intended to deceive.²⁶ Their weight standards were less than the nominal Islamic dinar of 4.25 grams, and although Moslem gold coins of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries fluctuate in weight, few drop below 4.0 grams, while the bezants virtually never exceed that weight. Those who were wealthy enough to use gold coins would have had no trouble in distinguishing the two currencies, which in any case did not normally mingle in circulation. Moreover, the alloy of the bezant was quite different from that of the dinar. Faked dinars of the crusader period, including the prototypes of the crusader imitations, were usually as pure as the workmen's skill could make them, while nearly all of the imitations have finenesses of 80 percent or less. The debased alloys of the bezants were in no way either fraudulent or incompetent: they reflected decisions to give the coins a certain intrinsic value.

24 For a more detailed discussion of the evidence for the attributions to be proposed here see Contar and Melville, *op. cit.*, and Melville, *Coinage of the Crusades*, pp. 9-24, 42-44.

25 The first to identify them was Henri Lammie, in 1862; see Babel and Voss, *op. cit.*, p. 123.

26 Cf. Ekonomou, "Arabic Debasement Struck by the Crusaders, a Case of Ignorance or of Economic Sabotage," *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, VII (1964), 167-182.

For the most part, the alloy variations were parallel in the northern and southern crusader states. From about the middle of the twelfth century the alloy was, by medieval standards, controlled within a perfectly acceptable variation of 1-2 percent, and the bezant deserved its high reputation. It was a far more valuable coin than the silver or billon deniers that were universal in western Christendom, and it answered the needs, no doubt, of a merchant class that would otherwise have found it convenient to use Byzantine or Arabic gold pieces. To the economic historian, the significant aspect of the evidence of the bezants is that gold should have flowed into the mints of the Latin east in quantities sufficient to strike so many coins.

THE GOLD COINAGE OF THE KINGDOM OF JERUSALEM

The most important evidence for the relative chronology of the gold coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem is furnished by analysis of the gold content of the bezants. Nearly all the bezants imitating the coinage of al-Āmir can be divided into two groups, one of close to 80 percent fineness and another of about 68 percent. Hoard evidence, as well as the fact that the dated Christian Arabic coinage of 1251 and after is also of about 68 percent fineness, indicate that the latter coins are the later in time. The small remaining body of coins with fineness above 80 percent can reasonably be placed at the beginning of the sequence. Establishing an absolute chronology for these series is more problematic.

The date of the beginning of gold coinage in the kingdom is difficult to estimate. Ibn-Khalikān, a century and a half later (but presumably using an earlier source), records that when the city of Tyre eventually fell to the Franks in 1124 the crusaders continued for three years to strike coins in the name of al-Āmir, at the end of which time they ceased to do so.⁴¹ Since no coins of Tyre have survived bearing the year 518, the Moslem date of the capture of the city, and only one is known of the previous year, it is difficult to assume that the crusaders simply continued to strike the Moslem issue current at the time of the conquest, for at least one or two might be expected to have survived. In any case Acre, which seems to have been a more important mint for the crusaders than Tyre, was conquered in 1104, and had had a Moslem mint at least until 1101. It is theoretically possible that the minting of gold by the crusaders might have begun at Acre even before the conquest of Tyre. The earliest evidence from the Latin side

⁴¹ Ibn-Khalikān, *Wuṣṭat*, loc. cit. (p. 23).

is a *colleganza* of July 1142, which makes it certain that crusader bezants were already being struck in the kingdom of Jerusalem before the accession of Baldwin III: it refers to a debt to be paid at Acre in *bizancior saracenosus bonos aut de rege illius terre de peso secundum consuetudinem illius terre*⁴² (saracensate bezants of good gold of the king of that country and of a weight according to the custom of that country).

If, then, the crusaders began striking gold coins sometime between 1104 and 1142, what were these coins? Among issues identified so far as crusader imitations, there is only one variety which, by reason of its high gold content, is a likely candidate for an issue of the kingdom of Jerusalem in the period before the introduction of coins of 80 percent fineness about the middle of the twelfth century. This is BY 26, a relatively rare group, which amalgamates two very different styles of coinage, one small and compact (pl. XV, no. 30), the other on larger flans, with stiff, thin lettering and a wide empty border between the two circles of the legend (pl. XV, no. 31). Four specimens of the large-flan variety range from 91 to 97.4 percent in fineness, while three small-flan coins are lower, from 82.5 to 88.1 percent.⁴³ Both styles imitate the coinage of al-Āmir, but they are rather different from one another in appearance. The tall, elegant script and wide border of the large-flan coins is unlike any other crusader imitations, and indeed rather unlike the Fātimid prototype; the very earliest issues of al-Āmir, just after 1101, have a wider space between inner and outer inscriptions than his later *dīnars*, but their script is nothing like the large-flan BY 26. The small-flan coins included in BY 26 are, on the contrary, much like the later crusader issues and resemble also their Fātimid prototypes. Probably the two varieties should be reclassified separately, with the small-flan coins seen as precursors of the Acre coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem, and the large-flan coins reserved for further consideration. This small handful of known specimens seems insufficient to fill the entire span of years during which they may have been issued. It may be, however, that there were originally many more, and that the adoption of the 80 percent standard was accompanied by a recoining that called in most of the existing bezants to the melting pot.

The date of the introduction of the 80 percent standard is quite uncertain. The aftermath of the Second Crusade, 1148, seems to be the earliest possible occasion. A later date, up to just before 1165, would

⁴² *Ramondino Mirano della Rocca and Ascanio Lombardo, eds., Documenti del nuovo regno saraceno sup. cit.* 37-38 (Regesta christiana Italiae, XXVIII [1940], no. 31).

⁴³ More fully discussed in Gordon and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, pp. 139-140.

fit the numismatic evidence as well, and perhaps accord with the references to *bezantior* . . . *de moneta regis Hierusalem* which begin in 1161.⁴⁴ The date 1165 as *ante quem* is suggested by a document of that year which speaks of *bezantior* . . . *novos* and *veteres*; the *novi* are perhaps the 80 percent coins, while *veteres* are those of higher fineness. It must be admitted, however, that *novi* is a term used over a wide range of dates, and its interpretation is not without difficulties. Still, it seems safe at least to say that the bezants of 80 percent fineness were introduced probably in the reign of Baldwin III, or under Amalric (1163–1174) at the latest.

The date of the reduction in fineness from 80 to 68 percent can almost certainly be put in the second half of the twelfth century, and one historical occasion immediately presents itself as probable: the time of Saladin's conquests, or about 1186–1188. The events of 1187 and 1188 shattered the Latin kingdom; Guy (1186–1192) evidently found it impossible to issue proper silver coinage, and the financial crisis may have necessitated a change in the gold currency as well. The date is supported by further references in documents of 1190, 1192, and 1194 to "new bezants". Further possible support is provided by a hoard said to be from Latakia, if this provenance is reliable, for that city fell to Saladin in July 1188 and the hoard contained two coins of the reduced standard along with thirty-nine of the 80 percent standard. It seems likely, therefore, to have been concealed just at the time of danger from Saladin, placing the beginning of the new coinage at least some months earlier.⁴⁵

The coins to be attributed to this phase are BY 25 (pl. XV, no. 32), BY 27a–d (pl. XV, no. 33), BY 27f, BY 20–21 (pl. XV, no. 34), and BY 22–24 (pl. XV, no. 35). All of these are imitations of the coinage of al-Āmir, although the type was standard in Egypt throughout most of the twelfth century. They can be divided, largely on the basis of differences in the ratio of silver to copper as minor constituents of the alloy, into three groups which probably correspond to different mints: Acre and Tyre no doubt account for most of the production, but there are problems in deciding which group belongs to which mint. Perhaps BY 25 and 27 belong to Acre, BY 20–21 possibly to Tyre, while BY 22–24 remain uncertain and may be the product either of the same mint as BY 20–21 or of a third mint.⁴⁶ BY 25 as listed by Balog and

44. Froa, "Monnaies musulmanes du roi de Jérusalem," *Bulletin de la Société française de numismatique* (1901), pp. 81–82; Cordes and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, p. 128.

45. Cordes and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, pp. 126–128.

46. The rather complicated arguments for mint attribution are set out in detail by Cordes and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, pp. 122–126.

Yvon among the "legible" imitations, while BY 27 begins the listing of "imitations grossières", completely illegible, but there is little obvious difference among the many bezants assigned to these two classes. Nor for that matter is there any great visual distinction between the groups assigned to Acre, Tyre, and a possible uncertain mint. They are tentatively assigned on the basis of consistent differences in the ratio of silver to copper as alloying elements, and, in the case of BY 20-21, on the fact that a large proportion of these coins were in a hoard said to have been found near Tyre.⁶⁷ The existence of a mint at Tyre at least until 1190-1192 is shown by a Venetian document of a later date referring to its closure or relocation in this period.⁶⁸ Probably a definitive classification of these coins can be made only on the basis of a complete die study in conjunction with the results of metal analysis. It seems likely that the bezants of the second phase initially were intended to be of 20 Byzantine carats weight, about 3.74 grams, and to contain 16 carats of gold, 3½ carats of silver, and ½ carat of copper, with some falling away from these standards as time went on.⁶⁹

The bezants of the third phase of the coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem have the same prototype as those of the second phase and are superficially similar, but in this instance it is easy to distinguish the two phases visually: the coins of phase 3 (BY 27e-f and 28-32; pl. XV, no. 36) are markedly more barbarous in execution, with much thicker letters, executed as it were with a blunt instrument. Many of them have little symbols added in the central field of the obverse or reverse, such as a point, a pair of points, or a small crescent. They are also distinguished by their lower fineness, ranging mostly from 67 to 70 percent gold, with a few specimens as low as 64 percent, and by generally lower weights, ranging mostly from 3.25 to 3.5 grams. It seems possible that the mint intended to produce a coin of 18 carats weight, with 12 carats of gold, 4 carats of silver, and 2 of copper, resulting in a fineness of two-thirds gold, although the coins in general contain slightly more gold and less copper than this prescription would yield. The discrepancy may be explained by error in the analytical technique, by irregularities at the mint, or by use of a different alloy formula.⁷⁰ Another indication of the assumed fineness of these coins is provided by the Moslem writer an-Nihālusi, who in his discussion of problems in the Egyptian mint writes about 1242 men-

67. Balog and Yvon, "Des nouvelles découvertes d'or des croisés," *ANES, Museum Notes*, XI (1967), 161-162. See above, note 32.

68. Mitchell, *Coinage of the Crusades*, p. 12.

69. Oakes and Mitchell, *op. cit.*, p. 143.

70. See *ibid.*, pp. 141-142, for full discussion.

dions that Šarīf dinars were accepted by the mint at a rate of 60 Egyptian mithqals per 100 Šarīf mithqals;⁷¹ that is, a given weight of Šarīf dinars was valued at 60 percent of the value of an equal weight of Egyptian dinars (which were assumed by the mint to be pure gold). If we assume that this figure was the final result to the customer, taking into account the 5 percent minting charge which was standard a few years earlier (according to Ibn-Ba'rah⁷²), it appears that the Šarīf dinar was rated as if 65 percent gold. This is well within the actual fineness range of phase 3 dinars, and if one assumes also that the Egyptian mint slightly underestimated the fineness of foreign dinars, as appears from Ibn-Ba'rah's tabulation, the figure is not inconsistent with an estimated intended fineness of two-thirds gold.

Probably nearly all these are products of the Acre mint, an assumption based on their similarity in weight, fineness, and silver/copper ratio

71. Az-Ma'rifat, *Lexicon al-qawā'id al-madīnah*, ed. Cohen, *Bulletin des études orientales*, XVI (1946-1947), 33.

72. Ibn-Ba'rah, op. cit., pp. 38-42, *Shamsatun*, "Standard," p. 161. Shamsatun's proposal that Ibn-Ba'rah also refers to the Šarīf dinar is in error. The very obvious word that Shamsatun read "Šarīf" has been read "Šarīf" by the subsequent editors of the text (Peters, editor of the complete manuscript, and Shauar Mu'nis, who edited the passage in his edition of *Kitāb al-Fatāwā al-Kāmil*, *Ad-dawlah al-mamlūkiyah fī dawlat al-qāhira al-misriyah* [Madrās, 1946], p. 31, no. 2). That is, the word "Šarīf" is used twice in the text, and the two first lines of the tabulation by Shamsatun both refer to the same base, which is to be identified as North African, too uncertain. On the other hand, various entry in Ibn-Ba'rah's list of the values of various gold pieces set by the Egyptians have many variants, which show apparent corruption of the text: a reference to the Šarīf dinar "This is the name of the coin, called in the manuscript: 'Šarīf' or 'Šarīf' dinar, which were having any evident relation, Pānī and Mu'nis, the editors of the text, both suggest regarding this word as 'Šarīf', meaning dinar struck by a house named Šarīf al-Dīn, the status of the Zangid sultans of Hama might be correct, but these seem to be introduced already under the term 'Šarīf' (Shamsatun suggested a similarity of 'Šarīf' with the word he read 'Šarīf' in al-Nabulsi's text, which is at least Šarīf al-Dīn the reference under discussion above). It is hardly possible that Šarīf could have been transformed by a copyist into 'Šarīf' (the latter s and t are not edited in Arabic, but the rest of the word is the same).

A peculiarity of this passage is that, as this one instance, the various figures given by Ibn-Ba'rah do not add. He says that they were lost 18 percent in refining which, after deduction of the standard 5 percent base charges, left 85 mithqals per hundred as the customer. This figure is erroneous because Ibn-Ba'rah's listing is in order of fineness: 85 passages should come next the top of the list, but at the bottom. Moreover, Ibn-Ba'rah gives the current value of each of the coins in line, based on a standard of 40 dirhams per Egyptian mithqal, the "Šarīf" dinar is said to be worth 24 dirhams, but this figure is quite wrong if the coin is valued at 65 percent of the Egyptian mithqal. Shamsatun reached these conclusions by reducing the base in minting from 85 to 75, but this is opposed by the text's statement that 85 mithqals were left to the customer. We would propose another solution, based on the fact that the 24-dirham value given by the text corresponds exactly to a value of 60 mithqals per hundred, the same as the figure found as an equivalent for the Šarīf dinar. It may be that the original text of Ibn-Ba'rah had entries for both a Šarīf and a Šarīf dinar. The mithqal struck upon the present manuscripts are too unrecognizable for the dinars of Hama (85) and is the correct identification of the šarīf/šarīf (šarīf dinar) while the dirham value given could have pertained originally to the Šarīf dinar. The similarity of the two words may well have led some scribes to confuse the two entries.

to the bezants with Christian Arabic inscriptions, which bear the authentic mint name Acre. One analyzed example of the class BY 20-21 has only a 58 percent fineness, and may represent the phase 3 coinage of the Tyre mint. As suggested, this series comes after the imitations with 80 percent and began probably shortly before the concealment of the Latakia hoard (1187). The date may also have been not long before the closure of the Tyre mint (1190-1192), but the new bezants need not have been introduced immediately after the termination of the old, especially considering the sharp break in style between the two. There may have been a period of months or years between the end of one and the beginning of the next, while the crusaders reorganized after the defeats of 1187. As for the termination of phase 3, it is reasonable to believe that it continued until the visit of the papal legate Odo in 1250, because the introduction of Christian Arabic crusader gold immediately afterward makes no sense otherwise.

In the spring of 1250 Odo, bishop of Châlons-sur-Marne, arrived in Syria in the entourage of Louis IX and reported to pope Innocent IV on the monetary practices of the Franks in Syria. His report has not survived, but the response of Innocent IV is still extant.⁷³ In it the pope takes notice of the striking of bezants and drachmas (silver coins) by the Christians of Acre and Tripoli with the name of Mohammed and the date of the era of his birth (*sic*). The practice was forbidden, under pain of excommunication.

Even before Innocent's letter arrived, Odo, probably with Louis's support, put a stop to the purely imitative coinage. In response, the mint of Acre began the production of a new type of bezant, much like the old in its general appearance,⁷⁴ weight standard, and fineness, but bearing inscriptions in legible Arabic proclaiming Christian instead of Moslem doctrines (pl. XV, no. 37). On one side, the outer margin states the place and date of issue: "struck in Acre in the year one thousand two hundred, one and fifty, of the incarnation of our Lord the Messiah." The inner circular inscription proclaims "Father, Son, and Holy Ghost" and the central inscription continues, in two lines, "one

73. It is quoted by Laron, *Monnaies et finances arabes frappées en Syrie par les croisés* (Paris, 1877), pp. 52-53.

74. Babely and Yous, "Monnaies," p. 152, take issue with Laron's statement that the prototype for these coins is the same silver of al-Hamd that served as prototype for the imitations. They assert rather that the prototype is the "contemporary" Ayyubid gold coinage. This is nonsense; the coins are nothing like contemporary Ayyubid coins except in their native Arabic script, but this latter feature is only a result of the fact that the inscriptions for the first time are original, not copied from an old prototype, and therefore naturally in contemporary script. Otherwise the design, with a central field surrounded by two circular inscriptions, is identical to that of the imitations that preceded them.

godhead".⁷⁵ On the other side, the outer and inner circular inscriptions read: "We are glorified by the Cross of our Lord Jesus the Messiah, in whom is our salvation and our life and our resurrection, and in whom is our deliverance and pardon."⁷⁶ On this same side, the central inscription of the imitations is replaced by a cross, and smaller crosses mark the beginnings of all circular inscriptions on both sides of the coin. The year 1251 is the earliest known for this series; none are yet known with the date 1252, but the years 1253-1258 are all represented.⁷⁷ If these dates are authentic, it would appear that the devastation of Acre by the war of Saint Sabas brought the minting of gold to an end.

The fineness of these coins seems to be the same as the preceding series, ranging from 62.4 to 68.7 percent. An Italian list of Mediterranean gold coins and their finenesses⁷⁸ gives for the *denarii d'Acri collo croce* a fineness of 16½ carats, or in some manuscripts 15½ (also 16 *meno* ½). The former figure, in the earliest manuscript, is equivalent to 68 percent, which seems rather high in comparison to the coin's average fineness of 65.85 percent. The lower figure, in the next three manuscripts in chronological order, corresponds better at 63.28 percent. Possibly the copyist of the earliest of the extant manuscripts mistakenly substituted *et* for *meno*.

The only crusader gold issue which might be attributable to the years after 1258 is the very rare Agnus Dei coinage (pl. XV, no. 38), which is neither an imitation nor inspired by a Moslem issue, but which has the same fineness and silver/copper ratio in the Christian Arabic issues of Acre. It has been attributed by Grierson⁷⁹ to Antioch, and to the period of Louis's stay in Syria, 1250-1254. It seems unlikely, however,

75 The latter phrase has been consistently corrected by earlier catalogues, who inserted *lan* for the Arabic word *lāh*, "god, divinity, godhead", was an error for *Allah*, "God". Considering that the remainder of the inscriptions on the coins are perfectly honest, there is no reason to think that the spelling was corrected in this one instance.

76 The word, *al-shalāh*, "deliverance", is misspelled *shalah* in the Arabic version of the inscriptions by both Lewis, op. cit., p. 34, and Basing and Tinn, "Mintmarks," p. 131. Presumably the latter merely copied a typographical error in the earlier work. The *al* prefix is only a single *dal*.

77 In comparison, the corresponding silver coins, discussed below, are known only for the year 1251.

78 Found in six manuscripts ranging in date from ca. 1250 to ca. 1400, edited by the late Allan Evans in an unpublished typescript deposited after his death in the American Numismatic Society. The earliest of these manuscripts is Ricciardiano 2234, fol. 47^v, giving 16½ carats as the fineness of the coin; three with variant forms of the fineness are Bodley 1874, fol. 24^v (dated ca. 1380 with 15½ carats) and Cassini, Q, VII, 1157, fol. 267^v (about 1401, with 16 *less* ½ carats). The authors are grateful to Dr. Alan Sabel for bringing this material to their attention.

79 Philip Grierson, "A Rare Crusader Denarius with the Christus *vincit* Legend," *ANS, Mémoires Num.*, VI (1954), 169-171.

that Antioch, which so far as we can judge had never minted gold bezants, would have initiated such a major departure from the traditional bezant at so early a date. Rather than a precedent for the design of the gros tournois and the French *écu d'or*, might the Agnus Dei issue not have been rather an echo of the latter coin, introduced perhaps at Acre in 1266 or more probably at Tripoli after 1268? There seems no compelling reason against a date after 1266, and the Agnus Dei issue might well be a parallel to the silver gros of Tripoli of that era.⁸⁰

There are numerous references in the documents and histories to saracenate bezants and Şirî dinars after 1258 up into the 1280's, with the latest in 1302-1303.⁸¹ It seems possible that the crusader bezants, in the absence of any abundant competitor, continued to circulate for some time after their minting ceased. Damascus began to mint gold coins in the reign of Baybars, after 1260, but Mamluk Syrian dinars seem to have been produced only irregularly and in small quantities.

THE GOLD COINAGE OF THE NORTHERN CRUSADER STATES

The coins discussed so far are all imitations or adaptations of a single prototype, the dinars of the Fatimid caliph al-Āmir. All these have been attributed to the kingdom of Jerusalem. There is another group of bezants, copied from the coinage of the eleventh-century caliph al-Mustansir, which seem to represent a regular and substantive series, struck over a long period of time in large quantities, although they are not so abundant as the al-Āmir imitations. These are evidently the official gold coinage of another of the crusader principalities, and the only question is whether they were minted at Antioch or Tripoli, or both. Thirteenth-century documents mention both *bezanti tripolitani* and *bezanti antiocheni*, but it is not quite certain — since the territories were under united rule — whether these imply a mint in each place or are merely legal phrases. The analytical evidence makes the hypothesis of two mints unlikely, although it does not rule it out. Stylistically, the al-Mustansir imitations all seem to belong to a single series; numismatists would be at a loss to know how they could be attributed to two mints. Most decisive, at least for the mid-thirteenth century, is the papal letter responding to the complaints of Odo of Châteauneuf, for while it forbids the manufacture of imitations in all the cru-

⁸⁰ Goyens and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, p. 131.

⁸¹ Ibro, *op. cit.*, p. 92.

sader territories – Jerusalem, Tripoli, and Antioch – it mentions only Acre and Tripoli as the cities where they were being made. The actual coins used in Antioch, described for legal purposes as bezants of Antioch, were most likely issues of the prince of that principality (who also was count of Tripoli), struck at Tripoli.⁸²

Similarly the *bezanti sarracinati d'Armenie* that are frequently referred to in notarial acts from the port of Ayas in Cilician Armenia⁸³ are, we may be sure, the expression of a legal standard of quality rather than coins minted in Cilicia. Later in the thirteenth century they may even have become merely "ghost monies", an accounting device for recording sums that were paid in silver currencies.

The prototype for the imitations of al-Mustansir's dinars, as discussed in the previous section, is not precisely identifiable. They resemble any of several of his dinar varieties with broad central fields containing several horizontal inscriptions.⁸⁴ All the imitations have a semblance, at least, of the words "Ma'add" and "Ali" at the top of the field; these are usually the only words that can be read except by direct comparison to one of the originals. All have an empty band surrounding the field and an outer marginal inscription which is also nearly illegible. They can be divided into several groups on the basis of their gold content, and this classification, as well as increasing barbarity of style, suggests a chronological arrangement from highest to lowest gold fineness, like the bezants of Jerusalem. The hoard evidence, slender as it is, supports this hypothesis, suggesting also that the sequence of reductions was at least roughly parallel.⁸⁵

The earliest gold coinage of Tripoli is probably BY 2, characterized by high fineness and relatively careful workmanship. Unlike the remainder of the al-Mustansir imitations, BY 2 has five horizontal lines of inscription on each side, and stylistically it also stands out. It can be divided into two subvarieties which are similar in their rendering of the letter shapes but with subtle differentiation in style, best seen on the illustration. Among those analyzed by Gordus, the two ANS specimens represent one subvariety, with finenesses of 97.9 (pl. XVI, no. 39) and 86.6 percent, while the Paris specimen, representing the other subvariety (the one illustrated by Balog and Yvon), falls between them

82. Gordus and Mitchell, *op. cit.*, pp. 122–123.

83. Paul Z. Reubens, *The Coinage of Cilician Armenia* (ANS, Numismatic Notes and Monographs, no. 147, New York, 1962), p. 43. On "ghost monies" see Carlo H. Cipolla, *Money, Prices, and Civilization in the Mediterranean World* (Princeton, 1956), pp. 38–39.

84. A single coin belongs to al-Mustansir's commonest legend issue; it is doubtful whether it belongs with the other imitations of his dinars. See below, p. 453.

85. Gordus and Mitchell, *op. cit.*, pp. 126–131.

with a fineness of 92.5 percent (another example of this subvariety, not the one analyzed, pl. XVI, no. 40). It differs markedly from the other two in its ratio of silver to copper. The coins of this group, however, are definitively linked as the products of a single mint not only by certain idiosyncrasies of letter form but also by the presence of three oblique strokes crossing the empty band between field and margin on both sides of the coin. These strokes link this group, in turn, to the remainder of the issues attributed to Tripoli, many of which also have markings in this area (although not oblique strokes).⁴⁴

The remaining beasts of Tripoli form a fairly homogeneous series. All have only four lines of inscription on obverse and reverse, and many, though not all, have marks of some kind—small circles or dots—in the empty band around the field. Neither the presence or absence of markings nor their arrangement when present seems to have any relationship to differences that can be established on other grounds, but the marks nevertheless may have had some secret significance for mint personnel and others. Although the field inscriptions, except for the words "Alī" and "Ma'add", are complete gibberish, they are nonetheless regular from one coin to the next. For example, the last line of the reverse (arbitrarily defined as the side with "Ma'add") always has a distinctive pattern which can best be described as two vertical wedge-shaped lines, a circle with a tail, a circle, and two more wedge shapes (reading Arabic-fashion from right to left). This simplified rendering of the Arabic becomes more condensed on the latest issues, but its gradual evolution can be easily traced when a number of specimens are examined. From their style one may judge that this is a continuous series of coins from a single mint.

It can be subdivided into four groups. The first (BY 3 and BY 4?) is of relatively finer workmanship. Only two of these were analyzed by Gordus and Metcalf; both were examples of BY 3 with 89.7 and 82.9 percent gold. This level of gold fineness overlaps with the fineness of BY 2 and suggests that BY 3 followed it very closely. Both BY 2 and BY 3 can be seen as analogous of the phase I coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem, and probably can be assigned to the first half, or at least to the first two-thirds, of the twelfth century. BY 4 is associated with BY 3 on the basis of style.

The next group, BY 5-6, resembles BY 3-4 greatly, but there is a distinct decline from one to the next in workmanship. BY 5-6 are classified by Bakog and Yvon as the first in the series "monnaies d'imita-

44. *Ibid.*, p. 140. BY 1 is there included with BY 2 as a possible early production of the Tripoli mint, but it cannot be that early, as it has Saladin's name on it. See below, p. 455.

tion grossière". One example of each of BY 5 and 6 was analyzed, with 71.3 and 73.6 percent gold, respectively. The number of coins so far analyzed is small, making definitive conclusions hazardous, but if, as seems almost certain from comparison of the engraving of the two groups, BY 3-4 was followed chronologically by BY 5-6, then there was, as in the kingdom of Jerusalem, a change from a higher but irregular standard of alloy to one that was lower but more tightly controlled. It appears probable that BY 5-6 are analogous to the phase 2 bezants of Jerusalem. The change in gold standard may have taken place at about the same time.

The last two groups have in common a much cruder style than the previous issues (Balog and Yvon introduce them as "*plus grossière encore*") and a considerable reduction in gold content, ranging for the two groups together from 57 to 67 percent, with the first group concentrated around 62 percent and the second about 60.6 percent. On both the letters are much thicker and more abbreviated than before — like the phase 3 coins of the kingdom, they seem to have been engraved with a blunt instrument. The first of these two groups (BY 7-12; pl. XVI, no. 41) can be easily distinguished from the second (BY 13-16; pl. XVI, no. 42) by the presence on the latter of the letters B and T on obverse and reverse in the same position as the words "Ma'add" and "Alī" on earlier issues. Some of the B-T bezants also have a small cross on one side or the other, worked inconspicuously into the pseudo-Arabic inscription.⁸⁷ These two groups can plausibly be assigned to the era of Jerusalem's phase 3, that is, to the period between Saladin's conquests and the edict of Innocent IV forbidding imitations of Moslem coins.

These Tripoli bezants, although lower in fineness than those of Acre, are heavier on the average; it seems possible at least that they were also intended to contain 12 carats of gold, but to weigh 19 instead of 18 carats (with $4\frac{1}{2}$ carats of silver and $2\frac{1}{2}$ of copper).⁸⁸ These are quite possibly the same *bezant saracénien* mentioned in the Italian merchants' list previously cited⁸⁹ with a fineness of 15 carats (62.5 percent) and a value of 12 per ounce (of Florentine florins). This latter relation-

87 There is no significant distinction to be drawn between the B-T number with and without the cross; both dies of at least one specimen without cross were used separately in combination with other dies carrying the cross (Balog and Yvon, "Monnaies," pp. 140-141).

88 Gervais and Mercat, *op. cit.*, pp. 132, 142.

89 Above, note 78. *Monnaies saracénien* refers to the same fineness as also in another source: list issued by Yvon from several manuscripts, of which the earliest is Archivio di Stato di Firenze, Manuscript 75, fol. 289^v, compiled by him in 1289; another is that of Pegolotti's *La Pratica della mercatura* of 1320-1240 (ed. Evans, Cambridge, Mass., 1936, p. 218). The latter tradition does not give the relationship to the *bezant*.

ship, according to Evans's calculations, indicates a weight standard of 3.78 grams, since the florin, 24 carats fine, weighed one-eighth of an ounce of 28.33 grams.

The letters B and T have been much discussed, without any definitive conclusion. Most previous proposals are eliminated by the analysis data, which put these coins clearly in the thirteenth century, probably at the very end of the series of imitations. The coins with B and T may, indeed, be contemporary with the Christian Arabic bezants of Acre, issued 1251-1258.⁹⁰ This attribution makes it reasonable to conjecture that B and T stand for *Bloemondus* and *Tripolis* (as found in the obverse and reverse of the Latin silver coins). They are still essentially imitations, it is true, but their inscriptions are so completely barbarous that no real trace of their original Islamic import remains, so they may have been considered permissible within the terms of the papal edict. If they do in fact come from the period after the edict, there is no reason to assume that they ended in precisely the same year as the gold coinage of Acre; Tripolis did not fall to the Mamluks until 1289.

OTHER GOLD ISSUES OF THE CRUSADERS

The arrangement proposed above accounts for the great majority of the surviving bezants: roughly 160 out of about 300 published specimens. There remain a number of coins that seem certainly to be attributable to the crusaders, but cannot be fitted into the two major minting sequences. One such group are the coins in the Latakia hoard which seem to be dinars of 'Alī ibn-Muhammad (an eleventh-century ruler of Yemen) bearing the mint name Zabīd and the date 451 (1059/60; pl. XVI, no. 43). Although Balog and Yvon considered these authentic, Miles already in 1967 labeled them imitations which he suspected would eventually be classed as crusader coins.⁹¹ Their presence in a hoard of the late twelfth century, as well as their gold content of 77.2 to 81.4 percent, is sufficient evidence for their identification as crusader issues. The gold content is the same as the issues of the kingdom of Jerusalem in the second half of the twelfth century, but it seems very unlikely that any of the royal mints would have struck a quite different type of bezant. Tentatively, one might suggest that the

⁹⁰ The two coins are found together in at least one hoard, described by Gsellon, "Nouveaux Crusaders Siciliens," p. 174.

⁹¹ Balog and Yvon, "Deux dynasties," p. 299; Miles, "Some Hoards," p. 120.

Yemeni imitations were issued by Reginald of Chibillon from a mint at his fortress Korial. Reginald's strategic ambitions in the Red Sea might accord with the choice of a Yemeni issue as prototype, and his independent character would make him an appropriate candidate to flout the royal minting rights of the young leper king Baldwin IV (1174-1185).⁹² Possibly other disast currently attributed to Yemen in the eleventh and twelfth centuries will prove on reexamination to be crusader imitations also.

Another mysterious group of objects are the cut gold fragments that have been found in several hoards, often in association with full-size bezants. These include both imitations of Fatimid dinars and pieces with Latin inscriptions and geometric designs. These latter are known only as fragments, never as full coins. They have been interpreted as coins of the Latin kingdom from the time of Baldwin III and Amalric,⁹³ but this identification remains problematic.

It is extremely unlikely that these curious pieces were an official coinage. Although many have a wedge shape with one circular edge, suggesting a fragment cut from a circular disc like a coin, the majority are four-sided or irregular as if cut from strips or plates. They seem to come from a period (contemporary with the second phase of the bezants) when there was a regular and plentiful gold coinage. The alloy of the cut pieces that have been analyzed is from 50.4 to 62.1 percent,⁹⁴ lower than in any of the full-size bezants, and their weight is quite irregular, from 0.34 to 1.08 grams. The style and quality of the engraving of the Latin pieces, however, are typical of the royal mints. Several letters can be closely matched on deniers of Baldwin III, pointing to a date before 1167 for these objects. None of the Arabic fragments has been die-linked or matched with any specific variety of the full-size bezants, but the relatively fine style of the small fragments of inscription that can be seen is typical of the bezants of the twelfth

92. Gordon and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, p. 136.

93. Jeremiah D. Brady, "A First Analysis of Latin Gold Coinage in Twelfth-Century Jerusalem," *AMN, American Numismatic Society*, XXXII (1978), 131-147; *idem*, "A Hoard of Latin Gold Fragments of Balduin de Jerusalem," in *Actes du XI^e Congrès International de Numismatique (Paris, Septembre 1978, II: Numismatique du Moyen Âge et des Temps Modernes)*, ed. Tony Hackens and Raymond Waller (Louvain-la-Neuve and Luxembourg, 1982), pp. 829-840; *idem*, "A Statistical Analysis of the Gold Pieces of a New Hoard of Crusader Latin Coinage of the Twelfth Century," *RACE. Revue de groupe européen d'études pour les techniques physiques, chimiques, et mécaniques appliquées à l'archéologie*, V (1983), *Statistics and Numismatics: Table ronde*, ed. Charlotte Carasso-Cassan and Tony Hackens, pp. 379-394. Despite the fact that some of these pieces bear the royal titulature of Jerusalem, it does not follow that they were struck in that city.

94. Gordon and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, p. 136. Arabian pieces analyzed by Brady, "Hoards," p. 831, and "Analysis," *passim*, had a narrower range of 53.6 to 78.3 percent, leading him to suggest that these are earlier in date than the cut pieces from the Mammoth hoard.

century (some of the fragments may be pieces of genuine Moslem coins, although none has yet been so identified). There are several examples of fragments with Arabic on one side and Latin on the other, of which one in the ANS is the largest.⁹⁵ The latter is apparently of the type with several horizontal lines of inscription characteristic of Tripoli bezants, but other fragments are clearly of the small-central-field type of the kingdom of Jerusalem.

Even though these may be a product of one or more official mints, it does not follow that they were intended as coins. It has been suggested that they were made to be used in making payments by weight, to make up small deficiencies, or that they were used for payments of a fraction of a bezant, but this hardly can account for the creation of a large variety of Latin designs which were never struck as full-size coins. Another suggestion, which perhaps makes more sense, is that they were made for sale to pilgrims who wanted to offer gold at a shrine without a substantial expenditure.⁹⁶ At the same time, finds of these pieces with bezants in hoards suggest that the fragments had some monetary value. They may be related to the *pezzetti di bisanti*, "little pieces of bezants", with a fineness of 11 1/4 carats (48.96 percent) mentioned in the series of merchant's lists of 1350-1400.⁹⁷ The twelfth-century fragments are unlikely to be the same pieces mentioned in the fourteenth-century texts (in any case their fineness is slightly higher than any stated by the lists), but might be their monetary ancestors.

Only the Latin fragments have been studied in detail. The central designs on the majority are a "matrix" or "grid" on the obverse and a "star" on the reverse. These rather complicated interlaced figures have been drawn in full only by Miles.⁹⁸ The inscriptions include, on the obverse, BALDVINVS or AMALRICVS (REX), or SIGNUM AMALRICI or BALDVINI REGIS. The most common reverse inscription is IERUSALEM or HIERUSALEM CIVITAS, with variants. A number of fragments have letter combinations which cannot be fitted into

⁹⁵ ANS 1861.36.1 (pl. XVI, no. 44; *Annual Report of the American Numismatic Society*, 1961, p. 19, no. 32), part of a group (from a hoard?) of 18 fragments. Others are in Mircall, *Coinage of the Crusades*, plates 8-9, nos. 140, 223.

⁹⁶ First suggested by Arthur J. Salama, "Coins of the Crusades," *Spirit's Numismatic Circular*, LXXIV (1960), 12-13; see Mircall, *Coinage of the Crusades*, p. 31.

⁹⁷ Edited by Evans, as cited above, note 75. *Pezzetti di bisanti*, with a fineness of 12 carats, are also mentioned by the other manuscript tradition, including Pagiotti, *loc. cit.*, along with *pezzetti di Tripoli* of 11 carats (45.83 percent). Another money in the former list is the *roble sanz croce* — *cross bezant* with a fineness of 13 1/2 carats (48.25 percent), which are listed as only one of the six manuscripts, Dumas 1174, the same one that describes the bezants with cross as *roble sanz croce* and gives the fineness of the latter as 13 1/2 carats.

⁹⁸ "Some Remarks," p. 105; these are only examples, as the designs on the fragments studied here often differ in detail.

the commonly found inscriptions; these may be parts of additional inscriptions, or of other names, possibly COMES HENRICVS or COMES RAIMVNDVS (Raymond III of Tripoli as regent of the kingdom, 1184-1186?).⁴⁹

As for the Arabic fragments, the prevailing type is an imitation of the coinage of al-Āmir, like the full-size bezants of the Latin kingdom, and the fine style is like the bezants of the twelfth century. The Arabic fragments are like the Latin ones, however, in that no fragment has yet been observed to correspond precisely to any known full-size bezant — that is, it looks as if special dies were engraved to strike the Arabic fragments just as for the Latin ones (but a rigorous study has yet to be made). The Arabic side of the ANS bilingual piece (pl. XVI, no. 44) appears most similar to BY 2, identified as an early issue of Tripoli, but in truth the two widely separated pointillate circles surrounding the central area are paralleled on no other bezant, prototypical dinar, or fragment, and the same feature on the Latin side of the piece is also found on no other fragment. Obviously a great deal of study and much new material will be needed before it will be possible to speak with confidence of the full range of designs and inscriptions of these mysterious little bits.

The remaining imitations not yet attributed are all isolated small groups or unique coins with an obvious connection to any other issues. These include:

1. BY 1, a coin in the American Numismatic Society (0000.999.14974; pl. XVI, no. 45), which is unique among all the known imitations in copying the design of al-Mustansir's issue of 1048-1062, with three concentric circular inscriptions and no central field inscriptions. The inscriptions (which Balog and Yvon ignored as having "aucune signification, Partimen franc n'ayant pas connu l'arabe") are legible, copied from the dinars of Saladin during the caliphate of the 'Abbasid al-Mustadrī (1174-1180). The visual difference between this latter coinage and the concentric type of al-Mustansir is that Saladin's coinage has two short lines of inscription in the center, which the imitation omits. BY 1 also has less silver than copper as alloying element, quite different from any crusader imitation analyzed, and finally its epigraphical style is unlike that of the other imitations. Since it is clearly not a genuine Muslim coin, it seems reasonable to attribute it to the Franks, but it may well be an issue of a very short-lived mint, perhaps private, from a place and time unguessable. Its fineness, 94.3 percent, suggests an early date, but it cannot be earlier than the accession of Saladin (1174).

⁴⁹ *Moschil, Coinage of the Crusades*, p. 32.

2. A bezant imitating with some fidelity the Egyptian dinars of Saladin with the name of the caliph an-Nāṣir, struck from 1180 to 1193. The imitation is described but not assigned a number by Balog and Yvon.¹⁰⁰ The alloy of the piece is not known. Its weight is 3.31 grams, within the range of the phase 3 bezants attributed above to the late twelfth and thirteenth centuries. This is the only imitation of an Ayyūbid dinar identified so far. Its existence raises the possibility that other dinars now attributed to Saladin, less crude in execution, might upon reexamination turn out to be crusader imitations, which in turn may explain in part the debasement and irregular, often low, weight of the Egyptian dinar in Saladin's reign noted by Elbrekscantz.¹⁰¹

3. A number of coins, mostly found in hoards along with bezants, as for example the five "authentic Fatimid" dinars of the Latakia hoard, which can now be confidently attributed as bezants on the basis of the results of neutron activation analysis and a reexamination of the pieces.¹⁰² These bezants are rather diverse, with mint names including Miṣr, al-Iṣkandariyah (Alexandria), and al-Muḥazzayyah al-Qahirah (Cairo), and dates (including 508, 540, 544, 513, 516, and 518 (1114-1125; all within the reign of al-ʿAmir). Their weights and fineness are typical of bezants of the second phase at Acre. The engraving of their dies is, obviously, sufficiently skillful to fool experienced numismatists, but armed with the knowledge of their deficient weight and alloy, one can see that they do not have the finished appearance of similar dinars of full weight and alloy.

These good-quality imitations seem likely to be attributable to a subsidiary mint of the Latin kingdom, perhaps Tyre, but there is no certainty that all should be assigned to the same mint or era. Once again, further study is needed. These are surely not the only crusader imitations to be found among Fatimid dinars hitherto considered authentic. Oddy's tables show a number of debased issues, many of which were catalogued as Fatimid by Lane-Poole.¹⁰³ It seems likely that most of these are crusader bezants. Of special interest are the low-alloy dinars

100. 'Islemizade,' pp. 132-133, fig. 32.

101. Elbrekscantz, 'The Crisis of Silver in the Egypt of Saladin,' *Journal of the American Numismatic Society* LXXVI (1976), 179-184.

102. Balog and Yvon, 'Dinar issues,' p. 298; Corbin and Metcalf, *op. cit.*, pp. 128-130; Miles, in 1978, accepted the attribution of four of these five coins, but discarded one of them, no. 3 of the hoard, "undoubtedly a genuine dinar." Despite his authoritative opinion, a careful comparison of this coin with other dinars of the same mint and period has convinced Bates that this dinar is indeed an imitation. The other analyzed bezants of the same category are Corbin and Metcalf, *op. cit.* 99-100.

103. Oddy, *op. cit.*, tables 3, 4, and 5; Oddy (pp. 107, 108) raises the possibility of a crusader attribution of dinar coins.

of Tripoli with dates around 460 (1067/8); if these can be proven to be imitations, they would represent a new major variety in the bezant series.

In summary, then, the combined evidence of metal analysis, metrology, hoards, visual examination of the coins, Latin documents, and Arabic texts indicates the general organization and evolution of the crusader imitation bezants. Two major series, from the kingdom of Jerusalem and the county of Tripoli, can be identified and put into a reasonably well-defined chronological sequence from the mid-twelfth century until after the middle of the thirteenth. At the same time this new understanding of the history of the crusader bezant raises further questions and problems for numismatic research.

C. Crusader Arabic Silver Issues¹⁰⁴

Within a generation or two after the arrival of the first crusaders in Syria, they had begun to issue gold coins imitating those of the Moslems and copper coins analogous to those of Byzantium and northern Syria (although with Latin inscriptions), but there were no crusader imitation silver coins in the twelfth century. This is not surprising, for two simple reasons. First, the silver coinage of the Moslem world at the time of the first crusades, especially in Syria, was evidently scanty, consisted of small coins considerably alloyed and low in value, and was unlikely to make any impression on newcomers. Second, and probably more important, the crusaders already had their own silver coinage in western Europe, the penny, also a small and often debased coin. The gold and copper coins of Syria were new to the crusaders, but the little debased dirhams filled no role that could not be played by pennies imported from Europe or struck by the crusaders themselves.

The situation changed radically after Saladin's invasion of Syria in 1174. One of his earliest innovations was the initiation of minting of full-weight good silver dirhams at Damascus, Hama, Hamah, and Aleppo. Judging by the quantity of surviving examples, Saladin's new dirham coinage was not issued in large amounts at first, but increased in volume during his reign and under his immediate successors. From the turn of the thirteenth century, Ayyubid Syrian dirhams become quite common. Minting of full dirhams also spread to other Moslem

¹⁰⁴ This section was written by Johns.

lands, Egypt, Anatolia, and Mesopotamia. One possible interpretation of the process is that the new dirhams in the late twelfth century took some time to become established as an important part of the monetary system, but as they did so, they created a demand for silver coinage which had the effect of drawing silver to the mints from bullion stocks in Syria itself and from outside. This hypothesis has its importance for the understanding of the crusader Arabic silver coinage, as will be seen.

The Frankish states on the Syrian littoral must inevitably have been drawn into the process of expansion of the use of full dirhams in Syria. It seems reasonable to assume that Aiyūbid dirhams would have come to the Franks in transactions with the Moslems, and that these coins would come to be used not only for return transactions but also in exchanges among Franks — not, to be sure, for the transactions of daily life in the marketplace, but in large commercial dealings. At any rate, it is certain that the minting of dirhams spread not only to Aiyūbid Syria's Moslem neighbors but also to the crusaders, beginning in 1216. It is also certain that these crusader dirhams were issued in large quantity and had an important economic role.

Who precisely issued these coins, and what exactly their economic role was, are questions the answers to which are less clear. Three major series of crusader dirhams exist, two that imitate Aiyūbid dirhams and one of Aiyūbid type but with Christian inscriptions.¹⁶⁵ The dates on these coins are not those of the prototypes, but follow a regular sequence and seem to be authentic in most cases. The three series follow in chronological sequence without overlapping. Until about 1245, the crusader dirhams are homogeneous at any given time, without sub-varieties, indicating production from a single mint. It seems plausible, therefore, that the dirhams were produced either by an official mint or with official authorization. Since the third series (that with Christian inscriptions) bears the mint-name 'Akkā (Acre), it seems plausible that this was the mint for all the crusader dirhams. In sum, the dirhams, like the crusader gold bezants, seem to have been an officially sanctioned coinage of the kingdom of Jerusalem.

The economic role of the dirhams, however, was different from that of the bezants. The bezant, as argued previously, was intended as a

¹⁶⁵ Hirsch, *Coinage of the Crusades*, p. 28, lists two additional series as possible crusader dirhams, possibly at the suggestion of Mr. Stephen Ashmole. It should be made clear that series A and D on that page were not identified as such by Hirsch, "Thirteenth Century Crusader Hoards," although Hirsch's note 4 on page 28 might seem to imply otherwise. No evidence has been presented for the attribution of these two series to the crusaders, or even for the existence of Hirsch's series D.

separate currency from the Fatimid dinars it imitated. The crusader dirhams, in contrast, were clearly intended to circulate along with Ayyūbid dirhams. The imitations, until about 1245, are visually indistinguishable from their prototypes except by their anomalous dates, which in any case are often not visible because of irregularities of striking. When the date is illegible, it is impossible today to identify any single dirham by itself as an imitation or a prototype; it must have been impossible for contemporaries as well. Unlike the bezants, these dirhams are found in hoards mixed with authentic Moslem issues.¹⁰⁴

There is nothing deceptive or fraudulent in this close similarity. Ayyūbid dirhams from different mints, with different designs and inscriptions, circulated indiscriminately together, if hoard evidence is to be believed, and mixed with these are found also dirhams of another dynasty, the Artukids, with designs like those of the Ayyūbids but with clear inscriptional indication of their origin. Since any dirham with one of the few Ayyūbid designs seems to have been accepted at parity, it was rational for the crusaders also to issue their version of this standard coinage. By doing so they could convert silver into coinage without the disadvantage of having to transport it to a Moslem mint and pay mint charges to Moslems. Although the system by which the crusaders regulated the weight of their dirhams was different from the Moslem system, and their average weight was slightly lower, the silver content of a typical crusader dirham was roughly the same as that of the Moslem issues. The only element of deception was the use of Moslem designs and inscriptions to ensure acceptance of the coins. Had the crusaders used distinctive designs, or even the same design with overtly Christian inscriptions, the coins would probably have been treated as a separate currency by Moslems and not accepted at parity. This consideration perhaps explains why the last crusader dirham series, issued with crosses and Christian inscriptions in conformity with the letter of pope Innocent, was short-lived and soon replaced by a revival of the imitative coinage, slightly modified to comply with the papal injunction while passing unrecognized by the Moslems.

The first series of crusader dirhams, so far as is now known, were imitations of the coinage of al-Zāhir Ghāzī, son of Saladin and ruler of Aleppo from 1186 until his death in 1216. The specific prototype was struck from 596 to 613 (1207-1216, pl. XIV, no. 21). It has the hexagram or "seal of Solomon" design which was standard at Aleppo,

104. Boies, "La Trépassée du Paysan," *Bulletin de l'Association d'Égyptologie* XXXIV (1931-1932), 17-32; Boies, "Crusader Imitations," p. 393; Hanson Lushbold, Jr., "Monnaie des Lippards (le arabo-salémite) de Coesân - In un ripostiglio del XIII secolo," *Atti del Istituto di numismatica*, 5th ser., XLIX (1971), 175-180.

with the main inscriptions framed in a six-pointed star enclosed in a circle. *Az-Zāhir's* name and titles are in the star on one side of the coin, and those of his overlords, the Ayyūbid sultan al-ʿĀdil and the ʿAbbīd caliph an-Nāṣir, are on the other. The mint name and date are on the side with *az-Zāhir's* name in the six small triangular segments between the points of the star and the circle, and the Moslem declaration of faith is on the other side in the same location.¹⁰⁷ The coinage included smaller half dirhams as well. These include half dirhams with the same hexagram design but with abbreviated versions of the titles of *az-Zāhir* and an-Nāṣir on the two sides, without al-ʿĀdil's name, and also halves struck with full-dirham dies.

Crusader imitations of both dirhams and half dirhams are known, differing from the prototype only in bearing dates after 613 (1216; pl. XVI, nos. 47-48). Every year from 614 to 630 (1217-1233) is represented, and also the year 638 (1240/1).¹⁰⁸ These coins have the mint name "Halab" (Aleppo) and the names of *az-Zāhir*, who died in 1216, al-ʿĀdil, who died in 1218, and the caliph an-Nāṣir, who died in 1225. Meanwhile, Aleppo itself produced normal dirhams covering the same span of years bearing the names of *az-Zāhir's* successors al-ʿAdī (1216-1236) and an-Nāṣir (1236-1260), along with the appropriate names of their overlords and the caliphs.¹⁰⁹ It is impossible, therefore, that the dirhams with *az-Zāhir's* name and dates after 613 could have been issues of the Aleppo mint, or official issues of any Moslem mint.

Their anachronistic dates are the principal basis for the attribution of the posthumous Aleppo dirhams to the crusaders, by analogy with the subsequent crusader issue imitating Damascus dirhams, which also has impossible dates along with, on some examples, small crosses as definitive proof of Christian origin, but the dates are not the only evidence. Further support is provided by statistical study of their metrology and metal content. The data on which this study was based are as yet unpublished, but can be summarized here. Numismatists determine the weight standard of a coinage issue by the frequency-distribution method, which consists essentially of dividing the weight range of known examples into equal intervals (usually 0.05 grams) and counting the number of coins in each interval. The resulting series can be set out in tabular form or graphed. This technique indicates the mode, that is, the interval including most coins, which is the safest indicator of the mint's intended weight standard. The distribution of weights also

107. *Islamic Coinage of the Ayyūbids*, nos. 379, 608-626.

108. *Ibid.*, nos. 629-634, lists representative specimens of each date.

109. *Ibid.*, nos. 604-706, 734-751.

provides evidence as to the means by which the weights of individual coins were controlled by the mint. The result of such studies on genuine Ayyūbid dirhams is always the same if the number of specimens is sufficient: the number of coins in each interval increases gradually as the weight increases, up to the modal weight range, and then drops off sharply. In other words, there are many coins with less than the modal weight, the presumed weight standard of the mint, and few coins with more. This distribution, which produces an asymmetrical ("skewed") graph, is an indication that the weight of coins was controlled individually by the mints, or else that people culled the coins that they found in circulation. Overweight coins were trimmed down to standard, or remelted and restruck, while underweight coins were allowed to be issued.

Similar studies of the crusader dirhams that imitate Ayyūbid issues of Damascus, the attribution of which is certain, produce a different distribution: the graph, depending on the number of specimens in the sample, approaches the shape of the classical bell-shaped curve, with nearly equal numbers of coins above and below the modal interval. This curve is characteristic of mint regulation of weight in mass, with a certain number of coins per weight unit (pound or mark of silver) regardless of the weight of individual specimens. The contrast between the Ayyūbid and the crusader dirhams, given that they often circulated together, allows us to deduce that the heavy coins were removed by the mint before entering circulation. In the specific instance at hand, the weight distribution of the dirhams of aṣ-Ṣāḥib's lifetime and those of his son al-Aḍī both conform to the lightly skewed curve of other Ayyūbid dirhams, while the distribution of the weights of the posthumously dated dirhams is quite symmetrical, as on the other dirham issues of the crusaders. The quantitative results of the two studies show that the standard in aṣ-Ṣāḥib's lifetime was 2.95-3.00 grams, while the imitations (considering only those up to 630) were issued at an average weight of about 2.83 grams.

As to fineness,¹¹⁶ analyses of eighteen dirhams of aṣ-Ṣāḥib Ghāṣi and seven of his son al-Aḍī Muḥammad show that, between the Moslem years A.H. 600 and 625, the standard of fineness at the Aleppo mint was maintained at a very high level, with none of the coins below 97.2 percent silver; sixteen of the twenty-five imitations analyzed were below this figure, ranging in all from 98.6 down to 94.2 percent until

116. The analyses discussed here and throughout this section were made by Professor Adria A. Gordon of the University of Michigan Department of Chemistry, by means of neutron analysis of streaks. Professor Gordon is not responsible for any of the present interpretations of his data.

626, and between 90.5 and 95.5 percent from 628 to 638. This difference does not prove, in itself, that the imitations were produced by the crusaders, but it makes it unlikely that they were issues of the Aleppo mint. Moreover, this difference in fineness is the clue to the precise beginning of the imitations. One might expect at first that the imitations began during al-Zahir's lifetime, but judging by the consistent and tightly controlled fineness of the dirhams issued in his lifetime, compared to the lower fineness of the posthumous dirhams, this is not the case – except for the year of his death, 613. Five dirhams of that year were analysed, of which four were struck with the same dies (proof of origin from the same mint); their fineness range, from 93.6 to 97.4 percent silver, is decidedly lower than that of the preceding dirhams of al-Zahir and the subsequent dirhams of al-Aziz, while at the same time congruent with the range of the posthumous dirhams. It would seem, therefore, that all five coins are imitations; these represent the entire holdings of the ANS for the year 613.

One may conclude that the imitation dirhams began to be struck in precisely the year that al-Zahir died, 613 (1216).¹¹¹ In this date lies the clue to the possible reason for the beginning of the imitative coinage. In the early years of the thirteenth century al-Zahir was in alliance with the crusaders, specifically with the counts of Tripoli, Bohemond III and IV. Among his various agreements was a treaty with Venice in 604 (1207/8) which provided that Venetian merchants could have access to the mint at Aleppo to have coins struck from any silver bullion they might bring to the city.¹¹² This was probably the most convenient and cheapest access to a dirham mint available to the Franks at the time. Indeed, the existence of this clause in the treaty implies that without treaty rights, the Franks had no direct access to Moslem

[111] It is not impossible that authentic dirhams of al-Zahir of 613 will be found (he died early in the middle of that year), but they will be identifiable only by their highest silver fineness, and then only tentatively because the range of fineness of the two coinages overlap somewhat.

[112] Wilhelm Heyd, "Ueber die angeblichen Münzprivilegien der Venezianer in Acon, Tyros, und Tripolis," *Numismatische Zeitschrift*, XI (1879), 129, is the first discussion of this clause of the treaty; see also Irwin, "Supply," p. 48. Heyd, whose article is a somewhat obscure publication, has been widely quoted, disseminates the assumption that this treaty and others like it gave the Franks the right to operate mints. From this treaty, and another with the king of Cilician Armenia that gave the Armenians the right to strike coins on the same terms as they did in Acon, Schindlerberger (*Numismatique de l'Orient latin*, pp. 137–138) argued that the Venetians not only operated mints at various locations and Armenians did, but operated the mints at Acre that struck the imitative coinage, both gold and silver. Heyd demonstrates that these treaties gave the Venetians only the valuable right to take gold or silver as the local mint to be struck into local coinage on regulated terms; otherwise, their bullion would have had to be sold to mintmasters. The treaty with al-Zahir, for example, specifies a charge of 3 percent

ments,¹¹³ leaving them with the alternative of selling bullion for what it would bring to dirhams in the marketplace.

Relations between al-Zāhir and the crusaders began to cool in his later years, and the alliance with Tripoli was definitely ended at his death in 1216.¹¹⁴ Probably the arrangement with the Venetians also terminated at this time. It seems entirely possible that the Venetians, or other crusaders, had become familiar with the *dirhams* they had been obtaining from the Aleppo mint and decided to begin making their own. It was proposed above, because of the continuity of this series of imitations with the later ones culminating in an issue with the mint-name Acre, that all these imitations should be regarded as issues of the mint there of the kingdom of Jerusalem. If so, it would seem that the Venetian privileges at the mint of Aleppo from 1207 to 1216 had a wide monetary impact for all the crusader states, sufficient to induce the royal mint to take up production of these coins after the termination of the agreement, or that the Venetians depended on these coins to the extent that they insisted on their mintage in Acre. Alternatively, however, it must be admitted that the possibility of a north Syrian mint such as Tripoli for the Aleppo imitations is attractive. It cannot be excluded that these *dirhams* may not be directly connected with the imitations of Damascus coinage that followed them so closely in time.

The first period of issue of Aleppo imitations extended, then, from 613 to 630 (1216-1233). Toward the end of this span of years, in 628 and 629, the fineness of these *dirhams* had begun to decline, judging by one specimen from each of those years with 90.6 and 93.0 percent silver respectively. The last year of minting in 630 is also the beginning of a general dearth of Moslem *dirhams* until 637, suggesting that silver had become scarce in those years (throughout Syria). In 638 (1240/1), however, imitations of Aleppo *dirhams* appear again, still with the same design and inscriptions (pl. XVI, no. 49). The occasion for this reappearance is suggested by a comparison of the metal content of these imitations with that of the coinage of Damascus in the same year. A feature of silver coins in the pre-modern era is the presence of small amounts of gold, ranging sometimes to more than 1 percent. This occurs because gold is a normal trace element in silver ore, but usually in amounts not detectable by medieval technology. Because it is chemically similar to silver, it is not removed by the refining process. As a

113. Such clashes were frequent in tension between Franks and Moslems; see *Leifer, loc. cit.* and *Reyn, passim*.

114. Mary Wickham Huchins, "The Crusader States, 1190-1243," in volume II of the present work, pp. 326-346.

result, coins that come from a single source of silver will have a small but consistent amount of gold as an impurity. This may indicate that the coins in question were all made from ore from a single mine or ore vein, but it is of course also true that coins from the same batch of melted silver will have approximately the same level of gold content, even if that silver came from disparate sources. Four Aleppo imitations and nine dirhams of Damascus have been analyzed, and all fell into the same narrow range of gold impurity level, from 0.29 to 0.36 percent for the imitations and 0.26 to 0.36 for the Damascene coins. In no other instance was there such a close correspondence between crusader and Moslem coins. In fact, the range of gold impurity for Syrian dirhams in the Aiyûbid era is normally quite wide, ranging from 0.30 to 1.20 percent, with losses of every kind spread throughout this range. This diversity is not surprising, as Syria has no native source of silver and must have imported its bullion from a variety of sources. In this context, the similarity of the imitations and the coinage of Damascus in 638 is remarkable.

There is an obvious historical explanation for this phenomenon: in early 638 (July–August 1240) *al-Sâlih Ismâ'îl*, the Aiyûbid ruler of Damascus, entered into an alliance with the crusaders, which continued in force for a few months only. Under the terms of the treaty, the crusaders were permitted to come to Damascus to buy arms and supplies.¹¹² It seems likely that it was specifically to provide funds for this "shopping expedition" that the minting of Aleppo imitations was revived, and it would seem furthermore that the bulk of the silver brought to the mint at Damascus in this year was made up of those crusader dirhams. The fineness of the imitations, ranging from 90.5 to 95.5 percent silver, is no worse than that of the coinage of Damascus itself in the same year, from 89.5 to 96.5 percent, but one can imagine that the imitation dirhams, by this time obsolete in type by a quarter-century, were discriminated against by the Damascenes, who converted them as rapidly as possible into current coin (possibly the crusaders themselves were allowed to bring silver to the Damascus mint, although this is not explicitly stated).

The second series of crusader Arabic dirhams imitates the Damascus issue begun by *al-Sâlih Ismâ'îl* in the year of his first alliance with

[12] R. Stephen Humphreys, *From Saladin to the Mongols: the Ayyûbids of Damascus, 1193–1260* (Albany, NY, 1977), pp. 265–269; cf. Sidney Poitron, "The Crusade of Theobald of Champagne and Richard of Cornwall, 1201–1205," in volume II of the present work, p. 479, and Hamilton A.R. Gibb, "The Ayyûbids," *ibid.*, p. 707. Humphreys' dating is used here, because the alliance was formed after the accession of *al-Sâlih Ismâ'îl* as sultan in the last month of 637 (July 1240).

the crusaders (pl. XIII, no. 19). Both prototype and imitation have the main inscriptions in a square enclosed in a circle at the rim of the coin. One side has the name and titles of *al-Sālih* in the square, with the mint city and the date in the four segments between the square and outer circle. The other side has the name and titles of the caliph *al-Mustansir* in the square and the Moslem profession of faith in the segments. This issue was struck from 638 (1240/1) until 640 (1242), when *al-Mustansir* died. As normal in Syria, the issue was accompanied by half dirhams of the same pattern, struck with special half-dirham dies with abbreviated inscriptions or with full-dirham dies.¹⁰⁶

The crusader imitations of this issue closely reproduce the central inscriptions of the prototype, but vary in one way or another in their marginal inscriptions. On the basis of these variations the imitations can be classified into six types, which should be regarded as separate issues and will be discussed individually. Since the distinguishing inscriptions are small and at the edge of the coins, they are easily effaced by carelessness in striking, which was usual at both the crusader and the Moslem mints, and when this happens it is impossible to distinguish visually an imitation from the prototype. Even when visible, the distinguishing characteristics of the imitations are inconspicuous, and were probably not noticed by the people who used these coins. The modern numismatist who knows what to look for can sort out a few imitations and a few authentic prototypes from any large groups of coins of this type, but the rest can be identified as crusader or Moslem only by close comparison of unidentified with identified coins to establish the identities. The majority of known specimens of the cru-

106. All these are found in Balag, Ajyoubak, nos. 391-397, along with dirhams of 635 and 637, but it is doubtful that these earlier dates really exist, because of the intrusion of crusader imitations into the corpus of dirhams attributed to *al-Sālih* (see the listing in Balag, "Crusader Imitations," p. 403, at least two of the specimens in this list are misdated by Balag to 635 and 637 because of the similarity of the numerals "seven" and "three" as written on these coins. Although *al-Sālih* was ruler of Damascus the same month in 635, it is probable that he, like his brother *al-Ashraf* before him, acknowledged *al-Kamil* as overlord on coins, even though *al-Kamil* did not recognize his overlord, besieged the city, and took it from him. No Arabic source mentions that *al-Sālih* used coins in his own name, and not by those of, thereby openly rebelling against *al-Kamil*; it is unlikely that the son would have done so when as they did (*Hamplérys*, op. cit., pp. 232-237). When *al-Sālih* came to power in Damascus again in 637, he acknowledged *al-Ashraf* of Egypt as overlord and as specifically used to have kept his name on the coins (*Hamplérys*, op. cit., pp. 237-238). It is unlikely that *al-Sālih* began issuing coins with his own name until after the overthrow of *al-Ashraf* and the accession of his son *al-Mu'izz* *Ayūb* on the eighth day of the last month of 637 (*Hamplérys*, op. cit., p. 240). Assuming some date for the entry to reach Damascus and for *al-Sālih* himself to decide on a policy, it becomes unlikely that coins in his name began before 638. At least one of Balag's entries for 635, the French Mosaic specimen, is a crusader numismatist and the readings of the other three have yet to be confirmed. The issue Balag assigned to 637 could just as well be 639.

other imitations have been identified and classified through die identifications with fully legible examples.

Type I (pl. XVII, no. 50): this is by far the largest issue among the Damascus imitations, comprising about 65 percent of all identified specimens.¹¹⁷ Dirhams of this type are identical in every respect to the prototype, including the mint identification *Dimashq*, "Damascus", but they have the dates 640, 644, and perhaps 647,¹¹⁸ which are all after the death of the caliph al-Mustansir named on them, at the same time the Damascus mint produced dirhams with the name of his successor. This anachronism is odd, but does not in itself prove a crusader origin for these coins. There are numerous instances of such anachronisms resulting at Moslem mints from the accidental combination of old and new dies ("muling"), although these are mostly isolated single coins. In the case of the al-Saliḥ imitations of Type I, however, there are hundreds of examples. The attribution to the crusaders is further supported by analogy with other types that have clear indication of Christian origin, by a high incidence of barbarity or illiteracy in the marginal inscriptions, and by metallurgical and metallurgical differences from the prototype. There are also analogous half dirhams, like the prototype half dirhams.

The various dates of Type I are closely linked by shared dies for the undated side of the coin, suggesting that minting was more or less continuous throughout the years 640 to 644 or 647 (1243-1247 or 1243-1250).¹¹⁹ The dates then might sometimes be fictitious, but it seems obvious that 646 (1243/4) would not be the earliest year found on the imitations if it was not in fact the first year of issue. The reasonable supposition that imitations might have begun while the prototype was still being issued, and thus be indistinguishable by date from the prototype, is simply not supported by the die evidence, for nearly all the

¹¹⁷ Judging by the number of specimens recorded by Bliss, "Crusader Imitations," p. 404. The number of surviving specimens today is largely a result of hoard finds, a single find of a large hoard including a particular issue can change the proportions outright. Nevertheless, the number of dies reported for the different types of the Damascus imitations is proportional to most cases to the number of existing specimens, suggesting that the number of surviving coins is roughly proportional to the original size of the issues. The exception is Type X, with a much higher proportion of dies to number of specimens than the others, indicating that this issue may have been larger than its representation in 1974 would indicate.

¹¹⁸ Leachfield, *op. cit.*, p. 383, read the dates 642, 643, 645, and 646 as well, but these readings are rejected by Bliss, *op. cit.*, pp. 406-407, where the specimens involved are discussed in full. The dates 640 and 644 are clear and generally accepted by all scholars. The cursive script makes the reading 647 speculative.

¹¹⁹ This conclusion finds support in the data suggested by Leachfield, but unfortunately all the coins on which he made these dates have some clearly legible die duplicates that disagree his readings.

coins of this type with dates of 640 and before are interlinked by the use of a small number of obverse and reverse dies, and none of them as yet can be linked to any of the coins with posthumous dates. Moreover, there are metallurgical differences between the coins dated 640 and earlier, as a group, and those dated 641 and after. It would seem, therefore, that as in the case of the Aleppo imitations, the issuers of the Damascus imitations deliberately selected an obsolete prototype. It is not obvious why this particular prototype was chosen, but there may be some connection with the renewed alliance between al-Salib and the Franks of Acre in spring 1244 (late 641).¹²²

The date 647, if it is rightly read, has support from historical circumstances as the terminal date for Type I (and for the first phase of issue of all the Damascus imitations), because it was in late 647 (spring 1250) that bishop Odo of Chalon-sur-Saône arrived in Syria to find the Franks striking coins bearing the names of Moslem rulers and Moslem religious inscriptions. There are no crusader coins with Moslem dates after 647, or any with the Christian year 1250, suggesting that Odo's intervention put a stop to all minting for a time.

Types II, III, and IV: all three of these types are known only in small quantities (6, 8, and 2 respectively were known in 1974¹²³). Their economic importance is therefore slight, but they are of interest because their marked divergences from the common Type I issue and the absence of any die links between any of these types raise the possibility that they were issued at different mints (which might mean only different workshops in the same city). Type II (pl. XVII, no. 51), which seems to be dated 643 (1245/6, a very problematic reading), differs from Type I only in having differently arranged and very barbarous marginal inscriptions.

Type III (pl. XVII, no. 52) is more interesting. The date 643 on it is almost certain, and the dirhams of this type are characterized by the presence of inconspicuous crosses in the margins. All known die varieties have a cross in the topmost segment of the side with the date, between the two Arabic words for "in the name of" and "God" that precede the statement of place and date of minting. On the other side, all have also an interesting modification of the name of the Moslem prophet in the marginal inscription "Mohammed is the messenger of God." As modified, the only possible reading of the name is *Mihādʿil*, the Arabic equivalent of the name Michael. Did the die cutters, or

122 Hampton, *op. cit.*, p. 274; Steven Rowland, "The Crusader States, 1243-1250," in volume II of the present work, p. 58. Gies, *op. cit.*, p. 509.

123 Baur, "Crusader Imitations," p. 404.

their superintendents, really intend to say that "Michael is the messenger of God"? Could this refer to the archangel Michael? Since on some of these coins the name *Mitcha'el* (which is written in two separate letter groups in Arabic) is divided by a small cross, it would seem likely that the engravers knew what they were doing. Even before Odo, it seems, some Christians were uncomfortable with a coinage that completely aped Moslem produce, or perhaps the date is fictitious and the type to be assigned to the period after the papal interdiction of Moslem inscriptions. This series also was accompanied by an analogous half-dirham issue (pl. XVII, no. 53).

Type IV (pl. XVII, no. 54) is quite anomalous, as the only imitation with modified central inscriptions, shortening one of al-Salib's titles from *Imād-ad-Dīn wa-d-Dīn* (pillar of society and religion) to *Imād-ad-Dīn*, a common and perfectly legitimate elision among Moslems. The date is apparently to be read 644 (1246/7). Given that only two examples are known, it is only analogy that supports the attribution of this issue to the crusaders, but unless the date is fictitious, it suggests the existence of a third mint in addition to the main Type I mint.

Types V and VI come after an intervening issue with Christian inscriptions, making it appropriate to postpone their discussion.

Bishop Odo's intervention led to the introduction of a third crusader dirham series with overtly Christian inscriptions and with crosses, corresponding to the similar issue in gold of 1251-1258 described in the previous section of this chapter. The silver coinage had a much shorter life span, limited to 1251 only.¹²¹ The relative success of the new bezants as compared to the dirhams may be explained by the different monetary roles of the two currencies. The bezants, which imitated obsolete Flavianid coins, were unlike any contemporary issue and were well known to Moslems as Frankish in origin. The new bezants, therefore, may well have been equally acceptable despite their overtly Christian symbols. The imitative crusader dirhams, however, closely resembled current Moslem coins and were evidently meant to circulate indiscriminately with them (as they successfully did, if hard evidence is to be believed). The new crusader dirhams with Christian inscriptions and crosses could not pass as ordinary Moslem coins, resulting in their rejection by Moslems, or at best in their being discounted against current Moslem dirhams.

Ralog and Yvon list thirteen varieties of Christian dirhams and four

121. A dirham of 1251 and another of 1252 have been mentioned as lost, but their readings cannot be accepted (Ralog, p. 408). The original inscriptions of these coins are carefully engraved and often poorly impressed, making it easy to be misled in reading them.

varieties of the accompanying half dirhams,¹²¹ but the principal division is into three groups: those with a central cross on one side surrounded by a circle, those with a central cross but no circle, and those without a cross (pl. XVII, nos. 35–38). All these have the same Arabic inscriptions, which are mostly different from those on the bezants. The design is the same as that of the second series of Damascus imitations, with central inscriptions in a square surrounded by a circle and subsidiary inscriptions in the spaces between the square and the circle, a very common type for thirteenth-century Syrian dirhams. On the side designated by Balog and Yvon as the obverse, the inscription in the margin states the place and date of issue: "struck in Acre in the year one thousand two hundred, one and fifty, of the Incarnation (of the Messiah)" (some varieties omit the words in parentheses). The central inscription on this side is not found on the bezants: "one God, one faith, one baptism." On the other side, the central inscription proclaims "Father, Son, and Holy Ghost: one godhead",¹²² and the marginal inscription states "His is the glory forever and ever, amen amen."¹²³ The half dirhams omit the obverse central inscription as well as the mint date formula; instead the reverse central inscription is divided between the two sides and the reverse marginal inscription is repeated on both margins (pl. XVII, no. 38). In addition to these inscriptions and the crosses, these coins are extensively ornamented with a variety of fleurons, de-luxes, small emblems, arabesques, and diacritical marks drawn from the repertoires of both Moslem and Christian craftsmen.

Presumably because these dirhams were not readily accepted by Moslems, the crusader mint revived the issue of imitations of al-Saltib Lami'i's coinage of Damascus, but with some modifications. It is probably no coincidence that one type of these renewed imitations bears the date 1233, when Innocent's letter arrived in Syria; taken literally, it forbade only the emission of coins with the name of Mohammed and his "birth date" (the Moslem year), and thereby opened the way to revival of imitative coins without the objectionable features. These are classified as Types V and VI of the second series. Both replace the Moslem profession of faith in the margin with the simple statement "in the name of God the merciful, the compassionate", a very common Moslem formula but one to which no monotheist could object. Type V (pl. XVII, no. 39) has the Christian date "one thousand and

¹²¹ Balog and Yvon, "Monnaies," pp. 142–167, nos. 42–48.

¹²² As with the corresponding gold coin, the Arabic word *ahd*, "godhead", has been falsely corrected by previous catalogues to *Allah*, see note 73 above.

¹²³ This inscription also has previously been corrected, the first word is not *Allah*, which would result in the meaning "God is the glory", but simply *halla*, "To Him is the glory."

two hundred and three and fifty", but with the fictitious mint name Damascus, while Type VI (*pl. XVII*, no. 60) reverts to the original Moslem year of the Damascus imitations, 641. Despite this latter date, Type VI clearly belongs to the same period as Type V, not only because of the shared religious formula but also because of similarities of style in the engraving of the marginal inscriptions on both sides of the coins. Possibly the date 641 was acceptable because it was fictitious, or possibly no one cared enough to enforce the papal injunction on this point. Because there are no die links between the two types, the possibility of two separate mints or workshops is raised again, but the similarity of the types indicates that there was no great distance between their places of manufacture. One would even say that the same die engravers were at work. It is also possible that the dirhams dated 641 came after those dated 1253, and continued to be struck for a while, perhaps until the end of the Christian beyas in 1258, or even later.

In weight standard and fineness, the Damascus-type crusader dirhams were lower than their prototype, the coins of Damascus 1239-1242, but about equal to contemporary issues of Damascus and Aleppo after 1243. The general pattern for all three of these mints (Damascus, Aleppo, and the crusader mint) is similar: weight and fineness decline in the 640's (1242-1252) and decline further after 650 (1252/3). For Damascus, 637-640, the weight standard indicated by the mode is about 2.90-2.95 grams, while for the first large crusader issue, Type I, it is about 2.80-2.85, but the two coinages are closer in average weight, at 2.87 and 2.83 grams respectively. Moreover, the modal weight of the issues of Damascus, 641-647, the same Moslem years as Type I, is 2.85-2.90, much nearer to the crusader standard. In fineness, the crusader Type I coins range from 79.6 to 94.2 percent silver, while the prototypes range from 84.9 to 96.5 and the coinage of Damascus in the same years as the crusader issue ranges from 78.6 to 96.7 percent. The crusader dirhams with Christian inscriptions are higher in fineness than the close imitations, ranging from 85.8 to 96.9 percent, but the subsequent imitations, Types V and VI, return to the range of Type I, from 70.5 to 91.9 percent, with only one coin out of twenty above 90 percent. Similarly at Damascus, the four analyzed dirhams after 650 (1252/3) range only from 73.1 to 80.2 percent, while at Aleppo in the same era the range is from 74.4 to 83.2.

Several features of these data are remarkable: the wide range in fineness among all these dirhams, the apparent general decline, and the close correspondence of issues at the three major Syrian mints. Since all these coins are found mixed together in hoards, contemporaries must have ignored the differences between individual coins, but

it would seem likely that the value of all these dirhams was discounted to compensate for the unreliability of weight and fineness. By 1260 the monetary situation had reached a crisis. According to Abū-Shāmāh, Damascus was flooded with Frankish dirhams reported to contain only 15 percent silver, and the danger that these dirhams would be suppressed caused everyone to spend them as quickly as possible, which made prices rise to extraordinary levels. At the end of the year these dirhams were prohibited and exchanged for current Damascus coin, but at a considerable discount.¹²⁶ According to the manuscripts of Abū-Shāmāh's history, these dirhams were known as *baḡiyāh* or *baḡiyāh*, a word which is not understood but which must be a name denoting the origin of the coins, either by place or by issuing authority. It has been emended more than once to *yāfiyāh*, "Jaffa", but it hardly seems likely that a place as small as Jaffa, and so far away, could have emitted enough dirhams to flood the market in Damascus.

The only Frankish silver coins of the time were the Arabic imitations and the Frankish pennies, which might have been called dirhams by the Moslems. It seems improbable that the pennies would have circulated to any extent among Moslems, but as far as is now known, the imitations never dropped so low as 15 percent silver. On the other hand, no crusader imitations of about 1260 have been analysed, or even identified as such. Type VI, which was attributed above to about the same period as Type V, dated 1253, might still have been issued as late as 1260. The lowest fineness of the eight Type VI dirhams analysed was 75.6 percent, but all these specimens came from a hoard datable to about 1255, before the time of which Abū-Shāmāh writes. At present, the identity of the *baḡiyāh* dirhams remains a mystery.¹²⁷

At the least, Abū-Shāmāh's passage is evidence that crusader dirhams were still being issued as late as 1260, that by that time they had an important role in the monetary economy of Damascus (if not all of Moslem Syria), and that the Moslems were aware that these coins came from the Franks but used them anyway. The importance of the crusader dirhams is not surprising. A preliminary die study of the crusader issues has counted so far 94 obverse and 110 reverse dies for the imitations of Aleppo dirhams, and 142 obverse and 142 reverse dies for the Damascus imitations. The current consensus among numismatists-

126. Abū-Shāmāh, *Tarīkh waḥīd al-qurṭabīn wa-shaḥīd wa-ḥaḥīd* (also known as *Diwān al-qurṭabīn*), ed. Muḥammad Ṭahīr ibn al-Ḥasan al-Kayṣarī (Cairo, 1947), p. 213, RPPC, Oo, V 303.

127. The passage and its analogues in other Arab writers are discussed in more detail by Irfan, *op. cit.*, pp. 94-95. Also a mystery are the Taurus dirhams of 1260 mentioned by a historian cited by Irfan.

dists estimates a possible production for a single die of ten to twenty thousand coins, suggesting at least one to two million Aleppo imitations and about 1,400,000 to 2,800,000 Damascus-type dirhams. These are conservative estimates, because it is likely that many dies remain to be discovered, and the number of dies does not include those for the half dirhams of each series. Also, the dies of the dirhams with Christian inscriptions have not been studied and counted. Assuming an average weight of about 2.8 grams, and an average fineness of 95 percent for the Aleppo coins, the silver content of the Aleppo imitations would amount to about 2.5 to 5 metric tons, while for the Damascus coins, with the same average weight but an average fineness of only 85 percent, the total issue would be about 3.4 to 6.8 metric tons of silver.

These figures should not be taken with great seriousness, considering the many assumptions that went into their calculation, but it seems safe to say that at least five to ten metric tons of silver went into the making of the crusader Arabic dirhams. This silver did not come from Syria, which has no mines. Some of it might have come from Anatolia, imported by the crusaders through Cilician Armenia, and some might also have come from Byzantine territory, but it seems reasonable to deduce that the bulk of this silver came from western Europe. There is direct evidence for movement of silver from Europe to Syria in the form of coins found in the latter region, and indirect evidence in the existence of special taxes collected in many European countries for the support of the crusaders and in documents referring to the export of silver.¹²⁸ It does not necessarily follow that all the silver that supplied the thirteenth-century Islamic revival of silver coinage came from Europe, but it does seem clear that the crusader imitations of Ayyûbid silver coinage must have contributed substantially to the stock of silver in Moslem Syria.

There are in addition a few other crusader Arabic coins that can only be mentioned here. These exist in only one or two specimens, and have not been studied beyond their first publication by Balog and Yvon.¹²⁹ Two examples are known of an issue of billon, BY 49, which has on one side an equal-armed barred cross with small wedge-shaped figures, described as crosses, in the four quadrants, and on the other side an Arabic inscription that has been read *ḡunḡa bi-Quds*, "struck in Jerusalem". The reading is not entirely certain, but the language of the inscription together with the cross is perhaps sufficient evidence

128 Much of this evidence is collected by Andrew M. Watson, "Back to Gold — and Silver," *Economic History Review*, 2nd ser., XXX (1967), 7-23.

129 Balog and Yvon, "Monnaies," pp. 167-168.

for the attribution of these two little coins to the crusaders; they might have been tokens of some sort rather than true coins. Somewhat similar is a unique copper coin, *EY* 30, with an equal-armed cross, the branches ending in fleur-de-lys, and on the other side an Arabic inscription read as "struck in Acre". Again, the reading is not completely satisfactory. One further copper, *EY* 31, has been struck with dinar dies; it is probably a counterfeit.

LIST OF COINS ILLUSTRATED

All coins are in the cabinet of the American Numismatic Society, and are its property except as noted: UM = University Museum, Philadelphia, HSA = Hispanic Society of America, New York City.

THE ISLAMIC CONTEXT

1. al-Maṣri (Moor), 367 (1171/2), dinar. 1972.288.115.
2. Maḍīnat al-Salām (Baghdad), 613 (1216/7), dinar. 1002.1.433(UM).
3. Miṣr (al-Fustāṭ), 438 (1046/7), dinar. 1002.1.923(UM).
4. Miṣr, 442 (1050/1), dinar. 1974.26.207.
5. Miṣr, 482 (1089/90), dinar. 1002.1.961(UM).
6. Miṣr, 506 (1112/3), dinar. 1917.215.32.
7. al-Mufaṭṭiyah al-Qāhirah (Cairo), 545 (1189/90), dinar. 1002.1.1024(UM).
8. al-Qāhirah (Cairo), 571 (1175/6), dinar. 1002.1.1028(UM).
9. al-Iskandariyyah (Alexandria), 608 (1211/2), dinar. 1962.124.21.
10. al-Iskandariyyah, 664 (1262/3), dinar. 1002.1.1(UM).
11. Ṣūr (Tyre), 517 (1123/4), dinar. 1955.131.1.
12. Dimashq (Damascus), 531 (1136/7), dinar. 1969.91.1.
13. (Egypt, 1094-1097), dirham. 1971.132.15.
14. (Egypt, 1097-1101), dirham. 1953.44.3.
15. Miṣr, 556 (1160/1), dirham. 1965.9.1.
16. (Egypt, 1180-1193), dirham. 1917.215.1329.
17. (Damascus, 1113-1115), dirham. 1936.72.1.
18. Dimashq, 573 (1177/8), dirham. 1936.105.1.
19. Dimashq, [640] (1242/3), dirham. 1917.215.1357.
20. Halab (Aleppo), 572 (1176/7), dirham. 1951.108.4.
21. Halab, 602 (1205/6), dirham. 1932.1.6.
22. al-Qāhirah, 586 (1190/1), dirham. 1917.215.1328.
23. Dimashq, Ṣafar 667 (Oct./Nov. 1268), dirham. 1002.1.1977(UM).
24. (Syria [Aleppo?], 1095-1113), fals. 1967.249.3.

- 25 (Syria [Aleppo?], 1078-1117?), fals. 1973.102.1.
- 26 (Aleppo, 1146-1174), fals. 1954.112.1.
- 27 (Damascus, 1146-1174), fals. 1971.89.41.
- 28 (Sovra, 1134-1142), fals. 1002.1411(UM).
- 29 al-Jazirah (Mosul?), 575 (1179/80), fals. 1002.1.663(UM).

CRUSADER ARABIC GOLD

30. BY 26, small flan; GM 7. 1969.78.1.
31. BY 26, large flan; GM 1. 1933.45.3.
32. BY 25; GM 17. 1969.78.2.
33. BY 27d; GM 63. 1957.114.19.
34. BY 21; GM 83. 1924.69.16.
35. BY 23-24; GM 94. 1969.78.4.
36. BY 27c; GM III. 1950.70.2.
37. BY 40; GM 153. 1917.215.627.
38. Agnus Dei; GM 183. 1952.115.4.
39. BY 2, variant; GM 9. 1963.87.4.
40. BY 2. 1962.125.6.
41. BY 12. 1978.64.644.
42. BY 15; GM 170. 1001.57.4533(HSA).
43. Yemeni type, GM 105. 1957.114.2.
44. Bilingual fragment. 1981.36.1.
45. BY 1; GM 8. 0000.999.14974.
46. Miles, *Fatimid Coins*, 259 ("al-Ikandariyah, 435"). 1002.1.1013(UM).

CRUSADER ARABIC SILVER

47. "Halab", 619 (1222), dirham. 1972.75.16.
48. "Halab", 618 (1221/2), half dirham. 1971.76.622.
49. "Halab", 638 (1240/1), dirham. 1971.76.584.
50. "Dimashq", 641 (1243/4), dirham. Bates Type LC. 1917.215.1379.
51. "Dimashq", 643? (1245/6?), dirham. Bates Type ILB. 1917.215.1389.
52. "Dimashq", 643 (1245/6), dirham. Bates Type III.A. 1971.76.198.
53. "Dimashq", [643 (1245/6)], half dirham. Bates half dirham Type II. 1971.76.334.
54. "Dimashq", 644 (1246/7), dirham. Bates Type IV. 1971.76.201.
55. 'Akka, 1251, dirham. BY 42. 1925.163.2.
56. 'Akka, 1251, dirham. BY 45. 1954.121.1.

57. 'Akko, 1251, dirham. BY 47b. 1917.215.2549.
58. 'Akko, 1251, half dirham. BY 44a. 1942.23 1152.
59. "Damasq", 1253. Bates Type V. 1971.76.248.
60. "Damasq", "640". Bates Type VI. 1949.163.262.



1

2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9

XII. Islamic gold coins



10



11



12



13



14



15



16



17



18



19

XIII. Islamic gold and silver coinage



20



21



22



23



24



25



26



27



28



29

XIV. Islamic silver and copper coinage



30



31



32



33



34



35



36



37



38

XV Crusader gold coinage: Jerusalem



39



40



41



42



43



44



45



46



47



48



49

XVI. Crusader gold and silver coinage



50



51



52



53



54



55



56



57



58



59



60

XVII. Crusader silver coinage

GAZETTEER AND NOTE ON MAPS

This gazetteer has been prepared to fill a variety of functions. Every relevant place-name found in the text or on the maps is here alphabetized and identified, variant spellings and equivalent names in other languages are supplied, and the map location is indicated. Thus it not only serves as an index to the maps and a supplement to them, but is itself a source for reference on matters of historical geography and changing nomenclature.

In the gazetteer, alphabetization is by the first capital letter of the form used in maps and text, disregarding such lower-case prefixes as *al-* and such geographical words as Cape, Gulf, Lake, Mount, and the like. The designation "classical" may mean Greek, Latin, Biblical, or other ancient usage, and the designation "medieval" generally means that the name in question was in common use among speakers of various languages during the crusades, or appears in contemporary sources.

On the maps may be found nearly every place name occurring in the text of this volume or of volume V, since the same maps appear in both volumes. Exceptions include a few places whose exact locations are unknown, a few outside the regions mapped, several in areas overcrowded with names, and some of minimal importance or common knowledge.

All maps for this volume have been designed and prepared in the University of Wisconsin Cartographic Laboratory under the direction of Otto Bräuer, assisted by David DeBaze. Base information was compiled from U.S.A.F. Jet Navigation Charts at a scale of 1:2,000,000. Historical data have been supplied by Dr. Harry W. Hazard (who also compiled the gazetteer) from such standard works as Sprünk-Mentke, Stieler, Andree, and Baedeker for Europe, Lévy-Provençal for Moslem Spain, Rubens Liuch and Bon for Frankish Greece, and Hommann, Duquesne, Deschamps, Cohen, and LeStrange for the Near East. Additional information was found in *The Encyclopedia of Islam* (old and new editions) and *Islam Anshlopedia*, in Yaqut and other Arabic sources, in *The Columbia Lippincott Gazetteer of the World*, on Michelin and Hallwag road maps, and of course in the text of this volume.

Aachen (German), Aix-la-Chapelle (French): city—F2b5: 2, 3

Abyrnesia, region—see Ethiopia.

Achaia (Latin), Achaia (classical-Greek), Akhaia (modern Greek): district of northern Meroë—D2c: 4

Acce; Proterakis (classical), Saint Jean d'Acce (medieval), Akhā (Arabic), Akko (Italian): city, port—L1C3: 1, 2

Adaina or Satalis (medieval), Adana (classical), Adana (Turkish): port—K1a5: 1, 3, Adana (classical), Armanus, Turkish: city—L3a3: 1, 4.

Adica, Ydica (Arabic): port—H1j3: 12, 13.

Adriaspole; Hadriaspolis (classical), Edirne (Turkish): city—J2d4: 1, 3, 3.

Adriatic Sea, Hadria or Mare Hadriaticum (Latin)—CHC: 2, 3, 4

Agoson Sea; Agoson Pelagos (Greek), Mare Agoson (Latin), Ege Denizi (Turkish)—T1c: 1, 3, 4, 5

Agrium, town—see Neutium.

Agnos or Aenna (classical), Easo or Menas (medieval), Enez (Turkish): town—J2d5: 3, 5.

Aetolia (Latin), Aitolia (classical-Greek), Aiolia (modern Greek), district of central Greece—D2c: 4

Alghaslan, region, now a nation, east of northern Persia—QR3c: 12, 13.

Agros (Greek): Greek Orthodox monastery—K4f: 1.

Aguisun (medieval), Aiguille or Aiguille (French): village just north of La Puy (D4c): 2.

Aigaiyn Pelagos—see Agoson Sea.

Yay Jāhī (Arabic: well of Goliath), Goliath or Well of Harold (medieval), 'En Harod (Greek): village—L1j7: 2.

Aix-en-Paloux (French): town—D5d2: 2.

Aix-la-Chapelle: city—see Aachen.

Akai (Greek): village—K4c3: 3.

Akcha-Burgen; Akca-Burgen or -Burgen (Turkish): village near Kozlu-Dere (J2d5: 3)

Akcha-Limes; Akca-Limes (Turkish): post north of Gölgebi (J2d5: 3).

Akhlat or Aklat (Turkish), Akhlā or Khlā (Arabic), Khlai (Armenian): town—M3c: 1.

Akkā, Akkai: city, port—see Acce.

Akkerman (medieval), Belpored Dnestroval (Russian): port—K1a4: 1.

Akman, or Sara-Berke (Latin): town, now unimportant—N2c2: 13.

Akroëtic; Akroëti (Turkish: white city), Philometum (Latin), Philometion (medieval-Greek): town—E2c2: 1, 3.

Alamut; Alamūt (Persian, Arabic): fortress: C1a5: 12.

Alanya (Turkish), Samaklon or Camaklon (medieval), AlaYuk or Alayā (Arabic): port—K2a4: 1, 3.

Alaphia: town—see Philostephia.

Alte Jula (Latin), Wessertung (German), Gyulafehérvár (Hungarian), Alte Julia (Romanian): town—M4: 1.

Althia (medieval), Shalpei or Shajeri (Albanian): region NW of Epirus, now a nation—M4: 3, 4.

Althio Ludale (Indian): town 14 miles SW of Rome (G1d4: 2, 3)

Althieria (French): town, probably Saxons (or error for Elia).

Althousia (medieval): battlefield—H5d4: 4.

Altkunze; Altkunze (Slovak): town 17 miles NW of Moh (J2d2: 3).

Aleppo (Indian), Beroa or Chalybon (classical), Halab (Arabic), Haleb (Turkish): city—L3p4: 1, 6.

Alexia: town—see Leth.

Alexandria (medieval), İskenderia (Turkish): port—L3d4: 4.

Alexandria, Gulf of, Sams Imaon (classical), İskenderun Körfezi (Turkish)—L3e4: 6.

- Alexandria (classical), al-Ishkandariyah (Arabic): city, port—J514: 1, 3.
 Algiers, al-Jazîr (Arabic): city—E644: 2.
 Aila (medieval); possibly Aila (formerly Almo), 25 miles sw of Muses (E542: 2).
 Alpheus (Latin), Alpheion (classical Greek), Charbon (medieval), Aifon (modern Greek): river—Dc3: 4.
 Alpes montanis rurs—PGc: 2, 3.
 Alace (French), Alania (Latin), Elasa (German): region west of the upper Rhine—Fc: 2, 3.
 Alchengo: town—see Ephesus.
 Amali (Italian): port—G545: 3.
 Amantus (Latin), Giver, Alma, or Elma Dağı (Turkish): mountain range—L2c4: 4.
 Amara (Turkish), Amarus (classical): port—K344: 1, 3.
 Amasya (Turkish), Amasea (classical): town—Lm5: 1.
 Amida (classical), Amid-e Deyr Bahr (Arabic), Deyrbehir or Deyrbahr (Turkish): town—M3c5: 1.
 Amiens (French): city—E3c1: 2.
 Anatolia-Hisar (Turkish castle of Anatolia): fortress—J544: 3.
 Anapha, Anaphi (classical Greek), Nancha (medieval Italian), Anafi (modern Greek) island—J3c4: 3.
 Anatolia; Asia Minor (Latin), Rumanya or Rima (medieval), Anadolu (Turkish): region south of the Black Sea—JKLde: 1, 3, 5.
 Anathinas (Latin), Anzio (medieval), Ankyon (Turkish), Ponsoy (Bulgarian): port—J3d3: 3.
 Antona (Italian): port—G442: 2, 3.
 Andalusia, al-Andalus (Arabic), Andalusia (Spanish): region of southern Spain—CDc: 2.
 Andreas, Cape, or Cape Saint Andrew; Le-Chief (medieval): on tip of Cyprus—K3c5: 3.
 Andros (classical), Andro (medieval Italian), Andria (Turkish), Andros (modern Greek), island—J3c2: 3.
 Angoulême (French): town—E1c1: 2.
 Anjou (French): region of sw France—D3c1: 2.
 Ankara (Turkish), Anagya (classical), Angora (medieval): town, now city—K3af: 1, 3.
 Antioch: port—see Adalia.
 Antioch, Antiochia (classical), Antakiyah (Arabic), Antakya (Turkish): city—L2c4: 1, 4.
 Antivari (Italian), Anteharium (Latin), Bar (Serbian): port—H343: 3.
 Apulia (classical), Puglia or Puglia (Italian): region of se Italy—Hd: 3.
 Aquitaine (French), Aquitania (classical): region of western France—Dc4: 2.
 Araba (classical), Jazīrat al-Arab (Arabic): peninsula upon east of the Red Sea—LMNg: 1, 4, 7.
 Aragón, Aragón (Spanish), Aragon (Arabic): region of sw Spain—D5d: 2.
 Aral Sea; Ara'dsaya Mör (Russian)—FQcd: 12, 13.
 Arcadia (classical), Arcadia (medieval), Arkadika (modern Greek): district of northern Morea—Dc3: 4.
 Archipelago (from Greek *Archos* Pelagos): islands of the Aegean Sea (L3d: 3).
 Arcifal: region—see Transylvania.
 Arles (French): town 18 miles sw of Boulogne (E3c5: 2).
 Argos; Carion de Argos (Rumanian): town—E5c3: 3.
 Argolis or Argolis (classical), Argolis (modern Greek): district of eastern Morea—Dc3: 4.
 Argos (classical), Argos (modern Greek): town—E3c3: 3, 4.
 Argynostreon (Greek), Gje-rokaster (Albanian): town—Hd3: 4.
 Arles (French), Arlas (classical): city—E542: 2.

Armenia (classical), Haywan (Armenian), Ermenen (Turkish): region north of Lake Van—ME: 1

Armenia, Cilician kingdom—ELe: 9

Arqut, Cape: western tip of Cyprus—ELe: 2

Arqut: town—see Polis.

Aruf, Apollonia-Summa (classical), Arur (medieval), Aruf (Arabic), Tel Arhaf (Hebrew): town, now abandoned for Hadrissa—KSt: 2

Asia (medieval), Asienon (classical), Asu (modern Greek), Narda (Turkish): town—De: 3, 4

Asak (Arabic), Arama (classical), Arak (medieval): town, now unimportant—LLe: 5

Asos (French): district of southern France—ELe: 2

Asotia, Asiotum (Hebrew), Naqalia (Arabic), Tel Asaphon (Hebrew): port, now abandoned for modern Ashdod—KSt: 1, 2

Asia Minor (classical): region equivalent to western Anatolia.

Asi (Italian), Asia (classical): town—FSt: 2, 3

Athina, Athina (classical Greek), Ceteon or Cetton (medieval), Athina (modern Greek): city—Me: 3, 4

Athos, dachy—le: 9

Athlik, 'Acil castle—see Cilician Pylae.

Athos, Mount: Agia Oros (modern Greek), Greek Orthodox monastery—MSt: 4, 5

Atlantic Ocean—ELe: 2

Atlas, High: Atlas (Arabic): mountain range—CF: 2

Atica (Latin), Atika (classical Greek), Atiki (modern Greek), district of eastern Greece—FSt: 4, 5

Athanas (French): town 44 miles west of Ligeia (ELe: 2)

Augsburg (German): city—GLe: 2, 3

Austria, Osterreich (German): region east of Bavaria, smaller than modern nation—GLe: 2, 3

Auvergne (French): region of southern France—ELe: 2

Auzun (French): town—ELe: 2

Avala or Haxile (Serbian): mountain 9 miles south of Belgrade (MSt: 3)

Avignon (French), Avinon (Italian): city—ESt: 2

Avila: Avila (classical), Avila de los Caballeros (Spanish): town—MSt: 2

Avlona (medieval), Avlon (classical), Valona (Italian), Vlora or Vlora (Albanian): port—MSt: 3, 4

Axilla: port—see Archinon.

Ayas (modern), Lajazzo (Italian), Yumurtalik (Turkish): port—LLe: 4

Ayasofya: town—see Ephesus.

Ayazmed (Turkish): port—LLe: 1

Aydin (Turkish): district of western Anatolia, equivalent to classical Lydia—le: 5

Aydinlik (Turkish): port—MSt: 5

Azerbajjan, Asharbadjan or Azerbadjan (Persian): region of new Persia and at Transcaucasia—Ne: 1

Azer: port—see Thak.

Azov, Sea of: Azovskoye More (Russian)—le: 1

Baafbek, Bafopolis (classical), Bafidukki (Arabic): town—ESt: 6, 7

Babykion: town—see Patal.

Balla: castle—see Siquera.

Baghdad, Baghdad (Arabic): city—MSt: 1

Baela: town—see Bethsan.

Baleares (Spanish): island group—ELe: 2

Balkan Mountains—M: 3, 5

- Balkan, peninsular region east of the Adriatic Sea.
 Balikhah, Lake—StE. 12, 13.
 Baltic Sea—H14c. 1, 3.
 Bar, port—see Amdur.
 Barbai (Frisch): unidentified town, probably Ischem.
 Barbary: the coast of North Africa.
 Barbastro (Spanish), Barbastir (Arabic): town—E14c. 2.
 Barcelona (Spanish), Barcino (classical), Barçilônah (Arabic): city, port—E14d. 2.
 Bari (Italian), Barium (chemical): port—H14d. 1.
 Barletta (Italian): port—H14d. 1.
 Baruth: port—see Beltri.
 Basel (German), Basle or Bâle (French): city—F1c2. 2, 3.
 Bashkent or Kasa Hissar (Turkish): battlefield—L1c1. 1.
 al-Battin, town—see Belton.
 Bavaria, Bayern (German): region of southern Germany—Ge. 2, 3.
 Bâle (French), district of the Franco—De. 2.
 Belfort: crusader castle—see Belfort.
 Benbasa-as-Dondjosa (French): town and monastery 41 miles east of Cahors (E24c. 2).
 Besovale (French): town—E1c. 2.
 Beshkerek (Hungarian): town 34 miles east of Szeged (H14. 3).
 Bedford: town—D1b2. 2.
 Beirut: Beyrut (classical), Bauri (Arabic), Baruth (medieval): port—L1f2. 1, 4, 7.
 Bela Palanka (Serbian): town—H1c. 1.
 Belfort or Baulfort (medieval), Shaql Arsin or Qafar ash-Shaql (Arabic): fort of the rock: crusader castle—L1f2. 7.
 Belgorod Dnestrovsk: port—see Altkerman.
 Belgrade: Beograd (Serbian; whose town): city—H1d. 1.
 Beligala or Bella Fala (medieval): monastery—E4c3. 3.
 Belvedere (Italian), Benavescum (Latin): town—G14d. 3.
 Bern (Aldanian), Polychoropolis (classical), Bellegarda (medieval): town—H14b. 3, 4.
 Bergamo (Italian): town 28 miles east of Milan (F5c2. 3).
 Berry (French): district of central France—Ec. 2.
 Bethany, al-Azariyah (Arabic), Elanot (Hebrew): abbey and fort—L1f4. 7.
 Bethlehem (Hebrew), Ephrata (classical), Beit Lahm (Arabic; house of Beth): town—L1f4. 7.
 Bethan or Bessan (medieval), Scythopolis or Betsan (classical), Beitin (Arabic), Bet She'an (Hebrew): town—L1f3. 7.
 Beyazid, port—see Foz.
 Beylahin, Beylahir (Turkish): town—E2c2. 1, 2.
 Biza or Biza (Turkish), Pige (Latin), Pige (medieval Greek): town—F14f. 2, 5.
 al-Biq' (Arabic; the hollow), Cade-Syria (classical), Bekaa (modern): district of central Lebanon—L1f2. 4, 7.
 Bithulia (classical): district of NW Anatolia—J1c. 10.
 Bivol, town—see Mousair.
 Black Sea, Mare Euxinum (Latin), Kara Deniz (Turkish), Chernoye More (Russian)—J1Ld. 1, 3, 5.
 Blos (French): town—E2c3. 2.
 Bobalia: district north of Ouessant—In. 3.
 Bodrum or Bodrum (Turkish), Melicarnaeum (classical), Perivolon (modern Greek): town—J1c2. 3.
 Boeotia (Latin), Boiotia (classical Greek), Vosta (modern Greek): district of eastern Greece—J1c2. 4.
 Bohemia, Čechy (Czech): region north of Austria—G14c. 2, 3.
 Boissieux (French): castle near Ambusson.

Bekhar, city—see Bekhara.

Bekhar (Turkish): village 8 miles *sw* of Gailholl (J245: 5).

Bekhem, town 13 miles *west* of Durban (D444: 2).

Belgar: town—see Belgar.

Bologna (Italian): city—G441: 2, 3.

Bolnisi (medieval): castle *near* Nish (D42: 1).

Bombay: city and port—E312: 12, 13.

Borach, Borag (Turkish), Bor (Serbian): town 30 miles *west* of Villa (J342: 3).

Bordeaux (French), Bordigala (classical): city, port—D540: 2.

Bosnia, Borna (Serbian, Turkish): region *west* of Serbia—H4: 3.

Bozporus (classical), Karadeniz Bogazi (Turkish: Black Sea strait)—J564: 1, 3, 5.

Borris (medieval), Boria (classical), al-Burris (Arabic): town—L117: 4, 7.

Bouillon (French): town—F147: 2, 3.

Boulogne-sur-Mer (French): port—E344: 2.

Bourcq, castle—see Le Bourcq.

Bourges (French): town—J143: 2.

Bourgogne: region—see Burgundy.

Borj eda: island—see Tenedos.

Brabant (French, Fleming): district *east* of Flanders—E46: 2, 3.

Bradenau (French): village 40 miles *sw* of Blois (J43: 2).

Brandenburg (German): district of *northern* Germany—C4: 2, 3.

Bratislava (Slovakian), Friedburg (German), Feodosy (Hungarian): city—H142: 2.

Braunschweig: city—see Brunswick.

Bremen (German): city, port—F442: 2, 3.

Brescia (Italian): city—G457: 3.

Breslau (German), Wrocław (Polish): city—H144: 3.

Brienne-la-Vallée (French): village 20 miles *sw* of Troyes (J43: 2).

Brindisi (Italian), Brundisium (Latin): port—H145: 3.

British Isles, England, Wales, Scotland, Ireland and smaller islands.

Britanny; Bretagne (French), Blos (Breton: region of *sw* France—D4: 2).

Bruges (French), Brugge (Flemish): port, now city—E444: 2.

Brunswick, Braunschweig (German): city—G447: 2, 3.

Bruce: city—see Bruce.

Buda (Hungarian), Otus (German): city, now part of Budapest—H343: 2.

Bullerston (medieval): castle—E445: 4.

Bugra, Saldar (classical), al-Bayṭah (Arabic), Bouge (French): port—F144: 2.

Bukhara, Bekhara (Persian), Bukhara (Arabic): city—Q344: 12, 13.

Belgar or Belgar; Bolgary (Russian, formerly Успенское): town, now village—N344: 12.

Bulgaria, Moesia (classical), Blgariya (Bulgarian): region *south* of the lower Danube, larger than modern nation—H4: 1, 3, 5.

Burgundy; Bourgogne (French): region of *eastern* France, extending farther *south* than *sw*—E46: 2.

Burhanpur: port—see Kanur.

Bursa (Turkish), Prusa (classical), Brusa (medieval): city—J545: 1, 3, 5.

Byblor: town—see Beblai.

Byzantium: city—see Constantinople.

Cair (French): city—D544: 2.

Caesarea ad Arapsum or Mamca (classical), Kayseri (Turkish): city—L142: 1.

Caesarea Maritima or Palaestina (classical), Caesara (medieval), Qaṣṣariyah (Arabic), Qezari (Israeli): port, now abandoned for Seder Yass—E545: 7.

Cadix: port—see Kadi.

Calhern (French): town—E441: 2.

- Calce al-Qal'ah (Arabic: the viceregency city—K2f5: 1, 3.
 Calabria (Italian): region of sw Italy—Ed: 3.
 Calamota town—see Reims.
 Cambria (French): town—E445: 2.
 Campoverde (Italian), Isola Verde (w of Rome (G344: 3).
 Canakkale town—see Samsun.
 Candalaria port—see Alanya.
 Candia, island—see Crete.
 Candia (modern), Hieracium (Latin), Ierakion (modern Greek): port—3f6: 3.
 Canea (classical), Khandia (modern Greek): port—Ed: 3.
 Capria (medieval), Bulla or Bylla (classical), Kallia (Albanian): town, now near port—H545: 4.
 Cantonary city—E264: 2.
 Canton, Kiangchow or Kiang-shen (Chinese): city, port—AA42: 13.
 Capriano or Capriano (Italian): village 75 miles west of Rome (G344: 3).
 Capus (Italian) town—G544: 3.
 Caranibach, Caranibach (Bosnian): town—3d: 3.
 Carakova, Carakova (Rumanian): town 23 miles *sw* of Caranibach (Ed: 3).
 Caria: region—see Mespole.
 Carinthia; Kärnten (German): region south of medieval Austria—Gc: 3, 3.
 Carpat, district—see Karpas.
 Carpathians, Carpatii (classical), Karpai (Czech, Polish), Carpati (Rumanian): mountains range—1f: 1, 3.
 Caspian Sea—H64c: 1.
 Casagone (French): village near Sarlat, 32 miles *nw* of Cahors (E240: 3).
 Cassandra, Padene (classical), Kassandra (modern Greek): peninsula—14c: 4.
 Castellortico; Magina (classical), Moss (Turkish), Casaleazzo (Italian), Kaselédrico (modern Greek): island—Ed: 1, 3.
 Castile, Castilla (Spanish), Castella (Arabic): region of north central Spain—D6c: 2.
 Catalonia, Catalunya (Spanish), Catalunya (Catalan): region of *sw* Spain—Ed: 3.
 Cathay: region—see China.
 Cateau (Italian), Koser (Serbian): port—H443: 3.
 Caucasus, Kavkaz (Russian): mountain range—H74d: 1.
 Caumont sur-Durance (French): village 2 miles *sw* of Arles (E542: 2).
 Celje town—see Celje.
 Central Asia: region extending from the Aral Sea to Mongolia.
 Cea, Keda (classical Greek), Dia (medieval), Zia (Italian), Mordet (Turkish), Kta (modern Greek): island—Ed: 4, 3.
 Cephalonia (Latin), Kephallonia (classical Greek), Kephallonia (medieval Greek), Kefalonia (modern Greek): island—Ed: 3, 4.
 Cerigo (Italian), Cythra (Latin), Kythira (classical Greek), Kithira (modern Greek): island—O4b: 3, 4.
 Cernoe: town—see Kyrenia.
 Cesari: port—see Cosmo.
 Cetina: city—see Adria.
 Ceuta (Spanish), Septa (classical), Saluta (Arabic): port—C7d: 2.
 Chalcedon (Latin), Kalliklades (classical Greek), Kalliklades (medieval Greek), Kallikly (Turkish): town—35d: 3, 3.
 Chalcis: port—see Negropont.
 Chalon-sur-Saône (French): town—E56c: 2.
 Champagne (French): region of *sw* France—E7c: 2.
 Charbon: river—see Alpheus.
 Chartres (medieval): town near Reims (H545: 4).
 Chartres (French): city—E7c: 2.

- Château Pélerin (French), *Aslânîk* (modern), *Yelik* (Arabic), *Yajin* (Israel); crusader castle—E313. 2.
- Châteauneuf (French); town 27 miles NW of Chartres (E2c2. 2).
- Châteauroux (French); town—E2c4. 2.
- Châtillon-sur-Lain (French); town, now part of Châtillon-Coligny, 32 miles west of Auxerre (E4c3. 2).
- Chersonesus, *Cherson* (Byzantine), *Cherson*, *Cherson*, or *Sif Stadi* (Turkish); destruction of the Serbs, *Chersonese* (modern Greek); battlefield—J344. 3, 1.
- Cherson; port—see *Cherson*.
- Cheshme, *Çayir* (Turkish); town—J3c2. 3.
- Chetva, *Çetva* (Serbian); town 18 miles NW of Kragujevac (J1d1. 3).
- Chiavari (Italian); town 16 miles SW of Genoa (F4d3. 3).
- Cheng, *Chang* (modern); region of western Asia—W3C3a/bc. 12, 13.
- Chios (classical), *Scio* (Italian), *Sabir* (Turkish), *Khios* (modern Greek); island—J5a2. 5.
- Chorla, *Çorla* (Turkish), *Thaurium* (Latin); town—J344. 3.
- Choria (modern); unidentified port in Cilicia, possibly *Coryus* (E3c4. 1).
- Chortopolis; port—see *Kavala*.
- Ciccia (classical); region of southern Anatolia—E1a. 4.
- Cilly, *Calje* (Slovene); town—H1c1. 3.
- Cicuzaco; region north of western Coahuila—L34d. 1.
- Clermont; town 27 miles SW of Barch (D3b4. 3).
- Chloris (French); abbey—F1c3. 2.
- Cib; town—see *Zakussonia*.
- Civinet (modern), *Chivius* (classical); port, now abandoned—J5d3. 3, 1.
- Clairvaux (French); abbey—E5c2. 2.
- Clarnor; town—see *Clarnor*.
- Clari (modern), *Clary-sur-Senna* (French); town 27 miles east of Amiens (E3c1. 2).
- Clermont (French); town, now part of Clermont-Ferrand—E4c3. 2.
- Cluny (French); abbey—E3c4. 2.
- Cologne (French), *Colonia Agrippinensis* (Latin), *Köln* (German); city—F7b3. 2, 1.
- Comenian or Comian (French), *Kamen* (Flemish); town 10 miles NW of Lille (E4d3. 3).
- Compiègne (French); town 11 miles east of Beauvais (E3d1. 2).
- Compostela or Santiago de Compostela (Spanish), *Compos Stelai* (Latin), *Shant Yngith* (Arabic); town and shrine—C3d3. 2.
- Constante (French), *Konstanz* (German); town—F5c3. 2, 1.
- Constantinople; *Byzantium* or *Constantinopolis* (classical), *İstanbul* (Turkish); city—J444. 1, 3, 5.
- Corbora (modern), *Krbava* (Serbian); region of western Croatia.
- Corbora, *Corbora* (Spanish), *Qorabak* (Arabic); city—D1c3. 2.
- Corfu, *Cerkyra* (Latin), *Korkyra* (classical Greek), *Corfù* (Italian), *Kérkira* (modern Greek); island—H3c1. 3, 4.
- Corfu; *Korinthos* (classical Greek); new Palus *Korinthos*; Old Corinth; city—Dc3. 3, 4.
- Corinth, Gulf of; *Korinthiaki Kálpis* (modern Greek)—J3c2. 4.
- Cornwall; region of SW England—CD6. 1.
- Corn (modern), *Kornat* (modern Greek), *Korini* (modern Greek); port—J2c4. 3, 4.
- Cordia, *Cyrus* (classical), *Orest* (French); island—F6. 2, 5.
- Corycus (classical), *Gofegs* (Armenian), *Le Coud* (modern), *Korjen* (Turkish); port—E3c4. 1.
- Cos, *Laigo* or *Santhao* (modern Italian), *Sankos* (Turkish), *Kós* (modern Greek); island—J3c1. 3.
- Courmayeur (French); village 12 miles NW of Annecy (E4c3. 2).

- Craçov (Craçovia) (Latin), Krišev (Polish): city—1156: 3.
 Cremona (Italian): town—E1c5: 2.
 Crevas (French): village near Blois, 13 miles *s.w.* of Angoulême (E1c5: 2).
 Crete; Candia (medieval), Kretē (medieval Greek), Kandia (Turkish), Kriti (modern Greek): island—E1c5: 1, 3.
 Crimea; Genua (medieval), Krym (Russian): peninsula—E4c5: 1, 3.
 Croatia; Merus (medieval), Hrvatsia (Croatian): region north of Dalmatia—Hc: 3.
 Crous (Italian), Kruja (Serbian), Akça-Hisar (Turkish), Krujë (Albanian): town—1134: 3, 4.
 Cyclades (classical), Kiklādhai (modern Greek), island group—Hc: 3, 3.
 Cyprus (Latin), Kyprou (medieval Greek), Kıbrıs (Turkish), Kipro (modern Greek): island—Kc1: 1, 8.
 Cyrenaica (classical), Barcah (Arabic): region west of Egypt—Hc: 10, 11.
 Cynicus (classical), Kapıdağ (Turkish): town, now abandoned—1161: 3, 3.

 Dalmatian river—1140: 1, 3.
 Dalmatia (medieval), Dalmacija (Croatian): region east of the Adriatic Sea, equivalent to classical *Dlyra*—E1c: 3.
 Damascus (classical), Dimashq or ash-Shām (Arabic: the left): city—L12: 1, 7.
 Dancium, Demele (Arabic: part)—K2f4: 1.
 Danube; Donau (German), Duna (Hungarian), Danav (Serbian, Bulgarian), Dunărea (Romanian) river—G5c2, 1161: 1, 2, 3.
 Dardanelles, Hellespontus (classical), Çanakkale Boğazi (Turkish): strait—1161: 1, 3.
 Deabolis town—see Demele.
 Dead Sea, Bahr Lūt (Arabic: sea of Lot), Yām Hammāh (Hebrew)—L1f4: 1, 2.
 Delhi, Dill (Hindi), Dillī or Dilli (Persian): city—T1g2: 12, 13.
 Demotia, Didymoteichon (classical), Demotia (medieval Greek), Dništiničichon (modern Greek): town—1144: 3, 3.
 Denmark, Danmark (Danish: region of Scandinavia, then including southern part of modern Sweden)—F6a6: 1, 3.
 Deolus (medieval): fortress—1444: 3.
 Deuil (French): town 8 miles north of Paris (E1c2: 2).
 Devian: town 11 miles east of Bath (D1b4: 2).
 Devye, Lahn—1142: 5.
 Dewl, Deabolis or Diabolis (medieval): town, now abandoned—1145: 3, 4.
 Didymoteichon: town—see Demotia.
 Diademaur castle—see Saint Hilarion.
 Dijon (French): city—F1c: 2, 3.
 Dilyan town—see Salmas.
 Dimashq city—see Damascus.
 Dio port—51b5: 13.
 Diyā-Bakr (Arabic): region of the upper Tigris—Lc: 1.
 Diyā-Bakr, Dayr/bakir town—see Amala.
 Dooper; Ikorythones (classical), Dooper (Russian: river)—E3c4: 1.
 Drehtur; Tyms (classical), Dreter (Russian), Njara (Romanian), river—11c4: 1.
 Dobruja region east of lower Danube—Jd: 1, 1.
 Dou-de-Frangois (French): town 73 miles *s.w.* of Caen (E5c1: 2).
 Domastion (Czech), Dom (German): town—G3c1: 1.
 Don, Tanais (classical): river—L5c3: 1.
 Dons or Donsy-le-Frē (French): town—E4c3: 1.
 Dorylaeum (classical): town, now abandoned in favor of Eskişehir—E1e1: 1.
 Douai (French): town 12 miles north of Lille (E4b5: 2).
 Douro (Portuguese), Duna (Serbian), Dnestr (Arabic): river—C3d4: 2.

Dracur (town)—1344. 3, 4, 5.

Dreux (French): town 21 miles *s.w.* of Chartres (E2c2: 2).

Drives (medieval), Demetrius (classical), Sâltur (Turkish), Sâltura (Romanian), Sâltura (Bulgarian): town—1347: 3.

Dubrovnik: port—see Ragusa.

Dukigan (Italian), Ufany (Swahili): port—H364: 3.

Durazzo (Italian), Epitaphium or Dyrrhachium (classical), Driç (Turkish), Dürres (Albanian): port—H364. 3, 4.

Durham: city—D461: 2.

Ebro (Spanish), Ebro (Arabic: river)—D463: 3.

Edessa, Raihan or Raḥān (medieval), ar-Raḥīl' (Arabic), Urfa (Turkish): city—L465: 1, 6.

Edirne: city—see Adrianople.

Eger: city—see Erlau.

Egypt: Miṣr (Arabic): region of *sw.* Africa—JE1: 1, 3.

Elbasan (medieval), Albaniy: town—H44: 3, 4.

Elbe (German), Labe (Czech): river—G262: 2.

Elia; Eli or Elia (classical-Greek), Ilio (modern Greek): district of *sw.* Mores—12c3: 4.

Enid: river—see Isid.

England, Britannia (Latin): region—D1c: 2.

English Channel, La Manche (French)—CD4c: 3.

Enkairna (Greek): Greek Orthodox monastery in Cyprus, location uncertain

East of Euseb: town—see Amos.

Ephesus (classical), Alaiyaga (medieval), Ayasuluk (Turkish): city, now unimportant—13c3: 3, 5.

Epirus (Latin), Epeiros (classical Greek), Ipiria (modern Greek), region west of Thessaly—D1: 3, 4.

Ertis (Turkish): district east of Ankara—K1: 1.

Erlau (German), Eger (Hungarian): city—Bc3: 3.

Erzurum, Theodosiopolis (classical), Garis (Armenian), Erzurum (Turkish): city—M21: 1.

Erzinjan (Turkish), Arzinga (classical), Arzanga (medieval): town—L5c1: 1.

Esmir: port—see Pera.

Eutiver: city—see Thebes.

Ethiopia or Aethiopia, Kuyos (Aethiopic: region of *sw.* central Africa—not in region mapped).

Euboea (classical), Evros (medieval Greek), Negropont (Italian), Euboea (Turkish), E-vos (modern Greek): island—14c3: 3, 4, 5.

Euphrates (classical), al-Furāt (Arabic), Fırat Nehri (Turkish): river—N114: 3; L464: 4.

Falkenberg; Fouquembergues (French): village 24 miles *sw.* of Boulogne (E2b5: 2).

Famagusta; Ammōthōssa (classical Greek), Famagoria (medieval Italian): port—K4c5: 1, 2.

Fécamp (French): abbey, now town, 38 miles *sw.* of Rouen (E2c1: 2).

Ferrara (Italian): city—G24F: 2, 3.

Fethiye: port—see Makri.

Fey: Fe (Arabic), city—D41: 2.

Filiata: region—see Palestine.

Flanders, Vlaanderen (Flemish): region of northern France and Belgium—E1b: 2.

Flores or Fiorin (medieval), Fiori (Italian): abbey near Comana, 47 miles *sw.* of Cizicene (E2c1: 3).

Florence; Firenze (Italian): city—G2d2: 3, 3.

Flăceni (Bulgarian): town—L41: 3.

Foglia, Foca, port—see *Flaccia*.

Forn (French): district east of Clermont (EAc): 2.

France: region, smaller than modern nation.

Frankfurt am Main (German): city—F40: 2, 3.

Frankfurt (Turkish): *hanköy*—K3c: 1.

Francia (German): town 45 miles NW of Cilly (D4c): 3.

Frane: Frisland (Dutch, German): region of northern Netherlands and NW Germany—
Fr: 2, 3.

Friuli (Italian): district of NW Italy—Gr: 2, 3.

Fustat, al-Fustat (Arabic), Babylon (medieval): town—K37: 4.

Gadara: town—see *Gaza*.

Gadem (Belgian): suburb W of Vervae (J4d): 5.

Gadisa, Hagadi (Israeli): region of northern Palestine—L17: 7.

Gadise, Sea of, or Lake Tiberias; Bahrain Tiberiyah (Arabic), Yasa Kizirmas (Turkish)—
L17: 7.

Gallipoli (medieval), Callipolis (classical), Galliole (Turkish): town—J2d: 2, 3.

Gascogne: Gasconia (French): region of NW France—D4r: 2.

Gasta (medieval): unidentified port 15 miles from Senj (G3d): 3.

Gastria, castle—see *La Castra*.

Gata, Cape: southern tip of Cyprus—K4f: 4.

Gaza (classical), Qadira (medieval), Ghazza (Arabic): town—K34: 7.

Gasturia, peninsula—see *Crimia*.

Gedach: village—see *Ain Jalut*.

Genoa, Genova (Latin), Genova (Italian): city, port—F4d: 2, 3.

Georgia II Orzula (medieval), Sakartvelo (Georgian): region east of the Black Sea
and south of the Caucasus—M4d: 1.

Germany: Alamannia or Altmannia (medieval), Deutschland (German): region of north
central Europe—F0c: 9.

Germiyan (Turkish): district of west central Anatolia—H4c: 5.

Gibelin: town—see *Jahail*.

Gibelin: Semt of, at Zughq (Arabic)—C3d: 2.

Giorgia (Romanian), San Giorgio (Italian), Somogyvár (Hungarian): town—J2d: 3.

Glaucina: Chlaucina or Chlaucina (medieval), Cyllene (Latin), Kyllini (classical Greek),
Kifini (modern Greek): town—D2: 4.

Gülen Horn: Chrysocorn (classical), Haliç (Turkish): bay between Constantinople
and Pera (J4d4: 5).

Gulabatz: Gulabaz (Serbian): town—D2d: 1.

Güyük (Turkish): town—K1d: 2.

Guacada (Spanish), Ighramtash or Gharamtash (Arabic): city—D2d: 2.

Guceo, Cape—K3f: 4.

Guceo: Helina (Greek), Guceia (Latin): region west of the Aegean Sea, smaller than
modern nation.

Guerardien (German), Nagyrárod (Hungarian), Oradea (Romanian): city—J2c: 3.

Guadalupe (Spanish), al-Wadi al-Kabir (Arabic: the great river): river—C3c: 2.

Guadiana (Spanish, Portuguese), Wadi Anah (Arabic): river—C3c: 2.

Guzes or Güzet (French): town 16 miles NW of Boulogne (J2c7: 2).

Guzerat or Gujerat: district of western India—S4: 13.

Gurpan: city—see *Uguch*.

Gurghia: town—see *Sacra Imperi Ödemiş*.

Győr (Hungarian), Euse (German): town—H3c: 3.

Habiburg: castle—see *Hapsburg*.

Harfa, Cagblar or Caglia (medieval), Harfa (Arabic), Hafa (Israeli): port—L1f: 1, 2.

- Hamaak; Hamaat (French), Hangerwara (Flemish): district east of Arzon—EPlc 2, 3
- Halab, Haleh: city—see Aleppo.
- Hallerstau: town—see Boheim.
- Hamaik; Epiphania or Hamaik (classical), Hamath (Arabic): city—L2c1, 1, 8.
- Hamid (Turkish): district of west central Anatolia—Ee 3
- Hangchow or Hang-chow (Chinese), Quinsu (medieval): city, port—CCN3 13
- Hapsburg; Habsburg (German): castle sw of Brugg, 29 miles east of Basel (Fied 3).
- Harod, Well of—see Am Jifta.
- Harut or Haran (Turkish), Carhuac (classical), Harria (Arabic), town—L3c4 1
- Haris, Haris of, Haros (classical), Harin or Harin (Arabic): battlefield, hill—L17 2
- Harusa, Harusa (Arabic): district of ss Syria—L2B2 7.
- Hasterville (French): village 35 miles west of Caen (Diel 3).
- Hebron (classical), Iussak, Haezin or Khalil (Arabic), Saint Abraham (medieval) town—L1B4 7.
- Helmsburg (German): town 22 miles north of Aachen (F2c3 2)
- Hejaz, al-Hijaz (Arabic): region of western Arabia—Lgh 1
- Hellespontine: strait—see Dardanelles.
- Heraclium, port—see Candia.
- Hermannstadt (German), Sathos or Magyarstos (Hungarian), Sibiu (Rumanian): town—J3c1 3.
- Hermion, Mount, al-Jabal ash-Shaikh or Jabal ash-Thal' (Arabic): the hoary, or snow-covered, mountains—L172 7.
- Herzegovina, Herzegovina (Serbian), Hersek (Turkish): district sw of Macedonia—H4 1.
- al-Hijaz: region—see Hejaz.
- Hirara or Hissar (Afghan), Chissar (classical), Chirra (Italian): town—H3d5 4.
- Hirsa or Heris (medieval): fort on Morswa near Daula.
- Hja al-Akrad, fortress—see Krak des Chevaliers.
- Hja, Khalil (Arabic), Cusuma Capha (classical), Hamskoyf (Turkish): town—M3c3 1.
- Hohenstaufen (German): castle, now destroyed, 75 miles south of Würzburg (F3c2, 3).
- Holland (Dutch): region north of Bremen—Eir 2, 3.
- Holy Land—see Palestine.
- Homa, Eruva (classical), Hira (Arabic): city—L27f 1, 4
- Howden (medieval) or Howden: town 80 miles north of Leicester (D4b3 2)
- Hungary; Magyarország (Hungarian): region of central Europe—Hic 3.
- Javina or Jarina (medieval), Yavza (Turkish), Iakovina (modern Greek): town—Hel 3, 4.
- Jebel (medieval), Jibael or Jannala (classical), Yebel (Arabic), Yevae (Turkish): village—K154 7.
- Jocum: city—see Kony.
- Jubens; Lunben (medieval Italian), Juvon (Turkish): island—J4d5 5
- Jell, Emel, or Yemel (Russian): river—Uc 12, 13.
- India, region of southern Asia—R/V17: 12, 13.
- Indian Ocean: Ad/Chaj. 12, 13.
- Indo-China: peninsula region of ss Asia—YZ1a: 12, 13.
- Indian Sea—Hic 3.
- Ira, Iria (Persian): diocesan union comprising most of medieval Persia.
- Ireland, Ulsteria (Latin), Eire (Gaelic): island—Ct 2.
- Ihrar or Iakir (Bulgarian): river flowing past Sofia to the Danube—D4G: 3
- Ilyanderum, port—see Alexandria.
- Isozzo (Italian), Sufa (Croatian): river east of Agalica—G3c5 3.
- Istanbul, city—see Constantinople.

Iarna (classical), Iarna (Croatian, Slovenic peninsula)—Gr. 3
 Italy; Italia (Latin, Italian); peninsula region, now a nation.
 Ithaca (Latin), Ithakē (classical Greek), Ithaki (modern Greek): island—Hdt. 4
 Izmir: city, port—see Smyrna.
 Izmit: town—see Nicomedia.
 Izmit: town—see Nicæa.

Jaffa or Joppa, Yāfa (Arabic), Yāfo (Hebrew): port, now joined to Tel Aviv—Kt13: 1, 7
 Jajce: town—see Yajce.
 Jan-akad (Turkish), New Onokova: island in the Danube rw of Onokova (Eld: 3)
 Jaxartes, town—see Iaxartes.
 Jekoubaphat or Josephat, valley, possibly Kufra, but probably north of Jerusalem (L114: 7).
 Jericho: Arith or az Rith (Arabic): town—L114: 7
 Jerusalem, Hierosolyma (classical), al-Quds ash-Sharif (Arabic), Yeruschalayim (Hebrew): city—L114: 1, 2
 Jidda (Hebrew) (Arabic): port—L114: 1
 Jolof (Fonchi), seven 17 miles wsw of Bad (Fic2: 3)
 Joppa, port—see Jaffa
 Jordan: al-Urdunn (Arabic) river—L114: 1, 2
 Josephat: valley—see Jekoubaphat
 Jubel (Arabic): small mountains, Byblus (classical), Gibelet (modern), town—L114: 1, 4, 7
 Judea: region of central Palestine—L114: 2

Kadiköy: town—see Chalcedon.
 Kaffa or Caffa (modern), Theodosia (classical), Perekops (Russian): port—Lich: 1
 Kalocsa (Hungarian): town—H44: 1
 Kambelja (Bulgarian) river—H42: 3.
 Kambur (Bulgarian): river flowing into Danube rw of Völta (H42: 3).
 Kanguria, town—see Saitanlyk.
 Kantara, al Qasqarah (Arabic) the bridge, Kastron (modern Greek): town—K44: 1.
 Kara Höyük: half-tell—see Bushkent.
 al-Karak: fortress—see Karak.
 Karakorum (Tatar), Hala (Chinese): city, now abandoned—Y42: 12, 13.
 Karaman (Turkish): region of south central Anatolia—Ez: 1.
 Karas: Karas or Karai (Turkish): district of sw Anatolia—Je: 3.
 Karnobad or Karnobad (Bulgarian): town 32 miles west of Anchiabaz (H42: 3).
 Karstia: region—see Carinthia.
 Kartas or Karpasos (Greek), Carpas (modern): peninsula district—K52: 3
 Kasapichan (Bulgarian): village 12 miles east of Shumen (H42: 3).
 Kasanovo (Turkish), Castro Comenense or Kastamonu (modern): town—E44: 1, 3
 Kavala, Neapoli Daurion (classical), Chrysopolis (modern), Kavala (modern Greek): port—H35: 3, 4, 5.
 Kavarna (Bulgarian) resort town—H42: 5.
 Kayseri: city—see Caesarea.
 Kemer: 1) Karamides (modern), Barhaneye (Turkish): port—H42: 5.
 Kerk: Kt Daurion (classical), Krak des Moabitin or Krak of Moab (modern), al-Karak (Arabic): fortress, now town—L114: 1, 2.
 Kerk: port—see Vespere.
 Kerkassabab, Kerkassabab (Persian), Sarmanne (modern): city—H21: 1
 Keryan; Keryan (Armenian), Cassan (modern), Kasta (Arabic), Keryan (Turkish): fortress, now town—L32: 4.
 Ketina: town 25 miles east of Leicester (D44: 2).

Khanbalaq (Mongolian), Ch. Yoking, or Chongtu (classical Chinese), Cambalar (medieval), Peking, Pa-chang, Beijing, or Peking (modern Chinese) city—JHd 12, 13

Kharpen or Harpen (Turkish), Kharpen (Armenian), Har Ziyad or Zaid (Arabic) fortress, now town—LSc2 1.

Kherzon or Cherson (medieval Russian), Chersonesus Heracleotica (classical) Korsun (Slavic) port, now ruined (not modern Kherzon on the Dnieper)—K4d1 1

Kharakana, Kharakala or Kharvakala (modern Greek) stronghold—K4d1 2

Kharasan, Kharakala (Persian) region of see Farna—PQc 12, 13

Khar (Russian) city—K3b5 3.

Kilia (medieval), Kiliya (Bosnian) town—JSc2 1, 3

Kilidilbaba (Turkish) fort—Jd2 5.

Killi Ahmadli (Turkish) tribal region in northern Anatolia—Kd 16, 11

Kishia or Palanka (medieval) fort on Morava opposite Hiram.

Koca-ik (Turkish) district around Nicomedia—Jd 5.

Kölc: city—see Cologan.

Koloiat (medieval), Koloiat (modern Greek) fortress—K3f 8

Konya (Turkish), Iconium (classical, medieval) city—K3a1 1, 3.

Kosovo; Kosovo (Serbian) town—Jd2 3.

Kosovo-Polje; Kosovo Polje (Serbian) field of blackish-grey battlefield near Kosovo (Jd2 3).

Kozer: port—see Chitara.

Koçlu İnce (Turkish) port—Jd2 3.

Kragujevac, Kragyevac (Serbian) town—Jd1 3

Krak de Moztirai (medieval), ash-Shaibak (Arabic) fortress, now village—LH2 1.

Krak des Chevaliers (medieval), Har al-Azad (Arabic) stronghold of the Kurds; fortress—LH1 1, 6.

Krak of Moab, or des Moabites. fortress—see Karak.

Kraków: city—see Cracow.

Kraja. town—see Cris.

Kreuzstet (German), Kreuz (Romanian) town (recently called Stille)—JSc2 3

Krautovac; Krutovac (Serbian), Alaya-Hisar (Turkish) town—Jd2 3.

Kucovina; Kucovina (Serbian) town and mountains near Nish (Jd2 3).

Kurdistan, Karchutia (Persian, Arabic) region between Armenia and Persia—MN 1

Kyustendil; Kusanis-ili (Turkish), Kyustendil (Bulgarian) town—Jd3 3.

Kutai Hiss (Czech), Kutenberg (German) town—Jd1 3.

Kyklou (Greek) Greek Orthodox monastery—K3e5 8.

Kyrenia, Carum (medieval), Korfina, (modern Greek) town—K4c2 2.

La Broquaise or La Broc(g)niote (French) village 65 miles sw of Toulouse (Jd2 3)

La Castro (medieval), Castro (modern Greek) castle—K4c3 2

La Cava (Italian) castle in of Nicosia (K4c3 6)

La Montjoie (French) hill overlooking Jerusalem (L1f4 7).

La Sola. town—see Salona.

Lai (Serbian) river flowing in of Vachina.

Laconia (Latin), Lakonia or Lakidaki (medieval Greek), Lakonia (modern Greek) district of see Marm—Jd4 4.

Lajzer port—see Agas.

Lampinusa (Italian) island—G3e2 3.

Lampoon (Armenian), Mavarun (Turkish), fortress—K3c2 1.

Lampiscus (classical), Lasevka (Turkish) village—Jd2 3.

Lancaster city—Jd1 2.

Langer island—see Cris.

- Laupers (French): town—Fick: 2, 3.
 Laupersdorf (French): region of southern France—Bd: 2.
 Launay (French): town 9 miles sw of Tournai (Bd): 2.
 Laodicea, port—see Latakia.
 Laon (French): town—Bd: 2.
 Larnaca, Láraká (modern Greek): town—Kd: 2.
 Laube (French): village near Saint Florent, 39 miles west of Le Puy (Bd): 2.
 Lászlóvár (Hungarian): fortress opposite Golsheim (Bd): 2.
 Latakia; Laodicea ad Mare (classical), al-Latkiyah (Arabic): port—Ld: 1, 4.
 Lauzanne (French): town—Fick: 2, 3.
 Le Bourg or Bourcq (French): castle in Vosges canon, Ardennes, near Rethel, NE of Rheims (Bd): 2.
 Le Châf: see Cape Andros.
 Le Claire: port—see Corpus.
 Le Mans (French): city—Fick: 2.
 Le Pay-en-Velay (French), Patis (medieval Latin): town—Bd: 2.
 Lebanon, Mount, Jabal Lubán (Arabic)—LJ: 6, 7.
 Lefkara (modern Greek): town—Kd: 2.
 Lefkoniko; Lefkoniki (modern Greek): town—Kd: 2.
 Lelouan: town—Dd: 2.
 Lembo: island—see Imbros.
 Lempsos, Lémessos (medieval Greek), Stallones (medieval), Limnos (modern Greek): island—Jd: 2.
 Leon, León (Spanish): region of northern Spain—Cd: 2.
 Leronis: river—see Liron.
 Lignano (Italian), Nussagus (classical), Episkos (medieval Greek), Mavropolis (modern Greek): port—Jd: 2, 4.
 Lissos (classical), Mytilos (medieval Greek), Mervos (medieval Italian), Mithil (Turkish), Lássa (modern Greek): island—Fick: 2.
 Lish, Lisha (Albanian), Lissa (classical), Alente (Italian): town—Hd: 2, 4.
 Lissos or Lissos (classical), Lissos or Santa Maria (medieval), Lissos (modern Greek): island—Jd: 2, 4.
 Liège or (recently) Liège (French), Lük (Piemont): city—Fick: 2, 3.
 Lila (French), Rymel (Piemont): city—Bd: 2.
 Lissasol, Nervosa (medieval Greek), Lissos (modern Greek): port—Kd: 1, 3.
 Lissos (French): city—Bd: 2.
 Lissos; Lissos (Portuguese), Ushlissos (Arabic): city, port—Cd: 2.
 Lissos (French): town 45 miles wsw of Rouen (Bd): 2.
 Lissos, Lissos (classical), al-Lissos (Arabic): river—LJ: 2.
 Lithuania, Lithuania (Lithuanian): region east of Poland, larger than modern state—Jd: 2.
 Livadia, Lebadeia or Lebedeia (classical), Lebadeia (modern Greek): town—Bd: 2.
 Livonia; Livland (German): district sw of Riga—Jd: 2.
 Lodi (Italian): town 18 miles nw of Milan (Fick: 2).
 Loir (French): river—Bd: 2.
 Lombardy; Lombardia (Italian): region of nw Italy—Bd: 2, 3.
 Londen: city port—Bd: 2.
 Lorraine (French), Lotharingen (German): region of eastern France—Bd: 2, 3.
 Lorraine, Lower: district of northern Belgium (Bd).
 Low Countries, Netherlands and part of Belgium.
 Lübeck (German): city, port—Cd: 2, 3.
 Lucce (Italian): town—Gd: 2, 3.
 Lucera (Italian): town—Hd: 2.
 Laugnan (French): town—Bd: 2.

Luxemburg or **Letzbourg**; **Luxembourgy** (French): region, now independent, south of Belgium.

Lyda (classical), **Saint George** (modern), **al-Ladi** (Arabic), **Lod** (Heb.) town—E34. 7

Lyfia district—see **Apia**.

Lyon; **Lym** (French): city—E33: 2.

Mabry town—see **Manding**.

Macetoma (classical), **Makethoma** (modern Greek), **Makadonia** (Serbian) region west of Thess—List 3, 4, 5.

Machana or **Makharna** (Coptic): Greek Orthodox monastery—E47: 3.

Machani or **Machani** (French): village 22 miles east of Rhodos (E33: 2).

Machva; **Mahva** (Serbian), **Mazó** (Hungarian): district south of Sava river (E64: 7).

Mâcon (French): town—E33: 2.

Madras, city; port—U13: 12, 13

Maeander (classical), **Méryk Mender** (Turkish): river—J43: 3

al-Maghrib region—see **North Africa**.

Magnésie (French): port, now unimportant—E42: 2.

Mahorac (Bulgarian): fortress between **Provaliya** and **Shumen**.

Maine (French): region of NW France—D: 2.

Maire (German), **Meyence** (French): city—F45: 2, 3

Majmâriq; **Martyropolis** (classical), **Majmâriq** (Arabic), **Mâyafâ-kin** or **Sihân** (Turkish): town—M23: 1.

Majorca; **Majorca** (Spanish), **Martogah** (Arabic): island—Ea: 2.

Makri (modern), **Frkya** (Turkish): port—J53: 4, 5, 5.

Malatia, **Malaya**, city—see **Malatya**.

Malmesbury; town 90 miles west of London (D54: 2)

Malruy, **Mâlruia**, fortress—see **Bloucruvia**.

Malra, **Melra** (classical), **Mâlrah** (Arabic): island—Q53: 3.

Mamistra (modern), **Mopsosia** (classical), **Mis** (Armenian), **Mis** (Turkish) town—List 1, 4.

Marbi or **Mabû** (Arabic), **Haragolla** (classical), **Mamû** (Turkish): town—L33: 4.

Margana, Greek Orthodox monastery in outskirts of Nicosia (E43: 3)

Marsarah; **al-Marsarah** (Arabic): town—K24: 1.

Masera; **Masera** (Italian): city—G33: 1.

Mazkert; **Mandgerd** (Yeni) or **Mandshar** (East Armenian), **Maldzgeri** (Turkish): town—M53: 1

Mazgha, **Mazghah** (Persian): town—N33: 1.

Mazra (Armenian, Turkish), **Germanicie** (classical), **Mar'ash** (Arabic): town—L33: 1, 4.

Mazropolis (Bulgarian): town near **Varna** (J33: 5)

Mazra (Turkish), **Mâzraia** (Arabic): town—M33: 1.

Mazrâsan, valley east of Tyberia (E33: 4).

Mazra (modern), **al-Mazrah** (Arabic): the wick-town: fortress—L33: 4.

Marienburg (German), **Malbork** (Polish): fortress, now town—F33: 3.

Martia, **Rebus** (classical), **Erens** (medieval Greek), **Mery** (Turkish): river—J23: 1, 3, 3.

Marle (French): village 14 miles east of Laon (E43: 2).

Marmara, Sea of; **Propontis** (classical), **Marmara Denizi** (Turkish)—J43: 5

Mareo (Hungarian), **Mariava** (classical), **Mureq** (Rumanian): river flowing by **Alba Julia**—J3: 3.

al-Marqah fortress—see **Marqat**.

Marrakesh; **Marrûkash** (Arabic): city—C23: 2.

Marsilien, **Masania** (classical Greek), **Masania** (Latin), **Marselle** (French) city, port—F63: 2.

MARINIA (modern), Mariniana (Italian): town—H2c2: 1.

Mars, city—see Mars.

Marsa (Italian): town 28 miles *sw* of Pisa (G3d2: 3).

Maryut or Mayyūth or Mayyūṭ or Mayyūṭ (Arabic): fortress—L2c3: 4.

Mazpar, Cape; Thessalon (Latin), Mastipon (modern Greek), Akra Talsaron (mod *crs* Greek)—L2d4: 4.

Mayerac: city—see Mainz.

Mérida, Méridah (Arabic): city—L3d4: 1.

Médina, al-Madīnah (Arabic: the city): city—L3d4: 1.

Mediterranean Sea—D/Ld4: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8.

Migala-Agora (modern), Malfara or Migal Kani (Turkish): town—J2d3: 1.

Migara, Mígara (modern Greek): town—J4c3: 4.

Mihedin (Romanian): village 12 miles north of Oradea (J3d1: 3).

Miesen (German): town—G4b4: 2, 3.

Misquid (French: medieval colony around Manguia, 7 miles east of Montpellier (J4d2: 2).

Mithea (Grecian), Mithen (Armenian), Malaka (modern), Malaya (Turkish): city—J4c2: 1.

Mila (French), Matallus (classical): town—E3c4: 2.

Melchicha (Bulgarian): battleground about 12 miles west of Sofia (J4d3: 3).

Mezar' town—see Acre.

Mezakic (modern), Muga (modern Turkish): region of western Anatolia equivalent to classical Caria—M: 1.

Mevan region—see Croatia.

Merv or Mary (Persian), Maryana (classical): city—Q2c3: 12, 13.

Misaria, district—see Armenia.

Mysenbula (modern), Misor (Turkish), Mosbar (Bulgarian): town—J2d3: 3, 4.

Musopotamia (classical), al-'Irāq (Arabic): region between the Tigris and the Euphrates—L2d4c1: 1.

Musonia, Musatou (modern Greek), Mosia (modern Greek): district of *sw* Moesia—J2c4: 4.

Nasala (Italian): port—H2c2: 1.

Nasāḥer: island—see Lesbos.

Natz (French): city—F2c1: 2.

Neslan (French): town 23 miles *sw* of Paris (E3c2: 2).

Nidreus (French): town, now attached to Châteaillon, 38 miles *sw* of Rheims (E3c1: 2).

Nikhetik (Bulgarian): castle west of Varna (J3d2: 3).

Nicosia island—see Mycenae.

Nid (French): southern France (D2c1: 2).

Nilung; Milano (Italian): city—F3c5: 2, 3.

Niliposamo (Greek): unidentified locality in Crete.

Nina, town—see Macedonia.

Niy: region—see Egypt.

Nitra (modern), Nysitona (modern Greek), Nistria (modern Greek): town—J2c3: 4.

Nocha, Nakhā (Arabic): port—J4d2: 13.

Modon (modern), Modoul (modern Greek), Modoul (modern Greek): port—J2c4: 3, 4.

Moldavia, Sephida (Romanian): region east of the Carpathians—J3c: 3.

Molybdia (classical), Molybdion (modern Greek): port—J2c1: 3.

Monsat; Brix (German): town—G4d: 3, 4.

Moservania; Minia (classical Greek), Mafraia or Malway (modern), Moservania (modern Greek): fortress, *see* town—J4c4: 3, 4.

Mosferat: district—see Mosferat.

Mosogita, Mung-tu (Chinese): region south of China—W3E3d1: 12, 13.

- Montaigu-sur-Champs or Montaigne-le Blanc (French): ca. 10 miles east of Clermont (E4c5) 3.
- Monte Cassino (Italian): abbey—G444: 3.
- Monte (du) Corno (Italian): village near Florence (G344: 3).
- Montet (French): village, now Montcalan-Vivonne, 30 miles sw of Nice (F342: 2).
- Montenegro (Italian, black mountain), Crna Gora (Serbian: district north of Albania)—H44: 3.
- Monferrat (French), Monferrato (Italian): district of NW Italy—F4c5: 2, 3.
- Montfort (French), Szentlomb (German), Qal'at al-Qurbi (Arabic): castle—L12: 7.
- Montfort-l'Auxerrois (French): town 12 miles wsw of Paris (E3c2: 2).
- Montpellier (French): town—E4C2: 2.
- Montreal (French): belt around Krak de Montreal (L12: 3).
- Morava (Serbian): river—L442: 3.
- Moravia, Moravia (Czech): region nr of Bohemia—Hc: 4.
- Moera (modern), Peloponnesos (Latin), Peloponnesos or Moraea (medieval Greek), Peloponnesos (modern Greek): peninsular region of southern Greece—L3: 3, 4.
- Morfeus (medieval), Omerphos (Greek), Kâşık Kastraki (Turkish): village—K4c5: 4.
- Morlaix (French): town 18 miles south of Alen (D542: 2).
- Morocco; al-Maghrib al-Aqab (Arabic: the furthest west) region of NW Africa—C42: 2.
- Morphou, Mörphou (modern Greek): town—K3c5: 3.
- Mosul; al-Nasir (Arabic), Mûsil (Turkish): city—M44: 1.
- Mühlbach or Mühlbach (German), Sebeş (Romanian), Selmőbél (Hungarian): town—D4C: 3.
- Mykonos (classical), Miccone (medieval Italian), Makron (Turkish), Mikonos (modern Greek): island—J4c3: 3.
- Mytilene: island—see Lesbos.
- Mytilene, Mytilini (classical Greek), Mitylén (medieval Greek), Mihiri (modern Greek): town—J4c1: 1, 3, 5.
- Nabhu; Shabon or Napols (classical), Nābulus (Arabic): town—L12: 7.
- Nagyvárad: city—see Comanendia.
- Nailac (French): station at Le Blanc, 33 miles east of Poitiers (B1c: 2).
- Naxos: island—see Anaxos.
- Namur (French): town—F34c: 2, 3.
- Nanking or Nan-ch'ing (Chinese): city—E44F: 13.
- Naples; Napoli (Italian): city, port—G542: 3.
- Naxos: kingdom—H4: 3.
- Narbonne (French): town—E4C2: 2.
- Nepactus: port—see Lepanto.
- Nephtis (classical), Néphelis (modern Greek): port—E3c1: 4.
- Nevano (Italian), Pylos (classical Greek), Zonitza (modern) port, now superseded by New Nivato—J24: 4.
- Navarre (French), Navarra (Spanish): region of northern Spain—E4: 2.
- Nicos; Nicosia (medieval Italian), Nicos (Turkish), Nicos (modern Greek): island—J44: 5.
- Nisareth, or-Najrath (Arabic): town—L12: 3.
- Near East: region from Egypt to Persia and Turkey to Aden.
- Neporoca: island—see Euboea.
- Neporoca (medieval Italian, black bridge), Chalcis (classical), Ehalis (modern Greek): pen—D4C: 3, 4.
- Najd; Najd (Arabic): region of central Arabia—M42: 1.
- Neopatria: duchy—Jc: 3.

Nestos (Greek), Nestos (Latin), Koca Su (Turkish), Nistos (Bulgarian): river flowing into the Aegean opposite Thessalonica—1504. 5.

Neszmény (Hungarian): town 37 miles SW of Buda (H5c3. 3).

Nesle-sur-Marne (French): town 39 miles east of Paris (E3c2. 2).

Nesves (French): town—E4c4. 2.

Newburgh, town—D2a4. 2.

Nicas (classical), Nica (Turkish): town—H4d3. 1, 3, 3.

Nice (French), Nizza (Italian): port—F3a2. 2.

Nicomedia (classical), Inic (Turkish): town—F3a3. 1, 3, 3.

Nicopolis (medieval), Nichevli (Turkish), Nikopol (Bulgarian): town—15d2. 1, 3.

Nicosia, Lefkadia (medieval Greek), Nicosia (modern Greek): city—E4c3. 1, 3.

Nijmegen (Dutch): town—F3b4. 1.

Nile: Bahr al Nil (Arabic): river—K3g4. 1; K3H4. 3.

Nîmes (French): city—E5d2. 2.

Nis, Nil (Serbian), Ni (Turkish), Nisus or Nesus (classical): town—15d2. 3.

Nisava, Nissa (Serbian): river flowing past First into the Morava—13d2. 3.

Nisibin or Nusaybin (Turkish), Nisibis (classical), Nusaybin or Nusaybin (Arabic): town—M2a3. 1.

Nogent-sur-Marne (French): town 7 miles east of Paris (E3c2. 3).

Normandy, Normandie (French): region of northern France—D5c. 2.

North Africa, al-Maghrib (Arabic): the westy region from Morocco to Cyrenaica, north of the Sahara.

North Sea—D5Fale. 2, 3.

Novara (Italian): town—F4c3. 3.

Novgorod (Russian): now city: city—K3a3. 12.

Novi Pazar or Balka (Serbian), Raeca (Latin): town—H4d3. 1.

Novo Brdo (Serbian): mine 20 miles east of Kosovo (H4c3. 3).

Noyon (French): town 29 miles west of Laon (E4c3. 2).

Nürnberg: Nürnberg (German): city—G2c3. 2, 3.

Ochrida, Lake; Lychnivis Lacus (classical), Ochridska Jazina (Serbian)—H4d4. 4.

Odër (German), Odra (Czech, Polish): river—H4b3. 2.

Oldenburg (German): city—F4b2. 2, 3.

Ornel (medieval): fortress in the Moravia valley (Id. 3).

Oronophila: village—see Moravia.

Oradun: city—see Grosswardein.

Orange (French): town 13 miles north of Arles (E5d2. 2).

Orvas (Latin), Ōveos (medieval Greek), Orvel (modern Greek): town—14c2. 4.

Orléans (French): town—E2c3. 2.

Orosius (classical), al-'As (Arabic: the rebellious), Bar (medieval): river—L3c3. 1, 4, 7.

Orsova; Orsova (Romanian): town—H4d3. 1.

Ossus (Italian), Ausfirum (classical): town 9 miles south of Ancona (G4d2. 3).

Otun (Osmanli): port, new village—G3a4. 2, 3.

Ottowitsa, Ottowitsa (Serbian), Silnye-Hane (Turkish): fortress 30 miles north of Zari (H1d3. 3).

Ortuno (Italian): town—H4d3. 3.

Qadmus (French: overcast), Qadmus (Latin): the Latin Baker in Syria and Palestine. Oxford, town—D4b4. 2.

Radoborn (German): town—F4b4. 2, 3.

Padua, Padova (Italian): city—G2c3. 2, 3.

Palatia (medieval), Milvus (classical), Balat (Turkish): port, now abandoned—13c3. 3, 5.

Palermo (Italian), Balerna (Arabic): city, port—G4c2. 3.

- Palatana**, *Palatana* (classical), *Filatha* (Arabic): region west of the Dead Sea and the Jordan—EJL: 1.
- Palatrua** (Italian): town—GIdM: 3.
- Palmyra** or **Tadmor** (classical), *Tadmor*, now *Balamir* (Arabic): caravan town—LdM: 6.
- Papal Statu**—Gd: 9.
- Papion** (medieval), *Pipion* (modern Greek): town—KJfL: 1, 6.
- Paris** (French): city—EJL: 2.
- Paros**, *Paroi* (modern Greek): village 1 mile east of Mitera (JLc): 4.
- Paras** (German): town—GdC: 2, 3.
- Paros**, *Paros* (Italian), *Paros* (Turkish), *Paros* (modern Greek): island—JLc: 3.
- Parus** (medieval), *Paros* (modern Greek): port—JLc: 3, 4.
- Parva** (Italian): town—FicL: 2, 3.
- Pedukula**, *Pedukula* or *Pedukia* (modern Greek): town—KJfL: 6.
- Pegus**: town—see Bapa.
- Peking**: city—see Khambulu.
- Peloponnesos**, *peninsula*: region—see Moria.
- Pelafuria** (Spanish): castle near Villafraanca del Panadé, 25 miles west of Barcelona (EJd4: 3).
- Periadaktylos** (Greek): monastery—KdC: 6.
- Pera** or **Financ** (medieval), *Beysella* (Turkish): port—Jd4: 3, 3.
- Perche** (French): district west of Chartres—EJL: 2.
- Perpamum** (classical), *Bergama* (Turkish): town—JLc: 3, 3.
- Persia** (classical), *Irta* (Persian): region of sw Asia—MOf: 1.
- Persian Gulf**, *Khalij-i-Fars* (Persian), *Khalij al-'Ajam* (Arabic)—NOp: 13, 11.
- Pesugi** (Italian): town—GIdM: 3.
- Petra Desert** (classical): ancient city—LdF: 1.
- Petric** (Bulgarian), *Peritica* (modern Greek): castle—Jd4: 3, 3.
- Petrovaradin** (Serbian), *Petrowarden* (German): town—HJL: 3.
- Philadelphia** (classical), *Alaphis* (Turkish): town—JdC: 3, 3.
- Philippopolis** (classical), *Plovdiv* (Bulgarian), *Pilve* (Turkish): town—JdC: 1, 3, 3.
- Philonellum**: town—see Akabshin.
- Phitika** (modern Greek): village—KJfL: 6.
- Phocaea** (classical), *Figlia* (Italian), *Poca* (Turkish): port, now abandoned (see New Phocaea—JLc: 3, 3).
- Phoenex**, *New*, *Nailiya* (Turkish): port—JLc: 1, 3.
- Piacenza** (Italian): town—FicL: 2.
- Pian del Carpine** or **Piano della Magione** (Italian), *Piano de Carpi* (Latin), *Pietrocarpine* (medieval): village 9 miles west of Perugia (GIdM: 3).
- Picardy**: *Picardie* (French): region of northern France—EJc: 2.
- Pis** (French): village about 40 miles W of Bordeaux (Jd4: 3).
- Piotrków** (Polish): town—HJL: 1.
- Pist** (Bulgarian): town—JdC: 1.
- Pisa** (Italian): port, now city—GdC: 2, 3.
- Piancarpine**: village—see *Pian del Carpine*.
- Pločnik**, *Pločnik* (Serbian): baronhold (3 miles west of Nish (EJL: 3).
- Plovdiv**: town—see *Philippopolis*.
- Podia**: town—see *Le Fay*.
- Podolia**, region north of Moldavia—Jc: 3.
- Poitiers** (French): town—EJL: 2.
- Poitou** (French): region of western France—DEc: 2.
- Poland**, *Polska* (Polish): region east of Germany—HJL: 3.
- Polska**: river—see *Kalida*.
- Pols** (medieval), *Arinot* (classical): town—KJL: 6.
- Pommern**, *Pommern* (German): region of sw Germany—GIdM: 3, 1.

Ponchoyer port—see Anichuan.

Ponthieu (French) district of western Picardy (Etc. 2).

Porto (Italian) village 12 miles *sw* of Rome (G144. 2).

Portugal, Lusitania (classical) region *sw* of southern and central Spain, now a nation—Cde. 2.

Poznań (German), Poznań (Polish) city—H2b3. 1.

Potamos, Potamides (modern Greek) village—E11b. 1.

Prague, Praha (Czech) city—G5b3. 2, 3.

Prapa, Lake; Brygus Larus (classical), Brygus Limes (modern Greek), Propanusko Jezero (Serbian)—I4d3. 4.

Prasburg: city—see Bratislava.

Prose (Serbian), Proslano (Italian), Barakade (Turkish) island—E3c3. 4.

Provadiya (Bulgarian), Probatus (modern), Provato (Turkish) town—J142. 2.

Provence (French) region of *sw* France—E5d. 2, 3.

Provença (French) town: 40 miles *sw* of Troyes (E3c3. 2).

Prussia, Preussen (German), Prusy (Polish) region of *sw* Germany—H1b. 3.

Palinokto (modern Greek), Poomothipom (modern Greek) village—K4c3. 2.

Pilow (Russian), Plotsau (German) city—J4a3. 12.

Puglia or Puglia region—see Apulia.

Pylae port—see Mesurina.

Pyramus (classical), Çubuk (Armenian), Ayhan (Turkish) river—L1c4. 6.

Pyrenees, Pyrénées (French), Pirineos (Spanish) mountain range—D5d. 2.

Pyrgos (Greek) town—E2c3. 4.

Pythion or Pithion (Greek), Eğri-Kaleli-Burgaz (Turkish) town 20 miles south of Adriaanople (J244. 2).

Qaf'at ash-Saqi? crusader castle—see Isfahan.

Qūs (Arabic), Apollonopolis Parva (classical) town—E3g3. 1.

Radh town—see Cyde.

Ragusa (modern), Dubrovnik (Serbian) port—H4d3. 3.

Rahova or Rakhova (modern), Oryakhovo (Romanian) town—I442. 3.

Rarrā, Rama or Ramus (modern), *in* Ramdāh (Arabic) the sandy) town—E514. 2.

Rasch, Raska: town—see Novi Pazar.

Ravenna (Italian) town—G14b3. 2, 3.

Red Sea; al-Bahr al-Ahmar (Arabic)—L4b. 1.

Regensburg (German), Ratibos (modern) town—G13c3. 2, 3.

Reyno (modern), Calamona or Ralpinason (classical), Rethimnon (modern Greek) town—H4c3. 3.

Rheims Reims (French) city—E5c3. 2.

Rhine Rijn (Dutch), Rhein (German), Rhin (French) river—F7b3. 2; F1c2. 3.

Rhineland, region of the middle Rhine.

Rhodes; Rhodus (classical Greek), Rhodus (Latin), Rodos (Turkish), Rodi (Italian), Rodica (modern Greek) island—Jc. 1, 3, 3.

Rhodope; Rhodopt (classical Greek), Rodilpa (modern Greek), Rodops (Bulgarian) mountain range—J244. 3.

Rhone; Rhodan (French) river—E3c3. 2.

Riga, Rīga (Latvian) city—H4a. 12.

Rodet (French) town—E34b. 2.

Rohais or Rodhan city—see Idreem.

Romania: region—see Anatholia.

Romans-sur Isère (French) town 11 miles north of Valence (E541. 2).

Rome; Roma (Italian); city—G3d4. 2, 3.

Rovetta, Rashid (Arabic); port—K1f4. 1.

Rouen (French); city—E3c3. 2.

Roussillon (French); district north of the eastern Pyrenees—E3d3. 2.

Rovani (Romanian); village 28 miles north of Timisoara (E2c5. 3).

Rubruck (Flemish); village 33 miles west of Lille (E4d5. 3).

Rum; region: see Anatolia.

Rumeli-Hisar (Turkish); castle of Rumeliah fortress—F5d4. 3.

Rumelia, Rumel (Turkish); Ottoman territory in Europe—Ude. 31.

Russia, Rus (medieval), Rossiya (Russian); region of eastern Europe—IKL/Mbc. 1, 3.

Ruthenia (medieval); region of eastern Europe, not equivalent to modern (GB F4d3).

Czechoslovakian province—Uc. 3.

Sabina (Italian); district 35 miles north of Rome (G3d4. 3).

Sachsen; region—see Saxony.

Sagitta; port—see Salou.

Sahara, as-Sahar' (Arabic); desert—D6POfp. 2, 3.

Saint Abraham; town—see Halab.

Saint Alban; Verulamium (Latin); town 20 miles west of London (D5b4. 3).

Saint Andrew; Cape: see Cape Andrew.

Saint Bernard (French); abbey 17 miles east of Besançon (E2b5. 2).

Saint George; town—see Lydda.

Saint Gilles-du-Gard (French); village 10 miles west of Arles (E3dE. 3).

Saint Hilarion or Dinodamouir (French), Ayios Hilarion (modern Greek); castle—K3d3. 3.

Saint Jean d'Acre; city, port—see Acre.

Saint Nicholas (see Sokolovitsy); Ayios Nikolaos (modern Greek); village—K3f3. 1.

Saint Omar (French); town—E3d5. 2.

Saint Pol-sur-Ternoise (French); town 34 miles north of Amiens (E3c3. 2).

Saint Quentin (French); town 36 miles SW of Laon (E4c3. 3).

Saint Simeon (modern), as-Sawaidiyah (Arabic), Shveydiye (Turkish); port—L3c4. 4.

Saint Theodosius, Dair the-Ughd (Arabic); Greek Orthodox monastery—L1f4. 7.

Saint Tropez (French); town—F3d5. 2.

Saint Urbain (French); abbey near Yung 42 miles west of Troy (F3c3. 2).

Sakarya (Turkish), Sangarum (classical); river—K3d3. 1, K3d5. 3.

Salamanca (Spanish), Salammagh (Arabic); city—C7d5. 2.

Salerno (Italian); port—G5d3. 1.

Salisbury; city—D3d4. 2.

Salmas, Schmas, or Salamastrom (medieval), Salmas, D3d3a, or Shalshar (Persian); town—M3c2. 1.

Salona or La Sala (medieval), Amphissa (classical), Anfilias (modern Greek); town—Ue2. 3, 4.

Salonica or Salonika; city—see Thessalonika.

as-Salt (Arabic); town—L1f3. 2.

Satzburg (German); city—G4c3. 2, 3.

Saxaria (classical); district of northern Peloponnese—L1f3. 2.

Samarland, Samarqand (Persian, Arabic); city—E2c3. 12, 13.

Samosthrace; Samothrakē (classical Greek), Samothraki (modern Greek); island—Hd3. 3.

Sangharu; river—see Sakarya.

San Germano Vercellese (Italian); village 22 miles SW of Monferrat (F4c5. 3).

San Geronzio (Italian); town 18 miles SW of Siena (G2d4. 3).

Sanzok (Polish); town—Uc3. 3.

Saxa Maure; island—see Lemnos.

- Santiago de Compostela, *clonus*—see *Compostela*.
 Sarra (medieval), Salyria or Silyrium (Arabic); crusader castle—L2a5: 4.
 Saragosa, Caesariopata (classical), Zaragoza (Spanish), Saraguch (Arabic); city—D5d4: 2.
 Sarai or Sarai-Bata (Tatar), Sarh (Persian; palace); town, now abandoned—N3c3: 1.
 Sarai-Berke; town—see *Altunai*.
 Sardis; Sargusa (Turkic); island—F4c: 3, 3.
 Sarmament; city—see *Kermanshah*.
 Saronic Gulf, Saronikos Kálpos (modern Greek)—Hc3: 4.
 Saros Bay; Saros Karfisi (Turkic); bay north of Gallipoli peninsula (J2d3: 3).
 Sarskhan (Turkic); district of western Anatolia—Ar: 3.
 Sarsis (classical), Sarsis (Armenian), Seyhan (Turkic); river—L1c3: 6.
 Satalia; port—see *Adalia*.
 Sathra; city—see *Athens*.
 Sava or Sava (Croatian), Sava (German), Sava (Hungarian); river—H4d3: 3.
 Savoy; Savois (French); region of *re France*—Pc: 2, 3.
 Saxony; Sachsen (German); region of northern Germany—C4c: 2, 3.
 Scamander; port—see *Alanya*.
 Scandinavia; region comprising Denmark, Sweden, and Norway.
 Schwaben; region—see *Swabia*.
 Seio; island—see *China*.
 Scotland, Scotia (Latin); region north of England—C4c: 2.
 Seithentien; town—see *Sopot*.
 Seauri (Italian), Chrysopolis (classical), Üsküdar (Turkic); port—J5d4: 3.
 Seauri (Italian), Seodra (classical), Sikodra (Athenian); port—H5d3: 3.
 Sebaste; city—see *Sirna*.
 Sebenico (Italian), Šibenik (Serbian); port—H4c3: 3.
 Selag; town—see *Mühlentbach*.
 Selgat; port—see *Sanj*.
 Segai (Italian); town 30 miles east of Rome (G3d4: 3).
 Seine (French); river—E1c3: 2.
 Seleucia Taches (classical), Seleucia (Armenian), Silifke (Turkic); port, now town—K4c4: 1.
 Selmas; town—see *Salmus*.
 Selymbria (medieval), Silyri (Turkic); port—J4d4: 5.
 Semendia; town—see *Smederova*.
 Senj (Serbian), Segus (Italian), Zengg (German); port—G5d1: 3.
 Serbia, Serbja (Serbian); region east of Dalmatia—H4d: 3.
 Seron (medieval), Siron (modern Greek); town—H4d4: 3, 4, 3.
 Serrae, Laka (Rumanian), Gölçe Gölü (Turkic)—N4d3: 1.
 Serrus (Rumanian); district north of Orkova—K4d: 3.
 Seville; Hyspala (classical), Sevilla (Spanish), Ishbiliyah (Arabic); city—C3c3: 2.
 Shabatz; Salsac (Serbian), Şahşaban (Turkic); town 40 miles west of Belgrade (H4d: 3).
 Shahrat (medieval Arabic), Larissa (classical), Salfar (modern Arabic); fortress, now town—L2c3: 6.
 Shack Arrans; castle—see *Belfort*.
 shi-Sharbat; fortress—see *Krak de Montréal*.
 Shazari, Şarraz (Bulgarian), Şarraz (Turkic), town, now Kalesnograd—J4d2: 3.
 Sibienik; port—see *Schumen*.
 Sibir; town—see *Hormazantak*.
 Sicily; Sicilia (Italian), Sisythia (Arabic), Trinacria (medieval); island—Gc: 3, 3.
 Sidos, Sagris (medieval), Sidi' (Arabic); port—L1c3: 3, 3.
 Siebenbürgen; region—see *Transylvania*.

- Sema (Turkish): town—G42: 2, 3.
 Siga (Turkish): fortress on the coast of Cilicia (ic: 4).
 Sigeon or Sigou (modern Greek), Sifis (medieval): castle—E4c5: 1.
 Silesia, Schlesien (German), Śląsk (Polish), Slezsko (Czech): region north of Moravia—Hiv: 2.
 Silifke: port—see Seleucia.
 Silistra or Silistra: town—see Dextra.
 Silvar, port—see Selyavka.
 Silvas: town—see Malyutinskaya.
 Silva (Portuguese), Shile (Arabic): town—C2c2: 2.
 Sima, Siml' (Arabic): peninsula—Klg: 1.
 Sima, Mogan, or Mogan Herri; Ishal Shad (Arabic: mountains of Mogan)—K4g2: 1.
 Simas: Simeas (medieval Greek), Simep (Turkish): port—L3d3: 2.
 Sia (Armenian, medieval), Kamas (Turkish): town—L1c: 1.
 Siza or Siza (Greek): town—J2c5: 3.
 Sivas: Sebastia (classical), Sivas (Turkish): city—L3d: 4.
 Skopje; Usküb (Turkish), Skopje (Serbian): town—J2d4: 3.
 Sladogora (Bulgarian): castle near Zlatovo.
 Slachuzica (Serbian): village 18 miles west of Belgrade (J1d: 3).
 Slavonia: district east of Croatia—Hc: 3.
 Slovenia, region sw of Croatia—GH: 3.
 Shale (Flemish, Dutch), L'Écluse (French): port, now town, 10 miles nw of Bruges (E4d4: 3).
 Simeduni (Serbian), Semendria (German): town 24 miles east of Belgrade (J1d3: 3).
 Smyrna (classical), Izmir (Turkish): city, port—J2c2: 1, 2, 3.
 Socotra, Soqatra (Arabic): island—Q4v3g: 13.
 Sofia; Sardica (classical), Trilachia (medieval Greek), Sredets (Serbian), Sofya (Bulgarian): city—J4d3: 3, 3.
 Soli (Greek): town, now abandoned—K3c5: 8.
 Sopot (Bulgarian), Scribescion (medieval): town—E5d3: 3, 3.
 Sozopolis (medieval), Apollonia (classical), Söğütözü or Uluözü (Turkish), Sozopol (Bulgarian): town—J2d: 3, 3.
 Spain; Hispania (classical), España (Spanish): region south of the Pyrenees.
 Spalato (medieval), Split (Serbian): port—H2d2: 3.
 Sparta or Lacadaemon (Latin), Sparta or Lakodaimon (classical Greek), Sparta (modern Greek): town—E5c: 4.
 Sporades; Sporadhes (modern Greek): island group—Hiv: 3, 4, 3.
 Srebrenica, Serbrenica (Serbian): town 73 miles sw of Belgrade (J1d: 3).
 Sredna Gora (Bulgarian): mountain range—Id: 3.
 Svalbard: island—see Lomon.
 Stanchio or Stankoi, island—see Cos.
 Starkinsberg: castle—see Montfort.
 Stavrivouni, Stavrovouni (modern Greek): mountain—K4d: 8.
 Strassburg (German), Strasbourg (French): city—F1c2: 2, 3.
 Strymon; Strymon (classical Greek), Struma (modern Greek), Struma (Bulgarian): river—J4d4: 4.
 Styria, Steiermark (German): region of southern Austria—G3d: 3.
 Sudan, as-Sudan (Arabic; the Negro lands): region north of Egypt—J1Eiv: 1.
 Suet, as-Suwat (Arabic): port—K3g1: 1.
 Sulajirya (medieval Turkish), Cusakirale (modern Turkish): port—J3d5: 5.
 Sulajirya, Sulajirya (Persian), Kungurien (Mongol): town—N4d4: 1.
 Sür: port—see Tyne.
 Suzdal (Russian): city—M1d: 12.
 Swabia, Schwaben (German): region of sw Germany—Fc: 2, 3.

Sweden, Sverige (Swedish): region of Scandinavia, smaller than modern nation—Gls 12, 13.

Syria (classical), ash-Sha'm or Shiryah (Arabic): region east of the Mediterranean—LJ 1.

Szarnobocze (Polish): town—H3b3 1.

Szeged (Hungarian): city, now Szeged—Hed. 1.

Szent János György (Hungarian), Georgeham or Gurgula (Romanian): town 100 miles W of Hermannstadt (Hed. 2).

Szegedény town—see George.

Szécsény (Hungarian): district roughly equivalent to Severia (Hed. 2).

Tahria: Tahris (Persian): city—H3b2 1.

Taghamento (Italian): river flowing into the Adriatic (2 miles east of Caesr)—G3ed 3.

Tajos (classical), Tajo (Spanish), Tago (Portuguese), Tāyah (Arabic): river—C3ed 2.

Tana (medieval), Tancin (classical), Anas (Romanian): port—L3c3 1.

Tannenberg (German), Szepark (Polish): village—H3d 3.

Taraklı Yendi (Turkish): village—K3d3 5.

Taranto (Italian): port—H3d3 1.

Tarsus (classical, Turkish), Daros (Armenian): city—K3ed 1.

Tashkent: Bickach or Tashkand (Arabic): city—R3d4, 12, 13.

Taurus (classical), Toros Dagları (Turkish): mountain range—Lc 1.

Tava town—see Domastion.

Tegyren (classical), Penteaktylion (medieval Greek), Telymos (modern Greek): mountain range—Dc3 4.

Tellin: city—see Tella.

Tekkes (Turkish): region of SW Anatolia, equivalent to classical Panoplyia—Jc 1.

Tell Bahr: Tell Bāhar (Arabic), Tirtbanat (medieval), Tiltanhar (Turkish): fortress—L3ed 4.

Tembres or Tembria (Greek): village—K3d3 8.

Temesvár (Hungarian): district of western Romania—in 10, 11.

Temesvár (Hungarian), Temiskwara (Romanian): town—Dc3 1.

Tenduk (medieval), Tansa (Mongol): district of Mongolia—AAd 13.

Tenodes: Tenide (modern Italian), Bozca ada (Turkish): island—Hed. 3.

Tenos, Tēnos (classical Greek), Tiar (medieval Italian), İsmaili (Turkish), Tinos (modern Greek): island—H3c3 3.

Thabaria: town—see Thersat.

Thasos, Thāsos (modern Greek): island—E3d3 3, 4.

Thabos, Thēbal (classical Greek), Eathos (medieval), Thēval (modern Greek): city—H4ed 1, 4.

Thérouanne (French): village 20 miles east of Reims (E2b5 2).

Thessalonica (medieval), Thessia (classical), Solon (Macedonian), Salonika (Italian), Thessaloniki or Salonicos (modern Greek): city, port—D3d3 1, 4.

Thessaly: Thessalia (classical), Vlachia (medieval), Thessalia (modern Greek): region of northern Greece—in 3, 4.

Thessy-le-Berchères (French): village 30 miles W of Dijon (H3c3 2).

Thrace: Thracia (Latin), Thrake (classical Greek), Trakya (Turkish), Thrikhi (modern Greek): region south of Bulgaria—in 1, 2, 3, 4.

Thuringia, Thüringen (German): region of central Germany—Gls 2, 3.

Tibarus (classical), Thabarna (medieval), Tabartyah (Arabic), Tivarya (Arabic): town—L3f3 1, 7.

Tiberias, Lake—see Galilee, Sea of.

Tibet, region north of India—UVW3 12, 13.

Tiflis: Tifl (Persian), Tbilisi (Georgian): city—M3d4 1.

Tigris (classical), Diğah (Arabic), Dicle (Turkish): river—N234 1.

- Timgaza: town—see Timgad.
- Tinaz (medieval), Tana (Turkish), Zafetar (Serbian): town 30 miles west of Vidin (Jld3: 3).
- Tine or Tinea: island—see Tinea.
- Tiranev; Tiracovei (Latin), Tironea (Turkish), Tirane (Bulgarian): town—Jld2: 1, 1, 3.
- Titel (Serbian): village 29 miles west of Belgrade (Jld1: 3).
- Tolado (Spanish), Tolitum (classical), Tolatukh (Arabic): city—Jld2: 2.
- Topolitza (Bulgarian): cross bearing past Philippopolis (Jld1: 3) to Marone.
- Tor (French): town, probably Antiochia.
- Torog (medieval), Tour Rouge (French): unidentified place, probably in Spain.
- Toron (medieval): Torone—Jld2: 2.
- Tortosa, Amaraes (classical), Asparaga or Turis (Arabic): port—Jld1: 1, 6.
- Tortosa (Spanish), Doronea (classical), Turashah (Arabic): town—Jld2: 2.
- Toul (French): town—Jld2: 2, 3.
- Toulouse (French): city—Jld2: 2.
- Tournai (French), Duonij (Pslavish): town—Jld5: 2.
- Tours (French): town—Jld2: 2.
- Tuzan's Door (Kapula Deriwev (Bulgarian): pass 40 miles W of Sofia (Jld3: 3).
- Transylvania, Siebenbürgen (German), Erdély (Hungarian), Ardeal (Rumanian): region W of medieval Hungary—Jld: 1, 2.
- Trāh (medieval), Trige (Serbian): port—Jld2: 2.
- Trebizonde, Trapezus (classical), Trapezunt (medieval), Trabzon (Turkish): city, port—Jld3: 1.
- Trebland: empire—Jld: 9.
- Trepchar; Trepaia (Serbian): town 24 miles west of Kosovo (Jld3: 3).
- Trevio (Italian): town 16 miles west of Vicenza (Jld3: 1).
- Trier (German), Treves (French): city—Jld2: 2, 3.
- Trifanoria: island—see Sicily.
- Tripoli; Oea (classical), Tarabulus al-Gharb (Arabic): port—Jld1: 2.
- Tripoli, Tripolis (classical), Tarabulus (Arabic): city, port—Jld1: 1, 4, 7.
- Tiranev: town—see Timgaza.
- Triglar: port—see Trish.
- Tris, Hara, Hara, or Tris (classical): one of ancient city, at village of Hissarlik—Jld1: 2, 3.
- Trizon (French): town—Jld2: 2.
- Tanis; Tinn (Arabic): city—Jld2: 2, 3.
- Tanina, Hiraqlayn (Arabic): region of North Africa—Jld1: 2, 3.
- Tarkey; Türkiye (Turkish): modern nation, comprising Anatolia and parts of Thrace, Armenia, and Kurdistan.
- Tarus (Rumanian), Trahesta (classical): town, now Taras-Severin—Jld1: 3.
- Tarentum; Tarentum (Italian): region of Ionian Italy—Jld: 2, 3.
- Taracoma (Latin): town, now abandoned, 12 miles W of Rome (Jld4: 3).
- Tyre; Tyris (classical), Sira (Arabic), Tyi (Arabic): port—Jld2: 1, 7.
- Tia: island—see Ceos.
- Transilvan: town—see Cheria.
- Trynpe (classical), Jiris or Jurenik (Turkish): port north of Gafageti (Jld3: 3).
- Uglak (Croatian), Ugl (Turkish): village—Jld3: 1.
- Ukraine; Ukraina (Rumanian): region of NW Russia—Jld: 1, 3.
- Ulcinj: port—see Dubogna.
- Upper Egypt: region along the Nile south of Cairo—Jld: 1.
- Uleis: city—see Edram.
- Urgench (Rumanian), Urgench (Turkish), Gurgany (Persian), al-Burghatayn (Arabic), now Konye Urgench: city, now abandoned for Novo Urgench—Jld4: 13.
- Urkidan: port—see Sautari.

- Valence (French): town—E541: 2.
 Valencia (Spanish), Balansyah (Arabic): city, port—D541: 2.
 Valencay: port—see Arles.
 Van, Lake, Van Gölü (Turkish)—M542: 1.
 Vard, probably Varnat (Hungarian), Vardifin (Croatian), Wurmser (German): town—50 miles east of Gilly (Hic4: 2).
 Vardar (medieval), Axios (classical): river—D44: 4.
 Varna (medieval, Bulgarian): port, formerly called Sosen—J142: 1, 3, 5.
 Venice, Venezia (Italian): city, port—G347: 2, 3.
 Verdun (French): town—F14: 2, 3.
 Vermandois (French): district of eastern Picardy (Eic: 2).
 Verona (Italian): city—G343: 2.
 Vernal (medieval), Vërëin (modern Greek), Fere or Kani-Ferye (Turkish): town—J343: 4.
 Via Egnatia (medieval): road across Balkans from Durazzo to Constantinople—H144: 4, 5.
 Viden (Bulgarian): town—D44: 3.
 Vienna, Wien (German): city—H343: 1.
 Vienne (French): town—E343: 2.
 Vienne (French): district of the France, now called Dauphiné—Fc: 2.
 Vilages, Világos (Hungarian), Şirli (Rumanian): village 40 miles west of Timişoara (L43: 2).
 Vile (Serbian): district around the Lab valley.
 Villach (German): town—G44: 2, 3.
 Villefranche sur Mer (French), Villefranca (Italian): port—F144: 2.
 Villedarmain (French): castle near Troyes (E342: 2).
 Vilsula, Wisła (Polish), Weichsel (German): river—H543: 2.
 Viterbo (Italian): city—G343: 2, 3.
 Vitz-en-Artels (French): village 25 miles south of Lille (E447: 2).
 Vivar or Bivar or Yivar (Spanish): town—D541: 2.
 Vlachia: region—see Thessaly and Wallachia.
 Volga (Russian), Iul (Dacian): river—N344: 1.
 Vrontas (medieval Greek), Boudias (medieval), Vrontas (modern Greek): town—J143: 3, 4.
 Wapona (medieval), Kerk (Rumanian): port—L347: 1.
 Wastana (medieval), Angilon (Latin), Aylon (modern Greek): town—J142: 4.
 Vachinar: Vachin (Serbian): town 15 miles river of Komovo (L343: 2).
 Wale, Cymru (Latin), Cymru (Welsh): region west of England—D4: 2.
 Wallachia, Vlachia (medieval), Vlachia (Rumanian), Etilah (Turkish): region north of Bulgaria—J14: 1, 3.
 Warwick: town—D443: 2.
 Werra (French): town 18 miles north of Bourges (E445: 2).
 Wessenberg: town—see Albi Folia.
 Wessex: region of southern England.
 Wes: city—see Verona.
 Wykeham: city—D444: 2.
 Worms (German): town—F44: 2, 3.
 Wrocław: city—see Breslau.
 Wurzburg (German): city—F34: 2, 3.
 Yangchow or Yang-chow (Chinese): city, port—H553: 12.
 Yanya (Bulgarian): river—J142: 5.
 Yazyg: Jazyg (Serbian): town—H344: 3.
 Yezou, al-Yazan (Arabic): the right-hand; region of the Arabia—MPO: 12, 13

Yedigöller; Yeşilözü (Turkish); town, near Çarşamba, 1 mile south of Ankara (KJd): 3.
 Yperu (French), Iperu (Pitman); town 17 miles west of Lala (E4b): 2.

Zabid (Arabic); town—H4j: 13.

Zachen (Jiddish), Tsiakung or Chin-chung (Chinese); port—BBM: 12, 13.

Zaječar town—see Timok.

Zante (Italian), Zacynthus (Latin), Zakynthos (modern Greek); island—Hd: 3, 4.

Zara (Italian), Jadera (classical), Zadar (Croatian); port—HId: 3.

Zaragosa, city—see Saragossa.

Zax island—see Cux.

Zakirion; Zante (Jiddish), Zante or Cio (Jiddish), Zakari (modern Greek),
 Zante (modern Greek); town—Bd: 1, 4.

Ziksee (Greek); town—Hd: 4, 5.

Zlatica (Bulgarian); port 3 miles north of Elton.

Zlatica (Bulgarian); town 42 miles east of Sofia (Id): 14.

Znojmo (Czech), Znaun (German); town—Hj: 2: 3.

Zocklen, port—see Nazareth.

Zvornik (Serbian); town—HJd: 3.

SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY OF THE CRUSADES

*compiled by Hans Eberhard Mayer
and Joyce McLellan
edited by Harry W. Hazard*

Contents

Introductory note		314
List of abbreviations		318
Bibliography—general works (230 entries)		
Bibliographies	A1-23	320
Research aids	B1-18	321
Historiography	C1-17	322
Historiography—individual authors	C18-42	323
Historiography—William of Tyre	C43-59	324
Historical geography and topography	D1-74	325
Numismatics and sigillography	E1-44	329
Epigraphy	F1-12	331
Bibliography—sources (531 entries)		
Collections (of sources)	G1-57	333
Narrative sources—western languages	H1-158	336
Narrative sources—Greek	I1-25	346
Narrative sources—Arabic	J1-48	347
Narrative sources—Armenian	K1-4	351
Narrative sources—Syriac	K5-9	351
Narrative sources—Persian	K10-14	352
Narrative sources—Turkish	K15-18	352
Narrative sources—Mongolian	K19-29	353
Documents—popes	L1-19	353
Documents—individual popes	L20-51	354
Documents—crusades and the Holy Land	M1-18	356

Documents—ecclesiastical institutions	M19-24	557
Documents—Knights Hospitaller	N1-9	558
Documents—Knights Templar	N10-17	558
Documents—Teutonic Knights	N18-21	559
Documents—Cilician Armenia	Q1-2	559
Documents—Byzantine empire	P1-12	559
Documents—Frankish Greece	Q1-10	560
Documents—Cyprus	R1-6	561
Documents—Venice	S1-23	561
Documents—Genoa	S24-39	562
Documents—Pisa	S40-41	563
Documents—Naples and Sicily	S42-51	564
Documents—Acre	S52	564
Documents—Marseilles	T1-2	564
Documents—Spain	U1-4	565
Documents—German empire	V1-7	565
Documents—Hungary	W1	565
Documents—Balkans	X1	565
Legal sources	Y1-20	566

**Bibliography—secondary works (over 1800 entries,
arranged alphabetically by author, and chronologi-
cally for each author)**

567

Index of topics for secondary works

649

Crossing thought: Christian attitudes	649	Italy (general)	651
Crusade and Islam: Muslim attitudes	649	Venice	651
Crusade and native law	649	Genoa	651
Pilgrimage and relics	649	Pisa	651
The crusader (general)	649	Naples and Sicily	651
The First Crusade	649	Acre	651
The crusade of 1188	649	Spain and Portugal	651
The Second Crusade	649	France	651
The Slavonic Crusade of 1147	649	England and Scotland	651
The Third Crusade	649	Scandinavia	651
The Fourth Crusade	649	Hungary and the Balkans	651
The Children's Crusade	649	Byzantium (general and to 1204)	651
The Albigensian Crusade	649	The Czech claim on the Adriatic and the Aegean (1204-1261)	651
The Fifth Crusade	649	Byzantium (1261-1453)	651
The crusade of Frederick II	649	Trevelyan	651
The crusades of Theobald of Cham- pagne and Richard of Cornwall	649	The Latin empire of Constantinople	651
The crusades of Louis IX	649	The Aegean islands	651
The crusades from 1270 until 1291	649	Crete	651
The fourteenth-century crusades	649	Frankish Greece	651
The fifteenth-century crusades	649	The Catalan Company	651
The sixteenth-century crusades	649	Cyprus	651
The papacy and the crusades	649	Cilician Armenia	651
The "Holy Roman" empire	649	Georgia	651

The Moslems (general)	433	The preaching order and missions	435
The Arabs	433	(general)	435
The Iraqis and Assyrians	433	The Franciscans	435
The Assyrians (Chalde)	433	The Dominicans	435
Egypt	433	The military orders (general)	435
North Africa	433	The Knights Hospitaller	435
The Turks (general)	433	The Knights Templar	435
The Seljuks and Turcs	433	The Teutonic Knights	435
The Ottoman Turks	433	Other military orders	435
The Moors	433	The art of war	435
The Jews	433	Military architecture	435
The crusader states in Palestine and		Naval warfare	435
Syria (general)	433	Trade and commerce (general)	435
The county of Edessa	434	Trade and commerce - Byzantine	435
The principality of Antioch	434	empire	435
The county of Tripoli	434	Trade and commerce - Italy	435
The Latin kingdom of Jerusalem		Trade and commerce - Constantinople	435
(general)	434	Trade and commerce - Persia	435
Jerusalem - the crown and royal		Trade and commerce - Islamic lands	435
government	434	Crosses and	435
Jerusalem - lordships and fiefs	434	Islamic culture	435
Jerusalem - constitutional struggles	434	Byzantine culture	435
Jerusalem - the crusaders	434	Armenian culture	435
Jerusalem - rural settlement	434	Frankish culture in the Latin empire	435
The Greek Orthodox church in the		Frankish culture in Greece, the Aegean,	
Syrian empire (c. 1080)	434	and Crete	435
The Greek church in other Greek states	434	Frankish culture in Rhodes	435
The Greek church in Cyprus	434	Frankish culture in Cyprus	435
The Greek church - schism and union		Frankish culture in other places	435
1261-1459	434	Frankish culture in Palestine and Syria	
The Greek church in Palestine and		(general)	435
Syria	435	Frankish painting in Palestine and	
The Roman Catholic church (general)	435	Syria	435
The Roman church in the Latin empire	435	Frankish sculpture in Frankish and	
The Roman church in Frankish Greece	435	Syria	435
The Roman church in Cyprus	435	Frankish architecture and archaeology	
The Roman church in Palestine and		in Palestine and Syria	435
Syria	435	Crosses and	435
The eastern Christian churches	435	Language teaching	435
Selective index of modern co-authors, editors, and			
translations and of medieval authors not listed in			
alphabetical position in sections H and J			435

Introductory Note

A bibliographer is a prisoner of circumstances. This applies to many aspects of his activities and starts with completeness. I did not try to achieve it in this bibliography because it would have meant to duplicate, and more than duplicate, my 1960 *Bibliographie zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, which would not have served any practical purpose, even if space limitations had permitted. On the other hand, whole reference must be made to my earlier volume, this bibliography had to be somewhat more comprehensive in scope because the chapters of the six volumes give much more consideration to North Africa, Spain, Prussia, and Bohemia than I did there. Apart from including sections on the wars in these countries, I have attempted to make the bibliography more comprehensive for the more modern publications. In other words, from the older literature on the subject I have selected only those books and studies which seem to me to be either standard works in the field or, at least, of considerable importance to it. Another criterion for inclusion has been that works should be included which would lead the researcher easily to much of the previous literature concerning this or that special subject within the general topic. Thus, a book such as Gustave Schlumberger et al., *Sigillographie de l'Orient latin* (1943), made it possible to exclude almost everything written on the seals of the Latin east before that year. I know, however, that my criteria for the inclusion of less recent works of research are to some extent arbitrary; I must again plead as an excuse the restrictions imposed by considerations of space, which no editor can allow without limits, as well as the fact that this general bibliography had to reflect to some extent what individual authors had cited as source material and scholarly literature in their chapters. If they felt that such titles merited citation, I was to a certain extent bound, not that I would have disagreed with them very often, but this meant that I had to make sacrifices in other places where I was completely on my own.

I have made two previous bibliographical efforts in the field of the crusades, and, for literature up to about the year of publication of each, I should like to refer the reader to them for more detailed information: (1) Hans E. Mayer, *Bibliographie zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Hassova, 1960), containing publications approximately up to 1958, and continued, as a *bibliographie raisonnée*, by (2) Hans E. Mayer, "Literaturbericht über die Geschichte der Kreuzzüge: Veröffentlichungen 1958-1967," *Historische Zeitschrift: Sonderheft 3* (1969), pp. 641-731. I had intended to provide the next installment after another ten years had elapsed. Before they had done so I was asked by

the general editor, Dr. Kenneth M. Setton, to join in this international venture, and I gladly agreed to his request. This bibliography, then, also constitutes the second continuation of my *Bibliography* of 1960, although the new is mixed with a generous selection of the old. With regard to significant new publications since 1967, I have attempted to list them through 1982 with sundry (but not systematically collected) additions of more recent publications. I hope that the bibliographical material put together here will be of value to students of the field.

There are a number of other and more specific dilemmas of a bibliographer with which everyone who has done this kind of work is familiar, and I shall not try to give an exhaustive list. While middle names of authors are actually given only as initials, every effort has been made to extend the first given names of authors who use only their initials. It is English scholars in particular who seem to be elusive on this point, presenting me with a number of "unbreakable codes"; I apologize for this slight inconsistency and inconvenience. Another problem was that of reprints and translations: I have listed them where they came to my knowledge, but no systematic effort has been made to be comprehensive in this respect because both reprints and translations are very hard for the bibliographer to trace, as they are not reported broadly enough in the review sections of scholarly journals or in periodic bibliographies.

A special case is that of the Collected Studies series of Variorum Reprints in London. Thanks to the firm's catalogues, issued twice a year, they are quite easy to track down, and a good number of them are pertinent to this bibliography. They gave me an unexpected opportunity to alleviate the space problem. Generally speaking, in the cases either of such individual collected studies, be they published by Variorum or another publishing house, or of collective volumes of papers, I have included only the volume as a whole, not the individual papers. But no rule should be followed without exceptions, so I have dispensed with this principle in the case of some authors whose work is particularly important to the subject of the crusades. The most notable exceptions are Claude Cahen, Joshua Prawer, Jean Richard, and Kenneth M. Setton. If in their cases only the volumes of collected studies had been listed, the bibliography would not have shown the extent of their outstanding contributions to the field.

I shall only mention but not discuss the problem of transliteration from oriental languages (and also from Slavonic ones with a Cyrillic alphabet or from Greek). Every bibliographer knows that there is simply no solution to this problem which would yield consistency. The *History of the Crusades* does have a standard transliteration system

for Arabic, etc., but this was useless for me if I was dealing with a book where Arabic words had already been transliterated on the title page according to the French or German or another fashion. I could no longer change this, but I trust that orientadists will understand this predicament. This leads me to another problem which is not oriental in character at all, but somewhat irritating. Some names of authors appear in their publications in various forms, which is not surprising where transliteration enters the picture once more. I enter them under a standardized form, with specific variants in parentheses, as "Ostrogorski (here, Ostrogorsky)" or "Hopf, Carl (here, Charles)".

The titles of sources and of certain specialized categories are arranged according to subject matter. This is not always easy because some titles could as easily be classified in one section as in another. But I had to make a choice, as I could not list any titles twice. I have put such titles into those sections to which they seemed to be most pertinent. The system of arrangement by subject matter is maintained from the big sections to the small subsections and the development of the system can easily be followed in the headings of sections and subsections. The latter are sufficiently small to abandon, within each subsection, the arrangement by subject matter in favor of an alphabetical arrangement which will impose no hardships on the reader. However, it seemed to be more appropriate to list the papal documents by successive pontificates rather than alphabetically by the names either of editors or of popes.

Titles of secondary works are listed alphabetically by author (or by editor if there is no author listed), and chronologically for each author; all are cross-indexed by primary subject matter. Titles without author or editor named are listed at the end, followed by selective cross-indexes of subjects and of co-authors, editors, and translators. A list of abbreviations for periodicals or series occurring frequently in this bibliography will be found appended to this introductory note. Dr. McLellan and I supplied almost all the bibliographical materials and we are responsible for any errors contained therein. Dr. Hazard is responsible for the way these materials are here arranged for presentation as well as for several additional entries (as is Dr. Norman Zacov) and for the indexes. He is also responsible for the editorial decision, based on the *Chicago Manual of Style* and followed throughout all six volumes of this work, to capitalize in French, Italian, and Spanish titles the second word of a title, if the first word is a definite or an indefinite article.

It would have been impossible for me to compile this bibliography if I had not had the help of Dr. Joyce McLellan. She checked and re-

checked the titles to be included within the larger framework of preparing my old *Bibliographie* for a possible new edition. Her accuracy was as much to be admired as her persistence. She justly appears as co-author of this bibliography, and my sincerest thanks must be extended to her here, all the more so since I have completely lost track of her whereabouts. My thanks are also due to the Fritz Thyssen Stiftung for having provided the funds for Dr. McLellan to work with me. Our joint thanks are due to the staff of the Bayerische Staatsbibliothek in Munich, which never failed to respond to our frequent requests, many of which were not easy to accommodate.

Hans E. Mayer

Abbreviations Used in Bibliography

Abh. Göt.	Abhandlungen der philologisch-historischen Klasse der Akademie (sachl., Gesellschaft) der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen
ABS Ashm.	<i>Journal of the British School at Ashm.</i>
AF Fried.	<i>Anchurae Fretum Fretorum</i>
Amst. HR	<i>American Historical Review</i>
AO Lat.	<i>Anchurae de l'Orto Lat.</i>
AGSM	<i>Annales de l'École supérieure militaire de Metz</i>
Arch. 100.	<i>Archiv 1000</i>
BC Hist.	<i>Bulletin de correspondance hellénique</i>
BE Chr.	<i>Bibliothèque de l'École des chartes</i>
B Ec. HE	<i>Bibliothèque de l'École des hautes-études</i>
BEPAR	<i>Bibliothèque des Écoles françaises (Athènes et de Rome)</i>
BAL AH	<i>Bibliothèque archéologique et historique</i>
BTSOP	<i>Biblioteca bio-bibliografica della Terra Santa e dell'Oriente</i>
	<i>francese</i>
Bz. F	<i>Byzantinische Forschungen</i>
Bz. Z	<i>Byzantinische Zeitschrift</i>
Cah. Cr. Méd.	<i>Cahiers de civilisation médiévale</i>
Carb. HR	<i>Catholic Historical Review</i>
CD 1000	<i>Collection des documents inédits sur l'histoire de la France</i>
Col. URC	<i>Columbia University Records of Civilization Sources and Studies</i>
CRABR	<i>Comptes-rendus des séances de l'Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres</i>
CSH Byz.	<i>Corpus scriptorum historiarum Byzantinorum</i>
D. Ostr. P	<i>Dumbarton Oaks Papers</i>
DRH Cr.	<i>Documents relatifs à l'histoire des croisades</i>
Eng. HR	<i>English Historical Review</i>
Festl. S.	<i>Festschrift für die storia d'Italia</i>
Festl. SV	<i>Festschrift für die storia di Venezia</i>
Forsch. DG	<i>Forschungen zur deutschen Geschichte</i>
Göt. Nach.	<i>Nachrichten der Akademie (sachl., Gesellschaft) der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, I, Philologisch-historische Klasse</i>
Hist. Stud.	<i>Historische Studien, ed. Emil Ebering</i>
ed. Ebering	
Hist. Z	<i>Historische Zeitschrift</i>
HI Göt.	<i>Historisches Jahrbuch der Göttinger Gesellschaft</i>
H of C	<i>A History of the Crusades (the present work: see Setton, 1952)</i>
Isr. Expl. J	<i>Israel Exploration Journal</i>
JA	<i>Journal asiatique</i>
JESHO	<i>Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient</i>
J Med. H	<i>Journal of Medieval History</i>
MAJBL	<i>Mémoires de l'Institut (français) de France, Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres</i>
Med. AA	<i>Medieval (sachl., Medieval) Academy of America</i>
MEF Revue	<i>Mémoires archéologiques et d'histoire de l'École française de Rome</i>

MGH	<i>Monumenta Germaniae Historica</i>
SS	<i>Scriptores</i>
SS, nr Germ.	<i>Scriptores rerum Germanicarum</i>
Migne, PG	Migne, Jacques P., ed., <i>Patrologiae cursus completus. Series Graeco-Latinae</i>
Migne, PL	Migne, Jacques P., ed., <i>Patrologiae cursus completus. Series Latinae</i>
MIÖG	<i>Mitteilungen des Instituts für Österreichische Geschichtsforschung</i>
MS Antig. P	<i>Mémoires de la Société nationale des antiquaires de France</i>
O. Chr. P	<i>Orientalia christiana periodica</i>
Quatrem	(see Yoder 1962-3)
Pal. DVHL	<i>Paläographisches des deutschen Vereins vom Heiligen Lande</i>
PC, Fonten	<i>Fontes pontificiae communis ad regulandum Colloquium Italiae sacrorum orientalium</i>
PPTS	<i>Palestine Pilgrims' Tour Society</i>
QDA. Pal.	<i>Quarterly of the Department of Antiquities in Palestine</i>
QFAB	<i>Quellen und Forschungen aus italienischen Archiven und Bibliotheken</i>
RE Byz.	<i>Revue des études byzantines</i>
Riv. Stit	<i>Revue historique</i>
Riv. QH	<i>Revue des questions historiques</i>
RHC	<i>Revue des historiens des croisades</i>
Arm	<i>Historiens arméniens</i>
Lat	<i>Latins</i>
Occ.	<i>Historiens occidentaux</i>
Or	<i>Historiens orientaux</i>
RH Droit FE	<i>Revue historique de droit français et étranger</i>
RHL Lang	<i>Revue historique et littéraire de Langue des</i>
RHSE	<i>Revue historique de l'est-est européen</i>
R Ital SS	<i>Rivista italiana di scienze</i>
RO Chr	<i>Revue de l'Orient chrétien</i>
RO Lat	<i>Revue de l'Orient latin</i>
Roth Series	<i>Rivista Britannica di storia e di scienze: The Chronicle and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages</i>
SP Ware	<i>Streuungsberichte der philologisch-historischen Klasse der Österreichischen (jetzt, Kaiserlichen) Akademie der Wissenschaften</i>
SOL, SO	<i>Société de l'Orient latin: Série géographique</i>
SOL, SH	<i>Société de l'Orient latin: Série historique</i>
Studium SP	<i>Publicationes studioe Historiae Antiquae Praefationum</i>
Variar. Rep., CS	<i>Variarum Reprae: Collected Studies</i>
VSWG	<i>Verwaltungsrecht für Sozial- und Wirtschaftsgeschichte</i>
ZDPV	<i>Zeitschrift der deutschen Paläographen</i>
Z. Kirch.	<i>Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte</i>

Bibliography – General Works

BIBLIOGRAPHIES

- A1. Argeton, Philip P., *Bibliographies of China from Classical Times to 1936* (Osford, 1940).
- A2. Arden, Ada S., *The Crusade Historiography and Bibliography* (Rocamingen, Ind., 1962).
- A3. Bastien, Robert H., "Sources pour l'histoire du commerce maritime en Méditerranée du XIII^e au XVI^e siècle," in *Les Sources de l'histoire maritime en Europe, du moyen âge au XVIII^e siècle. Actes du Quatrième colloque international d'histoire maritime, tenu à Paris du 20 au 23 mai 1958*, ed. Michel Molin et al. (Bibliothèque générale de l'École pratique des hautes études, VI^e section, Paris, 1962), pp. 137-179.
- A4. Beatty, Alfred C., *The A. Chester Beatty Library: a Catalogue of the Armenian Manuscripts, with an introduction by Sirarpie Der Nersisyan* (2 vols., Dublin, 1959).
- A5. Cobham, Claude D., *An Attempt at a Bibliography of Cyprus*, new ed. by George E. Jeffery (Nicosia, 1959).
- A6. Constantinides, Nicolas, "Bibliographie de l'Église latine de Chio," *Bulletin de l'Institut de Byzantinologie*, V (Sofronia, 1974, published 1975), 1-196.
- A7. Desautels, M., *Bibliographie de l'ordre des Templiers (imprimés et manuscrits)* (*Bibliographie des ordres modernes*, November, 1962).
- A8. Farinacci, Ottavio, *Bibliografia della* (*Biblioteca di Bibliografia italiana*, 14, Florence, 1957).
- A9. Haaf, Rudolf von, *Kurze Bibliographie zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens 1190-1947* (Göttingen, 1949).
- A10. Halévy, Paul-Louis de, *Bibliographie méthodique de l'ordre souverain de St-Jean de Jérusalem* (Paris, 1883).
- A11. Jorjans, J., "La Croisade contre les Albigeois étude bibliographique," *Revue Historique, archéologique et littéraire du Département du Tarn*, 3-XXIII (1908), 105-120.
- A12. Lampe, Karl H., *Bibliographie des Deutschen Ordens im 1939* (Quellen und Studien zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens, 3, Bonn and Godesberg, 1955).
- A13. Mayer, Hans E., *Bibliographie zur Geschichte der Kreuzritze* (2nd unrevised ed., Hünneberg, 1963).
- A14. Mayer, Hans E., "Literaturhinweise über die Geschichte der Kreuzritze. Veröffentlicht 1958-1963," *Hist. Z. Sonderheft 3* (Münster, 1969), pp. 641-731.
- A15. Mizz, Giuseppe (fraz. Joseph), "A Bibliography of the Order of St. John of Jerusalem (1925-1969)," *The Order of St. John in Malta XIX Council of Europe Exhibition* (Malta, 1970), pp. 108-204.
- A16. Nea, Heinrich, *Bibliographie der Tempel-Ordens, 1037-1963, mit Ergänzungen zur Bibliographie von M. Dussanet* (Bonn, 1963).
- A17. Pearsen, James D., *Index Internus 1908-1955* (Cambridge, Eng., 1958), two supplements (Cambridge, Eng., and London, 1962-1963).
- A18. Pille, Alfred, *Bibliographie der Deutschen Ordens, unvollendet, corrigiert, and ed. by Henry Carsten* (Schriften der Königsberger Gelehrten Gesellschaft, Sonderreihe 3; Halle, 1933).

- A19. Röllrecht, Reinhold, *Bibliotheca geographica Palaestinae: Chronologische Verzeichnisse der von 333 bis 1878 erschienenen Literatur über das Heilige Land mit dem Hinweis einer Kartographie* (Berlin, 1893), repr. with supplements by David H.K. Amiran (Jerusalem, 1963).
- A20. Roell, Erwin, *Appareil alla Bibliographie ecclesiastica de l'ordre seculier de St-Jean de Jerusalem et Ferdinand de Heilwald* (Rome, 1934).
- A21. Seitz, Ferdinand, *Bohemica: Probleme und Literatur seit 1945* (Hist. Z., Bibliographisches Institut 4; Munich, 1970).
- A22. Thomas, Fritz, *Die Palaestina-Literatur eine internationale Bibliographie in systematischer Ordnung: vol. 1, Systematische Bibliographie der Palaestina-Literatur* (7 vols., for 1895-1945, and vol. A, for 1874-1894, Leipzig and Berlin, 1908-1972).
- A23. — Harvard University, *Library, Crusader Classification Schedule, Classified Listing by Call Numbers, Alphabetical Listing by Author or Title, Chronological Listing* (Widener Library shelves, vol. 1; Cambridge, Mass., 1965).

RESEARCH AIDS

- B1. Amiran, David H.K., et al., eds., *Atlas of Israel: Cartography, Physical Geography, Human and Economic Geography, History* (Jerusalem and Amsterdam, 1970).
- B2. Baudrillart, Alfred, et al., eds., *Dictionnaire d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastiques* (Paris, 1942-).
- B3. Brice, William C., ed., *An Historical Atlas of Islam* (London, 1961).
- B4. Buchberger, Michael, *Lexikon für Theologie und Kirche*, rev. ed. by Josef Heller and Karl Rahner (60 vols. and *Regesten*; Freiburg im Breisgau, 1957-1967).
- B5. Dulaucourt, Édouard F., *Recherches sur la chronologie arménienne technique et historique* vol. 1, *Chronologie technique* (Bibliothèque historique arménienne, 1; Paris, 1879).
- B6. Edler, Florence, *Glossary of Medieval Terms of Business, Italian Series, 1200-1600* (Cambridge, Mass., 1954).
- B7. Eubel, Conrad, *Hierarchia catholica novis aevi, sive Summarum pontificum, S.R.E. cardinalium, archiepiscoporum antistitis series, ab anno 1590 usque ad annum 1931 peractis et documentis tabulari praeparatis* Vaticanis collectis, digestis, editis (2nd ed., vols. 1, 2, München, 1913-1914).
- B8. Fliche, Augustin, et al., eds., *Histoire de l'Église depuis les origines jusqu'à nos jours* (Paris, 1934-).
- B9. Freeman-Grenville, Grenville S. F., *The Muslim and Christian Calendars, being Tables for the Conversion of Muslim and Christian Dates from the Hijra to the Year A.D. 2000* (London and New York, 1963).
- B10. Gams, Pius B., *Series episcoporum archiepis catholice* (2 vols., Regensburg, 1873-1896).
- B11. Hazard, Harry W., *Atlas of Islamic History*, 3rd rev. ed. with maps executed by Herbert Lester Corbin Jr. and J. M. Smiley (Princeton Oriental Studies, 13; Princeton, 1954).
- B12. Jolan, Gabriel N., *Palestine of the Crusades: a Map of the Country . . . with Historical Introduction and Gazetteer* (Survey of Palestine, 3rd ed., Jaffa, 1946).

- B13 Le Quere, Michel, *Orans chrestianus, in quatuor patriarchatus digestus, quo exhibentur ecclesiae, patriarchatus, cunctaque prepositae totius Orientis* (3 vols., Paris, 1740).
- B14 Naz, Barod, in al., eds., *Dictionnaire de droit canonique, avec un sommaire de l'histoire et des instructions en de l'état actuel de la discipline* (7 vols., Paris 1935-1945).
- B15 Prawer, Joshua, and Moros Burmann, "Palestine under the Crusaders" (map with commentary and bibliography), in *A Zion of Israel* (Jerusalem and Amsterdam, 1970), section IX, "History", ed. Michael Avi-Yonah, no. IX; larger version published separately by the Survey of Israel as *The Crusader Kingdom of Jerusalem* (1971).
- B16 Wüstenfeld, Heinrich F., and Eduard Mahler, *Hegleichungs-Tabellen zur christlichen und jüdischen Zeitrechnung mit Tafeln zur Umrechnung orientchristlicher Aera*, 3rd rev. ed. of *Hegleichungs-Tabellen der römisch-byzantinischen und christlichen Zeitrechnung unter Mitacht von Joachim Meyer*, newly ed. by Berold Spuler (Munich and Wiesbaden, 1961).
- B17 Zambart, Eduard von (Herr, des), *Manuel de philologie et de chronologie pour l'histoire de l'Islam* (Hassers, 1937).
- B18 — *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, new ed., prepared by a number of leading Orientalists (Leiden, 1940-); supp., fasc. I & II (Leiden, 1940-), index to vols. 1-3 (Leiden, 1979).

HISTORIOGRAPHY

- C1 Bechke, James S., "Some Notions of Books in the East during the Crusades," *Speculum*, VIII (1933), 240-242.
- C2 Bruckers, Anna D. von den, *Die "National-Christiannorum orientaliarum" in Hinsicht der lateinischen Historiographie von der Mitte des 12. bis in die zweite Hälfte des 14. Jahrhunderts* (Köln: Historische Abhandlungen, 22; Cologne and Vienna, 1971).
- C3 Brunlage, Jozef A., "Recent Crusade Historiography: Some Observations and Suggestions," *Civis RA*, XLIX (1964), 493-507.
- C4 Dölger, Franz, and Alfons M. Schweder, *Byzanz* (Wissenschaftliche Forschungsberichte, Geisteswissenschaftliche Reihe 3; Bonn, 1952).
- C5 Gubrell, Francisco, *Arab Historians of the Crusades*, in: E. J. Costello (London, 1964).
- C6 Krey, August C., "A Neglected Passage in the Quest and its Bearing on the Literature of the First Crusade," in *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to David C. Munro*, ed. Louis J. Paxton (New York, 1938), pp. 57-78.
- C7 LaMoine, John L., "Some Problems in Crusading Historiography," *Speculum*, XV (1940), 57-73.
- C8 Lewis, Bernard, "The Sources for the History of the Syrian Antiochians," *Speculum*, XXVII (1952), 475-489.
- C9 Lewis, Bernard, and Peter M. Holt, eds., *Historians of the Middle East* (London and New York, 1962).
- C10 Luttrell, Anthony, "Greek Histories Translated and Compiled for Juan Fernu dez de Heredia, Master of Rhodes, 1377-1396," *Speculum*, XXXV (1960), 401-407.

- C11. Luttrell, Anthony, "The Hospitallers' Historical Activities," *ACQMM*, XXIV (1966), 126-129; XXV (1967), 4 unnumbered pages; XXVI (1968), 13 unnumbered pages.
- C12. Mayer, Hans E., "America and the Crusades," *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, CXXV (1981), 38-45.
- C13. Moretto, Marina, and Oton Piero Bignazzi, *Per l'edizione del testo degli statuti XII* (Genoa, 1958).
- C14. Morgan, David G., ed., *Medieval Historical Writing in the Christian and Islamic Worlds* (London, 1982).
- C15. Sakhi, Kamal S., *Medieval Histories of Medieval Lebanon* (American University of Beirut, Publications of the Faculty of Arts and Sciences, Oriental Series, 14, Beirut, 1959).
- C16. Sauvaget, Jean, *Introduction à l'histoire de l'Orient musulman, éléments de bibliographie*, ed. by Claude Cahen (Introduction à l'Islam, I, Paris, 1962).
- C17. Waagen, Gerhard, *Geschicht von Basilien in der Historiographie* (Goes und Werk der Zeiten, 18; Zurich, 1969).

HISTORIOGRAPHY—INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

- C18. Andros, Alfred I., "Walter, Archbishop of London, and the *Historia accidentalis* of Jacques de Vitry," *Church History*, I (1962), 141-151.
- C19. Brouilley, Geoffrey W., "Philip of Novara's Account of the War between Frederick II of Hohenstaufen and the Greeks," *J. Med. H.*, III (1977), 325-337.
- C20. Brund, Clota, "David d'Aubry, auteur méconnu des 'Faits des Tartares'," *Revue de l'Occident*, LXXIX (1950), 39-46.
- C21. Buckler, Georgina, *Anna Comnena* (Oxford, 1929).
- C22. Burdiant, Claude, ed., *La Traduction de l'"Histoire orientale" de Jacques de Vitry* (Bibliothèque française et orientale, vol. 3; Éditions critiques de textes, 19; Paris, 1968).
- C23. Caumont, C., "La Date de rédaction de l'*Histoire orientale* de Jacques de Vitry (1166/70-1240), critique d'Acte," *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique*, LXXVIII (1983), 65-72.
- C24. Deslaur, Antoine, "Rienziisme, seen in the oeuvre de Riccardo di Montecroce," *AF Presid.*, XXXVIII (1967), 169-179.
- C25. Faral, Edmond, "Geoffroy de Villehardouin: la question de sa sincérité," *Arch. Hist.*, CLXXV (1934), 536-562.
- C26. Friedman, Elmer L., *Real and Iconography for Aquinas's Credo* (Med. A.A. Publ. 48; Cambridge, Mass., 1956).
- C27. Fulk, Philipp, *Jakob von Vitry: Leben und Werke* (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und des Renaissance, 2; Leipzig und Berlin, 1909).
- C28. Geue, Wolfgang, "Auskunfte für den beschreibenden Westen, die 'Flos historiarum sive orientis' des Hugo von Gorkupen (G. Frum.) aus dem Jahre 1371," in *Seriationen regularis rerum: Festschrift für E. Herbert Bachmann*, ed. Geri Melville (Wienberg, 1978), pp. 243-264.
- C29. Gurman, Gregory G., "Simon of St.-Quentin and the Dominican Mission of the Mongol State: a Reappraisal," *Speculum*, XLVI (1971), 232-249.
- C30. Gurman, Gregory G., "Simon of Saint-Quentin as Historian of the Mongols and Seljuk Turks," *Medievalia et Humanistica, n.s.*, III (1972), 155-178.

- C31 Osment, Gregory G., "The Encyclopedist Vincent of Beauvais and his Mongol Extracts from John of Plano Carpini and Simon of St. Quentin," *Speculum*, XLIX (1974), 267-287.
- C32 Kolar, Szymon Z., "Gerard of Hamareth, a Neglected Twelfth Century Writer in the Latin East: a Contribution to the Intellectual and Mosaisic History of the Crusader States," *D-Okazje* II XXXVII (1953), 55-71.
- C33 Knoch, Peter, *Studien zu Albert von Aachen der erste Kreuzzug in der deutschen Chronistik* (Stuttgarter Beiträge zur Geschichte und Politik, 1; Stuttgart, 1966).
- C34 Kugler, Bernhard, *Albert von Aachen* (Stuttgart, 1885).
- C35 Laine, Angèle E., "Marston-Samuel Torcello, Byzantium and the Turks," *Speculum*, XLV (1970), 374-392.
- C36 Morgan, Margaret R., *The Chronicle of Ernoul and the Continuations of William of Tyre* (Oxford Historical Monographs; London, 1973).
- C37 Morgan, Margaret R., *La Continuation de Guillaume de Tyr (1184-1193)* (DRH Cl., 14; Paris, 1962).
- C38 Morgan, Margaret R., "The Russian Continuation of William of Tyre," in *Outremer* (1962), pp. 244-257.
- C39 Morris, Colin, "Geoffrey de Villehardouin and the Conquest of Constantinople," *History*, LIII (1968), 24-34.
- C40 Oehler, Hans, "Studien zu den Gesta Francorum," *Mittelalterlichen Jahrbuch*, VI (1976), 58-97.
- C41 Roussel, Paul, "Baudouin pape de la croisade," *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique* suivie, LX (1965), 167-181.
- C42 Swiech, Pauline R., "Outremer et Paix et the Historia Constantinopolitana," *Speculum*, LIII (1978), 46-78.

HISTORIOGRAPHY - WILLIAM OF TYRE

- C43 Crawford, Robert W., "William of Tyre and the Martinians," *Speculum*, XXX (1955), 222-228.
- C44 Davis, Ralph H.C., "William of Tyre," in *Relations between East and West in the Middle Ages*, ed. Derek Baker (Edinburgh, 1973), pp. 64-73.
- C45 Deschry, [Paulin], "L'Histoire des croisades de Guillaume de Tyr et ses continuations: Manuscrits 843 de la Bibliothèque municipale d'Amiens," *Bulletin trimestriel de la Société des antiquaires de Picardie*, LIII (1968/1970), 220-235.
- C46 Edbury, Peter W., and John G. Rowe, "William of Tyre and the Patriarchal Election of 1180," *Eng. HR*, XCIII (1978), 1-25.
- C47 Edbury, Peter W., and John G. Rowe, *William of Tyre, Historian of the Latin East* (Cambridge Studies in Medieval Life and Thought, 4th ser., no. 8; Cambridge, Eng., 1980).
- C48 Felds, Jacobus, "Manuscripts of the History of Outremer by William of Tyre a Hamillat," *Scriptorium*, XXVII (1973), 90-95.
- C49 Henzsd, Rudolf, "Zum Leben und zur Laufbahn Willelms von Tyrus," *Deutsches Archiv*, XXXIV (1970), 345-380.
- C50 Hoggins, Robert M.C., "Guillaume de Tyr écrivain, un chapitre (XXX, 12) de son 'Histoire' retrouvée," *Latomus*, XXI (1962), 81-129.

- C31 Huggess, Robert B.C., "La Tradition manuscrite de Guillaume de Tyr," *Studi medievali*, 3-V (1964), 381-373.
- C32 Huggess, Robert B.C., "Pontigny et l'Histoire de Guillaume de Tyr," *Letouveau*, XXV (1966), 139-142.
- C33 Huggess, Robert B.C., "Witness William of Tyre," *Sacris studies*, XXVII (1964), 461-473.
- C34 Kryp, August C., "William of Tyre, the Making of an Historian in the Middle Ages," *Speculum*, XVI (1941), 145-166.
- C35 Lacroix, Benoît, "Guillaume de Tyr: auteur et discours dans la tradition latine," *Études africaines arabiques et islamiques*, 4-XXX (1968), 301-315.
- C36 Mayer, Hans E., "Zum Texte Wilhelm von Tyrus," *Archiv für Diplomatik*, V-VI (1919-1920), 182-201.
- C37 Schwinges, Rainer C., *Kreuzungsentstehung und Tolereanz: Studien zu Wilhelm von Tyrus* (Monographien zur Geschichte des Mittelalters, 13; Stuttgart, 1977).
- C38 Vessey, David W.E.C., "William of Tyre and the Art of Historiography," *Medieval Studies*, XXXV (1973), 433-435.
- C39 Vessey, David W.E.C., "William of Tyre: Apology and Apocalypse," *Homage to André Baudry*, ed. Guy Cauter (Colloquia Latomus, 143; Brussels, 1976), pp. 390-403.

HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY AND TOPOGRAPHY

- D1 Abel, Félix M., "Naples, état de topographie," *Revue géographique*, XXXII (1933), 130-132.
- D2 Abel, Félix M., *Cartographie de la Palestine* (Études bibliques; 2 vols., Paris, 1933, 1938).
- D3 Alluaud, Léonard (Jean, Léonard) M., *Sinaiens, ou l'Armée-Cité description géographique et historique*. . . (Nantes, 1899).
- D4 Bandeker, Karl, *Orient: manuel du voyageur* (Leipzig, 1905).
- D5 Bandeker, Karl, *Palestine et Syrie: manuel du voyageur*, 4th ed. (Leipzig, 1912).
- D6 Bédai, Doyane, ed., *Excursion des lieux sacrés*, 2nd ed. (Jerusalem, 1959).
- D7 Borchers, Max von, and Edmond Patro, *Voyage en Syrie* (Mémoires publiés par les membres de l'Institut français d'archéologie de Damas, vols. 37-38, 2 vols., text and plans, Cairo, 1914-1923).
- D8 Beyer, Gustav, "Das Gebiet der Kreuzfahrerherrschaft Caesarea in Palästina (topographische- und territorialgeschichtlich untersucht)," *ZDPV*, LIX (1934), 1-31.
- D9 Beyer, Gustav, "Nepolis (al-Bas) und sein Gebiet in der Kreuzfahrzeit: eine topographische und historisch-geographische Studie," *ZDPV*, LXIII (1940), 155-209.
- D10 Beyer, Gustav, "Die Kreuzfahrergebiete von Jerusalem und S. Abraham (Hebron)," *ZDPV*, LXX (1942), 165-211.
- D11 Beyer, Gustav, "Die Kreuzfahrergebiete Akko und Qal'at," *ZDPV*, LXXII (1944-1945), 213-260.
- D12 Beyer, Gustav, "Die Kreuzfahrergebiete Südwestpalästina," *Beiträge zur biblischen Landes- und Altertumskunde (Vorträge gehalten aus der ZDPV)*, LXXVII (1944-1951), 148-192, 249-281.

- D13. Boyer, Gustav, "Civitas Flestin," *ZDPV*, LXIX (1973), 75-83, with an addition by Albrecht Alt, *ibid.*, 85-87.
- D14. Conder, Étienne, *Alexandrie musulmane. notes de topographie et d'histoire* (Cairo, 1933).
- D15. Conder, Claude R., and Horatio H. Kitchener, eds., *Map of Western Palestine* (Palestine Exploration Fund, Survey of Western Palestine, 26 sheets; London, 1885), accompanying volumes: 1. Claude R. Conder and Horatio H. Kitchener, *The Survey of Western Palestine: Memoirs of the Topography, Orography, Hydrography and Archaeology*, ed. with additions by E. H. Palmer (3 vols., London, 1881-1883); 2. Charles Warren and Claude R. Conder, *The Survey of Western Palestine: Jerusalem* (London, 1884); 3. Edward H. Palmer, *The Survey of Western Palestine: Arabic and English Name Lists* (London, 1881); 4. Tristram Saunders, *An Introduction to the Survey of Western Palestine: its Mainways, Plains and Highlands* (London, 1881); 5. Edward Hull, *The Survey of Western Palestine: Memoir on the Geology and Geography of Arabic Palestine, Palestine and Adjacent Districts* (London, 1884); 6. Henry B. Tristram, *The Survey of Western Palestine: the Flora and Fauna of Palestine* (London, 1884); 7. Claude R. Conder, *Mediterranean Topography of Palestine: the Survey of Western Palestine; Special Papers on Topography, Archaeology, Manners and Customs*, ed. Charles Wilson (London, 1883); 8. Henry C. Steadman, *The Survey of Western Palestine, a General Index* (London, 1884).
- D16. Conder, Claude R., *The Survey of Eastern Palestine: Memoirs of the Topography, Orography, Hydrography, Archaeology etc.*: 1. *The Mahalle Country* (London, 1889).
- D17. Duclaud, René, *Topographie historique de la Syrie antique et médiévale* (Bibl. A2L, 4; Paris, 1937).
- D18. Duclaud, René, Paul Deschamps, and Henri Seyrig, *La Syrie antique et médiévale illustrée* (Bibl. A2L, 17; Paris, 1933).
- D19. Fournau, Marie L., "Die Kreuzfahrerburgen 'Soudastion' (Sakastion)," *ZDPV*, XCIII (1977), 12-29.
- D20. Fournau-Lübke, Marie L., "Landbesitz und Burg während der Kreuzfahrerzeit: Safad in Obergalilee," *ZDPV*, XCV (1963), 47-87.
- D21. Fleburi, Ellen J., *Les Guides bleus: Israël* (Paris, 1963).
- D22. Fleburi, Hans, "Geschichte der Kartographie von Palästina," *ZDPV*, LXII (1959), 169-189; LXIII (1960), 1-11.
- D23. Fleburi, Wolfgang, and Jürgen Schabert, eds., *Das Heilige Land im Mittelalter: Begegnungsräume zwischen Orient und Okzident* (Schriftenreihe des Zentralinstituts für Islamische Landeskunde und allgemeine Regionalforschung an der Universität Erlangen-Nürnberg, 22, Neustadt an der Aisch, 1982).
- D24. Gaudelrey-Dumaschyan, Marlene, *La Syrie à l'époque des Mamelouks d'après les sources arabes: description géographique, économique et administrative* (Bibl. AH, 3, Paris, 1923).
- D25. Gies, Wolfgang, "Stadt- und Herrscherbeschreibungen bei Wilhelm von Tyrus," *Deutsches Archiv*, XXXIV (1978), 381-409.
- D26. Goodwin, Jack C., *An Historical Topography of Cyprus*, 3rd ed. (Nicosia, 1973).
- D27. Guérin, Victor, *Description géographique, historique et archéologique de la Palestine, accompagnée de cartes détaillées*: I. *Judée* (3 vols., Paris, 1848); II, *Samarie* (2 vols., 1874); III, *Gallée* (2 vols., 1880).

- D32 Hartmann, Richard, "Die Herrschaft von al-Karak: ein Beitrag zur historischen Geographie des Orientslandes," *Der Islam*, II (1911), 129-142.
- D33 Hennig, Richard, *Reise-entwürfe einer Zusammenfassung und kritische Bewertung der wichtigsten vorhistorischen Beobachtungen an Hand der darüber vorliegenden Originalberichte*, 2nd ed. (4 vols., Leipzig, 1944-1956).
- D34 Herde, Peter, "Der Schlacht bei Tuglucosar: eine historisch-topographische Studie," *Zeitschrift für angewandte Landeskunde*, XXV (1962), 179-184.
- D35 Heydenreich, Ludwig H., "Ein Jerusalem-Plan aus der Zeit der Kreuzfahrer," in *Manuscripta postea et Hermann Schellerer zur Vollendung der 68. Lebensjahre am 15. Januar 1961*, ed. Peter Block and Joseph Herzer (Schriften des Pto. Arist. Mus. Aeg., Freunde der Schlesinger-Museum E.V., Düsseldorf, 1962), pp. 42-50.
- D36 Jacoby, David, "Crusader Acre in the Thirteenth Century: Urban Layout and Topography," *Isis* mathemat., 3-XX (1979), 1-45.
- D37 Jacoby, David, *Recherches sur le Mésopotamisme oriental de l'Éle au XVe siècle. Peuples, sociétés, économie* (Mém. Repr., CS, 195; London, 1979).
- D38 Jacoby, David, "Moscoward, Suburb of Crusader Acre: the First Stage of its Development," in *Occident* (1982), pp. 205-213.
- D39 Kimble, George H.T., *Geography in the Middle Ages* (London, 1918).
- D40 Kolb, Konrad, "Zur Lage von Hormuz als territorialgesellschaftlichen Problem der Kreuzfahrerzeit," *ZDMG*, LXXXIII (1917), 136-164.
- D41 Koser, Johannes, *Nagrasana: Untersuchungen zur Topographie und Siedlungsgeschichte der Insel Bahig während der Zeit der Kreuzfahrerherrschaft* (Denkschriften der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 112 = Veröffentlichungen der Kommission für die Tabula Imperii Byzantini, I, Vienna, 1972).
- D42 Kopp, Clemens, "Beiträge zur Geschichte Nagrasas," *Journal of the Palestine Oriental Society*, XIX (1919-1920), 82-119.
- D43 Krenzschmar, Konrad, *Die italienischen Portulane der Mittelmeer als Beitrag zur Geschichte der Kartographie und Nautik* (Veröffentlichungen des Instituts für Mittelkunde und der geographischen Institut an der Universität Berlin, II, Berlin, 1929).
- D44 Le Strange, Guy, *Palestine under the Moslems: a Description of Syria and the Holy Land from A.D. 638 to 1516. Translated from the Works of the Medieval Arab Geographers* (London, Boston, and New York, 1890; new ed. with introduction by Walid Khalidi (Beirut, 1963; repr. New York, 1973).
- D45 Makhsudy, Melas, and Cedric H. Johns, *Guide to Acre* (Government of Palestine, Department of Antiquities; 2nd rev. ed., Jerusalem, 1946).
- D46 Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Notice sur la construction d'une carte de l'île de Chypre," *REVUE*, XXIV (1863), 1-30.
- D47 Mayer, Hans E., "Die Kreuzfahrerherrschaft Arrafe," *ZDMG*, XCIII (1877), 198-212.
- D48 [Meinermann, Barnabé], *Le Mont Thabor: notices historiques et descriptives, par le P. Barnabé, d'Alonne* (Paris, 1900).
- D49 Meinermann, Barnabé, *Guide du Nöl ou Jourdan par le Sinat et Petre sur les traces d'Israël* (Paris, 1909).
- D50 Meinermann, Barnabé, *Guide de Terre Sainte* (3rd ed., Paris, 1935); 1st ed. II, *Le Nöl Guide to the Holy Land* (London, 1907).
- D51 Meyer, Justin, "Es-Sammaria, ein Kreuzfahrernetz in Wexgölle," *Jahrbuch des römisch-germanischen Zentralmuseums Mainz*, XI (1964), 198-202.

- D48 Wittmann, Siegfried, *Beiträge zur Siedlungs- und Territorialgeschichte der nördlichen Ostgermanen* (Abhandlungen des Deutschen Palästinaverbands; Wiesbaden, 1970).
- D49 Philippson, Alfred, *Das byzantinische Reich als geographische Erscheinung* (Leyden, 1919).
- D50 Philippson, Alfred, Herbert Lehmann, and Ernst Krentz, *Die griechischen Landschaften, eine Landeskunde* (4 vols. in 8 parts, Frankfurt, 1930-1959).
- D51 Pichler, Donald E., *An Historical Geography of the Ottoman Empire from Earliest Times to the End of the Sixteenth Century* (Leyden, 1972).
- D52 Frazer, Andrew, "Mappech Manuscripts and Akko" (Historical Maps of Acre), *East View*, II (1972), 175-194, plans XX-XXIII.
- D53 Frazer, Andrew, "The Jerusalem the Crusaders Captured, a Contribution to the Medieval Topography of the City," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1965), pp. 1-16.
- D54 Frey, Hermann, *Die geographischen Verhältnisse Syriens und Palästinas nach Wilhelm von Tyrus, Geschichte der Kreuzzuge* (Das Land der Bibel, Gemeinverständliche Hefen zur Palästinakunde, 4, Hefen 3-6, and 3, Heft 1; Leipzig, 1927).
- D55 Ramsay, William M., *The Historical Geography of Asia Minor* (Royal Geographical Society, Supplementary Papers, 4; London, 1890).
- D56 Ray, Emmanuel G., "Étude sur la topographie de la ville d'Acre au XIII^e siècle," *MS Arisig. F. XXXIX* (= 4-IX, 1878), 115-145; "Supplément à l'étude sur la topographie de la ville d'Acre au XIII^e siècle," *MS Arisig. F. XLIX* (= 3-IX, 1885), 1-11.
- D57 Ray, Emmanuel G., "Note sur les territoires possédés par les Français à l'est de la mer de Tibériade, de la Mer Morte et du Jourdain," *MS Arisig. F. 5-1* (1880), 24-34.
- D58 Richard, Jean, "Questions de topographie tripolitaine," *JA*, CCXXXVI (1948), 33-39.
- D59 Röhrich, Reinhold, "Studien zur mittelalterlichen Geographie und Topographie Syriens," *ZDPV*, X (1887), 195-243; Nachträge XI (1888), 139-142; XII (1889), 33-35, XVIII (1892), 82-87; XIX (1894), 41-43.
- D60 Röhrich, Reinhold, "Karten und Pläne zur Palästinakunde aus dem 7. bis 16. Jahrhundert," *ZDPV*, XIV (1891), 8-11, 87-92, 127-141, XV (1892), 34-39, 185-188, XVIII (1893), 173-182.
- D61 Sauvaget, Jean, *Akko* (Paris, 1941).
- D62 Sauvaget, Jean, "Le Plan antique de Dairat," *Syria*, XXVI (1948), 314-358.
- D63 Savignac, Raphaël, "Orfaiah," *Revue biblique internationale*, XII (1903), 114-120.
- D64 Schmidt, Otto H., "Ortsnamen Palästinas in der Kreuzfahrerzeit. Ortsnamengut an dem Aufsatzen von Franz, Beyer und Koch in der ZDPV 4-83," *ZDPV*, LXXXVI (1970), 117-164.
- D65 Schur, Nathan, *Arabs and Pilgrims' and Travelers' Accounts* (Jerusalem, 1963).
- D66 Spuler, Bertold, and Ludwig Foyen, *Der Vorder Orient in islamischer Zeit* (Wissenschaftliche Forschungsbereiche Gemeinwesenwissenschaftliche Reihe, 22, Bonn, 1954).
- D67 Tetschke, Wilhelm, "Zur historischen Topographie Kanaans im Mittelalter," *SB Wien*, CCXIV-8 (1891), 1-106.

- D68. Van Milligen, Alexander, *Byzantine Constantinople, the Walls of the City and Adjacent Historical Sites* (London, 1899).
- D69. Vincent, Louis H., and Félix M. Abel, *Musulmans, recherches de topographie, d'archéologie et d'épigraphie* (2 vols. in 4, Paris 1912-1926).
- D70. Wright, John K., *The Geographical Love of the Time of the Crusades, a Study in the History of Medieval Science and Tradition in Western Europe* (American Geographical Society, Research Series Publications, 15, New York, 1925).
- D71. Yule, Henry, *Central Asia and the High Thibet; being a Collection of Medieval Notices of China* (Works issued by the Hakluyt Society, 3rd ser., 38, 39, 37, 41, new ed., 4 vols., London, 1913-1916; rev. ed. by Henry Cordier, 4 vols., London, 1925-1930).
- D72. — *Les Guides bleus: Égypte: le Nil égyptien et soudanais de Delta à Khartoum* (Paris, 1956).
- D73. — *Les Guides bleus: Moyen-Orient: Liban, Syrie, Jordanie, Iraq, Iran* (Paris, 1965).
- D74. — [State of Israel.] Prime Minister's Office, Department for Landscaping and the Preservation of Historic Sites, *After the Old City: Survey and Planning* (Exner Report, Jerusalem, 1962).

NUMISMATICS AND SIGILLOGRAPHY

- E1. Allen, Derek, "Coins of Antioch, etc., from al-Masa," *Numismatic Chronicle*, 1-XVII (1937), 300-310.
- E2. Balog, Paul, and Jacques Tourn, "Monnaies à légendes arabes de l'Orient latin," *Revue numismatique*, 6-1 (1951), 133-146.
- E3. Balog, Paul, "History of the Dehshir in Egypt from the Fikoud Conquest until the Collapse of the Mamlik Empire, 351-622 n./964-1517 A.D.," *Revue numismatique*, 6-11 (1961), 109-146.
- E4. Balza, Michael L., and David M. Metcalf, "Crusader Coinage with Arabic Inscriptions," *H of C*, VI (1957), 421-481.
- E5. Baloutkian, Paul Z., *Coinage of Cilician Armenia* (Numismatic Notes and Monographs, 147, New York, 1962).
- E6. Baloutkian, Paul Z., "Coins of the Barisid Period of Cilician Armenia (1080-1196)," *American Numismatic Society Museum Notes*, XCI (1964), 129-145.
- E7. Bellinger, Alfred R., and Philip Grierson, eds., *Catalogue of the Byzantine Coins in the Dumbarton Oaks Collection and in the Whitman Collection* (Dumbarton Oaks Catalogues; 3 vols. in 5, Washington, 1966-1971).
- E8. Brody, I. D., "A First Attribution of Later Omani Coinage to Twelfth Century Jerusalem," *American Numismatic Society Museum Notes*, XXIII (1971), 133-147.
- E9. Canavova, Paul, "Monnaies des Daïchéménides," *Revue numismatique*, 3-XII (1954), 397-421, 423-440; 3-XIII (1955), 389-402; 3-XIV (1956), 218-230, 306-315.
- E10. Chandon de Brialles, Raoul, "Le Droit de 'vassal' dans le royaume de Jérusalem," *Syrie*, XXIII (1942-1943), 244-257.
- E11. Cox, Dorothy H., *The Duple Hoard of French Seigniorial and Crusaders' Coins* (New York, 1937).

- E12. Duglery, J., and David M. Metcalf, "Le Trésor de Samsat et la circulation monétaire en l'Orient latin aux XII^e et XIII^e siècles," *Revue belge de numismatique*, CVIII (1962), 173-207.
- E13. Edsall, Peter W., and David M. Metcalf, eds., *Coins in the Latin East: the Fourth Oxford Symposium on Coins and Monetary History* (British Archaeological Reports, International Series, 77; Oxford, 1980).
- E14. Elmeskovitz, Andrew S., "The Standard of Fineness of Gold Coins Circulating in Egypt at the Time of the Crusades," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, LXXIV (1954), 163-166.
- E15. Goussard, Hugh G., *A Handbook of the Coinage of the Byzantine Empire* (3 vols., London, 1922-1933).
- E16. Grierson, Philip, "A German Crusader's Hoard of 1147 from Sele (Turkey)," in *Lagezeit: Festschrift für Peter Berghaus zum 60. Geburtstag* (Münster, 1981), pp. 195-203.
- E17. Hazard, Harry W., *The Numismatic History of Late Medieval North Africa* (Numismatic Studies, 8; New York, 1952).
- E18. Hazard, Harry W., "Late Medieval North Africa: Additions and Supplementary Notes," *American Numismatic Society Museum Notes*, XII (1966), 185-221.
- E19. Jacoby, David, "Some Unpublished Sails from the Latin East," *Israel Numismatic Journal*, V (1981), 83-86.
- E20. Kari, İsmail Özer, Joseph, *Précis de numismatique géorgienne* (Publication de la Faculté des lettres de l'Université de Strasbourg, 81; Paris, 1978).
- E21. Lillios, Alister, "A Parcel Apparently from an Early Hoard of 'Hohen' Coins of Bohemond III of Antioch," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXXI (1981), 163-164.
- E22. Mar Larcie, Léon de, "Notice sur les monnaies des rois de Chypre de la maison de Lusignan," *Revue de la Monnaie*, V (1843-1849), 118-143, 413-431.
- E23. Mayer, Hans E., *Die Sargfunden in den Kreuzfahrernissen* (Bayrische Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philosophisch-Historische Klasse: Abhandlungen n.F., 83, Munich, 1978).
- E24. Metcalf, David M., "The Currency of Demetrius Rhodius in Frankish Greece," *ABS Athens*, LV (1960), 38-39.
- E25. Metcalf, David M., "Coins of Lacedaemon and Antioch. Some New Stray Finds from the Time of the Crusades," *Hamburger Beiträge zur Numismatik*, XXII-XXIII (1968-1969), 443-470.
- E26. Metcalf, David M., "Biblical Coinage of the Crusading Principality of Antioch," *Numismatic Chronicle*, 7-IX (1969), 347-363.
- E27. Metcalf, David M., "The Magarick Hoard of 'Hohen' Coins of Bohemond III of Antioch," *American Numismatic Society Museum Notes*, XVI (1970), 95-109.
- E28. Metcalf, David M., "Some Hoards and Stray Finds from the Latin East," *American Numismatic Society Museum Notes*, XX (1975), 139-152.
- E29. Metcalf, David M., "Coinage of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem in the Name of Basileus," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXXXYIII (1978), 71-84.
- E30. Metcalf, David M., "Crusader Coinage Associated with the Latin Patriarchates of Jerusalem and Antioch," *Numismatic Chronicle*, LXXXVIII (1979), 445-446.
- E31. Metcalf, David M., "The Gros grand and the Gros petit of Henry II of Cyprus," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXLII (1982), 83-100.

- E32 Matoull, David M., *Coinage of the Crusades and the Latin East in the Ashmolean Museum, Oxford* (Oxford, 1963).
- E33 Morgan, Jacques de, *Manuel de numismatique orientale de l'antiquité et du moyen âge*, ed. Karsten J. Burmeister, vol. 1 (Paris, 1923-1936).
- E34 Pesant, Roberto, "The A.N.S. Hoard of Antioch Denarii," *American Numismatic Society Museum Notes*, XVIII (1972), 71-82.
- E35 Porionat, John, "Crusader Coinage with Greek and Latin Inscriptions," *N o/G VI* (1969), 354-420.
- E36 Radozka, Otto F., *Die Münzen der Kreuzfahrer von Tripolis* (Munich, 1910; republ. Brunswick, 1974, with introduction by W. Hahn).
- E37 Sabino, C. J., "The Barre Denar Coinage and the Regency of Raymond III of Tripoli (1184-85)," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXXVIII (1978), 82-92; CXXI (1981), 156-158.
- E38 Sabino, C. J., "The Silver and Copper Coinage of the Crusader County of Tripoli, c. 1102-1168," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXL (1980), 71-112.
- E39 Sabino, C. J., "The Sequences of the 'Bare Head' Type of Bohemund III of Antioch," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXLJ (1981), 159-163.
- E40 Schumberger, Gustave, *Numismatique de l'Orient latin* (Paris, 1878; rev. ed., 1954); *Supplément* (Paris, 1952).
- E41 Schumberger, Gustave, *Syllabaire de l'empire byzantin* (Paris, 1884).
- E42 Schumberger, Gustave, Ferdinand Chalandre, and Adrien Blanchet, *Syllabaire de l'Orient latin* (Bibl. AH, 37, Paris, 1943).
- E43 Sparr, Arnold, "Archibishop Baldwin II of Caesarea," *Numismatic Chronicle*, CXL (1980), 119-124.
- E44 Yvon, Jacques, "Monnaies et sceaux de l'Orient latin," *Annuaire numismatique*, 6-VIII (1966), 89-107.

EPIGRAPHY

- F1 Berchem, Max van, "Épigraphie des Arabes de Syrie," *JA*, 3-IX (1897), 453-503.
- F2 Chamberlayne, Theodore J., *Lectures sur les inscriptions arabes d'Égypte, avec le plan de la ville de Fostat, et une description topographique et archéologique de la ville de Minia*, vol. 1 (Paris, 1894).
- F3 Clermont-Ganneau, Charles, "La Pierre de Bethpaz: fragments et inscriptions des croisés récemment découvertes auprès de Jérusalem (d'après une communication de l'École Libanaise de Haïma et du capitaine G. Guiffroy)," *Revue archéologique*, n.s., XXXIV (1877), 346-388.
- F4 Colla, Gabriel, *Corpus des inscriptions arabes et turques de l'Algérie*, 1. *Département d'Alger* (Bibliothèque d'archéologie africaine, 4, Paris, 1900).
- F5 Combe, Étienne, Jean Sauvaget, and Gustave Wiet, *Répertoire chronologique d'épigraphie arabe* (Publications de l'Institut français d'archéologie orientale du Caire; 16 vols. and index, Cairo, 1931-1972).
- F6 Hamilton, Robert W., "Notes on a Mosaic Inscription in the Church of the Nativity," *QDM Pal.*, VI (1936-1937), 216-218.
- F7 Houdon, Octave V., and René Basset, "Épigraphie coennette," *Bulletin de correspondance africaine* (École supérieure des lettres d'Alger), 1 (1882-1883), 161-200.

- F5. Jalabert, Louis, René Mouton, Claude Monodier, and Jean Paul Bey-Cogezis, *Inscriptions grecques et latines de la Syrie* (Bibl. A.H., 12, 32, 46, 52-61, 66, 70, 89; 8 vols., Paris, 1928-1970).
- F9. Méryet, Gustave, *Corpus des inscriptions arabes et turques de l'Algérie* 2. Département de Constantine (Bibliothèque d'archéologie africaine, 5; Paris, 1902).
- F10. Sadoff, Salomon de, *Corpus inscriptionum crucisignatarum Terrae Sanctae (1099-1291)* (Sudham EF, 21; Jerusalem, 1974).
- F11. Thomsen, Peter, "Die hebräischen und griechischen Inschriften der Stadt Jerusalem und ihrer nächsten Umgebung," *ZDPV*, XLIII (1920), 134-152, XLIV (1922), 1-61, supplement, LXIV (1941), 205-224.
- F12. Waddington, William, *Inscriptions grecques et latines de la Syrie* (Paris, 1870).

Bibliography — Sources

COLLECTIONS (OF SOURCES)

- Q1 Asnari, Michele, ed., *Biblioteca arabo-islamica. Questa raccolta di testi arabi che toccano la geografia, la storia, la biografia e la bibliografia della Sicilia* (Leipzig, 1857); *Appendix* (Leipzig, 1875).
- Q2 Bartolomeo, Vincenzo de, ed., *Poésie provençales storiche relative all' Italia* (Ponti 51, 75, 72; 3 vols., Rome, 1931).
- Q3 Borgia, Jacques, ed., *Carte Des per Frances, sur diverselles expéditions, et regis Francorum Hierosolimitani hactenus a variis, sed illis non scriptoribus, historiis commemoratis* (2 parts in 1 vol., Nizza, 1611).
- Q4 Bouquet, Martin, et al., eds., *Recueil des Historiens des Gaules et de la France* (24 vols., Paris, 1738-1904).
- Q5 Bouterick, Edgar, ed., "Notizen et extraits des documents inédits relatifs à l'histoire de France sous Philippe le Bel," *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque nationale*, XX-2 (1862), 21-217.
- Q6 Chabon, Jean B., et al., eds., *Corpus scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium* (Paris, Leipzig, Rome, Louvain, and Beirut, 1903-).
- Q7 Chron, Azur, ed., *Historia de expeditione Frederici imperatoris et quidam alii rerum proutum fonsit abbas expeditiois: Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzugs Kaiser Friedrich I.* (MOH, SS, nr. Germ., n.s., 5, Berlin, 1928).
- Q8 Colburn, Claude D., ed. and tr., *Itinerary Cyprus: Materials for a History of Cyprus*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge, Eng., 1908).
- Q9 Delavert, Edmond F., ed., *Bibliothèque historique arménienne: choix des principaux historiens arméniens* (3 vols., Paris, 1838-1839).
- Q10 Eidelberg, Schöner, tr., *The Jews and the Crusades: the Hebrew Chronicles of the First and Second Crusades* (Madison, 1977).
- Q11 Gildemeister, Johannes, ed., "Beiträge zur Palästinakunde aus arabischen Quellen," ZDPG, IV (1881), 85-92; VI (1883), 1-12, VII (1884), 143-172, 215-232; VIII (1885), 117-143; cf. also his "Des Wöl al-gasbi al-rabbi al-Razi von Damaskus nach Jerusalem," *Zeitschrift der deutschen morgen ländischen Gesellschaft*, XXXVI (1882), 345-400.
- Q12 Golebovich, Glebano, ed., *Biblioteca de-bibliografica della Terra Santa e dell' Oriente francescano* (3 vols., Quaracchi, near Florence, 1904-1926); *Novae serie*, ed. Golebovich (34 vols., Quaracchi, 1921-1939); *Serie 3*, ed. Golebovich and Ovidio Zambelli (2 vols., Quaracchi, 1928-1940); *Serie 4*, ed. Marcellino Roncaglioli (2 vols., Cairo, 1954).
- Q13 Halphen, Louis, and René Poupardin, eds., *Chroniques des rois de Major* (Collection de textes pour servir à l'étude et à l'enseignement d'histoire, 48; Paris, 1913).
- Q14 Holmberg, August, ed., *Neue Quellen zur Geschichte des kaiserlichen Kaiser tums und der Kirchenwesen* (Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philosophisch-historische und historische Klasse, Jahrgang 1923, 5. Abhandlung; Jahrgang 1923, 2. und 3. Abhandlung; Munich, 1923, incomplete, but published together as one volume).
- Q15 Holmann, Georg, Joseph Gill, et al., eds., *Concilium Florentinum. Documenta et scriptores* (10 vols., Rome, 1940-1971).

- Q16. Hoff, Carl (here, Charles), ed., *Classiques gallo-romanes inédits ou peu connus* (Paris, 1871, repr. 1966).
- Q17. Houtmann, Marijn T., ed., *Recueil de notes relatives à l'histoire des Seldjucides* (4 vols., Leyden, 1886-1902).
- Q18. Hualé Miranda, Américo, ed., *Los Crónistas latinos de la Reconquista* (2 vols., Valencia, 1913).
- Q19. Hualé Miranda, Américo, ed. and tr., *Crónicas de crónicas árabs de la reconquista* (Instituto General Franco de estudios e investigación hispano-árabs, 4 vols., Teruel, 1951-1955).
- Q20. Kármán, Miklós, and František Štich, eds., *Čižbomský rukopis: Světí teteply datě e rukopisě Čižbomského* (Črvi dle moudrě, iv 24, Prague, 1959).
- Q21. Khlerov, [Sol] de, ed. and tr., *Annuaire russe en Orient* (SOL, SG, 5, Geneva, 1839).
- Q22. Kozloff, Maxm, ed., *Contemporaries of Marie Perle* (New York, 1928).
- Q23. Kóssyha, Rudolf, ed., *Quellen zur Geschichte der ostelischen Kolonisation im 12. bis 14. Jahrhundert* (Qnd vl., Leipzig, 1951).
- Q24. Langlois, Victor, ed., *Collection des historiens anciens et modernes de l'Arménie* (2 vols., Paris, 1868-1869).
- Q25. Laurin, Johann (here, Johannes) C.M., ed., *Periphrastici russi aevi quatuor: Burchardus de Monte Sion, Ricoldus de Monte Crucis, Odoricus de Fave Juli, Willbrandus de Oldemborg* . . . (Qnd vl., Leipzig, 1873), with appendix, *Mag. Thiermar periphrastis*.
- Q26. Masai, Giovanni D., ed., *Sacrorum Conciliorum nova et amplissima collectio* (31 vols., Florence and Venice, 1759-1798); rev. ed. by Jean P. Muriel and Louis Petit (33 vols., Paris, Artois, and Leipzig, 1901-1927; repr. Paris, 1960-1962).
- Q27. Melville, J. R., *The Siege of Constantinople by the Turks Seven Contemporary Accounts* (Amsterdam, 1877).
- Q28. Michéant, Henry V., and Omer Reynaud, eds., *Introduit e Strasbourg et descriptions de la Terre Sainte rédigés en français aux XII, XIII et XIVe siècles* (SOL, SG, 2, Geneva, 1882).
- Q29. Migne, Jacques P., ed., *Patrologiae cursus completus: Series latina* (221 vols. and 4 vols. of registers, Paris, 1841-1844); *Series graeco-latina* (187 vols., Paris, 1857-1876).
- Q30. Molitor, August, and Tilm Toller, eds., *Monna Hieronymus et descriptiones Terrae Sanctae: Textus sacris antiquis et latina lingua ceteris* (SOL, SG, 1-2; Geneva, 1879).
- Q31. Müller, Ulrich, ed., *Armenienpolitik* (Deutsche Texte, 9; Tübingen, 1969).
- Q32. Muratori, Lodovico A., ed., *Rerum italicarum scriptores* (23 vols., Milan, 1723-1748); rev. ed. by Gioacchino Caracci et al. (Circa di Castello and Bologna, 1900-).
- Q33. Neuhaus, Adolf, and Moritz Stern, eds., *Hebraische Berichte über die Judenverfolgungen während der Kreuzzüge*, iv. Seckel Stern *Quellen zur Geschichte der Juden in Deutschland*, 2; Berlin, 1892).
- Q34. Niebuhr, Barthold Cl., Immanuel Bekker, et al., eds., *Corpus scriptorum historiae Byzantinae* (50 vols., Bonn, 1828-1877).
- Q35. Poyedopolov-Kravchenko, Arkhangel, ed., *Florus Historiae Imperii Byzantini* (vol. 1 [all published], St. Petersburg, 1857).
- Q36. Portz, Georg H., et al., *Monumenta Germaniae Historica: Indle ab anno Christi*

- quingentesimo anno ad annum millesimum et quingentesimum auspicio societatis apertendis finibus sive Germaniarum motis ac (Hassler, Wiesbaden, Stuttgart, Cologne, Berlin, Zurich, and Dürben, 1826-)
- Q37. Peters, Edward, ed., *Christian Society and the Crusades, 1095-1229: Sources in Translation* . . . (Philadelphia, n.d.).
- Q38. Pimenta, Alfredo, ed., *Fontes medievales de história de Portugal*: vol. 1, *Anais e crônicas* (Lisbon, 1944).
- Q39. Riant, Paul E.D., ed., *Scriptae sacre Constantinopolitane: Patriarche de Constantinorum metropolitae ad Byzantinae linguam in Occidentem saeculo XIII translatas apertissimum et luculentum quodam belli sacri imperique politico-graeci illustratum* (2 vols., Geneva, 1873-1876); supplement: *Le Crois des premiers croisades, de sainte lavet et de sainte couronne*, ed. Terras de Maly (Paris, 1904).
- Q40. Röhricht, Reinhold, ed., *Quint bell sacri scripturae sacre* (ROL, SM, 11-12; Geneva, 1879).
- Q41. Röhricht, Reinhold, ed., *Testimonia sacra de quatuor belli sacri* (ROL, SM, 1, Geneva, 1882).
- Q42. Sundell, Salmo de, ed., *Itinera Hierosolymitana crucisignatorum (saec. XII-XIII)* (Scandin BF, Coffin's main, 24, 4 vols., Jerusalem, 1974-1984).
- Q43. Silva Tarruza, Carlos de, ed., *Crônicas das artes primeiras reis de Portugal* (Romen narratives de história portuguesa, 2; Lisbon, 1952).
- Q44. Thérèse, Agaptha, ed., *Haec monumenta Historiae Hungarum sacra illustrant* (2 vols., Rome, 1879-1880).
- Q45. Thérèse, Agaptha, ed., *Haec monumenta Slavorum meridionalium Historiam illustrant* (2 vols., Rome and Zagreb, 1863-1875).
- Q46. Tiesler, Ties, ed., *Discriptiones Terrarum Sanctarum saeculo VIII, IX, XII, et XV* (Leipzig, 1874).
- Q47. Toppin, Max, ed., *Scripturae sacrae praeclarissimae, die Geschichtsquellen der jenerischen Völker in dem Übergang der Ordensherrschaft* (3 vols., Leipzig, 1861-1874).
- Q48. Wülfen, Jofas, ed., *Jerusalem Pilgrims before the Crusades* (Warminster, 1971).
- Q49. Wyngaert, Antonius (Bart, Anthonis) van den, ed., *Sinicae franciscanae*, vol. 1 *Itinera et relationes Fratrum Minorum saeculi XIII et XIV* (Quatuorci, 1835).
- Q50. — *Acta sanctorum quatuorci saeculi ante calendas*, by the Societate des BeDandilins (70 vols., Autwerp and Brunsch, 1843-1940).
- Q51. — *Archives de l'Ordre latin* (Societ de l'Ordre latin, 2 vols., Paris, 1882-1884, repr. New York, 1972).
- Q52. — *Documenta reliqua à l'histoire des croisades*, ed. by the Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres (23 vols., Paris, 1946-1964).
- Q53. — *Fondi per la storia d'Italia*, ed. by the Istituto storico italiano (from 1834 on with the addition: per il medioevo), (301 vols., Rome, 1887-1972).
- Q54. — *Palestine Pilgrims' Host Society* (23 vols. and index, London, 1826-1907; repr. New York, 1971).
- Q55. — *Portugallia medievales Historiae: Scripturae* (vol. 1 [all published], Lisbon, 1816-1861).
- Q56. — *Recueil des historiens des croisades*, ed. by the Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres: *Histoire occidentale* (5 vols., Paris, 1844-1895); *Histoire*

roms armenians (3 vols., Paris, 1872-1906); *Histoires grecs* (2 vols., Paris, 1875-1881); *Documente armenians* (2 vols., Paris, 1869-1906); *Leur Les Armes de Arménien* (3 vols., Paris, 1848-1843)

- G57. — *Rolls Series: Rerum Britannicarum media aevi scriptorum, or Chronicles and Memorials of Great Britain and Ireland during the Middle Ages*, published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls (23 vols., London, 1851-1896).

NARRATIVE SOURCES — WESTERN LANGUAGES

- H1. Achard d'Arras, "Poëme sur le temple de Salomon: fragment inédit," ed. Albert C. Clark, *RO Latio*, XII (1909-1911), 263-274.
- H2. Adam, William (Sainty "Baccardus"), "Directorium ad passagium faciendum," *RHC, Arm.*, II (Paris, 1906), 365-372.
- H3. Albert of Aachen, "Historia Hierosolymitana," *RHC, Ger.*, IV (Paris, 1879), 365-713. See also C35, C34.
- H4. Alfonso VII, king of Castile and Leon, "Continuación de los documentos jurídicos de la Monarquía de España: Crónicas latinas del Emperador Don Alfonso VII," ed. Henrique Flores, *España sagrada: Theatro geographico-histórico de la iglesia de España*, vol. XXI (Madrid, 1766) pp. 307-409.
- H5. Alfonso X, king of Castile and Leon, *Primera crónica general anterior de España que mandó componer Alfonso el Sabio y se continuó bajo Sancho IV en 1285*, ed. Ramón Menéndez Pidal, with Aurelio Q. Solalinde, Manuel Muñoz Coria, and José Gómez Poma (2 vols., Madrid, 1933).
- H6. Alfonso de Palencia, *Crónica de Enrique IV escrita en latín*, tr. Antonio Paz y Melia (Colección de escritores castellanos, 126, 127, 130, 134; 4 vols., Madrid, 1904-1909).
- H7. Arnold, Peter von, and Dietrich Schanz, *Chronique d'Arnold et de Strassbourg*, ed. René de Mar Latrie (CD inédit, 1^{er} ser., Histoire politique; 2 vols., Paris, 1891-1893).
- H8. Aubricus, *L'Exercice de la guerre sainte: Histoire au vers de la troisième croisade, 1189-1192*, ed. Gérard Pica (CD inédit; Paris, 1897); or Edward N. Stead as "History of the Holy War," in *Three Old French Chronicles of the Crusades* (University of Washington Publications in the Social Sciences, 10; Seattle, 1919); or Morton J. Halpert as *The Crusade of Richard Lion-Heart by Aubricus*, with notes and documentation by John L. LaMotte (Col. UNC, 34; New York, 1941).
- H9. Augiollain, Gervais M. ("Donato de Loria"), *Historia turcorum (1300-1344)*, ed. Ivo Ureu (Bucharot, 1930).
- H10. Arnold of Lubek, *Chronica Slavorum a 1172-1229*, ed. Johann M. Lappenberg (MGH, SS. m. Germ., 14; Hannover, 1848).
- H11. Aubrey of Troy Fontaines, *Chronica*, ed. Paul Scheller-Michaux (MGH, SS., 23; Hannover, 1874; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 631-650.
- H12. Agnus ("Haymurat Moussou"), patriarch of Jerusalem, *De expugnatione Acconis (Ser atropiche)*, ed. Paul E.D. Riist (Lyon, 1866).
- H13. Baldric of Bourguell, bishop of Dol, "Historia Ierosolimitana," *RHC, Ger.*, IV (Paris, 1879), 1-111.
- H14. Bartolf of Nangis, "Gesta Francorum Hierusalem expugnantium," *RHC, Ger.*, III (Paris, 1866), 467-543.

- H13 Barot, Paul ("Baronnet of Dehomed"), *Chronique Krenke Bernabé e Dos Acetis*, ed. Jacinto Goll (Poesias cretas bismecanas, 3; Prague, 1907), pp. 585-624.
- H14 Benjamin of Tudela, *The Itinerary*, ed. and tr. Marcus N. Adler (2 vols., London, 1907).
- H15 Bernáldez, Andrés, *Memorias del reinado de los Reyes Católicos que escribió el bachiller Andrés Bernáldez*, ed. Manuel Gómez-Moreno and Juan de Mata Carrasco (Biblioteca Reyes Católicos: Crónicas; Madrid, 1942).
- H16 Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux, "Opera omnia," ed. Jacques P. Migne, *PL*, vols. 183-185 (Paris, 1854-1855). New ed.: *Opera*, ed. Jean Leclercq, Charles H. Talbot, and Henrietta M. Rochais, 8 vols. so far, but including the particularly important letters (Rome, 1957-1975).
- Bernard le Trésorier, see Ennos.
- H19 Berzadeau de la Broquière, *Voyage d'Orient*, ed. Charles Schefer (Paris, 1892).
- H20 Boutsiers, Dominique, *Histoire de Pierre d'Achaïe, grand-maître de Rhodes* (Paris, 1676; 4th ed. with additions by M. de Sully, Paris, 1806) or as *The Life of the Renowned Prior of Achaïe, Grand Master of Rhodes, Conquering Three Very Remarkable Sieges of Rhodes by Mohamed the Great, and Solyman the Magnificent* (London, 1676).
- H21 Burchard of Mount Zion, "Descriptio Terrae Sanctae," ed. Johann C.M. Laurent, in *Peregrinationes sancti aceti quatuor* (Ost. ed., Leipzig, 1871), pp. 1-106; tr. Aubrey Serran as *A Description of the Holy Land (A.D. 1200)* (PPTS, X14-1, London, 1894; repr. New York, 1971).
- H22 Bustros, Floris, *Chronique de l'île de Chypre*, ed. René de Més Lurie (CD inédite, Mélanges historiques, 3; Paris, 1886).
- H23 Caffaro di Caorlielione, *Annali generali di Caffaro e de' suoi continuatori, del MCCXII al MCCXCII*, ed. Luigi T. Beltrami and Cesare Imperiale di Sant' Angelo (Ponsi SS. 11-146; 3 vols., Genoa, 1890-1891).
- H24 Caffaro di Caorlielione, *Brevi regni Jerusalemensis historia*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS., 13; Hannover, 1842; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1945), pp. 49-56.
- H25 Comens of Prague, *Chronica Boemorum: die Chronik der Böhmen des Comens von Prag*, ed. Bertold Bestula (MGH, SS. nr. Germ., n.s., 3; 2nd [uncharged] ed., Berlin, 1935).
- H26 Dandolo, Andrea, *Chronica per extensum descripta an. 41-1258 d.C.*, ed. Ettore Pastorello (R. Ital. SS., n.s., 12, part 1, Bologna, 1940).
- H27 Daniel, Panteleymon . . . , tr. [Sofia] de Khitrovo as "Vie et pèlerinage de Daniel, légendaire russe, 1186-1197," in *Slavoslavica russa in Orient* (SOL, 96, 3; Geneva, 1889); tr. Charles W. Wilson as *The Pilgrimage of the Russian Abbot Daniel in the Holy Land, circa 1186-1187 A.D.* (PPTS, IV-5, London, 1895; repr. New York, 1971).
- H28 Daniel, Bernardo, *Crónica*, ed. M. Cañi i Alcega (Els nostres clàssics col·leccionats, 62-64, 66, 68-70; 3 vols., Barcelona, 1949-1951); tr. Frank L. Critchlow as *Chronicle of the Reign of King Pedro III of Aragon* by *Bernat Desclot* (2 vols., Princeton, 1928-1934).
- H29 Dubus, Pierre, *De recuperatione Terre Sancte: traité de politique générale*, ed. Charles Y. Langlein (Collection de textes pour servir à l'étude et à l'enseignement de l'histoire, 9; Paris, 1891); also ed. Angelo Dondi (Dati medievali di interesse danese, 1; Florence, 1977).

- H30. Duran, Guillaume (here, Gislebertus Durantis), "Eps. lat. no. lat. 1470: *Incipit missae brevis super his que videntur se non fore providenda quantum ad passageum divina severitate gratia faciendum*," ed. Paul Violet, in *Historiae litterariae de la France*, XXXV (Paris, 1925), pp. 129-134.
- H31. Eikehard of Aura, "Hierosolymita," *RHC, Ger.*, V (Paris, 1895), 1-40; also ed. Heinrich Hagenmayer (Tübingen, 1877).
- H32. Egidius bar Jacob, "Berichte des Egidius bar Jacob," in *Heidelbische Berichte über die Judenverfolgungen während der Kreuzzüge*, ed. Adolf Neubauer and Moritz Stern (*Quellen zur Geschichte der Juden in Deutschland*, 2, Berlin, 1892).
- H33. Ernoul, *Chronique d'Ernoul et de Bernard le Trésorier*, ed. Louis de Mas Latrie (*Société de l'Histoire de France*; Paris, 1871; repr., Brussels, 1974). See also C36.
- H34. Falconius, Hugo, *La Historia o Labor de reyno Sicilie e la epistola ad Petrum Paternitatem ecclesie Neapolitanam de Ugo Falconio*, ed. Giovanni B. Siragusa (Pons: 51, 22; Rome, 1879).
- H35. Filicrus of Padua, "Liber recuperacionis Terrae Sanctae," *ITSCM* 1-II, part I (Pons) general per le norme de' secoli XII e XIV; Quaracchi, 1933, pp. 1-40.
- H36. Fretellus, Roger, *Rogers Fretellus de Niquereh et sa description de la Terre Sainte*, ed. Petrus C. Boers (*Koninklijke Nederlandse Akademie van Wetenschappen, Afdeling Letterkunde, Verhandelingen*, n.s., 105, Amsterdam, 1940; tr. James R. MacPherson as "Fretellus" *circa 1139 A.D.* (PPTS, V-1, London, 1956; repr. New York, 1971).
- H37. Fulcher al Charnay, *Historia Hierosolymitana (1095-1127)*, ed. Heinrich Hagenmayer (Heidelberg, 1913); tr. Francis R. Ryan, ed. Harold S. Fisk as *A History of the Expedition to Jerusalem 1095-1127* (Knoxville, 1969).
- H38. Geoffrey of Villehardouin, *La Conquête de Constantinople*, ed. and tr. Edmond Fauriol, 2nd ed. (*Les classiques de l'histoire de France au moyen-âge*, 14, 19: 1 vols., Paris, 1964). See also C25, C39.
- H39. Gerhoh (here, Gerhohus) of Reichenberg, *Gerhohi Reichenbergensis principis Opere hactenus inedita*, ed. Friedrich Schellhammer (Linz, 1875); ed. Ernst Sachse as *Gerhohi principis Reichenbergensis De immigratione Anselmi* (MGH, *Libelli de Libe imperatorum et pontificum saecula XI et XII conscripti*, 3; Hannover, 1897), pp. 364-395.
- H40. Gervase, abbot, "Gervasi, Praemonstratensis Abbatia, ad Isaacium (III) Epistolae," in *Recueil des Historiens des Croisés et de la France*, XIX (Paris, 1880), pp. 604-605, 618-620.
- H41. Guibert of Nogent, "Historia que dicitur Gesta Dei per Francos," *RHC, Ger.*, IV (Paris, 1879), 113-363.
- H42. Guibert of Paris, *De assumptione Constantinopolitana*, ed. Paul E.D. Hunt (Geneva, 1879). See also C42.
- H43. Henry of Livonia, *Historici Chronicon Livoniae, 1186-1222*, ed. Wilhelm Arndt (MGH, 52, 23, Hannover, 1874; repr. Stuttgart and New York, 1963), pp. 231-332; tr. James A. Brundage as *The Chronicle of Henry of Livonia* (Madison, 1961).
- H44. Henry of Valenciennes, *Histoire de l'empereur Henri de Constantinople*, ed. Jean Langdon (DRH Cr., 2; Paris, 1948).
- H45. Hernando del Pulgar, *Crónica de los reyes católicos, por su secretario Fernando (sic) del Pulgar*, ed. Juan de Mata Carrasco (*Collección de crónicas españolas*, 5-6; 2 vols., Madrid, 1943).

- H46. Humbert of Romans, *Opera episcoporum, in Appendice ad fasciculum octum ex petendorum et fugiendorum, prout ab G.G. ultius est Colatus, A.D. 1335* . . . *ab innumeris mendis repleti . . . una cum appendice — scriptorum veterum quorum pars magna ante primum a M.G.L. collectum in lucem prod- it, qui Ecclesiae Romanae servus et obsequii deservit et dominant, necessariosque Reformationis arguit: Opera et studio Edwardi Brown (2 vols., London, 1690).*
- H47. James I, king of Aragon, *Chronica e commentaria del rey en Jacint primer rey de Aragón*, ed. Mariano Aguado y Poma (Biblioteca Catalana, Barcelona, 1878); or John Poynter as *The Chronicle of James I, King of Aragon, Surnamed the Conqueror (Written by Himself), introd., annotated, etc. by Francis de Cogan (2 vols., London, 1843).*
- H48. James of Viter, "Historia Hierosolimitana (Historia consularis, liber tertius)," ed. Jacques Bongars in *Gesta Dei per Francos* (2 vols., pt. I, Haren, 1611), I, 1043-1145; excerpt in Aubrey Stewart as *The History of Jerusalem, A.D. 1180 (written for ca. 1220) (PPTS, XI-2; London, 1896; repr. New York, 1971)*. See also C16, C17.
- H49. James of Viter, *Lettres de Jacques de Viter (1160/1170-1240), Archevêque de Saint-Jean-d'Acre*, ed. Robert D.C. Hayyem (Leyden, 1960).
- H50. John of Ocre, *Joan de l'Isleverte, Histoire de Saint Louis*, ed. and fr. into mod- ern French by Naudin de Wailly (Société de l'Histoire de France, Publica- tions, Paris, 1888, repr. New York and London, 1965); ed. Noël L. Corbier as *La Vie de Saint Louis (Sherbrooke, Québec, 1977)*; or Joan Evans (Lon- don, 1938). See also C16.
- H51. John of Plan del Carpias (Joan, Johannes de Plano Carpia), *Historia Miro- politarum, Plagiar et Tartari nel 1243-47*, ed. Giorgio Palli (Milan, 1879), or Jean Bequet and Louis Hamelin as *Histoire des Mongols (Paris, 1963)*. See also C16.
- H52. John of Salisbury, *Historia pontificum quatuor septuaginta*, ed. Reginald Lane Poole (Oxford, 1877); ed. and tr. Marjorie Chibbald (London, 1936).
- H53. John of Ocre, *Johann von Würzburg, "Descriptio Terrae Sanctae,"* ed. Thilo Tobler, *Descriptio Terrae Sanctae ex saeculis VII, IX, XII, et XV* (Leip- zig, 1874), pp. 108-192; or Aubrey Stewart as *Description of the Holy Land (A.D. 1160-1170) (PPTS, V-2; London, 1896; repr. New York, 1971).*
- H54. John "the Deacon", *Chronicon Histum et Confessio usque ad a. 1068*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS., 7; Hannover, 1846, repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1967), pp. 1-47.
- H55. Laurence of Béziers, *Laurence de Bréziers Histoire Roussine: Vainqueur à Béziers* (Kronika Rousin), ed. Jacques Goll (Presses universitaires de France, 1, Paris, 1953), pp. 323-334.
- H56. Louis IX, king of France, "Epistola Sancti Ludovici regis de captivitate et li- beratione sua," ed. François Duchesne, in *Historiae Francorum scriptores a Philippo Augusto rege usque ad regem Philippum dicti patres imperatores*, vol. V (Paris, 1648), pp. 428-432.
- H57. Lucas of Tiry, "Chronica mundi ab origine mundi usque ad annum MCCCXXIV," ed. Andreas Schott, in *Haymann illustrata, seu rerum urbanarumque Hispaniae, Lusitaniae, Arturianae et Indiae scriptores varii*, vol. IV (Frankfurt, 1609), pp. 1-116.
- H58. Ludolf of Sudheim (Oder, von Sudheim), *De itinere Terrae Sanctae liber . . .*, ed. Ferdinand Deycke (Bibliothek des literarischen Vereins in Stuttgart, 25,

- Sungari, 1851), pp. 1-104, in: *Ashley Stewart as Description of the Holy Land . . . A.D. 1130* (PPTS, XII-3; London, 1895; repr. New York, 1971).
- H59 Laß, Raymond, *Opere omnia*, ed. Ivo Salicrú (8 vols., Mainz, 1721-1742).
- H60 Malaterra, Geoffrey, *De rebus gestis Rogerii Calabriae et Siciliae comitis et Roberti Guiscardi ducis fratris eius auctore Geoffredo Malaterra monacho Brundisino*, ed. Ernesto Perizoni (R. Ital. SS., n.s., 3, part 1, Bologna, 1928).
- H61 Martin de Cayrol, *Les Écrivains de l'histoire Chrétienne usagers de l'usage français gallois original of 1773*, ed. and tr. Alberto Lupatkin (Civiltà veneziana. Fonti e testi, 12 [= 3rd ser., 3]; Florence, 1972).
- H62 Monque, Raymond, *The Chronicle of Adamnan*, in: Anna Goolbsongh (Works issued by the Hakluyt Society, Series 2, 47, 80; 2 vols., London, 1920-1921).
- H63 Nicholas of Cabri, "Niccolò da Cabri e la sua Vita d'Imperatore IV con una breve introduzione sulla cronografia pontificia nel secolo XIII e XIV," ed. Francesco Pignatelli, *Archivio della R. Società romana di storia patria*, XXI (1898), 7-128.
- H64 Nizer, Radulfus, *De re militari et impiali vie peregrinationis Ierosolimitane (1187/1188)*, ed. Ludwig Schwegge (Beiträge zur Geschichte und Quellenkunde des Mittelalters, 4; Berlin, 1977).
- H65 Otto of Deuil, *De profectibus Ludovici VII in orientem*, ed. and tr. Virginia C. Berry (Col. URC, 42; New York, 1948), also ed. Henri Waquet as *Etudes de Deuil. La Croisade de Louis VII roi de France* (DRH Cr., 3; Paris, 1949).
- H66 Otfried of Paderborn, "Liber de Terra Sancta," ed. Johann C. M. Laumen, in: *Peripetitiones mundi anni quatuor* (2nd ed., Leipzig, 1873), pp. 143-158.
- H67 Otter, *Historia Damiani*, ed. Hermann Hoesung as *Die Schriften des Bistums Domeshofmeisters, späteren Bischofs von Paderborn und Kardinal-Bischofs von S. Severus, Otters* (Historisch des Bistumslichen Vereins in Stuttgart 302; Tübingen, 1894), pp. 159-282; or John J. Gargan, *The Capture of Damietta by Otter of Paderborn* (Philadelphia, 1943; repr. New York, 1962).
- H68 Ordoric Vitalis, *Historiae ecclesiasticae libri octidies*, ed. Auguste Le Prevost and Léopold Delisle (Société de l'histoire de France; 5 vols., Paris, 1831-1835); new ed. and tr. Marjorie Chabault, 4 vols. (Oxford, 1969-1980).
- H69 Osborn, "De impugnatione Lychnomati," ed. William Stubbs, *Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard I*, vol. 1 (Rolls Series, 88-1; London, 1864), pp. 1081-1084; ed. and tr. Charles W. David (Col. URC, 24, New York, 1936).
- H70 Otto of Freising, *Chronica sive, Historia de duabus civitatibus*, ed. Adolf Hofmeister (MGH, SS. nr. Germ., 45; 2nd ed., Hanover and Leipzig, 1912).
- H71 Otto of Freising, *Contra Frederici imperatoris*, ed. Georg Wallz and Bernhard von Simson (MGH, SS. nr. Germ., 46; 3rd ed., Hanover and Leipzig, 1912).
- H72 Paris, Matthew, *Chronica maiora*, ed. Henry R. Luard (Rolls Series, 57, 7 vols., London, 1872-1883); or John A. Giles as *Matthew Paris's English History from the Year 1225 to 1273* (Bohn's Antiquarian Library 3 vols., London, 1832-1834; repr. New York, 1948).
- H73 Pegolotti, Francesco Baldesso, *La Pratica della mercatura*, ed. Allan Evans (Med. AA, Publ., 26; Cambridge, Mass., 1944).
- H74 Peter of Daxburg, *Chronik des Fernwanderers*, ed. and tr. Klaus Scholz and Dieter Woytack (Ausgewählte Quellen zur deutschen Geschichte des Mittelalters, 25; Darmstadt, 1964).

- H73 Peter of Les Vaux-de-Cernay, *Hystoria Albigensium*, ed. Pascal Gauthier and Ernest Lyon (3 vols., Paris, 1926-1939).
- H76 Petrus Ascanius de Elvado, *De rebus Siculis carminibus*, ed. Ettore Rosa (R. Ital. SS., s.s., 34, part 1; Città di Castello, 1904-1906).
- H77 Philip of Mérida, "Epouse lamentable et consolatrice sur le fait de la disconcorde tragique du noble et vaillant roy de Hongrie par les Turcs devant la ville de Nicopolis au Pasquier de Roulogne," in *Chroniques de France, d'Angleterre, d'Espagne, de Bretagne, de Castille, de Flandres et leur circonstances* by Jean Froissart, *Œuvres*, ed. Joseph M.B.C. Kervyn de Lettenhove, vol. XVI (Brussels, 1872), pp. 444-523.
- H78 Philip of Mérida, *Le Songe de vail pelerin*, ed. George W. Coepland (2 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1909).
- H79 Philip of Mérida, "Nouvel chapitre de 'Songe du vail pelerin' de Philippe de Mérida relatif à l'Orient," ed. Edgar Blochet, *BO Ch.*, IV (1898), 344-379, 603-624; V (1900), 144-154.
- H80 Philip of Mérida, *The Life of St. Peter Thomas*, ed. Joseph Sarr (Textus et studia Minorum Carmelitana, 3, Rome, 1934).
- H81 Philip of Novara, *Mémoires*, in *Les Gestes des Chrétiens*, ed. Gaston Raynaud (SOL, SN 3, Geneva, 1817), pp. 23-131, also in *RHC, Arm.*, II (Paris, 1906), 681-872; portion ed. Charles Koeber (Les Classiques français du moyen-âge, 10; Paris, 1813), repr. 1870; in John L. LaMonte and Marion J. Halbert as *The Wars of Frederick II against the Muslims in Syria and Cyprus* (Col UHC, 25; New York, 1936). See also C11.
- H82 Ralph of Caen, "Cum Ruconil in expeditione Hierosolymitana," *RHC, Occ.*, III (Paris, 1866), 587-714.
- H83 Ralph of Diceto, *Opera historica: the Historical Works of Master Ralph de Diceto*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, 48, 2 vols., London, 1876).
- H84 Raymond of Aguliers, *Historia Francorum qui ceperunt Hierusalem*, tr. and ed. John H. Hill and Laurin L. Hill (Memoirs of the American Philosophical Society, 7); Philadelphia, 1940.
- H85 Ricciole of Monte Croce, *Il Libro della peregrinatione nelle parti d'Oriente di Jaco Ricciole da Montecroce*, ed. Ugo Monneret de Villard (Institutum Minusculum Fratrum Praedicatorum, Dissertationes historicae, 13; Roma, 1949). See also C24.
- H86 Ricciole of Monte Croce, "Lettera sur la prise d'Acre, 1291," ed. Reinhold Köhler, *AO Lat.*, II-2 (1880), 258-296.
- H87 Richard of Holy Trinity, *Itinerarium peregrinationis et gentis regis Ricardi anglorum, et regis Ricardi carmenis Sanctae Deiavitae Londonensis*, ed. William Stubbs in *Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard I*, vol. 1 (Rolls Series, 38-1, London, 1864).
- H88 Richard of San Germano, *Chronica a 1189-1241*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGN, 32, 18; Hannover, 1866, repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 321-384, also ed. Carlo A. Garuti (Bologna, 1936-1938).
- H89 Robert of Clari, *La Conquête de Constantinople*, ed. Philippe Lericq (Les chroniques de l'histoire de France au moyen-âge, Paris, 1924); Italian translation by Anna Maria Nadei Pavoni as *La Conquista di Costantinopoli (1204-1204)* (Collana storica di testi e studi, 13; Genova, 1972).
- H90 Robert of Rievna, "Historia Hierosolymitana," *RHC, Occ.*, III (Paris, 1866), 723-812.

- H191. Rodrigo el Tribofo, "Rome in Hispania postrema libro IX," ed. Andrew Schott, *Hispaniae illorumque seu apud urbemque Hispaniae, Lusitaniae, Aethiopiae et Italiae scriptorum vetri*, vol. II (Frankfurt, 1603), pp. 25-193.
- H192. *Rome of Hrostan, Chrostan*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, XI, 4 vols., London, 1868-1871).
- H193. *Rome of Wincles, Flores historiarum*, ed. Henry G. Hewlett (Rolls Series, 84; 3 vols., London, 1886-1889); or, John A. Giles as *Flowers of History, the History of England from the Descent of the Saxons in A.D. 433* (Bohn's Antiquarian Library; 2 vols., London, 1849; repr. New York, 1968).
- H194. Romain II, archbishop of Salerno, *Annales* (MGH, SS., 19; Hannover, 1846; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 367-441.
- H195. *Rupbruf, Oeuvres complètes de Rupbruf, évêque de XIII^e siècle*, ed. Achille Jubinal (new ed., 3 vols., Paris, 1874-1878); also ed. Edmond Fauré and Julia Barrie (2 vols., Paris, 1898). See also C41.
- H196. Saxwulf, in *Arletians des voyages de Guillaume de Baskraf, Jours du Plan Copie, Bernard le Sage, Saxwulf* [...], ed. Prosper Mérimée and Thémis Wright (Publications de la Société de géographie [= Extraits du 4^e vol. des Mémoires de la Société de géographie], Paris, 1838), pp. 257-274, Latin ed. and English tr. (without title) by [William R.B. Browdow], bishop of Calfas (PPTS, IV-2; London, 1896; repr. New York, 1971).
- H197. Salimbene da Adam, *Cronica*, ed. Oswald Holder-Egger (MGH, SS., 32; Hannover, 1905-1913; repr. 1963), pp. 1-632; also ed. Giuseppe Scilla (Scrittori di Italia, 233, 2 vols., Bari, 1948) or Joseph L. Baird et al. as *The Chronicle (Medieval and Renaissance Texts and Studies, 46)*, Binghamton, NY, 1984.
- H198. Sánchez-Castelero, Alfonso, ed. and tr., "Las Cruzadas en la historiografía española de la época. Traducción castellana de una redacción desconocida de los 'Anales de Tierra Santa,'" *Hispania*, XX (1960), 325-367.
- H199. Sarrado, Marino (Thorsolf, or the Elder), "Theoria del regno di Romania o de regno di Moria," ed. Carl (later, Charles) Hojl, *Christophus præ-romanus videlicet de præ-antiquis* (Berlin, 1873), pp. 99-178. See also C35.
- H200. Sarrado, Marino (Thorsolf, or the Elder), "Liber secretorum Italiam credis super Terras Sanctas recuperandas et conservatione," ed. Jacques Boggers, *Opera Dei per Francos* (2 vols., in 1, Hainan, 1611), II, 1-248, separate reprint ed. Joshua Frower (Jerusalem, 1972); portm. tr. Aubrey Stewart as *Secrets for the Crusaders to Help Them to Recover the Holy Land* (PPTS, XII-2; London, 1896; repr. New York, 1971).
- H201. Sarrado (or Sarrato), Marino (the Younger), *I Diarii di Adriano Sarrato (MCCCCXCIII-MDCCCXII) dall'autografo Mercurio dei. cl. V33 cod. 10023X-COL.10023E*, ed. Guglielmo Bicchieri, Achille Serrano, Niccolò De' Rossi, Rinaldo Fulin, and Marco Allagri (54 vols., Venice, 1879-1903).
- H202. Sarrado (or Sarrato), Marino (the Younger), *Le Vite dei Dogi di Marin Sanudo*, ed. Giovanni Montecchi (R. Ital. SS., n.s., 22, part 4, Città di Castello, 1907).
- H203. *Saxons of Saint-Quentin, Histoire des Saxons*, ed. Jean Richard (DRH Cr., 5, Paris, 1967). See also C29-31.
Strassmühl, Diomedes, see *Annals*, Francesco.
- H204. Siger, abbot of St. Denis, *Oeuvres complètes*, ed. Albert Leroy de La Marche (Cocliné de l'histoire de France; Paris, 1867).

- H105 Suger, abbot of St. Denis, *Vie de Louis VI le Gros par Suger, maître de l'histoire du roi Louis VII*, ed. Auguste Molinier (Collection de textes pour servir à l'étude et à l'enseignement de l'histoire, 4; Paris, 1887; also ed. Henri Waquet [Paris, 1944]).
- H106 Theodoric of Naples, *Mythorum de deductione et enumeratione civitatis Accusentium et archiepiscopi Thome Sancti in A.D. MCCXCX*, ed. Paul E.D. Ryan (Geneva, 1871).
- H107 Theoderic (also, Theodericus), *Libellus de iure sacro*, ed. Carlo L. and Walther Holtz (Bibliotheca Hirsfeldiana, 16; Hirsfeldberg, 1976); tr. Aubrey Stewart as *Theoderic's Description of the Holy Places (circa 1173 A.D.)* (PPTS, V-4, London, 1896; repr. New York, 1971).
- H108 Tadeusko, Peter (Petrus Tudebodus), *Historia de Hieronymisimo (circa)*, ed. John H. Hill and Laurin L. Hill, revised by Jean Richard (DRH Cr., 12, Paris, 1877); tr. Hill and Hill (*Monist of the American Philosophical Society*, 10; Philadelphia, 1934); also in *RHC, Occ.*, III (Paris, 1844), 1-117.
- H109 Vincent of Beauvais, *Speculum quadruplex, naturale, doctrinale, morale et historicale* (4 vols., Douai, 1624). See also C18.
- H110 Wäber (the Chancellor, Bello Antiocheno), ed. Heinrich Hagemeier (Rastatt, 1896).
- H111 William of Machaut, *Le Priu d'Alexandrie, ou Chronique du roi Pierre Ier de Lusignan*, ed. Louis de Mas Latrie (SOL. SN., 1; Geneva, 1877; repr. Brussels, 1974).
- H112 William of Malmesbury, *De gestis regum Anglorum*, ed. William Stubbs (Rolls Series, 90; 3 vols., London, 1887-1889).
- H113 William of Paylavreus, "Guillaume de Paylavreus et sa chronique," ed. J. Beyerlin, in *Deuxième colloque d'historiens de moyen âge publiés sous la direction de M. le Professeur Luchaire* (Université de Paris, Bibliothèque de la Faculté de Lettres, 18, Paris, 1909, pp. 85-173).
- H114 William of Ribbeck, in *Notations des voyages de Guillaume de Rubrick, Jean de Plan Carpis, Bernard le Sage, Samuel* [...], ed. Françoise Michel and Thomas Wright (Publications de la Société de géographie [= Extrait du 4e vol. des Mémoires de la Société de géographie]; Paris, 1839), pp. 3-306.
- H115 William of Tudele, *Le Chanson de la croisade contre les Albigois*, ed. Paul Meyer (2 vols., Paris, 1875-1879).
- H116 William of Tyre, *Historia rerum in partibus transmaris gestarum edita a venerabili Willermo Tyreno archiepiscopo*, in *RHC, Occ.*, 1-1, 2 (Paris, 1844); tr. and annotated by Emily A. Babcock and August C. Krey as *A History of Deeds Done Beyond the Sea* (Col. URC, 18; 2 vols., New York, 1943; repr. New York, 1976); new ed. (as *Guillaume de Tyr*) by Robert BC Huyghe with several modifications and determination of dates by Hans E. Mayer and Gerhard Rösch (*Corpus Christianorum, Continuatio medievalis*, 63, 63A, 2 vols., Turnhout, 1984). See also C43-C59.
- H117 — "An Account of the Battle of Hattin, Referring to the Frutkish Mercenaries in the Oriental Muslim States," ed. Jean Richard, *Speculum*, XXVII (1952), 168-177.
- H118 — *Annales Barrois*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS., 3; Hannover, 1844, repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1965), pp. 51-56.
- H119 — *Annales Boroniensis*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS., 3, Hannover, 1839; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 173-183.

- H120. — *Annales Carmentis*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS, 19; Hannover, 1866; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 303–320.
- H121. — *Annales Carmentis*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS, 3; Hannover, 1858; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 185–197.
- H122. — “*Annales de Terre Sainte*,” ed. Basileus Bihreus and Gaston Raymond, *AD Lata*, 11-2 (1864), 427–461.
- H122. — *Annales Hystoriarum*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS, 16; Hannover, 1858; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 1–12.
- H124. — *Annales Palatinæ*, ed. Georg H. Pertz (MGH, SS, 16; Hannover, 1858; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 48–94.
- H125. — “*Anonymus Chronicon Terræ Sanctæ & Libellus de expugnatione*,” ed. Hans Prutz, in *Quellenkunde zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Danzig, 1876), pp. 57–143.
- H126. — *Anonymus Pilgrin K. 2*, in *Ashley Hewari* (PPTS, VI-1, London, 1894; repr. New York, 1971), pp. 27–34.
- H127. — “*Chronicon Mauritanicum*,” in *Recueil des historiens des Gaules et de la France*, vol. XII (Paris, 1877), pp. 68–86.
- H128. — *Chronicon Hystoria quod vulgo dicitur Almans*, ed. Heinrich Stevenson (MGH, SS, 14; Hannover, 1863; repr. Stuttgart, New York, 1963), pp. 1–93.
- H129. — *Continuatio Guidonis Tyri*, ed. Marianna Saffoch as *Die lateinische Fortsetzung des Wäldes von Tyre* (Duss., Berlin: Greifswald, 1934).
- H130. — *Das Itinerarium peregrinorum: eine ursprüngliche englische Chronik zum ersten Kreuzzug in ursprünglicher Gestalt*, ed. Hans E. Mayer (MOM, Schriften, 18; Stuttgart, 1962); cf. the review by Marie L. Duin, *Mit. Z. CLXV* (1964), 380–387, also Mayer, “Zur Itinerarium peregrinorum,” *Deutsches Archiv*, XX (1964), 380–328; Bahr, “Noch einmal das Itinerarium peregrinorum,” *Deutsches Archiv*, XXI (1965), 393–406; and Mayer, “Zur Vorfassungsfrage des Itinerarium peregrinorum,” *Classica et Mediaevalia*, XXVI (1965), 279–282.
- H131. — *De constructione castri Saphet: Constructiones et functiones d’un château fort franc en Terre Sainte*, ed. Robert BC. Huggins (Koninklijke Nederlandse Akademie van Wetenschappen, Afdeling Letterkunde, Verhandelingen, n.s., III, Amsterdam, 1961); cf. “Un Nouveau texte du traité ‘De constructione castri Saphet,’” ed. Robert BC. Huggins, *Studi medievali*, 3-VI, fasc. 1 (1965), 335–387.
- H132. — “*De excidio urbis Antiochie lib. II.*,” in *Historia scriptorum et monachorum: Historiarum, diplomatiarum, ecclesiarum antiquitatis collectio*, ed. Edmund Martine and Ursin Durand, vol. V (Paris, 1734), cols. 757–764.
- H133. — *De expugnatione Terræ Sanctæ Abbat*, ed. Joseph Stevenson as *appendix to Ralph of Coggeshall, Chronicon Anglicanum* (Rolls Series, 66, London, 1873), pp. 289–362.
- H134. — “Ein Bericht über die Eroberung von Byzanz im Jahre 1204,” ed. Heinrich Stevenson, *Abhandlungen aus dem Gebiet der klassischen Altertumswissenschaft: Wälder von Christ zum sechzigsten Geburtstag, dargebracht von seinen Schülern* (Münch., 1891), pp. 63–74.
- H135. — “Ein Tractat über das heilige Land und den dritten Kreuzzug,” ed. Georg M. Thomas, *Sitzungsberichte der Königlich Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften*, II (1963), 141–171.
- H136. — “Ein mittelalterliches Gedicht auf die Belagerung Accos,” ed. Hans Prutz, *Forsch. DG*, XXI (1881), 449–494.

- H137. — "Epitola de morte Fridrici imperatoris," ed. Anton Chroust, in *Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzugs Kaiser Friedrich I.* (MGH, SS, 101. Germ., n.s., 3; Berlin, 1928), pp. 175-178.
- H138. — *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum*, ed. and tr. Louis Bethart as *Histoire anonyme de la première croisade* (Les classiques de l'histoire de France au moyen-âge, 4; Paris, 1924); ed. and tr. Rosalind M.H. Hill as *The Deeds of the Franks and the Other Pilgrims to Jerusalem* (Medieval Texts, London 1914; New York, 1962). See also CA, C40.
- H139. — "Gesta Innocentii [III]," ed. Jacques P. Magny, *FL*, vol. 214, cols. 11-227.
- H140. — *Gesta obsidionis Damietae*, ed. Oswald Holder-Egger (MGH, SS., 11; Hannover, 1901), pp. 463-503.
- H141. — "Historia de expeditione Fridrici imperatoris (Der sogenannte Ansberr)," ed. Anton Chroust, *Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzugs Kaiser Friedrich I.* (MGH, SS, 101. Germ., n.s., 3; Berlin, 1928), pp. 1-113.
- H142. — "Historia de profectioe Damiati in Hierosolimam," ed. Martin C. Gertz, *Scriptores minores Austriaci Damiati medii aevi*, vol. II (Copenhagen, 1918-1920), pp. 443-493.
- H143. — "Historia peregrinationis," ed. Anton Chroust, *Quellen zur Geschichte des Kreuzzugs Kaiser Friedrich I.* (MGH, SS, 101. Germ., n.s., 3; Berlin, 1928), pp. 116-172.
- H144. — *Illustrazioni della spedizione in Oriente di Amedeo VI (il Conte Verde)*, ed. Federico E. Bellini di Salvi-Picorelli (Biblioteca storica italiana, 3 [1a, 6]; Turin, 1900).
- H145. — "L'Escur de Tyrachie imperator et la conquête de la terre d'Ouvenet," *RHC, Occ.*, II, 1-481; continued as "Continuation de Guillaume de Tyr de 1229 à 1261. Édit. du manuscrit de Rothelin," *RHC, Occ.*, II, 483-629. New edition, mainly from Ms. B, for the years 1264-1277 as *La Continuation de Guillaume de Tyr (1194-1277)*, ed. Margaret R. Morgan (DREH Cr., 14; Paris, 1982). See also C32, C38.
- H146. — *La Chronique d'Outremer compilée au commencement du XIII^e siècle par le pèlerin Richard, continuée sous le règne de Philippe Auguste par Orelanor de Dours*, ed. Paulin Paris (2 vols., Paris, 1841), ed. Suzanne Dapa-Folquet as *La Chronique d'Outremer. L'édition de Jean d'Igérie la version ancienne* (Paris, 1977); 2. *Étude critique* (DREH Cr., II, 2 vols., Paris, 1978).
- H147. — *La Chronique de Chevalier au Cypre et de Godfrey de Bouillon*, ed. Célestine Hippens (2 vols., Paris, 1874-1877).
- H148. — *La Conquête de Jérusalem*, ed. Célestine Hippens (Paris, 1868).
- H149. — *Le Roman de Bohemond de Salmaric*, ed. L. Napoléon Bocq (2 vols., Valenciennes, 1840).
- H150. — "Les Chroniques illustrées de la Marcelline," ed. Freddy Thirion, *MSP Rome*, LXXIV (1954), 241-292.
- H151. — *Les Gestes des Chrétiens (1095-1208)*, ed. Gustave Raynaud (SOL, SH, 1, Geneva, 1867).
- H152. — *Livre de las fechos et conquistas del principado de la Morra compilado por comandamiento de Don Johan Ferrnandez de Heredia*, ed. Alfred Morel Fatio (SOL, SH, 4; Geneva, 1885).
- H153. — *Livre de la conquête de la province de l'Amerie: Chronique de Morie (1204-1265)*, ed. Jean Longnon (Paris, 1901).
- H154. — "Memoria Terre Sancte," ed. Charles Kohler, *Mélanges pour servir à l'histoire de l'Orient latin et des croisades* (Paris, 1900), pp. 516-547.

- H153 — "Narrative de divers évènements géographiques Hieroclydeum arabicum et Silvan capistrum," ed. Charles W. David, *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, LXXXI (1937), 591-676.
- H154 — "The Chronicle of Roma," tr. Edward M. Suss, in *Three Old French Chronicles of the Crusades* (University of Washington Publications in the Social Sciences, 10, Seattle, 1939).
- H155 — "Une Lettre apocryphe sur la bataille de Smyrne (1346)," ed. Nicolas Iorga, *EO Latine*, III (1895), 27-31.
- H156 — "Venezianische credula de la Croisade di Morea," ed. Carl Jann, Charles Haupt, *Chroniques grecs-romanes latines ou peu connues* (Berlin, 1873), pp. 434-468.

NARRATIVE SOURCES—GREEK

1. Acropolitas, George, *Opus*, ed. August Reichenberg (2 vols., Leipzig, 1903).
2. Alexios I Comnenus, emperor, *Alexios I Comnenus Romanorum Imperatoris ad Robertum I Flandriae comitem epistolarum apud*, ed. Paul E.D. Riess (Geneva, 1879).
3. Anasilios, Michael, *Historia*, ed. Immanuel Bekker (CSH Byz.; Bonn, 1833).
4. Bryennios, Nicophorus, *Commentarii*, ed. Augustus Meinecke (CSH Byz.; Bonn, 1836).
5. Chalcocondyles, Leonidas, *Historiarum demonstrationes*, ed. Eugen Diefel (2 vols. in 3, Budapest, 1922-1927).
6. Choniates, Michael, archbishop of Athens, *Ti moqapara et xristos dedokimene vite et xristos xorti vort; et xilaportia, Oxiaria, Naxaria, et Beryx xilaport*, ed. Spiridon P. Lampertis (2 vols., Athens, 1879-1886; repr. Groningen, 1944).
7. Choniates, Nicetas, *Historia*, ed. Ioannis A. (= Jan L.) Van Dieten (Corpus fontium historiarum Byzantinae, 11, Series Berolinsae, 2 vols., Berlin and New York, 1973).
8. Comnenus, John (son, Ioannis Kinnamos), *Epistola scripta ab Ioanne et Alexio [sic] Comnenis patribus*, ed. Augustus Meinecke (CSH Byz.; Bonn, 1876); tr. Charles M. Brand as *Diata of John and Manuel Comnenus by John Kinnamos* (Col. UBC, 95, New York, 1974).
9. Comnenus, Anna, *Alexandros: Récit de l'empereur Alexis I Comnène (1081-1118)*, ed. Bernard Lalle (Collection byzantine publ. sous le patronage de l'Association Guillaume Budge; 3 vols., Paris, 1937-1943; Vol. 4, Index by Paul Gautier (Paris, 1976); tr. Elizabeth A.S. Davis, *The Alexiad* (London, 1928; repr. New York, 1973). See also C21.
10. Ducas, *Isacius nico-bianthina 1154-1162*, ed. with Romanus transl. by Vasil Grets (Scriptores byzantini, 1; Bucharest, 1958); tr. Harry J. Magoulias as *Decline and Fall of Byzantium to the Ottoman Turks: 1241-1462* (Detroit, 1973).
11. Eustathios, archbishop of Thessalonica, *La Espagnolisme di Basilios*, ed. Spiridon Kyriakidis with Italian transl. by Vincenzo Rosolo (Istituto siciliano di studi bizantini e neoellenici, Tom. 5; Palermo, 1961).
12. Gregoras, Nicophorus, *Byzantina historia*, ed. Ludwig Schopen and Immanuel Bekker (CSH Byz.; 3 vols., Bonn, 1829-1833).

113. John (here, Joannes) VI Cantacuzenus, emperor, *Historiarum libri IX*, ed. Ludwig Schopen (CSH Byz., 3 vols., Bonn, 1828-1832).
114. Macchabius, Lucanus, *Recital concerning the Sweet Land of Cyprus, Entitled "Cherson"*, ed. and tr. Richard M. Dawkins (2 vols., Oxford, 1912; repr. New York, 1980).
115. Pachymerus, George, *De Michaeli et Andronico Palaeologis libri XIII*, ed. Immanuel Bekker (CSH Byz., 3 vols., Bonn, 1825).
116. Phocas, John, *Epiphanius* . . . tr. Aubrey Stewart as *The Pilgrimage of Joannet Phocas in the Holy Land in the Year 1011 A.D.* (OPTS, V-1, London, 1896; repr. New York, 1971).
117. Prodromicus, Theodorus, "Serapion mirabilissimus," in Migne, PC, 133, cols. 1221-1424.
118. Psellus, Michael, *Chronographia seu historiae octo libri de Byzantio (976-1077)*, ed. and tr. Emile Renoult (2 vols., Paris, 1926-1928).
119. Psellus, Michael, "Epinetia," in *Michaelis Pselli scriptae selectae*, ed. Edward Kurtz and Franz Drexl, vol. II (Corbis Rossiana, 13; Milan, 1941).
120. Psellus, Michael, "Un Discours inédit de Psellus: Accusation du Pape contre Michel Céléstine devant le synode (1059)," ed. Louis Bethler, *Revue des études grecques*, XVI (1903), 373-466; XVII (1904), 75-76.
121. Sphrantzes, George, *Chronicon selectum*, ed. Immanuel Bekker (CSH Byz., Bonn, 1818); ed. Vasile Grica (Bucharest, 1964); tr. Martin Philippides as *The Fall of the Byzantine Empire* (Amherst, 1983).
122. Theophylactus, archbishop of Bulgaria, "Epinetia," in Migne, PC, 126, cols. 307-351.
123. Zonaras, John, *Annales*, ed. Nicola Pinder (CSH Byz.; 2 vols.), and vol. 3, ed. Theodor Bittner-Wobst as *Epitome historiarum* (Bonn, 1841-1897).
124. — *Circumventi strategicon et imperii scriptoria de officio regis Iohannis*, ed. Vasily G. Vasil'evskiy (Zapiski istoriko-filologicheskogo fakulteta imperatorskogo S.-Peterburgskogo Universiteta, 24, 1896).
125. — *De Chronikis seu Martini: the Chronicle of the Maron*, ed. John Schroll (Byzantine Texts, ed. John B. Bury, 5; London, 1904; repr. New York, 1979; new ed. by Peter P. Kaldarella as *Tō Chronikon kai Maphaiōn, Tō Ellagorikon kaiarvōn* (Athens, 1941; repr. Athens, 1960).

NARRATIVE SOURCES—ARABIC

11. 'Abd-al-Wahid al-Marrakushi, *The History of the Almohads, Preceded by a Sketch of the History of Spain from the Times of the Conquest till the Reign of Yusuf Ibn-Tashfin, and of the History of the Almoravides*, ed. Reinhart P. Dory (Oat ed., Leyden, 1981).
12. 'Abd-al-Fitit', *Annalen andhistorical sketches of letters*, ed. Johann J. Reiske and Jacob G.C. Adler (5 vols., Copenhagen, 1769-1794).
13. 'Abd-al-Hamam 'Abd Ibn-Ah-Hakr al-Hazret, *Guide des lieux de pèlerinage*, tr. Jeanne Sarradell-Thomine (Institut français de Damas; Damascus, 1957).
14. Abu Shama, Shihab-al-Din, *Kutub al-musallatin fi al-ahbal' ad-dalalat*, ed. Abu-Sa'ud 'Abd-Alah (2 vols., n. 1, Cairo, 1871-1875; extracts tr. A. C. Barbier de Meynard as "Le Livre des deux parties," *RHC, Or.*, IV-V (Paris, 1848, 1906).

13. Baḥr-ad-Dīn al-Aūdī, "Extraits du livre intitulé le Collier de perles," *RHC, Or.*, II-1 (Paris, 1877), III-1-250.
14. Baḥr-ad-Dīn Ibn-Shakībī, *Kitaḥ al-ṣawābir al-ṣalṭiyah* . . . , ed. with Latin transl. by Albert Schottaux as *Flora et sua genera antea Alamaḥshī Alimrās Salāḥī* (Leyden, 1732); ed. and tr. as "Anecdotes et beaux traits de la vie du Sultan Yousof (Salih ad-Dīn)" in *RHC, Or.*, III (Paris, 1884), pp. 1-370; tr. Charles W. Wilson and Christie R. Coester as "Saladin"; as *Yūsuf Bektī Salṭan Maḡ.* . . . (PPTA, XIII; London, 1877; repr. New York, 1971).
15. Ibn-Walīd-ay-Zahrī, Muḥy-ad-Dīn, *Ar-raḥḥ al-ḡalīb fi aḥwāl al-Maḥk al-ḡalīb*, ed. and tr. Syriak F. Saḥag as *Rayḥān f al-Ḥayāt* (Dacca, 1956; repr. New York, 1960).
16. Ibn-ahī-Dīn, Muḥammad Ibn-ahī-Qāṣim, *Al-maḥīr fi aḥwāl Ḥafṣyah wa-Fīrās*, tr. Edmond Pichon et Gustave Ricamar as *Harīr de l'Afrique* (Exploration scientifique de l'Algérie pendant les années 1840, 1841, 1842, no. 7; Paris, 1847).
17. Ibn-ahī-Zar' al-Fīr, 'Alī Ibn-'Abī-Aḥī, *Annāl regum Mauritāniæ, a conditōe Idrisidarum imperio ad annum regni 728, ab Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī ben 'Abī 'Alīh Ibn 'Alī Zar' Firras vel ut ait maluit, Abū Muḥammad Salih Ibn 'Aūd al-Hafīr Gornanīl conscriptis ad librum manuscritorum fidem*, ed. Carl J. Tornberg (2 vols. in 1, Uppsala, 1843-1846); tr. Auguste Beaumier as *Royaūm al-Kuray: Histoire des souverains du Maghreb (Espagne et Maroc) et annales de la ville de Fes* (Paris, 1846).
18. Ibn-al-Ajman, Isma'īl Ibn-Yūsuf, *Histoire des Berber Maḡrīb, rois de Fes, intitulée Jardin au-sabir (Le jardin des dévotions) par Ibn al-Aḥmar*, ed. and tr. Giovanni Benati and Georges Marçais (Publications de la Faculté des lettres d'Alger, Institut de correspondances africaines, 1^{er} ser., 52; Paris, 1917).
19. Ibn-al-Aḥī, 'abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī Ibn-Muḥammad, "Histoire des Arabes de Mésopotamie," *RHC, Or.*, II-3 (Paris, 1876), I-375.
20. Ibn-al-Aḥī, 'abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī Ibn-Muḥammad, *Kitaḥ al-ḥawāṣṣ al-ṣalṭiyah. Rūḥ al-Aḥīr chronica, quæ perfectionem inueniunt*; ed. Carl J. Tornberg (34 vols., Uppsala, 1851-1853; and Leyden, 1862-1876; repr. Beirut, 1963- .).
21. Ibn-al-Farḥī, Muḥy-ad-Dīn Muḥammad Ibn-'Abī-al-Raḥīn, *Apocrypha, Murals and Crusaders: Selections from the Tārīkh al-ḥawāṣṣ waṭ-ṭawāḥ*, text and tr. by Ursula and Malcolm C. Lyons; historical introd. and notes by Jonathan S.C. Riley-Smith (2 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1971).
22. Ibn-al-Hawāṣṣ, 'Abū-l-Farḥī, *Al-awāṣṣ f al-ṭawāḥ al-maḥk*, vol. X (Rydhān, 1977/1980).
23. Ibn-al-Khaṭīb, Lūṭī-ad-Dīn 'abū-'Abī-Aḥī Muḥammad Ibn-'Abī-Aḥī, *Correspondence diplomatique entre Grenade y Fez (siglo XIV). Extractos de la "Rashad al-ḥawāṣṣ" (man. de la Biblioteca del Escorial)*, ed. and tr. Mariano Góngor y Tardón (Grenada, 1916).
24. Ibn-al-Khaṭīb, Lūṭī-ad-Dīn 'abū-'Abī-Aḥī Muḥammad Ibn-'Abī-Aḥī, *Tārīkh al-Maḡrīb al-ḥawāṣṣ f al-ḥawāṣṣ al-maḥk* (Cataluña, 1964).
25. Ibn-al-Qalāṣī, Dīnī al-Yūsuf Dīnī, ed. Henry F. Amédro (Beirut, 1908); portion ed. and tr. Roger Le Tourneau as *Darīn de 1075 à 1145: traduction d'un fragment de l'Histoire de Darīn d'Ibn al-Qalāṣī* (Institut français de Damas; Damascus, 1952); portion tr. Hamilton A.R. Gibb as *The Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades* (London, 1913; repr. London, 1967; repr. New York, 1980).

118. Ibn al-Sifī, 'Alī Ibn-Aṣḥab, *Al-Djāmi' al-Mukhtasar* (*Annales et biographies d'Ibn al-Sifī al-Khalīl*), ed. Amānī Mār, al-Kirmīlī (Baghdād, 1914).
119. Ibn-Walī, Ṭayyib Ibn-Muḥammad, *Hisṣah al-Salṭanah fī Ḥaq al-Miṣr* (*Extrait de l'ouvrage intitulé al-Salṭanah al-Miṣrīyah d'Ibn Wālī*), ed. Marjūn T. Houtsma (*Recueil de textes relatifs à l'histoire des Seldjoukides*, 3 [Texte turque], 4 [Texte persan]; Leyden, 1902).
120. Ibn 'Alī al-Muḥarrir, *Manāqib al-ʿAfrīqah wa al-ʿIṣpānīyah, mawālī al-Jayṣanīyah* (*Biographies par Ibn 'Alī al-Muḥarrir (de Maroc), et fragments de la Chronique d'après Ibn Cordouan*), ed. Bernhart P. Dozy (*Œuvres arabes, publiées par R.P.A. Dozy*, 2 vols., Leyden, 1848-1851).
121. Ibn-Lyṭā, Muḥammad Ibn-Aḥmad, *An Account of the Ottoman Conquest of Egypt in the Year A.H. 922 (A.D. 1516) Translated from the Third Volume of the Arabic Chronicle of Muḥammad Ibn Aḥmad Ibn Lyṭā, an Eye-Witness of the Scourge of Despatch*, tr. William H. Salmon (*Original Translation Fund*, n.s., 25; London, 1922).
122. Ibn-Jabīn, Muḥammad, *Rihlah*, ed. William Wright (J.E.W. Orib Memorial Series, 3; London, 1852); revised by Martin J. de Goeje (Leyden, 1907), tr. Maurice Gaudelroy-Demonfagnieu as *Voyage* (D.R.H. Cr., 4-7, 4 vols. in 2, Paris, 1949-1963); tr. Ronald LC. Broadhurst as *The Travels of Ibn Jubayr* (London, 1952).
123. Ibn Khaldūn, Abū-Zayd 'Abd-al-Rahmān Ibn-Muḥammad, *Kitāb al-'Iṣar wa-'l-'asārah* (*wa-l-'ahṣār fī ṣayr al-'Arab . . .*) (Cairo, 1867-1878) repr. in 7 vols., Beirut, 1958-1964; tr. William MacGuckin de Slane as *Histoire des Berbers et des dynasties musulmanes de l'Afrique septentrionale par Abū-Zayd 'Abd-al-Rahmān Ibn-Muḥammad Ibn Khaldūn*, new ed. by Paul Castejon (4 vols., Paris, 1925-1956).
124. Ibn-Shaddād, Ismā'il-Dīn, *Al-'Iṣṭiqā' al-'Aḥṣār fī ḥādīṯ al-'Arab* ash-Shar' wa-l-Jahīl, tr. Arne-Maria Edström-Torress as *Description de la Syrie du Nord* (Institut français de Damas, Damas, 1966).
125. Ibn-Daghrīrī (or Ibn-Daghrīrī), Abū-l-Mahdī Yūsuf, *Abū Maḥdīr Ibn Daghrīrī's Arabic History of Egypt and Arabia* (*Kitāb al-'Iṣṭiqā' wa-l-'ahṣār*), vol. I, parts 1 and 2, and vol. II, parts 1 and 2, ed. Theodor W. J. de Goeje and Benjamin F. Matthei (Leyden, 1852-1861); vol. II, part 2, nos. 1-3; vol. III, part 1, nos. 1; vol. V, nos. 1-4; vol. VI, part 1, nos. 1-3, and part 2, nos. 1-2; vol. VII, nos. 1-3, and index and glossary ed. William Popper (University of California Publications in Semitic Philology, 2, 3, no. 1, 3-7; Berkeley, 1909-1909); tr. William Popper as *History of Egypt 1482-1469 A.D.* (University of California Publications in Semitic Philology, 13, 14, 17-19, 22-24, 8 vols., Berkeley, 1934-1963) repr. New York, 1974).
126. Ibn-Walī, Ismā'il-Dīn Abū-'Abd-Allāh Muḥammad, *Maḥṣar al-'Arab fī ḥādīṯ al-'Arab* (Cairo), ed. Ismā'il-Dīn Abū-Shaykh (Cairo, Gamāl-Dīn al-Sayyid, 3 vols., Cairo, 1953/1954-1960/1961).
127. Al-Maḥṣar, Abū-'Abd-Allāh Muḥammad Ibn-Muḥammad, *Géographie d'Édric*, tr. Pierre A. Jaubert (2 vols., Paris, 1836-1840); partial transl. by Johannes Gildemeister as "Beiträge zur Palästinakunde aus arabischen Quellen. 3. Idria," ZDPV, VIII (1885), 117-145, with 25 pp. of Arabic text; partial transl. by Bernhart P. Dozy and Martin J. de Goeje as *Description de l'Afrique et de l'Espagne* (Leyden, 1866).
128. Ismā'il-Dīn al-'Iṣṭiqā'ī, *Compte de la Syrie et de la Palestine par Saladin*

- of *Siky Ibn al-Jawzi: a Facsimile Reproduction of Manuscript No. 128 of the Leiden Collection of Arabic Manuscripts Belonging to Yale University*, ed. James R. Lewis (Chicago, 1907).
144. *Udunah Ibn-Muqaffa, Kitāb al-Jarīd*, ed. Hartwig Derenbourg as *Un Essai sur les mœurs des Arabes*, vol. 2, *Autobiographie d'Oudoun* (Publications de l'École des langues orientales vivantes, 2nd ser., 17, Paris, 1886); ed. Philip K. Hitti (*Preserving Oriental Texts*, 1; Princeton, 1936); tr. Hitti as *An Arab-Syrian Gentleman and Warrior in the Period of the Crusades* . . . (Col. USC, 10; New York, 1922; repr. Beirut, 1964); tr. into German by Gert von Ritzler as *Udunah ibn Muqaffa, ein Leben im Kampf gegen Kreuzritterheere* (Tübingen and Basel, 1970).
145. Yuhayr Ibn-Khalidān, *Histoire des Amīr Mūd al-Walī, sūbi de Thimoun jusqu'au règne d'Abou Hafssem Mūdān II, par Abou Zakariya Yuhayr Ibn Khalidān*, ed. Alfred Bel (2 vols., Algiers, 1904-1912).
146. al-Zarkashī, Muḥammad Ibn-Burhān, *Chronique des Atabekides et des Mamlouks, attribuée à Zarkashī*, tr. Édmond Fagnon (Constantine, 1895).
147. — "Une Chronique chaire au temps des croisades," ed. Claude Cahen, *CRAI* 81 (1937), pp. 258-269.
148. — "Une Chronique syrienne du VI^e-XII^e siècle: le *Musta' al-Jawzi*," ed. Claude Cahen, *Bulletin d'études orientales de l'Institut français de Damas*, VII-VIII (1937-1938), 113-158.

NARRATIVE SOURCES—ARMENIAN

- K1. Grigor of Akanc', *History of the Nation of the Archers (the Mongols)*, ed. and tr. Robert P. Blake and Richard H. Frye; with Francis W. Clough, *The Mongolian Nation and Their in the History of the Nation of the Archers* (Cambridge, Mass., 1954).
- K2. Hefknan ("Hayton"), transl. of Grigoris (Corymbos), "Le Flou des Barbares de la terre d'Orient, ou Flou des Tartares vers Orient," *RHC, Arm.*, II (Paris, 1906), 611-343. See also C28.
- K3. Matthew of Edessa, *Chronique de Mathieu d'Édessa (1042-1146) avec la continuation de Grigoris le Prêtre, jusqu'en 1243*, ed. and tr. Édouard Dulacret (*Bibliothèque historique arménienne*, 2; Paris, 1934).
- K4. Sempad, *chronique, Sempad Shamseddin Dursket'* (The Chronicle of the Constable Sempad), ed. Scripta Abbotin (Vatikan-San Lazzaro, 1954); tr. Scripta Dar Mesropias as "The Armenian Chronicle of the Constable Sempad or of the 'Royal Historian,'" *D Dala E XIII* (1959), 141-165, tr. Otfried Diehl; pt. as *Le Chroniqueur attribué au comte Sempad* (*DRH Cr.*, 13, Paris, 1982).

NARRATIVE SOURCES—SYRIAC

- K5. Bar Hebraeus, *Chronicon ecclesiasticum*, ed. and tr. (into Latin) Jean B. Abbeloos and Thomas A. Lamy (5 vols., Paris and Leuven, 1872-1877); 6th ed. and tr. Ernest A.W. Budge as *The Chronography of Gregory Abbot Pargi, the Son of Aaron, the Hebrew Physician Commonly Known as Bar He-*

- brassat, being the First Part of his Political History of the World* (3 vols., London, 1932; repr. Amsterdam, 1976).
- K6. Michael the Syrian, *Chronique de Michel le Syrien, patriarche jacobite d'Antiochie (1186-1199)*, ed. and tr. John B. Chabot (4 vols., Paris, 1899-1924).
- K7. — *Chronicon ad annum Christi 1284 pertinentia*, ed. Jean B. Chabot (*Corpus scriptorum Christianorum orientalis*, *Scriptores Syr.*, 34-37; Paris, 1916-1920).
- K8. — "The First and Second Crusade from an Anonymous Syrian Chronicle," tr. Arthur S. Tritton and Hamilton A.R. Gibb, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1933), pp. 49-60, 273-303.
- K9. — *The Monks of Khabb Khale, Emperors of Christ at the History of the Life and Travels of Rabban Shmon, and Marban, who as Mar Ishikhabdina III became Patriarch of the Neopatrian Church in Asia*, ed. and tr. Ernest A.W. Budge (London, 1922), also ed. and tr. Jean B. Chabot in "Histoire du patriarche Mar Ishabab III et du moine Rabban Gauria," *RD Latta*, 1 (1893), 347-416; II (1894), 73-142, 235-304, 430-434, 441-443 (quod separatim, Paris, 1895).

NARRATIVE SOURCES - PERSIAN

- K10. Juwaini, 'Alī-'ad-Dīn 'Alī Maḥmūd, *The History of the World-Conqueror, by 'Alī-'ad-Dīn, 'Alī-Maḥmūd Juwaini. Translated from the Pers of Mirza Muḥammad Qazvini*, ed. John A. Boyle (UNESCO collection of representative works: Persians series, 2 vols., Manchester, 1958).
- K11. Nāḡir-i-Khwarizm, *Sifr namah*, ed. and tr. Charles Schirer in *Relevés de voyages de Nassiri Khwarizm en Syrie, en Palestine, en Égypte, en Arabie et en Perse pendant les années de l'hégire 437-444 (1045-1047) [arrivé l'an 1047-1054]* (Publications de l'École des langues orientales vivantes, 2^e sér., 1; Paris, 1881); portions also in: Guy Le Strange in *Diary of a Journey through Syria and Palestine* (PPTS, IV-1; London, 1893, repr. New York, 1971).
- K12. Rāḡib-'ad-Dīn Faḡl-Allāh, *Geschichte Gāzī-Hān's aus dem Wāḡir-i-mahmūd-i-Gāzī der Rāḡib-'ad-Dīn Faḡlullāh b. Tūḡl-'ad-Dawla Aḡā-Qāh*, ed. Karl Jahn (Z.DW. Qāhā Memorial Series, n.s., 14, London, 1949), ed. Karl Jahn in *Geschichte der Illaher Abāge im Gāzānī (1267-1297)* (Abhandlungen der deutschen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften und Künste in Prag. Philosophisch-historische Abteilung, II, Prague, 1941).
- K13. Rāḡib-'ad-Dīn Faḡl-Allāh (Jahn, Rāḡib 'ad-Dīn Faḡl Allāh), *Die Frankengeschichte*, tr. Karl Jahn (Deutschschriften der philosophisch-historischen Klasse der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 129 [= Veröffentlichungen der kaiserlichen Kommission, 47; Vienna, 1877).
- K14. ash-Shamṣi, Hūṣayn-'ad-Dīn, *Histoire des conquêtes de Timurlan* (Institut Zaynabī, ed. Félix Recan (Monographie archive orientalisches, 3, partie 1, 2 2 vols., Prague, 1897-1898).

NARRATIVE SOURCES - TURKISH

- K15. Ezeri, *Le Dessein d'Unir l'Asie: Dasturname-i Ezeri*, ed. İsmet Mikaili Sayar (Bibliothèque byzantine: Documents, 2; Paris, 1934).

- K16. Nezhdi, Muhammad, *Shah-nama*, ed. Theodor Nöldeke and Franz G. Dornseifer in *Göteborgs Universitet: Die islamische Chronik des Mirwān Muhammad Nezhdi* (2 vols., Leipzig, 1933-1935).
- K17. Tumen Beg, ed. and tr. Halil Inalcik and Randa Murphy in *The History of Mehmed the Conqueror* (Moscow, U.S.S.R. and Chicago, 1975).
- K18. — *Gazet-i Salâm Mamed b. Mehmed Nam, ed.* Halil Inalcik and M. Ogür (Ankara, 1933).

NARRATIVE SOURCES—MONGOLIAN

- K19. — *Die geheime Geschichte der Mongolen aus einer mongolischen Handschrift des Jahres 1240 von der Insel Koksit im Katuru-Fluss*, tr. Erich Haenisch (Zürich rev. ed., Leipzig, 1948).
- K20. — *Tsien-ch'ao pi-shih: Histoire secrète des Mongols*, ed. and tr. Paul Pelliot (Paris, 1949).

DOCUMENTS—POPE

- L1. Jaffé, Philipp, ed., *Regesta pontificum romanorum ab ecclesia archidiaconi ad annum p. Chr. natum 1198* 2nd ed., ed. Wilhelm Wattenbach, Samuel Löwenfeld, et al. (2 vols., Leipzig, 1885-1888).
- L2. Potthast, August, ed., *Regesta pontificum romanorum inde ab anno p. Chr. n. 1198 ad annum 1294* (2 vols., Berlin, 1873-1875).
- L3. Delorme, Ferdinand M., and Aloysius L. Tibbo, ed., *Acta romanorum pontificum ab Innocentio I ad Benedictum XI (1176-1304)* (PC, Pontis, 3rd ser., V-2; Vatican City, 1954).
- L4. Tamassini, Aloysius, ed., *Italianum diplomatum et privilegiorum sanctorum romanorum pontificum Thesaurus ad huc usque completus factus* (23 vols., Turin, 1857-1873).
- L5. Pertz, Georg H., and Carl Rodenburg, eds., *Monumenta Germaniae historica . . . Epistolae archiepiscopi Aili et regum pontificum romanorum* (3 vols., Berlin, 1883-1894).
- L6. Bruckmann, Albert, et al., ed., *Regesta pontificum romanorum. Germania pontificia sive repertorium privilegiorum et litterarum a Romanis pontificibus ante annum MCCLXXXVIII Germaniae ecclesiis, monasteriis, civitatibus atque aliis personis concessarum* (7 vols. in 3, Berlin, 1911-1935 and Göttingen, 1975-1987).
- L7. Kehr, Paul, ed., *Regesta pontificum romanorum. Italia pontificia sive repertorium privilegiorum et litterarum a Romanis pontificibus ante annum MCCLXXXVIII Italiae ecclesiis, monasteriis, civitatibus atque aliis personis concessarum* (10 vols.; vol. 9 ed. Walther Holtzmann, vol. 10 ed. Dietrich Geyserach, Berlin, 1906-1963, and Zurich, 1975).
- L8. Bruckmann, Albert, "Papsturkunden in Deutschland," *Göt. Nach.* (1902), pp. 193-223; (1904), pp. 94-138.
- L9. Erdmann, Carl, *Papsturkunden in Portugal* (Abh. Göt., n.s., XX, 3, Berlin, 1927).
- L10. Holtzmann, Walther, *Papsturkunden in England* (Abh. Göt., n.s., 25) 3rd ser., 14, 15; 3 vols., Berlin, 1930-1933, and Göttingen, 1952).
- L11. Kehr, Paul, "Papsturkunden in Italien," *Göt. Nach.* (1896), pp. 271-308, 337,

- (1877), pp. 175-216, 223-233, 349-369; (1898), pp. 6-44, 45-97, 237-234, 249-296; (1899), pp. 197-249, 251-282, 283-337; (1900), pp. 1-75, 181-197, 198-269, 284-344, 360-436; (1901), pp. 37-113, 117-170, 186-228, 239-279; (1902), pp. 47-129, 130-167, 168-192, 203-258, (1903), pp. 1-49, 50-113, 116-164, 205-291, 292-441; (1904), pp. 179-203, (1905), pp. 323-380; (1908), pp. 223-264, (1909), pp. 433-517, (1910), pp. 229-288, (1911), pp. 267-233, (1912), pp. 329-383, 434-480; (1934), pp. 156-193.
- L12. Kehr, Paul, *Papsturkunden in Spanien. Handbuche zur Hispania pontificia. I Katalonien* (Abh. Germ., n.s., 18-2; Berlin, 1928); II *Návara und Aragón* (ibid., 23-4; Berlin, 1928).
- L13. Rasmussen, Johannes, *Papsturkunden in den Niederlanden* (Abh. Germ., 3rd ser., 8-9; 2 vols., Berlin, 1933-1934).
- L14. Wierzbicki, Wilhelm, *Papsturkunden in Frankreich*, parts 1-7 (Göttingen, 1904, 1905, 1910, 1912); cont. in Hermann Meier, Johannes Rasmussen, and Dietrich Lotermann, *Papsturkunden in Frankreich, Nijue Folge* (Abh. Germ., n.s., 3; 3rd ser., 21, 23, 25, 35, 41, 43; 7 vols., Berlin and Göttingen, 1937-1938).
- L15. Rodenberg, Carl, ed., *Epistolae sancti XPI e regibus pontificum romanorum selectae* (MGH, Epistolae; 3 vols., Berlin, 1883-1894).
- L16. Lippman, Karl E., *Die Beziehungen der Päpste zu islamischen und mongolischen Herrschern im 12. Jahrhundert anhand ihrer Briefwechsel* (Stud. e text., 29; Vatican City, 1961).
- L17. Röhrich, Reinhold, "Zur Correspondenz der Päpste mit den Sultanen und Mongolenherrschen des Mittelalters anlässlich des Konzils von Konstanz," *Theologische Studien und Kritiken*, LXXIX (1896), 357-369.
- L18. — "Documenta relatifs à Guillaume Adam, archevêque de Salamanque, pale d'Asturie, et son monastère, 1318-46," *BO Lemo*, X (1903-1904), 34-46.
- L19. — *Historische Quellen zur Geschichte der päpstlichen Hof- und Finanzverwaltung 1316-1371*, ed. by the Görres-Gesellschaft (3 vols., Paderborn, 1910-1973).

DOCUMENTS—INDIVIDUAL POPES (Chronological)

- L20. Caspar, Erich, ed., "Die Kreuzungsbullen Eugens III. (1145-1253) [mit Anhang: Der Text der Kreuzungsbulle Eugens III. vom 1. März 1146, Thaurisere (J.-L. Fourn) hergestellt von F. Ramm]," *Monatsschrift der Gesellschaft für ältere deutsche Geschichtswissenschaft*, XLV (1904), 283-305.
- L21. Hageneder, Othmar, and Anton Haidachner, eds., *Die Register Innocenz' III. (1198-1216)*, with a separate index by Alfred A. Schmid (Publicaciones del Abtado de la historia de la Iglesia de Österreichischen Kulturinstitut in Rom, vol. II, part I; 2 vols., Graz and Cologne, 1964, and Graz, Vienna, and Cologne, 1968).
- L22. Halkiöskyti, Theodorij T., ed., *Acta Innocentii III. (1198-1216) e regibus Pontificum olimque Pontificum* (PC, Pontif., 3rd ser., II, Vatican City, 1944).
- L23. Preuss, Pietro, ed., *Regesta Innocentii papa III. (1214-1227)* (3 vols., Rome, 1884-1895).
- L24. Tassin, Alexius L., ed., *Acta Honorii III. (1216-1227) et Gregorii IX. (1227-1241) e regibus Pontificum olimque Pontificum* (PC, Pontif., 3rd ser., III, Vatican City, 1958).

- L25. Aubry, Lucien, ed., *Les Registres de Grégoire IX (1227-1241): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 3 vols. and tables, Paris, 1896-1905).
- L26. Mazancé, Athanasius, "Bulle manuscrite 'C'est bon jeu vendrons' émise par le pape Innocent IV," *Archivum Franciscanum historicum*, I (1937), 364-378.
- L27. Berger, Élie, ed., *Les Registres d'Innocent IV (1243-1254)* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 4 vols., Paris, 1894-1901).
- L28. Haholýšvický, Theobald T., and Malatesta M. Wejnár, eds., *Acta Innocentii IV (1243-1254) et regimine Petronii aliiisque pontificibus . . .* (PC, Pontae, 2nd ser., IV), Rome, 1962.
- L29. Boursi de Cartulaire, Charles, Joseph de Lays, Auguste Cardon, and Pierre de Cartulaire, eds., *Les Registres d'Alexandre IV (1254-1261): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 3 vols., Paris, 1895-1909).
- L30. Guiraud, Jean, ed., *Les Registres d'Urbain IV (1261-1264): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., 4 vols. and tables, Paris, 1901-1911).
- L31. Jordan, Édouard, ed., *Les Registres de Clément IV (1265-1268): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 1 vol. and tables, Paris, 1893-1905).
- L32. Guiraud, Jean, and Léon Cadiot, eds., *Les Registres de Grégoire X (1271-1276) et de Jean XXI (1276-1277): Recueil des bulles de ces papes* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., 1 vol. and tables, Paris, 1893-1900).
- L33. Cap, René, and Suzanne Viret, eds., *Les Registres de Nicolas III (1277-1280): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; Paris, 1894-1911).
- L34. *Les Registres de Martin IV (1281-1285): Recueil des bulles de ce pape*, ed. by Membres de l'École française de Rome (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; Paris, 1901-1915).
- L35. Prev, Maurice, ed., *Les Registres d'Honorius IV (1285-1287): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; Paris, 1899).
- L36. Langlois, Ernest, ed., *Les Registres de Menn IV (1288-1292): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 2 vols., Paris, 1894-1905).
- L37. Digaard, Georges, Maurice Pannetier, Antoine Thomas, and Robert Fuvrier, eds., *Les Registres de Boniface VIII (1294-1303): Recueil des bulles de ce pape* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 4 vols., Paris, 1907-1919).
- L38. Grandjean, Charles, ed., *Le Registre de Benoît XI: Recueil des bulles de ce pape (1303-1304)* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., Paris, 1903).
- L39. *Registres Clementis papa F (1305-1314)*, ed. by Monks of the Order of St. Benedict (8 vols. and appendix, Rome, 1893-1897), *Veritas Latibet and Cyille Vogel, Bulles des Registres de Clément V publiées par les Bénédictins* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., Paris, 1917).
- L40. Mollet, Guillaume, and G. de Laquey, eds., *Jean XXII (1316-1334): Lettres communes* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 16 vols., Paris, 1904-1947).
- L41. Coulon, Auguste, and Suzanne Chommet, eds., *Jean XXII (1316-1334): Lettres papales et curiales relatives à la France* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., 3 vols., Paris, 1901-1917).
- L42. Vidal, Jean M., ed., *Benoît XII (1334-1342): Lettres communes et curiales analysées d'après les registres des d'Avignon et du Vatican* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., 3 vols., Paris, 1903-1911).
- L43. Deconnet, Georges, ed., *Benoît XII (1334-1342): Lettres claustrales, papales et curiales se rapportant à la France* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser., Paris, 1920).
- L44. Vidal, Jean M., and Guillaume Mollet, eds., *Benoît XII (1334-1342): Lettres claustrales et papales intéressant les pays autres que la France* (BÉFAR, 2nd ser.; 2 vols., Paris, 1899-1900).

- L43 Déprez, Eugène, ed., *Clement VI (1342-1352): Lettres closes, patentes et curiales se rapportant à la France* (BÉFAR, 3rd ser., 3 vols., Paris, 1901-1941).
- L44 Déprez, Eugène, ed., *Innocent VI (1352-1362): Lettres patentes, closes et curiales se rapportant à la France* (BÉFAR, 3rd ser.; Paris, 1898).
- L47 Garsenda, Pierre, Marie H. Lacombe, and Nicole Gauthier, eds., *Innocent VI (1352-1362): Lettres seches et curiales* (BÉFAR, 3rd ser., 4 vols., Paris, 1939-1974) (*Continués*).
- L48 Urbain V (1362-1370): *Lettres canoniques*, ed. by Membres de l'École Française de Rome, M. H. Lacombe, M. Hagen, A. M. Hagen, et al. (BÉFAR, 3rd ser., 10 vols., Paris, 1934-1963).
- L49 Letacheux, Paul C., and Guillaume Mollet, eds., *Urbain V (1362-1370): Lettres seches et curiales se rapportant à la France* (BÉFAR, 3rd ser.; Paris, 1932-1933).
- L50 Milot, Léon, and Henri Jaccard, eds., *Grégoire XI (1370-1378): Lettres seches et curiales relatives à la France* (BÉFAR, 3rd ser.; Paris, 1935); tables by Guillaume Mollet and Edmond R. Labande (Paris, 1937).
- L51 Mollet, Guillaume, ed., *Grégoire XI (1370-1378): Lettres seches et curiales adressées au pays autre que la France* (BÉFAR, 3rd ser.; 3 fascicles, Paris, 1962-1963).

DOCUMENTS—CRUSADES AND THE HOLY LAND

- M1 Barig, Gao, "A New Source Concerning the Ultimate Borders of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," *in: Euph. J. XXIX* (1979), 197-217.
- M2 Baudier, Robert H., "La Collection de chartes de croisade dite 'Collection Courtois,'" *CRABRE* (1934), pp. 382-384.
- M3 Belgrano, Luigi T., ed., *Documenti inediti riguardanti le due crociate di San Ludovico IX* (Genova, 1879).
- M4 Cahen, Claude, "Une Lettre d'un prisonnier musulman des Francs de Syrie," *in: Études de christianisme médiéval: Mélanges offerts à Edmond R. Labande* (Poitiers, 1974), pp. 43-47.
- M5 Constable, Giles, "Medieval Charters as a Source for the History of the Crusades," *in: Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1963), pp. 73-89.
- M6 Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, "Chartes de la Terre Sainte," *BO Latine*, XI (1903-1905), 181-191.
- M7 Deschamps, Paul, "Études sur un texte latin illustrant les possessions musulmanes dans le royaume de Jérusalem vers l'an 1238," *Syria*, XXIII (1942-1943), 96-104.
- M8 Gesta, Solomon D.P., "Contemporary Letters on the Capture of Jerusalem by the Crusaders," *Journal of Jewish Studies*, III (1952), 162-177.
- M9 Hagenmeyer, Heinrich, ed., *Epistolae et chartae ad litterarum prout bulli sacri spectantes quae sequuntur anno sequales et postulat: Die Kreuzzugsbriefe aus dem Jahre 1205-1200* (Hansdruck, 1901).
- M10 Hirschfeld, Rudolf, "Zwei unbekante Diplome des lateinischen Königs von Jerusalem aus Lucca," *QFAR*, I (1971), 1-52.
- M11 Holt, Peter M., "The Treaty of the Early Mamluk Sultan with the Frankish States," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XLIII (1982), 67-76.

- M12. Kedar, Benjamin Z., "The Passenger List of a Crusader Ship, 1250: Towards the History of the Popular Element on the Seventh Crusade," *Studi medievali*, 3-XIII (1972), 267-279.
- M13. Ray, Emmanuel G., *Recherches géographiques et historiques sur la domination des Latins en Orient* (Paris, 1877).
- M14. Riant, Paul E.D., "L'ensemble critique des lettres historiques de croisades," *AO Latine*, 1 (1881), 1-224.
- M15. Riant, Paul E.D., "Les Archives des établissements latins d'Orient," *AO Latine*, 1 (1881), 705-710.
- M16. Richard, Jean, "Un Recueil de lettres sur la huitième croisade," *Bulletin de la Société nationale des antiquaires de France* (1946), pp. 182-187.
- M17. Richard, Jean, "La Cour de Tripoli dans les chartes du fonds des Percefort," *BÉ Chaz.*, CXXIX (1972), 329-382.
- M18. Rehwinkel, Reinhold, ed., *Regesta regni Hierosolymitani, 1099-1291* (Frankfurt, 1897); *Addamentum* (Frankfurt, 1904; hoch repr. New York, 1940).

DOCUMENTS—CRUSADES AND HOLY LAND ECCLESIASTICAL INSTITUTIONS

- M19. Franc-Bautier, Geneviève, ed., *Le Cartulaire du chapitre du Saint-Sépulchre de Jérusalem* (DRH Cr., 15; Paris, 1964).
- M20. Bréal, Alexandre, "Chartes d'Adam, abbé de Notre-Dame du Mont-Sion, cénobite; Gérard, évêque de Valence, et le primate de Saint-Jamais d'Orléans (1200)," *AO Latine*, X (1903-1904), 1-13.
- M21. Cabon, Claude, "Un Document concernant les Melkites et les Latins d'Antioche au temps des croisades," *Réflex.*, XXXIX (1971), 283-292.
- M22. Chalaudon, Ferdinand, "Un Diplôme inédit d'Anseau I, roi de Jérusalem, en faveur de l'abbaye de Temple-Notre-Seigneur (1144)," *AO Latine*, VIII (1900-1901), 311-313.
- M23. Delaborda, Henri F., ed., *Chartes de Terre Sainte provenant de l'abbaye de Notre Dame de Jougphat* (BÉPAR, 19; Paris, 1900).
- M24. Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, "Thurs de l'hôpital des Bretons d'Acre," *AO Latine*, 1 (1881), 423-437.
- M25. Hunsbach, Rudolf, *Verordnungen zum Orient päpstlicher III: Papsturkunden für Kirchen im Heiligen Lande* (Abh. Öst., nr. 3, no. 15), Göttingen, 1905).
- M26. Kohler, Charles, "Chartes de l'abbaye de Notre-Dame de la vallée de Jougphat en Terre-Sainte (1108-1281)," *AO Latine*, VII (1899), 105-222.
- M27. Marry, Arthur de, "Fragments d'un cartulaire de l'ordre de Saint-Laure, en Terre Sainte," *AO Latine*, II-2 (1884), 121-152.
- M28. Mayer, Hans E., "Sankt Samuel auf dem Freudenberge und sein Bruch nach einem unbekanten Diplom König Rudolfs V.," *QZL&E*, XLIV (1964), 79-71.
- M29. Mayer, Hans E., "Die Stiftung Herzog Heinrich des Löwen für das hl. Grab," in *Heinrich der Löwe*, ed. Wolf D. Michaelson (Veröffentlichungen der Niedersächsischen Archivverwaltung, 79; Göttingen, 1960), pp. 307-330.
- M30. Peir, Ernest, "Chartes de l'abbaye cistercienne de Saint-Serge de Qibla en Syrie," *MS. Antiq.*, F. 3-VIII (1887), 20-30.
- M31. Ray, Emmanuel G., "Chartes de l'abbaye du Mont-Sion," *MS. Antiq.*, F. 3-VIII (1887), 31-34.

- M02. Richard, Jean, "Le Chantier de Sainte-Marie-Laune et l'établissement de Raymond de Saint-Gilles à Mout-Pélerin," in *Mélanges d'histoire du moyen âge dédiés à la mémoire des Louis Halphen* (Paris, 1951), pp. 503-612.
- M03. Richard, Jean, "La Fondation d'une église laïque en Orient par Saint Louis Dunois," *RÉCH*, CXX (1962), 39-54.
- M04. Roques, Eugène de, ed., *Cartulaire de l'Église du Saint-Sépulchre de Jérusalem* (Paris, 1849; repr. in *Migne, PL*, 155 [Paris, 1895], cols. 1162-1262).

DOCUMENTS—KNIGHTS HOSPITALIER

- N1. Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, *Les Archives, le bibliothécaire et le trésor de l'ordre de Saint-Jean de Jérusalem à Malte* (MÉFAR, 32; Paris, 1883).
- N2. Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, ed., *Cartulaire général de l'ordre des Hospitaliers de S. Jean de Jérusalem (1198-1291)* (4 vols., Paris, 1894-1906).
- N3. Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, "Manuscrits des églises de Terre Sainte de l'ordre de l'Hôpital," *BO Lat.*, III (1892), 36-306.
- N4. Cibaerem, Anthony L., and Giuseppe (Jura, Joseph, Mizz), compilers, *Catalogue of the Records of the Order of St. John in the Royal Malta Library* (3 vols., Malta, 1964-1978).
- N5. Hiestand, Rudolf, *Verzeichnis zum Orient pontificus: I. Papsturkunden für Templer und Johanniter: Archivalische und Texte* (Abh. Göt., 3rd ser., 77; Göttingen, 1972).
- N6. Hiestand, Rudolf, *Verzeichnis zum Orient pontificus: II. Papsturkunden für Templer und Johanniter: Neue Folge* (Abh. Göt., 3rd ser., 135; Göttingen, 1984).
- N7. Mizz, Giuseppe, "Di Alcune bolle papali monacate riguardanti l'ordine Gerusalemmano," *AGSMN*, XXIV (1964), 37-43.
- N8. [Paoli, Sebastianus, ed.] *Codex diplomaticus del sacro militare ordine Gerusalemitano oggi di Malta* (2 vols., Lucca, 1732-1737).
- N9. Prutz, Hans, *Malteser Urkunden und Register zur Geschichte der Tempelherren und der Johanniter* (Münch., 1893).

DOCUMENTS—KNIGHTS TEMPLAR

- N10. Albi, Ougre A.M.L.A. (marquis) d', ed., *Cartulaire général de l'ordre du Temple 1119-1510: recueil des chartes et des bulles relatives à l'ordre du Temple*, vol. 1 (Paris, 1892; *Fascicule complémentaire* [Paris, 1923]).
- N11. Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, *Documents concernant les Templiers anciens des archives de Malte* (Paris, 1882).
- N12. Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, "Bulles pour l'ordre du Temple tirées des archives de S. Germain de Cassan," *BO Lat.*, XI (1905-1906), 405-419.
- N13. Hilary, Peter W., "The Cartulaire de Manosque: a Glimpse into the Templars in Latin Syria and a Charter of King Hugh I of Cyprus," *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, LI (1978), 174-181.
- N14. Lévassat, Émile-G., *Introduction au cartulaire manuscrit du Temple (1120-1317), conservé par le marquis d'Alban et conservé à la Bibliothèque nationale, surveillé d'un abbé des moines frangiers du Temple et de leurs précepteurs* (Paris, 1920).

- N15. Liessard, Georges, *Le Donner de l'effigie des Roisphers* (Les clauques de l'histoire de France au moyen age; Paris, 1913).
- N16. Michélet, Jules, ed., *Le Frois des Roisphers* (CD media; 2 vols., Paris, 1841-1851).
- N17. Riley-Smith, Jonathan S.C., "The Roisphers and the Castle of Tortosa in Syria: an Unknown Document concerning the Acquisition of the Fortress," *Exp. IX, LXXIV* (1969), 278-280.
See also N5, N6, N9

DOCUMENTS—TEUTONIC KNIGHTS

- N18. Joachim, Erich, *Regesta Historico-diplomatica ordinis S. Mariae Theutonicorum, 1190-1323*, ed. Walther Hubatsch (2 parts and index in 3 vols., Göttingen, 1940-1943).
- N19. Pratielli, Riccardo, "Le Reliquie dell' archivio dell' ordine teutonico in Venezia," *Atti del Isterio Istituto Veneto di Scienze, Lettere ed Arti, LXIV* (1904-1905), 1379-1463.
- N20. Fritz, Hans, "Teil Deutschordens-Ordens aus Venedig und Malta," *Alt-preussische Monatsschrift, XI* (1893), 365-400.
- N21. Sirehka, Ernst, ed., *Tabular ordinis Theutonici ex tabulari regii Brandenburgensis codicis possessionum* (Berlin, 1869); 2nd ed. with preface and discussion of manuscript by Hans E. Mayer (Breslau, 1973).

DOCUMENTS—CILICIAN ARMENIA

- O1. Laugliola, Victor, ed., *Le Décor des chartes d'Arménie, un catalogue de la chancellerie royale des Roisphers, comprenant tous les documents relatifs aux établissements fondés en Cilicie par les ordres de chevalerie institués pendant les croisades et par les républicains marchands d'Italie* (Vestec, 1863).
- O2. Malczek, Werner, "Ein unbekannter Brief König Leo II. von Armenien an Papst Innocenz III.," *Altsächsische Historische Mitteilungen, XVI* (1971), 19-25.

DOCUMENTS—BYZANTINE EMPIRE

- P1. Dölger, Franz, and Peter Wirth, eds., *Regesten des Kaiserreichs der oströmischen Kaiser von 565-1025* (Corpus der griechischen Urkunden des Mittelalters und der neuen Zeit, ser. A, part 1; 3 vols., Munich and Berlin, 1924-1963; part 3, *Regesten von 1204 bis 1282*, 2nd rev. ed. by Peter Wirth (Munich, 1973).
- P2. Dölger, Franz, ed., *Aus den Schatzkammern des heiligen Berges: 170 Urkunden aus 10 Urkundenbüchern aus 10 Jahrhunderten* (Munich, 1948).
- P3. Floridi, Tassilo D., ed., *Ajmanik Akty* (St. Petersburg, 1890).
- P4. Graml, Venance, and Vitalien Laurent, eds., *Les Actes des patriarches* (Le plus grand ouvrage scientifique de diplomatique, d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastiques: 1st ser., *Les origines des actes du patriarchat de Constantinople*, vol. 1; 4 fascicles, Neuchâtel and Paris, 1932-1971).

- P5 Laurent, Violaine, and Jean Darroux, eds., *Dossier grec de l'union de Lyon (1273-1279)* (Archives de l'Orient chrétien, 16; Paris, 1970).
- P6 Miklosich, Franz von, and Joseph Müller, eds., *Acta et diplomata Graeco-mediterranea aevi sacri et profani* (5 vols., Vienna, 1862-1890).
- P7 Petit, Louis, ed., *Actes de l'Église* (St. Petersburg, 1803; repr. Amsterdam, 1964).
- P8 Ravilland, Germaine, and Paul Collomp, eds., *Actes de Léonce: édition diplomatique et critique d'après les descriptions, photographies et copies de Gabriel Millet et Spécimen de Léonce* (Archives de l'Asie, publiées sous la direction de Gabriel Millet; Paris, 1937).
- P9 Seltus, Constantinos (Ier., Konstantinos) N., ed., *Μεγαλὴ Ἐκκλησιᾶς ἱεροσολίταις: ὁρμητὴρ καὶ ἀποκλίσας ἐπὶ τῷ θρόνῳ τοῦ ἐκκλησιαστικοῦ τοῦ μέσου αἰῶνος* (3 vols., Athens and Paris, 1880-1890).
- P10 Thomsen, Augustus, and Franz von Miklosich, eds., *Monumenta spectantia ad unionem ecclesiarum Graecae et Romanae* (Vienna, 1872).
- P11 Wala, M. de, "La Lettre d'Alexis Comnène à Robert Ier le Froid: une révision," *Byzantion*, XLVI (1977), 113-122.
- P12 Wil, Cornelius, ed., *Acta et scripta quae de conservanda ecclesia Graeca et Latina sacris XI concilio constanti* (Leipzig, 1841).

DOCUMENTS—FRANKISH GREECE

- Q1 Chabot, Eugène M., "Un Comnène, relatif à l'organisation de la compagnie caennaise en Orient (1304)," *Le Moyen-âge*, XXIII (= 3-XIV, 1910), 191-203.
- Q2 Dennis, George T., "Three Reports from Crete on the Situation in Romania, 1401-1402," *Studia orientalia*, XII (1970), 245-265.
- Q3 Gerland, Ernst, *Neue Quellen zur Geschichte des lateinischen Erzbistums Patras (Hellas) von byzantinischen griechischen und römischen Inschriften. Scriptores sacri et profani*, 5; Leipzig, 1903).
- Q4 Louartz, Raymond J., "Athènes et Néopatrie: rigères et actions pour servir à l'histoire des diocèses catholiques, 1311-1394," *AP France*, XXV (1955), 100-212, 428-431.
- Q5 Louartz, Raymond J., "Hospitalliers et Navarrais en Grèce (1379-1383) rigères et documents," *O. Chr. P.* XXII (1956), 313-360.
- Q6 Louartz, Raymond J., "Athènes et Néopatrie: rigères et documents pour servir à l'histoire ecclésiastique des diocèses catholiques (1311-1394)," *AP France*, XXVIII (1958), 5-91.
- Q7 Longpré, Jean, and Peter W. Topping, eds., *Documents sur le régime des terres dans la principauté de Morée au XIII^e siècle* (École française des hautes-études: Documents et recherches sur l'économie des pays byzantins, islamiques et slaves et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge, 9; Paris and The Hague, 1969).
- Q8 Petrit, Charles, and Jean Longpré, eds., *Actes relatifs à la principauté de Morée, 1299-1360* (CD inédits, Octavo vices, 4; Paris, 1967).
- Q9 Pokrows, Rudolf, "Zwei mediterrane Briefe aus der Präfektur des lateinischen Kaiserreichs von Konstantinopel," *Byzantion*, LV (1955), 180-209.
- Q10 Sabré y Lluch, Antoni, *Diplomari de l'Orient català, 1301-1406: col·lecció de documents per la història de l'expedició catalana a Orient i dels ducats d'Ajaccio i Neopàtria* (Barcelona, 1947).

DOCUMENTS — CYPRUS

- R1 LaMonte, John L., "A Register of the Cantabry of the Cathedral of Santa Sophia of Nicosa," *Bronze Age*, V (1929-1930), 429-322.
- R2 Mai Latris, Louis de, "Nouvelles preuves de l'histoire de Chypre sous le règne des princes de la maison de Lusignan," *BE Chet.* XXXII (1871), 341-378; XXXIV (1873), 47-87, XXXV (1874), 99-154.
- R3 Mai Latris, Louis de, *Documenta novaeque scriptura de praeiis à l'histoire de l'île de Chypre sous le règne des princes de la maison de Lusignan* (CD in-folio, *Mélanges historiques*, 4; Paris, 1882), 337-619.
- R4 Pascoli, Edmondo, "Compte du domaine de Caesars de Brème au royaume de Chypre," *Bulletin de la Commission royale d'histoire*, XCVIII (1914), 1-28.
- R5 Richard, Jean, *Chypre sous les Lusignan: documents chypriotes des archives de Mexico (XIV^e et XV^e siècles)* (Bibl. AM, 73; Paris, 1962).
- R6 Richard, Jean, ed., *Le Livre des renseignements de la série du royaume de Chypre (1468-1469)*, with Thodoros Papadopoulos (Centre de recherches archéologiques. *Sources et études de l'histoire de Chypre*, 10; Nicosa, 1983).

DOCUMENTS — VENICE

- B1 *Benvenuto de Brindisi, notaio in Candia (1261-1262)*, ed. Raimondo Marotta della Rota (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1930).
- B2 *Domenico, notaio di S. Maurizio, notaio in Venezia (1268-1276)*, ed. Maria Francesca Thopis (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1970).
- B3 *Police de Merle, notaio e notaio in Venezia ad Agri (1313-1348)*, vol. I, ed. Andriana Boudi Sabadico (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1973).
- B4 *Leonardo Marcello, notaio in Candia (1278-1283)*, ed. Mario Clausiano and Antonino Lombardo (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1940).
- B5 *Maverio Bug, notaio in Trebisonda, Venezia (1403-1408)*, ed. Sandro de' Colli (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1963).
- B6 *Nicola de Basteris, notaio in Famagosta e Hemitte (1338-1362)*, ed. Antonino Lombardo (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1973).
- B7 *Pietro Paolo, notaio in Candia (1300)*, ed. Salvatore Carlinato (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1978).
- B8 *Zaccaria de Prato, notaio in Candia (1332-1337)*, ed. Antonino Lombardo (Ponsi SV, Sezione 3: Archivi notari; Venice, 1964).
- B9 *Basilio, Jacopo (Giacomo), Il Libro dei conti (Costantinopoli 1436-1446) di Giacomo Basilio*, ed. Romano Bertoli and Umberto Dorini (Il Nuovo Ritratto, raccolte di viaggi, testi e documenti relativi ai rapporti fra l'Europa e l'Oriente, 3; Roma, 1956).
- B10 *Barnochi, Antonio, and Rinaldo Fulin, "Le Carte del mille e del millesimo che si conservano nel R. archivio notariale di Venezia,"* *Arch. Hist.*, VI (1873), 293-307, VII (1874), 86-98, 352-366; VIII (1874), 134-135, IX (1875), 99-113; X (1875), 323-354; XX (1880), 51-80, 214-230; XXI (1881), 208-220; XXII (1883), 311-332.
- B11 *Cenci, Roberto, ed., Deliberazioni del Maggior Consiglio di Venezia* (Atti delle assemblee costituzionali italiane dal millecin al 1831, 3rd ser., Parlamento

- e strength maggiori dei comuni italiani, *Sezione I*; 3 vols., Bologna, 1931-1935).
512. Korkel, Bertha, *Deliverment (Ransom) et le Levant au moyen âge* (École pratique des hautes études, VI section: Documents et recherches sur l'économie des pays byzantins, islamiques et slaves et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge, 5, Paris, 1941).
513. Martin, M. E., "The Venetian-Seljuk Treaty of 1220," *Ang. HA*, XCIV (1940), 321-336.
514. Mas Latrie, Louis de, *Recueil de chartes et documents divers concernant les relations des chrétiens avec les Arabes de l'Afrique septentrionale au moyen âge* (Paris, 1846); *Supplément* (Paris, 1872).
515. Mas Latrie, Louis de, *Commerce et conditions militaires de la France et de l'Inde au moyen âge* (CD inédite, Mélanges historiques, 3, Paris, 1880).
516. Morozzo della Rocca, Raimondo, and Antonino Lombardo, eds., *Documenti del commercio veneziano nei secoli XI-XIII* (Rivista storica italiana, 28-29 [= Documenti e studi per la storia del commercio e del diritto commerciale italiano, 19-20]; 2 vols., Rome and Turin, 1940).
517. Morozzo della Rocca, Raimondo, and Antonino Lombardo, eds., *Novecento documenti del commercio veneto dei secoli XI-XIII* (Deputazione di storia patria per la Venezia: Monumenti storici, n.s., 7, Venice, 1931).
518. Nolet, Hippolyte, ed., *Documents inédits pour servir à l'histoire de la domination vénitienne au Caire de 1382 à 1483* (IIEFAR, 61; Paris, 1872).
519. Predelli, Riccardo, and Pietro Bonello, eds., *I Libri commemoriali della repubblica di Venezia: Rapporti (1291-1797)* (Rivista deputazione veneta di storia patria: Monumenti storici, Ser. I, Documenti I, 1, 7-8, 10-11, 12, 17, 2 vols., Venice, 1974-1916).
520. Tschl, Gottlieb L.F., and Georg M. Thomas, eds., *Urkunden zur älteren Handels- und Staatsgeschichte der Republik Venedig mit besonderer Beziehung auf Byzanz und die Levante* (Fontes rerum Austriacarum, Sectio II, 12-14; 3 vols., Vienna, 1824-1837).
521. Thiriet, Freddy, ed., *Réponses des délibérations du sénat de Venise concernant la Roumélie* (École pratique des hautes études, Documents et recherches sur l'économie des pays byzantins, islamiques et slaves et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge, 1, 2, and 4, 3 vols., Paris and The Hague, 1928-1941).
522. Thiriet, Freddy, ed., *Délibérations des assemblées vénitienes concernant la Roumélie* (École pratique des hautes études, Documents et recherches sur l'économie des pays byzantins, islamiques et slaves et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge, 6, 11; 2 vols., Paris and The Hague, 1946-1971).
523. Thomas, Georg M., and Riccardo Predelli, eds., *Diplomatarium veneto-byzantinum: Acta et diplomata cum Venetia Graeciae inter Latinitatem Musulanicam, 1300-1401* (Rivista Deputazione veneta di storia patria. Monumenti storici, Ser. I, Documenti 3, 9; 2 vols., Venice, 1880-1879).

DOCUMENTS—GENOA

524. *Storiciello (1790)*, ed. J. E. Bierman, Hilmar C. Krueger, and Robert L. Reynolds (R. Deputazione di storia patria per la Liguria, Note liguri del secolo XIX, 3; Genoa, 1879).

- 525 *Cartacei di Guglielmo (1200-1215)*, ed. Margaret W. Hall-Cole, Hilmar C. Krueger, R. G. Reucart, and Robert L. Reynolds (R. Depositazione di storia patria per la Liguria, Notizi liguri del secolo XII, 5: 2 parte, Genoa, 1940).
- 526 *Capitolo Camerale (1190-1195)*, ed. Margaret W. Hall, Hilmar C. Krueger, and Robert L. Reynolds (R. Depositazione di storia patria per la Liguria, Notizi liguri del secolo XII, 5: 2 parte, Genoa, 1938).
527. *Langhans (1202-1224)*, ed. Hilmar C. Krueger and Robert L. Reynolds (Società liguri di storia patria, Notizi liguri del secolo XII e del secolo XIII, 6, 3 parte, Genoa, 1951-1953).
- 528 *Ottavo Scritto di Alberto (1196)*, ed. Mario Chiodasco (R. Depositazione di storia patria per la Liguria, Notizi liguri del secolo XII, 4, Genoa, 1939).
- 529 *Ottavo Scritto di Alberto (1196)*, ed. Mario Chiodasco and Raimondo Moriconi della Rocca (R. Depositazione di storia patria per la Liguria, Notizi liguri del secolo XII, 5, Genoa, 1934).
- 530 Balas, Michel, *Génes et l'Orient: 1. Les actes de Cécile de notaire Lamberto di Sambuceto (1205-1206); 2. Actes de Cécile de notaire Antonio di Puccio (1260)* (*Étude pratique des textes arabo pers.* 2. Étude des textes relatifs en sciences sociales): Documents et recherches sur l'économie des pays byzantins, islamiques et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge, 12, 13: 2 vols., Paris, The Hague, and New York, 1973-1980).
531. Barker, John W., "Miscellaneous Genoese Documents on the Levantine World of the Late Fourteenth and Early Fifteenth Centuries," *Byzantine Studies*, VI (1979), 49-82.
532. Bigoni, Guido, "Quattro documenti genovesi sulle scienze d'Oriente nel secolo XIII," *Archivio storico italiano*, 5-XCIV (1899), 52-85.
533. Bréhaut, Georges L., *Actes des notaires génois de Pise et de Cécile de la fin du treizième siècle (1260-1299)* (Académie roumaine, Études et recherches, 2, Bucharest, 1927).
- 534 Chiodasco, Mario, and Isotta Moriconi, eds., *Il Carteggio di Giovanni Scritto* (Documenti e studi per la storia del commercio e del diritto commerciale italiano, 1-2; 2 vols., Turin, 1931; repr. Turin, 1950).
535. Desimoni, Cornelio, "Atto genovese del 1271, 1274 et 1279 à l'Alas (Petite Anzibile) et à Beyrouth par devant des notaires génois," *AO Latine*, 1 (1880), 434-534.
536. Desimoni, Cornelio, "Actes genois à Painsgrate de 1299 à 1301 par devant le notaire génois Lamberto di Sambuceto," *AO Latine*, II-2 (1884), 3-130; cf. *AO Latine*, I (1893), 38-139, 275-312, 321-323.
537. Desimoni, Cornelio, "Quatre titres des propriétés des Génois à Acce et à Tyre," *AO Latine*, II-2 (1884), 213-230.
538. Holt, Peter M., "Quintus's Treaty with Genoa in 1290," *Der Islam*, LVII (1960), 161-168.
539. *Espeleto di Sant' Angelo, Cezari, ed., Codice diplomatico della repubblica di Genova* (Fonti 58, 71, 79, 89; 3 vols., Roma, 1936-1942).

DOCUMENTS—PISA

540. Fourn Oron, Catherine, "Les Pisans en Egypte et à Acce dans la seconde moitié du XIII^e siècle: documents nouveaux," *Bullettino storico pisano*, LII (1963), 163-190.

540. Müller, Joseph (from, Giuseppe), ed., *Documenti sulle relazioni della città toscana col Papato cristiano e col Turchi fino all'anno 1531* (Documenti degli archivi toscani, 3, Florence, 1879; repr. Rome, 1964).

DOCUMENTS--NAPLES AND SICILY

542. Capasso, Bartolomeo, *Avvenimenti cronologici-sistematici dei registri angioini conservati nell'archivio di stato in Napoli* (Naples, 1874).
543. Carial, Isidoro, and Raffaele Starobino, *Gli Archivi e le biblioteche di Spagna in rapporto alla storia d'Italia in generale e di Sicilia in particolare* (2 vols., Palermo, 1884-1897).
546. Cosentino, Giuseppe, ed., *Codice diplomatico di Federico III di Aragona, re di Sicilia (1333-1377)* vol. I, 1333-1360 (Documenti per servire alla storia di Sicilia, 1st ser., Diplomatica, 9, Palermo, 1885, all partitura).
545. Dardas, Paul, *Les Archives angevines de Naples: étude sur les registres de roi Charles I (1265-1285)* (BÉFAR, 44, 51, 2 vols., Paris, 1885-1887).
546. Giulian, Giuseppe del, ed., *Codice diplomatico del regno di Carlo I et II d'Angio dal 1265 al 1285* (2 vols., Naples, 1863-1902).
547. Janssen, Evelyn M., "Documents from the Angevin Registers of Naples, Charles I," *Papers of the British School at Rome*, XVII (1949), 87-100.
548. Lefèvre, R., *La Crociata di Tunisi del 1270 nei documenti del distretto archivio angioino di Napoli* (Istituto luso-africano, Quaderni della civiltà "Africa", 5; Rome, 1977).
549. Trivici, Giuseppe, *I Diplomi angioini dell'archivio di stato di Palermo* (Documenti per servire alla storia di Sicilia, 1st ser., Diplomatica, 7, Palermo, 1886).
550. — *Codice diplomatico dei re aragonesi di Sicilia Pietro I, Giacomo, Federico II, Pietro II e Ludovico dalla rivoluzione siciliana del 1282 sino al 1315*, vol. I ed. Giuseppe La Manna, vol. II ed. Antonino di Stefano and Francesco Gratta (Documenti per servire alla storia di Sicilia, 23, 24, Palermo, 1918-1954).
551. — *I Registri della cancelleria angioina ricostruiti da Riccardo Filangieri con la collaborazione degli archivisti napoletani* (Accademia Pontaniana, Naples, Tratti e documenti di storia napoletana, 1-32, 30 vols., Naples, 1950-1971).

DOCUMENTS--AMALFI

552. Cassero, Matteo, *Memorie storico-diplomatiche dell'antico città e ducato di Amalfi* (2 vols., Naples, 1874-1881; repr. Salerno, 1972).

DOCUMENTS--MARSEILLES

- T1. Biancard, Louis, ed., *Documentes inédits sur le commerce de Marseille au moyen-âge* (2 vols., Marseille, 1884-1885).
- T2. Mayer, Hans E., *Medieval Letterhandwriting and an old-Latin script: Fischersberg der 13. Jahrhundert* (Bibliothek des Deutschen historischen Instituts in Rom, 54; Tübingen, 1972).

DOCUMENTS—SPAIN

- U1. Bofarull y Masarro, Francesc, et al., eds., *Colección de documentos inéditos del Archivo general de la corona de Aragón* (41 vols., Barcelona, 1847-1910).
- U2. Foote, Heinrich, ed., *Acta Aragonensia, Quellen zur deutschen, italienischen, französischen, spanischen, zur Kirchen- und Kulturgeschichte aus der diplomatischen Korrespondenz Aragon II. (1229-1227)* (3 vols., Berlin, 1908-1922); "Nachträge und Ergänzungen zu den Acta Aragonensia I-III," *Gesellschaft für Kulturgeschichte Spaniens*, VII (Spanische Forschungen der Obergesellschaft, ser. I, 7, Münster, 1938), pp. 328-346.
- U3. Goyelles, Jabo, ed., *Regesta de Fernando II* (Consejo superior de investigaciones científicas, Instituto Arriazo Zarco; Madrid, 1942).
- U4. Huici Miranda, Andrés, ed., *Colección diplomática de Jaime I el Conquistador* (3 vols., Valencia, 1914-1922).

DOCUMENTS—GERMAN EMPIRE

- V1. Arnold, Julius, ed., *Regesten zur Geschichte der Juden im fränkischen und deutschen Reich bis zum Jahre 1273* (Quellen zur Geschichte der Juden in Deutschland, 3-6; 2 vols., Berlin, 1887-1902).
- V2. Behnen, Johann F., *Regesta imperii IV. Kaiser Sauger. Abs. 3. Die Regesten des Kaiserreichs unter Heinrich VI. 1185 (1190-1197)*, compiled by Gerhard Boehm (Ost- und Cologn, 1972).
- V3. Behnen, Johann F., *Regesta imperii V. Die Regesten des Kaiserreichs unter Philipp Otto IV., Friedrich II., Heinrich (VII.), Conrad IV., Heinrich Rabe, Wilhelm und Richard. 1198-1172*, ed. Julius Fichtel and Eduard Winkelmann (3 vols. in 5, Innsbruck, 1881-1901).
- V4. Haupt, Karl, ed., *Acta postea ad S. Germanum anno MCCXXX intentae die ALEXANDRI cum Privilegio von S. Germano, 1239* (MGH, Epistolae selectae, 4, Berlin, 1933).
- V5. Holtzmann, Walter, "Papst-, Kaiser- und Normannenurkunden aus Unteritalien," *QPLAB* XXXV (1955), 46-85.
- V6. Huillard-Bréholles, Jean L.A., *Historia diplomatie Frederici secundi* (8 parts in 12 vols., Paris, 1852-1905).
- V7. Zimmmer, Paul, "Nachträge zu den Kaiser- und Königsurkunden der Regesta imperii 919-1172," *Zeitschrift für die Geschichte der Oberpfalz*, CII (= n.s., LXIII) (1954), 188-273.

DOCUMENTS—HUNGARY

- W1. Gelcich, Mircel, and Lajos Thidóczy, eds., *Diplomatarium relativum reipublicae reginae cum reipha Hungariae* (Budapest, 1887).

DOCUMENTS—BALKANS

- X1. Jorga, Nicolae, *Notes et extraits pour servir à l'histoire des croisades de XIV siècle* (8 vols., Paris and Bucharest, 1899-1916).

LEGAL SOURCES

- Y1. *Armenisches Rechtsbuch*, ed. Josef Karst (2 vols., Strassburg, 1909).
- Y2. *Armenisches Rechtsbuch, reproduktion in französisch*, ed. Léonard (Paris, Librairie M. Ashkhan (Ghennant Ashkhanian) (Munich, 1936).
- Y3. *Constitutiones et acta publicae imperatorum et regum*, vols. 1-3, ed. Ludwig Weiland and Jakob Schwan (MGH, Legum, sectio 4, Hannover and Leipzig, 1895-1906).
- Y4. *Deutsche Reichstagsakten unter Kaiser Sigmund* (Deutsche Reichstagsakten, 7-10; 4 vols., Munich and Götting, 1871-1906).
- Y5. *Die Statuten des Deutschen Ordens*, ed. Max Perlschack (Halle, 1890), or, *Indicula Statuta of The Statutes of the Teutonic Knight a Study of Religious Chivalry* (Mss., University of Pennsylvania; Philadelphia, 1942).
- Y6. *Die ursprüngliche Bepfeilung*, ed. Oskar Schader (Studien und Darstellungen aus dem Gebiet der Geschichte, III-4; Freiburg im Breisgau, 1903).
- Y7. *Gli Statuti municipali venetiani fino al 1253*, ed. Riccardo Padellani and Adolfo Saccerotti (Venezia, 1903, separate editions, originally printed in *Nuovo archivio veneto*, n.s., IV [1903], 113-164, 267-298; V [1903], 341-251, 314-350).
- Y8. *Gli Statuti venetiani di Jacopo Tiepolo del 1262 e le loro glorie*, ed. Roberto Cusi (Memorie del R. Istituto di scienze, lettere ed arti, XXX-2, Venice, 1938).
- Y9. *Das Gesetz-Romanen*, ed. Karl E. Zachariae von Lingenthal (7 vols., Leipzig, 1854-1884).
- Y10. *La Règle de Templo*, ed. Henri de Curzon (Société de l'histoire de France; Paris, 1886).
- Y11. "Les Statuts de Jérusalem ou recueil des ouvrages de jurisprudence composés pendant le XIII^e siècle dans les royaumes de Jérusalem et de Chypre," ed. [Auguste] Brongniart, *RHC, Lois*, 1 (Paris, 1841), 22-444; II (Paris, 1849), 19-537.
- Y12. *Les Statuts de Roumanie*, ed. Georges Becsere (B. Éc. H.E., 253, Paris, 1930).
- Y13. *Les Livres des Statuts et des usages des royaumes de Jérusalem, sive, Leges et instituta regni Hierosolymitano*, vol. I, ed. Eduard H. von Kautler (Stuttgart, 1859).
- Y14. *Libri consuetudinum imperii Romanici: Prædile Institutiones ut Revisæ in the Statutes of Romania, the Law Code of Frankish Greece*, II, and ed. Polar W. Topping (Philadelphia, 1949; repr. New York, 1960).
- Y15. *Libri legum regniqumque Germanie*, ed. Ercole Ricotti (Historiae patriæ monumenta, 3 s. 2 vols., Turin, 1854-1857).
- Y16. *Synopsis, constabularii (Synopsi Synopseti)*, Salsjevelt (Middel-Armenian Lawbook), ed. A. G. Oshatjan (Erivan, 1934).
- Y17. "Statuti della colonia genovese di Pera," ed. Vincenzo Fronta, *Ateneion di storia italiana*, XI (1878), 513-780.
- Y18. "Statuti e ordinamenti sul governo del Banco di San Giorgio a Patragosta," ed. Vito Vitale, *Atti della Società ligure di storia patria*, LXIV (1915), 380-404.
- Y19. *Statuti municipali della città di Pisa dal XII al XIV secolo*, ed. Francesco Bonetti (3 vols., Florence, 1854-1870).
- Y20. *The Councils of Urban II: 1. Decreta Cleromontana*, ed. Robert Somerville (Amsterdam historiae conciliorum, Supplementum I, Amsterdam, 1972).

Secondary Works

- Abd-ur Raziq, *All, Islam and the Foundations of Authority: a Study of the Caliphate and Government in Islam*, tr. Charles C. Adams (Chicago, 1928).
- Abel, Félix M., "Le Couronnement des Frères Prêcheurs à St. Jean d'Acz," *Revue biblique*, XLIII (1934), 365-384.
- Abel-Béraud, Jean Pierre, "Mémoires sur les relations politiques des princes chrétiens et particulièrement des rois de France avec les empereurs mongols," *MAIR*, VI (1822), 394-469; VII (1824), 335-458.
- Abulafia, David, "Henry Corner of Malta and his Mediterranean Activities, 1302-1320," in *Medieval Malta: Studies on Malta before the Knights*, ed. Anthony L. Lattrell (London, 1975), pp. 104-125.
- Abulafia, David, "Crusader and Crusader: San Gimignano, Pisa and the Kingdom of Jerusalem," in *Crusader* (1962), pp. 227-243.
- Abulafia, David, "Invented Nations in the Crusader Charters," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 135-143.
- Aguado Baye, Pedro, *Manual de historia de España*, rev. ed. by Cayetano Albiol Molina (Ciencias biográficas; 3 vols., Madrid, 1969-1971).
- Ahrweiler, Hélène, *Syrie et la mer: le marin de guerre, le politique et les institutions maritimes de Syrie aux VII^e-XIV^e siècles* (Bibliothèque syrienne, Istanbul, 5; Paris, 1964).
- Ainslie, Gabriella, and Benjamin Z. Kedar, *I Comuni italiani nel regno crociato di Gerusalemme: Atti del colloquio "The Italian Communes in the Crusading Kingdom of Jerusalem"* (Jerusalem, May 24-May 28, 1984) (Collana storica di testi e studi, 48, Ginevra, 1984).
- Alibian, Leonard M. (bars, Libanon), *Leban le Magnifique, premier roi de Hachoum ou de Hachoum-Chirak*, tr. Georges Bayle (Venise, 1881).
- Alibian, Leonard M. (bars, Libanon), *L'Armenie Hachoum: Compendio storico e documenti delle relazioni dagli Armeni col Westem: 1. Primo periodo, secoli XIII-XIV; Compendio storico; 2. Primo periodo, secoli XIII-XIV Documenti* (2 vols., Venice, 1895).
- Allen, William E.D., *A History of the Georgian People from the Beginning down to the Russian Conquest in the Nineteenth Century* (London, 1932).
- Allsenbinger, Karl Heinz, *Die Beziehungen zwischen der Komnenen-Pisa und Ägypten im hohen Mittelalter* (VSWG, 34, Beiheft; Wiesbaden, 1967).
- Almagù, Roberto, et al., *Nel VII Centenario della nascita di Marco Polo* (Istruta veneto di scienze, lettere, ed. arte; Venice, 1935).
- Almeida, Fortunato de, *História de Portugal* (6 vols., Coimbra, 1922-1929).
- Alphandry, Paul, and Alphonsus Depont, *Le Christianisme et l'Église de croisée. 1. Les premières croisades; 2. Reconquêtes croisées musulmanes (XI^e et XII^e siècles)* (Bibliothèque de synthèses historiques: L'évolution de l'humanité, 38, 38a, 2 vols., Paris, 1954, 1958).
- Altner, Berthold, *Die Deutschordensmissionen des 13. Jahrhunderts: Forschungen zur Geschichte der kirchlichen Unionen und der Mohammedaner- und Heidenmissionen des Mittelalters* (Breslauer Studien zur historischen Theologie, 3; Habelschwerdt, 1924).
- Altner, Berthold, "Sprachkennzeichen und Deutscherworte an missionarischen und diplomatischen Verkehr zwischen Abendland (päpstliche Kurie) und Orient im 13. und 14. Jahrhundert," *Z. Koch*, LV (1936), 83-136.

- Albanus, Berthold, "Zur Kenntnis des Archibischofs des 13. und 14. Jahrhunderts," *Ost-Eur.* II (1937), 427-432.
- Alberici, Marie T.-F., "La Commune de Fiesole au Occident du IXe au milieu du XIIIe siècle," in *L'Orientisme e l'Italia nell' alto medioevo*, II (Spoleto, 1963), pp. 577-603, 791-805.
- Alberici, Marie T.-F., "Alain de Lille et Fiesole: le Centre Paganus," in *Islam et Christianisme du VIIIe siècle - à nos J.* (Cahiers de Fanjeaux, 18; Toulouse, 1983), pp. 361-390.
- Asnari, Michele, *Storia del munifismo di Sicilia*, 2nd ed. by Carlo A. Nallino (Biblioteca siciliana di storia, letteratura ed arte; 3 vols., Catania, 1933-1939).
- Auerhahn, Maria, *Strassen über die Adelsvererbung* (Freiburg [in Switzerland], 1929).
- Andrus, Alfred L., "Council of Kinsburgh, Bishop of Halberstadt, Crusader and Monk of Sittichenbach: his Ecclesiastical Career, 1114-1123," *American Churchman*, XLII (1944), 11-19.
- Andrus, Alfred L., "Cistercian Accounts of the Fourth Crusade: Were They Anti-Venetian?," *American Churchman*, XLIV (1945), 3-41.
- Andreassen, John C., *The Ancestry and Life of Godfrey of Bouillon* (Indiana University Publications, Social Science Series, 3; Bloomington, 1947, repr. Freeport, N.Y., 1972).
- Andrews, Kevin, *Charles of the Morvcs* (Columbia Monographs, 4, Princeton, 1932; repr. Amsterdam, 1970).
- Angelier, David, "Certains aspects de la conquête des peuples balkaniques par les Turcs," *Byzantinoslavica*, XVI (1946), 230-271.
- Angold, Michael, *A Byzantine Government in Exile: Government and Society under the Laskarids of Nicaea (1261-1261)* (London, 1973).
- Angyal, David, "Le Traité de paix de Szeged avec les Turcs (1444)," *Revue de Hongrie*, 19-7 (1911), 253-264, 374-392.
- Antoniadou-Bitsaki, Hélène, *Recherches sur les devoirs à Byzance: l' "oikoumène," la "katholikou" et les cosmopolitismes* (Cahiers des Annales, 20, Paris, 1963).
- Antuña, Melchor M., "Compulsión de los Almorávides en España," *Religión y cultura*, XXIX (1933), 247-273.
- Ashken, Thomas A., "On the Accusation Dates of the Early Kings of Jerusalem," *Exp. Hist.* IV (1959), 89-105.
- Argenti, Philip F., *The Occupation of China by the Genesees and their Administration of the Island, 1269-1266* (3 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1938).
- Argenti, Philip F., "The Mahona of the Genesees: Genesees Colonialism and the Genesees Relationship with China," *Exp. Hist.* VI (1979), 1-35.
- Arkal de Leuze van Wieren, Andrus van, and Kruse-Giggart, "St. Thieriac's in Constantinople, Built by a Frankish Emperor," *Byzantioslavica*, XLIX (1979), 428-446.
- Armistead, Jean IM., "Witten et le Bas-Empire," *Archives des sciences sociales et humaines*, 2-IV (1967), 299-443.
- Arnold, Thomas W., and Alfred Guillaume, eds., *The Legacy of Islam* (Oxford, 1931).
- Arnold, Udo, "Jerusalem und Aklon: zur Frage von Konstantin oder Neugründung des Deutschen Ordens 1190," *Archiv. LXXXVII* (1970), 416-432.
- Arnold, Udo, "Entstehung und Frühzeit des Deutschen Ordens: 21 Gründung und unsere Struktur des Deutschen Hospitals von Aklon und des Klosterordens in den ersten Hälfte des 13. Jahrhunderts," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Josef Fleckenstein und Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 16, Sigmaringen, 1966), pp. 21-107.

- Aischel, Walter, *Über den byzantinischen Feuerschiffbau und seine den Moschier über* (Deutsches Museum, Abhandlungen und Berichte, 48: Munich, 1900).
- Ashkar, Elysha, "Régénération urbaine dans le Proche-Orient à l'époque des croisades?" *Cah. Cr. Méd.*, XVIII (1975), 107-120.
- Ashkar, Elysha, and Benjamin Z. Kedar, "Une Croisade des Génois à l'île de Mani (milieu du XII^e)," *Archivum historicum italicum*, CXXCVIII (1975), 3-44.
- Ashkar, Elysha, *A Social and Economic History of the Near East in the Middle Ages* (London, 1976).
- Ashkar, Elysha, "Il Commercio levantino di Anversa nel basso medioevo," *Rivista storica italiana*, LXXXVIII (1976), 213-252.
- Ashkar, Elysha, "Observations on Venetian Trade in the Levant in the XIVth Century," *Journal of European Economic History*, V (1974), 323-326.
- Ashkar, Elysha, "The Venetian Cotton Trade in Syria in the Later Middle Ages," *Studia mediorientalia*, 3-XVII (1974), 471-713.
- Ashkar, Elysha, "Levantine Sugar Industry in the Later Middle Ages - an Example of Technological Decline," *Levant Oriental Studies*, VII (1975), 226-276.
- Ashkar, Elysha, "L'Exportation de textiles occidentaux dans le Proche Orient musulman au bas moyen âge (1270-1517)," in *Studi in memoria di Federico Crispien*, ed. L. de Ruggi (Naples, 1976), II, 309-371.
- Ashkar, Elysha, *Studies on the Levantine Trade in the Middle Ages* (Varior. Repr., CS, 74, London, 1978).
- Ashkar, Elysha, "Europäischer Handel im spätmittelalterlichen Palästina," in *Das Heilige Land im Mittelalter*, ed. Wolfdietrich Fischer and Jürgen Schneider (Neumünster an der Elbe, 1982), pp. 107-126.
- Azzam, Camille, "L'Albâtre de Beyrouth sous l'Empire de Salomon," *Bulletin de l'École de Beyrouth*, XXV (1972, publ. 1975), 1-69.
- Azzari, Guido, "L'Organizzazione giuridica del sistema coloniale e della navigazione mercantile delle città italiane nel medioevo," in *Mediterraneo e Oceano Indiano: Atti del VI colloquio di storia medievale* (Civiltà veneziana, 3201, 23, Florence, 1970), pp. 55-90.
- Atiya, Aziz S., *The Crusade of Nicaea* (London, 1934; repr. New York, 1978).
- Atiya, Aziz S., *The Crusade in the Later Middle Ages* (London, 1938).
- Atiya, Aziz S., *A History of Eastern Christianity* (London and New Danne, 1968).
- Atiya, Aziz S., "The Crusade in the Fourteenth Century," *J. of C. St.* (1915), 3-26, and "The Aftermath of the Crusades," *ibid.*, 647-666.
- Ayoub, David, *Studies on the Mamluks of Egypt (1250-1382)* (Varior. Repr., CS, 43, London, 1977).
- Babington, Fritz, "Von Anwesenheit an Anwesenheit: Vor- und Nachspiel der Schlacht bei Varna," *Ormus*, III (1950), 229-263.
- Babington, Fritz, *Mehmed der Eroberer und seine Zeit: Weltuntergang einer Zivilisations-Ende* (Munich, 1959); tr. Ralph Manheim, ed. William C. Hickman, as *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time* (Bollingen Series, 94; Princeton, 1971).
- Bach, Erik, *La Cité de Gênes au XIII^e siècle* (Cronaca et medievalistica dissertationes, 5, Copenhagen, 1955).
- Baethgen, Friedrich, *Die Papstwahlkapitel des XIV. im Königreich Sicilien* (Hildesheimer Abhandlungen zur mittelhoch und neuere Geschichte, 44; Heidelberg, 1914).
- Bagnini, Bellarmino, *I Mammarchi di Erimene (ex-Qualitudo) e del distretto risultato degli anni e sospensioni negli anni 1873, 1887-92, 1900-02, 1940-44* (Studiati BF, 4; Ancona, 1947).

- Bagatti, Bellarmino, "Le Patrimoine médiéval de la pègre de Santiago," *Studi biblici francescani Liber annuus*, I (1950-1951), 228-246.
- Bagatti, Bellarmino, *Gli Architeti edifiati sacri di Bellarmino, un viaggio agli scavi e a restiati praticati dalla Comunità di Terra Santa (1948-1952)* (Stradum BF, 9 Jerusalem, 1952).
- Bagatti, Bellarmino, and Emanuele Fava, *Il Goleghe e le ceneri: ricerche storico-archeologiche* (Stradum BF, Collana nuova, 21, Jerusalem, 1978).
- Baker, Derek, ed., *Antarctic human life and work in the Middle Ages* (Edinburgh, 1975); includes Gill, Riley-Smith.
- Baker, John M.L., *Medieval Trade Routes* (London, 1934).
- Barad, Michel, "Les Olives en Asie centrale et en Exilant-Orient au XIV^e siècle: un cas exceptionnel," in *Recherches et revues au sujet des Millepages offerts à Édouard Perroy* (Paris, 1973), pp. 681-689.
- Barad, Michel, *Le Roumanie gheorghe XIV^e-début du XIV^e siècle* (BÉPAR, 215 (= Acti della Società liguri di storia patria, n.s., 88), 2 vols., Rome and Genoa, 1978).
- Baltes, Günther, "El Medievo georgiano tra Mediterraño e Mar Negro," *Nueva rivista storica*, LXI (1977), 182-193.
- Baldacci, Herman, *La Chiesa di S. Maria del Borgo in Rodi, fondata dal gran maestro Hélian de Villeneuve; La cattedrale di Rodi, La chiesa di Santa Caterina delle Lingue d'India* (Paris, 1933).
- Baldwin, Marshall W., "Ecological Developments in the Twelfth Century Crusades' State of Tripoli," *Can. HR*, XXII (1956), 148-171.
- Baldwin, Marshall W., *Agmond III of Cyprus and the Fall of Jerusalem (1140-1187)* (Princeton, 1936; repr. New York, 1978).
- Baldwin, Marshall W., "The Latin States under Baldwin III and Amalric, 1143-1174," *H of C*, I (1933, 2nd ed. 1969), 328-361, and "The Decline and Fall of Jerusalem," *Ibid.*, 380-421.
- Baldwin, Marshall W., "Vilanova to the East in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries," *H of C*, V (1933), 432-518.
- Balduino, Manuel, "La Conquista de Rodi por Fernando III el Santo," *Cuadernos de Historia de España*, XX (1953), 63-136.
- Balduino y Barrios, Antonio, *Historia de España y de influencia en la historia universal*, 2nd ed. (80 vols., Barcelona, 1922-1944).
- Balduino y Barrios, Antonio, "La Reconquista de Murcia, 1243-1443," *Boletín de la Real Academia de la Historia*, CXI (1942), 131-198.
- Balduino, Jorge, *Études sur l'art médiéval en Grèce et en Arménie* (Paris, 1928).
- Balduino, Jorge, *Le Problème de l'Empire et l'Orient* (Paris, 1936).
- Banica, Nicolas, *Le Déclin de l'Empire byzantin, fin de l'empire de Chypre, notes et documents* (Institut romain d'études byzantines, n.s., 4, Bucharest, 1946).
- Barbés y Casas, Carlos, *Expedición de Cataluña y Aragón a Oriente a principios del siglo XIV* (Madrid, 1928).
- Baruch, Michel, *Canaanite Figurative Sculpture in the Holy Land: Twelfth Century Excavations from Acre, Nazareth and Belvoir Castle* (Ramat Gan and New Brunswick, 1971).
- Baruch, Michel, "An Unknown Work of Medieval Sculpture in Acre," *Scripta Hierosolymitana*, XXIV (1972), 12-105.
- Barber, Malcolm C., "James of Molay, the Last Grand Master of the Order of the Temple," *Studies neoscholastic*, XIV (1972), 94-124.
- Barber, Malcolm C., *The Trial of the Templars* (Cambridge, Eng., 1978).

- Barber, Malcolm, "The Postcrusade of 1200," *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, XXXI (1981), 143-166.
- Barke, Ömer Lütfi, "Les Déportations comme méthode de peuplement et de colonisation dans l'empire ottoman," *Revue de la Faculté des sciences économiques de l'Université d'Istanbul*, XI (1949-1950), 67-121.
- Barke, John W., *Manuel II Palaeologus (1294-1320): a Study in Late Byzantine State-manship* (Reprints Byzantine series; New Brunswick, 1969).
- Barrold, Vladimir V., *Turkmen down to the Mongol Invasion*, ed. Barrold and Hamilton A. R., Qubā, 2nd ed. (EJW Qubā Memorial Series, 2, 5; London, 1938).
- Barrold, Vladimir V. (here, Wälschig), *Zurück Vorlesungen über die Geschichte der Türken Mittelasiens*, tr. Theodor Nitsch (Die Welt des Islams, 14-17; 4 vols., Berlin, 1932-1933).
- Barrold, Franzosch M., *Historia croatica* (*Crkvi sljavi*), ed. 2, 2, 7-8; 2 vols., Prague, 1963-1964; ed. and tr. John Kline as *The Huns in Croatia, 1324-1457* (East European Monographs, 303; Boulder, Colo., 1966).
- Barnaud-Jean, Karapet J., "Les Languedociens de Poitou au siège de la Petite Arménie," *J.A.*, 10-111 (1904), 326-328.
- Baynes, Norman H., and Henry St. L.B. Moss, eds., *Byzantium, an Introduction to East Roman Civilization* (Oxford, 1948).
- Beaumont, André A., "Albert of Aachen and the Country of Edessa," in *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to Dame C. Maitland*, ed. Louis I. Fossier (New York, 1968), pp. 104-136.
- Beck, Hans G., *Die byzantinische Kirche im Zeitalter der Kreuzzüge* (*Handbuch der Kirchengeschichte*, ed. Hubert Jedin, vol. V-2; Freiburg, 1964).
- Beck, Marcel, "Amines Komnenos zwischen Türken und Normannen," in *Legende, Mythes, Geschichte der Schweiz und des europäischen Mittelalters* (Frauenfeld, 1978), pp. 74-84.
- Beck, Marcel, "Kreuzzug und Imperium zur Zeit der Staufer," in *Legende, Mythes, Geschichte der Schweiz und des europäischen Mittelalters* (Frauenfeld, 1978), pp. 85-112.
- Beck, Marcel, "Die geschichtliche Bedeutung des Kreuzzugs," in *Legende, Mythes, Geschichte der Schweiz und des europäischen Mittelalters* (Frauenfeld, 1978), pp. 113-129.
- Becler, Carl H., "The Expedition of the Saracens," *Cambridge Medieval History*, vol. II (Cambridge, Eng., 1913; repr. 1926, 1943), pp. 329-390.
- Bédier, Charles M.J. (here, Joseph), and Pierre Aubrey, eds., *Les Chansons de croix seule* (Paris, 1909).
- Bédier, Charles M.J. (here, Joseph), *Les Légendes épiques: recherches sur la formation des chansons de geste*, 3rd ed. (4 vols., Paris, 1926-1927).
- Beche, Bruce, "The English Barons and the Crusade of 1270," *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, XLVIII (1975), 127-149.
- Bélécroux-Stahelin, Léon, "La Conquête d'Andrinople par les Turcs," *Revue et mémoires*, 1 (Paris, 1903), 431-461.
- Belseron, Pierre, *La Croisade contre les Albigeois et l'union du Languedoc à la France (1209-1248)* (Paris, 1942).
- Benveniste, Marc, *The Crusades in the Holy Land* (Jerusalem, 1970; New York, 1972).
- Benveniste, Marc, "Bosaris - Baryce: a Frankish Remise on the Map of Palestine," in *Quartier* (1962), pp. 130-152.

- Bédard-Villars, Jean M.E., *Les Normands en Méditerranée* (Paris, 1951).
- Berchon, Max von, "Noten zur Kreuzzüge: I. Le royaume de Jérusalem et le livre de M. Röhrich," *Jd.*, 9-XIX (1902), 383-436.
- Berlitz, Ulfar, "Die alten Benefizienverhältnisse im Heiligen Lande," *Studien und Mitteilungen aus dem Benefizien- und Cleruswesen*, IX (1888), 113-136, 260-272, 473-492.
- Bernhard, Ludwig, "Die Legation des Lateinischen Kaiserreiches von Konstantinopel in jehusischer Sicht," *Jahrbuch der Österreichischen byzantinischen Gesellschaft*, XVI (1967), 127-128.
- Bernhard, Wilhelm von, *Konrad III.* (Jahrbücher der deutschen Geschichte; Leipzig, 1883).
- Berry, Virginia G., "The Second Crusade," *H of C*, I (1913, 2nd ed. 1969), 463-512.
- Bertoni, Maria, "Johanna von Aconna, die Berlin der 13. Jahrhunderts in den Kreuzfahrern," *Bulletin of Medieval Canon Law*, n.s., VII (1977), 49-64.
- Bertoni, Paul, *Monnaie des chevaliers-hospitaliers de Saint-Lazare* (Paris, 1932).
- Berta, Enrico, "La Cattura del Vesuvio in Orlean per ordine dell' Imperatore Emanuele Comneno e le sue conseguenze nella politica interna ed esterna del comune di Venezia," *Antiquaria veneta*, I (1900), 35-46, 111-123.
- Bettin, Hans, *Heinrich II. von Champagne als Kreuzfahrer und Wirkensfeld im Heiligen Lande (1190-1197)* (Hist. Stud., ed. Ebering, 83; Berlin, 1903).
- Beumann, Helmut, *Heidenmission und Kreuzungsprediker in der deutschen Ostpolitik des Mittelalters* (Weg der Forschung, 4; Darmstadt, 1962).
- Besold, Friedrich von, *König Sigismund und die Reichsbrüder gegen die Häupter der zum Ausgang der dritten Kreuzung (3 vols., in 1, Munich, 1872-1877)*.
- Besold, Friedrich von, *Zur Geschichte der Hussitenkriege* (Culturhistorische Studien (Munich, 1874).
- Bessala, Ghas A., *Die Mongolen in abendländischer Sicht (1220-1270): ein Beitrag zur Frage der Fälschungsurkunden* (Bern, 1974).
- Bibbi, Pauline M., "A New Crusader Church in Tyre," *Bulletin du Musée de Beyrouth*, XXIV (1971), 83-90.
- Bilalov, Joseph, "De la Date de la prise de Chypre par les croisés Nigrites des Latins, 1464," *Le Moyen-Âge*, XXXIV (= 2-XXXV, 1923), 66-71.
- Birkho, Charles Julian, "The Spanish and Portuguese Reconquest, 1065-1492," *H of C*, III (1973), 299-454.
- Birkho, Charles L., *Studies in Medieval Spanish Muslim History* (Varior. Repr., CS, 134; London, 1980).
- Blake, E. O., "The Formation of the 'Crusade Idea,'" *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, XX (1970), 11-31.
- Blocket, Edmond, "Les Relations diplomatiques des Hohenstaufen avec les sultans d'Egypte," *Rev. Hist.*, LXXX (1902), 51-64.
- Bosan, Thomas S.R., *Castles and Churches of the Crusading Kingdom* (London and New York, 1947).
- Bosan, Thomas S.R., *Kingdoms and Strongholds of the Crusaders* (London, 1971).
- Bosan, Thomas S.R., "Ecclesiastical Art in the Crusader States in Palestine and Syria: A. Architecture and Sculpture; B. Mosaic, Painting, and Minor Arts," *H of C*, IV (1977), 69-128, and "Military Architecture in the Crusader States . . .," *ibid.*, 140-154.
- Bosan, Thomas S.R., "The Arts in Cyprus: A. Ecclesiastical Art," *H of C*, IV (1977), 165-195, and "The Arts in Frankish Greece and Rhodes: A. Frankish Greece," with David J. Wallace; "B. Rhodes," *ibid.*, 208-250.

- Roos, Thomas S.R., ed., *The Cilician Kingdom of Armenia* (Edinburgh and London, 1978).
- Rothe, Friedrich J., *Parce de Thomas Scholast, Duplaxus, and Crumder* (Philadelphia, 1944).
- Rossm, Lothar, "De Karlings imperator Karolus, princeps iustus Europae: der Christenpolitik Karls I. von Aquien," *Historisches Jahrbuch*, LXXXVIII (1968), 1-25.
- Schum, Ludwig, *John von Brunn, König von Jerusalem, Kaiser von Konstantinopel* (Diss., Hainburg, 1937).
- Soltau, Brenda M., "A Mission to the Orthodox? the Constantinian Rites in Romania," in *The Orthodox Churches and the West* (Oxford, 1974), pp. 149-181.
- Ben, Antoine, "Porteuses médiévales de la Grèce centrale," *BC Hist.*, LXI (1977), 134-150.
- Ben, Antoine, "Note additionnelle sur les porteuses médiévales de la Grèce centrale," *BC Hist.*, LXII (1978), 441-442.
- Ben, Antoine, "La Prise de Kalamata par les Français en 1205," *Revue archéologique*, 4-XXXIX-XXX (= *Mélanges d'archéologie et d'histoire offerts à Charles Picard* . . .), I (1949), 94-104.
- Ben, Antoine, *Le Paléoponant byzantin jusqu'en 1204* (Bibliothèque byzantine, Études, I, Paris, 1951).
- Ben, Antoine, "Recherches sur le principauté d'Achaïe (1205-1430)," in *Études médiévales offerts à M. le doyen Augustin Fliche* . . . (Publications de la Faculté des lettres de l'Université de Montpellier, 4, Montpellier, 1953), pp. 7-21.
- Ben, Antoine, *Le Monde français: recherches historiques, topographiques et archéologiques sur le principauté d'Achaïe (1205-1430)* (BÉFAR, 213; 2 vols., Paris, 1961).
- Boeckmann, Hartmut, *Der Deutsche Orden: Zwillf Kapitel aus seiner Geschichte* (Munich, 1961).
- Berg, Alan, "Observations on the Hincmarian List of the Holy Sepulchre, Jerusalem," *Journal of the Warburg and Courtauld Institute*, XXXII (1969), 25-49.
- Berg, Alan, "The Holy Sepulchre List," *Journal of the Warburg and Courtauld Institute*, XXXV (1972), 389-390.
- Berg, Alan, "The Lost Apoc. Mosaic of the Holy Sepulchre," in *The Vanishing Part: Studies of Medieval Art, Liturgy and Metrology Presented to Christopher Hobbs*, ed. Alan Berg and Andrew Mawhood (British Archaeological Reports, International Series, III; Oxford, 1962), pp. 7-12.
- Berneri, Silvano, "Federico II e l'Oriente bizantino," *Rivista storica italiana*, LXIII (1951), 379-391.
- Berneri, Silvano, *Il Dominio veneziano a Creta nel XII secolo* (Naples, 1963).
- Berneri, Silvano, "Il Commercio veneziano nell' impero bizantino nel XII secolo," *Rivista storica italiana*, LXXVI (1964), 702-718.
- Berneri, Silvano, *Studi sulle colonie veneziane in Romania nel XII secolo* (Naples 1966).
- Berneri, Silvano, "Per la Storia del commercio veneziano nel mondo bizantino nel XII secolo," *Rivista storica italiana*, LXXXVIII (1976), 194-120.
- Bopp, Arno, *Die Katharer* (MünH, Schriften, 12; Stuttgart, 1953).
- Bosch, Ursula V., *Kaiser Andronikos III. Paläologus: Versuch einer Darstellung der byzantinischen Geschichte in den Jahren 1321-1341* (Göttingen, 1963).
- Borzi, Giacomo, *Dell' Istoria della sacra religione nel Viliustramento milite di S. Giovanni Geronimiliano*, 2nd ed. (3 vols., Rome and Naples, 1621-1664).
- Bourilly, V. L., "Essai sur l'histoire politique de la communauté de Marseille des origi-

- nes à la victoire de Charles d'Anjou (1264)," *Annales de la Faculté des lettres d'Alger*, XII (1919-1920), 1-340; XIII (1921-1922), 23-308.
- Isenhardt, Edgar, *La France sous Philippe le Bel: étude sur les institutions politiques et administratives du moyen âge* (Paris, 1845).
- Isenhardt, Edgar, "La Guerre des Albigeois et Alphonse de Poitiers," *Rev. QH*, II (1847), 155-180.
- Isenhardt, Edgar, *Château P. Philippe le Bel et les Templiers* (Paris, 1872).
- Boyle, John A., "The E-Klaus of Poitiers and the Princess of Burgundy," *Cornell Asiatic Journal*, XX (1974), 25-40.
- Bräcker, David, *Seeschlag von Montgeliers bis zum Anbruch der Kreuzfahrt (1202)* (Hist. Stud., ed. Ebering, 55; Berlin, 1907).
- Brancati, Vittorio, ed., *Storia della civiltà veneziana: I. Dalle origini al secolo di Marco Polo* (Florence, 1979).
- Brand, Charles M., "The Symeonites and Saladin, 1145-1192, Opponents of the Third Crusade," *Spectator*, XXXV (1962), 167-181.
- Brand, Charles M., "A Symeonite Plan for the Fourth Crusade," *Spectator*, XLIII (1966), 462-473.
- Brand, Charles M., *Symeonite Confessions of the West, 1180-1204* (Cambridge, Mass., 1968).
- Brandenburg, Erich, *König Sigmund und Kaiserin Friedrich I. von Brandenburg* (Berlin, 1891).
- Brihaucq, Georges L., *Recherches sur le commerce génois dans la Mer Noire au XIII^e siècle* (Paris, 1929).
- Brihaucq, Georges L., *Études byzantines d'histoire économique et sociale* (Universitäts-Mitteilungen des Inst. Studi di storia generale, 4; Paris, 1932).
- Brihaucq, Georges L., *Les Vénitiens dans la Mer Noire au XIII^e siècle: la politique du Sénat en 1212-13 et la nation de Isakios* (Academia romana, Bucharest, Études et recherches, II; Bucharest, 1939).
- Brown, Michael, "Die mittelalterlichen Befestigungen der Stadt Tortosa/Juiz: Vorberichte der Untersuchungen 1981-1982," *Davoser Mitteilungen*, II (1983), 45-54.
- Bray, Jennifer E., "The Medieval Military Order of St. Katherine," *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, LVI (1983), 1-6.
- Brodens, Adrian H., "Tradition an den Kreuzfahrern Bernhards von Clairvaux und zu seiner Rolle nach Deutschland im Jahre 1146," *MDOG*, LXVI (1958), 321-343.
- Brodens, Adrian H., "Minutemen dans l'Océan méditerranéen," in *Mélanges offerts à René Crozet à l'occasion de son soixante-dixième anniversaire*, ed. Pierre Gaillet and Yves Jean Rivu, vol. I (Poitiers, 1966), pp. 259-271.
- Bréhier, Louis, *L'Église et l'Orient au moyen-âge: les croisades* (Bibliothèque de l'enseignement des études orientales; 6th ed., Paris, 1928).
- Bréhier, Louis, *Le Monde byzantin* (Bibliothèque de spiritualité historique: L'évolution de l'humanité, 32-33; 3 vols., Paris, 1947-1950).
- Brugnot-Bastard, Geneviève, "Les imitations du Saint-Sépulchre de Jérusalem (IX^e-XV^e s.): archéologie d'une dévotion," *Revue d'histoire de la spiritualité*, L (1974), 369-374.
- Brown, René, "Monographie du château de Marash, en Syrie," *Mélanges de l'Université Saint-Joseph*, XLVII (1972), 251-274.
- Budge, E. A. Wallis, *The Crusades* (London, 1908).
- Budry, Emile, *La Condition juridique des croisés et le privilège de croix* (Paris, 1900).
- Brugs, Martin S., *Mohammedan Architecture in Egypt and Palestine* (Oxford, 1924).

- Bruckmann, Carl, *Geschichte der slavischen Völker und Staaten* (Gütersloh, Munich and Berlin, 1943); in: Josef Carmichael and Moshe Perlmann in *History of the Islamic Peoples* (New York, 1947).
- Bruckman, Eric, *The Two Sieges of Rhodes, 1480-1522* (London, 1969).
- Brundage, Neil C., *The Significance of Christ in Art and Liturgy, with Special Reference to the Liturgic Drama* (University of Illinois Studies in Language and Literature, VII, no. 2; Urbana, 1935).
- Brown, Elizabeth A.R., "The Clericdom in the Latin Empire of Constantinople and Greece, 1204-1216," *Traditio*, XIV (1958), 65-120.
- Brown, Hicetio F., "The Visitation and the Western Quarter in Constantinople in the Close of the Twelfth Century," *Journal of Hellenic Studies*, XL (1923), 68-88.
- Brundage, James A., "Milestones of Purg: the Bishop and his Cross," *Speculum*, XXXIV (1959), 201-252.
- Brundage, James A., "An Ermit Crusader: Stephen of Blois," *Traditio*, XVI (1960), 385-395.
- Brundage, James A., "The Crusade of Richard I: Two Canonical 'Questions'," *Speculum*, XXXVIB (1963), 443-452.
- Brundage, James A., "A Note on the Annotations of Crusaders' Wives," *Cath. HR*, LII (1964), 234-239.
- Brundage, James A., "Crux Signati: the Rite for Taking the Cross in England," *Traditio*, XXII (1966), 289-310.
- Brundage, James A., "The Crusader's Wife: a Canonical Quantity," *Studia Gratiana*, XII (= Colloquium Stephanus Kuttner, 3; 1967), 425-441.
- Brundage, James A., "The Crusader's Wife Revisited," *Studia Gratiana*, XIV (= Colloquium Stephanus Kuttner, 4; 1967), 341-351.
- Brundage, James A., "The Votive Obligations of Crusaders: the Development of a Canonical Doctrine," *Traditio*, XXIV (1968), 71-118.
- Brundage, James A., *Medieval Canon Law and the Crusader* (Medieval, 1969).
- Brundage, James A., "The Army of the First Crusade and the Crusade Vow: Some Reflections on a Recent Book," *Medieval Studies*, XXXIII (1971), 324-343.
- Brundage, James A., "Marriage Law in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," in *Crusader* (1962), pp. 254-271.
- Brundage, James A., "St. Asclepi, Ivo of Chartres, and the Ideology of the First Crusade," in *Les mutations socio-culturelles au tournant des XIIe-XIIIe siècles: Études Anacréontiques (Ile studies)* (Paris, 1964), pp. 175-187.
- Brunschwig, Robert, *La Jérarchie orientale sous les Hâfides des origines à la fin du XI^e siècle* (Publications de l'Institut d'études orientales d'Algèr, 8, 1; 2 vols., Paris, 1940-1947).
- Bryer, Anthony A.M., "The Fate of George Komnenos, ruler of Trebizond (1266-1280)," *Byz. Z.*, LXVI (1973), 332-358.
- Bryer, Anthony A.M., "Greeks and Turks: the Poetic Exception," *D Oksr J.*, XXIX (1975), 113-140.
- Bryer, Anthony A.M., *The Latins in the Levant* (XV^e Congrès international d'études byzantines: Rapports et co-rapports: 8. Histoire pt. 3, La grecophonie dans les États latins formés sur les territoires byzantins: phénomenon social, économique, religieux et culturel; Athens, 1976).
- Buchon, Jean A., *Recherches et matériaux pour servir à une histoire de la domination française aux XI^e, XII^e et XIII^e siècles dans les provinces byzantines de l'empire grec à la suite de la 4^e croisade* (2 vols., Paris, 1840).

- Buchon, Jean A., *Le Golfe méditerranéen et la Merce: voyage, séjour et études historiques en 1840 et 1841* (Paris, 1843).
- Buchon, Jean A., *Nouvelles recherches historiques sur le principauté franque de Morée et ses agents baronniaux à la suite de la 4^e croisade* (2 vols., and atlas, Paris, 1843).
- Buchon, Jean A., *Recherches historiques sur le principauté franque de Morée et ses agents baronniaux* (2 vols., Paris, 1843).
- Buchthal, Hugo, "The Painting of Syrian Icons in its Relation to Byzantine and Islamic Art," *Syria*, XX (1939), 136-150.
- Buchthal, Hugo, *Mosaics Painting in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem, with Liturgical and Palaeographical Chapters by Francis Wormald* (Oxford, 1937).
- Buckley, James M., "The Problematical Octagonization of John of Brienne," *Speculum*, XXXII (1957), 315-322.
- Bulson, Ludwig, *Endereverheit, Heiligkeit und byzantinischer Staatrecht auf dem ersten Kreuzzug* [Bericht aus den Sitzungen der Joachim-Jungius-Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, 2. no. 7, Hamburg, 1965].
- Bult-Thiele, Marie L., "Temple in liturgical and physical context," in *Festschrift Percy Ernst Schöffer zu seinem sechzigsten Geburtstag*, . . . ed. Peter Clausen and Peter Schaffert, vol. 1 (Wiesbaden, 1964), pp. 389-398.
- Bult-Thiele, Marie L., "Zur Geschichte der Kaiserorden und des Königreichs Jerusalem im 13. Jahrhundert bis zur Schlacht bei La Forbie am 17. Oktober 1244," *Deutsches Archiv*, XXII (1966), 197-226.
- Bult-Thiele, Marie L., *Sieben tausend militäre Tempel Hierosolymus regiert: Untersuchungen zur Geschichte des Tempelordens 1118/19-1244* (Abh. Göt., 3rd ser., 86; Göttingen, 1974).
- Bult-Thiele, Marie L., "Die Mosaiken der Aufnahmungskirche in Jerusalem und die Bauten der Franken im 12. Jahrhundert," *Frühmittelalterliche Studien*, X/III (1975), 462-471.
- Burns, Robert L., "The Crusade Company and the European Power, 1205-1211," *Speculum*, XXIX (1954), 751-771.
- Burns, Robert L., *The Crusader Kingdom of Valencia: Reconstruction on a Thirteenth Century Frontier* (2 vols., Cambridge, Mass., 1967).
- Burns, Robert L., *Islam under the Crusaders: Colonial Survival in the 13th Century Kingdom of Valencia* (Princeton, 1973).
- Burns, Robert L., *Medieval Colonialism: Postcrusader Exploitation of Islamic Valencia* (Princeton, 1973).
- Burns, Robert L., *Muslims and Crusaders in Mediterranean Spain* (Varior. Repr., Ch. 7; London, 1978).
- Burns, Robert L., *El Reino de Valencia en el siglo XIII (Islam y cristianidad)* (3 vols., Valencia, 1962; revision of *The Crusader Kingdom of Valencia*).
- Burns, Robert L., *Muslims, Christians and Jews in the Crusader Kingdom of Valencia* (Cambridge, Mass., 1963).
- Bury, John B., "The Lombards and Visigoths in Calabria (1205-1208)," *Journal of Hellenic Studies*, VII (1886), 109-152; VIII (1887), 194-213; IX (1888), 91-117.
- Bury, John B., "Western Emperors from Basil II to Isaac Comnenus," in *Selected Essays of J. B. Bury*, ed. Harold Temperley (Cambridge, Eng., 1930), pp. 126-214.
- Buschhausen, Helmut, *Die mittelalterliche Tempelbau in Königsreich Jerusalem von König Wilhelm II. bis Kaiser Friedrich II.* (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, phil.-hist. Klasse, Denkschriften, 108, Vienna, 1978).

- Iruse, Herbert, "Von Falschen zum Triumph Dommers," in *Das Heilige Land im Mittelalter*, ed. Wolfdietrich Fischer and Jürgen Schneider (Neustadt am der Aisch, 1982), pp. 19-32.
- Byrne, Eugene H., "Crusade Trade with Syria in the Thirteenth Century," *Amer. HR*, XXV (1919-1920), 179-219.
- Byrne, Eugene H., "The Crusade Colonies in Syria," in *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to Daniel C. Johnson*, ed. Louis I. Paetow (New York, 1928), pp. 129-182.
- Byrne, Eugene H., *Crusade Shipping in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries* (Med. A.A. Monographs, 1, Cambridge, Mass., 1936).
- Cadden, Rinaldo, et al., eds., *Storia marittima dell'Italia, dell'ero antico al secolo scorso*, vol. 1 (Milan, 1942).
- Caggini, Rinaldo, *Recherches d'Asie et à nos temps* (2 vols., Florence, 1922-1930).
- Caggini, Rinaldo de los, *Alfueras divinos-religiosas de la edad media española* (4 vols., Madrid, 1947-1949).
- Cahen, Claude, "La Campagne de Mansour d'Alep et les sarrasins musulmans," *Byzantion*, IX (1934), 443-442.
- Cahen, Claude, "Le Doyl Balr au temps des premiers Umayyades," *JA*, CCXXVII (1932), 269-276.
- Cahen, Claude, *Le Syrie du Nord à l'époque des croisades et le principat franque d'Antioche* (Institut français de Damas, Bibliothèque orientale, 1; Paris, 1940).
- Cahen, Claude, "La Première pénétration turque au Asie Mineure (seconde moitié du XII^e s.)," *Byzantion*, XVIII (1943), 3-47.
- Cahen, Claude, "Notes sur l'histoire des croisades et de l'Orient latin. 1. En quoi la conquête turque appela-t-elle la croisade?," *Bulletin de la Faculté des lettres de l'Université de Strasbourg*, XXIX (1950-1951), 118-123.
- Cahen, Claude, "Notes sur l'histoire des croisades et de l'Orient latin. 2. Le régime rural syrien au temps de la domination franque," *Bulletin de la Faculté des lettres de l'Université de Strasbourg*, XXIX (1950-1951), 246-269.
- Cahen, Claude, "Notes sur l'histoire des croisades et de l'Orient latin. 3. Orient latin et coexistence de Lévites," *Bulletin de la Faculté des lettres de l'Université de Strasbourg*, XXIX (1950-1951), 328-346.
- Cahen, Claude, "La Commerce anatolien au début du XIII^e siècle," in *Alfueras d'Antioche de moyen âge relatés à la mémoire des Louis Halphen*, ed. Charles E. Perrin (Paris, 1951), pp. 91-101.
- Cahen, Claude, "Pour l'histoire des Turcomans d'Asie mineure au XIII^e siècle," *JA*, CCXXXIX (1951), 325-354.
- Cahen, Claude, "L'Évolution de l'Asie du Océ au XIII^e siècle: contribution à une histoire comparée des sociétés médiévales," *Annales. Économies, sociétés, civilisations*, VIII I (1953), 25-32.
- Cahen, Claude, "Notes sur les débuts de la féodalité d'An-Nusl," *Orient*, VI (1952), 12-22.
- Cahen, Claude, "An Introduction to the First Crusade," *Past and Present* (1954), no. 4, pp. 6-29.
- Cahen, Claude, "L'Islam et la croisade," *Attestazioni del X Congresso internazionale di scienze storiche, Roma 1953: 3. Storia del medio evo* (Florence, 1953), pp. 425-432.
- Cahen, Claude, "The Turkish Invasions: the Seljuks," *H of C*, I (1953, 2nd ed. 1969), 173-178.

- Cahen, Claude, "Le Rostom et les institutions politiques de l'Orient latin," in *Oriente et Occident au milieu des Croisades de science morale, historique et philologique 27 maggio—1° giugno 1954* (Accademia nazionale dei Lincei, Fondazione Alessandro Volta, Atti dei congressi, 12; Roma, 1957), pp. 187-191.
- Cahen, Claude, "Le Premier cycle de la croisade (Antioche, Jérusalem, Châlif),” *Le Moyen-âge*, LVII (1957), 312-328.
- Cahen, Claude, "Mouvements populaires et autonomismes urbains dans l'Asie musulmane du moyen âge,” *Annuaire*, V (1958), 225-250; VI (1959), 25-56, 233-269.
- Cahen, Claude, "Zur Geschichte der urbanen Gesellschaft im islamischen Orient des Mittelalters,” *Saraceni*, IX (1958), 59-76.
- Cahen, Claude, "Seljukiden, Turcomanen et Aïkhaniden au temps de la troisième croisade,” *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, LVI (1960) 22-31.
- Cahen, Claude, "The Turks in Iran and Anatolia before the Mongol Invasions,” *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1967), 461-492, and "The Mongols and the Near East,” *ibid.*, 715-732.
- Cahen, Claude, "À propos des croisés du marché d'Icre,” *RH Devot FE*, 4-XLI (1962), 287-290.
- Cahen, Claude, "L'Asie avant l'Islam: un chapitre d'histoire économique islamochrétienne au temps des croisades,” *Revue d'histoire économique et sociale*, XLI (1962), 433-447.
- Cahen, Claude, "Douanes et commerce dans les ports méditerranéens de l'Égypte médiévale d'après le *Hishtak al-Mahsutat*,” *JESMO*, VII (1964), 217-314.
- Cahen, Claude, *Pre-Crusade Turkey: a General Survey of the Material and Spiritual Culture c. 1071-1241*, tr. J. Jones-Williams (New York, 1964).
- Cahen, Claude, "Saint-Louis et l'Islam,” *JA*, CCXVIII (1970), 3-12.
- Cahen, Claude, "La Politique orientale des comtes de Flandre et la lettre d'Al-Jawh Comenr,” *Mélanges d'Islamologie: Volume dédié à la mémoire de Armand Abel*, ed. Pierre Salomon (Leyden, 1974), pp. 84-90.
- Cahen, Claude, *Saracens and Orient christians* (Varior. Rept., CS, 36; London, 1974).
- Cahen, Claude, "Amalî en Orient à la veille, au moment et au lendemain de la première croisade,” in *Amalî nel medioevo* (Salerno, 1977), pp. 271-283.
- Cahen, Claude, "Le Commerce d'Amalî dans le Proche-Orient musulman avant et après la croisade,” *CRATAE* (1977), pp. 291-300.
- Cahen, Claude, *Les Peuples musulmans dans l'histoire médiévale* (Damascus, 1977).
- Cahen, Claude, *Orient et Occident au temps des croisades* (Paris, 1983).
- Canova, Matteo, *Storia della città e contado di Amalfi* (Naples, 1831).
- Campbell, George A., *The Kingdom of Naples: their Rise and Fall* (London, 1937; repr. New York, 1966).
- Canali, Michele G., *Della spedizione in Oriente di Amadeo VI di Savoia, detta l'ultima crociata* (Genoa, 1887).
- Canali, Matteo, "L'Imperialismo dei Federico e loro propaganda,” *Annali de l'Istituto d'studi orientali d'Alger*, VI (1942-1947), 136-163.
- Castano, Victor, "The Spanish Reconquest, a Chinese Holy War Against Islam?,” in *Islam and the Medieval West: Aspects of Intercultural Relations*, ed. Khalil S. Salama (Albany, N.Y., 1980), pp. 82-109.
- Cassany y de Miquelans, Antoni de, *Memories històriques sobre la marxa, campanya i arribada de la primera ciutat de Barcelona* (4 vols., Madrid, 1779-1792).
- Cardini, Franco, "La Crociata nel thronos: l'invadenza di un ideale,” *Archivio storico italiano*, CXXXV (1977), 108-129.

- Cardini, Franco, "La Repubblica di Firenze e la crociata di Pio II," *Rivista di storia della chiesa in Italia*, XXXIII (1979), 455-482.
- Cardini, Franco, "Pellegrinaggi medievali in Terra Santa," *Rivista storica italiana*, XCIII (1981), 5-30.
- Cardini, Franco, "La Società italiana e la crociata," *Cah. Chr. Méd.*, XXVIII (1985), 19-33.
- Carli, Antonio, "Partitus terrarum imperii Romanorum," *Studi venetiani*, VII (1943), 125-303.
- Carli, Antonio, *La Sicilia feudale nelle Mura latine del XII secolo* (Bologna, 1946).
- Carli, Antonio, "La Contabilità severa dell'impero latino di Costantinopoli (1204-1261)," *Studi venetiani*, n.s., II (1978), 37-73.
- Carli, Antonio, *Per una Storia dell'impero latino di Costantinopoli (1204-1261)* (il mondo in affluire: Scalone di storia bizantina e slave, 2; 2nd ed., Bologna, 1976).
- Carli, Antonio, "Movimenti di popolazione e colonizzazione occidentale in Romania nel XIII secolo alla luce della competizione dell'esercito crociato nel 1204," *Riv. F.* VII (1979), 3-22.
- Carli, Antonio, "Sigloria rurale e feudalesimo nell'impero latino di Costantinopoli (1204-1261)," in *Structures féodales et féodalisme dans l'Occident méditerranéen (IX-XIII siècles. Bilan et perspectives de recherches)* (Colloque de l'École française de Rome, 44, Rome, 1980), pp. 667-678.
- Carr, Georg, *Gesetz und die Macht am Mittelmeer 1257-1291 ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der 1. Jahrtausend* (2 vols., Halle, 1895-1897; Italian tr. as *Gesetz e la supremazia nel Mediterraneo (1257-1291)* (Atti della Società liguri di storia patria, n. s., 14-15; 3 vols., Genoa, 1974-1975).
- Carr de Vaux, Bernard, *Les Premiers de l'islam* (3 vols., Paris 1921-1926).
- Cartellieri, Alexander, "L'Ordonnance de Philippe-Auguste sur la fin de la croisade de 1184," *Rev. Hist.*, LXXIII (1906), 61-63; cf. *Ibid.*, LXXVI (1907), 328-330.
- Cartellieri, Alexander, *Philipp IV August, König von Frankreich; 2. Der Kreuzzug 1197-1200* (Leipzig and Paris, 1906).
- Cartellieri, Otto, *Alte Sagen von Saint-Denis (1067-1154)* (Hist. Stud., ed. Ebering, 11; Berlin, 1898).
- Casper, Erich, *Roger II (1101-1154) und die Gründung der normannisch-stilischen Monarchie* (Jena/Bruck, 1904).
- Casper, Erich, *Hermann von Salza und die Gründung des Deutschordensritters in Preussen* (Tübingen, 1924).
- Cass, James Lee, "A Cypriot Crusade," *Byzantion*, XVI (1942-1943), 503-526.
- Cass, James Lee, "The Crusade of 1161," *H of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 343-367.
- Cartwright, Edward van, *Les Pèlerinages expiatoires et judiciaires dans le droit communal de la Belgique au moyen âge* (Unité de Louvain, Recueil de travaux publiés par les membres des conférences d'histoire et de philologie, 43, Louvain, 1922).
- Carr, Fred A., "The Tax of 1145 in Aid of the Holy Land," *Speculum*, XXX (1955), 385-392.
- Carr, Fred A., "Financing the Crusades," *H of C*, VI (1959), 116-149.
- Cassese, Francesco, "La Politica orientale di Alfonso di Aragona," *Archivio storico per la provincia napoletana*, XXVII (1902), 3-83, 380-436, 553-634, 774-852; XXVIII (1903), 124-232.
- Cassese, Francesco, *L'Opera politica e militare di Repperto II in Africa ad in Ormus* (Catania, 1912).

- Cerone, FRANCESCO, "La Sovranità napoletana nella Mezza e nelle isole vicine," *Archivio storico per le province napoletane*, XLJ (1906), 5-64, 183-266; XLII (1917), 5-67.
- Cerulli, EUGENIO, *Studi in Paleontologia: Storia delle comunità etniche di Gerusalemme* (Collezione scientifica e documentaria a cura del Ministero dell'Alta Italia, 12, 14, 2 vols., Rome, 1943-1947).
- Cervellini, GIUSEPPE B., "Come i Veneziani conquistarono Creta," *Nuovo archivio veneto*, n.s., XVI (1908), 262-276.
- Casati, ROBERTO, "Venezia e l'acquisto di Napoli ad Argo," *Nuovo archivio veneto*, XXX (1915), 147-173.
- Casati, ROBERTO, *Venezia decora I. Doge e popolo* (Venezia, 1940).
- Casati, ROBERTO, *Le Colonie veneziane italiane in Oriente I. Le conquiste* (Bologna, 1942).
- Casati, ROBERTO, "Venezia e la quarta crociata," *Arch. Ven.*, I-XLVIII-XLIX (1917), 1-52.
- Casati, ROBERTO, *Politica ed economia di Venezia nel Trecento* (Giaria e letteratura, 49, Rome, 1933).
- Casati, ROBERTO, "L'Estato di Enrico Dandolo," *Arch. Ven.*, XCI (1909), 1-25.
- Casati, ROBERTO, *Storia delle repubbliche di Venezia* (Biblioteca storica patologica, 23, 36; new ed., 2 vols., Milan and Messina, 1968).
- Charbon, JEAN B., "Notes sur les relations du roi Aragon avec l'Occident," *RO Lettr.*, II (1894), 566-636.
- Chaboudin, FERDINAND, *Les Croisades étud. sur l'inspiration byzantine au XI^e et XII^e siècles* (Mémoires et documents publiés par la Société de l'École des chartes, 4, 2 vols., Paris, 1908-1912; repr. New York, 1962).
- Chaboudin, FERDINAND, *Histoire de la domination normande en Italie et en Sicile* (2 vols., Paris, 1907).
- Chaboudin, FERDINAND, *Histoire de la première croisade jusqu'à l'entrée de Godofroi de Bouillon* (Paris, 1925).
- Chandon de Briailles, RAÛL, "L'Empire d'Orient-Mer: les sultans de Margat," *Syria*, XXV (1946-1948), 231-234.
- Chapman, CONRAD, *Michel Paléologue, restaurateur de l'empire byzantin (1261-1282)* (Paris, 1926).
- Charanis, PETER, "Byzantinism, the West and the Origin of the First Crusade," *Byzantinica*, XLIX (1949), 17-36.
- Charanis, PETER, "On the Social Structure and Economic Organization of the Byzantine Empire in the Tenth Century and Later," *Byzantinistica*, XII (1952), 94-153.
- Charanis, PETER, "Aims of the Medieval Crusades and How they Were Viewed by Byzantium," *Church History*, XXI (1952), 121-134.
- Charanis, PETER, "Economic Factors in the Decline of the Byzantine Empire," *Journal of Economic History*, XLII (1953), 412-424.
- Charanis, PETER, "The Byzantine Empire in the Eleventh Century," *N of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 173-219.
- Charanis, PETER, *The Acemians in the Byzantine Empire* (Lutbon, 1963).
- Charanis, J., "L'Église grecque orthodoxe catholique," *Revue d'Orient*, IV (1900-1901), 268-275, 323-333; V (1901-1902), 18-25, 82-89, 143-147, 203-206, 264-270, 312-343; VI (1903), 18-24, 115-118, 196-207, 296-307, 379-386; VII (1904), 21-26.
- Chazan, MARTIN, "The Crusade of Varna," *N of C*, VI (1908), 276-318.
- Chazan, ROBERT, "Emperor Frederick I, the Third Crusade and the Jews," *Victor*, VIII (1971), 83-93.

- Clucas, Robert, *European Army and the First Crusade* (Berkeley, 1967).
- Charlton, Nicolas, *Medieval Greece* (New Haven and London, 1961).
- Chéhab, Maurice H., *De à l'époque des croisades: 1. Histoire ecclésiastique et diplomatique* (forming, in two parts, vols. XXVII and XXVIII of the *Bulletin du Musée de Beyrouth*, Paris, 1973); *2. Histoire sociale, économique et religieuse* (forming, in two parts, vols. XXIX and XXXII of the *Bulletin du Musée de Beyrouth*, Paris, 1979).
- Chervin, Ulysse, *Le Croisade du dauphin Humbert II 1245-1247: discours prononcé à la fête du cinquantenaire de la Société d'archéologie de la Drôme, 10 février 1920* (Paris, 1920).
- Christiansen, Eric, *The Northern Crusades: the Baltic and the Catholic Frontier, 1100-1525* (Minneapolis, London, and Basingstoke, 1980).
- Christie, Pierre, *Étude des classes inférieures d'après les Annals de Jérusalem* (Poitiers, 1912).
- Chrysostomides, Julian, "Venetian Commercial Privileges under the Palaeologi," *Studi veneziani*, XII (1970), 267-356.
- Chazelle, Armand O., "The Relations of Amalfi with the Arab World before the Crusades," *Speculum*, XLII (1967), 299-312.
- Chazelle, Armand O., "Pisero in Medieval Trade: the Commerce of Amalfi before the Crusades," *Journal of Economic History*, XXVIII (1968), 331-355.
- Clapham, Alfred W., "The Late Moslem Buildings of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, Jerusalem," *Antiquaries Journal*, I (1921), 3-18.
- Clement, Olivier, "Byzance et le concile de Lyne," *Revue de l'histoire ecclésiastique*, VII (1975), 254-272.
- Clermont-Ganneau, Charles, *Études d'archéologie orientale* (8 Es. H², 44 H³, 2 vols. in 4 parts, Paris, 1880-1897).
- Clermont-Ganneau, Charles, *Recueil d'archéologie orientale* (8 vols., Paris, 1880-1924).
- Clermont-Ganneau, Charles, *Archaeological Researches in Palestine during the Years 1878-1879*, tr. Aubrey Stewart and John MacLislan (2 vols., London, 1896-1899).
- Cocheril, Maurice, "Essai sur l'origine des ordres militaires dans la péninsule ibérique," *Colloques antiques: Clémentines reformées*, XX (1958), 246-461, XXI (1959), 221-250, 301-329.
- Cepasano, Francesco, "Un Imperatore bizantino nella decadenza: Isaac II Angelo," *Rivista di storia*, Anno 18, fasc. 31 (1913), 29-60.
- Cohn, Willy, *Die Geschichte der normannisch-italischen Flotte unter der Regierung Rogers I. und Rogers II. (1060-1074)* (Historische Untersuchungen, I, Breslau, 1910; repr., together with two other relevant studies by Cohn, in his *Die Geschichte der sizilischen Flotte 1060-1266* (Aalen, 1973).
- Cohn, Willy, *Hermann von Salza* (Abhandlungen der Schlesischen Gesellschaft für vaterländische Cultur, 4; Breslau, 1930).
- Combs, Edmund, *Alexandre au moyen âge* (Alexandria, 1921).
- Conant, Kenneth L., "The Original Buildings of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem," *Speculum*, XXXI (1956), 1-48.
- Condat, Claude R., *The Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem 1099 to 1291 A.D.* (London, 1897; repr. New York, 1973).
- Congat, Yves M.C., "Héros de Marry, abbé de Clairvaux, cardinal-prêtre d'Albano et pape pontifical," *Studia Anselmiana*, XLIII (= *Analecta anselmiana: Heros et études sur la vie des moines au moyen âge*, Séh ser., Rome, 1958), pp. 1-90.
- Congisto, Giuseppe, "Amalfi e il commercio amalfitano nel medio evo," *Nuova rivista storica*, XXXVIII-XXXIX (1944-1945), 100-114.
- Conrad, Hermann, "Gottesfrieden und Heimverfassung in der Zeit der Kreuzzüge:

- als Beitrag zur Geschichte des Hohenstaufenreiches im Mittelalter," *Zeitschrift der Savigny-Stiftung für Rechtsgeschichte, Germanistische Abt.*, LXXI (1943), 71-126.
- Coatdale, Giles, "A Note on the Route of the Anglo-Flemish Crusaders of 1147," *Speculum*, XXVIII (1953), 523-526.
- Coatdale, Giles, "The Second Crusade as Seen by Contemporaries," *Traditio*, IX (1953), 213-279.
- Coatdale, Giles, "The Planning of the Crusades," in *Overseas* (1963), pp. 64-68.
- Coatdale, Giles, "Devotion to Pilgrimage in the Middle Ages," *Studies in History*, XIX (1974, *Mélanges G. Fraumeni*, II), 123-144.
- Cook, Robert F., and Larry S. Cross, *Le Deuxième cycle de la croisade: deux études sur son développement: Les zones au versé Saladin* (Publications collantes et françaises, D26, Geneva, 1972).
- Cook, Robert F., "Chanson d'Antioche" *chanson de geste: le cycle de la croisade médiévale* (Purdue University Monographs in Romance Languages, 2, Ann Arbor, 1960).
- Cosack, Harald, "Kreuzade III. Entschluß zum Kreuzzug," *MDOG*, XXXV (1910), 276-294.
- Cosack, Ulrich, *Die Eroberung von Lissabon im Jahre 1147: eine Episode aus der Geschichte des zweiten Kreuzzuges* (Diss., Halle, 1875).
- Collinson, Charles, *The Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem* (Schweich Lectures of the British Academy, 1972, tr. J. P. and Claude Ross, London, 1974).
- Cochran, George G., *Crusades, Commerce and Adventure* (London, Edinburgh, and New York, 1930).
- Cowdrey, Herbert E.J., "Pope Urban II's Preaching of the First Crusade," *History*, LV (1970), 177-198.
- Cowdrey, Herbert E.J., "Cluny and the First Crusade," *Annuaire de l'Institut*, LXXXIII (1973), 285-311.
- Cowdrey, Herbert E.J., "The Maltese Campaign of 1061," *Eng. HR*, XCII (1977), 1-29.
- Cowdrey, Herbert E.J., "Pope Gregory VII's 'Crusading' Plans of 1074," in *Overseas* (1963), pp. 37-40.
- Cowdrey, Herbert E.J., *Popes, Monks and Crusaders* (London, 1964).
- Cowdrey, Herbert E.J., "Martyrdom and the First Crusade," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1965), pp. 46-56.
- Cox, Eugene L., *The Green Coast of Syria* (Princeton, 1947).
- Cramer, Valmar, "Kreuzpredigt und Kreuzzuggedenke von Bernhard von Clairvaux im Hundert von Romam," *Das Heilige Land in Vergangenheit und Gegenwart*, I (1939; = *Fd. DVVH*, 17-20), 43-204.
- Cramer, Valmar, *Der Rosenkranz zum Hl. Grab: von den Kreuzzügen bis zur Gegenwart* (Fol. DVVH, 46-48, Cologne, 1952).
- Cresson, Vincent, *Rassemblement de Hugues et le marquis Boniface de Montferrat* (Toulouse, 1901).
- Cresswell, Kippell A.C., *The Works of Sultan Balbars al-Jundughuri in Egypt* (Cairo, 1926).
- Cresswell, Kippell A.C., *Early Muslim Architecture: Umayyads, Early Abbids and Fatimids* 2 vols., Oxford, 1932-1940.
- Cresswell, Kippell A.C., "Fortification in Islam before A.D. 1250," *Proceedings of the British Academy* (1952), pp. 89-125.
- Cresswell, Kippell A.C., *The Muslim Architecture of Egypt: I. Ishids and Fatimids, A.D. 819-1171; 2. Ayyubids and Early Bahrite Mamluks, A.D. 1171-1382* 2 vols., Oxford, 1952-1959).

- Croissant-Chouka, Nicolas, "Les Origines de l'Église de Chio et les différentes Vales de son Evêque," *Alépiotika*, IX (1977), 338-349.
- Crozet, René, "Le Voyage d'Urbain II et ses négociations avec le clergé de France (1093-1096)," *Rev. hist.*, CLXXIX (1937), 271-344.
- Curie, Edmund, *Roger of Sicily and the Normans in Lower Italy, 1095-1154* (Harvard of the Nations; London and New York, 1912; repr. New York, 1973).
- Curie, Alan, "The First Crusade and the Idea of Conversion," *Medieval World*, LVIII (1968), 125-144.
- Dąbrowski, Jan, *Władysław I Jerzykiewicz na Węgry, 1040-1044* (Księstwo historyczne Towarzystwa Naukowego Warszawskiego, 2, tom 1, Warszawa, 1922).
- Dąbrowski, Jan, "L'Année 1444," *Bulletin international de l'Académie polonaise ... Classe d'Histoire et de philosophie*, supp. 4 (Cracow, 1951).
- Dada, Erwin, *Hinweise zur Wiedererrichtung der internationalen Herrschaft in Konstantinopel im Rahmen der alemannischen Politik (1241 bis etwa 1310)* (Dona, Jean, Würzburg and Jena, 1938).
- Dagens, Gilbert, "Mosaïques ethniques et religieuses dans l'Orient byzantin à la fin du Xe et au XIe siècle: l'immigration syrienne," *Travaux et mémoires du Centre de recherche d'histoire et civilisation de Byzance*, VI (1974), 177-214.
- Dallaghe d'Arsenio, Eugenio (born Eugenio), "Les Sanctuaires urbains et suburbains de Byzance sous la domination latine, 1204-1261," *RE Byz.*, XI (1913), 50-61.
- Dallaghe d'Arsenio, Eugenio, "Listes des podemans de la célèbre glorie du Pérs (Gallia) des priors et sous-priors de la Magnifica Communis," *RE Byz.*, XXVII (1949), 151-157.
- Dalman, Gustaf, *Arbetet och Sittet i Antikristna* (Schriften des Deutschen Palästinainstituts, 3, 5, 6, 4-10; zugleich Beiträge zur Förderung christlicher Theologie 3rd ser., 14, 15, 21, 28, 33, 34, 41, 48; 7 parts in 8 vols., Österrisch, 1918-1942).
- Daly, William M., "Christian Fraternity, the Crusaders, and the Security of Constantinople, 1097-1204, the Prominent Survival of an Ideal," *Medieval Studies*, XXII (1960), 41-91.
- Daniel, Norman, *Islam and the West: the Making of an Image* (Baltimore, 1960).
- Daniel, Norman, "The Legal and Political Theory of the Crusade," *H of C*, VI (1969), 3-24, and "Crusade Propaganda," *ibid.*, 25-42.
- Darstap, John, "The State and Landed Property in Byzantium to ca. 1250," *Classica et Mediaevalia*, VII (1946), 221-262.
- Datta, Pierre L., *Spécialisme in Orient et Aménage* (Paris, 1824).
- Dauidjian, Jean, "L'Expansion de l'église syrienne au Haut orient et en Extrême-Orient," *L'Orient syrien*, I (1954), 34-47.
- Dauidjian, Jean, "Guillaume de Rubrouck et les communautés chaldéennes d'Asie centrale," *Annuaire de l'École des Hautes études religieuses (1951-1953)*, II, 36-42, revised version in *L'Orient syrien*, II (1957), 223-242.
- Dauidjian, Jean, "La Papauté, l'union des églises et les devoirs en Orient durant le moyen âge: à propos d'un ouvrage récent," *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique*, LXXIV (1979), 640-681.
- Davis, Charles W., *Robert Curthose, Duke of Normandy* (Harvard Historical Studies, 25; Cambridge, Mass., 1920; repr. New York, 1962).
- Derwent, Christopher H., ed., *The Mongol Mission: Narratives and Letters of the Franciscan Missionaries in Mongolia and China in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries*, tr. by a Nun of Stanbrook Abbey (The Masters of Christianity; London and New York, 1955; repr. New York, 1980).
- Doy, Gerald W., *Mosul and the Crescent: a Reappraisal of Byzantine Commercial*

- Policy in the Late XIIIth Century," *Journal of Economic History*, XXXVII (1977), 299-303.
- Dag, Gerald W., "Byzantine-Genoese Diplomacy and the Collapse of Emperor Manuel's Western Policy 1142-1171," *Byzantion*, XLVIII (1978), 393-405.
- Dag, John, *Les Domains de Gênes, 1176-1177* (2 vols., Paris, 1963).
- Davis, Radford, "A Crusaders' Porticus in Palestine: a Report of Explorations Made by the Museum 1928," *Bulletin of the Metropolitan Museum of Art*, XXII 2 (1927).
- Defrémery, Charles F., "Nouvelles recherches sur les Ismaéliens au Royaume de Syrie, plus connus sous le nom d'Assasins, et principalement sur leurs rapports avec les deux chrétiens d'Orient," *JdL*, 5-13 (1854), 373-403, 5-V (1855), 5-76.
- Delaruelle, Étienne, "Essai sur la formation de l'idée de croisade," *Bulletin de la Bibliothèque ecclésiastique publié par l'Institut catholique de Toulouse*, XLII (1940), 24-43, 86-103, XLV (1943), 13-46, 73-96; LIV (1953), 226-236; LV (1954), 50-65.
- Delaruelle, Étienne, "L'Idée de croisade chez Saint Louis," *Bulletin de Bibliothèque ecclésiastique publié par l'Institut catholique de Toulouse*, LXI (1959), 241-257.
- Delaruelle, Étienne, "L'Idée de croisade dans la littérature chancelière du XIIe siècle et l'abbaye de Molesme," *Annales du Midi*, LXXV (1963), 419-439.
- Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, *L'Idée de croisade au moyen âge* (Turin, 1900).
- Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, *La France en Orient au XIIIe siècle: expéditions du maréchal Boucinus* (BÉFAR, 44, 45; 2 vols., Paris, 1896).
- Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, "L'Ordre de Montjoye," *PO Laris*, 1 (1895), 42-57.
- Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, *Les Hospitaliers en Terre Sainte et à Chypre (1100-1370)* (Paris, 1904).
- Delaville Le Roulx, Joseph, *Les Hospitaliers à Rhodes jusqu'à la mort de Philibert de Neufchâtel (1238-1421)* (Paris, 1913).
- Dehnbach, Hans, *Geschichte der Kriegsmarine im Rahmen der politischen Geschichte 3. Das Mittelalter*, 2nd ed. (Berlin, 1923).
- Delehaye, Hippolyte, *Les Origines du culte des martyrs*, 2nd ed. (Subsidia hagiographica, 20. Brussels, 1933).
- Delisle, Léopold, *Mémoires sur les opérations militaires des Seldjoucs* (MAABL, XXXIII-2. Paris, 1869).
- Demicková, Iida, *Urbý hoch křesťanský svět (1098-1190)* (Univerzita odělský. Institut byzantin, no. 1994. Brno, 1974).
- Desmet, Daniel C., "Firmen and Muhammad," *Speculum*, XXXIII (1958), 165-190.
- Desmet, Daniel C., *Conversion and Poll Tax in Early Islam* (Cambridge, Mass., 1959).
- Dennis, George T., *The Reign of Manuel II Palaeologus in Thessalonica, 1312-1317* (Orientalia christiana antiqua, 139. Rome, 1960).
- Dennis, George T., "The Correspondence of Rodolfo de Sancta, Canon of Paris, 1186," *Tradens*, XVII (1961), 385-323.
- Dennis, George T., *Byzantium and the Franks, 1150-1400* (Variorum Rept., CS, 196. London, 1962).
- Der Nersessian, Siropie, *Manuscrits arméniens illustrés des XIIIe, XIIIe et XIVe siècles de la Bibliothèque des Pères Mékhitaristes de Paris* (2 vols., Paris, 1936-1937).
- Der Nersessian, Siropie, *Armenia and the Byzantine Empire: a Brief Study of Armenian Art and Civilization* (Cambridge, Mass., 1943).
- Der Nersessian, Siropie, "The Kingdom of Cilician Armenia," *N&C*, 11 (1962, 2nd ed. 1964), 430-439.
- Der Nersessian, Siropie, *Étude byzantine et arménienne: Byzantine and Armenian Studies* (Fondation Calouste Gulbenkian, Bibliothèque arménienne de la Fondation Calouste Gulbenkian; 2 vols., Leuven, 1973).

- Drechsamps, Paul, "Au Temps des croisés: le château de Saone dans la principauté d'Antioche," *Gazette des beaux-arts*, 6-IV (1956), 329-344.
- Drechsamps, Paul, "La Sculpture française en Palestine et en Syrie à l'époque des croisades," *Mémoires et monuments de la fondation Fies*, XXXI (1950), 51-114.
- Drechsamps, Paul, "Un Château romain du Berry, limité à Nazareth au XIII^e siècle," *Mémoires et monuments de la fondation Fies*, XXXII (1952), 119-126, and pl. XI.
- Drechsamps, Paul, *Les Châteaux des croisés en Terre Sainte*. 1. *Le Cruc des Chevaliers*, 2. *La défense du royaume de Jérusalem*; 3. *La défense du comté de Tripoli et de la principauté d'Antioche* (Bibl. Art, 15, 34, 92; 3 vols. and 3 albums of plates, Paris, 1954-1977 - vol. 3 actually published in 1977).
- Drechsamps, Paul, "Le Château de Serwentim en Cilicie, le défilé de Marzou et la frontière du comté d'Edesse," *Syria*, XVIII (1917), 379-388.
- Dihl, Pierre, *Histoire de l'Église byzantine* (Mélanges et documents, 1; 2 vols., Paris, 1962).
- Dicken, B., *The Orders and Churches of Greater Acre* (Acre, 1929).
- Dickhof, Harold, "Über die Baumaterialien des ersten Kreuzzuges," *Historisches Jahrbuch*, C (1920), 93-130.
- Dihi, Charles, "Les Fresques de l'église d'Abram-Gauch," *CRAI* (1934), pp. 89-96.
- Dihi, Charles, *La Société byzantine à l'époque des Croisades: Conférences faites à Bucarest (avril 1929)* (Paris, 1929).
- Dihi, Charles, ed., *Histoire de l'art byzantin*. 1. Charles Dihi, *La Peinture byzantine* (Paris, 1933); 2. Jean Ebersole, *Mémoires d'architecture byzantine* (Paris, 1934); 3. Louis Bréhaut, *La Sculpture et les arts mineurs byzantins* (Paris, 1934).
- Digard, Georges A.-L., *Philippe le Bel et le Saint-Siège de 1235 à 1304* (3 vols., Paris, 1934).
- Dirimickis, Petros, *Σταυρωτήριον της Π. C. Ιωάννου Βολογιάδη (σταυρωτήριον 500 ετών γὰς τὸν ἁγίου βασιλέως παύλου ἁγίου, 1911)* (Athens, 1949).
- Drehs, Gaston J., *Histoire des institutions monarchiques dans le royaume latin de Jérusalem, 1099-1291* (Paris, 1934; repr. New York, 1978).
- Dölger, Franz, "Das Fortbestehen der 'antike' in mittel- und spätbyzantinischer Zeit," in *Staat in memoria di Aldo Azzurini*, II (Padua, 1954), pp. 3-11.
- Dölger, Franz, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der byzantinischen Finanzverwaltung, besonders der 11. und 12. Jahrhunderte* (Byzantinisches Archiv, 9; 2nd ed., München, 1960).
- Doroni, Federico, *La Storia delle repubbliche di Genova* (3 vols., Genoa, 1913-1914).
- Dorville, Joseph P., *Palagent and the Fifth Crusade* (Philadelphia, 1930; repr. New York, 1976).
- Douat, Yves, "Le Comté de Trébizonde et la féodalité byzantodocimane à la veille de la croisade alépienne," *Revue du Haut*, IX (1943), 75-90.
- Douat, Yves, "La Société méroclienne à la veille de la croisade alépienne," *RHE Lang.*, I (1944), 66-87.
- Douat, Yves, "Le Cergé méroclien à la veille de la croisade alépienne," *RHE Lang.*, I (1944), 267-278.
- Douat, Yves, "Cathartes et Vindons à la veille de la croisade alépienne," *RHE Lang.*, II (1945), 386-397; III (1946), 70-83.
- Douat, Yves, "Alliance de Persens et la préparation basileuse de la croisade de Tunis: les restes de Lucien (1268-1276)," in *Séminaire consulaire de la mort de Saint-Louis. Actes des colloques de Bayrouet et de Paris* (Paris, 1976), pp. 121-232.
- Doorman, Ludo A., *Arménien Mémoires*, with preface by Sargis Der Nersessian, tr. Irene & Underwood (London, 1964).

- Dräke, Johannes, "Der Kirchenübergangsvorschlag des Kaisers Michael VIII. Palaiologos," *Zeitschrift für wissenschaftliche Theologie*, XXIV (1911), 325-329.
- Dräke, Johannes, "Zum Kirchenübergangsvorschlag des Jahres 1429," *Byz. Z.* V (1896), 372-384.
- Dräke, Johannes, "Bischof Anselm von Havelberg," *Z. Kirck.*, XCI (1900), 160-185.
- Dräke, Johannes, "Der Übergang der Osmanen nach Europa im XIV. Jahrhundert," *Neue Jahrbücher für das klassische Altertum*, XXXI (1913), 479-504.
- Droz, Léopold, "Les Paléologues encastrés au XII^e siècle sur les colonnes de la basilique de Bethléem," *Journées*, XXVII (1912), 345-369.
- Du Cange, Charles Du Fresnoy, *Les Familles d'Orient*, ed. Edmond Cl. Rey (CD. Indus, 14, Paris, 1869).
- Du Mans du Balcon, Robert, "Les Ancêtres défunts de Beyrouth," *Syria*, II (1911), 225-237, 317-327.
- Ducellier, Alain, *La Façade orientale de l'Église au moyen âge. Byzance et l'Orient du XI^e au XIV^e siècle (Documents et recherches sur l'histoire des pays byzantins, bulgares et slaves et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge)*, 13, Thémis/Arles, (1981).
- Dufour, Charles E., *L'Espagne catalane et le Magreb au XIII^e et XIV^e siècles de la bataille de Las Navas de Tolosa (1212) à l'expédition du sultan méridional Abu-J. Hassan (1310)* (Bibliothèque de l'École des hautes études hispaniques, 37; Paris, 1966).
- Dušan, Ivan, "La Conquête turque et la prise de Constantinople dans la littérature slave contemporaine," *Byzantinistica*, XIV (1953), 14-34, XV (1955), 318-329; XV (1956), 376-380.
- Dušan, Ivan, "La Spedizione catalana in Oriente all' inizio del secolo XIV ed i Bulgari," *Anuario de estudios medievales*, IX (1974-1975), 425-437.
- Dušan, Ivan, "Çar Kalekjan, bitaka pri Odrin prest april 1305 g. Iosifostavros [The Kaykür, the Battle of Odrin in April 1305, and its Consequences]," *Historiographički sbornik*, XLVIII (1979), 107-123.
- Dulaurent, Édouard F., "Étude sur l'organisation politique, religieuse et administrative du royaume de la Petite-Arménie," *JA*, 5-XVII (1861), 377-437; 3-XVIII (1861), 289-357.
- Durban, J. G., and W.W.M. Boul, "The Castle of Vahga," *Assiatic Studies*, XIV (1904), 173-184.
- Ducell, Frederic, "The Pagan's Crusade," *Amer. Hist.*, XXVI (1920-1921), 440-453.
- Ducell, Frederic, "The Pope's Plan for the First Crusade," in *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to Davis C. Munro*, ed. Louis J. Fulton (New York, 1928), pp. 44-56.
- Ducell, Frederic, "The Councils of Piacenza and Clermont," *H of C*, I (1933, 2nd ed. 1969), 228-252, and "The First Crusade Clermont to Constantinople," *ibid.*, 253-279.
- Duparc-Quove, Suzanne, *Le Cycle de la croisade* (Paris, 1955).
- Ehrlich, Jean, *Orient et Occident: recherches sur les influences byzantines et orientales en France avant et pendant les croisades*, 2nd ed. (Paris, 1954).
- Edwards, Peter W., "The Italian Crusade of 1101, a Previously Unknown Passage from the 'Liberation d'Outremer'," *Eng. Hist.*, LXXXIX (1976), 684-692.
- Edwards, Peter W., "Fiscal Obligations in the Latin East," *Byzantion*, XLVII (1977), 328-356.
- Edwards, Peter W., "The Crusading Policy of King Peter I of Cyprus, 1195-1269," in

- The Eastern Mediterranean Lands in the Period of the Crusades*, ed. Peter M. Holt (Warminster, 1977), pp. 90-105.
- Edbury, Peter W., "The Disputed Agency of the Kingdom of Jerusalem (1264/5 and 1268)," *Canaan Miscellany*, XXVII (= *Canaan*, 4th series, 23, 1979), 1-47 (with partial new edition of the Documents relating à la souveraineté au siège et à la égence).
- Edbury, Peter W., "The Murder of King Peter I of Cyprus (1279-1280)," *J Med. H.*, VI (1980), 219-223.
- Edbury, Peter W., "John of Ibelin's Title to the County of Jaffa and Ascalon," *Exp. H.S.*, XCVIII (1983), 115-133.
- Edbury, Peter W., ed., *Crusade and Settlement: Papers Read at the First Conference of the Society for the Study of the Crusades and the Latin East and Presented to R. C. Smail* (Cardiff, 1985); includes Abušafa, Cowdrey, Grubb, B. Hamilton, Housley, Zaidat, Leach, Mayer, Pringle, Richard, Riley-Smith, Smail, Tyerman, D.S.
- Egami, Nami, "Olon-Sainte et la découverte de l'église catholique romaine de Jean de Moscopolite," *Jd.*, CCXL (1952), 133-147.
- Egli, Pietro, "I Capitoli romani di Narni," *Dedalo*, 1-3 (1920-1921), 741-776.
- Elmskreutz, Andrew S., "The Crisis of the Diocese of Seleucia," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, LXXVI (1956), 178-184.
- Elmskreutz, Andrew S., "Arabic Diocese Struck by the Crusaders: a Case of Ignorance or of Economic Subversion," *JESHO*, VII (1964), 167-182.
- Elmskreutz, Andrew S., *Seleucia* (Albany, N.Y., 1972).
- Elchard, Albert, "Das griechische Kloster Mar-Saba in Palästina: seine Geschichte und seine literarischen Denkmäler," *Asiatische Quartalschrift* (für christliche Altertumskunde und Kirchengeschichte), VII (1893), 32-79.
- Elckhof, Ekkehard, *Friedrich Barbarossa im Orient. Kreuzzug und Tod Friedrichs I* (Deutsches archäologisches Institut, Abt. Istanbul, Istanbul Mitteilungen, Beiheft 17; Tübingen, 1977).
- Eliaeff, Nikita, *Mir ad-Din, un grand prince musulman de Syrie au temps des croisés (111-128 H./1118-1174)* (Institut français de Damas, 3 vols., Damascus, 1967).
- Eliaeff, Nikita, *L'Orient musulman au moyen âge*, 422-1240 (Paris, 1977).
- Ellis, Kasper, "Fratern et secreti Sacristiani Sepulchri. Einträge zu Inschriften, Briefen und weltlichem Religionswesen im Unterkloster des Kapitels vom Hlg. Grab," *Frühmittelalterliche Studien*, IX (1973), 227-333.
- Ellis, Kasper, "Kaiserort und Kloster vom Heiligen Grab: ein Beitrag zur Entstehung und Frühgeschichte der palästinensischen Kreuzfahrer," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Josef Fleckenstein and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 26; Sigmaringen, 1980), pp. 141-169.
- Enlart, Camille, "Quelques monuments d'architecture gothique en Grèce," *Revue de l'art chrétien*, 4-VIII (1897), 309-314.
- Enlart, Camille, "Les Monuments et monuments nationaux à Jérusalem: expansion de l'art français: Abbaye de Lapsa (Chypre) (District de Chénou)," *L'Art des monuments et des arts*, XII (1898), nos. 68, pp. 222-233.
- Enlart, Camille, "Expansion de l'art français à travers le monde: les monuments français de l'île de Chypre: Église métropolitaine de Sainte-Sophie à Nicosie," *L'Art des monuments et des arts*, XII (1898), nos. 69-70, pp. 258-277.
- Enlart, Camille, *L'Art gothique et de la Renaissance en Chypre* (2 vols., Paris, 1899).
- Enlart, Camille, "L'Abbaye cistercienne de Balouat en Syrie," *Syria*, IV (1923), 1-22.

- Barlet, Camille, *Les Muséums des croisades dans le royaume de Jérusalem: Architecture religieuse et civile* (Bibl. AH, 7-8; 2 vols. and 2 albums of plates, Paris, 1925-1928).
- Epitropiou, M. B., "Greeks and Latins of Thirteenth Century Cyprus," *Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, XX (1975), 35-52.
- Erbschütz, Martin, *Die Kreuzung: eine Kulturgeschichte*, 2nd ed. (Leipzig, 1930).
- Erismann, Carl, "Der Kreuzungspedank in Portugal," *Mit. Z. CXLI* (1930), 23-53.
- Erismann, Carl, *Die Entstehung des Kreuzungspedankens* (Forschungen zur Kirchen- und Geistesgeschichte, 6; Stuttgart, 1935); in Marshall W. Baldwin and Walter Goffart, ed., *The Origin of the Idea of Crusade* (Princeton, 1977).
- Erzsa, Carlo, "I Crociati veneti in Terra Santa dal vescovo di Clermont alla morte di Odoacre Fabre," *Arch. Ven.*, XXXVIII (1889), 237-273.
- Ezer, Abraham E., *Das abnormale Leben des Johannes Lackar Kolophont: Forschungen zur Geschichte der ant-wertlichen Beziehungen im 14. Jahrhundert* (Schriften zur Geistesgeschichte des östlichen Europa, 3; Wiesbaden, 1969).
- Evans, Austin P., "The Antigonian Crusade," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 277-324.
- Ever-Kaplanova, Hella, "La Société byzantine et l'union de Lyon," *Byzantinistica*, X (1949), 28-41.
- Ever-Kaplanova, Hella, "Une Page de l'histoire des relations byzantino-latines: le clergé byzantin et l'union de Lyon (1274-1282)," *Byzantinistica*, XIII (1952-1953), 66-82.
- Ever-Kaplanova, Hella, "Une Page de l'histoire des relations byzantino-latines: I. Byzance et le St. Siège à l'époque de l'union de Lyon; 2. La fin de l'union de Lyon," *Byzantinistica*, XVI (1955), 297-317; XVII (1956), 1-18.
- Evry, George, *The Byzantine Patriarchate, 431-1294*, 2nd rev. ed. (London, 1962; repr. New York, 1969).
- Fabre, Abel, "La Sculpture principale au Paléstre au XII^e siècle," *Échos d'Orient*, XXI (1922), 45-51.
- Falkenberg, Jacob P., *Geschichte der Kaiserthron von Trapezunt* (Munich, 1827).
- Fara, Nabli A., ed., *The Arab Heritage* (Princeton, 1944).
- Fara, Nabli A., "Arab Culture in the Twelfth Century," *H of C*, V (1961), 3-32.
- Fasoli, Gina, "Problemi di storia medievale italiana," *Storisch Gymnasium*, n.s., IV (1951), 1-30.
- Fazio, Peter, "La Chiesa di S. Maria del Castello di Rodi," *Atti del XV Congresso di storia dell'architettura Malta, 11-16 settembre 1967: L'architettura a Malta dalla preistoria all'attualità* (Rome, 1970), pp. 275-300.
- Fazio, Claudio, "La Doughton Humbert II à Venise et en Orient (1343-1347)," *MEF Roma*, XXVII (1907), 309-362.
- Favre, Marie L., *Studien zur Frühgeschichte des Deutschen Ordens* (Klein Historische Studien, 31; Stuttgart, 1974).
- Favre, Marie L., "Zur Pilgerfahrt des Grafen Rudolf von Pfellendorf: ein unbekannter Originalbrief aus dem Jahre 1186," *Zeitschrift für die Geschichte des Oberrheins*, CXXIII (= n.s., LXXXIV 1975), 31-45.
- Favre, Marie L., "Die italienische Levante-Pilgerie und die Sicherheit des Seewegs nach Syrien im 12. und 13. Jahrhundert," *BSMG, LKV* (1973), 461-510.
- Favre, Marie L., "Graf Heinrich von Champagne und die Pilger im Königreich Jerusalem," *Bullettino storico pisano*, XLVII (1976), 97-120.
- Favre, Marie L., "Graf Heinrich von Malta, Genoa und Edmund IV. von Antiochia: eine mittelalterliche Studie," *QFLB*, LVIII (1978), 181-205.

- Forman-Like, Marie L., "The Britanic Kingdom after the Fall of Maafrort (1171): Some Reflections," in *Quartaria* (1982), pp. 273-284.
- Forman-Like, Marie L., "La Cession des Fiefs du royaume de Gerusalemme sous le règne de Balduin comte de Champagne et un diplôme de Baudouin IV comte de Tripoli pour le comte de Foss," *Bullettino storico pisano*, LJV (1915), 107-115.
- Fotakis, George, *Simeon Atanasios, monaco di studio, archeologo latino di Tebe (secolo XIV)* (Scuola dei Orientalisti, 2, Brescia, 1968).
- Fotakis, George, *La Chiesa latina in Oriente* (Studi religiosi, 3; 3 vols., Verona, 1973-1978, rev. ed., vol. 1, Verona, 1981).
- Fotakis, George, "La Chiesa latina nel regno di Transilvania, 1204-1224, 1423-1430," *Byzantisch-Byzantinische Jahrbücher*, XLI (1974), 48-102.
- Fotakis, George, *Perché le crociate: aspetti interpretativi* (Il secolo medievale: Sezione di storia medievale e contemporanea, 3, Bologna, 1980).
- Fotkins, Robin, and John Thomas, *Crusader Castles* (London, 1957).
- Fourn, Christopher G., "The Armies of Constantinopolitan Rosty in 1204," *Swedish Review*, XIII (1978), 94-104.
- Fichtenau, Heinrich, "Akten, System und das Ungeheuer (zu Richard Löwenherz)," *Archiv für Geschichteliche Geographie (= Zeitschrift zur Geschichte Österreichs)*, CXXV (1966), II-32.
- Fitz, Jean M., "Le Pèlerinage des Monastères et des Jacobins à Jérusalem," *Cah. Civ. Méd.*, XII (1969), 113-126.
- Fitz, Jean M., *Chrétiens syriaques entre croisés et Mongols* (Orientalia christiana antiquiora, 97; Rome, 1974), pp. 327-341.
- Fitz, Jean M., *Chrétiens syriaques sous les Mongols (II-XIII-XIV siècles)* (Corpus scripturarum christianorum orientalem, 162 (= Subsidia, 44; Leuven, 1973).
- Fisk, Harold S., "The Role of Damascus in the History of the Crusades," *Mariner World*, XLIX (1959), 40-51.
- Fisk, Harold S., "The Foundation of the Latin States, 1099-1118," *H of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 348-409.
- Fiske, Heinrich, *Papsttum und Übergang der Byzantinismus* (Vorstufenhistorische Forschungen, 4-5; 2 vols. in 1, Münster, 1907).
- Fischer, Walter J., "The Spice Trade in Medieval Egypt: a Contribution to the Economic History of Medieval Islam," *JESNAQ*, I (1958), 157-174.
- Fisher, George B., "Deus non vult: a Critic of the Third Crusade," *Medieval Studies*, IX (1947), 162-184.
- Fleckenstein, Josef, and Manfred Hellmann, eds., *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas* (Kontinuum Arbeitskreis für mittelalterliche Geschichte, Vorträge und Forschungen, 26; Sigmaringen, 1980), includes U. Arnold, Elm, Hiestand, Latzel, Mayer, Melville, Franke.
- Fleckenstein, Josef, "Die Rechtfertigung des geistlichen Rittertums nach der Schrift 'De laude novae militarie' Bernhard von Clairvaux," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Fleckenstein and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 26; Sigmaringen, 1980), pp. 9-22.
- Fleiss, Augustin, "Les Origines de l'action de la papauté en vue de la croisade," *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique*, XXXIV (1934), 765-775.
- Fokas, Jaroslav, "The Fourth Crusade, 1204-1205 (Some Reconsiderations)," *Byzantinologica*, XXVI (1963), 277-290.
- Fokas, Jaroslav, "A Crusader Manuscript from Antioch," *Rendiconti della Pontificia accademia romana di archeologia*, 3-XLI (1969-1970), 283-298.

- Toldes, Jacques, *Crusader Manuscript (Illumination of Saint Jean d'Acre, 1273-1282)* (Princeton, 1936).
- Toldes, Jacques, "Painting and Sculpture in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem, 1099-1291," *H of C*, IV (1977), 251-286, and "Crusader Art and Architecture: a Photographic Survey," *Ibid.*, 281-334.
- Toldes, Jacques, "Three Crusader Capitals in Jerusalem," *Levant*, X (1978), 139-155.
- Toldes, Jacques, ed., *Crusader Art in the Twelfth Century* (British Archaeological Reports, International Series, 152; Oxford, 1982).
- Toldes, Jacques, with Pamela French and Pierre Gaspel, "The Crusader Presence at Crac des Chevaliers and Marjay Castle," *D Oksa F*, XXXVI (1982), 177-210.
- Toldes, Jacques, *The Hospitaller Capitals and the Crusader Shrine of the Annunciation* (Monographs on the Fine Arts, 42; University Park, Pa., and London, 1985).
- Forbes-Boyd, Eric, *In Crusader Greece: a Study of the Castles of the Morea* (New York, 1964).
- Forcy, Alan J., "The Order of Mountjoy," *Speculum*, XLVI (1971), 290-366.
- Forcy, Alan J., *The Templars in the Curia de Anglia* (University of Durham Publications; London, 1973).
- Forcy, Alan J., "The Military Order of St. Thomas of Acre," *Eng. HR*, XCII (1977), 481-503.
- Forcy, Alan J., "The Military Orders in the Crusading Proposals of the Late-Thirteenth and Early-Fourteenth Centuries," *Daalria*, XXXVI (1980), 317-345.
- Forcy, Alan J., "The Failure of the Siege of Damascus in 1148," *J Med. H*, X (1964), 13-23.
- Forcy, Alan J., "The Military Orders and the Spanish Reconquest in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries," *Daalria*, XL (1984), 187-234.
- Formisano, Ubaldo, *Genova nel basso impero e nell' alto medioevo* (Storia di Genova dalle origini al tempo nostro, 2; Milan, 1941).
- Forstmann, Kurt, *Der Deutsche Orden am Mittelmeer* (Quellen und Studien zur Geschichte des Deutschen Ordens 21; Bonn, 1967).
- Forryth, George H., and Kurt Forstmann, *The Monastery of Saint Catherine at Mount Sinai: the Church and Fortress of Justinian* (Ann Arbor, 1973).
- Fotheringham, John K., "Genoa and the Fourth Crusade," *Eng. HR*, XXV (1960), 26-37.
- Fotheringham, John K., *Ateneo Iannaki, Conqueror of the Archipelago* (Oxford, 1912).
- Fowler, Alfred, "The Epic Cycle of the Crusades," *H of C*, VI (1909), 98-135.
- Fraser, John, "The Cross of the First Crusade from the Defeat of Kerbogah to the Departure from Acre," *Byzantion*, XL (1970), 274-308.
- France, John, "An Unknown Anecdote of the Capture of Jerusalem," *Eng. HR*, LXXXVII (1972), 771-783.
- Frances, E., "Adoles Commune et les privilèges octroyés à Venise," *Byzantinistische*, XXIX (1968), 17-23.
- Frankenberger, Gustav, *Acly vellet arable* (3 vols. in 1, Prague, 1923).
- Fraser, Charles A., "The Catholic Church in Constantinople, 1204-1453," *Selkirk Studies*, XL (1979), 33-49.
- Friedman, Elia, *The Later Portents of Mount Carmel: a Study in Carmelite Origins* (Institutum Historicum Teutonicum, Studia, 1, Rome, 1975).
- Fruehley, Alfred, *The Dreadful Day: the Battle of Montjart*, 1077 (London, 1981).
- Frölke, Antoine, "La Libération de la quadrace comtale vers Constantinople," *Revue de l'histoire des religions*, CXLV (1954), 168-187, CXLVI (1954), 67-89, CXLVII (1955), 50-61.

- Prölss, Anselm, *La Sicilia di re Henrico Crispo: ricerche sur lo sviluppo d'un castrò* (Archivum de P'Orient christico, 7; Paris, 1941).
- Prölss, Anselm, *Las Islasquintas de la Hues Criso* (Archivum de P'Orient christico, 8; Paris, 1967).
- Pelle, Rinaldo, "Visconti e la quarta crociata, dominazione del despoti Lodovico Sforzi," *Arch. Hist.*, XVI (1973), 46-49, 239-271.
- Porter, Elizabeth Chapin, "The Kingdom of Cyprus, 1191-1291," *H of C. R.* 1362, 2nd ed. (1969), 399-639.
- Gabler, Ulrich, "Der Kinderkreuzung vom Jahr 1212," *Schwabische Zeitschrift für Geschichte*, XXVIII (1973), 1-14.
- Gabriel, Albert, *La Civ di Rodas 18000-18000* (2 vols., Paris, 1921-1923).
- Gabriel, Albert, *Mosonmari tami d'Anatolia* (2 vols., Paris, 1931-1934).
- Gabriel, Francesco, "Anali di Sicilia e Anali di Spagna," *al-Anatolia*, XV (1950), 27-43.
- Gabriel, Francesco, "La Crociata vici dall' Italia," in *Concerto storia, 1801 e le immagini del medio evo*, ed. Vittor Branca (Civiltà veneziana. Aspetti e problemi, 7, Padova, 1973), pp. 183-198.
- Gadella, A. E., "Alesia I Commerce and the Venetian Trade Privileges: a New Interpretation," *Byzantion*, I (1960), 429-446.
- Gale, John, *Sisal and Kaniakumkum* (Scottish, 1979); cf. *the Sisal and the Monastery of St. Catherine* (London, 1980).
- Gauthier, François L., "Recherches sur la fin juridique qui unissait les chets de la première crociata à l'empereur byzantin," in *Mélanges offerts à M. Paul F. Marde . . .* (Geneva, 1961), pp. 49-63.
- García de Valdeavellano y Armada, Luis, *Curso de historia de las instituciones eclesiásticas de los orígenes al final de la edad media* (Madrid, 1946).
- García-Lerrogueira, Santos A., *El Gran priore de Navarra de la orden de San Juan de Jerusalén, siglos XII-XIII* (2 vols., Pamplona, 1937).
- Garner, John, *The Lascaris of Moscow: the Story of an Empire in Exile* (London, 1912).
- Garland, Benoit, *Las Anticas monacales benedictinas en Ordo* (Lis and Paris, 1912).
- Garruti, Carlo A., "Ruggieri II e la fondazione della monarchia in Sicilia," *Archivio storico siciliano*, 82, LII (1932), 1-33.
- Gatto, Ludovico, *Il Pontefice di Gregorio X, 1271-1276* (Istituto storico italiano per il medio evo, Studi storici, fasc. 20-32; Rome, 1939).
- Gaudelieu-Drocombyren, Mauron, *Las instituciones monacales*, 3rd ed. (Bibliothèque de philosophie scolastique; Paris, 1944).
- Gaz, John M. M., *L'Italia cabilanale et l'empire byzantin depuis l'avènement de Basile le Jeune jusqu'à la prise de Bari par les Normands (867-1071)* (BÉFAR, 90; Paris, 1904).
- Gaz, John M. M., *La Pape Clément VI et las affaires d'Orient (1342-1352)* (Paris, 1904).
- Geanakoplos, Dion L., "The Council of Florence (1438-1439) and the Problem of Union between the Greek and Latin Churches," *Church History*, XXIV (1953), 324-346.
- Geanakoplos, Dion L., *Emperor Michael Palaeologus and the West, 1258-1282: a Study in Byzantine-Latin Relations* (Cambridge, Mass., 1959).
- Geanakoplos, Dion L., *Byzantine East and Latin West: Two Worlds of Christendom in Middle Ages and Renaissance; Studies in Ecclesiastical and Cultural History* (New York and Oxford, 1966).

- Geanakoplos, Ioann A., "Byzantium and the Crusades, 1361-1354," *H of C*, II (1975), 27-63, and "Byzantium and the Crusades, 1354-1453," *ibid.*, 69-103.
- Geanakoplos, Ioann A., *Medieval Western Civilization and the Byzantine and Islamic Worlds: Interaction of Three Cultures* (Lexington, Mass., and Toronto, 1979).
- Gérald, Robert, *Rôle des musulmans comme établissements de crédit* (Paris, 1961).
- Gerland, Ernst, "Kreta als venezianische Kolonie (1204-1669)," *FJG Göttingen*, XX (1896), 1-28.
- Gerland, Ernst, "Historie de la noblesse crétaise au moyen âge," *RD Lefevre*, X (1903-1904), 172-247; XI (1905-1906), 7-144, published separately (Paris, 1907).
- Gerland, Ernst, "Der vierte Kreuzzug und seine Probleme," *Neue Jahrbücher für das klassische Altertum*, XIII (1904), 303-314.
- Gerland, Ernst, *Geschichte des byzantinischen Kaiserreiches von Konstantinopel*. 1. *Geschichte der Kaiser Baldwin I. und Heinrich (1204-1216)* (Geschichte der Frankenherrschaft in Griechenland, 2 [all published], Homburg vor der Höhe, 1905).
- German, Alexandre C., *Histoire de la commune de Montpellier depuis ses origines jusqu'à son incorporation à la monarchie française* (3 vols., Montpellier, 1851).
- German, Alexandre C., *Mémoire de commerce de Montpellier antérieurement à l'ouverture du port du Cros* (2 vols., Montpellier, 1861).
- Germer-Durand, J., "La Sculpture française en Palestine," *Conférences de Saint-Étienne 1910-1911* (École pratique d'études bibliques: Études palestiniennes et orientales, 3, Paris, 1911), pp. 233-257.
- Gerr, Stephen, "The Byzantine Church and the West: a Survey of Recent Research," *Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, XXIII (1978), 69-82.
- Gerola, Giuseppe, *Memorandum vent'anni nell'isola di Creta: ricerche e descrizioni* (4 vols., Venice, 1906-1912).
- Gerola, Giuseppe, "I Monumenti medievali delle isole di Spinali," *Annuario della Reale scuola archeologica di Atene e delle missioni italiane in Oriente*, I (1914), 166-204; II (1916), 1-101.
- Gerola, Giuseppe, "Il Rinnovo dello spedale dei cavalieri a Rodi," *L'Arte*, XVII (1914), 333-340.
- Gerola, Giuseppe, "Il Costrutto dell'Isola alle opere d'arte militari rodie," *Atti del Reale Istituto veneto di scienze, lettere ed arti*, LXXXIX (1929/1930), 1015-1027.
- Gerola, Giuseppe, "I Trasmonti di Creta al tempo del dominio veneziano," *Collezioni francescana*, II (1932), 301-361.
- Gervase, Roberto, ed., *La Storia delle crociate* (3 vols., Milan, 1978).
- Gibb, Hamilton A.R., "The Achievements of Saladin," *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, XXXV (1952-1953), 44-60.
- Gibb, Hamilton A.R., "The Caliphate and the Arab States," *H of C*, I (1952, 2nd ed. 1963), 61-94.
- Gibb, Hamilton A.R., "Zengi and the Fall of Edessa," *H of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 449-462, and "The Career of Nûr-ad-Dîn," *ibid.*, 513-527, and "The Rise of Saladin, 1169-1179," *ibid.*, 562-583.
- Gibb, Hamilton A.R., "The Ayyûbids," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 682-714.
- Giesbrecht, Wilhelm von, *Geschichte der deutschen Kaiserzeit* (6 vols., Brunswick and Leipzig: vols. 1-3, 5th ed., 1881-1890; vol. 4, 4th ed., 1877, vols. 5-6, 1st ed., 1880-1895).
- Greyson, Alexander, "The Genesis of the Crusades: the Encyclical of Sergius IV," *Medievalia et humanistica*, V (1948), 2-23; VI (1950), 3-34.

- Gill, Joseph, "Greeks and Latins in a Common Council: the Council of Florence (1438-1439)," *O. Chr. & R.* XCV (1956), 263-287.
- Gill, Joseph, *The Council of Florence* (Cambridge, Eng., 1959; repr. New York, 1962).
- Gill, Joseph, *Eugenius IV, Pope of Christian Union* (London, 1961).
- Gill, Joseph, "Frank, Western and Pope Innocent III 1201-1203," *Swiss vorträge*, XII (1970), 85-106.
- Gill, Joseph, "Innocent III and the Greeks: Aggressor or Apostolic?," in *Reich und Welt in der Mitte des Mittelalters*, ed. Derek Baker (Edinburgh, 1977), pp. 91-104.
- Gill, Joseph, "The Tribulations of the Greek Church in Cyprus 1196-c. 1305," *Byz. R. V* (1977), 73-95.
- Gill, Joseph, *Byzantinism and the Papacy, 1284-1400* (New Brunswick, N. J., 1979).
- Gill, Joseph, *Church Union: Rome and Byzantium (1284-1453)* (London, 1979).
- Gilles, Henri, "Législation et doctrine canoniques sur les Sarrasins," in *Islam et Christianisme du VIII^e (s^ecle) au XI^e (s^ecle)* (Colloques de Fougères, 18, Toulouse, 1967), pp. 179-213.
- Gillingham, John, *Richard the Lionheart* (London, 1971); or Rudi Heugner as *Richard Löwenherz* (Düsseldorf, 1961).
- Gillingham, John, "Richard I and the Science of War in the Middle Ages," *War and Government in the Middle Ages, Essays in Honour of J. G. Prestwich*, ed. John Gillingham and J. C. Holt (Woodbridge, 1984), pp. 78-91.
- Gladitz, Paul, *Graf Balduin I. von Edessa* (Halle, 1906).
- Glazer, Francesco, *Armenians in Constantinople and the Mediterranean* (2 vols., Palermo, 1953-1959).
- Glazer, Constant C., "The Genoese and the Levant Database in the XIIIth Century," *Journal of European Economic History*, V (1976), 387-400.
- Gjurov, V., "Balgarskata dshiven i Nibezja v borbat protiv latinskata carigradsko imperija (1204-1281 g.) [The Bulgarian Kingdom and Nicaea in the Fight against the Latin Empire of Constantinople]," *Izvestija na Nacionalnata istoricheska Akademiya*, II (1974), 7-37.
- Glebe, Helmut, *Papst Eugen III. (1145-1153) unter besonderer Berücksichtigung seiner päpstlichen Tätigkeit* (Beiträge zur mittelalterlichen und neueren Geschichte, 6, Jena, 1914).
- Griffey, John, 1291, *The Unholy Crusade* (Oxford, 1960).
- Grisins, Solomon G.F., "New Light on the Beginnings of the Kharim Marchants," *JESHO*, I (1958), 173-184.
- Grisins, Solomon G.F., *A Mediterranean Society: the Jewish Communities of the Arab World as Portended in the Documents of the Cairo Geniza* (2 vols., Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London, 1967-1970).
- Goldmann, Zeev, "The Hospice of the Knights of St. John in Akko," *Archaeology*, XIX (1966), 182-189.
- Grödelbe, Lynce, *Vorlesungen über das Islam*, 2nd rev. ed., ed. Franz Böhlinger (Heidelberg, 1925).
- Gruborovich, Orolano, "San Francisco e i Francescani in Damasco (5 Nov. 1219-2 Febb. 1220)," *Studi francescani*, XXXII (n.s., XII, 1928), 397-399.
- Gruft-Gastambide, José, *Historia de la isla de la cruzada en España* (Victoriana, 4, Yvona, 1918).
- Gonzaga de Azevedo, Luis, *História de Portugal* (6 vols., Lisbon, 1935-1962).
- González, Julia, *Alfonso IX* (2 vols., Madrid, 1944).
- González, Julia, "Las Compañías de Pedro de III en Andalucía," *Hispania*, VI (1946), 515-531.

- Gennadius, Isidus, *El Reino de Castilla en la época de Alfonso VII* (Consejo superior de investigaciones científicas, Escuela de estudios medievales: Tercera, 25-27, 3 vols., Madrid, 1963).
- Gies, Vladimir F., and Christine V. Barnstone, eds., *The Identity of Two World Cultural Exchange between East and West during the Period of the Crusades* (Studies in Medieval Culture, 21, Salamanca, 1986).
- Göhrson, Adam, *Adam-Luths Kreuzgenossen* (Abhandlungen zur mittlern und neuen Geschichte, 38, Berlin and Leipzig, 1912).
- Gottlob, Adolf, *Die päpstlichen Kreuzgenossen des 13. Jahrhunderts ihrer rechtlichen Grundlage, politische Geschichte und technische Verwaltung* (Hollitzerstadt, 1892).
- Gottlob, Adolf, "Hat Papst Innocenz III. sich das Recht erworben, auch die Laien zu Kreuzgenossen zu bestimmen?" *NJ Görres*, XV (1893), 342-399.
- Gottlob, Adolf, *Kreuzgenossen und Almsammelwesen eine Studie über die Frühzeit der Almsammelwesen* (Kirchenrechtliche Abhandlungen, ed. Ulrich Stutz, 90-91, Stuttgart, 1908).
- Gottschalk, Hans L., *Al-Muḥall al-Kāmil von Egypten und seine Zeit, eine Studie zur Geschichte Vorderasiens und Egyptens in der ersten Hälfte des 13. Jahrhunderts* (Wiesbaden, 1958).
- Gottschalk, Hans L., "Die ägyptische Salasale Salasale ad-Durr in Geschichte und Dichtung," *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, LXI (1967), 41-61.
- Gottwald, J., "Die Kirche und das Salasale Papagen in Kleinasien," *Bys. Z.* XXXVI (1934), 84-100.
- Gottwald, J., "Die Burg TG zu südöstlichem Kilikien," *Bys. Z.* XL (1940), 89-104.
- Gottwald, J., "Burgen und Kirchen im nördlichen Kilikien," *Bys. Z.* XLII (1942), 12-103.
- Gough, Michael, "Anastasio," *American Studies*, II (1932), 85-150.
- Grabbe, Aryeh (born, Aryeh), "Le Privilege de croisade et la régence de Sages," *RH Drevé FE*, 4-XLII (1944), 438-443.
- Grabbe, Aryeh, "Le Côté de Sages et le château de Sabbelch pendant les croisades," *Cat. Chr. Arch. XII* (1930), 43-62.
- Grabbe, Aryeh, (born, Aryeh), "Les Pèlerins occidentaux en Terre Sainte et Actes d'Accueil des chrétiens à Saint-Jean d'Acre," *Studi medievali*, 3-XIV (1933), 247-264.
- Grabbe, Aryeh, "The Crusade of King Lewis VII. a Reconsideration," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Barber (Cambridge, 1962), pp. 94-104.
- Gratz, Heinrich, *Geschichte der Juden von den ältesten Zeiten bis auf die Gegenwart* (11 vols., Leipzig and Vienna, 1923).
- Gratiasan, Maurice, *Étude critique sur les livres des saints de Jérusalem* (Paris, 1927).
- Gray, George L., *The Children's Crusade: an Episode of the 13th Century* (New York, 1876; London, 1877).
- Grigoris, Henri, "L'Opinion byzantine et la bataille de Hattin," *Byzantion*, VI (1891, offert à Sir William Mitchell Ramsay), 247-251.
- Grigoris, Henri, "The Question of the Diversion of the Fourth Crusade, or an Old Controversy Solved by a Latin Adverb," *Byzantion*, XV (1940/41), 158-166.
- Gregorius, Petrus, *Geschichte der Stadt Athen im Mittelalter von der Zeit Justinians bis zur türkischen Eroberung* (2 vols., Stuttgart, 1889), tr. into Greek by Spyridon P. Lampert as *Ἱστορία τῆς πόλεως Ἀθηνῶν κατὰ τοὺς μεσαιωνικούς χρόνους* (2 vols., Athens, 1904-1906).

- Oberhammer, Myraan, "Structure and Aims of the Livre au Roi," in *Outremer* (1962), pp. 318-326.
- Owen, Philip, "The Debasement of the Byzant in the Eleventh Century," *Byz. Z.* XLVII (1954), 279-294.
- Reich, Friedrich, *Der Zusammenbruch des Reiches Jerusalem 1187-1189* (Jena, 1908).
- Reussner, René, *Histoire des croisades et du royaume franc de Jérusalem* (3 vols., Paris, 1934-1936).
- Reussner, René, *Histoire de Chypre, des origines à 1871* (Bibliothèque historique; Paris, 1947).
- Reussner, René, "La Chronologie des patriarches grecs de Jérusalem au XIII^e siècle," *Revue Byz.*, XX (1962), 197-204.
- Grubebaum, Gustav E. von, *Medieval Islam: a Study in Cultural Orientation*, 2nd ed. (Chicago, 1953).
- Grunzweig, Armand, "Philippe le Bon et Constantinople," *Byzantion*, XXIV (1954), 47-61.
- Gual Canavosa, Miguel, "Precedentes de la reconquista valenciana," *Consejo superior de Investigaciones científicas. Escuela de estudios medievales. Sección de Historia. Estudios medievales*, I, fasc. 3 (Valencia, 1932), pp. 163-246.
- Guardino, Francesco, *Sul Dominio dei duchi di Atene e Neopatria dal re di Sicilia* (Palermo, 1815).
- Gülland, Rodolphe, "Les Appels de Comnène XI Paléologue à Rome et à Venise pour sauver Constantinople (1452-1453)," *Byzantinistica*, XIV (1953), 228-244.
- Gülland, Rodolphe, "Widely scattered writings on the administrative history of the Byzantine empire, of which unfortunately no collected reprint is available. These articles are too numerous to be listed here. The reader is referred to the bibliography of Gülland's writing, 1952-1957 in *Byzantion*, XXV-XXVII (1955-1957), 595-606.
- Hauck, Milton R., "A Twelfth Century Pioneer - Paul of Héraclée," in *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to David C. Mervin*, ed. Louis J. Packer (New York, 1958), pp. 183-206.
- Hayward, Stanislas, "Un Grand maître des Assassins au temps de Saladin," *JA*, 7-IX (1877), 324-489.
- Hicken, John, *A History of the Orthodox Church of Cyprus from the Coming of the Apostles Paul and Barnabas to the Commencement of the British Occupation, A.D. 43-A.D. 1878* (London, 1901); tr. into Greek and expanded by Charlaos I Papadopoulos (3 vols., Athens, 1923-1932).
- Hugueneyr, Heinrich, *Peur der Eroberer: ein kritischer Beitrag zur Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges* (Leipzig, 1879).
- Hugueneyr, Heinrich, "Chronologie de la première croisade 1094-1101," *RO Latin*, VI (1894), 214-263, 468-546; VII (1896), 275-329, 438-503, VIII (1900-1901), 318-362, Commande de "Chronologie de l'histoire du royaume de Jérusalem," *RO Latin*, IX (1902), 348-365, X (1903-1904), 372-409, XI (1905-1906), 145-186, 453-485; XII (1909-1911), 68-108, 283-328.
- Hugger, Oskar H., *Die Pilgerpredigt des ersten Kreuzzugs* (Geist und Werk der Zeiten, 10; Zurich, 1903).
- Hauck, Oscar, *Un Empereur de Byzance à Rome: Vingt ans de travail pour l'union des églises et pour la défense de l'empire d'Orient, 1255-1273* (Owensgrove nationale Warstanzelst Romanen, R. Warran, 1930; repr. London, 1972).

- Halecki, Oscar, *The Crusade of Hama: a Discussion of Controversial Problems* (Polish Institute Series, 3; New York, 1940).
- Hallen, Johannes, "Kaiser Heinrich VI.," *Hist. Z.* CXIII (3-XVII, 1914), 473-804.
- Hallen, Johannes, *Das Papsttum. Idee und Wirklichkeit*, rev. ed. (3 vols., Urach und Stuttgart, 1930-1933).
- Hamilton, Bernard, "Rebuilding Zion, the Holy Places of Jerusalem in the Twelfth Century," *Studies in Church History*, XIV (1977), 105-114.
- Hamilton, Bernard, "The Armenian Church and the Papacy at the Time of the Crusades," *Eastern Churches Review*, X (1978), 61-87.
- Hamilton, Bernard, "Women in the Crusader States: the Queens of Jerusalem (1100-1180)," in *Medieval Women: Dedicated and Presented to Rosalind M.J. Hill on the Occasion of her Sixtieth Birthday*, ed. Derek Baker (Studies in Church History, Subseries, 1, Oxford, 1978), pp. 143-174.
- Hamilton, Bernard, "A Medieval Urban Church: the Case of the Crusader States," in *The Church in Town and Countryside*, ed. Derek Baker (Studies in Church History, 16; Oxford, 1979), pp. 157-170.
- Hamilton, Bernard, *Muslims, Armenians, Christians and the Crusades (900-1300)* (Variorum, CS, 87; London, 1979).
- Hamilton, Bernard, *The Latin Church in the Crusader States: the Secular Church* (London, 1960).
- Hamilton, Bernard, "Ralph of Dnabrouk, Patriarch of Antioch (1135-40)," *Ninth-Century Medieval Studies*, XXVIII (1984), 1-21.
- Hamilton, Bernard, "The Tinder Nobility of the Latin East: the Case of Agnes of Courtenay," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Ebdary (Cardiff, 1983), pp. 195-203.
- Hamilton, Robert W., *The Church of the Holy Sepulchre, Bethlehem: a Guide*, 2nd rev. ed. (Jerusalem, 1947; repr. 1948).
- Hamilton, Robert W., *The Structural History of the Aqsa Mosque: a Record of Architectural Growings from the Ruins of 1938-1942* (London and Jerusalem, 1949).
- Hammer Purgstall, Josef von, *Die Geschichte der Arabischen aus morgenländischen Quellen* (Stuttgart und Tübingen, 1818).
- Hamppe, Karl, *Urban IV. und Manfred (1244-1266)* (Heidelberger Abhandlungen zur mittelalterl. und neuere Geschichte, 1), Heidelberg, 1905.
- Hamppe, Karl, *Geschichte Konstantin von Hohenhausen* (Historische und bibliographische Nachrichten . . . unter Berücksichtigung der Forschungsergebnisse seit 1894 von Heinrich Kämpf, 2nd ed., repr. Leipzig, 1942).
- Hamppe, Karl, *Deutsche Kaisergeschichte in der Zeit der Staufer und Stinger*, 10th ed., ed. Friedrich Baeriges (Heidelberg, 1949).
- Harnack, Emil, *Untersuchungen über das lateinische Patriarchat von Jerusalem von Erhebung der heiligen Stadt bis zum Tode des Patriarchen Arnulf (1089-1108)* (Diss., Erlangen; Breslau, 1899).
- Haronis, Gabriel, "Les Visages out-ils-très le clercant en 1327," *Rev. hist.*, IV (1877), 74-102.
- Haronis, Gabriel, ed., *Memoir de la nation Egyptienne* (7 vols., Paris, 1931-1940).
- Hassberg, Joseph E., "The Children's Crusade," *Cath. Hist.*, XXIV (1935), 30-38.
- Hasson, Joseph, *Das Problem eines Erchanstums in Jerusalem* (Diss., Freiburg, Switzerland, Lausanne, 1928).
- Hardwick, Mary Nickerson, "The Crusader States, 1192-1243," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 322-334. See also Nickerson.

- Hartmann, Angelika, *Am-Nahel II-Die Araber (1180-1221): Politik, Religion, Kultur in der späten Mittelalterzeit* (Studien zur Sprache, Geschichte und Kultur des islamischen Orients, n.s., 1, Berlin and New York, 1975).
- Hartmann, Johannes, *Die Persönlichkeit des Salih al-Salibi von Grund der arabischen Quellen* (Hist. Stud., ed. Ebering, 29; Berlin, 1939).
- Hartmann, Richard, *Der Felsenbogen in Jerusalem und seine Geschichte* (Zur Kunstgeschichte des Auslands, 66; Straßburg, 1909).
- Harvey, William, *The Church of the Holy Sepulchre: Structural Survey, Final Report* (London, 1915).
- Hadzuck, Frederick W., "Monuments of the Cathedral," *ABS Athens*, XV (1906-1909), 246-269.
- Hadzuck, Frederick W., "Frankish Remains at Adalia," *ABS Athens*, XV (1906-1909), 270-273.
- Hadzuck, Frederick W., "The Latin Monuments of Chios," *ABS Athens*, XVI (1906-1909), 137-144.
- Hadzuck, Frederick W., "Dachstein-Stadion-Halkarnassos," *ABS Athens*, XVIII (1911-1912), 201-216.
- Hahn, August, *Les Prisons épiscopales des croisés: genèse, historique, localisation: avec une notice historique dans les colonies françaises de Syrie au moyen âge* (Paris, 1932).
- Haack, Albert, *Kirchengeschichtliche Dissertationen*, 36 (nachgedr.) ed. (5 vols., Berlin, 1954).
- Hahnig, Hans W., "Die Missionspolitik Kaiser Michael VIII.," *Actes du XVII^e Congrès International des études byzantines*, II (Istanbul, 1975), pp. 109-111.
- Hauszicki, Jerzy, "Fryderyk II Hohenstauf i alasyr: miedzy innymi w relacji Muḥammad al-Ḥamawī (Frederick II of Hohenstaufen and the Assassins: a Little-Known Episode in the Report of Muḥammad al-Ḥamawī)," *Acta Historica: Proce z dyplomacji porównawczej i Polityki* (Udowodniet na Adama Mickiewicza w Poznaniu, Seria historia, 71; Poznań, 1976), pp. 225-239.
- Hauszicki, Jerzy, *Muḥammad al-Ḥamawī o europejskim półwyspie w średnio-wiekowej literaturze* [The Islamic Sect of the Assassins in European Medieval Literature] (Udowodniet na Adama Mickiewicza w Poznaniu, Seria historia, 74; Poznań, 1978).
- Hauszicki, Jerzy, *Polityka orientalna Fryderyka II Hohenstaufa* [The Eastern Politics of Frederick II of Hohenstaufen] (Udowodniet na Adama Mickiewicza w Poznaniu, Seria historia, 79; Poznań, 1978).
- Hayek, Dennis, *Le Droit franc en Syrie pendant les croisades: Institutions judiciaires* (Paris, 1935).
- Hazard, Harry W., "Caucasia and the Crusades," in *The Joint Expedition to Circassia Martima: vol. I. Studies in the History of Circassia Martima*, ed. Charles T. Fritsch (Bullens of the American Schools of Oriental Research, Supplemental Studies, 10; Missoula, Montana, 1975), pp. 79-114.
- Hazard, Harry W., "Muslim North Africa, 646-1294," *M of G*, III (1975), 457-483.
- Hecht, Winfried, *Die byzantinische Außenpolitik zur Zeit der letzten Komnenen-Kaiser (1180-1185)* (Neustadt an der Aisch, 1967).
- Herr, Jacques, "Il Commercio nel Mediterraneo alla fine del secolo XIV e nei primi anni del secolo XV," *Archivio storico italiano*, CXIII (1955), 157-209.
- Hicks, Karl J. von, *Consolinggeschichte, u. Henri M. Leclercq in Histoire des croisades* (12 vols., Paris, 1907-1952).

- Held, Ernst D., *Kirche und Krieg im 12. Jahrhundert: Studien zu kanonischem Recht und politischer Wirklichkeit* (Monographien zur Geschichte des Mittelalters, 79, Stuttgart, 1980).
- Holzberg, August, *Nikolaus Mastruc: die Palastrevolution des Johannes Komnenos* (Programme des K. Alton Gymnasiums zu Würzburg für das Studienjahr 1906-7, Würzburg, 1907).
- Holbig, Adolph H., *Al-Qutub al-Faql, der Weis Saladin: eine Biographie* (Berlin 1909).
- Hollenkötter, Hansgerd, *Burgen der Kreuzritzeit in der Grafschaft Edessa und im Königreich Kilikien* (Geographica historica, 1, Bonn, 1974).
- Hendricks, Benjamin, "Les Chartes de Baudouin de Flandre comme sources pour l'histoire de Byence," *Byzantina*, 1 (1969), 39-40.
- Hendricks, Benjamin, "Recherches sur les documents diplomatiques nos conservés concernant la quatrième croisade et l'empire latin de Constantinople pendant les premières années de son existence (1200-1204)," *Byzantina*, 11 (1975), 107-124.
- Hendricks, Benjamin, "À Propos du nombre des troupes de la quatrième croisade et de l'empereur Baudouin I," *Byzantina*, 181 (1971), 29-40.
- Hendricks, Benjamin, "Baudouin IX de Flandre et les empereurs byzantins Isaac II Dange et Alexis IV," *Annuaire belge de philologie et d'histoire*, XLIX (1971), 482-489.
- Hendricks, Benjamin, "Les Inscriptions de l'empire latin de Constantinople (1204-1261): la chancellerie," *Acta Classica: Proceedings of the Classical Association of South Africa*, XIX (1976), 123-131.
- Hendricks, Benjamin, "Les Inscriptions de l'empire latin de Constantinople (1204-1261): la coin et les dénariers," *Byzantina*, IX (1977), 187-217.
- Hendricks, Benjamin, and C. Mialaret, "Abbas Y Doulas Mourmouphlou: his Life, Reign and Death (1-1204)," *ELgyptus*, XXXI (1979), 104-132.
- Hendy, Michael F., "Byzantium, 1081-1204, an Economic Reappraisal," *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 5-XX (1970), 31-52.
- Hirschel-Simon, B., "Note on a Byzantine Seal from Jerusalem," *QMA Pal*, XII (1943-1944), 73-74, and pl. XXIV.
- Herculano de Carvalho e Azevedo, Alexandre, *História de Portugal desde o começo do reinado até o fim do reinado de Afonso III*, 7th ed., ed. David Lopes (Lisbon, 1914-1916).
- Hertz, Peter, "Die Klause bei den Horen von Hirtz und der Untergang des Kreuzritterbundes (3. und 4. Juli 1187)," *Stematische Quartalschrift für christliche Altertumskunde und Kirchengeschichte*, LXI (1966), 1-59.
- Hertz, Peter, "Christians and Saracens at the Time of the Crusades: Some Comments of Contemporary Medieval Canonists," *Studia Gratiana*, XII (Collectanea Septima, Kuttler, 2, 1957), 329-374.
- Hertz, Peter, *Karl I von Anjou* (Ulrich Tschadenricher, 305, Stuttgart, 1979).
- Hertz, Peter, "Taktiken muslimischer Heere vom ersten Kreuzzug bis 'Alī Dīn al-Isma'īlī (1269) und ihre Entwicklung auf der Schlacht bei Tagliacozzo (1268)," in *Das Heilige Land im Mittelalter*, ed. Wolfdietrich Fischer und Jürgen Schaefer (Münster an der Aare, 1982), pp. 82-94.
- Herquet, Karl, *San Fernando: jefe de Heredia, Granmaestre del Hospitaleros, 1177-1186* (Málaga, 1979).
- Herquet, Karl, "Chronologie der Grossmeister des Hospital-Ordens," *Wochenblatt der Johanner Ordens-Salle Brandenburg*, XXI (1880), 43-45, "Nachträge . . .," pp. 201-204.

- Harquet, Karl, *Chronologie der Grossmünzen des Hauptstaatsarchivs während der Kreuzzüge* (Berlin, 1880).
- Hartshild, Ernst E., and Samuel Guyer, *Monumenti Aeliae Minerva antiqua*, vol. II. *Mosaismilit und Karykion: Zwei christliche Basiliendrucke des römischen Kabinetts* (Manchester, 1930).
- Hartwig, Anna, *Die Pläne auf den Fürstenthümern der Kreuzfahrerstaaten* (Berlin, 1919).
- Herzsch, J.F., *Der Oriental Alexander durch Peter I., König von Jerusalem und Cyprus* (Diss., Bonn, 1886).
- Hoyt, Wilhelm, *Geschichte des Lateinischen Reichs im Mittelalter* (2 vols., Stuttgart, 1939), or Percy Raymond as *Histoire de royaume de Leuant au moyen-âge* (2 vols., Leipzig, 1883-1886; repr. Leipzig, 1936, and Amsterdam, 1947).
- Heymann, Frederick G., *John Zichu and the Hachite Revolution* (Princeton, 1931).
- Heymann, Frederick G., "The Crusades against the Hachites," *H of C*, III (1973), 386-646.
- Heyman, Reinhard, *Zur Entstehung des Kapitalismus in Venedig* (München: volks wirtschaftliche Studien, 7), Stuttgart and Berlin, 1905; repr. New York, 1971).
- Heywood, William, *A History of Pisa* (Cambridge, Eng., 1931).
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Chronologische zur Geschichte des Königreichs Jerusalem um 1130," *Deutscher Archiv*, XXVI (1970), 220-229.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Lepre, Kaleb und Basilios. Bischof Kaleb von Paphos und die Krise des Papsttums von 1111/1112," in *Das Reichsgeschichte und Hierarchische Geschichte*, ed. Horst Fuhrmann, Hans E. Mayer, and Klaus Wriedt (Kaiser historische Studien, 16, Stuttgart, 1972), pp. 141-152.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, and Hans E. Mayer, "Die Nachfolge des Patriarchen Menachos von Jerusalem," *Bayer Zeitschrift für Geschichte und Altertumskunde*, LXXIV (1974), 109-120.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Kaiser Konrad III., das zweite Kreuzzug und die verlorenen Diplome für den Berg Thabor," *Deutscher Archiv*, XXXV (1979), 82-126.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Chronologische zur Geschichte des Königreichs Jerusalem im 12. Jahrhundert," *Deutscher Archiv*, XXXV (1979), 342-353.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Die Anfänge des Johanniter," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Josef Fickenscher and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 26, Sigmaringen, 1982), pp. 31-80.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Kommunita, Kreuzung und heiliges Öl: die Eroberung von Tortosa 1148 im Licht eines neuen Zeugnis," *Gemeinsame Aufsätze zur Kulturgeschichte Spaniens*, XXXI (1986), 136-177.
- Hiestand, Rudolf, "Saint Rolf d'Arques, Raymond de Saint-Gilles et l'église latine du royaume de Tripoli," *Annales de Midi*, III (1986), 327-336.
- Hill, George, *A History of Cyprus* (4 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1940-1952).
- Hill, John H. and Laura L., "Contemporary Accounts and the Later Reputation of Adenar, Bishop of Paphos," *Medievalia et Humanistica*, IX (1955), 30-31.
- Hill, John H. and Laura L., *Raymond IV de Saint-Gilles, comte de Toulouse* (Toulouse, 1939), or, as *Raymond IV, Count of Toulouse* (Oxford, N.Y., 1962).
- Hilgarth, Jocelyn N.A., *The Problem of a Catalan Mediterranean Empire 1229-1277* (Eng. HR, supplement 3; London, 1973).
- Hilgarth, Jocelyn N.A., *The Spanish Kingdoms 1250-1516* (2 vols., Oxford, 1978).
- Hillich, Peter, "Der Deutsche Ritterorden im städtischen Libanon: zur Topographie des Kreuzfahrerherrschaften Sidon und Beirut," *ZDPV*, XCVI (1980), 174-189.

- Hindley, Geoffrey, *Saladin* (New York, 1976); German tr. by Miriam Magal as *Saladin, Führer der Islam* (Wiesbaden, 1978).
- Hirsch, K., *History of the Armenians in the Holy Land* (Jerusalem, 1976).
- Hirsch, Richard, *Studien zur Geschichte König Ludwigs VII. von Frankreich (1165-1180)* (Leipzig, 1932).
- Hini, Philip K., *History of Syria, including Lebanon and Palestine*, 2nd ed. (London and New York, 1937).
- Hini, Philip K., *Lebanon in History*, 2nd ed. (New York and London, 1962).
- Hini, Philip K., *History of the Arabs from the Earliest Times to the Present*, 10th ed. (New York and London, 1970).
- Hini, Philip K., "The Impact of the Crusades on Eastern Christianity," in *Medieval and Near Eastern Studies in Honor of Aziz Suryal Atiya*, ed. Sami A. Hanna (Leyden, 1972), pp. 218-232.
- Hini, Philip K., "The Impact of the Crusades on Muslim Lands," *H of C*, V (1965), 33-38.
- Hodgson, Marshall G.S., *The Order of the Assassins: the Struggle of the Early Nizārī Ismāʿīlīs against the Islamic World* (The Hague, 1955; repr. New York, 1982).
- Hofmann, Georg, "Die Konsularbeit in Florenz," *O Chr. B* III (1937), 112-140, 403-433.
- Hofmann, Georg, "Die Konsularbeit in Florenz," *O Chr. P* IV (1938), 137-181.
- Höfsweg, Alois, "Der Kreuzzug des Jahres 1444. Versuch einer christlichen Allianz zur Vertreibung der Türken aus Europa," in *Die Türken in Europa* (Östlinger, 1971), pp. 20-73.
- Höfsweg, Alois, "Kaiser Johannes VIII. Palaiologos und der Kreuzzug des Jahres 1444," *Byz. Z.* LXXXIII (1968), 14-34.
- Holmes, Urban T., and William M. McLeod, "Source Problems of the *Chifli*, a Crusade Chronicon *de geste*," *Romanic Review*, XXVI(1) (1937), 99-108.
- Holmes, Urban T., *Daily Living in the Twelfth Century* (Madison, 1932).
- Holmes, Urban T., "Life among the Europeans in Palestine and Syria in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries," *H of C*, IV (1977), 3-35.
- Holt, Peter M., Ann E.S. Lambton, and Bernard Lewis, eds., *The Cambridge History of Islam*, vol. I, *The Central Islamic Lands* (Cambridge, Eng., 1970).
- Holt, Peter M., "Quilwa's Treaty with Acre in 1281," *Eng. HR*, XCI (1972), 302-312.
- Holt, Peter M., ed., *The Eastern Mediterranean Lands in the Period of the Crusades* (Warminster, 1977); Includes Eddisbury, Irwin, Riley-Smith, Small.
- Holt, Peter M., "Saladin and his Admirers: a Biographical Assessment," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XLVI (1983), 237-299.
- Holtmann, Walther, "Studien zur Orientalpolitik des Reformpapsttums und zur Entstehung des ersten Kreuzzuges," *Historische Vierteljahrschrift*, XLIII (1924-1925), 167-199.
- Holtmann, Walther, "Die Unsumverhandlungen zwischen Kaiser Alexios I. und Papst Urban II. im Jahre 1089," *Byz. Z.* XXVIII (1923), 38-61.
- Holtmann, Walther, "Quellen und Forschungen zur Geschichte Friedrich Barbarissas. 3. Zu den Anfängen des ersten Kreuzzuges," *Neues Archiv der Gesellschaft für ältere deutsche Geschichtskunde*, XLVIII (1930), 384-413.
- Hölzle, Peter, *Die Kreuzzüge in der östlichen und deutschen Lyrik des 12. Jahrhunderts* (Göttinger Arbeiten zur Germanistik, 278, 2 vols., Göttingen, 1980).
- Horig, Rodolfo, *Rapporti tra Federico II e Gregorio IX rispetto alla questione in Palestina* (Bologna, 1896).

- Hougmann, Ernst, *Die Entstehung des byzantinischen Reiches von 361-1071 nach griechischen, syrischen und armenischen Quellen* (Corpus Byzantinae Historiae Byzantinae, 2, Brussels, 1935).
- Hoogeweg, Hermann, "Der Krönung von Demetrius 1218-1221," *MVG*, VIII (1887), 112-218, IX (1888), 249-288.
- Hopf, Carl, "Geschichtlicher Überblick über die Schicksale von Karyäos auf Euböen in dem Zeitraum von 1203-1478," *SB Wien*, XI (1853), 551-606.
- Hopf, Carl, "Geschichte des Insel Andros und ihrer Beherrscher in dem Zeitraum von 1203-1566," *SB Wien*, XVI (1855), 23-131.
- Hopf, Carl, "Urkunden und Zusätze zur Geschichte der Insel Andros und ihrer Beherrscher in dem Zeitraum von 1207-1566," *SB Wien*, XXI (1856), 221-262.
- Hopf, Carl, "Vierthe-byzantinische Annalen," *SB Wien*, XXXII-3 (1859), 369-526.
- Hopf, Carl, "Griechenland im Mittelalter und in der Neuzeit: Osmatische Griechenland vom Beginn des Mittelalters bis auf unsere Zeit," in *Allgemeine Encyclopädie der Wissenschaften und Künste*, ed. Johann S. Ersch und Johann G. Gruber, Section 1, vol. LXXXV (1847), pp. 47-463; LXXXVI (1848), pp. 1-199.
- Hopf, Carl, *Les Guantimari, dynastes de Chios*, in Étienne A. Vissio (Paris, 1881).
- Horn, Eliazar, *Ichneographiae locorum et metathronionum veterum Terrae Sanctae (1734-1744)*, 2nd ed. of the Latin text with English translation by Eugene Houdon and preface and notes by Bernardino Bagatti (Studium BF, 13; Jerusalem, 1962).
- Horn, Herbert, *Die Staatserhebung der Grossfürsten und Fürstenthümer* (Weinbaden, 1914).
- Hosack, Wilhelm, *Kirchengeschichte Palästinas im Zeitalter der Kreuzkriege 1099-1291* (Phil. DVHd., 28-32; Cologne, 1940).
- Hosack, Wilhelm, "Gregor X., der letzte Ketzereypapst (1271-1276)," *Das Heilige Land in Vergangenheit und Gegenwart*, III (Phil. DVHd., 23-26; 1941), 92-110.
- Housley, Norman J., "The Franco-Papal Crusade Negotiations of 1323-5," *Papers of the British School at Rome*, XLVIII (1980), 144-183.
- Housley, Norman J., "Angels in Naples and the Defense of the Latin East: Robert the Wise and the Naval League of 1314," *Byzantion*, LI (1981), 348-356.
- Housley, Norman J., "Politics and Heresy in Italy: Anti-Heretical Crusades, Orders and Catharism, 1200-1300," *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, XXXIII (1982), 193-204.
- Housley, Norman J., *The Italian Crusades: the Papal-Angels Alliance and the Crusades against Christian Lay Powers, 1254-1341* (Oxford and New York, 1982).
- Housley, Norman J., "Charles II of Naples and the Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Byzantion*, LIV (1984), 327-333.
- Housley, Norman J., "Crusades against Christians: their Origins and Early Development, c. 1000-1216," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Gellway (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 17-26.
- Housley, Norman, *The Aragon Papacy and the Crusades, 1285-1378* (Oxford, 1980).
- Howorth, Henry H., *History of the Mongols from the Ninth to the Nineteenth Century* (3 vols., London, 1876-1888, 1927).
- Hübner, Walther, "Der Deutsche Orden und die Reichsherrschaft über Cypern," *Göt. Nach.* (1935), pp. 243-268.
- Hübner, Walther, "Mönchtum und die Bildung des Deutschenordensstaates in Heiligen Lande," *Göt. Nach.* (1940), no. 140-199.
- Hölfer, Georg, "Die Anfänge der zweiten Kreuzfahrt," *HJ Güters.*, VIII (1887), 391-429.

- Huici Miranda, Américo, "Los Almohades en Portugal [Conférence lita em sessão pública geral ordinária de 29 de Abril de 1953]," *Atas*, 2-V (1954), 9-51.
- Huici Miranda, Américo, "Las Campañas de Yáqub al-Muwá'iz en 1190 y 1191 [Conférence lita em sessão pública geral ordinária de 1 de Maio de 1953]," *Atas*, 2-V (1954), 53-74.
- Huici Miranda, Américo, *Historia política del imperio Almohade* (Instituto General Franco de estudios e investigaciones hispano-árabes, 2 vols., Tunis, 1954-1957).
- Huici Miranda, Américo, *Las Grandes batallas de la reconquista durante los reinados africanos (Almorávides, Almohades y Benimerines)* (Madrid, 1956).
- Humphrys, R. Stephen, *From Saladin to the Mongols: the Arayids of Damascus, 1183-1260* (Albany, N.Y., 1937).
- Hussey, Joan M., *Church and Learning in the Byzantine Empire, 857-1118* (London, 1937).
- Hussey, Joan M., "The Byzantine Empire in the Eleventh Century: Some Different Interpretations," *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 4-XXXII (1940), 71-83.
- Hussey, Joan M., "Byzantium and the Crusades, 1081-1204," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1967), 123-151.
- Hussey, Joan M., Donald M. Nicol, and G. Conga, eds., *The Byzantine Empire: I. Byzantium and its Neighbors; 2. Government, Church and Civilization* (Cambridge Medieval History, IV, 2 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1966-1967).
- Huyghe, Robert B.C., *Latijie in "Ottoman": een bijdr. op de Latijns-turkse taal- en letterkennis in het Nabije Oosten* (Leyden, 1946).
- Huyghe, Robert B.C., "Mémoires de l'époque des croisades. Réflexions à propos de quelques livres arabes," *Bibliothèque orientale*, XXV (Leyden, 1948), 9-14.
- Huyghe, Robert B.C., "La Campagne de Saladin en Syrie du Nord (1183)," in *Colloque d'Épouse de Syrie: bilan de recherches archéologiques* (Brussels, 1974), pp. 273-283.
- Ilgaz, Theodor, *Markgraf Conrad von Montfort* (Marburg, 1899).
- Isaiah, Haili, "Ottoman Methods of Conquest," *Studies Islamica*, II (1954), 161-129.
- Isaiah, Haili, *The Ottoman Empire: the Classical Age, 1300-1600* in Norman Itzkowitz and Colin Lebel (New York, 1973).
- Isaiah, Haili, "The Ottoman Turks and the Crusades, 1329-1451," *H of C*, VI (1969), 222-275, and "... 1451-1622," *ibid.*, 311-333.
- Jorga, Nicolas, *Philippe de Méphère, 1327-1403, et la croisade au XIV^e siècle* (B. Éc. HÉ, 120; Paris, 1896; repr. London, 1971).
- Jorga, Nicolas, "L'Asie et l'Orient d'Orient et l'établissement des Turcs en Europe (1342-1362)," *Byz. Z.*, XV (1906), 179-222.
- Jorga, Nicolas, *Brève Histoire de la Petite Asie: l'Asie mineure: Conférences et notes historiques* (Paris, 1900).
- Jorga, Nicolas, *France de Chypre* (Collection de l'Institut néo-hellénique de l'Université de Paris, 10; Paris, 1931).
- Jorga, Nicolas, *Histoire des Byzantins et de la romanité orientale*, vol. IV (Bucharest, 1937).
- Jurashen, Johannes, "Les Français—représentants de la littérature en grec vulgaire," *Byz. F.*, VII (1977), 37-46.
- Irwin, Robert, "Iqbal and the End of the Crusader States," in *The Eastern Mediterranean: recent Lands in the Period of the Crusades*, ed. Peter M. Holt (Warminster, 1977), pp. 62-77.

- Imann, Wladimir, *A Brief Survey of the Evolution of Islamism* (Leyden, 1932).
- Jackson, Peter, "The Crisis in the Holy Land in 1260," *Eng. Hist. Rev.* XCIV (1960), 461-513.
- Jackson, Peter, "The End of Hohenstaufen Rule in Syria," *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, LIX (1966), 20-36.
- Jackson, Peter, "The Crusades of 1239-41 and their Aftermath," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, L (1967), 32-46.
- Jacob, E. F., "The Schismatics in the Council of Basel, 1433," in *Prague Essays, Presented by a Group of British Historians to the Caroline University of Prague on the Occasion of its Six-Hundredth Anniversary*, ed. R. W. Seton-Watson (Oxford, 1948), pp. 81-123.
- Jacobs, Wilhelm, *Petrarch Gerold von Jerusalem ein Beitrag zur Kreuzzeitgeschichte Friedrichs II.* (Duss., Bonn, Aachen, 1903).
- Jacoby, David, "Un Régime de consanguinité gréco-byzantin en Morie: les 'Cousins de parçon'," *MÉP. Rome*, LXXV (1963), 111-123.
- Jacoby, David, "La 'Compagnie catalane' et l'état catalan de Chypre: quelques aspects de leur histoire," *Journal des Savants* (1964), pp. 76-103.
- Jacoby, David, "Les Arcton en grec et la Hedeia en Morie (saque)," *Centre de recherche d'histoire et civilisation byzantine: Travaux et mémoires*, II (1965), 421-441.
- Jacoby, David, "Les Quarante juifs de Constantinople à Niquee byzantine," *Byzantion*, XXXVII (1967), 167-227.
- Jacoby, David, *La Féodalité en Orient médiévale: les "Maîtres de Roumanie" seigneurs, application et diffusion (étude pratique des hautes études. Documents et recherches sur l'économie des pays byzantins, islamiques et slaves et leurs relations commerciales au moyen âge*, 10; Paris and The Hague, 1971).
- Jacoby, David, "Les Juifs chrétiens de Constantinople et leur communauté du XIII^e au milieu du XIV^e siècle," *Revue des études juives*, CXXCII (1972), 397-416.
- Jacoby, David, "The Encounter of Two Societies: Western Conquerors and Byzantines in the Peloponnese after the Fourth Crusade," *Amer. Hist.*, LXXVII/2 (1973), 871-906.
- Jacoby, David, "Catalans, Turcs et Vénitiens en Roumanie (1205-1332): un nouveau itinéraire de Marino Sanuto-Torrello," *Studi veneziani*, 3-XV (1974), 217-261.
- Jacoby, David, *Société et démographie d'Byzance et en Roumanie latine (XIII^e-XIV^e siècles)* (Varior. Repts., CS, 33, London, 1975).
- Jacoby, David, "Une Chasse Royale à Byzance et en Roumanie latine: les incursions du roi, seigneurs ou étrangers," in *Actes du XIV^e Congrès international des études byzantines, Bucarest, 4-12 septembre 1973*, II (Bucharest, 1975), pp. 137-152.
- Jacoby, David, *Les États latins en Roumanie: phénomènes sociaux et économiques (1204-1330 environ)* (XIV^e Congrès international d'études byzantines, rapports et co-rapports, I. Histoire part. 3. Les symboles dans les états latins formés sur les territoires byzantins: phénomènes sociaux, économiques, religieux et culturels; Athens, 1976).
- Jacoby, David, "Chypre et persécutés de Venise et de Gênes en Chypre de XIII^e au XIV^e siècle," *Byz. F.*, V (1977), 159-168.
- Jacoby, David, "L'Expansion occidentale dans le Levant: les Vénitiens à Acire dans la seconde moitié du treizième siècle," *J. Méd. H.*, III (1977), 225-264.
- Jacoby, David, *Recherches sur la Méditerranée orientale du XIII^e au XIV^e siècle: Préface, société, documents* (Varior. Repts., CS, 106; London, 1979).
- Jacoby, David, "Les Vénitiens naturalisés dans l'empire byzantin: un aspect de l'in-

- peuconn de Venise en Roumanie du XIIIe au milieu du XIVe siècle," *Travaux et mémoires du Centre de recherche d'histoire et de civilisation de Byzance*, VIII (1981), 219-223.
- Jacoby, David, "Les Gens de mer dans la marine de guerre vénitienne de la mer Egée aux XIVe et XVe siècles," in *La Guerre del Mare Mediterraneo*, ed. R. Ragosta (= *ANP/Colloquio internazionale di storia marittima*, Napoli, 1982; Naples, 1983), I, 169-200.
- Jacoby, David, "Venetian Anchors for Crusader Acre," *The Mariner's Mirror*, LXXI (1981), 5-12.
- Jacoby, David, "The Kingdom of Jerusalem and the Collapse of Hohenstaufen Power in the Levant," *D Osta R*, XL (1966), 80-101.
- Jacoby, David, "Social Evolution in Frankish Greece," *H of C*, VI (1959), 173-221.
- Jacoby, Zohara, "The Tomb of Baldwin V, King of Jerusalem (1185-1186), and the Workshop of the Temple Area," *Gesta*, XVIII-2 (1979), 3-14.
- Jacoby, Zohara, "A Newly Discovered Crusader Fragment in Jerusalem," *Isr. Exp. & XXX* (1980), 202-204.
- Jacoby, Zohara, "Le Portail de l'église de l'Assomption de Nazareth au XIIIe siècle," *Mémoires et mémoires de la Fondation Eugène Piot*, LXIV (1981), 141-154.
- Jacoby, Zohara, "The Workshop of the Temple Area in Jerusalem in the Twelfth Century: its Origins, Evolution and Impact," *Zeitschrift für Kunstgeschichte*, XLV (1982), 325-394.
- Jacopozzi, Karmel, "Dove sta avvenuta la volta di San Francesco d'Assisi al Salasso di Karmel," *Comptes internationaux de géographie*, *Le Caire—Avril 1923*, V (1956), 141-154.
- John, Hans, *Die Herrschaften in den Kreuzfahrern* (Diss., Berlin, 1907).
- Joris, Raymond, *Les Églises orientales d'Orient* (Bibliothèque catholique des sciences religieuses, Paris, 1929).
- Joris, Raymond, "Au Lendemain de la conquête de Constantinople les initiatives d'union des églises, 1204-1214," *Échos d'Orient*, XXXII (1937), 5-21, 195-202.
- Joris, Raymond, "Les Sanctuaires de Byzance sous la domination latine (1204-1261)," *Études byzantines*, II (1944), 134-164.
- Joris, Raymond, "Les Sanctuaires des catholiques latins à Constantinople," *Ré. Byz.*, IV (1944), 163-172.
- Joris, Raymond, "L'Église latine à Thessalonique de 1204 à la conquête turque," *Ré. Byz.*, XVI (= *Mémoires Sévérius Salaville*, 1951), 206-226.
- Joris, Raymond, *Le Siège de Constantinople et le patriarcat occidental: les églises et les monastères*, 2nd ed. (La géographie ecclésiastique de l'empire byzantin, Paris, 1967).
- Joris, Raymond, *Les Églises et les monastères des grands centres byzantins (Bithynie, Hellas, Épire, Latvie, Galicie, Trébizonde, Athènes, Thessalonique)* (La géographie ecclésiastique de l'empire byzantin, Paris, 1975).
- Jansen, Reinhard, "Die historischen Grundlagen zu 'On Lusitania' VIII, 1, 8," *Angriffe zur portugiesischen Kulturgeschichte*, V (Portugiesische Forschungen der Görres gesellschaft, ser. I; 1965), 228-247.
- Jansen, Reinhard, "Heinrich von Boulogne: der Erlösung an die Kreuzfahrer aus dem römischen Reich in der portugiesischen Legendentradition," *Rheinische Vierteljahrsblätter*, XXX (1965), 23-29.
- Jarosz, Émile, *Trébizonde en Colchide* (Brussels, 1967).
- Jarmay, Alfred, *Le Poète byzantin des troubadours (Mémoires littéraires et littéraires)* (2 vols., Toulouse and Paris, 1934).

- Jellory, George E., *A Description of the Historic Monuments of Cyprus: Studies in the Archaeology and Architecture of the Island* (Nicosia, 1918).
- Jepfeliachvili, Johannes, "Der Aufstand der katholischen Bürgerschaft gegen das Moschuland Venedig 1343-1345," *Ist. Z.* XII (1903), 71-125.
- Jepfeliachvili, Johannes, "Beiträge zur Verwaltungsgeschichte Katalas im XIV. Jahrhundert," *Ist. Z.* XIII (1904), 455-479.
- Jurčić, Constantine, *Geschichte der Serben* (2 vols., Gotha, 1911-1912; repr. Amsterdam, 1967).
- Kahn, Eric, "A Note on the Preliminaries of the Fourth Crusade," *Byzantinistik*, XXXVIII (1958), 95-105.
- Johann, Joseph, "Philipp von Elsass, Graf von Flandern, 1157 (1143)-1190," *Bulletin de la Commission royale d'histoire de Belgique*, LXXIX (1910), 345-467.
- Johas, Cedric N., "Excavations at Pilgrims' Castle (Akk),"
QD4, Pd, I (1951-1952), III-129; II (1952-1953), 41-104, 718 (1953-1954), 145-164, IV (1954-1955), 122-137, V (1955-1956), 51-66; VI (1956-1958), 128-152.
- Johas, Cedric N., "The Atzings in Colonial Palestine and Syria in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries," *Journal of the Royal Council Asian Society*, XXI (1954), 288-300.
- Johas, Cedric N., "The Abbey of St. Mary in the Valley of Jehoshaphat, Jerusalem," QD4, Pd, VIII (1959), 117-134.
- Johas, Cedric N., *A Guide to the Citadel of Jerusalem* (Jerusalem, 1944).
- Johas, Cedric N., *A Guide to Akko* (Jerusalem, 1947).
- Johas, Edgar N., "The Crusades of Frederick Barbarossa and Henry VI," *H of G*, II (1913), 2nd ed. 1949, 87-122.
- Johas, Edgar N., "The German Crusade on the Baltic," *H of G*, III (1915), 545-583.
- Jordan, Elmar, "The Great German Pilgrimage of 1064-1065," in *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to Dana C. Munro*, ed. Louis J. Paetow (New York, 1933), pp. 3-43.
- Jordan, Édouard, *Les Origines de la domination anglaise en Italie* (Paris, 1909).
- Jordan, Édouard, *L'Allemagne et l'Italie aux XII^e et XIII^e siècles* (Histoire générale Histoire du moyen âge, IV-1; Paris, 1939).
- Jordan, William C., "Supplying Agincourt-Morris for the Crusade of 1248: the Problem of Restructuring Trade," in *Order and Innovation in the Middle Ages. Essays in Honor of Joseph R. Strayer*, ed. William C. Jordan, Bruce McNab, and Teófilo R. Ruiz (Princeton, 1978), pp. 165-173.
- Jordan, William C., *Lucius IX and the Challenge of the Crusade: a Study in Rulemaking* (Princeton, 1979).
- Jugie, Martin, "Le Voyage de l'empereur Manuel Paléologue en Occident (1199-1203)," *Échos d'Orient*, XV (1912), 322-372.
- Jugie, Martin, *Le Schisme byzantin. aspects historique et doctrinal* (Paris, 1942).
- Jules, Chrétien A., *Histoire de l'Afrique du Nord: Tunisie, Algérie, Maroc*, revised by Christian Courtois and Roger Le Tourneau (Bibliothèque historique 2 vols., Paris, 1951-1952).
- Jurewicz, Oskar, *Antonieta I. Komnenos* (Amsterdam, 1970).
- Kafetsios, Ibrahim, *Salim Mülkleri devrinde İsyail Subayları imparatorluğu* (İstanbul Üniversitesi İktisadi İdariyat Fakültesi, no. 349, İstanbul, 1953).
- Kahl, Hans D., "Heiländisches Wendenland und christliche Staatsentfaltung: ein Blick in die Auseinandersetzung zwischen Ost- und Universalreligion im christlichen Hochmittelalter," *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XLIV (1962), 72-119.

- Kahl, Hans D., *Säuren und Deutsche in der Insassenburgischen Geschichte des 12-14. Jhd. im Jahrtausend* (Mitteldeutsche Forschungen, 30, 1 vol. in 2, Cologne and Graz, 1964).
- Karapolyos, Konstantinos (here, Konstantinos), *Annalen VI all Savaria nell'impero bizantino* (Rome, 1926).
- Karapolyos, Konstantinos, *Troisquatre mille Mispelle dans l'été; la Savaria; et la Mispelle* (185-186) (Athens, 1933).
- Karnitzky, Howard, *A History of the Hunter Revolution* (Berkeley, 1967).
- Kasnerowicz, Erwin, *Kaiser Friedrich II. (3 vols., Berlin, 1927-1931).*
- Kay-Hart, Hans von, *Die abendständliche Politik Kaiser Manuells mit besonderer Rücksicht auf Deutschland* (Stuttgart, 1881).
- Kazlevskij, Cyrl P., "Antioche," in *Dictionnaire d'histoire et de géographie ecclésiastiques*, III (1934), cols. 563-783.
- Kazianopoulos, Johannes, "Die kollektive Sauerwasserzeugung in der frühbyzantinischen Zeit," *FStMG*, XLI (1934), 289-322.
- Kazianopoulos, Johannes, *Das Phasenwesen der frühbyzantinischen Zeit* (Südosteuropäische Arbeiten, 52; Munich, 1938).
- Kazianopoulos, Apollonios D., *The Ecclesiastical Controversy between the Kingdom of Nicaea and the Principality of Egypt (1217-1231)* (Salonica, 1973).
- Kawerau, Peter, *Die jehudiische Kirche im Zeitalter der syrischen Renaissance: Idee und Wirklichkeit*, 2nd ed. (Deutsche Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, Institut für griechisch-slavische Altertumskunde, Berliner byzantinische Arbeiten, 3; Berlin, 1960).
- Kawerau, Peter, *Geschichte der Kirche III. Das Christentum in Europa und Asien im Zeitalter der Renaissance* (Corpus scriptorum Christianorum orientalis, 442, Subsidia, 65, Leuven, 1962).
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., "The General Tax of 1163 in the Crusading Kingdom of Jerusalem: Innovation or Adaptation?," *Eng. HR*, LXXXIX (1974), 359-349.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., and Aaron Kaufman, "Radiocarbon Measurements of Medieval Mortars: a Preliminary Report," *Isr. Expl. J.*, XXV (1973), 36-38.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., *Merchants in Crisis: Genoa and Venetian Ideas of Affairs and the Fourteenth Century Depression* (New Haven and London, 1976).
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., and Chr. Watzinger-Helms, "Islanders in the Crusader Kingdom of Jerusalem: a Twelfth Century Account," *Mediterranean Studies*, XI (1975-1976, appeared 1983), 193-211.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., and W. G. Monk, "Radiocarbon Dating of Mortar from the City Wall of Ascalon," *Isr. Expl. J.*, XXVIII (1978), 173-176.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., and Sylvia Schein, "Un Projet de passage particulier proposé par l'Ordre de l'Hospital 1208-1207," *RE Cher*, CXXXVIII (1979), 221-226.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., "Ein Hilferuf aus Jerusalem vom September 1187," *Deutsches Archiv*, XXXVIII (1982), 112-122.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., Hans E. Mayer, and Raymond C. Smail, eds., *Outremer—Studies in the History of the Crusading Kingdom of Jerusalem Presented to Joshua Prawer* (Jerusalem, 1962; including Abulafia, Barrow, Brundage, Constable, Cressy, Fawcett-Lake, Gillingham, Mayer, Richard, Riley-Smith, Runciman, Schein, Smail, CSH, DM).
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., "The Patriarch Erasmios," in *Outremer* (1962), pp. 177-204.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., "Mercato genovese in Alessandria d'Egitto negli anni centanta del secolo XI," *Atenee di studi storici*, II (Colonna storica di Iosco e Iosco, 38; Genoa, 1983), 29-30.

- Kedar, Benjamin Z., "Palmaria, *shibet* chashtun du XIII siècle en Galilie," *Revue Archéologique*, XCIII (1963), 260-269.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., *Crusade and Muslim: European Approaches toward the Muslims* (Princeton, 1964).
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., "Ecclesiastical Legislation in the Kingdom of Jerusalem: the Statutes of Jaffa (1253) and Acre (1254)," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff 1965), pp. 221-230.
- Kedar, Benjamin Z., and [E.] Denis Pringle, "La Fève: a Crusader Castle in the Internal Valley," *Isr. Expl. J.* XXXV (1965), 164-179.
- Kennan, North, "Local Christian Art in Twelfth Century Jerusalem," *Isr. Expl. J.* XXIII (1973), 167-173, 221-229.
- Kennan, Elizabeth, "Innocent III and the First Political Crusade," *Dedalia*, XXVII (1971), 231-251.
- Kestler, E., *Der Kreuzzug Friedrichs II.* (Diss., Göttingen, 1873).
- Khatchikian, A., "L'Archéologie archéenne—essai analytique," *Haaretz: Cahiers d'histoire et de civilisation archéenne*, I (1948-1949), 37-144.
- Khorrami, Abdul A., *Birth of the First: An Endeavour and Achievement* (London, 1974).
- Klaffmann, Misl, *Die Eroberung von Konstantinopel als politische Forderung der Herring im Hochmittelalter* (Geist und Werk der Zeiten, 20; Zurich, 1969).
- King, David J.C., "The Taking of Le Krib des Chevaliers in 1271," *Antiquity*, XXIII (1949), 83-92.
- King, David J.C., "The Defence of the Citadel of Damascus: a Great Mohammedan Fortification of the Time of the Crusades," *Archaeologia*, XCIV (1911), 37-96.
- Kisch, Guido, *The Jews in Medieval Germany: a Study of their Legal and Social Status* (Chicago, 1949).
- Kittel, E. E., "Was Thibaut of Champagne the Leader of the Fourth Crusade?" *Byzantion*, LI (1941), 337-343.
- Klennann, Gustav, *Papst Gregor VIII. (1873)* (Neuer historischer Arbeiter, 4; Bonn, 1912).
- Kling, Gustav, *Der Schlocht der Hohenpelle im Jahre 1296* (Diss., Berlin, 1906).
- Knapton, Marshall M., "Robert II of Flanders in the First Crusade," in *The Crusader and Other Historical Essays Presented to Dame C. Moberg*, ed. Louis J. Paetow (New York, 1928), pp. 79-100.
- Kraebel, Wilhelm, *Kaiser Friedrich II. und Papst Honorius III. in ihren gegenseitigen Beziehungen von der Kaiserkrönung Friedrichs bis zum Ende des Papstes (1220-1227)* (Münster, 1905).
- Kreoh, Peter, "Kreuzzug und Seefahrt: Studien zum Aufbau der Magdeburger Kirche von 1206," *Jahrbuch für die Geschichte Mittel- und Ostdeutschlands*, XXIII (1974), 1-33.
- Kroh, Adolf, *Hermann von Salza, Meister des Deutschen Ordens* (Leipzig, 1885).
- Köhler, Charles, "Revue et personarum quae in Actis Sanctorum Boilandiarum et Ann. lectis Boilandiarum obijit ad Germaniam Latinarum spectant uelut analytica," *EO Latin*, V (1897), 440-561.
- Köhler, Charles, *Mélanges pour servir à l'histoire de l'Orient latin et des croisades* (2 vols., Paris, 1900-1906).
- Köprülü, Mehmed F., "Fiksen müstemarlarla Osmanlı müstemarlar ne u'eri hakkinda bir mülahazalar (Remarques sur l'influence des musulmans byzantins sur les musulmans ottomans)," *Türk Arkeol. ve Etnol. muzesi*, I (1931), 165-208.
- Köprülü, Mehmed F., *Les Origines de l'Empire ottoman* (Paris, 1935).

- König, Bernhard, *Peregrinatio religiosa: die Wallfahrten in der Antike und das Pilgerwesen in der alten Kirche* (Vorschungen zur Volkskunde, 33-35, Münster, 1930).
- Krötké, Barla, *Dubrovnik, Italy, and the Balkans in the Late Middle Ages* (Variorum Repr., CS, 125; London, 1980).
- Krenser, Alfons von, *Chinesengeschichte des Orients unter den Chakys* (2 vols., Vienna, 1873-1877).
- Kritschay, Heinrich, *Geschichte von Hunan* (in *Allgemeine Sinnesgeschichte*, ed. Karl O. Lamprecht et al.; Sect. 1, *Geschichte der europäischen Staaten*, XXXV, 1-3, 3 vols., Götting, 1905-1934, repr. Stuttgart, 1964).
- Krusch, Jonas, *Peter the Hermit and John* (Princeton Oriental Studies, 23, Princeton, 1944).
- Kruger, Hilmar C., "The Italian Crisis and the Arabs before 1095," *H of C*, 3 (1953, 2nd ed. 1969), 40-53.
- Kugler, Bernhard, *Normand and England, Fiersten von Antiochien, ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Normannen in Syrien* (Tübingen, 1862).
- Kugler, Bernhard, *Studien zur Geschichte des zweiten Kreuzzuges* (Stuttgart, 1864).
- Kugler, Bernhard, *Abhandlun zur Geschichte des zweiten Kreuzzuges*, in *Tübinger Universitätschriften aus dem Jahre 1876-1877* (Tübingen, 1878).
- Kugler, Bernhard, *Neue Ansichten zur Geschichte des zweiten Kreuzzuges*, in *Tübinger Universitätschriften aus dem Jahre 1882-1883* (Tübingen, 1893).
- Kugler, Bernhard, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, 2nd ed. (Allgemeine Geschichte in Einzeldarstellungen, ser. 2, part 5, Berlin, 1895).
- Kühn, Fritz, *Geschichte der ersten lateinischen Patriarchen von Jerusalem* (Leipzig, 1886).
- Kühn, Bianca, "Salomonen aus Posenbruch in Jerusalem, eine Bauplanüberwertung der Kreuzfahrerzeit," *Wiener Jahrbuch für Kunstgeschichte*, XXXIII (1980), 41-67.
- Labande, Edmond R., *Étude sur Baudouin de Sébastie, chef de la 1^{re} croisade*, *Revue de l'histoire de l'Église de France*, 11 (1900), 159-169, 379-387.
- Labande, Edmond R., "Recherches sur les pèlerins dans l'Europe du XI^e et XII^e siècles," *Col. Ch. Méd.*, 1 (1938), 159-169, 379-387.
- Labán, Subhi Y., "Cairo and Egypt: Studies zur Wirtschaftsgeschichte Ägyptens im Mittelalter," *JESHO*, II (1959), 223-244.
- Labán, Subhi Y., "Handelsgeschichte Ägyptens im Mittelalter," *Sacrisat*, XIII (1963), 164-171.
- Labán, Subhi Y., *Handelsgeschichte Ägyptens im Spätmittelalter, 1171-1317* (B-3-WG, -Beirute, 46, Wiesbaden, 1965).
- Lauro, Benoit, "Deux le volti la steloget d'un cri," in *Études de civilisation médiévale Mélanges offerts à Edmond R. Labande* (Poitiers, 1974), pp. 463-470.
- Ledesma Quezada, Miguel A., *México y cronología en la guerra de Granada. el cerco de Baza* (Universidad de Valladolid, Facultad de Historia y letras: Estudios y documentos: Cuadernos de historia medieval, 22; Valladolid, 1964).
- Ledesma Quezada, Miguel A., *Castilla y la conquista del cerco de Granada* (Universidad de Valladolid, Secretariado de Publicaciones (Thesis, Valladolid, 1967).
- Lafont, Jean, "Dévoement de vœux, tentatives de sacres à Crésatantropie," *Cahiers archéologiques*, XVIII (1968), 251-258.
- Lalou, Angélique E., *Constantinople and the Latin the Foreign Policy of Andronicus II, 1282-1328* (Harvard Historical Studies, 88; Cambridge, Mass., 1972).
- Lalou-Thomasakia, Angélique E., *Power Society in the Late Byzantine Empire. a Social and Demographic Study* (Princeton, 1977).

- Laurenson, Ann K. S., *Contributions to the Study of Selling Institutions* (London, 1939).
- Laurina, Paolo, *Comuni e Sansepolcero: ricerche sui rapporti fra Bolognese e Perugini nel secolo 12* (Studi storici, 14-18, 22-25, Rome, 1925-1937).
- Laurent, Henri, "Les Normans dans le Liban," *BO Chr.*, VII (1902), 452-472.
- Laurent, Henri, *Le Syrie: pays d'Autoritar* (2 vols., Beirut, 1921).
- LaMonte, John L., "The Communal Movement in Syria in the Thirteenth Century" in *Anniversary Essays in Medieval History by Students of Charles Homer Haskins*, ed. Charles H. Taylor (Boston and New York, 1929), pp. 117-171.
- LaMonte, John L., *Feudal Monarchy in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem, 1100 to 1291* (Med. AA. Monographs, 4, Cambridge, Mass., 1932).
- LaMonte, John L., "To What Extent Was the Byzantine Empire the Successor of the Latin Crusading States?" *Byzantion*, VII (1932), 253-264.
- LaMonte, John L., "John d'Ibelin, the Old Lord of Beirut, 1177-1236," *Byzantion*, XII (1937), 417-448.
- LaMonte, John L., "The Rise and Decline of a Frankish Seigneurie in the Time of the Crusades," *BHSEL*, XV (1934), 301-322.
- LaMonte, John L., "The Viccounts of Nablous in the Twelfth Century," *Syria*, XIX (1916), 272-278.
- LaMonte, John L., "The Lords of La Pucelle on the Crusades," *Speculum*, XVII (1942), 100-158.
- LaMonte, John L., "The Lords of Sidon in the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries," *Byzantion*, XVII (1942-1943), 183-201.
- LaMonte, John L., "The Lords of Caesarea in the Period of the Crusades," *Speculum*, XXII (1947), 143-161.
- LaMonte, John L., and Norman Davies, "The Lords of Bethsan in the Kingdoms of Jerusalem and Cyprus," *Medievalia et humaniora*, VI (1950), 27-79.
- Lampson, Spyridon P., *Palaeologues and Palaeologues*, ed. I. K. Bogdanoff (4 vols. in 2, Athens, 1912-1930).
- London, Lionel, *The Itinerary of King Richard I, with Studies on Certain Matters of Interest Connected with his Reign* (Publications of the Pipe Roll Society, 31 [n.s.], 15; London, 1935).
- Lowe Poole, Austin, *From Domesday Book to Magna Carta, 1087-1216* (Oxford History of England, 3, Oxford, 1951).
- Lowe Poole, Stanley, *A History of Egypt in the Middle Ages*, 4th ed. (London, 1925).
- Lowe Poole, Stanley, *Saladin and the Fall of the Kingdom of Jerusalem* (Heroes of the Past, 24; new ed., New York and London, 1928; rev. New York, 1973).
- Laugé, S., *Architettura delle crociate in Palestina* (Como, 1954).
- Langsdorff, Jean-Jacques, and Gérard Zimmermann, "Tres monuments inconnus du croisé, I. La chapelle du Château de Montréal (Jordanie). II. L'octogone du Château de Tripoli (Liban). III. La forteresse de Saléhié (Banquet)," *Genève*, n.s., XII (1944), 123-165.
- Langlois, Charles V., *Le Règne de Philippe III, le Hardi* (Paris, 1827).
- Langlois, Victor, *Essai historique et critique sur la constitution sociale et politique de l'Arménie sous les rois de la dynastie capétienne* (Mémoires de l'Académie des sciences de St.-Petersbourg, 4-LI, 3, St. Petersburg, 1862).
- Laurent, Joseph, *Byzance et les Terres latines dans l'Asie occidentale jusqu'en 1099* (Annales de l'Est, 28, pt. 3; Nancy, Paris, and Strasbourg, 1912).
- Laurent, Joseph, "Arménie de Cilicie: Aspetts, Ouelm, Urmant," in *Mélanges offerts à M. Gustave Schlumberger* (Paris, 1924), pp. 179-183.

- Laurent, Joseph, "Des Grecs aux croisés: étude sur l'invasion d'Édessa en 1071 et 1098," *Byzantion*, I (1934), 367-449.
- Laurent, Marie H., "Grégoire X et Marie Palé (1267-1271)," *MEF Rome*, LVIII (1941-1942), 132-144.
- Laurent, Vitalien, "La Croisade et la question d'Orient sous le pontificat de Grégoire X (1272-1276)," *RHSEE*, XXII (1945), 105-137.
- Laurent, Vanders, "L'idée de la guerre sainte et la tradition byzantine," *RHSEE*, XXIII (1946), 71-96.
- Lévesque, Ernest, ed., *Histoire de France depuis les origines jusqu'à la Révolution* (9 vols. to 18 parts, repr. Paris, 1901-1911, orig. New York, 1967).
- Livocan, Louis L.F., *Précis des fêtes et de l'histoire du Temple d'après les pièces inédites publiées par M. Michélet et des documents imprimés anciens et nouveaux* (Paris, 1844).
- Lawrence, Thomas E., *Crusader Conquerors* (2 vols., London, 1956).
- Le Vautour, G., "The Crusader Ranks in the Red Sea in 572/1182-83," *Journal of the American Research Center in Egypt*, XIV (1977), 87-100.
- Lectecq, Jean, "Géorgios, Patrie de Troïes et la seconde croisade," *Studiis Orientalia*, II (1934), 583-593.
- Lectecq, Jean, *Parvult d'études sur Saint Bernard et ses écrits* (Storia e letteratura, 62, 104, 114; 3 vols., Rome, 1962-1969).
- Lectecq, Jean, "L'encyclique de St-Bernard en faveur de la croisade," *Revue théologique*, LXXXII (1971), 282-308, "Addition," ibid., LXXXII (1972), 313.
- Lectecq, Jean, "Pour l'histoire de l'encyclique de Saint Bernard sur la croisade," in *Études de civilisation médiévale: Mélanges offerts à Roland R. Lohr* (Poitiers, 1974), pp. 479-490.
- Lehmann, Johannes, *I Crociati*, tr. Colombo Pione (Milan, 1971).
- Leib, Bernard, *Rome, Éire et Byzance à la fin de XIe siècle: rapports religieux des Latins et des Grecs-Romains sous le pontificat d'Urban II (1088-1099)* (Paris, 1914).
- Leib, Bernard, "Les Patriarches de Byzance et la politique religieuse d'Alexis Ier Comnène (1081-1118)," *Recherches de science religieuse*, XL (1972), Mélanges Jules Lebreton, II, 201-221.
- Lemerle, Paul, "La Domination byzantine à Thessalonique," *Fontes Aethiopi*, XXVII (= *Miscellanea Orientalis Calistai*, 3, Milan, 1951), pp. 219-225.
- Lemerle, Paul, "Byzance et la croisade," *Atenei del XI Congresso internazionale di scienze storiche*, Roma 1953: vol. 3, *Storia del medioevo* (Florence, 1955), pp. 585-620.
- Lemerle, Paul, *L'Émergence d'Orient, Byzance et l'Occident: recherches sur "Le pape d'Utrecht Pierre" (Épiscopat byzantin, Études, 2, Paris, 1937)*.
- Lemerle, Paul, "Recherches sur la diplomatie byzantine à Byzance: la note militaire à l'époque des Comnènes," *Cah. Civ. Méd.*, II (1979), 265-281.
- Leitzmann, Leopold, *Die Franziskaner im Heiligen Lande: I Die Franziskaner auf dem Zion (1216-1251)*, 2nd ed. (Palaestinaische Studien, Heft 4, Münster, 1915).
- Leitzmann, Leopold, "De Sancto Francisco Christo praedicante secus vulgum Aegypti," *Archivum Franciscanum Aegyptiacum*, XIX (1926), 359-578.
- Leitzmann, Leopold, *Geschichte der Franziskanermissionen* (Missionswissenschaftliche Abhandlungen und Texte, 12; Münster, 1929).
- Leitz, Walter, *Die Entstehung der Markbruderschaft Haindlings an der Adre mit Beiträgen zur Verfassungsgeschichte* (Dresden, 1897).
- Leitz, Walter, "Zur älteren Geschichte Haindlings," *Mon. Z.*, XCIX (1907), 473-514.

- Loat, Walter, *Monasteries-atrache Soudan* (Strasbourg, 1911).
- Leonard, Émile G., *Histoire de Jeanne Ire, reine de Naples, comtesse de Provence (1343-1382): la jeunesse de la reine Jeanne* (*Mémoires et documents historiques publiés par ordre de . . . prince Louis II de Monaco*; 2 vols., Monaco, 1932).
- Leonard, Émile G., *Les Angevins de Naples* (Paris, 1934).
- Leopoldt, Wilhelm, *Der Kreuzzugplan Kaiser Heinrich VI.* (Diss., Götting, Leipzig, 1913).
- Levi-Provençal, Évariste, *Histoire de l'Espagne musulmane*, 2nd ed. (3 vols., Paris and Leyden, 1930-1933).
- Lewis, Archibald R., *Naval Power and Trade in the Mediterranean, A.D. 500-1000* (*Princeton Studies in History*, 3; Princeton, 1951).
- Lewis, Archibald R., "The Catalan Pattern in Acculturation in Frankish Greece and the Islamic World during the Fourteenth Century," *Vistas*, XI (1960), 361-369.
- Lewis, Bernard, "Saladin and the Assassins," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XV (1953), 229-240.
- Lewis, Bernard, "The Assassins and the Assassins," *H of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 99-122.
- Lewis, Bernard, *The Arabs in History*, new ed. (London, 1958).
- Lewis, Bernard, *The Assassins: a Radical Sect in Islam* (New York, 1968).
- Lewis, Bernard, "The Mongols, the Turks and the Muslim Policy," *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 5-XVIII (1968), 49-62.
- Lewis, Bernard, "Palestine: on the History and Geography of a Name," *International History Review*, II (1980), 128-130.
- Lili, Ralph-Johannes, "Der Schlacht bei Myriokephalon (1176) Anmerkungen auf das byzantinische Relief im ausgehenden 12. Jahrhundert," *FE Byz.*, XXXV (1977), 257-275.
- Lili, Ralph-Johannes, *Byzanz und die Kreuzfahrerstaaten. Studien zur Politik des byzantinischen Reiches gegenüber den Staaten der Kreuzfahrer in Syrien und Palästina bei dem Vierten Kreuzzug (1204-1204)* (*Publilia byzantina*, 1, Munich, 1981).
- Lili, Ralph-Johannes, "Der erste Kreuzzug in der Darstellung Anna Komnēnē," *Varia II* (*Publilia byzantina*, 4; Bonn, 1967), pp. 49-142.
- Limentani, Alberto, "Reliquie antico-francesi nella Biblioteca Apostolica," *Memorie dell'Accademia Pontificia, Classe di scienze morali, letterature ed arti*, LXXIX (1981/1982), 3-24.
- Lindert, Rudi P., *Normans and Ottomans in Medieval Anatolia* (*Indiana University Ural and Altaic Series*, 144, Bloomington, 1983).
- Lloyd, Simon, "The Lord Edward's Crusade, 1270-2: its Setting and Significance," *War and Government in the Middle Ages: Essays in Honour of J. G. Frothingham*, ed. John Gillingham and J. C. Holt (Woodbridge, 1984), pp. 120-133.
- Loewer, Raymond L., "Les Missions dominicaines en Orient au XI^e siècle et la Société des Frères Prêcheurs pour le Christ," *AF Presb.*, II (1932), 1-43; III (1933), 1-33; IV (1934), 1-47.
- Loewer, Raymond L., "Von Christus der Pilgerreise im XI^e siècle (1313-1404)," *Études byzantines*, I (1943), 152-196.
- Loewer, Raymond L., "Généalogie des Glus, dynastie vénétienn dans l'Archipel (1207-1280)," *G-Gh. R*, XXXVIII (1962), 121-172, 322-325.
- Loewer, Raymond L., "Les Seigneurs vénétiens de Nigropont de 1205 à 1280," *Byzantion*, XXXV (1965), 233-276.
- Loewer, Raymond L., *Byzantines et Franco-Grecs: articles parus de 1933 à 1968*,

- reid with the collaboration of Peter Scheltema (*Storia e letteratura*, 118, 145, 2 vols., Rome, 1970-1978).
- Loenertz, Raymond L., "Aux Origines du despotat d'Épire et de la principauté d'Achaïe," *Byzantion*, XLIII (1973), 340-394.
- Loenertz, Raymond L., *La Société des Prêtres Pénitents: étude sur l'Ordre doménien* (Institutum historicum Fœderis Prædicatorum. Dissertationes historice, 7, Rome, 1937); continued as "La Société des Prêtres Pénitents de 1374 à 1473 étude sur l'Ordre dominicain, II," *AF Presb.*, XLV (1973), 107-145.
- Loenertz, Raymond L., *Les Glises dynastiques vénétiennes dans l'Archipel 1207-1546*, ed. with Peter Scheltema (*Churches vénétiennes*, Serie, 36, Florence, 1975).
- Loerke, William C., "The Monarchical Museum," *The Place of Book Illumination in Byzantine Art* (Princeton, 1975), pp. 61-97.
- Lojaceco, Pietro, "La Chiesa committente di S. Giovanni del Cavaliere in Rodi: studio storico-architettonico," *Chiese Rhodias*, VIII (1934), 245-284.
- Lojaceco, Pietro, "Il Palazzo del gran maestro in Rodi: studio storico-architettonico," *Chiese Rhodias*, VIII (1934), 328-343.
- Lohrkegard, Frode, *Islands: Sources in the Classic Period with Special Reference to Circumnavigations in Song* (Copenhagen, 1956).
- Lomas, Derek W., "Las Melicias viciatadas en el reino de León," *Hispania*, XXIII (1963), 29-42.
- Lomas, Derek W., *La Orden de Santiago, 1170-1273* (Madrid, 1965).
- Lomas, Derek W., *The Reconquest of Spain* (London, 1978).
- Longuen, Jean, *Les Principes d'Orient-mer au moyen-âge: essai sur l'expansion française dans le bassin de Méditerranée*, 2nd ed. (Paris, 1929).
- Longuen, Jean, "Le Rattachement de la principauté de Morée au royaume de Sicile en 1267," *Journal des Savants* (1962), pp. 134-142.
- Longuen, Jean, "Problèmes de Princes de la principauté de Morée," *Journal des Savants* (1948), pp. 71-93, 147-164.
- Longuen, Jean, "L'Organisation de l'église d'Achaïe par Innocent III," *Archives de l'Ordre séraphique*, 1 (Mémoires Louis Perz; 1948), 334-346.
- Longuen, Jean, *L'Empire latin de Constantinople et la principauté de Morée* (Bibliothèque historique; Paris, 1949).
- Longuen, Jean, "La Baptes de Salonique par les Grecs en 1224," *Actes du VII^e Congrès international des études byzantines* (Paris 1946), 1 (1950), pp. 140-146.
- Longuen, Jean, "The Frankish States in Greece, 1204-1311," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 225-274.
- Longuen, Jean, "La Vie rurale dans la Grèce franque," *Journal des Savants* (1965), pp. 343-357.
- Longuen, Jean, "Les Vœux de Charles d'Anjou pour la deuxième croisade de Saint-Louis: Texte en Constantinople," in *Septième centenaire de la mort de Saint-Louis: Actes des colloques de Raymondani et de Paris* (Paris, 1976), pp. 183-195.
- Longuen, Jean, "Sur les Croisés de la quatrième croisade," *Journal des Savants* (1977), pp. 119-127.
- Longuen, Jean, *Les Compagnons de Villehardouin: recherches sur les croisés de la quatrième croisade* (Centre de recherches historiques et de philologie de la IV^e section de l'École pontificale des hautes études, sec. 3, vol. 30, Geneva and Paris, 1971).
- Lopez, Roberto S., *Genova marinara nel Duecento: Emanuele Zaccaria, ammiraglio e mercante* (Rivista storia principato, 17, Messina and Milan, 1937).

- Lopez, Roberto S., *Scelte delle colonie greco-orientali nel Mediterraneo* (Istituto nazionale italiano di cultura, Studi giuridici e storici, Bologna, 1934).
- Lopez, Roberto S., "Mohammed and Charlemagne: a Revisit," *Speculum*, XVIII (1943), 14-38.
- Lopez, Roberto S., "Silk Industry in the Byzantine Empire," *Speculum*, XX (1945), 1-42.
- Lopez, Roberto (here, Robert) S., "The Trade of Medieval Europe: the South," in *The Cambridge Economic History of Europe*, ed. Moss M. Postan and Edwin E. Rich, vol. II (Cambridge, Eng., 1952), pp. 257-334.
- Lopez, Roberto (here, Robert) S., "The Norman Conquest of Sicily," *H of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1960), 54-67.
- Lopez, Roberto S., *Byzantium and the World around it: Economic and Institutional Relations* (Varior. Repr., CX, 33; London, 1970).
- Lot, Ferdinand, *L'Art militaire et les armées au moyen âge en Europe et dans le Proche-Orient* (2 vols., Paris, 1946).
- Luttrell, Friedrich, *Die Konzeption des Heidenkreuzzuges: staatsgeschichtliche, kirchenrechtliche und historisch-politische Voraussetzungen der Missionierung von Süd- und Ostseeräumen von der Mitte des 12. Jahrhunderts* (Vorträge und Forschungen, special vol. 25; Sigmaringen, 1977).
- Loud, G. A., "The Answer to the Letters of Ralph of Thibars," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1965), pp. 204-212.
- Louring, T. C., "The Politics of the German-Byzantine Alliance on the Eve of the First Crusade," *Itterga*, I (1976), 154-167.
- Luchaire, Achille, "L'Orléanais de Philippe-Auguste sur la fin de la croisade de 1187," *Rev. Hist.*, LXXII (1906), 334-336.
- Luchaire, Achille, *Isaacus III: le croisade des Albigeois* (Paris, 1903).
- Luchaire, Achille, *Isaacus III: la question d'Orient*, 2nd ed. (Paris, 1911).
- Luke, Harry, "The Kingdom of Cyprus, 1291-1369," *H of C*, III (1973), 346-360, and "... 1369-1489," *Ibid.*, 346-393.
- Lunt, William E., *Financial Relations of the Papacy with England* (Med. AA, Publication no. 33, 74; Studies in Anglo-Papal Relations during the Middle Ages, 1-2; 2 vols., Cambridge, Mass., 1929-1962).
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Knights Hospitallers of Rhodes and their Achievements in the Fourteenth Century," *Revue de l'histoire militaire de Malte*, XVI (1958), 136-162.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Honor and the Knights Hospitallers of Rhodes in the Fourteenth Century," *Papers of the British School at Rome*, XXVI (= *RA*, XLII, 1958), 195-212.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Acquiescences économiques de los Hospitalarios de Rodas en el Mediterraneo occidental durante el siglo XIV," VI Congreso de historia de la Corona de Aragón (Madrid, 1959), pp. 175-183.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Interessi economici nell' economia e nella politica del Cavalieri Ospedalieri di Rodi nel trecento," *Annali della Scuola normale superiore di Pisa*, 2nd ser.: Lettere, storia e filosofia, XXVIII (1955), 317-326.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Angevin Crown and the English Hospitallers of Rhodes, 1291-1336," *Eng. HR*, LXXVI (1961), 1-11.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Emmanuel Filios and Criticism of the Knights Hospitallers of Rhodes, 1306-1444," *ACOMON*, XX (1962), 11-12.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Fourteenth-Century Hospitaller Lawyers," *Traditio*, XXI (1965), 449-456.

- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Crusade in the Fourteenth Century," in *Europe in the Late Middle Ages*, ed. John E. Hale, John B. L. Highfield, and Beryl Smalley (London, 1965), pp. 122-154.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Isirigos, Salutes and Violence among the Hospitallers of Rhodes, 1377-1384," *Speculum*, XLI (1966), 30-40.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Larcas of Argos and Nauplia, 1311-1394," *Papers of the British School at Rome*, XXXIV (= ital., XNL, 1966), 34-35.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Foulard Threat and Latin Colonization at Rhodes, 1306-1413," *Eng. HR*, LXXXV (1970), 715-725.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Notes on the Chancery of the Hospitallers of Rhodes, 1384-1392," *Byzantion*, XI (= Hommage au R.P.R.J. Lecomte, 1970), 408-420.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Hospitallers in Cyprus after 1291," *Spaccato del passato austriaco: Ausgrabungen und Auswertung*, II (Vienna, 1973), pp. 161-171.
- Luttrell, Anthony, ed., *Medieval Maltese Studies on Malta before the Knights* (London, 1975).
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Hospitallers of Rhodes, 1306-1413," *H of C*, III (1975), 278-311.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Servitudo Maris at Rhodes 1306-1412," in *Serie Neograeca: Amsterdamse Bijdragen tot de Griekische Letteren, Geschiede en Kunst*, ed. E. Th. Dijkstra and Peter Wirth (Amsterdam, 1975), pp. 50-61.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Slavery at Rhodes, 1306-1406," *Studies in Classical Antiquity Series de Rome*, XLVI-XLVII (1974-1977), 51-100.
- Luttrell, Anthony, *The Hospitallers in Cyprus, Rhodes, Greece and the West (1291-1470)* (Varior Repr., CS, 77; London, 1978).
- Luttrell, Anthony, "Gregory XI and the Turks 1370-1372," *O Chr. R*, XLVI (1980), 394-417.
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Hospitallers of Rhodes: Perspectives, Problems, Possibilities," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Josef Flckenstein and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 36; Sigmaringen, 1980), pp. 243-266.
- Luttrell, Anthony, *Latin Greece, the Hospitallers and the Crusades, 1231-1440* (Varior Repr., CS, 158; London, 1982).
- Luttrell, Anthony, "The Translucation and Malta: 1363-1371," *Papers of the British School at Rome*, L (1982), 146-163.
- Luzzatto, Gino, *Storia economica d'Italia: I. L'antichità e il medioevo* (Biblioteca storica, 30; Rome, 1949).
- Luzzatto, Gino, *Stadi di storia economica veneziana* (Padua, 1954).
- Luzzatto, Gino, *Storia economica di Venezia dall' XI al XVI secolo* (Venezia, 1961).
- Lyons, Malcolm C., and David E. P. Jackson, *Saladin: the Politics of the Holy War* (University of Cambridge Oriental Publications, 30; Cambridge, Eng., 1982).
- Maack, Josef, *Protop Halky (Zwei alte münchener, nr. 22; Prag, 1953).*
- Maack, Josef, *Talbir v hradbách vyznamajících krasu (Prace Československé akademie věd. Série Nové a historie, 1-2; 3 vols.; vol. I, 2nd ed., vol. II, 1st ed., Prag, 1955-1956).*
- Maack, Josef, *The Hussite Movement in Bohemia*, in: Vilém Frecl and Jan Mlánek (2nd enlarged ed., Prag, 1958; repr. New York, 1980).
- Macquarrie, Alan, *Seafaring and the Crusader 1095-1240* (Edinburgh, 1985).
- Magagnoli, Leone A., *Architetti e architettura militare*, vol. I (L'Opera del genio italiano all' estero; [4th ser.] Gli architetti militari; Rome, 1953).
- Magagnoli, Arturo, *Marin Sansone di Pechin e il suo progetto di architettura* (Bologna, 1901).

- Maguire, Harry J., "A Study in Roman Catholic and Greek Orthodox Church Relations on the Island of Cyprus between the Years A.D. 1196 and 1340," *Greek Orthodox Theological Review*, X (1964), 75-106.
- Mehl, Sibylla, "Jerusalem im monastischeren Saek," *Die Welt als Geschichte*, XXII (1912), 11-26.
- Masari, Amadeo, "Il Castello di S. Pietro nel Golfo d'Alicarnasso," *Rivista d'arte antica e moderna*, n.s., VIII (= XX): 1911, 85-92.
- Masari, Amadeo, "L'Ospedale dei cavalieri di Rodi," *Rivista d'arte del Ministero della pubblica istruzione*, n.s., I (= XV): 1911, 211-226.
- Masari, Amadeo, *Rodi: Guida dei monumenti e del Museo archeologico*. (2nd ed., Milan, 1911).
- Masari, Amadeo, "Il Castello dei cavalieri di Rodi a Cos e a Bodrum (Alicarnasso)," *Annuario delle Regie scuole archeologiche di Atene e delle missioni italiane in Oriente*, IV-V (1911-1912 [pub. 1914]), 175-143.
- Masari, Amadeo, and G. Jacopich, "Monumenti di arte ospitaliera," *Civiltà Bizantina*, I (1912), 127-131.
- Mahdavi, Cyrus A., "Il Quaresim veneziano di Costantinopoli (secoli marittimi)," *Storiografia*, XV (1911), 39-41.
- Marchesi, Camillo, *Storia della marina italiana dalle invasioni barbariche al trattato di Nijmegen* (Leghorn, 1899).
- Marchesi, Camillo, *Storia della marina italiana dal trattato di Nijmegen alla caduta di Costantinopoli (1291-1453)* (3 vols., Leghorn, 1902-1903).
- Marchesi, Camillo, *I Colonizzatori italiani durante il medio evo e il rinascimento*, vol. 1, *Dal secolo XI al XII* (Rome, 1911).
- Mann, Jacob, *The Jews in Egypt and in Palestine under the Ptolemaic Empire: a Contribution to their Political and Commercial History Based Chiefly on Genizah Material Hitherto Unpublished* (2 vols., London, 1920-1922; repr. New York, 1910).
- Marshall, Demetrios, "El Cardinal hispano Felipe Garcia (1206-1296)," *Archaeologica Aetna*, I (1913), 11-66.
- Marmelichvili, Alexandre, *Histoire de Gêorgie* (Paris, 1911).
- Marpa, George, *La Barbérie musulmane et l'Orient au moyen âge* (Les grandes crises de l'Orient; Paris, 1946).
- Martens, Constantin, "Philippe le Bon, duc de Bourgogne, et la croisade 1413-1447," *Bulletin des études portugaises et de l'histoire française au Portugal*, n.s., XIII (1949), 3-28.
- Martens, Constantin, "Philippe le Bon, duc de Bourgogne, et la croisade (1413-1447)," *Actes du VI^e Congrès international d'études byzantines* (Paris 1948), I (Paris, 1950), pp. 147-161.
- Markowski, Michael, "Crucigraffiti: its Origins and Early Usage," *J. Med. H.*, X (1964), 157-165.
- Martin, Jean P., "Les Penseurs prêtres chrétiens et les Synodes jacobites de Jérusalem," *J.*, XII (1917), 471-492; XIII (1919), 33-40.
- Martin, José-Luis, "Orígenes de la orden militar de Santiago (1170-1193)," *Anuario de estudios medievales*, IV (1967), 371-390.
- Martini, Giuseppe, "Dionisio III ed il rinnovamento delle crociate," *Archivio della R. deputazione romana di storia patria*, LXXVII (1964), 309-335, repr. in *Nuove riviste storiche*, LXX (1961), 198-208.
- Max Laire, Louis de, "Des Relations politiques et commerciales de l'ant. Égypte avec l'Ét. de Chypre sous le règne des princes de la maison de Lusignan," *RE Chet.*, VI (1844), 301-330, 465-521; VII (1845-1846), 121-142.

- Mas Latrie, Louis de, *Histoire de l'île de Chypre sous le règne des princes de la maison de Lusignan* (3 vols., Paris, 1852-1864, repr., 4 vols., Farnborough, 1970).
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "La Terre au dâbl du Jordan et ses premiers seigneurs," *Revue Chré.*, XXXIX (1878), 424-426, and "Errata" on p. 513.
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, *L'île de Chypre sa situation présente, ses souvenirs du moyen-âge* (Paris, 1878).
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Les Comtes de Jaffa et d'Ascalon du XII^e au XIV^e siècle," *Arch. Chr.*, XXVI (1879), 185-200.
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Le Pié de la chambrehaute et les chambrehautes de Jérusalem," *Revue Chré.*, XLIII (1882), 647-652.
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Les Seigneurs de Cusa de Montrial appelés d'abord seigneurs de la terre au dâbl du Jordan," *Arch. Chr.*, XXV (= n.s., XII), 1883, 473-494.
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Histoire des archevêques latins de l'île de Chypre," *AO Latine*, III (1884), 307-328.
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Les Patriarches latins d'Antiochie," *AO Latine*, II (1884), 192-205.
- Mas Latrie, Louis de, "Les Seigneurs d'Ascalon ou Terre Salée," *Arch. Chr.*, n.s., XI (= LV), 1894, 385-393.
- Massignon, Louis, "Le 'Petrus' ou 'père d'histoire artisanal' entre les travailleurs musulmans au moyen âge," *La Nouvelle Rev.*, IV (1952), 171-196.
- Mata Carriazo, Juan de, *Historia de la guerra de Granada*, in *Historia de España*, ed. Ramón Menéndez Pidal: vol. 12, *La España de los reyes católicos (1474-1516)*, vol. 1, by Luis Suárez Villaescusa and Juan de Mata Carriazo, part 3 (Madrid, 1961), pp. 385-504.
- Mattien, Raymond, *Abbasid* (Collection de l'Institut français d'Archéologie, 62: Villages et paysages de Crète, vol. 1: Athens, 1949).
- Mayer, Hans E., "Zur Beurteilung Adheims von La Paz," *Deutscher Archiv*, XVI (1960), 547-552.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Das Patriarchat von Tyrus und die Krönung der lateinischen Könige von Jerusalem: zugleich ein Beitrag zur Beurteilung über Herrschaftsansichten und Staatsrechtslehre," *D Osta F.*, XXI (1967), 141-232.
- Mayer, Hans E., "On the Beginnings of the Communal Movement in the Holy Land: the Commune of Tyre," *Dakota*, XXIV (1968), 443-457.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Zwei Kommunen in Akko," *Deutscher Archiv*, XXVI (1970), 434-453.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Kaisertum und Heiliges Land," in *Acta Byzantinologica und Norddeutscher Geschichte*, ed. Horst Fuhrmann, Hans E. Mayer, and Klaus Willeit (Kleiner Historische Studien, 16; Stuttgart, 1972), pp. 193-268.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Studies in the History of Queen Melisende of Jerusalem," *D Osta F.*, XXVI (1972), 93-182.
- Mayer, Hans E., and Marie L. Freeman, "Das Diplom Balduins I. für Gerusalem und Gerusalem gelobte handschrift in der Graubibliothek," *QFIAR*, LV/LVI (1974), 22-95.
- Mayer, Hans E., *Baukunst, Kloster und Stifte am Königreich Jerusalem* (MGH, Schrift III, 24; Stuttgart, 1977).
- Meyer, Hans E., "Die Kausel Richards I. von England auf dem dritten Kreuzzug," *MGH*, LXXXV (1977), 22-35.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Ibela versus Bala, the Struggle for the Regency of Jerusalem (1253-1258)," *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, CXXII (1978), 25-57.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Latins, Muslims and Greeks in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," *History*, LXIII (1978), 175-193.

- Mayer, Hans E., "Die Siegestriebe des Jerusalem und des Deutsche Orden," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Josef Fleckenstein and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 26, Sigmaringen, 1980), pp. 171-216.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Ein Dokument König Salmons III. von Jerusalem als Zeugniss seiner Pläne zur Eroberung Ägyptens," *Deutsches Archiv*, XXXVI (1980), 549-566.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Jerusalem et Antioche au temps de Baudouin II," *CRAI* (1980), pp. 717-734.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Carving up Cremona: the Early Belfra and Ranzan," in *Quarneri* (1982), pp. 101-118.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Henry II of England and the Holy Land," *Eng. HR*, XCVI (1982), 721-738.
- Mayer, Hans E., "The Concordat of Najib," *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, XXXIII (1982), 331-343.
- Mayer, Hans E., *Kreuzzüge und lateinischer Osten* (Varior. Repr., CS, 171, London, 1983).
- Mayer, Hans E., *Probleme des lateinischen Königreichs Jerusalem* (Varior. Repr., CS, 171; London, 1983).
- Mayer, Hans E., "John of Jaffa, his Opponents and his Field," *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, CXXVIII (1984), 134-163.
- Mayer, Hans E., *Mélanges sur l'histoire du royaume latin de Jérusalem* (Mémoires de l'Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres, n.s., 3; Paris, 1984).
- Mayer, Hans E., *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Urban-Bücher, 86, 6th ed., Stuttgart, 1985); rev. ed. by John Gillingham as *The Crusades* (Oxford, 1972; 2nd ed., 1985).
- Mayer, Hans E., "Die Herrschaftsbildung in Hebräa," *ZDPV*, CI (1985), 64-81.
- Mayer, Hans E., "The Double County of Jaffa and Ascalon. One Field or Two?" in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 182-190.
- Mayer, Hans E., "The Origin of the County of Jaffa," *ibid.* XXXV (1985), 33-45.
- Mayer, Hans E., "The Origin of the Lordships of Ramla and Lydda in the Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Speculum*, LX (1985), 377-532.
- Mayer, Hans E., "The Salvation in Baldwin II of Jerusalem: English Impact on the East," *D. Osta F.* XXXIX (1985), 139-147.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Guillaume de Tyr à l'Hebreu," *Mémoires de l'Académie des sciences, arts et belles-lettres de Dijon*, CXXVII (1985-1986, published 1988), 237-243.
- Mayer, Hans E., "Die Legitimität Baldwin IV. von Jerusalem und das Testament der Agnes von Courtenay," *HZ* Götting., CVIII (1988), 62-89.
- McGinn, Bernard, "Hier sancti impulerunt: the Piety of the First Crusaders," in *Essays in Medieval Christianity*, ed. Berke K. Lachner and Kenneth R. Philip (The Walter Prescott Webb Memorial Lectures, 12; Austin and London, 1978), pp. 33-72.
- McLeod, William, "Castles of the Moors in 1463," *Arch. J.*, LXV (1972), 357-363.
- McNell, Edgar H., and Robert L. Wolf, "The Fourth Crusade," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 153-183.
- Morgan, A. H. S., "The Arts in Cyprus: B. Military Architecture," *H of C*, IV (1977), 196-207.
- Meinhard, Otto F., *The Capets in Jerusalem* (Cairo, 1969).
- Melnikau-Chorvost, Anzhelika S., "Viziti entre l'Orient et l'Occident," *Bulletin d'études orientales*, XXVII (1974), 108-126.
- Melville, Marcus, *Le Fir des Templiers*, 2nd ed. (Paris, 1974).
- Melville, Marcus, "Les Dévots du Temple," in *Die geistlichen Ritterorden Europas*, ed. Josef Fleckenstein and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 26, Sigmaringen, 1980), pp. 23-30.

- Messenger, Léon R., *Amorinus—Amorrici. Filium et les origines de l'amorricité (XII-XIIIe siècles) (Étude préliminaire des basins d'écoulement)*, Paris: Bibliothèque générale, Sect. 4; Paris, 1969.
- Mézaudoux Piché, Raulin, *La España del Cal*, 2nd rev. ed. (Madrid, 1967).
- Martin, Erwan, *Histoire de l'Afrique septentrionale (Libyérie) depuis les temps les plus reculés jusqu'à la conquête française (1830) (3 vols., Paris, 1863-1891).*
- Mercier, Maurice, *Le Feu grégeois, les jeux de guerre depuis l'antiquité, la poudre à canon* (Paris and Arignon, 1932).
- Mertens, Volker, "Kritik am Kreuzung Kaiser Heinrichs I. Zu Hartmanns v. Keupenung," in *Langenbrunn-Geschichte, Langenbrunn und Keupen*, ed. Adalger Ernst, Bernd Timm, and Peter Wagners (Karlsruhe Kulturreisenschaftliche Arbeiten, I; Stuttgart, 1979), pp. 325-333.
- Méry, Louis E., and F. Ouladon, *Histoire analytique et chronologique des actes et des délibérations du conseil et du conseil de la municipalité de Merville depuis le Xe siècle jusqu'à nos jours* (8 vols., Marseille, 1961-1873).
- Meuser, Herbert, "Kreuzfahrer aus Jerusalem," *Jahrbuch der Staatlichen Kunstsammlungen in Baden-Württemberg*, XLII (1976), 7-17.
- Meuser, Herbert, "Zu den Kreuzfahrern des Kreuzfahrers," *Zeitschrift für Kunstgeschichte*, XLVIII (1983), 65-76.
- Meyvaert, Paul, "An Unknown Letter of Huiyao, II Khan of Persia, to King Louis IX of France," *Vision*, XI (1980), 245-259.
- Miccoli, Giovanni, "La 'Crocata del fascisti' del 1913," *Studi medievali*, 3-4 (1964), 407-443.
- Michael, Emil, "Hat Papst Innocenz III. sich das [jehovah's] Recht markiert, auch die Laien zu Kreuzfahrern zu heiligen?" *Zeitschrift für katholische Theologie*, XIX (1895), 733-736.
- Michael, Joseph F., *Histoire des croisades*, 7th ed., ed. Jean L.A. Huillard-Brethois (4 vols., Paris, 1877; n. W. Johnson to Michael's *History of the Crusades* (3 vols., London, 1832; repr. New York, 1973).
- Michel, Anton, *Herbert und Konradin* (Quellen und Forschungen aus dem Gebiete der Geschichte, ed. by the Görres-Gesellschaft, 21, 23, 3 vols., Paderborn, 1924-1925).
- Michel, Anton, *Amalfi und Jerusalem im griechischen Kirchenrecht: Kardinal Humbert, Legat von Amalfi, Mikail Synkellos, Symeon II. von Jerusalem und Bruno von Segni über die Agyrien* (Orientalia christiana analecta, 121, Rome, 1939).
- Michel, Anton, "Die byzantinische und östliche Wirkung von Symeon II. von Jerusalem," *Z. Kirch.*, LXII (1943-1944), 164-177.
- Michel, Anton, "Die Frankensiedlung Grotto in Antiochia im Schisma des Karulians (1053-1054) und ihr Widerhall," *Studii Gregoriani*, II (1947), 363-365.
- Michel, Anton, "Die östlichen Angriffe auf Michael Karulianos wegen Antiochia (1053-1054)," *Byz. Z.*, XLIV (1951), 419-427.
- Michel, Anton, *Die Kaiserwürde in der Ostkirche (813-1204)* (Darmstadt, 1939).
- Mitch, Aldo, *La Scienze arabe et son rôle dans l'évolution scientifique mondiale* (Leyden, 1938).
- Miller, Timothy, "The Knights of St. John and the Hospitals of the Latin West," *Speculum*, LIII (1978), 709-733.
- Miller, William, *The Latins in the Levant: a History of Frankish Greece (1264-1566)* (London, 1908; repr. 1964, repr. New York, 1963).
- Miller, William, *Europe on the Latin Orient* (Cambridge, Eng., 1921; repr. Chicago, 1967, New York, 1963).

- Miles, William, *Delos and the Last Greek Empire* (London, 1926).
- Millet, Gabriel, *Mouvements byzantins de Mésopotamie méridionale pour l'étude de l'archéologie et de la peinture en Grèce aux XIV^e et XV^e siècles* (Mouvements de l'art byzantin, 2, Paris, 1908).
- Minority, Vladimir F., *Studies in Caucasian History: 1. New Light on the Sack of Ganja; 2. The Shaddadids of Ani; 3. Prehistory of Saladin* (Cambridge Oriental Series, 6; London, 1953).
- Moré y Soto, Joaquín, *Itinerari de Jaume I "el Conqueridor"* (Barcelona, 1908).
- Mosbach, Henry L., *Genoa's Rule and the Flow of Gold, 1134-1213* (Diss., Wisconsin, 1948, Ann Arbor, Mich., 1957).
- Mosbach, Theophilus A.H., ed. and tr., *Supplementary Essays on Cyprus, or Further Materials for a History of Cyprus* (3 parts, Princeton, 1940-1944).
- Mörsing, Hannes, *Saladin und der Dritte Kreuzzug: Arabische Strategie und Diplomatie im Vergleich vornehmlich der arabischen mit den lateinischen Quellen* (Frankfurter historische Abhandlungen, 21; Wiesbaden, 1980).
- Mouton, Guillaume, *Les Papes d'Anagni (1268-1278)*, 10th ed. (Bibliothèque de l'enseignement d'histoire ecclésiastique, Paris, 1964, 7th ed. tr. Jean Leve (New York, 1965).
- Montemmarini, Antonino, *Analisi perenni del greco Menologio d'oro Palatino d'oro di Edouard von Harn* (Athens, 1913).
- Monnier de Villard, Ugo, "La Vita, le opere e i viaggi di frate Rinaldo da Montecroce O.P.," *O. Chr. R. X.* (1940), 227-274.
- Monnier de Villard, Ugo, *Le Studio dell' Islam in Europa nel XII e nel XIII secolo* (Studi e testi, 110; Vatican City, 1946).
- Montalbán, Francisco J., *Manual de historia de las missions*, 2nd ed. (Bilbao, 1952).
- Monti, Genaro M., *Da Carlo I a Roberto d'Angio ricerche e documenti* (Trani, 1934).
- Monti, Genaro M., *Novi studi angioini* (Studia deputazione di storia patria per la Puglia. Documenti a monografia, n.s., 38; Trani, 1937).
- Monti, Genaro M., *L'Italia e le crociate in terra Santa* (Naples, 1941).
- Monti, Genaro M., *L'Espansione mediterranea del matrimonio d'Italia e della Sicilia* (Bologna, 1942).
- Moore, G. A., *The Ancient Churches of Old Jerusalem: the Evidence of the Pilgrims* (London and Beirut, 1948).
- Moravcsik, Henri, "Les Projets de Charles de Valois sur l'Asie de Constantinople," *RE Cher.* LI (1890), 63-86.
- Morgan, Jacques de, *Histoire du peuple arménien depuis les temps les plus reculés de son histoire jusqu'à nos jours* (Paris and Nancy, 1919).
- Morgan, Margaret S., "The Monks of Old French priories, Latin pilgrims," *Neulien Annuaire*, XLVIII (1979), 40-54.
- Morhens, Raffaele, "L'Unità monastica nell'Italia meridionale," *Questioni di storia medievale, a cura di Enrico Berio* (Milan, 1944), pp. 275-302.
- Morris, Colin, "Propaganda for War: the Dissemination of the Crusading Ideal in the Twelfth Century," in *The Church and War*, ed. W. I. Skelton (Studies in Church History, 20; Oxford, 1963), pp. 79-88.
- Morris, Colin, "Policy and Vision: the Case of the Holy Lance at Antioch," *War and Government in the Middle Ages: Essays in Honour of J. G. Prestwich*, ed. John Gillingham and J. C. Holt (Woodbridge, 1984), pp. 33-45.
- Mosk, Arthur C., *Christians in China before 1550* (London, 1909).
- Moutonopoulos, Nikolaos, "Le Monastère finar de Notre-Dame d'Ikon (Cortyale)," *BC Hist.*, LXXX (1956), 74-94, addenda and corrigenda, p. 632.

- Mulz, William, *The Mamaluks, or, Slave Dynasty of Egypt (1260-1517)* (London, 1896; repr. New York, 1973).
- Mulz, William, *The Caliphate, its Rise, Decline and Fall from Original Sources* (New York, 1973).
- Muldrew, James, *Popes, Lawyers and Infidels* (Liverpool, 1979).
- Müller, Friedrich A., *Der Islam im Morgen- und Abendland* (2 vols., Berlin, 1883-1887).
- Müller-Wiemers, Wolfgang, *Crusades of the Crusaders*, tr. J. Maxwell Brownjohn (London, 1966).
- Munro, Dana C., "The Speech of Pope Urban II at Clermont, 1095," *Amer. HR*, XI (1905-1906), 231-242.
- Munro, Dana C., "The Children's Crusade," *Amer. HR*, XIX (1913-1914), 516-524.
- Munro, Dana C., *The Kingdom of the Crusaders* (New York, 1915).
- Murphy-O'Connor, Jerome, *The Holy Land: an Archaeological Guide from the Earliest Times to 1700* (Oxford, 1966).
- Musart, Lucien, *Les Peuples musulmans au moyen âge* (Paris, 1911).
- Muscati, Gian G., *Navigazione e commercio genovese con il Levante* (Publicazioni degli Archivi di Stato, vol. 34; Rome, 1973).
- Muscati, Gian G., *I Genovesi e il Levante nei medietà e nei moderni: ricerche d'archivio* (Genoa, 1974).
- Myers, Geoffrey M., *Les Chrétiens* (The Old French Crusade Cycle, 3; University, Ala., 1981).
- Nalla von Schönböing, Urs, *Die Wälschirische Kirche im Mittelalter (900-1150)* (Heidelberg, 1977).
- Nada Fawzan, Anna M., *Le Quatre croisés e l'Impero latino di Gerusalemme (1187-1261)* (Torin, 1972).
- Natafiah, Joseph, "Courants de la Syrie du Nord portant le nom de Simeon," *Syria*, XLIX (1973), 127-139.
- Natafiah, Joseph, "Actes chrétiens du début de la prédication de l'Évangile aux croisés," *Proche-Orient chrétien*, XXXIX (1973), 301-305.
- Natanson, D., *Armenia nach der byzantinischen aufzeichnung* (Bucharest, 1977).
- Negri, Emilio G. de, *Storia di Genova* (Milan, 1948).
- Neffhausen, Eberhard, "Walthers unentgeltlicher Kreuzzugsappell zur Funktion der Heilwesen-Scripturen des Ottomans," *Zeitschrift für deutsche Philologie*, XCVIII (1973), Sonderheft, pp. 22-40.
- Neumann, Carl, *Bernhard von Clairvaux und die Anfänge des zweiten Kreuzzuges* (Heidelberg, 1862).
- Neumann, Carl, *Die Weltstellung des byzantinischen Reiches vor den Kreuzzügen* (Habilitationsschrift Heidelberg; Leipzig, 1894).
- Nicholson, Robert L., *Tacnest: a Study of his Career and Work in their Relation to the First Crusade and the Establishment of the Latin States in Syria and Palestine* (Theis, Chicago, 1940; repr. New York, 1971).
- Nicholson, Robert L., *Asenath I, Prince of Edessa* (Illness Studies in the Social Sciences, 34-4, Urbana, 1954; repr. New York, 1963).
- Nicholson, Robert L., "The Origins of the Latin States, 1118-1144," *N of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 410-447.
- Nicholson, Robert L., *Asenath II and the Fall of the Crusader States, 1134-1199* (Leyden, 1973).
- Nicholson, Mary B., "The Significance of Beirut in the Twelfth Century and the Brie-

- barre Family of Ieriss Maschegorda," *Byzantion*, XIX (1949), 141-185. See also Hardwick.
- Nicol, Donald M., *The Despotate of Epirus* (Oxford, 1957).
- Nicol, Donald M., "The Greeks and the Union of the Churches: the Preliminaries to the Second Council of Lyons, 1261-1274," in *Medieval Studies Presented to Aubrey Gwynn*, ed. John A. Watt, John B. McNeill, and Francis X. Martin (Dublin, 1961), pp. 434-480.
- Nicol, Donald M., "Byzantinism and the Papacy in the Eleventh Century," *Journal of Ecclesiastical History*, XIII (1962), 1-20.
- Nicol, Donald M., *Religious, Moral Population and Local Patriotism in Eastern and Western Macedonia after the Fourth Crusade* (XVI Congrès international d'études byzantines, rapports et co-rapports. I. Histoire; 2. Composition et mouvement de la population dans le monde byzantin; Athens, 1974).
- Nicol, Donald M., "Synodism and Intolerantism: Some Greek-Latin Families in Byzantium in the 11th to 13th Centuries," *Byz. E*, VII (1979), 111-123.
- Nicol, Donald M., *The End of the Byzantine Empire* (Foundations of Medieval History, London, 1979).
- Nix, Matthias, "Der Kreuzzugsaufbruch Wälfers im Osterson und der Kreuzzugspapst Kaiser Otto IV.," *Germanisch-Romanische Monatsschrift*/R. LXV (= i.e., XXXIV) (1964), 278-294.
- Norden, Walter, *Der vierte Kreuzzug im Rahmen der Beziehungen des Abendlandes zu Byzanz* (Berlin, 1900).
- Norden, Walter, *Das Papsttum und Byzanz: die Trennung der beiden Mächte und das Problem ihrer Wiedervereinigung im zum Untergang des byzantinischen Reiches*, 1472 (Berlin, 1903).
- Norgate, Kate, *Richard the Lion Heart* (London, 1924).
- Noth, Albrecht, *Heiliger Krieg und heiliger Kampf in Islam und Christentum. Beiträge zur Vorgeschichte und Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Bonner historische Forschungen, 38, Bonn, 1966).
- Nowell, Charles E., "The Old Man of the Mountain," *Spartacus*, XXII (1947), 497-519.
- O'Callaghan, Joseph F., "The Affiliation of the Order of Calatrava with the Order of Cîteaux," *Annuaire sociéité Cisterciense*, XV (1959), 161-193, XVI (1960), 3-39.
- O'Callaghan, Joseph F., "The Foundation of the Order of Alcántara, 1176-1204," *Cath. HR*, XLVII (1961-1962), 471-496.
- O'Callaghan, Joseph F., *A History of Medieval Spain* (Ithaca and London, 1973).
- O'Callaghan, Joseph F., *The Spanish Military Order of Calatrava and its Affiliates* (Varior Repr., CS, T), London, 1973).
- O'Neil, Bryan H. St.J., "Rioters and the Origin of the Banner," *Antiquaries Journal*, XXXIV (1954), 44-54.
- Osceorinos, Lymanches, *La Vie religieuse dans l'empire byzantin au temps des Comnènes et des Anges* (Paris, 1913).
- Osborne, Werner, "Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte Manuells I. von Byzanz," in *Festschrift für Albert Bruckmann dargestellt von Freunden, Kollegen und Schülern*, ed. Leo Sander (Leipzig, 1921), pp. 371-393.
- Osborne, Werner, *Das Zweikaiserproblem im früheren Mittelalter die Bedeutung des byzantinischen Reiches für die Entwicklung der Staatstheorie in Europa* (Hil. desheft, 1947).

- Olshansky, Werner, *Abramelin und Hyazim: Graecoarabische Aufhänger zur Geschichte der byzantinisch-abramelinischen Beziehungen und des Kreuztums* (Darmstadt, 1958).
- Olsson, Abraham C.M. d., *Histoire des Mongols depuis Tch'ingiz-Khan jusqu'à Timur Bey ou Tamerlan* (4 vols., Amsterdam, 1853).
- Olszenburg, Zvi, *Les Croisés* (Geneva, 1977).
- Oliver, Louis N. d., *L'Expansion de Catalogne en la Méditerranée orientale* (Enciclopedia de Catalunya, 1; Barcelona, 1936).
- Omman, Charles, *History of the Art of War in the Middle Ages*, 2nd ed. (2 vols., New York, 1934).
- Opl, Ferdinand, *Der Kaiser Kaiser Friedrich Barbarossa (1152-1190)* (Forschungen zur Kaiser- und Papstgeschichte des Mittelalters: Beihefte zu I. F. Bohmer, *Regesta Imperii*, 1; Vienna, Cologne, and Graz, 1978).
- Orfèbe, Gaudemar, *Gedächtnis, ou Notice sur l'église de Tégane ou de la Frère, d'après les feuilles diverses accomplies par la Curie de franciscaine de Terre Sainte (1409 et 1520)* (Paris, 1924).
- Oroszian, Malachuk, *L'Église arménienne au XI^e siècle, sa doctrine, son régime, sa discipline, sa liturgie, son prêtre* (Paris, 1910).
- Ostrogorski, Georgije (here, Georg Ostrogorsky), "Die Mönchliche Bewegung des byzantinischen Reiches im 10. Jahrhundert," *FSMG*, XX (1920), 1-104.
- Ostrogorski, Georgije (here, Georg Ostrogorsky), "Das Senatswesen im byzantinischen Altertum und Mittelalter," *Byzantion*, VI (1930), 229-240.
- Ostrogorski, Georgije (here, Georges Ostrogorski), *Pour l'histoire de la féodalité byzantine*, tr. Henri Odjéan and Paul Lemerle (Corpus Bruxellense Historiae Byzantinae, Subsidia, 2; Brussels, 1954).
- Ostrogorski, Georgije (here, Georges Ostrogorski), *Quelques problèmes d'histoire de la paysannerie byzantine* (Corpus Bruxellense Historiae Byzantinae, Subsidia, 2; Brussels, 1954).
- Ostrogorski, Georgije (here, Georges Ostrogorski), "Pour l'histoire de l'imprimerie à Byzance," *Byzantion*, XXVIII (1954), 165-184.
- Ostrogorski, Georgije (here, Georg Ostrogorsky), *Geschichte des byzantinischen Staates* (Handbuch der Altertumswissenschaft, sect. 12, Byzantinische Handbuch, parts 1, 2; 3rd ed., Istanbul, 1943; 2nd ed. tr. Louis M. Havassy as *History of the Byzantine State* (London, 1956); rev. ed. (Burgess Byzantine Series, New Brunswick, N. J., 1969).
- Ostiel, Raymond, *Alberici de moyen Age: les hommes, les chemins, les structures* (Paris, 1978); Italian tr. as *Pellegrini del medioevo. gli uomini, le strade, i santuari* (Milan, 1979).
- Ostrower, see Kader 1962 (2).
- Oswald (here, Ostrotych), Aiden, "A Crusader Church in the Jewish Quarter of Jerusalem," *East Israel*, XI (J. Dussupersky Memorial Volume, 1972), 208-212 (in Hebrew, with an English summary on p. 29*).
- Oswald, Aiden, "A Restored Crusader Church in the Jewish Quarter," *Christian News from Israel*, XXV (1973), 130-133.
- Packer, Louis J., ed., *The Crusades and Other Historical Essays Presented to Dana C. Munro by his Former Students* (New York, 1928); includes Besenroth, Byrne, Duncall, Gutsch, Kravatos, Knappet, CS.
- Palmer, Sidney, "Western Europe on the Eve of the Crusades," *H of C*, I (1915), 2nd ed. 1960, 3-29.
- Pauker, Sidney, "The Third Crusade: Richard the Lionhearted and Philip Augustus,"

- Haf C. II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 45-52, and "The Crusade of Thessalon of Champagne and Richard of Cornwall, 1239-1241," *ibid.*, 463-485.
- Palacky, František, *Geschichte von Böhmen: Ordentlich nach Quellen und Handschriften* (5 vols. in 10, Prague, 1826-1847).
- Pall, Francis, "Christe d'Ancone e la crociata contro l'Ereia," *Bulletto de la Società Anonima di Studi storici romani*, XX (1936), 9-46.
- Pall, Francis, "Notice de la crociata de Varna: la question de la paix de Sangar et de sa rupture (1444)," *Bulletto de la Società Anonima di Studi storici romani*, XXII (1940), 144-152.
- Pall, Francis, "Les Croisades en Orient au bas moyen âge: observations critiques sur l'ouvrage de M. Ains," *RHS*, XIX (1942), 327-343.
- Pall, Francis, "Un Moment décisif de l'histoire du sud-est européen. la crociata de Varna," *Balkanica*, VII (1944), 102-120.
- Papadopoulos, Basil E., *Catharian and Manichaean Monasteries in Medieval Greece* (Chicago, 1970).
- Papadopoulos, Chrysostomos, *Terneta et de la crociata: Topographia* (Alexandria 1910; repr. Athens, 1970).
- Papadopoulos, Chrysostomos, "H basilika 'Armeniakos et et vopayias: tōn Iakōvov et et tōn Pōlymerōn Daplo," *basileia*, XVI (1938), 97-117, 193-207.
- Papadopoulos, Chrysostomos, *Terneta et de la crociata: Armeniakos* (Alexandria, 1933).
- Papadopoulos, Jean B., *Théodore II Lascaris, empereur de Nicée* (Paris, 1908).
- Perry, Vernon L., and Malcolm E. Yapp, eds., *War, Technology, and Society in the Middle East* (London, 1973).
- Portington, James R., *History of Greek Fire and Gunpowder* (Cambridge, Eng., 1950).
- Potter, Philip, "The Byzantine Early Warning System," *Byzantion*, LIII (1981), 239-249.
- Potts, Edgar A., *Armenia Lost: a Biography* (London, 1939).
- Potz, Hayford, and Royall Tyler, *L'Armée byzantine des origines au déclin. cinq volumes contenant trois photographies* (5 vols., Paris, 1932-1934).
- Potz, Josef, *Žitje a jelo slova* (4 vols., Prague, 1937-1953).
- Potz, Loderick, "Le Monastère franche sous Alexandre IV (1234-1263)," *Studi bizantini*, XLIV (1967), 91-111.
- Potz, Paul, "Christians d'Asie centrale et d'Extrême-Orient," *Tsing Pao*, XV (1914), 433-444.
- Potz, Paul, "Les Mongols et le papauté," *BO Cho*, XXIII (1922-1923), 3-30; XXIV (1924), 225-235; XXVIII (1930-1932), 3-84.
- Potz, Paul, "Missions au temps des crociata," *MEABE*, XLIV (1967), 1-97 (separate ed., Paris, 1971).
- Potz, Paul, *Recherches sur les Chrétiens d'Asie centrale et d'Extrême-Orient* (in *Ouvrages posthumes de Paul Potz*, ed. Jean Gauthier and Louis Huet, Paris, 1973).
- Potts, Daniel A., *Como nasceu Portugal*, 3rd ed. (Porto, 1939).
- Potz, Régis, *Essai sur l'histoire du port de Marseille des origines à la fin du XIIIe siècle* (Marseille, 1935).
- Potz, Régis, *Les Templiers* (Que sais-je, no. 1537; Paris, 1974).
- Potz, Régis, *Les Moines de la crociata* (Paris, 1977).
- Potz, Augustin, ed., *Voyage et le Levant fin et siècle XV*, vol. 1 (Civiltà venturiana, Studi 29; Florence, 1973; includes Potz, Richard).

- Pertosa, Agostino, *Le Culture di Costantinopoli: le testimonianze dei contemporanei* (Vercelli, 1974).
- Pertosa, Agostino, "Venezia e Bisanzio: 1202-1204," *D'Oro E* XXXIII (1979), 1-22.
- Petsch, Luciano, "Les Marchands italiens dans l'empire byzantin," *Jd. CCl.* (1962), 345-374.
- Pfiffner, Ernst, "Die Kaiserkrone und der erste Kreuzzug," *Conventio-Christi* XLVII (1933), 4-10, 44-54, 78-81, 107-114, 145-150.
- Pfiffner, Wolfgang, "Acruse-Gloss," *Journal of Glass Studies*, XII (1970), 67-69 (Philippides), Chrysosus, [archibios], *H. Iacobi TernaGlossos* (l'Anglois [Glossos] 4-5, Athens, 1933-1934).
- Pillet, Maurice, "Noire-Dame de Tortose," *Syria*, X (1929), 40-51.
- Piquet, Jules, *Des Banquiers au moyen âge: les Templiers: étude de leurs opérations financières* (Paris, 1939).
- Pirenne, Henri, *Islamism in Charlemagne*, 6th ed. by Jacques Pirenne and Fernand Vercauteren (Paris and Brussels, 1937).
- Pitts-Gordon, Harry, "The Angling Prince of Oulias," *Eng. RA*, XXVII (1912), 445-446.
- Plasard, Hippolyte, *La Guerre sainte en sept siècles: essai sur l'origine et le développement des théories canoniques* (Bibliothèque d'histoire religieuse, 10, Paris, 1912; repr. New York, 1960).
- Ploetz, Paul E., "Die Ausrufung des Heeres Christi: Prediger des fünften Kreuzzuges in Deutschland," *Deutscher Archiv*, XXXIV (1978), 164-19.
- Plehn, Christelig, *Kreuzritterburgen auf dem Palästina* (Munich and Zurich, 1877).
- Pollak, Abraham M., *Feudalism in Egypt, Syria, Palestine and the Lebanon, 1250-1900* (Royal Asiatic Society Prize Publications Fund, 17; London, 1937).
- Popper, William, *Egypt and Syria under the Circassian Sultans 1183-1448 A.D.: Systematic Notes to the Zapher Bird's Chronicles of Egypt* (University of California Publications in Semitic Philology, 15-16: 2 vols., Berkeley, 1955-1957).
- Porjes, Walter, "The Clergy, the Poor and the Non-Contributors on the First Crusade," *Speculum*, XXI (1946), 1-23.
- Porter, Arthur K., "Condom, Jerusalem and St. Olfen," *Art in America*, XIII (1924-1925), 117-129.
- Powell, James M., *Anatomy of a Crusade, 1213-1221* (Philadelphia, 1966).
- Powicke, Frederick M., *King Henry III and Lord Edward: the Community of the Realm in the Thirteenth Century* (2 vols., Oxford, 1947).
- Powicke, Frederick M., *The Thirteenth Century, 1216-1307* (Oxford History of England, 4, Oxford, 1953).
- Pravet, Joshua, "Colonization Activities in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Revue belge de philologie et d'histoire*, XXIX (1952), 1061-1111.
- Pravet, Joshua, "L'Établissement des communes de marché à St-Jean d'Acre et la date de composition de Livre des Amans des Bourgeois," *RH Devt FE*, 4-XXIX (1951), 329-351.
- Pravet, Joshua, "The *Amor de amore* and the *Amor de veritate*: a Study of Landed Property in the Latin Kingdom," *Economic History Review*, 2-IV (1951-1952), 77-87, rev. version in *Crusader Institutions*, pp. 343-357.
- Pravet, Joshua, "Étude de quelques problèmes agricoles et sociaux d'une seigneurie croisée au XI^e siècle," *Byzantion*, XXII (1952), 5-61, XXIII (1953), 143-170, expanded and it. in "Palestine Agriculture and the Crusader Rural System," in *Crusader Institutions*, pp. 143-300.

- Pravert, Joshua, "The Settlement of the Latins in Jerusalem," *Speculum*, XXVII (1952), 480-503, repr. in *Crusader Institutions*, pp. 85-101.
- Pravert, Joshua, "Les Premiers temps de la féodalité dans le royaume latin de Jérusalem," *Tijdschrift voor oosteuropese studies*, XXII (1954), 401-424, rev. in *Crusader Institutions*, pp. 3-18.
- Pravert, Joshua, "La Noblesse et le régime féodal du royaume latin de Jérusalem," *Le Moyen-âge*, LXV (4-XIV; 1959), 41-74; rev. in *Crusader Institutions*, pp. 30-45.
- Pravert, Joshua, "Étude sur le droit des *Assises de Jérusalem*, droit de confiscation et droit d'exhéréditation," *AN Descr Fd.*, 4-XXXIX (1961), 535-551, 4-XI (1962), 29-42; expanded and rev. in "Roman Law and Crusader Legislation, the *Assises en Confiscation and Dénoblement*," in *Crusader Institutions*, pp. 430-448.
- Pravert, Joshua, "La Bataille de Hattin," *in: Expl. J.* XIV (1964), 140-179.
- Pravert, Joshua, *Essays, Chronological and the Constitution of the Latin Kingdom* (Israel Academy of Sciences and Humanities: Proceedings, II, 4; Jerusalem, 1964).
- Pravert, Joshua, "Jewish Settlement in Crusader Jerusalem," *Artis et Scientiae in Israel*, no. 19 (1967), 40-66.
- Pravert, Joshua, *Histoire du royaume latin de Jérusalem*, rev. Gérard Nahon and rev. by the author (2 vols., Paris, 1969-1970; 2nd ed., 1975).
- Pravert, Joshua, *The Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem. European Colonialism in the Middle Ages* (London, 1972; published in New York (1973) as *The Crusaders' Kingdom*).
- Pravert, Joshua, *The World of the Crusaders* (London, 1972).
- Pravert, Joshua, "I Veneziani e le colonie veneziane nel regno latino di Gerusalemme," in *Venezia e il Levante fino al secolo XV*, ed. Agostino Portati, vol. I, part 2 (Civiltà veneziana, Studi, 25, Florence, 1971), pp. 425-456.
- Pravert, Joshua, "A Crusader Tomb of 1240 from Acre and the Last Archbishops of Nazareth," *in: Expl. J.* XXIV (= *Memorial M. Avi Yonah*, 1974), 241-251.
- Pravert, Joshua, "The Armenians in Jerusalem, under the Crusaders," in *Armenian and Biblical Studies*, ed. Michael E. Stone (Jerusalem, 1976).
- Pravert, Joshua, "Crusader Cities," in *The Medieval City*, ed. Harry A. Mahonen, David Herlihy, and Abraham L. Udovitch (New Haven, 1977), pp. 179-199.
- Pravert, Joshua, "The Autobiography of Odoysa the Norman, a Convert to Judaism at the Time of the First Crusade," in *Studies in Medieval Jewish History and Literature*, ed. Isadore Twersky (Harvard Jewish Monographs, 2; Cambridge, Mass., 1979), pp. 110-134.
- Pravert, Joshua, *Crusader Institutions* (Oxford, 1980).
- Pravert, Joshua, "Jerusalem in the Christian and Jewish Perspectives of the Early Middle Ages," in *Già Ebrei nell'alto medioevo, Spoleto, 30 marzo-3 aprile 1978* (Settimane di studio del Centro italiano di studi sull'alto medioevo, 26; Spoleto, 1980), pp. 759-793.
- Pravert, Joshua, "Military Orders and Crusader Politics in the Second Half of the Thirteenth Century," in *Die geschichtliche Romanistik Europas*, ed. Josef Fleckenstein and Manfred Hellmann (Vorträge und Forschungen, 26, Sigmaringen, 1980), pp. 227-228.
- Pravert, Joshua, "Social Classes in the Crusader States: the 'Muscovites'," *H of C. Y.* (1945), 59-114, and "Social Classes in the Latin Kingdom: the Franks," *ibid.*, 117-192.
- Prentiss, Helen G., *Royal Conditions in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem during the Twelfth and Thirteenth Centuries* (Thesis, University of Pennsylvania: Philadelphia, 1903).

- Pratt, Philip, *Monks & Merchants* (Florence, 1975).
- Preuß, Ulrich, "Die Kreuzritterliche Allmacht von Jerusalem," in *Festschrift für L. L. Havemann*, aus Anlass seines neunzigsten Geburtstages (Copenhagen, 1962), pp. 329-344.
- Pringle, R., "Vasilias krinomenon pachei gen. Mlgankate nom i Vasilija [The Second Crusade through the Balkans and Byzantium]," *Isotrichi* (preprint, XXXIV-5 (1978), 37-53.
- Pringle, R. Desys, "Some Approaches to the Study of Crusader Masonry Marks in Palestine," *Levant*, XIII (1981), 173-189.
- Pringle, [R.] Desys, and Peter Leach, "Two Medieval Villages North of Jerusalem: Archaeological Investigations in al-Jib and al-Ram," *Levant*, XV (1983), 146-172.
- Pringle, [R.] Desys, "King Richard I and the Walls of Acre," *Palestine Exploration Quarterly*, CXXVI (1984), 133-147.
- Pringle, [R.] Desys, "Magna Mahmurra (al-Mir): the Archaeology of a Frankish New Town in Palestine," in *Crusades and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 147-168.
- Pringle, [R.] Desys, *The Red Tower (al-Burj al-Ahmar): Settlement in the Plain of Sharon at the Time of the Crusaders and Mamluks A.D. 1099-1516* [British School of Archaeology in Jerusalem, Monograph Series, 8; London, 1986].
- Pringle, [R.] Desys, "A Thirteenth-Century Hall at Montfort Castle in Western Galilee," *The Antiquaries Journal*, LXVI (1986), 32-81.
- Pringle, [R.] Desys, "The Planning of Some Pilgrimage Churches in Crusader Palestine," *World Archaeology*, XVIII (1987), 341-342.
- Prechacka, Arnold, *Feld-Machstern Jagdsitz* (2 vols., Cracow, 1928).
- Prutz, Hans, *Die Besatzungen des Deutschen Ordens im Heiligen Land: ein Beitrag zur Kulturgeschichte der Franken in Syrien* (Leipzig, 1877), cf. D64.
- Prutz, Hans, *Kulturgeschichte der Kreuzfahrer* (Berlin, 1881), repr. Hildesheim, 1980.
- Prutz, Hans, *Entwicklung und Untergang des Tempelherrenordens* (Berlin, 1898).
- Prutz, Hans, "Die Anfänge des Hospitales auf Rhodus (1310-1355)," *Sitzungsberichte der Königlich Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philologisch-historische und historische Klasse*, Jahrgang 1908, I. Abhandlung (1908), pp. 1-55.
- Prutz, Hans, *Die griechischen Kreuzfahrer: ihre Stellung zur kirchlichen, politischen, gesellschaftlichen und wirtschaftlichen Entwicklung der Mittelmeerländer* (Berlin, 1909).
- Pryor, John H., "The Origin of the Commanche Contract," *Speculum*, LII (1977), 3-27.
- Pryor, John H., "The Naval Architecture of Crusader Transport Ships: a Reconstruction of some Archetypes for Round-hulled Sailing Ships," *The Mariner's Mirror*, LXX (1984), 171-219, 225-282, 343-386.
- Pryor, John H., "The Oaths of the Leaders of the First Crusade to Emperor Alexius I Comnenus: Faith, Homage—more, loyalty," *Pacificon: Bulletin of the Australian and New Zealand Association for Medieval and Renaissance Studies*, N.S., II (1984), 131-141.
- Purcell, Maurice, *Papal Crusading Policy: the Chief Instruments of Papal Crusading Policy and Crusade in the Holy Land from the Final Loss of Jerusalem to the Fall of Acre 1244-1291* (Studies in the History of Christian Thought, II, Leyden, 1975).
- Quenstedt, Franciscus, *Historiae, theologiae et morum Terrae Sanctae succincta* (2 vols., Antwerp, 1639).
- Quenstedt, Franciscus M., "Notice historique sur les Israélites," *Fundgruben des Orients*, IV (1964), 139-174; appendix by Josef von Hammer Preissl, IX, 376-379.

- Queller, Donald E., and Susan J. Stricker, "A Century of Controversy on the Fourth Crusade," *Studies in Medieval and Renaissance History*, VI (1968), 233-272.
- Queller, Donald E., and Joseph Gail, "Frederick, Venerable and Pope Innocent III," *Studi veneziani*, XII (1970), 85-105.
- Queller, Donald E., ed., *The Later Conquest of Constantinople* (Major Issues in History; New York and London, 1971).
- Queller, Donald E., Thomas K. Costigan, and Donald A. Campbell, "The Fourth Crusade: the Neglected Majority," *Speculum*, XLIX (1974), 441-465.
- Queller, Donald E., and Gerald W. Day, "Some Arguments in the Defense of the Venetians on the Fourth Crusade," *Annuaire HA*, LXXXI (1976), 717-732.
- Queller, Donald E., *The Fourth Crusade: the Conquest of Constantinople, 1201-1204* (Philadelphia, 1977; Leicester, 1978).
- Queller, Donald E., *Medieval Diplomacy and the Fourth Crusade* (Variorum, Repts., C5, 114; London, 1980).
- Rabin, Haiman, *The Financial System of Egypt A.H. 364-741/A.D. 1166-1341* (London Oriental Series, 25; London and New York, 1972).
- Rachewski, Igor de, *Papal Envoys to the Great Khans* (Stanford, 1975).
- Racine, Pierre, "Il Trullio dei Franceschi verso la Terra Santa (1248)," *Studi e ricerche fiorentine*, LX (1963), 113-122.
- Racine, Pierre, "Néa sur le trafic vinico-chypriote à la fin du moyen-âge," *Byz. F.*, V (1977), 307-328.
- Racine, Pierre, "L'Émigration italienne vers la Méditerranée orientale (Le modèle de XIII^e siècle)," *Byz. F.*, VII (1979), 137-155.
- Radenić, Jovan, *Zapadna Evropa i Balkanski na veći prema Turcima u prvoj polovini XV veka* (Western Europe and the Balkan Nations in their Relations with the Turks in the First Half of the Fifteenth Century) (Novi Sad, 1961).
- Radtke, Peter, "The Children's Crusade of 1212," *J. Med. H.*, III (1977), 279-321.
- Ragozin, Rosalyn, ed., *Le Cueil del Meer Mediterraneo*, vol. I (Biblioteca di storia economica, 5; Naples, 1961).
- Raithart, Gunter, ed., *Histoire du commerce de Marseille* (3 vols., Marseilles, 1949-1951).
- Rasow, Peter, "Die Kanzlei St. Bernhard von Clairvaux," *Studien und Mitteilungen aus dem Schriftführer- und Klosterarchiven*, XXXIV (= n.s., III, 1913), 61-109, 243-279.
- Rasow, Peter, *Heute imperit die neue Politik Friedrich Barbarissas 1152-1159* (Münich und Berlin, 1946).
- Rasow, Peter, "Zum byzantinisch-normannischen Krieg 1147-1148," *MDOG*, LXII (1956), 213-218.
- Reisner, Joseph T., "Histoire de la dernière croisade et de la prise de Damiette d'après les documents arabes," *JdA*, VIII (1926), 11-40, 98-110, 149-169.
- Revilla Vieyra, Ramón, *Ordenes militares de Santiago, Alcázar, Calatrava y Montesa* (Madrid, 1927).
- Rey, Emmanuel G., *Étude sur les monuments de l'architecture militaire des croisés en Syrie et dans l'île de Chypre* (CD inédit, 1^{er} ser., Histoire politique; Paris, 1871).
- Rey, Emmanuel G., *Les Croisés jusqu'à la Syrie au XIII^e et XIII^e siècles* (Paris, 1883).
- Rey, Emmanuel G., "Les Séigneurs de Giblet," *BO Leve*, III (1895), 388-422.
- Rey, Emmanuel G., "Les Séigneurs de Bara," *BO Leve*, IV (1896), 12-18.
- Rey, Emmanuel G., "Les Séigneurs de Montsal et de la Terre d'Oront le Jourdain," *BO Leve*, IV (1896), 19-24.

- Rey, Emmanuel G., "Résumé chronologique de l'histoire des prisons d'Antioche," *BO Latins*, IV (1890), 121-402.
- Rey, Emmanuel G., "Les Dignitaires de la principauté d'Antioche, grand-officiers et patriarches (XIIe-XIIIe siècle)," *BO Latins*, VIII (1900-1901), 104-157.
- Riant, Paul E.D., *Expéditions et pèlerinages des Scandinaves en Terre Sainte au temps des croisades* (Thèse présentée à la Faculté des Lettres de Paris, Paris, 1885); tables (Paris, 1886).
- Riant, Paul E.D., "Innocent III, Philippe de Souabe et Boniface de Montfermeil: aspects des causes qui modifièrent, au débuts du Empire grec, le plan primitif de la quatrième croisade," *Rev. QM*, XVII (1875), 321-374, XVIII (1875) 5-73.
- Riant, Paul E.D., "Un Dernier triomphe d'Urseau II," *Rev. QM*, XXXIV (1885) 247-255.
- Riant, Paul E.D., "La Légende du martyre en Orient de Thibaud, archevêque de Sensbourg (28 Septembre 1025)," *Rev. QM*, XXXIX (1886), 218-237.
- Riant, Paul E.D., *Études sur l'histoire de l'Église de Byzance*, vol. 1 (Genève, 1887). The materials prepared for vol. 2 were published after Riant's death by Charles Kohler as "Éclaircissements sur quelques points de l'histoire de l'Église de Byzance-Accueil," *BO Latins*, I (1895), 141-180, 381-412, 475-525, II (1896), 55-72; published separately as vol. 2 of the *Études*, ed. Charles Kohler (Paris, 1896).
- Richard, Jean, "La Papauté et les missions catholiques en Orient au moyen âge," *MÉF Rome*, LVIII (1944-1945), 248-260.
- Richard, Jean, *Le Canal de Tripoli sous la dynastie rouméliote (1162-1187)* (Bibl. AH, 39; Paris, 1943; repr. New York, 1965).
- Richard, Jean, "Note sur l'archidiocèse d'Aqaba et les cathédrales de Raymond de Saint-Gilles en Syrie du Nord," *Syria*, XXV (1946-1948), 105-108.
- Richard, Jean, "Le Canal de Paléologue et la vie rurale en Chypre au XIV^e siècle," *MÉF Rome*, LIX (1947), 128-137.
- Richard, Jean, "Évêques latins et missionnaires dans le 'Provinciae Romanus Ecclesiae'," *MÉF Rome*, LXI (1949), 225-234.
- Richard, Jean, "Le Début des relations entre la papauté et les Mongols de Paris," *Jd*, CCXXXVII (1949), 291-297.
- Richard, Jean, "Palais d'Orient latins: les quatre baronnies des royaumes de Jérusalem et de Chypre," *RH Descr* FE, 4-XXVII (1950), 67-88.
- Richard, Jean, "Un É-vêque d'Orient latin au XIV^e siècle: Guy d'Heilly, O.P., évêque de Linares, et Fincaulier de son siège (1347)," *BC Hist*, LXXIV (1950), 98-133.
- Richard, Jean, "La Révolution de 1369 dans le royaume de Chypre," *AC Char*, CX (1952), 109-125.
- Richard, Jean, "Colonies marchandes pré-légales et marché seigneurial. le fin de d'Acce et ses 'droitures'," *Le Moyen-âge*, LIX (= 4-VIII, 1953), 125-140.
- Richard, Jean, *Le Royaume latin de Jérusalem* (Paris, 1955); rev. U. by Janet Shirley, *The Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem* (Europe in the Middle Ages, Selected Studies, 1); 2 vols., Amsterdam, 1979).
- Richard, Jean, "Les Listes de seigneuries dans le Livre de Jean d'Heilly. recherches sur l'Assemblée et l'histoire," *RH Descr* FE, 4-XXXII (1954), 315-377.
- Richard, Jean, "Quelques notes sur les premiers temps de l'Église latine de Jérusalem," in *Recueil de travaux offerts à M. Clément Brunel* (Mémoires et documents publiés par la Société de l'École des chartes, 12; 2 vols., Paris, 1957), II, 420-430.
- Richard, Jean, "L'Église-Orient latine au moyen-âge: Roi David et Prince Jean," *Annales d'Estogny*, II (1957), 225-242.

- Richard, Jean, "La Mission en Europe de Rabban Qanna et l'union des Églises," in *Oriente et Occident au milieu des Croisades et premiers croisades, études et filologies 37 maggio - 1° giugno 1834* (Accademia nazionale dei Lincei, Fondazione Alessandro Volta, Atti dei congressi 42; Rome, 1937), pp. 162-167.
- Richard, Jean, "Les Premiers missionnaires latins en Éthiopie (XIIe-XIVe siècles)," in *Atti del congresso internazionale di studi etiope: Roma 2-4 aprile 1935* (Accademia nazionale dei Lincei, Anno 357: Problemi attuali di scienza e di cultura, Quaderno 48, Rome, 1939), pp. 123-128.
- Richard, Jean, "L'union et schisme de l'Église catholique de Chose au XIVe siècle," *Bulletin de la Société des missions étrangères de Paris*, 2nd ser., no. 134 (1960), 285-293.
- Richard, Jean, "La Papauté et la direction de la première croisade," *Journal des Savants* (1960), pp. 49-58.
- Richard, Jean, "Une Lettre concernant l'empereur mongol?," *BE Chac*, CXIX (1961), 243-248.
- Richard, Jean, "La Fausseté de Jean de Franciscus et ses sources," *La Moyen-Âge*, LXIX (1963), 893-902.
- Richard, Jean, "Le Royaume de Chypre et le Grand Schisme, à propos d'un document récemment découvert," *CRAIEM* (1965), pp. 496-505.
- Richard, Jean, "Sur un passage du 'Pèlerinage de Charlamagne': le marché de Jérusalem," *Revue belge de philologie et d'histoire*, XLIII-2 (1965), 352-355.
- Richard, Jean, "La Confédération des 'Ménachins' d'Acre et les marchands de Mersou au XIIIe siècle," *L'Orient syrien*, XI (1966), 451-460.
- Richard, Jean, "Le Vague de l'Orient dans la littérature occidentale du moyen âge," in *Mélanges offerts à René Crozet à l'occasion de son soixante-dixième anniversaire*, ed. Pierre Gaillet and Yves Jean Rieu, vol. 1 (Poitiers, 1966), pp. 357-361.
- Richard, Jean, "L'Occidentale de décembre 1296 sur le prix du pain à Chypre," *Études sur l'histoire d'Europe médiévale*, 1 (1967-1968), 43-51.
- Richard, Jean, "L'Abbaye cistercienne de Jubin et le pèlerin Saint-Blaise de Nicose," *Études sur l'histoire d'Europe médiévale*, III (1969-1970), 62-74.
- Richard, Jean, "The Mongols and the Franks," *Journal of Asian History*, III (1969), 45-57.
- Richard, Jean, "Ibn al-Farrāh: un ambassadeur franc gouverneur d'une province mongole?," *Central Asiatic Journal*, XIV (1970), 186-194.
- Richard, Jean, "Les Mandéens latins dans l'Inde au XIVe siècle," *Studi orientali*, XII (1970), 231-242.
- Richard, Jean, "Saint Louis dans l'histoire des croisades," *Bulletin de la Société d'histoire de l'archéologie* (1970), pp. 229-244.
- Richard, Jean, "Chypre du protectorat à la domination vénitienne," in *Storia e il Levante fino al secolo XV*, ed. Agostino Perino: vol. 1, pts 2 (Civiltà veneziana, Studi, 27, Florence, 1973), pp. 457-472.
- Richard, Jean, "Ultimatum mongole et lettres apocryphes l'Occident et les motifs de guerre des Turcs," *Central Asiatic Journal*, XVII (1973), 212-222.
- Richard, Jean, "La Conquête de la croisade: à propos d'un épisode de la première croisade," *Études de civilisation médiévale: Mélanges offerts à Edmond R. Labande* (Poitiers, 1974), pp. 617-622.
- Richard, Jean, "L'Engagement des langues orientales en Occident au moyen âge," *Revue des études islamiques*, XLIV (1976), 149-164.
- Richard, Jean, "La Politique orientale de Saint Louis: la croisade de 1248," in *Sép-*

- siècle croisé: de la mort de Saint-Louis: Actes des colloques de Beyrouth et de Paris* (Paris, 1976), pp. 197-202.
- Richard, Jean, *Le Droit et les institutions françaises dans le royaume de Chypre* (XV^e Congrès international d'études byzantines: rapports et co-rapports. 5. Chypre dans le monde byzantin: vol. 3, Droit et institutions françaises du royaume de Chypre, Athens, 1974).
- Richard, Jean, *Orient et Occident au moyen âge: contacts et relations (XIII^e-XIV^e s.)* (Varior. Repr., CS, 46; London, 1974).
- Richard, Jean, *La Papauté et les séismes d'Orient au moyen âge (XIII^e-XIV^e siècles)* (Collection de l'École française de Rome, 33, Rome, 1977).
- Richard, Jean, "Les Mougols et l'Occident: deux siècles de contact," in *1274 croisée charnière: mutations et continuité* (Paris, 1977), pp. 377-423.
- Richard, Jean, *Les Relations entre l'Orient et l'Occident au moyen âge* (Varior. Repr., CS, 49; London, 1977).
- Richard, Jean, "Une Économie coloniale? Chypre et ses ressources agricoles au moyen-âge," *Byz. E. V* (1977), 321-352.
- Richard, Jean, "Église latine et églises orientales dans les États des croisés: la destinée d'un prioiré de Joppa," in *Mélanges offerts à Jean Duvicq*, ed. Germain Sironi (Toulon, 1979), pp. 743-752.
- Richard, Jean, "Le Peuplement latin et syrien en Chypre au XIII^e siècle," *Byz. E. VI* (1978), 157-172.
- Richard, Jean, "Une Ambassade mougole à Paris en 1362," *Journal des Savants* (1979), pp. 295-303.
- Richard, Jean, "La Féodalité de l'Orient latin et le mouvement communal: un état des questions," in *Structures féodales et féodalisme dans l'Occident méditerranéen (X^e-XIII^e siècles)* (Commissio de l'École française de Rome, 44, Rome, 1980), pp. 451-465.
- Richard, Jean, "Léon de Bologne, patriarche d'Antioche, et la politique bourgeoise contre les États de la Méditerranée orientale," *Publications du Centre européen d'études byzantines-méditerranéennes*, XX (1980), 67-69.
- Richard, Jean, "Une Famille de 'Vénitien Blanc' dans le royaume de Chypre au milieu du XIV^e siècle: les Aspreth et la seigneurie du Marthouret," *Revue di studi bizantini e slavi* (= *Museion Augustanum Patavium*, I, 1981), 89-129.
- Richard, Jean, "Hospitals and Hospital Congregations in the Latin Kingdom during the First Period of the Frankish Conquest," in *Crusades* (1982), pp. 89-100.
- Richard, Jean, *Croisés, missionnaires et voyageurs persécutés: itinéraires du monde latin médiéval* (Varior. Repr., CS, 193, London, 1983).
- Richard, Jean, "Les Saint-Gilles et le comté de Tripoli," *Islam et Chrétiens du Midi (XIII^e-XIV^e siècles)* (Cahiers de Fanjeaux, 18, Toulouse, 1983), pp. 63-75.
- Richard, Jean, *Saint Louis, roi de France féodal, soutien de la Terre Sainte* (Paris, 1983).
- Richard, Jean, "Le Royaume de Chypre et l'embargo sur le commerce avec l'Égypte (du XIII^e au début XIV^e siècle)," *CRAS* (1984), pp. 120-134.
- Richard, Jean, "Les Comtes de Tripoli et leurs vassaux sous la dynastie antiochienne," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 213-224.
- Richard, Jean, "The Political and Ecclesiastical Organization of the Crusader States," *B. of C. V* (1985), 193-230, and "Agricultural Conditions in the Crusader States," *Ibid.*, 231-294.
- Richard, Jean, "La Diplomatie royale dans les royaumes d'Arménie et de Chypre (XIII^e-XIV^e siècles)," *RÉ Chac*, CXLIV (1986), 69-86.

- Richard, Jean, "The Institutions of the Kingdom of Cyprus," *H of C.* VI (1989), 150-174.
- Richmond, Ernest T., *The Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem: a Description of its Structure and Decoration* (Oxford, 1934).
- Richmond, Ernest T., "Church of the Holy Sepulcher: Note on a Recent Discovery," *QJMS* *Vol.* I (1931-1932), 2.
- Riesner, Sigvard O., "Der Römische Kaiser Friedrich I.," *Formik* *IXG*, X (1870), 1-150.
- Rising, Anna, "The Fate of Henry Firmus's Thesis on the Consequences of the Islamic Expansion," *Classica et Mediaevalia*, XIII (1952), 87-130.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, *The Knights of St. John in Jerusalem and Cyprus c. 1050-1291* (A History of the Order of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, I, London and New York, 1967).
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "A Note on Confraternities in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, XLIV (1971), 301-308.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "The Answer was in Light and the Conquest of Acre," *Traditio*, XXVII (1971), 179-304.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "Some Latin Officials in Latin Syria," *Eng. NR*, LXXXVII (1972), 1-26.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "Government in Latin Syria and the Commercial Privileges of Foreign Merchants," in *Relations between East and West in the Middle Ages*, ed. Derek Baker (Edinburgh, 1973), pp. 109-132.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, *The Feudal Nobility and the Kingdom of Jerusalem, 1174-1277* (London, 1973).
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "The Survival in Latin Palestine of Muslim Administration," in *The Eastern Mediterranean Lands in the Period of the Crusades*, ed. Peter M. Holt (Warminster, 1977), pp. 9-32.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, *What Were the Crusades?* (London, 1977).
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "Latin Titular Bishops in Palestine and Syria, 1127-1291," *Carth. NR*, LXIV (1978), 1-25.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "Power Never Established: the Case of the Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 5-XXVIII (1978), 87-102.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "The Title of Godfrey of Beaulieu," *Bulletin of the Institute of Historical Research*, LII (1979), 23-24.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "Crusading as an Act of Love," *History*, LXV (1980), 171-182.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "The First Crusade and St. Peter," in *Outremer* (1982), pp. 41-63.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "The Motives of the Earliest Crusaders and the Settlement of Latin Palestine," *Eng. NR*, XCIV (1983), 721-734.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "The First Crusade and the Persecution of the Jews," in *Persecution and Toleration*, ed. W. J. Sheils (Studies in Church History, 21, Oxford, 1984), pp. 51-72.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, "Further Thoughts on Baldwin IV's Disillusionment on the Consecration of Peta," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 174-189.
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, *The First Crusade and the Idea of Crusading* (Philadelphia and London, 1986).
- Riley-Smith, Jonathan, *The Crusades: a Short History* (London, 1987).
- Ritchie, N., "Robertus, Prince of Antioch: the Career of a Norman Crusader in

- Italy, in Syria and in the West with the Byzantine Empire," *History Today*, XXVIII (1978), 293-303.
- Robbert, Lassar Bungen, "The Venetian Money Market, 1150-1229," *Studi veneziani*, XIII (1971), 1-94.
- Robbert, Lassar Bungen, "Venice and the Crusades," *H of C*, V (1983), 339-451.
- Robberg, Burkhard, "Der Kaiser auf dem 2. Konzil von Lyon 1274," *Annuarium Historiae ecclesiasticae*, V (1973), 341-362.
- Robberg, Burkhard, "Das Orientalische Problem' auf dem Lugbanense II," *Annuarium Historiae ecclesiasticae*, IX (1977), 43-66.
- Robberg, Burkhard, "Schizismen, Tyrer Saecular Kreuzung, Konzil und Stroyer," *Annuarium Historiae ecclesiasticae*, XV (1983), 94-138.
- Robert, Melchior, "Recherches intorno alla colonia veneziana in Costantinopoli nel secolo XII," in *Scritti storici in onore di Camillo Margoni* (Padua, 1923), pp. 135-147.
- Robinson, I. S., "Gregory VII and the Soldiers of Christ," *History*, LVIII (1971), 169-192.
- Roderberg, Carl, *Antony IV and the Kingdom of Sicily 1240-1254* (Halle, 1932).
- Röhrich, Reinhold, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (2 vols., Berlin, 1874-1878).
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Fürstentümer nach dem Heiligen Lande vor den Kreuzzügen," *Neuere Historische Taschenbuch*, 3-V (1875), 321-396.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Der Kondemnerung von 1212," *Hist. Z.*, XXXVI (1876), 1-8.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Belagerung von Akko," *Forch. DG*, XVI (1876), 481-534.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Belagerung von Damiette (1218-1220) als Beitrag zur Kriegsgeschichte des Mittelalters," *Neuere Historische Taschenbuch*, 3-VI (1876), 79-96.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Kreuzungsbewegung im Jahre 1271," *Forch. DG*, XVI (1876), 137-138.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Eroberung Akko durch die Muslimen," *Forch. DG*, XX (1879), 93-126.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Études sur les derniers temps du royaume de Jérusalem: A. La croisade du prince Édouard d'Angleterre (1270-74); B. Les batailles de Hittin (1187) et (1291); C. Les combats de Saladin Robert contre les Chrétiens en Syrie (1261-77)," *AO Latine*, I (1881), 467-632; II-1 (1884), 363-438.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Kreuzpredigten gegen den Islam, die Beitrag zur Geschichte der christlichen Predigt im 12. und 13. Jahrhundert," *Z. Kirch.*, VI (1884), 530-572.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Die Kreuzzüge des Grafen Theobald von Navarra und Richard von Cornouailles nach dem Heiligen Lande," *Forch. DG*, XXVI (1886), 47-802.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, "Syria sacra," *ZDPV*, X (1887), 1-48, "Nachträge," XI (1888), 119-142.
- Röhrich, Reinhold, *Kleine Studien zur Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Wissenschaftliche Beilage zum Programm des Humboldt-Gymnasiums an Berlin, Berlin, 1890).
- Röhrich, Reinhold, *Studien zur Geschichte des fünften Kreuzzuges* (Leipzig, 1893).
- Röhrich, Reinhold, *Die Deutschen im Heiligen Lande aus chronologischer Hinsicht nach derjenigen Deutschen, welche als Jerusalemfahrer und Kreuzfahrer nach nachgewiesen oder wahrscheinlich angenommen sind von 610-1291* (Leipzig, 1894).
- Röhrich, Reinhold, *Geschichte des Königreichs Jerusalem (1099 bis 1291)* (Hirschberg 1898, repr. Amsterdam, 1967).
- Röhrich, Reinhold, *Geschichte der ersten Kreuzzüge* (Leipzig, 1900).

- Romanin, Samuele, *Storia documentata di Venezia*, new ed. (10 vols., Venice, 1912-1921, repr. 1923, 1972-1975).
- Ronsaglia, Martiniano, "San Francesco d'Assisi in Oriente," *Studi francescani*, 1, (= 1-XXV; 1957), 97-106.
- Ronsaglia, Martiniano, *Storia della presenza di Terra Santa: I. I Francescani in Oriente durante le crociate (secolo XIII)* (BTSOF, 4th ser., Studi, 1; Cairo, 1954), 12.
- Ronsaglia, Martiniano, *San Francesco d'Assisi and the Middle East* (Cairo, 1957).
- Ronsaglia, Martiniano, *Les Frères Mineurs et l'Orient grecque-orthodoxe au XIII^e siècle (1221-1274)* (BTSOF, 4th ser., Studi, 2; Cairo, 1954).
- Rondelich, V., "Un Eremit in Asia centrale au XIV^e siècle," *Neue Zeitschrift für Missionwissenschaft*, VI (1951), 1-17.
- Rösch, Gerhard, "Der Kruziger Bohemund gegen Byzantien 1107-1108 in der lateinischen Tradition des 12. Jahrhunderts," *Deutsche historische Mitteilungen*, XXVI (1944), 181-186.
- Rösch, Helmut, *Pagan Jerusalem III. und die Kreuzer* (Forschungen zur Kirchen- und Dogmengeschichte, 31, Göttingen, 1968).
- Rosen-Ayalon, Myraan, "Une Monnaie médiévale de Salas-Sigalaru: contribution à l'histoire de l'art," *Revue archéologique*, LXXXIII (1970), 237-251.
- Roselli, Rade, "Notes on the Battle of Nicopolis (1396)," *Serbian and East European Review*, XV (1936-1937), 629-638.
- Rossi, Enzo, *Storia della marina dell'ordine di San Giovanni di Gerusalemme, di Rodi e di Malta* (Rome and Milan, 1936).
- Rossi, Enzo, "The Hospitallers at Rhodes, 1421-1523," *N of C*, III (1975), 324-339.
- Rossi-Sabotini, Giuseppe, *L'Espansione di Pisa nel Mediterraneo fino alla Meloria* (Studi di lettere, storia e filosofia pubblicati dalla Scuola normale superiore di Pisa, 6, Florence, 1935).
- Rostovtzev, Bernard E.A., *Description des monuments de Rhodes* (2 vols., text and atlas, Brussels, 1928-1930).
- Roudard, Germaine, "L'Épiscopat au temps d'Alexis I^{er} Comnène," *Byzantion*, X (1935), 81-89.
- Rouillard, Germaine, *La Vie rurale dans l'empire byzantin* (Paris, 1953).
- Rusud, John H., "The Saladin Tithe," *Eng. HR*, XXXI (1940), 447-452.
- Russett, Paul, *Les Origines et les caractères de la première croisade* (Dart., Geneva, Neuchâtel, 1943; repr. New York, 1970).
- Russett, Paul, "L'idée de croisade chez les chroniqueurs d'Occident," *Relazioni del X Congresso internazionale di scienze storiche, Roma 1953*, 3, *Storia del medioevo* (Florence, 1955), pp. 247-263.
- Russett, Paul, *Histoire des croisades* (Paris, 1957); Portuguese tr. by Roberto Cortes de Lacerda, *A História das cruzadas* (Rio de Janeiro, 1962).
- Russett, Paul, "Événement de Blois, croisé (épargné ou martyrs)," *Geneva, n.s.*, XI (1965), 183-195.
- Russett, Paul, "L'idéologie de croisade dans les guerres de religion au XVI^e siècle," *Schweizerische Zeitschrift für Geschichte*, XXXI (1961), 174-184.
- Russett, Paul, *Histoire d'une idéologie: la croisade* (Lyonnais, 1963).
- Ruse, John G., "Pope II and the Relations between the Spiritual and Temporal Powers in the Kingdom of Jerusalem," *Speculum*, XXXI (1957), 479-501.
- Ruse, John G., "The Paganism and the Greeks (1122-1153)," *Church History*, XXVIII (1959), 115-130, 310-327.

- Rowe, John G., "The Papyri and the Ecclesiastical Province of Tyre (1100-1117)," *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, XLIII (1960), 160-169.
- Rowe, John G., "Pachet II, Bohemund of Antioch and the Byzantine Empire," *Bulletin of the John Rylands Library*, XLIX (1966), 163-169.
- Roy, Émile, "Les Poèmes français rattachés à la première croisade," *Romania*, LV (1929), 411-462.
- Rubió y Lluch, Antoni, "La Lengua y la cultura catalanes en Occent en el siglo XIV," *Homenaje à Menéndez y Pelayo*, II, ed. Juan Valera (Madrid, 1892), pp. 95-120.
- Rubió y Lluch, Antoni, "Ello Català medieval de la Corona occitana," *Anuari de l'Institut d'Estudis catalans*, II (1908), 364-425.
- Rubió y Lluch, Antoni, On his very numerous writings concerning the Catalan ex-patriots in the eastern Mediterranean see the bibliographical survey by Kenneth M. Setton, *Catalan Descenters of Athens*, 2nd ed. (1973), pp. 284-291.
- Rüdtenbach, Dieter, *Der Anteil Modernismus an den Kreuzzügen und Heidenfahrten* (Qualität und Darstellungen im Geschichte Mittelalters, 80; Hildesheim, 1972).
- Rubié de Castejón, replaced by Wipacat Collenberg, Weyrauch H., *The Raynolds, Hohenstaufen and Lusignan, the Structure of the Aragon-Catalan dynasty* (Catalan Cultural Foundation American Library; Paris, 1963).
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H., "Les 'Raynolds', seigneurs de Nephin et de Marzich au Terro Saisse, et leur parenté au Languedoc," *Cah. Civ. Mév.*, VII (1964), 289-311.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H., "Les Premiers Balleus," *Le Moyen-Âge*, LXXI (= 4-XX; 1963), 453-474.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H., "Les Ordonnances papales, autres que les dispensas matrimoniales, accordées à Chypre de 1305-1378," *Exercices de l'École Supérieure de l'Université de Louvain*, VIII (1975-1977), 107-252.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch (here, Wipacat) H., "Les Dispensas matrimoniales accordées à l'Orient latin selon les registres du Vatican d'Honorius III à Clément VII (1213-1313)," *MEF Rome, moyen âge—temps modernes*, LXXCIX (1977), 81-92.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H., "Les Balleus aux XIII^e et XIV^e siècles: problématique essentielle principalement selon les registres du Vatican," *Exercices de l'École Supérieure de l'Université de Louvain*, IX (1977-1979), 117-248; X (1981-1982), 501-506.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch (here, Wipacat) H., "État et régime du haut clergé de Chypre avant le Grand Schisme d'après les registres des papes du XIII^e et du XIV^e siècle," *MEF Rome, moyen âge—temps modernes*, XCJ (1979), 197-332.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H., "Les Lusignan de Chypre: problématique essentielle principalement selon les registres de l'Archivio Segreto Vaticano et les manuscrits de la Biblioteca Vaticane," *Exercices de l'École Supérieure de l'Université de Louvain*, X (1979-1980), 85-319; XI (1981-1982), 507-512.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H. (here, Wipacat), "Le Royaume et l'Église de Chypre face au Grand Schisme (1378-1417)," *MEF Rome, moyen âge—temps modernes*, XCIV (1982), 621-702.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch (here, Wipacat) H., "Les Cardinaux de Chypre Hugues et Laurent de Lusignan," *Archivum Historicum pontificum*, XX (1982), 83-128.
- Rubié de Collenberg, Weyrauch H., *Familles de l'Orient latine, XIII^e-XIV^e siècles* (Variorum Papae, CS, 176; London, 1983).
- Runciman, Steven, "The First Crusaders' Journey across the Balkan Peninsula," *Byzantion*, XLX (1949), 207-218.

- Runciman, Steven, *A History of the Crusades* (3 vols., Cambridge, Eng., 1951-1954).
- Runciman, Steven, "The Crusader of 1101," *Jahrbuch der österreichischen byzantinischen Gesellschaft*, I (1951), 3-12.
- Runciman, Steven, "The Decline of the Crusading Idea," *Atenei del X Congresso internazionale di scienze storiche, Roma 1953: 3 Storia del medio evo* (Florence, 1955), pp. 565-594.
- Runciman, Steven, *The Eastern Schism: a Study of the Papacy and the Eastern Churches during the XIIIth and XIIIth Centuries* (Oxford, 1953; repr. New York, 1961).
- Runciman, Steven, "The Pilgrimages to Palestine before 1095," *H of C*, I (1953, 2nd ed. 1966), 66-78.
- Runciman, Steven, "The First Crusade: Constantinople to Antioch," *H of C*, I (1953, 2nd ed. 1966), 280-304, and " : Antioch to Ascalon," *ibid.*, 306-341.
- Runciman, Steven, *The Sack of Nicaea: a History of the Mediterranean World in the Later 11th Century* (Cambridge, Eng., 1958; repr. Cambridge, 1962).
- Runciman, Steven, *The Famine of Outremer: the Feudal Nobility of the Crusader Kingdom of Jerusalem, 1099-1291* (The Croydon Lecture in History, 1959; London, 1960).
- Runciman, Steven, "The Crusader States, 1240-1291," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1967), 537-598.
- Runciman, Steven, *The Fall of Constantinople, 1453* (Cambridge, Eng., 1965).
- Runciman, Steven, *The First Crusade* (Cambridge, Eng., 1980).
- Runciman, Steven, "The Van of King Amaury I to Constantinople in 1171," in *Outremer* (1953), pp. 153-158.
- Russett, Frederick H., *The Just War in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge Studies in Medieval Life and Thought, 3rd ser., 8; Cambridge, Eng., and New York, 1915).
- Russett, Joseph C., *Late Ancient and Medieval Population* (Transactions of the American Philosophical Society, n.s., 48, no. 3, Philadelphia, 1956).
- Russett, Joseph C., *Medieval Regions and their Cities* (Newton Abbot, 1972).
- Russett, Joseph C., "The Population of the Crusader States," *H of C*, V (1951), 215-114.
- Russo, Francesco, "I Calabresi e la prima crociata," *Almanacco Calabrese* (1919), pp. 15-34.
- Ryan, J. Joseph, "The Legatine Excommunication of Patriarch Michael Cerularius (1054) and a New Document from the First Crusade Epoch," *Studia Gratiana*, XIV (1967; = *Collectanea Stephanus Kurtzer*, 45, 12-48).
- Ryan, James D., "Nicholas IV and the Evolution of the Eastern Missionary Effort," *Archivum Historicum pontificum*, XIX (1911), 79-85.
- Sauzet, Gabriel, "Histoire du Châteln de Saladin," *Studia medievalia*, 3-IX (1948), 100-1008.
- Sacy, Silvestre de, "Mémoires sur la dynastie des Ayyoubites et sur l'Égyptologie de leur pays," *Histoire et mémoires de l'Institut royal de France, Classe d'Histoire et de Littérature orientales*, IV (1888), *Mémoires*, 1-24.
- Sacy, Silvestre de, "Mémoires sur le traité fait entre le roi de Tunis et Philippe-le-Hardi, en 1270 pour l'évacuation des territoires de Tunis par l'armée des croisés," *Histoire et mémoires de l'Institut royal de France, Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres*, IX (1811), 448-477.
- Sacy, Silvestre de, "Mémoires sur une correspondance de l'empereur de Maroc Youssef, fils d'Abd-elhakki, avec Philippe-le-Hardi, conservée dans les archives du royaume," *Histoire et mémoires de l'Institut royal de France, Académie des inscriptions et belles-lettres*, IX (1811), 478-506.

- Salamé-Sarles, Haim, *Contributions à l'histoire de Tripoli et de sa région à l'époque des croisades: problèmes d'histoire, d'archéologie et de céramique* (Bibliothèque archéologique et historique, 106; Paris, 1980).
- Salibi, Kamal S., "The Mawwani of Lebanon under French and Maronite Rule (1099-1344)," *Arabica*, IV (1957), 288-303.
- Salibi, Kamal S., "The Maronite Church in the Middle Ages and its Union with Rome," *Oriens christianus*, XLIII (1955), 92-104.
- Salibi, Kamal S., "The Background of the Early Medieval Lords of Beirut and of Southern Lebanon," *Arabica*, VIII (1961), 74-97.
- Saller, Sylvester L., *Crusaders at Bechary, 1069-1073* (Studium 26, 12, Jerusalem, 1957).
- Sarnuclah, Bernard F. (= Sam-Aliib, Maclon F.), *The Decline of the Seljuqid Empire* (Calcutta, 1936).
- Sánchez Guillén, Vicente, *Expedición de Constanza y Aragonés al Oriente en el siglo XIV* (Madrid, 1880).
- Santifaller, Leo, *Beiträge zur Geschichte des Lateinischen Patriarchats von Konstantinopel (1204-1261) und der verwandten Urkunde* (Historisch-diplomatische Forschungen, 3; Weimar, 1933).
- Saunders, John L., *Aspects of the Crusades* (University of Cambridge Publications, 3, Christchurch, N.Z., 1943).
- Saunders, John L., *A History of Medieval Islam* (New York and London, 1955).
- Saunders, John L., *Moslems and Monopoli: Essays on Medieval Asia*, ed. G. W. Rice (University of Cambridge Publications, 24; Christchurch, N.Z., 1977).
- Sarragat, Jean, "La Chastelle de Demas," *Syria*, XI (1930), 38-40, 216-241.
- Savage, Henry L., "Pilgrimages and Pilgrim Sherias in Palestine and Syria after 1099," *H of C*, IV (1977), 38-48.
- Seyoux, André E., "Les Méthodes commerciales de Barcelone au XIII^e siècle, d'après des documents inédits des archives de sa cathédrale," *Etudes universitaires catalanes*, XVI (1973), 195-198.
- Seyoux, André E., "Les Méthodes commerciales de Barcelone au XIV^e siècle, surtout d'après des protocoles inédits de ses archives seigneuriales," *Etudes universitaires catalanes*, XVI (1973), 209-235.
- Seyoux, André E., "Le Capitalisme commercial et financier dans les pays chrétiens de la Méditerranée occidentale depuis la première croisade jusqu'à la fin du moyen âge," *FSHG*, XXIX (1974), 270-295.
- Seyoux, André E., "Les Méthodes commerciales de Barcelone au XV^e siècle d'après des documents inédits de ses Archives: la bourse, le prêt et l'assurance maritimes, les sociétés commerciales, le billet de change, une banque d'État," *RH Driv FII*, 4-XV (1974), 255-301.
- Schadetz, Hans, "Dante oder Salomo? Das Ende des aragonesischen Mittelmeerpolitik unter Peter III. von Aragon," *Gesammelte Aufsätze zur Kulturgeschichte Spaniens*, XXVIII (1975), 335-348.
- Schaller, Hans M., "Die Kanzlei Friedrichs II., ihr Personal und ihr Sprachstil," *Archiv für Diplomatik*, III (1957), 207-286.
- Schaller, Hans M., "Das Relief an der Kanzlei der Kathedrale von Bitonto: ein Denkmal der Kaiserliche Friedrichs II.," *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, XLV (1963), 285-312.
- Schaffers, Hans M., "König Manfred and die Anjouaner," *Deutsches Archiv*, XXI (1965), 173-193.

- Schube, Adolf, "Die Weichenstraße König Ludwigs des Heiligen von seinem ersten Kreuzzug und ihre Rolle auf dem Goldmarkte von Genua," *Zeitschrift für Numismatikwissenschaft und Statistik*, LXX (= 3-XV, 1896), 607-621, 730-748, LXXXIII (= 3-XVIII, 1899), 145-184.
- Schube, Adolf, *Handelsgeschichte der romanischen Völker der Mittelmeergebeite bis zum Ende der Kreuzzüge* (Handbuch der mittelalterlichen und neueren Geschichte, Sect. 3, 3; Munich and Berlin, 1906).
- Schein, Sylvia, "Gesta Dei per Mongolos 1300: the Genesis of a Non-Event," *Eng. HR*, XCIV (1979), 805-819.
- Schein, Sylvia, "La Cantabile Terra Sanctae franciscanae et les Juifs de Jérusalem à la fin du moyen âge," *Revue des études juives*, CXXI (1912), 369-377.
- Schein, Sylvia, "The Patriarch of Jerusalem in the Late Thirteenth Century—wignons expatriates et temporels?," in *Quartier* (1912), pp. 297-303.
- Schein, Sylvia, "The Future Regnum Hierusalem: a Chapter in Medieval State Planning," *J. Med. H.*, X (1984), 95-105.
- Schein, Sylvia, "Philip IV and the Crusade: a Reconsideration," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 121-126.
- Schlumberger, Gustave, *L'Épopée lyonnaise à la fin du XII siècle* (3 vols., Paris, 1896-1903).
- Schlumberger, Gustave, *Arnoul de Châtillon* (Paris, 1896).
- Schlumberger, Gustave, *Recits de Byzance et des croisades* (3 vols., Paris, 1911-1922).
- Schlumberger, Gustave, *Byzance et les croisades* (Paris, 1927).
- Schmidt, Raymond H., "The Fourth Crusade and the Just-War Theory," *Card. HR*, LXI (1976), 190-221.
- Schmidler, Bernhard, *Der Diet und die Comune Huerlarum von 1241-1229. Beiträge zur Hochzeitsgeschichte Huerlar vornehmlich im 12. Jahrhundert* (Hrm. Stud., ed. Eberling, 15; Berlin, 1902).
- Schmidt, Charles G.A., *Histoire et doctrine de la secte des Cathares ou Albigeois* (Paris, 1849; repr. New York, 1969).
- Schmugge, Ludwig, "Pilgerfahrt macht frei? eine These zur Bedeutung des mittelalterlichen Pilgerwesens," *Älteste Quartalschrift*, LXXIV (1979), 34-38.
- Schmugge, Ludwig, "Zisterzienser, Kreuzzug und Heilandskrieg," in *Die Zisterzienser*, ed. Konrad Ehm, R. Jorissen, and Hermann J. Roth (Aachen, 1980), pp. 37-41.
- Schöten, Suzanne, *Die alphonseische Kreuzzugsgebiert der 12. Jahrhundert* (Diss. der Universität Salzburg, 7; Vienna, 1976).
- Schöllinger, Chrysologus, "Die missionarische Sendung des Frater Wilhelm von Rubruk," *Österreichische Studien*, IV (1955), 138-146.
- Schöllinger, Chrysologus, "Die Missionarische Sendung Wilhelm von Rubruk zu den Mongolen," *Zeitschrift für Missionskunde und Religionswissenschaft*, XL (1956), 200-203.
- Schreiber, Georg, "Lernauslands Wanderungen zum Westen," *Bzt. Z.*, XLIV (= Festschrift Franz Dölger; 1951), 517-525.
- Schreiber, Otfried, "Die Personal- und Auswanderer der Hochwasser der Deutschen Reichsorden von seiner Gründung bis zum Jahre 1525," *Oberländische Geschichte-Mitteil.*, III (Münster, 1909-1913), 615-762.
- Schultz, Werner, *Arabienreise und Chronik des Isabella von Portugal und der Portugiesische Kreuzzug* (Historische Schriften der Universität Freiburg, 1, Freiburg (Switzerland), 1976).
- Schwerin, Ulrich, *Die Aufgabe der Pilger zur Befreiung des Heiligen Landes von den*

- Anfängen der zum Ausgang Irregular IV als Beitrag zur Geschichte der kurlen Kreuzzugsgesellschaft und der päpstlichen Episcopatographie* (Hiet. Stud., ed. Eberling, 100, Berlin, 1972).
- Schöti, Ferdinand, *Historie der Stadt einer Revolution* (Beiträge zum Archiv für Kulturgeschichte, 3, Cologne, Gera, and Weimar, 1865).
- Schöti, Ferdinand, "Die Zeit der Lüneburger und der luxemburgischen Revolution," *Handbuch der Geschichte der bismarckischen Länder*, ed. Karl Boett: vol. 1 *Die bismarckischen Länder von der archaischen Zeit bis zum Ausgang der bismarckischen Revolution* (Stuttgart, 1967), pp. 349-368.
- Schwartz, Robert B., "Material for a History of Islamic Textiles up to the Mongol Conquest," *Art Asiatica*, IX (1942), 94-95; X (1943), 71-104, XI-XII (1946), 94-120, XIII-XIV (1948), 75-117; XV-XVI (1951), 29-45.
- Sorger, Arnd, "La Fric de Niche d'après la 'Chanson d'Aleixoche' de Richard le Pèlerin," *Byzantion*, XLVI (1976), 401-421.
- Sprutius, Carlo, *Fischella II (1059-1112): Studien zu seiner Person und seiner Politik* (Papire und Papament, 14, Stuttgart, 1979).
- Setton, Kenneth M., *Catalan Domination of Athens, 1205-1261* (Med. AA, Publ., 50; Cambridge, Mass., 1962; rev. ed., London, 1975).
- Setton, Kenneth M., "On the Importance of Land Tenure and Agrarian Titration in the Byzantine Empire from the 4th Century to the 4th Crusade," *American Journal of Philology*, LXXIV (1953), 225-258.
- Setton, Kenneth M., general ed., *A History of the Crusades*: 1. *The First Hundred Years*, ed. Marshall W. Baldwin (Philadelphia, 1955, rev. ed., Madison, 1969); 2. *The Later Crusades, 1099-1311*, ed. Robert L. Wolff and Harry W. Hazard (Philadelphia, 1962; rev. ed., Madison, 1969); 3. *The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries*, ed. Hazard (Madison, 1975); 4. *The Art and Architecture of the Crusader States*, ed. Hazard (Madison, 1977); 5. *The Impact of the Crusades on the Near East*, ed. Norman F. Zacout and Harry W. Hazard (Madison, 1985); 6. *The Impact of the Crusades on Europe*, ed. Hazard and Zacout (Madison, 1989).
- Setton, Kenneth M., "The Archaeology of Medieval Athens," *Essays in Medieval Life and Thought Presented in Honor of Aaron Patterson Evans*, ed. John H. Murdy, Richard W. Emery, and Benjamin N. Nelson (New York, 1955), pp. 227-254.
- Setton, Kenneth M., "The Byzantine Background to the Italian Renaissance," *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society*, C (1956), 1-76.
- Setton, Kenneth M., "The Latins in Greece and the Aegean from the Fourth Crusade to the End of the Middle Ages," in *The Cambridge Medieval History*, IV-1, ed. Jean Housay (Cambridge, Eng., 1966), 389-428, with bibliography pp. 908-938.
- Setton, Kenneth M., *Europe and the Levant in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance* (Varior. Repts., CS, 28; London, 1974).
- Setton, Kenneth M., "Catalan Society in Greece to the Fourteenth Century," in *Essays in Memory of Basil Louriatis*, ed. Louisa Louriatis (Thessalonica, 1975), pp. 241-284; repr. in *Ion Athens in the Middle Ages* (London, 1975).
- Setton, Kenneth M., *Athens in the Middle Ages* (Varior. Repts., CS, 41, London, 1977).
- Setton, Kenneth M., "The Catalans in Greece, 1311-1380," *H of C*, III (1975), 167-224, and "The Catalans and Florinians in Greece, 1380-1462," *ibid.*, 225-277.
- Setton, Kenneth M., *The Papacy and the Levant (1200-1370)* (Memoirs of the American Philosophical Society, 114, 127, 161, 162; 4 vols., Philadelphia, 1976-1984).
- Severinus, Theo, "Intellectual Repressions of the Council of Florence," *Church History*, XXIV (1955), 291-323.

- Shahar, Shlomo, "Des Lévites pas comme les autres: l'artier de Saint-Lazare dans le royaume de Jérusalem," *Ann. Hist.*, CCLXXVII (1982), 19-41.
- Siberry, Elizabeth, "Muscovites and Crusaders, 1095-1274: Opponents or Allies?," *Studies in Church History*, XX (1983), 105-180.
- Siberry, Elizabeth, *Crusades of Crusading, 1095-1274* (New York and Oxford, 1982).
- Siedelich, Beatrice M., *English Participation in the Crusades, 1150-1220* (Ph.D. Thesis, Bryn Mawr, 1937; Milwaukee, Wisc., 1939).
- Silberschmidt, Max, *Das orientalische Problem zur Zeit der Entstehung des türkischen Reiches nach verschiedenen Quellen: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte der Beziehung Venedigs zu Sultan Bajazet I. in Byzanz, Ungarn und Genua und zum Reich von Konya (1241-1402)* (Beiträge zur Kulturgeschichte des Mittelalters und der Renaissance, 27; Leipzig and Berlin, 1923).
- Simonin, Nod, *Il Abruzzo di evangelizzazione dei Francescani nel Mezzogiorno e Mezzogiorno nel secolo XIII-XIV* (Milan, 1967).
- Slack, Keith V., "The Hospital, Hospital and Church of the Healthy Belonging to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem on Cyprus," *Medieval Archaeol.*, XLIX (1980), 254-267.
- Sinopowicz, Bernhard, "Über das hymnische Kalendarium nach dem Vierten Konzil von Nicäa (325-328)," *Arch. Z. NBY* (1952), 345-355.
- Sisic, Denis, "Un Voyageur du XIII^e siècle: le Dominicain Jean de Hongrie," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XIV (1952), 589-602.
- Sisic, Denis, "Les Relations entre les Mongols et l'Europe jusqu'à la mort d'Arghon et de Béla IV," *Cahiers d'histoire mondiale*, III (1956), 39-62.
- Sisic, Denis, *Introduction à l'étude de l'Europe centrale* (Wiesbaden, 1963).
- Sisic, Denis, "The Mongols and Western Europe," *H of C*, III (1973), 313-344.
- Sisic, Emmanuel, "La Genèse de la croisade croisée: un casé damascène du début du XIII^e siècle," *Jd*, CCLIV (1966), 197-224.
- Sisic, Emmanuel, "Le Caractère sacré de Jérusalem dans l'Islam aux XIII^e-XIII^e siècles," *Studia Islamica*, XXVII (1967), 149-182.
- Sisic, Emmanuel, "Notes sur la situation des Chrétiens à l'époque ayyibide," *Revue de l'histoire des religions*, CLXXII (1967), 117-130.
- Sisic, Emmanuel, "Moyens syro-palestiniens au temps des croisés," *Revue des études islamiques*, XXXV (1967), 125-147.
- Sisic, Emmanuel, *L'Islam et la croisade idéologique et propagande dans les réactions musulmanes aux croisés* (Paris, 1968).
- Sisic, Emmanuel, "Saladin et le calife al-Mu'taz," *Scripta Hierosolymitana*, XXIII (1972), 126-145.
- Sisic, Vasilios, *Frater John: the Letter and the Legend* (Milan/Spois, 1959).
- Sisic, Vasilios, "Exclusionary nationalism and the East of Merchant Colonies," *Eastern History Review*, XLII (1967), 181-197.
- Small, Raymond C., "Crusader Castles of the Twelfth Century," *Cambridge Historical Journal*, X (1950-1952), 135-149.
- Small, Raymond C., *Crusading Warfare, 1097-1203* (Cambridge Studies in Medieval Life and Thought, no. 3; Cambridge, Eng., 1956).
- Small, Raymond C., *The Crusaders in Syria and the Holy Land* (Ancient Peoples and Places, 42; London, 1973).
- Small, Raymond C., "Latin Syria and the West, 1097-1187," *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society*, 5-XIX (1969), 1-30.
- Small, Raymond C., "The International Status of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem,

- 1150-1182," in *The Eastern Mediterranean Lands in the Period of the Crusades*, ed. Peter M. Holt (Warminster, 1977), pp. 23-45.
- Small, Raymond C., "The Predicaments of Guy of Lusignan, 1183-85," in *Quenzer* (1982), pp. 179-176.
- Sorah, Charles de, "Les Sources de Thiloire de la croisade contre les Albigeois," *Rev. QM*, XVI (1874), 403-403.
- Soldneria, Ferran, *Historia de Catalunya*, 2nd ed. (3 vols., Barcelona, 1962).
- Souerby, Robert, "The Council of Clermont and the First Crusade," *Studia Gratiana*, XX (1976 = *Millington Gerard Franciscan* II), 323-337.
- Sotgiro, Giovanni, *Il Papato, l'Europa cristiana e i Saraceni* (Pubblicazioni dell'Univ. cattolica del Sacro Cuore, 5th ser., 12; Milan, 1930).
- Sotgiro, Maria G., *Minister: une ville byzantine morte* (Athens, 1935).
- Sotgiro, Jules, *Les Manuscrits maritimes de Venise aux XIVe et XVe siècles* (Paris, 1818).
- Sotgiro, Dominique, *L'Etat médiéval* (Paris, 1979).
- Sotgiro-Thomson, Justus, "Les Councils du early XIe siècle à un prisme syriac," *Bulletin d'Etudes orientales de l'Institut français de Damas*, XVII (1961-1962), 205-266.
- Sotgiro, Richard W., *Western Views of Islam in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge, Mass., 1913).
- Sotgiro, R., "Gregory IX's Attempted Expedition to the Latin Empire of Constantinople: The Crusade for the Union of the Latin and Greek Churches," *Journal of Medieval Studies*, V (1979), 163-174.
- Sotgiro, Gerd, *Das Kreuzrittertum des lateinischen Mittelalters* (Münchener Mittelalterschriften, 31; Munich, 1974).
- Sotgiro, Bernd, *Die vorderasiatischen Kirchen* (Leyden, 1964).
- Sotgiro, Bernd, *Die Goldenen Horde: die Mongolen in Russland 1219-1315* (Das mongolische Weltreich: Quellen und Forschungen, 2, 2nd ed., Wiesbaden, 1965).
- Sotgiro, Bernd, *Die Mongolen in Iran: Politik, Verwaltung und Kultur der Ilkhanen 1220-1310* (Iranische Forschungen, 1; 2nd ed., Wiesbaden, 1965).
- Starr, Joshua, *The Jews in the Byzantine Empire, 641-1204* (Texts und Forschungen zur byzantinisch-antikeischen Philologie, 30; Athens, 1979).
- Starr, Joshua, *Romania: the Arabs of the Levant after the Fourth Crusade* (Paris, 1949).
- Stefano, Antonino de, *La Cultura in Sicilia nel periodo normanno* (Palermo, 1928).
- Starr, Henri, "Les Représentations des croisés dans l'histoire de la Palestine à Beyrouth," *Byzantinica*, XI (1974), 69-152; XII (1978), 415-451.
- Sternfeld, Richard, *Karl von Anjou als Graf der Provence* (Historische Untersuchungen, 10; Berlin, 1884).
- Sternfeld, Richard, *Lebens des Heiligen Kreuzes nach dem 1270 und der Politik Karls I. von Sizilien* (Hist. Stud., ed. Ebering, 4; Berlin, 1896).
- Stern, Irvin, "The Teutonic Knights in the Crusader States," *It of C.*, V (1943), 315-378.
- Stevenson, William B., *The Crusaders in the East: a Brief History of the First of Islam with the Latins in Syria during the 12th and 13th Centuries* (Cambridge, Eng., and New York, 1907).
- Stöckel, Erwin, *Der Fall von Akkon: Untersuchungen zum Abhängen des Kreuzergründens am Ende des 13. Jahrhunderts* (Jahrbuch und Werk der Zeitsch., 42; Bonn und Frankfurt, 1975).

- Strayer, Joseph R., "The Crusade against Aragon," *Speculum*, XXVIII (1953), 102-113.
- Strayer, Joseph R., "The Political Crusades of the Thirteenth Century," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 340-373, and "The Crusades of Louis IX," *ibid.*, 467-511.
- Streit, Ludwig, *Wienlig und die Wiedergabe des vierten Kreuzzuges gegen Konstantinopel* (Aankum, 1877).
- Stürker, Carl L., and Y. Dagan Kibara, "Work on Kaiserreich: Cases in Imperial Social Preliminary Report," *D Osts R XXII* (1961), 183-193, cf. "Fourth Report," *ibid.*, XXV (1971), 237-251.
- Strick, Adolf, *Adrian, eine mittelalterliche Romanfigur: Streiflichter zur Geschichte und zu den Denkmalen des fränkisch-byzantinischen Handels in Mainz* (Vienna and Leipzig, 1918).
- Stress, Lothar, *Epische Identität und literarische Realität: der Abgesandtenbericht und die Krise der Zeitgeschichtsdarstellung in der armenischen, armenischsprachigen und jiddischen Historiographie* (Theorie und Geschichte der Literatur und der schönen Künste, LI, Munich, 1989).
- Strzykowski, Josef, "Ruins of the Latin Kings on the Haram in Jerusalem," *Speculum*, XI (1836), 499-508.
- Suárez Fernandes, Luis, *Amo II y la fundación de Granada* (Universidad de Valladolid, Consejo superior de investigaciones científicas: Estudios y documentos, Cuadernos de historia medieval, 2, Valladolid, 1954).
- Szemberg, Lewis A.M., "The 'Jafari' and the First Crusade," *Medieval Studies*, XXI (1959), 224-246.
- Szemberg, Lewis A.M., *La Chanson d'Antioche: étude historique et littéraire: une chronique en vers français de la première croisade par le pilier Richard* (Paris, 1948).
- Sumption, Jonathan, *The Albigensian Crusade* (London and Boston, 1978).
- Sweeney, James R., "Hungary in the Crusades, 1149-1211," *International History Review*, III (1981), 467-491.
- Sybel, Heinrich von, *Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges*, 2nd ed. (Leipzig, 1881).
- Teschner, Franz, "Pateres, eine germanisch-italienische Idee im mittelalterlichen Orient und ihre verschiedenen Erscheinungsformen," *Schwabenisches Archiv für Volkskunde*, LIII (1954), 122-138.
- Tharner, Walter, *Geld und Kredit im Mittelalter* (Berlin, 1911).
- Tomasini, Michel, *L'Église grecque-orientale des origines jusqu'à nos jours* (Rome, 1915).
- Totakis, Basilis, *Le Philosophe byzantin (ou Étude sur l'histoire, l'histoire de la philosophie, l'histoire des philosophes)*, 2, Paris, 1949).
- Ter-Grigorian Iskenderian, Gabriel, *Die Kreuzfahrer und ihre Beziehungen zu den armenischen Nachbarfürsten bis zum Untergange der Grafschaft Edessa* (Dres., Leipzig, Weida, 1915).
- Ter-Mikaelian, Arshak (Hovh, Arshak Ter-Mikaelian), *Die armenische Kirche in ihren Beziehungen zur byzantinischen vom IV bis zum XIII. Jahrhundert* (Leipzig, 1893).
- Terrasse, Henri, *L'Art byzantin-musulman des origines au XIIIe siècle* (Publication de l'Institut des hautes études musulmanes, 25, Paris, 1932).
- Terrasse, Henri, *Études de l'histoire des origines à l'établissement du protectorat français* (2 vols., Comblanchais, 1949-1950).
- Thacker, Jules A., *Quatrième croisade: le divertissement sur Zara et Constantinople* (Paris, 1934).
- Thorn, Ludwig, *Kreuzfahrerbeziehungen unter Papst Clemens V (1305-1314)* (Franziskanische Forschungen, 24, Weid, 1973).

- Thirlot, Freddy, *Le Royaume sicilien au moyen-âge: le développement et l'expansion du domaine royal normand (XIIe-XVe siècles)* (RÉPAR, 193, Paris, 1959; rev. ed., Paris, 1975).
- Thirlot, Freddy, *Études sur le Royaume grec-sicilien (Xe-XVe siècles)* (Varior Repr., CS, 66; London, 1977).
- Thirlot, Freddy, "Le Crise des royaumes siciliens au Levant dans les premières années du XVe siècle," in *Studi in memoria di Federico Maras*, ed. L. de Rosa (Naples, 1978), III, 59-72.
- Thirlot, Freddy, "Recherches sur le monnaie des 'Ladins' lauragais ou Roumains grecs-siciliens aux XIIe-XIVe siècles," in *Syriacus et im Slavos: Mélanges Jean Deydier* (Paris, 1979), pp. 421-436.
- Thomas, Antonius H., "Les Statuts des chanoines du Saint Sépulchre et leurs rapports avec les constitutions des Dominicains," *AP France*, XLVIII (1979), 5-22.
- Thomas, Peter, *Saladin Isakbar I von Ägypten: ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des Vorderen Orients im 12. Jahrhundert* (Beiträge zum Tübinger Aris des Vorderen Orients, Reihe B, Nr. 43, Wiesbaden, 1967).
- Thorp, Palmer A., *Criticism of the Crusade: a Study of Public Opinion and Crusade Propaganda* (Amsterdam, 1940).
- Thomas, Louis, *Don-Salut* (Paris, 1952).
- Thurston, Eugene, "La Légation en Orient du Franciscain Dominique d'Aragon (1245-47)," *BO Ch.*, XXIV (1924), 336-339.
- Tilgner, Sergei P., *Auf den Spuren der alchemischen Kultur* in Otto Mehlitz (Berlin, 1953).
- Tomek, Václav V., *Dějiny mélné Prahy* (Histoická bibliotéka vydáváná národním Muzeu království českého: Série XVIII: 12 vols., Prague, 1955-1961).
- Tomek, Václav V., *Jan Želík* (Prague, 1979).
- Topping, Peter W., "The Moros, 1311-1364," *H of C*, III (1973), 104-140, and "The Moros, 1364-1460," *ibid.*, 141-164.
- Topping, Peter W., *Studies on Latin Greece A.D. 1203-1713* (Varior Repr., CS, 66; London, 1977).
- Torre y del Cerro, Antonio de la, *Los Reyes Católicos y Granada* (Consejo superior de investigaciones científicas, Instituto Jerónimo Zurita; Madrid, 1946).
- Toubert, Pierre, "Les Dérivations de la croisade au milieu du XIIIe siècle: Alexandre IV contre Manfred," *Le Moyen Age*, LXIX (1963), 391-401.
- Tranchemont, Henry F., *Histoire politique et religieuse de l'Arménie depuis les origines des Arméniens jusqu'à la mort de leur dernier roi (Ann 1393)* (Paris, 1910).
- Trutoulain, Charles de, *Don Jaime I et Conquistador, rey de Aragón, conde de Barcelona, señor de Montañas, según las crónicas y documentos inéditos*, 2nd rev. ed. in Teodoro Llorente y Olivas (2 vols., Valencia, 1874).
- Trost, Henry F., "The Franks in the Peloponnese," *Journal of Hellenic Studies*, IV (1883), 165-226.
- Tubru-Guene, Jean Paul, "Le Financement de la croisade anglaise de 1270," *RÉ Ch.*, CXIX (1961), 113-140.
- Tuganov, Salavatana, "Per la storia della 'Compagnia Catalana' in Oriente," *Nuove riviste storiche*, XLVI (1962), 58-65.
- Tragou, Ramsey, "Lacoma, I, Medieval Fortresses," *AHS Athens*, XII (1905-1906), 259-276.
- Tragou, Ramsey, "Medieval Fortresses of the North-Western Peloponnese," *AHS Athens*, XIII (1906-1907), 263-281.

- Treppa, Raffaele, "Frankish Architecture in Genoa," *Journal of the Royal Institute of British Architects*, 5-XCCC (1923), 34-48, 73-83.
- Troen, Henry, *The Crusades* (London, 1978).
- Trümpel, Otto, *Die armenische Kunst- und Reichsolder nach ihrer Gestaltung im östlichen Zarenreich* (Jena, 1938).
- Tropeo, Mario del, *I Monasteri catalani e l'organizzazione della Corona d'Aragona nel secolo XII* (Naples, 1952).
- Trotter, Arthur S., *The Celts and their Non-Ibidem Subjects: a Critical Study of the Consensus of 'Our'* (London, 1936).
- Trull, Christian W., "Die Chiosmation im Mittelalter," *Preussische Zeitschrift*, XLVII (1964), 109-150; XLIX (1967), 22-79.
- Trudon des Ormes, Amélie L.A., "Lieux des monastères et quelques dignitaires de l'ordre du Temple en Syrie, en Egypte et en France d'après les pièces de poids," *AO Lariv*, V (1897), 385-409; VI (1898), 156-213; VII (1899), 223-274, 304-389.
- Tuller, André, "La Date exacte du départ de l'Alcazar de Corneilles au faveur des Vénitiens et son caractère historique," *Revue de droit international et comparé*, n.s., IV (1967), 37-48.
- Turner, Marian, *Der Deutsche Orden im Norden, Westen und Süden bis 1400 . . .* (Münster and Vienna, 1955).
- Turan, Osman, "Les Sarrasins seldjoukides et leurs sujets non musulmans," *Studia Islamica*, I (1953), 65-100.
- Tyrt, Émile, *Institution du droit public musulman* (2 vols., Paris, 1934-1937).
- Tyrt, Émile, *Histoire de l'organisation judiciaire en pays d'Islam* (Annales de l'Université de Lyon, 3^e sér., Droit, fasc. 4, 2nd ed., Lyons, 1960).
- Tyerman, Christopher J., "Marcus Sauter and the Last Crusade: Lobbying in the Fourteenth Century," *Proceedings of the Royal Historical Society*, 5-XXXII (1982), 57-73.
- Tyerman, Christopher J., "Said al-Biḥār," *The Last Capetians and the Recovery of the Holy Land*, *War and Government in the Middle Ages. Essays in Honour of J. G. Powell*, ed. John Gillingham and J. C. Holt (Woodbridge, 1984), pp. 170-181.
- Tyerman, Christopher J., "Philip VI and the Recovery of the Holy Land," *Eng. HR.*, C (1913), 25-33.
- Tyerman, Christopher J., "The Holy Land and the Crusades of the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries," in *Crusade and Settlement*, ed. Peter W. Edbury (Cardiff, 1985), pp. 105-112.
- Urban, William L., *The First Crusade* (Washington, 1960).
- Urban, William L., *The Levantine Crusade* (Washington, 1968).
- Ussegin, Leopoldo, *I Marchi di Manfrato in Italia ed in Oriente durante i secoli XII e XIII* (Rivista della Società storica italiana, 100, 101, ed. posthumously by Carlo Patrucco, 2 vols., Casale Monferrato, 1926).
- Ussegin, Ismail H., *Crusade and Islamization in the Byzantine Empire: An Introduction to the Administrative System of the Ottoman Empire: the Great Seljuks, the Seljuks of Rum* [1788 North Karadeniz yayıncılık], I, 10-10a, 2 vols., Istanbul, 1982, and Ankara, 1980.
- Vassard, Elphège, "Saint Bernard et le second croisade," *Rev. QH*, XXXVIII (1883), 396-427.
- Vassard, Elphège, *Vie de St-Bernard, abbé de Clairvaux*, 40^e ed., (2 vols., Paris, 1827).

- Valentini, Giuseppe, "La Crociata di Eugenio IV e Calisto III (dal documento d'archivio di Venezia)," *Archivum historicum pontificum*, XII (1974), 91-123.
- Valentini, Giuseppe, "La Crociata di Pio II nella documentazione vaticana d'archivio," *Archivum historicum pontificum*, XIII (1975), 249-242.
- Vallet, Maxcé, *Los Abnegados: la joven expedición a Orán de Catalanes y Aragoneses*, 2nd ed. (Barcelona, 1942).
- Van Cleave, Thomas C., *Maribaud of Arweiler and the Sicilian Agency: a Study of Hohenstaufen Policy in Sicily during the Minority of Frederick II* (Oxford and Princeton, 1937).
- Van Cleave, Thomas C., "The Fifth Crusade," *N of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 375-428, and "The Crusade of Frederick II," *ibid.*, 429-462.
- Vergnaud, André, "Croisade et marchandise: pourquoi Simon de Montfort n'en alla débiter les Alliguos," *Annales Economiques, sociales, chrétiennes*, I (1946), 209-218.
- Vasiliev, Alexander A., *Byzance et les Arabes*, tr. Henri Gougeon and Maurice Cansard (2 vols., Brussels, 1925-1950).
- Vasiliev, Alexander A., "The Foundation of the Empire of Trebizond (1204-1222)," *Speculum*, XI (1936), 3-32.
- Vasiliev, Alexander A., *History of the Byzantine Empire 1204-1453*, tr. Laura M. Ragozin, 2nd ed. (Madison, 1952).
- Vasilivsky, Vasily G., "Vizantijskij Polomegij," *Trudy KIO. Nauchnyeizyskanija (= Works)*, I (St. Petersburg, 1906), pp. 1-175.
- Vat, Odolphus van der, *Die Anfänge der Kreuzfahrtsbewegungen und ihre Bedeutung: wichtig im Nahen Osten und in den mohammedanischen Ländern während des 11. Jahrhunderts* (Münchenerwissenschaftliche Studien, n.s., 6, Weis, 1934).
- Vazquez de Parga, Luis, José M. Lacarra, and Juan Uribe Riu, *Las Peregrinaciones a Santiago de Compostela* (3 vols., Madrid, 1948-1949).
- Velte, Otto, "Die Normannen im Mittelmeer," *Die Welt als Geschichte*, V (1911), 25-28, 223-276.
- Vera Idoate, Gregorio, *Navarra y las cruzadas: ensayo histórico de las principales expediciones religiosas-heréticas de Navarra desde fines del siglo VIII hasta mediados de XIV* (Pamplona, 1911).
- Verlinden, Charles, *Les Empereurs belges de Constantinople* (Brussels, 1945).
- Verlinden, Charles, *L'Occident dans l'Europe médiévale*, II (Cöln, 1977).
- Vernadskij, Georgij V. (here, George Vernadsky), *The Mongols and Russia* (A History of Russia, 3, New Haven, 1953).
- Versa, René A. de, abbé, *Histoire des chevaliers hospitaliers de St. Jean de Jérusalem appelée depuis les chevaliers de Rhodes et aujourd'hui les chevaliers de Malte* (4 vols., Paris, 1726); tr. as *The History of the Knights Hospitallars of St. John of Jerusalem* (3 vols., Edinburgh, 1737; repr. London, 1775; repr. New York, 1961).
- Vlase, Prosper, *Nazareth et ses deux églises de l'Assomption et de Saint-Jacques d'après les fouilles récentes* (Paris, 1910).
- Viv, Claude de (here, Devic), and Jean J. Vassier, *Histoire générale de Languedoc avec des notes et les pièces justificatives*, ed. Edmond Dubautier et al. (15 vols., Toulouse, 1872-1893; supplementary vol. by Ernest Bouchac and Augustin Moissac, *Histoire géographique de l'ancienne province de Languedoc* (Toulouse, 1904).
- Viller, Marcel, "La Question de l'union des églises entre Grecs et Latins depuis le concile de Lyon jusqu'à celui de Florence, 1274-1439," *Revue de l'histoire ecclésiastique*, XVII (1921), 260-305, 515-532; XVIII (1922), 20-60.
- Villey, Michel, *Le Chancelier eugénie sur la formation d'une théorie juridique* (L'église et l'état au moyen âge; Paris, 1942; repr. New York, 1960).

- Vincent, Louis H., and Félix M. Abel, *Bethléem le sanctuaire de la Nativité* (Paris, 1914).
- Vincent, Louis H., and Ernest LH. Mackay, with Félix M. Abel, *Hebron le Sanctuaire et l'église, sépulture des patriarches* (2 vols., text and album of plates, Paris, 1923).
- Vincent, Louis H., and Félix M. Abel, *Eschmouli un hamlet et son histoire* (Paris, 1932).
- Vincent, Louis H., "Bethléem: le sanctuaire de la Nativité d'après les fouilles récentes," *Revue biblique* XLV (1934), 544-574, XLVI (1937), 91-121.
- Vincent, Louis H., "L'Église, sanctuaire principal de l'Épiscopat," *Revue biblique*, LXXV (1957), 42-71.
- Violante, Claudio, *Eremitismo, società, antropologia a Pisa nel Medioevo, saggi e ricerche* (Bari, 1980).
- Viale, Vito, *Architettura della storia di Genova: importanti storici ed ornamenti bibliografici* (2 vols., Genoa, 1953).
- Viet, N. van der, *Tafel der Miniat. mit int. ill. udr.* et la partie probatoire (Paris, 1938).
- Voegelin, Eric, "The Monastic Orders of Solitaries in European Powers, 1245-1255," *Byzantion*, XV (1940-1941), 371-413.
- Vogel, Cyrille, "Le Pélerinage pèlerinage," in *Pèlerinage et culte des saints en Europe des origines à la crocriste* (Compte rendu du Centre de studi sulla spiritualità medievale, 4, Todi, 1963), pp. 37-54, also publ. in *Revue des sciences religieuses de l'Université de Strasbourg*, XXXVIII (1964), 113-153.
- Vogüé, C.J. Melchior de, *Les Églises de la Terre Sainte* (Paris, 1860).
- Vogüé, C.J. Melchior de, "Achat d'Antiochie: poème sur le Triomphe Damiel," *AO Lavis*, I (1881), 562-579.
- Vollrich, Hanna, "Konya III. and Byzant," *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, LIX (1977), 321-343.
- Vries, Wilhelm de, "Innocent IV (1243-1254) und der christliche Osten," *Ostforschende Studien*, XII (1953), 117-131.
- Vries, Wilhelm de, "Die Päpste von Anagni und der christliche Osten," *O Chr. R.* XXX (1964), 85-129.
- Vryonis, Speros, *The Decline of Medieval Hellenism in Asia Minor and the Process of Islamization from the Eleventh through the Fifteenth Century* (Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London, 1971).
- Watt, Alan J.B., "Lascaris V. Prankale Sculpture at Paros and Gerni," *ABSAkten*, XI (1904-1905), 139-149.
- Wakefield, Walter L., *Barons, Crusade and Inquisition in Southern France, 1100-1150* (London, 1974).
- Wal, Eugène JW de, *Histoire de l'ordre teutonique par un chevalier de l'ordre* (3 vols., Paris, 1784-1795).
- Walker, Paul E., "The Crusade of John Tzimiskes at the Light of New Arabic Evidence," *Byzantion*, XLVIII (1977), 308-332.
- Walsh, Richard J., "Charles the Bold and the Crusade: Politics and Propaganda," *J Med. H.*, III (1977), 53-86.
- Watt, W. Montgomery, *The Influence of Islam on Medieval Europe* (Edinburgh, 1970).
- Walz, Gustav, *Geschichte der Cheliffen* (5 vols., Mannheim, 1842-1862).
- Weitzmann, Kurt, "Constantinopolitan Book Illumination in the Period of the Latin Crusades," *Gazette des beaux-arts*, 4-XXV (1944), 193-214.
- Weitzmann, Kurt, "Thirteenth Century Crusader Icons on Mount Sinai," *Art Bulletin*, XLV (1963), 179-208.

- Witzmann, Kurt, "Icon Painting in the Crusader Kingdom," *D Olsz J.* XX (1966), 47-63.
- Witzmann, Kurt, "Four Icons on Mount Sinai: New Aspects in Crusader Art," *Zeitschrift der deutschen Orientalistik*, XXII (1972), 279-283.
- Witzmann, Kurt, "Three Painted Crucifixes in Sinai," *Kunsthistorische Forschungen: Eine Festschrift zu seinem 70. Geburtstag*, ed. Artur Rosenauer and Gerald Weber (Salzburg, 1972), pp. 21-37.
- Witzmann, Kurt, *Armenian Manuscripts at St. Catherine's Monastery on Mount Sinai* (Collegeville, Minn., 1973).
- Witzmann, Kurt, *The Monastery of Saint Catherine at Mount Sinai: the Icons. I. From the Sixth to the Twelfth Century*, photographs by John Caley (Princeton, 1976).
- Witzmann, Kurt, *Studies in the Arts at Sinai* (Princeton, 1962).
- Westraff-Eggshert, Friedrich, *Kreuzugselichtung der Mittelalters: Studien zu ihrer geschichtlichen und ideologischen Wirklichkeit* (Berlin, 1962).
- Wernke, Hans van, *Wijze van de Kruis en Wijze van Jezus om opstede uit de geschiedenis van de Kruisvloed (Mededelingen van de Koninklijke Vlaamse Academie voor Wetenschappen, Letteren en Schone Kunsten van België, Klasse der Letteren. 55, no. 2; Brussels, 1971).*
- Wernke, Hans van, "La Contribution de la Flandre et du Hainaut à la troisième croisade," *Le Moyen-âge*, LXXVIII (1972), 55-90.
- Wheeler, Benjamin W., "The Reconquest of Spain before 1095," *H of C*, I (1955, 2nd ed. 1969), 31-38.
- Wieruszowski, Helena, "Polnische Verschwörungen und Bündnisse König Piast von Anjou gegen Karl von Anjou am Vorabend der Stilianischen Wogen," *QFIAR*, XXXVII (1937), 136-191.
- Wieruszowski, Helena, "The Norman Kingdom of Sicily and the Crusades," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1964), 3-42.
- Wiet, Guston, *L'Égypte musulmane de la conquête arabe à la conquête ottomane 642-1517 de l'ère chrétienne*, 2nd ed. (Histoire de la nation égyptienne, 4, Paris, 1932).
- Wilkes, Friedrich, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge nach orientalischen und abend-ländlichen Berichten* (7 vols., Leipzig, 1807-1832).
- Willems, Eugène, "Chama et la seconde croisade," *Revue d'histoire ecclésiastique*, XLIX (1954), 116-151.
- Williams, David H., "Clarence Sedgwick in the Lebanon," *Chama*, XXV (1974), 61-74.
- Williams, Patrick A., "The Assassination of Conrad of Montferrat: Another Suspect," *Frederic*, XXVI (1976), 361-369.
- Winkler, Eberhard, *Denkmalgründen zur Geschichte des Schatzers Kaiser Sigismund* (Zwei ersten Male vollständig herausg.), ed. Wilhelm Altmann (Berlin, 1893).
- Winklermann, Eduard, *Kaiser Friedrich II. (Jahrbücher der deutschen Geschichte; 2 vols., Leipzig, 1889-1897).*
- Wisniewski, Roswitha, *Kreuzugselichtung: Idealität in der Wirklichkeit* (Aspekte der Forschung, 44; Darmstadt, 1964).
- Wittek, Paul, *Das Fürstentum Montenegro: Studien zur Geschichte Westbalkanens im XVI.-XV. Jahrhundert* (Istanbul Mitteilungen, 2; Istanbul, 1934).
- Wittek, Paul, "De la Bataille d'Ankara à la prise de Constantinople," *Revue des études orientales*, XII (1928), 1-34.
- Wittek, Paul, *The Rise of the Ottoman Empire* (Royal Asiatic Society Monographs, 23, London, 1938).

- Wolff, Robert L., "The Latin Empire of Constantinople and the Franciscans," *Traditio*, II (1944), 213-232.
- Wolff, Robert L., "The Organization of the Latin Patriarchate of Constantinople, 1204-1261: Social and Administrative Consequences of the Latin Conquest," *Traditio*, VI (1948), 39-68.
- Wolff, Robert L., "Mortgage and Redemption of an Emperor's Son: Cauter and the Latin Empire of Constantinople," *Speculum*, XXIX (1954), 45-84.
- Wolff, Robert L., "Politics in the Latin Patriarchate of Constantinople 1204-1261," *D Obedt P. VII* (1954), 223-303.
- Wolff, Robert L., "The Latin Empire of Constantinople, 1204-1261," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 187-213.
- Wolff, Robert L., *Studies in the Latin Empire of Constantinople* (Varior. Repts. CS, 55; London, 1976).
- Wohl, Theodor, *Die Kreuzerhebung des Jahres 1096 als Beitrag zur Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges* (Tübingen, 1891).
- Wohl, Alfred, *König Salomon I. von Jerusalem* (Königsberg, 1884).
- Wormald, Patrick, "The Possibility of Apamea," *Nederlandsche Geschiedkundig Jaarboek*, V (1954), 271-279.
- Yurdak, Ralph B., *Iskander I, Prince of Antioch* (Princeton, 1934; rept. New York, 1960).
- Young, G. B., "Three Cilician Castles," *Armenian Studies*, XV (1963), 113-124.
- Zaborov, Mikhail A., *Krestianstvo na rubezhi* [The Crusaders in the Bay] (Moscow, 1981).
- Zachariades, Elizabeth A., *Trade and Crusade: Huerian Crisis and the Revival of Maritime and Asian* (1198-1412) (Library of the Hellenic Institute of Byzantine . . . Studies, II, Varior. 1983).
- Zachodni, Boris N., "Chereva i obzavremennye putshchikov Seljukov (Khorezm and the Formation of the State of the Seljuks)," *Byzantinskii vestnik*, III-IV (1943), 119-141.
- Zacar, Norman F., "The Children's Crusade," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 323-342.
- Zakynthinos, Diotrylos Omer, Denis A., *Le Despotat grec de Morée. I. Histoire politique. 2. Vie et institutions* (2 vols., Paris and Athens, 1912-1931; rev. ed., London, 1933).
- Zihlens, Nicolas, *Abendmündliche Riten, Griechen und Türken im ersten Kreuzzug* [Zur Problematik ihrer Begegnung] (Thesen und Forschungen zur byzantinisch-ostgriechischen Philologie, 46; Athens, 1973).
- Zipos, Pan J., *Droit et institutions franques du royaume de Chypre* (XVI^e Congrès international d'études byzantines: rapports et co-rapports. 5. Chypre dans le monde byzantin, no. 3. Droit et institutions franques du royaume de Chypre; Athens, 1974).
- Zorin, Peter, *Papava, impero e repubbliche cristiane dal 1197 al 1198* (Scienze storiche, 24, Milan, 1968).
- Zerner-Chardaroux, Monique, *La Croisade albigenoise* (Collection archives, 75; Paris, 1979).
- Zerner-Chardaroux, Monique, and Helmut Pöschel-Bellier, "La Croisade albigenoise, une revanche: des rapports entre la quatrième croisade et la croisade albigenoise," *Rev. Aus.*, CCLXVII (1962), 3-88.
- Ziada, Muhammad M., "The Mamluk Conquest of Cyprus in the Fifteenth Century," *Bulletin of the Faculty of Arts of the University of Egypt*, 14 (1913), 90-113, III (1934), 31-51.

- Zaida, Mustafa M., "The Mamluk Sultan to 1291," *H of C*, II (1962, 2nd ed. 1969), 715-752.
- Zaida, Mustafa M., "The Mamluk Sultan, 1291-1317," *H of C*, III (1973), 484-512.
- Zinnert, Karl, "Der Friede von Adrianopol (Februar 1190)," *Byz. Z.*, XI (1902), 303-126.
- Zinnert, Karl, "Der deutsch-byzantinische Konflikt vom Juli 1185-Februar 1190," *Byz. Z.*, XII (1903), 42-77.
- Zöllner, Walter, *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge* (Berlin, 1977).
- Zurita y Castro, Jerónimo de, ed., *Anales de la Corona de Aragón* (6 vols., Saragossa, 1670).
- British Committee on the Preservation and Restoration of Works of Art, Archives and Other Material in Enemy Hands, *Works of Art in Greece, the Greek Islands and the Dodecanese: Losses and Survivals in the War* (London, 1946).
 - *Il Regno normanno: Complesso unitario in Palermo, per l'VIII centenario dell'incoronazione di Ruggero a re di Sicilia* (Biblioteca storica principato, 16; Messina and Milano, 1932).
 - *La Reconquista española y la repoblación de país* (Consejo superior de investigaciones científicas, Escuela de estudios medievales, Estudios, 23, Saragossa, 1931).
 - *Il Centenario della morte di Ruggero II. Atti del Congresso internazionale di studi Ruggeriani (21-25 aprile 1954), a cura del Comitato esecutivo* (2 vols., Palermo, 1955).
 - *Pais de Dieu et guerre sainte en Languedoc au XIII^e siècle* (Cahiers de Fauriol, 4, Toulouse, 1969).
 - *1452-1453 La conquista musulmana de la prior de Constantinople* (L'Hellénisme contemporain, 2-11, Fascicule hors série; Athens, 1953).
 - *Storia della cultura veneta* (Vicenza, 1974-).

Index of Topics for Secondary Works

CRUSADING THOUGHT

Crusading thought, Christian attitudes

Alphandéry, Aisner 1963, 1963, Benmann, Bladt, Brundage 1984, Cardini 1973, Crowder 1963, Custer, Dussel 1980, 1983, Delaruelle 1941, 1960, 1963, 1980, Einmann 1910, 1933, Felsche 1980, Flabell, Gouzon, Housley 1913, Knoch, Kribsch, Lacryta, Y. Luzzani 1948, Leclercq 1954, McGinn, Monneret de Villard 1944-2, Morris 1983, Nix, Nock, Pauter 1953, Riley-Smith 1963, Röhrich 1934, Roussel 1913, 1961, 1963, Rusman 1933-4, F. Russell, Schrie 1984, Schrage 1980, Siberry 1983, Stockel, Thurnp, Valley, Wain

Crusade and Jewish Moslem attitudes

Cohen 1933, Gabrieli 1973, Sime 1966, 1967-1, 1968

Crusade and canon law

Batrach, Breding, Brundage 1963, 1966-1,2, 1967-1,2, 1968, 1969, 1971, Daniel 1989, Gales, Gotsleb 1964, Held, Hock 1963, Markowski, Madsen, Pissard

Pilgrimage and relics

Breding 1966, Cardini 1961, Caenenbergh, Constable 1976, Delbays, Fivmar 1973, Fery 1919, Fröhne 1941, Gaskoir 1963, Jorgensen, Kohler 1917, Kösting, Labande 1938, Mink, Morris 1984, Ormel, Röhrich 1973, Rusman 1933-3, Savigny, Schrage 1979, G. Schooner, Vassquez de Parga, Vogel

THE CRUSADES

The crusades (general)

M. Beck 1978, Bridge, Cohen 1934-2, 1963, Crowder 1973, Eaffery 1963, Erbslömer, Gervase, Goss, Goussier 1934, Hagwood, Housley 1982-2, Haysen 1968, Karsman 1962, Kohler 1900, Kugler 1991, Lehmann, Mayer 1972, Melbaud 1937, Oldenbourg, Pauter, Peckot 1951, Pernoud 1977, Pinner 1973-2, Richard 1977-3, Riley-Smith 1977-3, 1983, Röhrich 1974, 1990, Roussel 1917, Rusman 1933-4, Sackford 1962, Setton 1933-1, Stevenson, Treux, Tyerman 1983-2, Walker, Zaharov, Zolner

The First Crusade

Androsch, Brundage 1979, Buzova, Cohen 1930-1, 1934, 1974-1, Chalandon 1923, Characis 1949, Crowder 1979, 1973, Croast, David, Dancold 1920, 1928, 1933, Flache, France 1970, 1972, Gantoh, Hagemeyer 1979, 1989, J. Hill 1913, 1962, Holtermann 1924, Kauppen, Lille 1983, Laugher, Mayer 1960, Minns 1903, Nicholson 1980, Pappas, Pryor 1964-2, Richard 1960-3, 1974, Riley-Smith 1982, 1984, 1986, Röhrich 1979, Roussel 1943, Rusman 1949, 1953-4, 1960, Russo, Serper, Somerville, Sushberg 1959, Sybil, T. Wold, Zilstein

The crusade of 1101

Brundage 1960, Cair 1942, 1965, Riser 1983, 1986, Roussel 1963, Rusman 1953-2

The Second Crusade

Berry, Breding 1958, Constable 1953-1,2, H. Coeck, U. Coeck, Cramer 1939, Fory 1984-1, Gabrieli 1964, 1965, Hammond 1979-1, 1984, Haffner, Jansen 1963-1,2, Kugler 1856, 1878, 1883, Leclercq 1962, 1971, 1974, Neumann 1912, E. Pfeiffer, Pinner, Ransow 1913, 1954, Yacouand 1983, 1977, Williams

The Slavonic Crusade of 1047

Johnson 1975, Kahl 1962, 1964, Lester

The Third Crusade

Brund 1962, A. Cartellieri 1956, Chazan, Crogan, Eickhoff, Fichmann, Gillingham 1978, Holtmann 1950, Johnson 1962, Landon, Mayer 1877-8, Möhring, Norquist, Opl, Painter 1962, Phipps 1984, Rastler, Rohrbach 1876-8, Werveke 1975, Zimmert 1902, 1903

The Fourth Crusade

Auders 1984, 1962, Brader, Brund 1966-8, Cress 1951, Ferrard, Folis 1965, Fotheringham 1908, Fowler 1954, Fuls, Gerland 1904, GIB 1978, 1971, Godfrey-Ortigue 1940, Gutsch, Hanson 1877, Hendricks 1971-2, John, Kiss, Longson 1977, 1978, McNeal, Nade-Farrose, Noorden 1894, Queller 1969, 1970, 1971, 1974, 1876, 1977, 1980, Riant 1975, Schmandt, Street, Tauer

The Children's Crusade

Gibler, Gray, Hansberg, Miccoli, Moore 1913, Rastler, Rohrbach 1876-8, Zimmert 1902

The Albigensian Crusade

Belperron, Bona, Bostanc 1887, Dumas 1943, 1944-1,2, 1945, Evans, Schmidt, Sreck, Symonds, Vargiac, Wakefield, Zarnen-Chardavoine 1979 1962, Peir

The Fifth Crusade

Doroshin, Hoogwerf, Manilla, Pisco, Powell, Rohrbach 1876-8, 1881, Van Cleave 1962

The crusade of Frederick II

Wochet, Henig, Katsenewitz, Kerner, Schaller 1961, Van Cleave 1962, Winkelman

The crusades of Theobald of Champagne and Richard of Cornwall

Jackson 1962, Painter 1962, Rohrbach 1884

The crusades of Louis IX

Cahen 1976, Harle 1976, W. Jordan 1978, Longue 1976, Peinard, Richard 1970-3, 1976-8, 1980-3, Saey 1871-1,2, Stansfeld 1896, Surber 1962

The crusades from 1270 until 1291

Barba, Haupt, Rahberg 1962, Rohrbach 1881, Traub-Cunat

The fourteenth-century crusades

Alyx 1954, 1958, 1975, Barber 1981, Canale, Chevalier, Cox, Datta, Delville Le Roux 1886, Faxon, Hermelin, Howley 1903, 1951, 1954, Jorga 1896, Karmaphys 1924, Kedar 1979, Kilig, Luzzati 1965-8, 1980-1, Magnovalis, Mosavitch, Pail 1962, Rosetti, Schels 1983, Setton 1976, Tjerman 1962, 1984, 1883-1

The fifteenth-century crusades

Angyal, Alyx 1975, Balogun 1950, Canalis 1976, Chasin, Dabrowski 1922, 1951, Grigore 1931, Grossweg, Halecki 1943, Huijing 1979, 1980, Marinacci 1948, 1950, Pail 1938, 1940, 1944, Peschanka, Rastoul, Richard 1980-2, Schulz, Setton 1973, Valensini 1974, 1975, Walsh

The anti-Hungarian crusades

Bancal, Baschi 1871, 1874, Brandenburg, Frankensberger, Heymann 1955, 1971, Jacob, Kaminisky, Mark 1953, 1955, 1958, Palacky, Peltat, Seibi 1965, 1967, Tomak 1855, 1879, Wandecke

EUROPE AND THE CRUSADES**The papacy and the crusades**

Bethur 1928, Condeby 1962, Gans, Gay 1904-2, Geyser, Gil 1961, Gleber-Haller

- 1950, Hampe 1905, Hissman 1972, Hotach 1941, Kenna, Kiersmann, M. Laurent, Y. Laurent 1945, Luchaire 1905, 1911, Luew, Molles, Parnell, Robinson, Roacher, Rozic 1959, Schwedia, Servais, Setton 1973, Stryer 1962, Thier, Toubert, Vico 1963, 1964, Zarbi
- The "Holy Roman" empire**
M. Bach 1975-2, Bernhardt, Georbsch, Haller 1914, Hampe 1942, 1949, Harck, Haurisch 1973-2, E. Jordan 1979, Kiesel, Loebsch, Rasse 1946, Röscher 1894, Rüdelsch
- Italy (general)**
Abulafia 1965, Arnold, Astori, Cadden, Carlson 1965, Casal 1942, Farnum 1971-1, Housley 1963-1, Knege, Monti 1946, Rasse 1979
- Venice**
Aringhiani, Bata, Branca, Briziani 1909, H. Brown, Così 1946, 1952, 1960, 1968
Ernst, Frances, Hopf 1959, G. Jacoby 1977-2, Kretschmar, Lami 1897, 1907, 1911
Maldesi, Melchior-Chirvasi, Perini 1973, 1979, Pinner 1923, Piro, Roberti 1951, Roberts, Romanus, Schneider, Setton 1973, 1978, Silberstein, Tullat, Violante, Stone
- Genoa**
Bach, Balba, Byrne 1925, Caro, Dallegio d'Alema 1969, Donover, Formantini, Lopez 1933, 1938, Mayer 1973, Museo 1976, Negr, Viole
- Pisa**
Abulafia 1962, Altmendler, Farnum-Léic 1965, Heywood, Rossi-Sabatini
- Naples and Sicily**
Ansel, Barthes, Bernard-Villars, Borani 1951, Caggia, Caspar 1904, Carosi 1913, Chalandon 1907, Curtis, Fawc, Garali, Gay 1904-1, E. Jordan 1908, Leonard 1932, 1934, Lopez 1955, Monti 1936, 1937, 1962, Mingham, Rodenberg, Ransdorn 1928, Schaller 1957, Sordani, Van Cleve 1933, Vohs, Wurmbrandt 1957, 1962, B. Regis, J. Cavonius
- Anzù**
Cahen 1977-1, Camera, Casella 1967
- Spain and Portugal**
Agudo Eliza, Alacoba, Asufo, Ballesteros, Ballesteros y Bermea 1922, 1942, Birkio 1973, 1980, Burns 1967, 1973, 1978, 1983, 1982, Cagima, Cantarino, Deleuza, Garcia de Valcarlosano y Aranda, Gode Castañeda, Góngora de Azavedo, Gonzalez 1944, 1946, 1960, Casal Castaneda, Hermanson de Carvalho e Araújo, Hildgarth 1973, Holo Miranda 1934-1,2, 1936-1,2, Ladero Quesada 1964, 1967, Lloj Provincial, Loran 1934, Mase Carrasco, Menéndez Pidal, Miret y Sans, O'Callaghan 1973-1, Pons, Schadeit, Soldevilla, Stryer 1953, Suarez Fernandez, Torre y del Cerro, Tostadoles, Voss Monte, Wheeler, Zurita y Castro, La Arcequente
- France**
Bournily, Bostaric 1961, G. Caradour, Digard, Elmerik, Garsia 1951, Hinch, W. Jordan 1979, C. Langlois, Larrue, Longton 1929, Mery, Pinnerud 1955, Steinfeld 1888 Vc
- England and Scotland**
A. Lane Poole, Macquarrie, Powicke 1947, 1953, Stokichay
- Scandinavia**
Mason, Rant 1865
- Hungary and the Balkans**
Anglov, Jorga 1937, Jurek, Kerkis, Sanyay

THE CHRISTIAN EAST

Byzantium (continued) and to 1204

- D. Baker, M. Beck 1972-4, Ben 1991, Brand 1962-2, Bethoux 1947, Bury 1936, Cohen 1934, Chalandon 1966, Chazotte 1953, 1973, Coganian, Dagron, Daly, Danstrup, Q. Day 1978, Diehl 1939, Dolger 1960, Friendley, Gerasimovici 1966, 1979, Gerson, Gifford 1953, Hecks, Heinenberg, Hendricks 1979, Hendy, Horigmann, Hussey 1958, 1963, 1966, Juvencio, Kap-Herr, Karamanoglou 1956, 1958, Kordemann, Lamina, I. Laurent 1913, Loh 1934, Lemerle 1953, 1959, Lutz 1977, 1981, Neumann 1934, Nicol 1962, 1979-4, Olsberger 1931, 1947, 1958, Ostrogorski 1928, 1931, 1954, 1956, 1978, 1983, Rostand 1933, 1953, Schlarbergier 1956, 1966, 1973, Setton 1953, Teitinger, Vasilev 1933, 1952, Vasilevsky, Vollrath, Waller

The Greek states on the Adriatic and the Aegean 1204-1261

- Angold, Gardner, Lemerle 1973, Monphreux, Nicol 1957, 1976, Pappadopoulos, Sinagouras, Zakynthos

Byzantium 1261-1453

- Baker, Beck, Chapman, Charanis 1971, Dede, Dennis 1960, 1982, Dolger 1934, Ezer, Gerasimovici 1959, 1973, Gifford 1953, Hatzig, D. Jacoby 1961, Jagh 1912, Lacom 1972, 1973, Nicol 1979-2, Patsari 1976, Runciman 1963, 1973-1973

Ibelizone

- Bryer 1973, 1975, Paffenhofer, Janssen, W. Miller 1926, Vasilev 1976

The Latin empire of Constantinople

- Balard 1978, Bernhardt, Bormat 1966, Bryer 1976, Carle 1963, 1976-1,2, 1979, 1981, Dujov 1978, Garland 1965, Gualtero, Hensley 1969, 1970, 1971-4, 1976, 1977, Verhulst 1945, R. Wolf 1954-1, 1962, 1976

The Aegean islands

- Angold 1958, 1979, Bury 1886, Petheringham 1915, Hopf 1853, 1855, 1856, 1880, Lemerle 1962, 1953, 1975-2

Cyprus

- Bonard 1963, Cervellati, Garland 1959, 1963, Agapitov 1963, 1964

Frankish Greece

- Jen 1949, 1953, 1969, Buchen 1840, 1843, 1943, Carle 1974, Caron 1902, 1946, Crui 1915, Clouston, Gregorova, Gualtero, Hopf 1867, D. Jacoby 1963, 1967-4, 1971, 1973, 1974, 1975-1,2, 1976, 1989, Katsophylas 1933, Lampson, Lemerle 1951, Lemerle 1943, 1979, Longson 1942, 1946, 1949, 1950, 1962, 1963, Lattrell 1966-2, W. Miller 1904, 1921, Beck, Dennis 1966, 1974, 1975-2, J. Thier 1928, 1971, 1979, Zipping 1973, 1977, Zinglio

The Catalan Company

- Barón y Comas, Burns 1954, Dujov 1974, Grana, Bilgari 1973, D. Jacoby 1966, A. Lema 1980, Oliver, Rinal y Llach 1973, Sanchez Guillén, Setton 1948, 1973-4, Transmontana, Velde

Cyprus

- Bauman, Bellwood, Bellamy 1974, 1977-2, 1980, Farber, G. Hill, Jorga 1931, D. Jacoby 1977-1, Lutz, Mac Lure 1844, 1852, 1879-1, Monaghan, Richard 1947, 1952, 1963-1, 1967, 1973-1, 1976-3, 1977-4, 1979-2, 1981, 1984, 1989, Rod de Collesberg 1973, 1979-2, Zeyra, Muhammad Zia

Cilician Armenia

- Alban 1888, 1893, Basmajian, Bous 1978, Charanis 1963, Der Nersisian 1962, Dahanian, Gerson 1942, Jorga 1900, V. Langdon, I. Laurent 1924-4, J. de Morgan, Richard 1966, Rich de Collesberg 1963, Tournelice

George

Allen, Marvelich-Gil

MOSLEMS AND OTHER NON-CHRISTIANS

The Moslems (general)

Abd-ur Razaq, Ashken 1973-4, Becker, Brockelmann, Cohen 1953 1,2, 1958 1,2, 1971-3, Deane 1950, Elmstedt 1977, Fink 1958, Gaudelrey-Demonchyne, Goldschw, A. Hartmann, Hitt 1945, Hüb 1930, Irwin, Lakkgaard, Marnegon, Mili 1934, Müller, Saunders 1963, 1977, Sivan 1947-3, Sourdai, Southern, Tachser, Tihina, Tsao 1954, 1960, Vryonis, Wolf

The Arabs

Gabriel 1930, Gibb 1955-1, Hird 1937, 1942, 1970, Lammont 1921, B. Lewis 1958, 1960, Schiel 1961

The Jordanians and Amman

Defrigny, Geyard, Hammer-Purgstall, Harasicki 1936, 1978-1, Hodgson, Dancy, B. Lewis 1953, 1955, 1968-1, Newell, Quatember, Sacy 1818, Schaller 1945

The Ayyubids (Kurd)

Ehrenkrantz 1972, Elmstedt 1947, Gibb 1952, 1955-2, 1962, J. Hartmann, Heibig, Hindley, Hüb 1943, Humphreys, Lyons, Mironsky, Sivas 1947-2, 1972, Sourdai-Thomae

Egypt

Ajalon, Canard, Combe, Crowell 1926, Gutschalk 1938, 1947, Haroun 1931, Khawater, S. Lane Poole 1925, Mohr 1896, Pollak, Poppel, Thomas, Watt, Mustafa Zaid 1962, 1973

North Africa

Brunschwig, Hazard 1973 (and cf. E37-12), Julien, Marqua, E. Mercet, Zennaro 1949

The Turks (general)

Barrold 1928, 1932, Cohen 1955, 1948, 1951-2, 1962, 1963, Tolstoy, Witzel 1934

The Seljuks Turks

Cohen 1953, 1960, Hovvi, Kallioğlu, Lammont, Samailah, Turan, Zacherer

The Ottoman Turks

Babinger 1919, Barlow, Behlmann-Saunders, Brinsford, Brinsford 1913, Dajfer 1953, Isack 1954, 1973, 1969, Jorga 1908, Koprulu 1931, 1935, Lerner 1957, Lindner, Thomas, Uzunçiftlik, Witzel 1934-1,2

The Mongols

Abel-Rimaud, Barlow, Bayle, Chabot, Howorth, B. Lewis 1968-2, Meyvart, Ohsawa, Richard 1941, 1969-2, 1970-1, 1973-2, 1979-3, Robert 1973, Schen 1979, Sizer 1954, 1963, 1973, Stearns 1979, Spuler 1945-1,2, Verriest, Voegelin

The Jews

Chazan 1943, Goshen 1947, Grätz, D. Jacoby 1967-2, 1972, Koch, Mann, Prater 1967, 1979 1960-2, Schen 1962-1, Starr 1959, 1969

THE CRUSADER STATES

The crusader states in Palestine and Syria (general)

Elkharbi, Du Cange, Edgway 1977-1, Fink 1953, Harbeck, Hirsch Herzog,

Holmes 1977, Hüb 1977, Johns 1974, Luncman, Mayer 1983-1, M. Morgan, Nicholson 1955, 1973, Power 1985, Quaresima, Roy 1983, Richard 1976-6, 1985-2, Runciman 1962, J. Russell 1958, 1972, 1985, Small 1973

The county of Edessa

Beaumont, Demircioz, Gindler, J. Laurent 1924-2, Nicholson 1954, Te-Gripas as Iskenderian

The principality of Antioch

Abulafia 1975, Cahen 1940, Farman 1978-1, Haryss 1974, Kandrinsky, Kugler 1942, Roy 1896-3, 1900, Rochas, Rowe 1966, Yvostak

The county of Tripoli

Richard 1963, 1982-2, 1985-1

The Latin kingdom of Jerusalem (general)

Baldwin 1955, Beaumont 1970, Berchem, Chetani, Coudet, Dalmat, Ehrenkreutz 1966, Harnand 1970, 1979-2, Hüb 1976, Jackson, Kodar 1978-1, 1982-1,2, S. Lusa Poole 1926, Mayer 1978-2, 1982-2, 1983-2, 1984-2, Moore 1933, Power 1982-2, 1984, 1989, 1972-1, 1977, 1980-1, 1983, Richard 1979-2, Riley-Smith 1971-1, 1977-1, 1978-2, Rohricht 1879, 1896, Small 1969, 1977

Jerusalem—the crown and royal government

Anker, Berra, Boeken, Bohm, Buckley, Doda, Edbury 1979, Fossier 1973-2, Grandclaude, Oestermann, Gosh, B. Hamilton 1978-2, Housley 1964, Igin, LaMonte 1932-1, Mayer 1967, 1972-1,2, 1978-1, 1980-2, 1983-2, 1985, Riley-Smith 1979, 1985, Runciman 1962, Small 1962, P. Williams, Wolf

Jerusalem—lordships and fiefs

Baldwin 1956-2, Cahen 1957-1, Chandez de Brailon, Chikah, Edbury 1983, B. Hamilton 1981, Hazard 1978, Johnson, LaMonte 1937, 1938-1,2, 1942, 1944, 1947, 1950, Le Virey-Lucas, Mac Lenn 1876, 1978-2, 1982, 1983, 1984-2, Mayer 1980-1, 1982-1, 1984-1, 1985-1-4, Nickerson, Poin-Gordon, Power 1951-3, 1954-1959, Roy 1895, 1896-1,2, Richard 1970-1, 1954, Riley-Smith 1972, 1973-2, Rodi de Colkenberg 1944, 1965, 1977-2, 1983, Runciman 1964, Schlumberger 1896, Wierwille 1977

Jerusalem—constitutional struggles

Jackson 1964, Jacoby 1966, LaMonte 1932-2, Land, Mayer 1980-3, Power 1961, 1964, Riley-Smith 1971-2

Jerusalem—the crusades

LaMonte 1929, Mayer 1964, 1976, Richard 1980-1

Jerusalem—rural settlements

Bertoniotti 1962, Cahen 1950-2, Power 1971-1, 1952-1, Ponsot, Pringle 1965, 1966-1,2, Richard 1963-2, Riley-Smith 1963

THE CHRISTIAN CHURCHES

The Greek Orthodox church in the Byzantine empire (to 1204)

H. Beck, Every, Hoffmann 1928, Hünsey 1931, Lab 1932, Michel 1959, Orosomus

The Greek church in other Greek states

Chrysostomides, Karposilos, Pallasides

The Greek church in Cyprus

Ephraïm, Gil 1977, Macken, Mavroulis

The Greek church—actions and union 1204-1453

Bochler, Clément, Desnick 1881, 1896, 1900, Ever-Kingsworth 1946, 1952, 1953,

Constantople 1933, Gies, Gill 1959-1,2, 1979-1,2, Halecki 1930, Heide, Hofmann 1933, 1938, Jans 1933, 1969, Jugie 1941, Michel 1934, 1939, 1943, 1947, 1952, Nöel 1963, Nordan 1903, Reberg 1973, Runciman 1913-2, 1, I. Ryan, Savitsky, Spence, Viller

The Greek church in Palestine and Syria

Granel, Nardella 1975, Nazara, Papadopoulos 1910, 1938, 1951

The Roman Catholic church (general)

Fedako 1973, E. Hamilton 1979-2, Latorté 1942

The Roman church in the Latin empire

Brown, E. Brown, Fransa, Sennabiller, R. Wolf 1944, 1948, 1954-2

The Roman church in Frankish Greece

Deaux 1962, Fedako 1968, 1974, Granel 1933, Jans 1958, Langnes 1946, Pava gopoulos

The Roman church in Cyprus

Mos Latorté 1944, Richard 1950-2, 1969-1, Rodt de Collenberg 1979-1, 1912-1,2

The Roman church in Palestine and Syria

Baldwin 1936-1, Brandage 1962, Elm 1975, Friedman, E. Hamilton 1973, 1979-1, 1983, 1984, Hampel, Hanson, Hunsant 1974, 1984, Hunsak 1942, Jacobs, Kader 1962-3, 1983-1, 1985, Kikha, Mos Latorté 1934-1, Mayer 1977-1, 1982-3, Riam 1975, Richard 1948, 1953, 1979-4, 1982, Riley-Smith 1978-1, Rührich 1917, Rowe 1857, 1963, Rodt de Collenberg 1977-1, Schorn 1982-2, Thomas, D. Williams

The eastern Christian churches

Adya 1964, Carulk, Charon, Dauvillier 1956, 1957, Dik, Floy 1974, 1975, E. Hamilton 1978-1, Hamilton, Hall 1972, Jans 1929, Kewen 1940, Lamrous 1901, 1 Martin, Minardus, Nale-ros Schölsberg, Nasallah 1912, Ormanian, Prawer 1975, Salts 1957, 1958, Spuler 1964, Thamaru, Ter-Mikaelian

PREACHING ORDERS AND MISSIONS

The preaching orders and missions (general)

Altaner 1934, Baldwin 1963, Cawdery 1984, Dauvillier 1979, Kader 1964, Montalban, Morik, Poller 1944, 1922, 1973, Rademiller, Richard 1941, 1949-1,2, 1957-1,2, 1959, 1960-1, 1970-2, 1977-1, 1982-1, Roudiles, I. D. Ryan, Siberry 1911, Soranzo, Troll

The Franciscans

Davies, Gotschewich, Jacepsont, Lamrous 1925, 1926, 1929, Perra, Pellegrini, Runciman 1953, 1954-1,2, Schellmayer 1925, 1958, Simons, Tisserant, Val

The Dominicans

Altaner 1934, Lohmar 1932, 1975-1, Monaster de Villard 1944-1, Sauer 1952

MILITARY ORDERS AND WARFARE

The military orders (general)

Bair-Thiele 1964, Elm 1980, Fleckenstein 1980-1, Percy 1962, 1964-2, Horis 1966, Prawer 1980-3, Prutz 1906-2

The Knights Hospitaller

Azoulayevski, Broun, Brockman, Delaville Le Roulx 1904, 1913, Garcia-Larraguna,

Herguez 1978, 1880-1,2, Hestonad 1960, King 1949, Luntell 1955-1,2, 1959-1, 1961, 1962, 1963-1, 1964-1, 1970-1,2, 1972, 1975-1,2,3, 1976, 1978, 1980-2, 1982, T. Miller, Prutz 1908-1, Riley-Smith 1967, Rossi 1978, Slachair, Wicks

The Knights Templar

Barker 1972, 1973, Boustark 1972, Bulet-Thiele 1964, 1974, Campbell, Delisle, Pinks, Flackematten 1980-2, Ponsy 1971, Lavacas, Melville 1974, 1980, Persoud 1974, Piquet, Prutz 1888, Trudon des Ormes

The Teutonic Knights

J. Arnold 1978, 1980, Beeckmann, Casper 1924, Christmann, Cohen 1930, Ferriar 1974, 1982, Forrester, Hillich, Hübner 1923, 1966, Koch, Freit 1877, Q. Schercher, Serra, Tinsler, Uribe 1980, 1981, Wal

Other military orders

Bertand, Brug, Cachon, Cramer 1952, Delaville Le Roulx 1893, Ponsy 1971, 1972, Lomas 1963, 1965, L-L. Martin, O'Callaghan 1979, 1981, 1975-2, Revilla Valto, Shaker

The art of war

Acherff, Conrad, DeFreuch, Gillingham 1984, Harle 1982, John, Lee, M. Marlar, Omas, Perry, Partridge, Partridge, Small 1954

Military architecture

Andrews, Bona 1967, 1971, 1977-4, Ben 1977, 1978, Bruns, Brown, Crowell 1923-1, Dana, Deschamps 1930-1, 1934, 1937, Du Marel du Baleson, Dunbar, Pedden, Forbes-Bayle, Gerule 1929, Gottwald 1936, 1940, 1981, Gough, Grubbs 1970, Helmsberger, John 1931, 1944, 1947, Kedar 1971, 1978-2, 1985-2, King 1930, Lawrence, Maggiorini, Mahari 1921-1,4, McLeod, Morgan, Miller-Winter, O'Neil, Pinks, Ray 1971, Robb y Luch 1908, Seidl, Serrano, Small 1950, Traquah 1905, 1986, Thoms

Naval warfare

Ahrweiler, Colin 1910, D. Jacoby 1981, Manfred 1876, 1902, Metzger, Roul 1926

TRADE AND COMMERCE

Trade and commerce (general)

Almagia, Ashur 1918-2, 1962, J. Balaz, Cohen 1950-3, 1963-1, Caulton, Dancett 1948, Dacellier, Ghentall, Hous, Hoyt, Holman 1952, D. Jacoby 1979, A. Lewis 1931, Lopez 1940, 1952, Piroune, Proux 1921-2, Pryor 1984-1, Ragusa, Richard 1923-1, 1965-2, Rung, Riley-Smith 1973-4, Sayona 1984-4, Schaebe 1906, Slesar 1967, Thubert, Welladen 1977

Trade and commerce—Byzantine empire

Antonialis-Bilicou, Boryat 1964, 1976, Briliaru 1938, Charon 1933, Chrysostomides, G. Day 1977, Godelle, Lopez 1945, 1973

Trade and commerce—Italy

Ashur 1975-2, 1976-2,3,4, Balaz 1973, Briliaru 1929, Byrne 1919, 1930, Cohen 1973-2, Cipriella 1968, Coniglio, J. Day, Gurnack, Hayon, Kedar 1976, 1982,2, Luntell 1959-2, Luzzini 1968, 1974, 1982, Manfred 1933, Mulbach, Muzo 1972, Peirich, Pryor 1977, Ramar 1965, 1977, Roberts 1921, Schaebe 1896, Soitia, Tharel 1979

Trade and commerce—Catalonia

Capmany y de Montpalau, Sayona 1938, 1933, 1936-2, Treppo

Trade and commerce—Provenance

Germany 1861, Rambert

Trade and commerce—Islamic locale

Ashby 1876-1, 1877, 1878-1, Cohen 1931-1, 1963-2, 1964, Elmer-Krona 1936, Fischel, Gerson 1938, Lohé 1929, 1962, 1963, Rabin, Richard 1964-1, Sarsant, Zacharzewski

Crusade sites

A. Cartellani 1900, Cassel 1955, 1969, Comstock 1962, Dersat 1976, Gottlieb 1872, 1885, Kufner 1974, Luchaire 1900, Mawad, Michael, Rastoul

CULTURE

Islamic culture

T. Arnold, Briggs, Carré de Vaux, Crowell 1932, 1952-2, Fark 1946, 1965, Gabriel 1931, Grensbauer, R. Hamilton 1949, R. Hartmann, Krenner, Mich. Richmond 1934, Tormaa 1932

Byzantine culture

Baynes, Dall'Aglio d'Almeida 1953, Diehl 1933, Eluard, Galey, Jarrin 1944, 1975, Loebl, Miller, Poma, Sotias 1926, Sotomay, Striker, Tassilo, Weitzmann 1944

Armenian culture

Bellandier 1929, 1934, Des Hameulas 1934, 1965, 1973, Dvornikova, Herzfeld, Khachaturian

Frankish culture in the Latin empire

Artal, Jaulin 1946, Lafont

Frankish culture in Crete, the Aegean, and Cyprus

Bossé 1977-2, Buchen 1943-1, Eslan 1892, Gersia 1906, 1914-1, Hasluck 1908-1, 1909, 1911, Menegopoulos, Rubio y Lloch 1898, Sotias 1955-2, Struck, Tour, Thérèse 1923, Wagn, British Committee

Frankish culture in Rhodes

Baldacci, Bossé 1977-2, Fausto, Gabriel 1921, Gerola 1914-2, Lejarczyk 1936-1,2, Malusi 1921-2,3, 1923, Manos, Reckers

Frankish culture in Cyprus

Bossé 1977-2, Eslan 1896-1,2, 1899, Jeffery

Frankish culture in other places

Egami, Hasluck 1908-2, Vincent 1957

Frankish culture in Palestine and Syria (general)

Bossé 1977-1, Boreika, Fokis 1962-1, Frolow 1965, Knaust, Meuser 1976, 1985, Pfeiffer, Fritz 1952, Salameh-Sarkis, Vies, Weitzmann 1962

Frankish painting in Palestine and Syria

Bagain 1950, Bossé 1977-1, Borg 1961, Buchthal 1939, 1957, Bulst-Thiele 1979, Diehl 1924, Drossaile, Fokis 1969, 1976, 1977, 1982-2, Rosen-Applon, Stort, Weitzmann 1963, 1964, 1972-1,2, 1973, 1976, Wernsdorf

Frankish sculpture in Palestine and Syria

Bagain 1978, Barach 1976, 1977, Bossé 1977-1, Borg 1968, 1972, Deschamps 1900-2, 1932, Egels, Fokis, Fokis 1975, 1978, 1985, Gerner-Darwad, Heischel Simon, Praver 1974, Strzygowski

Frankish architecture and archaeology in Palestine and Syria

Abel, Azzam, Bagain 1961, 1952, Berliere, Rikar, Bossé 1977-1, Brete-Bautier, Frach Hazen, Ruzar, Chaptain, Chermant-Gossens 1960, 1966, 1966, Courat, Cozzarini,

Dickert, Eulert 1923, 1925, Fields 1977, Forsyth, Gardner, Goldmann, B. Hamilton 1947, Harvey, Horn, Z. Jacoby 1979, 1980, 1981, 1982, Johan 1939, Kedar 1943-5, Köhnle, Lough, Langsdorf, Moore, Murphy-O'Connor, Orfale, Oradach 1973, 1975, Piles, Porter, Pringle 1983, 1985, 1986, 1987, Richmond 1938, Saffin, Vissel, Vincent 1914, 1923, 1932, 1936, Vogel 1860

Crossed literature

Bickler 1909, 1926, Cohen 1957-2, Cook 1972, 1980, Cramer, Duparc-Quoc, Fagles, Hazen, Holawa 1937, Höhle, Irwin, Jarmey, Labadie 1945, Martens, Myers, Hellmann, Pretzel, Richard 1953, 1964-2, Roy, Schäfer, Spackelmeier, Surua, Sushberg 1968, Vogel 1981, Westhoff-Eggert, Wisniewski

Language teaching

Altner 1937, Huggins 1964, Richard 1974-1

Selective Index of Modern Co-authors, Editors, and Translators

and of Medieval Authors Not Listed in Alphabetical Position
in Sections H and J

(Z means name also appears in alphabetical position
in secondary section)

Abel, F. M. — D1, D3, D89; Vancas 1914,
1913, 1915; Z

Aeropelito, G. — H

Adams, W. — L31

Adina, G. — F — N18, N14

Aldair Morina, C. — Agostin Moya

Aleixas I Comneno — E2

Alkhan, L. — D3, Y2; Z

Aljos, G. — B1

Aman, M. — G1, Z

Amias, D. H. K. — A19, B1

Andras, A. Z. — C18, Z

Argenti, F. P. — A1, Z

Arantes, I. — Y1

Atlys, A. S. — A2, Z

Austrian, M. — D

Auvray, L. — L29

Belinger, F. — Goldsber, Z

Belen, I. — D9

Beldner, E. — D4, D1

Berthgen, F. — Hange 1949; Z

Bignell, B. — Hara, Z

Bird, I. L. — H97

Bisby, D. — Hamilton, B. 1978-2, 1979-1, Z

Blair, M. — S50; Z

Blair, D. — D9

Blawie, M. W. — Seton 1953-2, Z

Bling, F. — E2, E3

Bir Holman — E3

Bischof, A. — S10

Bisby, D. — H1

Bisby, I. W. — D1, Z

Bischoffmeyer, Y. — G2

Bisby, R. — F7

Bisby, M. L. — E4

Bischoffmeyer, A. — B2

Bisby, R. H. — A3, M3

Bisby, A. C. — A4

Bisby, I. S. — C1

Bischoffmeyer, F. Z. — E3, E8

Bisby, I. — G34, D3, H2, H3, D1

Bisby, L. T. — H23, M3

Bisby, A. R. — E7

Bischoffmeyer, M. — B11; Z

Bischoffmeyer, M. — D7, F1, Z

Bisby, E. — L29

Bisby, A. — Y11

Bisby, G. — D4-13, D44

Bisby, G. — S32

Bischoffmeyer, L. — T1

Bisby, E. M. — H149

Bischoffmeyer, F. — G1

Bischoffmeyer, F. — Y2, Y1

Bischoffmeyer, F. — Y19

Bisby, J. — G3, H48, H100

Bischoffmeyer, C. — Y — G20

Bisby, M. — G4

Bischoffmeyer, C. — L29

Bischoffmeyer, E. — G5, Z

Bisby, I. A. — X18; Z

Bischoffmeyer, A. — L4, L3

Bisby, J. D. — E8

Bischoffmeyer, G. I. — S31; Z

Bisby, L. — H104, H96, D44 1934, Z

Bisby-Bischoffmeyer, G. — H19; Z

Bisby, W. C. — B1

Bischoffmeyer, A. D. — D4 — C2

Bischoffmeyer, R. I. C. — D22, D23

Bischoffmeyer, G. W. — C19

Bisby, A. — S48

Bischoffmeyer, J. A. — C3, H43, Z

Bisby, C. — C30

Bischoffmeyer, M. — H

Bischoffmeyer, M. — M4

Bisby, G. — C21

Bisby, J. A. W. — E3, E4

Bisby Thiele, M. L. — H107, H130; Z

Bischoffmeyer, C. — C22

Cabon, C. — C16, H7, M8, M11, Z

Cabon, M. — S32, Z

Cabon, C. — C23

Cabon, R. — S42

Cabon, I. — S43

Cabon, S. — S1

Cabon, M. — A18

Cabon, F. — E9

- Casper, E. - L26; Z
 Cass, R. - S11, Y2; Z
 Chabot, E. M. - Q8
 Chabot, J. A. - G4, K6, E7, R9; Z
 Chalazien, P. - M22; Z
 Chalotzkydyka, L. - H
 Charlebois, T. J. - P2
 Charbon de Breuille, R. - E10; Z
 Chénouffe, M. - S26, S28, S34
 Chénouff, M. - M32, M44
 Chénouff, M. - H
 Chiquais, H. - F7
 Chiron, A. - G7, H103, H104, H105
 Choussier, J. - M
 Choussier-Guerra, C. - F5; Z
 Colburn, C. D. - A3, G8
 Colla, G. - F4
 Combe, E. - D44, F3; Z
 Comras, Anne - H
 Conder, C. R. - D13, D16, H6; Z
 Courabish, G. - M5; Z
 Corbett, H. L. - H30
 Courtes, H. - D71
 Courtes, G. - M4
 Courtes, A. - L4
 Courty, G. - Haver 1944
 Côté, D. H. - F11
 Crawford, R. W. - C43
 Criss, L. S. - Capé 1973
 Crispinacville, H. - A4; Z
 Cuzzoni, H. de - Y18

 Daurert, G. - L43
 Daurillet, J. - Pellet 1973; Z
 David, C. W. - H123; Z
 Davis, R. H. C. - C44
 Day, G. W. - Quastler 1976; Z
 Delebecq, H. P. - M23
 Delarive Le Breck, J. - M6, M24, M1-3, M13, M12; Z
 Delorme, P. H. - L3
 Denton, G. T. - Q2; Z
 Depire, E. - L45, L46
 Des Forcades, S. - Desmoulin; Z
 Deschamps, P. - M2; Z
 Desrosier, C. - S25-27
 Desprey - C45
 Desrobert, M. - A7, A18
 Dignard, G.A.L. - L37; Z
 Dignat, P. - C4, F1, F2; Z
 Desrobert, A. - C28
 Dery, R. P. - J1, J26, J27
 Ducan - H8
 Delaurie, E. - B5, G8, E1, V1; Z

 Dupont-Quoc, S. - M146; Z
 Dupont, E. - E12
 Durieux, P. - S43
 Duval, R. - D17, D18

 Eberick, E. - Dadi 1934; Z
 Edberg, P. W. - C46, C47, E13, M13; Z
 Edde-Bernard, A. M. - J24
 Eiler, P. - B6
 Emondreux, A. S. - H14; Z
 Einfeldberg, S. - G59
 Elm, E. - Schreiner 1982; Z
 Elmer - E13
 Erdmann, C. - L8; Z
 Esch, J. J. - Hoyt 1947
 Esch, C. - F7
 Etouckier - G1

 Fard, E. - C23, M32, H85
 Farnes-Lévy, M. L. - D18, D20, Mayer 1976; Z
 Fathert, E. L. - D21
 Fata, H. - U2; Z
 Fichter, H. - D22
 Fichter, W. - D23
 Ficht, A. - B4; Z
 Fourn, M. - M4
 Foids, L. - C43; Z
 Freeman-Greenfield, G.S.P. - B8
 Friedman, L. J. - C34
 From, Chas, C. - S40
 Fuhrmann, H. - Huetzel 1973, Meyer 1972-1
 Fungelli, G. - A6
 Fuchs, P. - C27

 Gaborita, A. Z. - M4
 Gaborik, P. - C3; Z
 Gato, P. B. - H10
 Gaudin, P. - L47
 Gaudetray-Demoury, M. - D24, J23, J42; Z
 Gay, M.M. - L13; Z
 Gelsch, J. - W1
 Gaborik, E. - Q2; Z
 Goss, H.A.R. - H7, K4, Barford 1928; Z
 Goss, W. - C38, D25
 Goussier, J. - C81, J27
 GR, J. - G13; Quastler 1976; Z
 Grubert, G. del - S46
 Guay, M. J. de - J22, J23, J25
 Guano, S.O.P. - M3; Z
 Gull, J. - H17, H19
 Gulabovich, G. - G12; Z

- Gerdahl, J.—U2; Z
 Gerdziro, H. G.—E13
 Gerdziro, J. C.—D26
 Gerdyano, C.—L36
 Gerstein, H.—*Quinquennial 1934, Vauder*
 1935; Z
 Gergora, N.—E12
 Gervasa, P.—E1, E36; Z
 Gidger of Akas'—E1
 Girard, V.—P4; Z
 Girou, V.—D27
 Gyllstrom, A.—Arnell, T.
 Gilmard, J.—L36, L32
 Girona, G. G.—C36-38

 Haal, R. 191—A9
 Hambley, E.—K19
 Hagenfeld, O.—L13
 Hagenmeyer, H.—H31, H37, M9; Z
 Hall-Cole, M. W.—E13, S26
 Halphen, L.—G13
 Halutzynsky, T. T.—L23, L36
 Hamilton, R. W.—P4; Z
 Harpe, K.—V4; Z
 Hartman, R.—D26; Z
 Harrod, H. W.—E11, E13, E18, Section
 1934; Z
 Hasenbaur, A.—G14, H; Z
 Hoffmann, M.—E18 1930, Pockmanna
 1934
 Hoffmann, F. de—A26, A26
 Hovig, R.—D29
 Hovig, P.—D26; Z
 Hovig, ("Hovig")—E2
 Hovig, L. H.—D21
 Hickman, W. C.—Subgroup 1939
 Hirsani, B.—C46, M18, M25, M6,
 M8; Z
 Hill, J. H. and L. E.—H34, H36; Z
 Higgins, C.—H37, M16
 Hill, F. K.—J46; Z
 Hoffmann, G.—G15; Z
 Moh, P. H.—C6, M11, S26; Z
 Holmstrom, W.—L16, V5; Z
 Hoyt, C.—D16, H39, H39; Z
 Hovig, G. Y.—P7
 Hovig, M. T.—G17
 Hovig, M. A.—G17, G19 U4; Z
 Hovig, M. A.—G17, M11, M11, M11,
 M11
 Hovig, J. M.—*Quinquennial 1933,*
 Section 1934; Z
 Hovig, J. M.—C36-38, M46, H134,
 H131; Z

 Imperiale di San' Angelo, C.—D19
 Isak, H.—E13, E18; Z
 Isak, M.—X1; Z

 Jacob, D.—D13-34, E29; Z
 Jaffe, P.—L1
 Jahn, K.—E13, E13; Z
 Jahn, L.—P8
 Jahn, E. M.—S47
 Jahn, G. E.—A5; Z
 Jahn, E.—M16
 Jahn, Y. C.—M11
 Jahn, C. H.—E13, D46, Z
 Jahn, E.—L31; Z
 Jahn, J.—A11
 Jahn—K1

 Kämpf, H.—Hamm 190
 Kämpf, H.—G30
 Karp, L.—E26, Y1
 Karp, C. H.—V6—Y11
 Karp, B. Z.—C12, M12, A12, A12
 1934; Z
 Karp, E.—L1, L1, L13
 Karp, S. de—G13, H27
 Karp, G. H.—D26
 Karp, J.—Barnet
 Karp, P.—C13; Z
 Karp, E.—D14, D44
 Karp, E.—D17
 Karp, C.—H134, M26, H39, Z
 Karp, M.—G13
 Karp, C.—D26
 Karp, E.—G13
 Karp, E.—S12; Z
 Karp, E.—D26
 Karp, A. C.—C6, C54, H114
 Karp, H. C.—S24-27; Z
 Karp, R.—C14; Z

 Lacroix, B.—C21; Z
 Lacroix, A. E.—C13; Z
 Lacroix, A. E.—H1 1970; Z
 Lacroix, J. L.—C1, H1, H1, H1; Z
 Lacroix, E. H.—A12
 Lacroix, S. P.—B6; *Quinquennial; Z*
 Lacroix, C. V.—H29; Z
 Lacroix, E.—L36
 Lacroix, V.—G14, C1, Z
 Lacroix, L.—Section 1974
 Lacroix, J. M.—G13, H21, H26
 Lacroix, V.—P4, P1; Z
 Le Quen, M.—H13
 Le Quen, G.—D46, F13, E11

- Leachman, P. C. - L49
 Leclercq, H. M. - M44b
 Leffler, R. - S4b
 Leonard, F. G. - M14 Z
 Lewis, R. - C8, C9, I3b, H4b 197b Z
 Liffers, A. - E2b
 Lindeboom, A. - P42, Z
 Linnard, G. - N13
 Lomanto, R. J. - Q4-4; Z
 Lombardo, A. - S4, S6, S8, S26, S27
 Longman, J. - H44, H51, Q3, Q4, Z
 Lopez, D. - Hernandez
 Loppens, E. E. - L2b
 Lovinck, A. - C10, C71, Abels 1972, Z

 Mackenna, L. - D4
 Makinich, M. - D4b
 Malinckel, W. - C3
 Massa, G. D. - Q2b
 Marry, A. de - M27
 Martin, M. E. - S13
 Mas Luria, I. de - D42, E22, H22, H24,
 E2, E3, S4, S15; Z
 Mas Luria, R. de - H7, H22
 Mass Carlsberg, J. de - H43, Z
 Masarik, A. - L2b
 Maurice of Edmon - E3
 Mayer, H. E. - A13, A34, C12, C36, D43,
 E21, H1a, H1b, M28, M29, N28, T2, Z
 Masek, A. - M, H
 Matuszewska, E. - D44-46
 Matyja, J. E. - C27
 Mats, F. de - G29
 Matheides Phil. E. - Mass Carlsberg, Z
 Merder, G. - F9
 Metcalf, D. H. - E4, E12, E13, E24-32
 Meyer, J. - D47
 Michael the Syrian - E4
 Michel, F. - H96, H114
 Michelson, H. V. - G29
 Michien, J. - H16
 Migne, J. P. - G28, H48, H79, H7, E23,
 M14
 Mikulovich, P. von - P4, P10
 Milos, L. - L2b
 Milzmann, S. - D4b
 Mital, G. - A13, H4, H7
 Molinar, A. - G29
 Mollet, G. - L48, L44, L49, L51; Z
 Mont-Faucon, A. - H12
 Morcos, M. - C73
 Morjan, G. G. - C24
 Morgan, I. de - E23; Z
 Morgan, M. E. - C26-28, H43, Z

 Morosini della Rocca, R. - S1, S16, S17,
 S29
 Morosini, C. - C18; Z
 Mosler, J. - S41
 Mosler, U. - Q2b
 Morozzi, L. A. - G32

 Mullins, C. A. - Amari
 Musci-Bianchi - E13
 Mus, E. - B14
 Musier, M. - E13
 Mus, H. - A11
 Musmann, A. - G13, H32
 Musil, D. M. - H44y 1946, Z
 Mutschler, R. G. - G14
 Nasser, H. - S18

 Ostler, H. - C40

 Padynowski, G. - H1
 Papadopoulos-Karman, A. - G25
 Para, G. - H8
 Para, F. - H44b
 Paterson, C. - Uroglio
 Paul, E. - H8
 Pearson, J. D. - A17
 Pellet, P. - E2b, Z
 Pelletier, E. - H
 Perlmutter, M. - Y1
 Perini, C. - Q4
 Perini, A. - Perini 1971, Richard
 1973-4; Z
 Periz, G. H. - G24, H24, H24, H21,
 H21-121, H22, H234, L3
 Perini, A. - E24
 Peters, E. - G17
 Petit, E. - M29
 Petit, L. - F7
 Philagoras, A. - D49, D50
 Phoenix, J. - L4
 Philat, A. - A13
 Phoenix, A. - G13
 Pichler, D. E. - D51
 Polakow, E. - Q9
 Poulakis, E. - E4
 Proulx, J. - E13
 Proulx, A. - L2
 Proulx, J. - E13, D52, D53, H42; Z
 Proffitt, E. - H19, S29, S23, Y7
 Proulx, P. - L21
 Probst, H. - D24
 Prodymanov, T. - H7
 Proulx, V. - Y17

- Preis, M.—L37
 Preis, R.—H125, H126, H9, H9b; Z
 Prells, M.—H9-26

 Rasmussen, J.—L13, L14
 Rayner, W. M.—D93
 Reichelshausen—K13, K13
 Raymond, G.—G26, H9b, H19
 Reppert, G.—Y13
 Reuter, J. E.—L2
 Reznick, G. F.—E36
 Rey, E. G.—D94, D95, M13, M14, O4
 Congo; Z
 Reynaud, P.—H9d
 Riana, P. E. D.—G29, H12, H42, H96, Z2,
 H14, H15; Z
 Rios, G. W.—Saunders 1977
 Richard, E.—D38, H97, H17, M16, M17,
 H12, M33, M3, R4; Z
 Riccardi, E.—Y13
 Riley-Smith, J. A. C.—J13, H17; Z
 Rindberg, C.—L13; Z
 Rindow, E.—a19, D99, G45, G46,
 H9b, L13, M14; Z
 Risch, G.—H114, Z
 Rissi, R.—A26, Z
 Roldán, G.—P1; Z
 Roussel, P.—C41, Z
 Rovinsky, E. de—M24
 Rovinsky y Livsh, A.—Q68; Z

 Rubin, C.—H35-29
 Rudolph, S. F.—J7
 Sallé, R. S.—C13; Z
 Sallock, M.—H129
 Sand-S. S. de—H16, G42
 Sarfas, C.—P9
 Saragat, J.—C16, D44, D42, J16; Z
 Saragat, R.—D43
 Schefer—H19, K11
 Schlenker, G.—E40-42; Z
 Schmitt, G. M.—D64
 Schmitt, J.—G13
 Schmitt, G.—Y1
 Schopen, L.—J12, J13
 Schreier, P.—Lorenz: 1978, 1973-2
 Schur, M.—D45
 Schwegler, B. C.—C27
 Seif, F.—A23, Z
 Seppälä (Seppä)—K4, Y14
 Shann, sub—K24
 Silva Thorma, C. de—G42
 Simonsfeld, H.—H128, H134

 Smet, W. M. G. de—J13
 Small, R. C.—Kolar 1962-2; Z
 Somerville, E.—Y26; Z
 Spatz, A.—E43
 Spradley, G.—J28
 Spratt, E.—H6, D66; Z
 Stevenson, L.—H113
 Stewer, A.—H21, H48, H11, H33, H90b,
 H97, H126, H4
 Stiefeler, E.—K21
 Stiller, W.—H49, H43, H72, H95, H15
 Suárez Fernández, L.—Mesa Carrasco; Z
 Swank, F. E.—C11

 Tabá, G. L. F.—G29
 Taira, A. L.—L3, L24
 Thoms, A.—G44, G45, P10
 Theophilus—K2
 Thurn, E.—H158, J21, J22; Z
 Thomas, G. M.—H13, J26, J23
 Thomas, P.—A22, P11
 Tojter, T.—G36, G46, H33
 Tomachak, W.—D47
 Tomassini, A.—L4
 Toppin, M.—G47
 Topping, P. W.—Q5, Y14; Z
 Torberg, C. J.—P5, J12
 Tross, G.—J49
 Trues, A. S.—E4, Z
 Turner Bag—K17
 Tyne, B.—Pater

 Vanders, J. E.—Y16
 Van Milligen, A.—D48
 Vandy, DWTG—C38, C39
 Vidal, J. M.—L42, L44
 Vincent, L. H.—D49; Z
 Vinski, V.—Y16; Z

 Wellington, W.—P12
 Wengert, G.—C17
 Wink, M. de—P10
 Winters, G. L.—Bauer 1977-2
 Wolpert, L.—H3
 Woo, T. H.—Maur 1974
 Wolman, E.—Parrish; Z
 Wolschke, W.—L14
 Wot, G.—F3, J26; Z
 Wolkstein, L.—G48
 Woll, C.—P12
 Worch, P.—P1
 Woth, E. L.—McNeil, Simon 1973-1, 2
 Wormald, F.—Borchard 1957, 2
 Wright, J. E.—Q79

Waterchild, H. F. - B14

Wypart, A. - C49

Yak, H. - D71

Yoon, J. - E2, E44

Zacher, N. P. - Section 1911-4, Z

Zandvoort, E. van - B17

Zimmerman, P. - V7

Zwaan, L. - E2

INDEX

- [illegible]

- Alberic II, son of Ezzard; son of Ezzarion.
1281/2-1290/1 246, 248
- Alanya, 352, 484
- Alba Julia, 287, 484
- Albans, 229, 240, 242, 245, 290, 303-304, 371,
372, 374, 375, 385, 399, 311, 319, 323, 324,
327, 328, 330, 333, 343, 344, 348, 351, 404
- Albanians, Indo-European people, 178n, 342,
343, 366, 368, 373, 393, 371, 347
- Albano Lucania, 444; medieval bishop of, see
Pelagius 1215-1230
- Albarracín, 464, and see Saragón
- Albert, Hapsburg duke (?) of Austria
1424-1473, husband of Elisabeth of Luxembourg
1421-1429 and king (?) of Hungary
and (?) of Bohemia 1427-1439 and (?) of
Germany 1438-1439 276n, 283-284
- Albert (Aragón), patriarch of Jerusalem
1205-1212 136
- Albert of Aachen (Alb), German chronicler II
1126, 14, 43, 100
- Albigensian Crusade, 75, 171, 357n
- Albigensians, heretical Christian sect in south-
western France, 33, 35, 48, 136
- Albinoia, 324, 484
- Alfonso (Alexander II, son of Alfonso, son-in-law
of Welfarids 1435-son, 1435 200
- Algheros, 394, 484
- Alqops, 467, 476, 474-477, 477, 479-484, 487,
470-472, 474, 475, 484; ruler of, see Bal-
dwin 1097-1112, Alp Arslan 1113-1115, Zeng-
ids 1125-1187, Ayyubids 1187-1260; legend-
ary king of, see Bapheus
- Alfonso II (Alfonso de Aragón), pope 1061-
1073 254
- Alexander III (Orlando de Brindisio?), pope
1159-1181 48, 53, 121, 123, 132, 134
- Alexander VI (Rodrigo Borgia), nephew of Cy-
prius III; pope 1492 1507 345-352
- Alexander de Pons, poet c. 1220, 33, 48
- Alexandria, 164, 484
- Alexandria, 18, 25, 26, 36, 44, 57, 92, 93, 164,
424, 429, 430n, 434, 434, 483; patriarch of,
see Humbert (Humbert Lathie, 1174-1193),
Philothemus? (Melchior, 1477-1498) legend-
ary kings of, see Ephraim, Triemer
- Alqops, person "king" in Cyprus in 1426 (c.
1427), 177
- Almota II Angalos, brother of Isaac II, Byzan-
tine emperor 1193-1203 187
- Alonzo Chalgarras, Cretan landholder and rebel
II, ca. 1332-ca. 1350, 184, 188 204, 204, 213
- Alonso I Comares, Byzantine emperor 1080-
1104 40, 152, 305, 179, 340
- Alonso IV Comares, emperor of Trastámara
1403-1417 212
- Alfonso I ("the Warrior"), king of Aragón and
Navarre 1280-1334, cf. Castile and León
1280-1284 (1282), 131
- Alfonso III, grandson of James I; king of Ar-
gón 1285-1291 151n
- Alfonso V ("the Magnanimous"), king of
Aragon-Castile and (?) Sicily 1416-1458,
king (?) of Naples 1458-1460-1468 206,
278n, 300, 290, 293, 294, 300, 313, 323
- Alfonso II (Alfonso), son of Ferdinand (Fer-
nand) I; king of Naples 1494-1495 342
- Alfonso de Alvares, Portuguese, Burgundian
official (ca. 1440), 297, 204
- Alfonso Ardan, son of Raymond of St. Gilles,
count of Toulouse 1113-1148 374
- Alqops, 94; ruler of eastern, see al-Najaf 1062-
1080
- Al 1464-4-Hawad bin-Muhammad, (Malikah)
ruler of Zabid (ca. 1154) 473
- Al Pasha Chandalis, Ottoman grand vizir (ca.
1300), 247
- Alce of Champagne-Jerusalem, daughter of
Henry II and Isabella, wife of Hugh I of Cy-
prus 1200 1218, regent of Cyprus 1218-
1222, 1st wife of Bohemond V of Antioch
1222-1228 (assassinated), (wife of) Balduin
of Poitiers 1241-1246, regent of Jerusalem 1241-
1246 132
- Alia, 463, and see Isola
- Alia, wife of Isola de Brindisio ca. 1240 (c.
1272), 126
- Alp Arslan, son of Balduin; Seljuqid ruler of
Alqops 1113-1115, 424
- Alphonse, brother of Louis IX of France; count
of Poitiers 1246-1271 142, 143, 143-147
- Alps, 358n, 483
- Almon, 461; ruler of, see Hachetachafra
- Almora Lathie, Visconti admiral (ca. 1407), 375,
394, 397, 391, 204
- Amadeus VI ("the Green Count"), count of
Savoy 1343-1363 241
- Amalric, son of Isola and Malgued, count of
Jaffa 1175-1182, cf. Isola and Amalric 1154-
1163, king of Jerusalem 1163-1174, 152, 153,
374, 373, 389 381, 389 443, 413, 414
- Amalric de Lusignan, son of Hugh III; brother
of Jerusalem 1189-1197, titular prince of
Tyre, regent and co-ruler of Cyprus 1196-
1199 152, 153, 154, 157, 171n
- Amalric of Anjou, legendary king of Jerusa-
lem, 111, 112
- Almon 315, 485

- Amazigh, 340, 353, 354, 405
- Amberlin (or Androsin), Norman poet (fl. 1200), 119
- Amalaha, legendary hero, 305
- al-Aziz, 450–451 al-Muqataʿ, son of al-Muqataʿ
Finnish name of Egypt 130–133, 427, 428,
432, 439–442, 444a, 446, 455, 456
- Azar Ghafar, Ghaznavid ruler 1156–1159,
438
- Azzamat, legendary guest, 73
- Azulaḥ, legendary ancestor of Saladin, 73a,
112
- Azulaḥ-Ḥalaf, 340, 305, 313, 443
- Azaphiz, 445, lover of *see* William II Cilicia
1197–1202
- Azaria, 230, 235, 254, 256–258, 259, 263, 254,
245, 244, 248, 249, 251, 253–273, 279, 262,
263, 269, 271, 273, 273, 279, 280, 294, 300,
302, 311–313, 316, 307, 320, 326, 328, 331–
333, 379, 426, 426, 428, 428, 472, 485; ruler of,
see Seikidzats of Bitun 1091–1302, Ottomans
1299–1523
- Azharat, 340, 340, 445
- Azmea, 304, 309, 328, 332, 341a, 346, 378, 405
- Azmea, Cops, 146, 445
- Azmea de Pablos, papal collector (fl. 1440),
290, 305, 306, 108
- Azmea Ghaznavid-Basra, Governor in China
(c. 1450), 290
- Andrew II, son of John III, Arpalid king of Hungary
1305–1335, 141
- Andrew Collings, landholder in Cors (c. by
1334), 305
- Andrew Cornaro (Cornari), brother of Mark;
ambassador of Cyprus (c. 1477), 148
- Andrew Moorridge, Venetian admiral (in 1430),
263
- Andrew Zaitchak, Norman, survey (in 1490),
740
- Andronikos Euthymakomannos, son of Nikolaos,
Byzantine survey (in 1440), 305a
- Andronikos IV Palaiologos, son of John V;
Byzantine co-emperor 1375–1379, emperor
1379–1379, 242, 348
- Andronikos Palaiologos, son of Manuel II,
ruler of Thessalonica 1408–1423 (c. 1425),
230
- Andrew, 445
- Angel, Byzantine imperial dynasty in Constantinople 1145–1204, *see* Isaac II 1183–1185
100–emperor 1205–1206, Alexios III 1195–
1202, *and* *see* Eudokia, *see* also Theodore
Ducas (Angelos) “Comnenus”
- Angelina, French dynasty in Naples (“Sicily”) 1266–1442, *in* Sicily, Albania, Egypt, *and*
Achaia, 127, 132, 191, 218, 245, *and* *see*
Charles I of Anjou (1266) 1268–1281,
Charles II 1285–1289, Ladislaus 1316–1342;
in Hungary (and Poland), *see* Louis I 1342
1378–1382
- Angelina, *see* Giovanni-Maria Angelini
- Anjou, 373, 380, 372, 425, *and* *see* Charles I,
Charles II, count of, *see* Fulk V 1169–1179
- Ankara, 344, 273, 254, 279, 301, 330, 403
- Anania (of Bala), archbishop of Milan 1097–
1101, 135
- Anthony, master patriarch of Jerusalem 1260–
1164, 170a
- Anthony Andolia, master Bishop of Tivoli
(15th C), 149
- Anthony Carthe, master of Ottomans (in 1489),
136
- Anthony of Bergamo, Cypriot official (ca.
1300), 161
- Anthony of Mass, Franciscan, papal legate (in
1423), 256, 281a
- Antioch, 104, 106, 300, 107, 359–360, 371,
372, 373, 375, 176, 380, 485, patriarch of,
see Bernard of Valence (Latin, 1300–1330),
Dorotheos I (Syriac, 1434/5–1461)
- Antioch, principality, 124, 359–360, 371, 172,
372, 373, 379, 380, 385, 390–397, 402–409,
447–449, prince of, *see* Bohemond I 1099–
1101, Bohemond II 1126–1130, Raymond of
Pisidia 1134–1149, Bohemond III 1161–
1180, Bohemond IV 1201–1216, 1319–1323,
Raymond Roupen 1261–1269, Bohemond V
1233–1235, Bohemond VI 1235–1268 (1268–
1271), Bohemond VII (1268–1271), Bohemond
VIII 1271–1273, John de Lusignan (1271, 6,
1273); regent of, *see* Theodor 1151–1153,
1166–1167, Roger of Salerno 1112–1119,
Constance 1149–1153, 1160–1165, Reginald
of Châtillon 1113–1143; *see* also Henry
- Antioch, 261, 481, archbishop of *see* John of
Pisa del Caprino 1248–1250
- Apollonio Nicodemo, archbishop of Florence
1448–1479–1340
- Apollis, 109, 405, duke of, *see* Robert Guiscard
1079–1085, Roger Borsa 1085–1101
- Apollonius at Jerusalem, 73
- Apollonius, *see* Thomas Aquinas
- Aquasana, 380, 171, 172, 481, duke of, *see*
William IX 1096–1127
- Araha, 72, 485
- Araha language, vol. 100, 37, 40, 51, 52, 54, 381,
385, 386, 420, 431, 437–441, 446, 447, 450–
452, 465a, 467, 489, 470–473

- Amba**, Sennar people, 116f, 4-8, 18, 78, 86, 92, 118, 121, 45, 52, 73, 75, 118, 43-44, 46, 71, 73, 75, 76, 78, 86, 90, 236
- Amagon**, 23, 231, 244, 318, 371, 403, *kings of Aragon-Castile*, *see Alfonso I 1104-1134*, *James I 1213-1276*, *Alfonso III 1367-1391*, *Peter IV 1334-1387*, *Alfonso V 1416-1458*, *Portugal II 1479-1521*, *and see Eleanor Arcañi*, *see George Arcañi*
- Auchepelaga**, 191, 403 *duke of*, *see Manco I Sacaca 1207-1273*, *James I Crapo 1397-1418*, *William II Congo 1457-1465*
- Ardne**, 403, *and see Lambert*
- Arqon**, 250, 251n, 403
- Arqon**, 194, 250, 252, 258, 403
- Approcharma**, 298n, 402
- Arslan**, *Isma'ili*, *Chalman* *and*, 3, 39
- Armenia**, 382-404
- Armenia**, Cilicia, 152, 153, 376n, 378, 426, 440, 449, 452n, 472, 486, *kings of*, *see Peter I de Lusignan 1268-1292*, *Leon VI de Lusignan 1374-1377*, *prosecutor as*, *see Raymond Baupar (d. 1222)*
- Armenians**, *Irano-European people and Christian sect*, *see*, 52, 159, 178, 172, 173, 176n
- Arnold of Gales**, *crusader* *id.*, 1138n, 699
- Arnold of Lübeck**, *Brotherhood sister*, *German chronicler* *id.*, 1212), 70n
- Arnold of Turge**, *crusader of the Templars 1182-1184*, 30
- Arnold of Sene**, *bishop of Liège*, 314-1340 *id.*, 1194), 332
- Asaf**, *bishop of Martaban after 1099-1099*, 106, 154, 181
- Aspida**, *royal dynasty* *14 Hungary*, 89n-170n, *see* *Géza II 1141-1162*, *Imre III 1171-1194*, *Andrew II 1205-1235*
- Assal**, 406
- Asra**, 264, 404; *descent of*, *see* *Charles II Tocco 1429-1440*
- Artab**, 154, 406
- Arthur**, *legendary king of Britain*, 127
- Artia**, 400; *crusade of*, *see* *Robert I (d. 1210)*
- Artabida**, *Sassanian dynasty in Jerusalem to 1070*, *in Mesopotamia 310-1400*, 415, 426, 429
- Assalor**, 112, 429, 406; *crusade of*, *see* *Amalric 1134-1163*, *and* *id.*, *and* *id.*, 1094-1121
- Asra**, *Qereh lord of Galfipoli* *in 1254*, 233
- 'Asrah Pasha**, *Osmanli chronicler* *(15th C)*, 237n
- al-'Asrah**, *Shah*, *Mamluk* *and* *Qia*, *son of al-'Asrah*, *Assalid ruler of Damascus 1229-1237-463n*
- Asia Minor**, *see* *Asia*
- Assam**, *Greek monastery in Cyprus 170n*
- Assam**, *(Hachishirya)*, *landfill territorial unit in Persia and Syria*, *maror of*, *see* *al-Hasan bin al-Sabbah*
- Ass**, 406, *and* *see* *Bromo*
- Atkama**, *archbishop of Naples 871-902*, 4
- Atkama**, *Proskop*, *Greek metropolitan of Smokovo* *(in 1444)*, 209
- Atkma**, *city*, 182, 406; *Greek metropolitan of*, *see* *Michael Chavara 1182-1213*
- Atkma**, *diocese*, 189, 193, 195, 197, 206, 207, 214, 215, 218-220, 406, *protestant of*, *see* *Orhan de la Roche 1204-1223*, *date of*, *see* *Peter IV of Aragon*, *see*, 1379-1387
- Atkma**, *see* *Chalman Pflora*
- Atkma**, *Mamluk*, 187, 406
- Atkma**, 171, 256, 406
- Atkma**, *see* *Philip d'Anjou*
- Atkma**, 406, *and* *see* *Peter*
- Atkma**, *Proskop family in Cyprus*, 211n, 173, *see* *Anthony and John Atkma*
- Atkma**, 332, 406
- Atkma**, *monastic order*, 171
- Atkma**, 264, 266, 329, 332n, 344, 345, 406; *duke of*, *see* *Leopold VI 1180-1210*, *Albert V 1404-1409*, *Erasmus 1440-1457*, *archbishop of*, *see* *Ludwig 1453-1471*, *Frederick V 1457-1486* (1493), *Maximilian I 1486-1493* (1509), *Charles I 1519-1551* (1571)
- Atkma**, 161, 169, 332, 406
- Atkma**, 406, *and* *see* *Atkma*
- Atkma**, 329, 406
- Atkma**, 233, 246, 406, *and* *see* *Age*
- Atkma**, 406, *and* *see* *Peter*
- Atkma**, 280, 287n, 291n, 326, 323, 343, 344, 358, 406
- Atkma**, 409, 406
- Atkma**, 329, 406
- Atkma**, 238, 239, 348, 349, 352, 406, *and* *id.*, *see* *Umar 1204-1248*, *Khadi 1248 on*
- Atkma**, 329, 406
- Atkma**, *legendary hero*, 70n
- Atkma**, *bishop of Beccaria* *(in 1177)*, 4
- Atkma**, *Osmanli*, *Osmanli* *id.*, 1253, 240
- Atkma**, 262, 262, 406
- Atkma**, *Osmanli chronicler* *(15th C)*, 247n
- Atkma**, *al-Mamluk*, *son of al-Mamluk*, *Flammar* *son of Egypt*, 973-996, 425
- Atkma**, *al-Mamluk*, *son of al-Mamluk*, *id.*, 1214-1235, 463-463

- Babek, 496; ruler of, *see* *Arslānshāh* 1174–1202
- Babylon, *see* *Parthia*
- Bacon, *see* *Roger Bacon*
- Bagdad, 73, 87, 424, 434, 446; *caliphs* of, *see* *ʿAbd al-Muʾmin* 749–1258
- Behn, *Sophy*, legend 56, 49
- Baldwin (Berg), *Osman* commander of, 1467a, 157
- Baldric of Dol, French chronicler (fl. 1100), 42, 43
- Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury 1184–1190 ad–48, 153
- Baldwin (of Baugouart), son of Eustace II and Ida, count (I) of Flanders 1086–1105, king (II) of Jerusalem 1100–1118: 49, 161 603, 617, 168, 111 113, 115, 153, 350, 363, 364, 366, 367 313
- Baldwin of La Bourg (or Bourcq, “Schere”), count (II) of Edessa 1180–1178, king (III) of Jerusalem 1118–1131 311, 112, 314, 361, 363–364, 373–375, 386–390
- Baldwin III, son of Fulk and Melisende, king of Jerusalem 1143–1163, 312, 364, 373–375, 397, 429, 442, 443, 453, 454; wife of, *see* *Theodora Comnena*
- Baldwin IV (Ṭāhā Lāhīʿ), son of Amalric, king of Jerusalem 1174–1185 111, 112, 126, 374, 375, 382, 437
- Baldwin V, grandson of Amalric, king of Jerusalem 1185–1186 340
- Baldwin I, count (IX) of Flanders 1194–1205 and (VII) of Hainaut 1195–1209, Latin emperor of Romania 1204–1209 373, 374, 379, 386a
- Baldwin II (of Courtenay), Latin emperor of Romania 1228–1231 co-emperor 1231–1237 emperor 1237 (exposed) 1240?–1241 (killed) 1241–(1277), count of Flanders 1237–1256 156, 181
- Baldwin, legendary bastard son of Baldwin I of Jerusalem and Samaritana, 173
- Baldwin, de Nevers, sister married of Jerusalem (ca. 1420), 258
- Baldwin of Brabant, legendary crusader, 163, 164, 166
- Baldwin of Falkenberg, legendary count of Ratis, 113
- Baldwin of Morpheus, Cypriot (fl. 1294), 173a
- Baldwin, 41 48a
- Bali (Berg) Ottoman general (ca. 1490), 349
- Balun I Oghuz, son of Ruzubek, lord of Balun ca. 1204–1240, co-baib of Jerusalem 1228–1229 1229–1231, 1233–1240 383, 384; wife of, *see* *Margaret of Brabant*
- Balun of Falkenberg, brother of Baldwin, legendary count of Tripoli, 112
- Balun II of Hama, lord of Rasis ca. 1187–1190 313a
- Baltus Schenkel, 379, 379, 383, 466
- Baltus, 328, 328, 332, 339–341, 346–348 233, 314, 358, 364, 365, 368, 369 371, 373 276, 279, 383, 381, 313, 316, 386, 389, 386, 346, 467
- Baltus, Ottoman lord of Samsat in 1200 (fl. 1421), 347, 388
- Baltus-oglu Salomon, Ottoman envoy (ca. 1444), admiral (ca. 1453), 372, 373
- Baltus Sea, 467
- Barbar, 357, 467
- Barbans of City, daughter of Herman (I) 2nd wife of Sigismund 1406–1437 (d. 1431), 383
- Barbary, 14, 332, 467
- Barbours, 39, 467
- Barbours, 146, 393 467
- Barb, Flawless hunting family, 164
- Bar, 467, duke of, *see* *Lodovico Sforza* 1479–1484
- Barlas, *see* *Martian Barlas*
- Barlas, 169 467
- Barlas, Bergi Mamuk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1432–1450 151, 361, 363
- Barlas, *see* *Gulistan Barlas*
- Barl, 413; Count of, 372, 382, 383a
- Barlas, 329, 467
- Barlas, Quat Orthodox romantic order 173
- Barlas, *see* *Stephen Barlas*
- Barlas de Samsat, 19, 114, 123
- Barlas, 467
- Barlas, *see* *Jon Barlas*
- Barlas I (Yildirim, “the Thunderbolt”), son of Murad I, Ottoman sultan 1399–1402 (d. 1402), 140, 248–254, 277–279, 116; wife of, *see* *Olcay*
- Barlas II (Gök, “the Law-adding”), son of Murad II, Ottoman sultan 1441–1513 278–283
- Barlas (“al-Buraygh”), or-Muḥit Ruler-ad-Din, Sultan Mamuk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1266–1277 428 430, 434 435, 445
- Barlas, 467, river of, *see* *Carroll IV* 1058–1080, Claret 1080–1080
- Barlas, legendary house of Barlas and wife of the crown-prince, 108, 382
- Barlas, legendary wife of Orkai, 100
- Barlas-ur-Dordog, 171 467
- Barlas, 467, *and* *see* *Barlas, Barlas, Gök, Pagan, and Yilmaz*
- Barlas, *see* *Gregory Barlas*

- Bezanaria, 220, 407
 Bedford, 407, *duke of*, *see* John of Lancaster
 1414-1433
 Behem, *see* Michael Behem
 Beirut, 154, 374, 382-384, 404, 419, 479a, 487;
lord of, *see* John I of Beirut ca. 1194-1226
 Bein, 112, son of Gelin II, Byzantine-John ca. 1173,
Aspid king of Hungary 1173-1196: 121
 Bein Palarka, 395, 407
 Belfort, 407; *lord of*, *see* Raymond-Guyot (G-
 aye) 1209
 Belgrade, 158, 159-161, 367, 378, 379, 373, 380,
 382-383, 385, 391, 395, 399, 338, 318, 349,
 323, 328 342-343, 353, 407
 Beligaja, 171, 407
 Bellian: legendary daughter of Charlemagne,
 70a
 Benedetto Arrino Anzoli, Florentine jurist,
author (b. 1412, d. 1466), 93, 94
 Benedict XII (James, or Jacques, Fournier),
 pope 1334-1342: 73a, 79a
 Benedict Ema, Western ruler at Constantinople
 (in 1423), 295
 Benedictine, monastic order, (2), *and see* *Ag-*
nol of Liliath
 Bezanaria, 407; *bishop of*, *see* Ag-Ga 979
 Beirut, *bishop of* 1299-*ca.* 1200: 179
 Beirut, *see* John Beirut
 Beirut 238, 407
 Bergin's, 407, *and see* Anthony
 Berkovich, son of Malki-Sabbi Salimath cul-
 um 1594-1605: 103
 Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux 44, 313, *mon-*
ach, 8, 9, 16, 22, 43, 44, 49, 52
 Bernard of Valencia, Latin patriarch of Antioch
 1165-1112: 129
 Berry, 159, 407
 Bertrand (or Bartram) of Soler-Gilles, son of
 Raymond (37); names of Theodore 1185-
 1112, count of Tripoli 1109-1112: 373, 371,
 373, 402
 Bertuchon of La Brochepierre, Burgundian
eroy (in 1437), *author* (d. 1479), 366a, 375,
 389
 Bessarion (or Tobians), cardinal-prince 1479-
 1485, cardinal-bishop of Sabina 1485-1489,
of Barcelona 1489-1495, *of Sobies* 1495-
 1472, *Italian patriarch of Constantinople*
 1463-1473: 232
 Bolkay, 112, 407, *abbot of*, *see* Tote (b. 1448)
 Borkhous, 30, 13, 407
 Borkhous, 369, 407
 Boga, 328, 313, 334, 407, *and see* *Page*
 Black Death (plague), 1540-1550, 196, 260
 Black Sea, 313, 324, 228, 295, 299-301, 343
 349, 354, 253, 257, 372, 374, 380, 383, 385,
 385, 317, 319, 325 327 358, 407
 Black Sheep Pashas, *see* Kizilbashs
 Blodysore, *see* John Blodysore
 Blon, 238, 407, *and see* *Page*, *counts of*, *see*
Sophon 1009-1403, *Theobald V* 1152-1192
 Blugades, legendary king of Aleppo, 311
 Bobates, 367, 407
 Bobovich, *see* Giorgio Bobovich
 Bobovich Chavani, Indian conchologist (d.
 1407), 337
 Bobova, 477, 366, 326, 407
 Bogdan, chancellor of Serbia (in 1444), 299
 Bohemia, 363, 366, 407; *king of*, *see* Sig-
mond 1420 (1430)-1437, *Albert II* 1437-
 1439, *Vladimir (Ladislav)* 2 1432 (1437)-
 1437, *Vladimir (Ladislav)* 31 1471-1534
Maximilian Carlsburg 1471-1499, *and*
see *Elisabeth*
 Bohemond (or Timon), son of Robert Cra-
 nich prince (1) of Antioch 1099-1111 45,
 83, 161-162, 168, 313, 322, 334, 338, 363,
 364, 366, 391
 Bohemond II, son of Bohemond I, prince of
 Antioch 1126-1136 364-369 375 378 393
 Bohemond III, son of Raymond of Poitiers and
Constantine prince of Antioch 1165-1201:
 372, 394 395, 402
 Bohemond IV ("the Out-cast"), son of Bohe-
 mond III; count of Tripoli 1187-1212, prince
 of Antioch 1209-1216, 1219-1233, 379, 380
 395-397, 403, 404, 402
 Bohemond V, son of Bohemond IV; prince of
 Antioch and count of Tripoli 1232-1233:
 398, 397, 404, 405 *et al.*, *see* *Alien of*
Chapagne-darman
 Bohemond VI, son of Bohemond V; prince of
 Antioch 1232-1260 *et al.* (in 1273), count
 of Tripoli 1252-1273: 379, 386 404, 405
 Bohemond VII, son of Bohemond VI, count
 of Tripoli and *et al.* prince of Antioch
 1273-1287: 386, 387 403
 Borkhous, 333, 407
 Borkhous, 333, 404
 Borkhous, 404, *and see* *Ughed*
 Borkhous, 129, 403
 Borkhous, 278, 403
 Borkhous, *see* Borkhous
 Borkhous S, brother of Gervais; *marquis of*
Montfort 1192-1207, *lord of* *Thermodon*
 1204-1207: 394
 Borkhous VIII (Benedict Carmon), pope 1294-
 1303: 134, 151, 167

- Bastardo IX (Petrus Thomaeus), page 1349-1404, 251
Bastard, 248, 488
Bastard, 143, 496
Bastids, Turkish dynasty at Damascus 1144-1154, 434 see *Baglases* 1154-1158, *Isma'ili* 1155-1157
Basin, 278, 280, 340-343, 345, 347, 278, 368, 341, 343, 364, 372, 289, 285, 284, 364, 317, 322, 323, 324, 329, 333, 340, 345, 348, 488; *history of* see *Rafael Hincapi* 1448-1450; *large of* see *Turks* I 1233-1277-1290, *Turks* II 1404-1408, 1423-1443, *Sapien VI* Thomas 1404-1440, *Sapien VII* Youssef-wich 1442-1443
Bastonia, 228-231, 288, 286, 307, 313, 324, 488
Bastonia, see *John Bastonia*
Bastonia, 101, 120, 488, and see *Bastonia*; name of see *Godfrey* 14100
Bastonia-an-Mer, 113, 488, and see *Bastonia* (its name of, see *Damascus* 17 ca. 1040-1048); *Bastonia* III by 1040-after 1023
Bastonia, see *Le Bourg*
Bastonia, 481; *vicinity of*, see *Oslo Arpin* 14110, and see *Harpis*
Bastonia, see *Hugh Bastonia*
Bastonia, see *Peggie Bracelott*
Bastonia, 481, and see *Four*
Bastonia, see *John de Bastonia*
Bastonia, *Sarkis* dynasty; see *Yab. George*, *Lazar II*, *Sapien*, *Congery*, and *Mare*
Bastonia, 214, 248, 377a, 488
Bastonia, see *Marquand Bastonia*
Bastonia 128, 488
Bastonia, 234, 488
Bastonia-in-Yahia, 488, and see *John Margare*; *name of*, see *Yahia* IV 1285-1286, *Hugh* 1286-1286
Bastonia, 124, 488, and see *Archie*
Bastonia, 488
Bastonia, *legendary* and of *Bastonia*, 104, 105, 306
Bastonia, 280, 285, 287a, 488
Bastonia of *Archie*, *history of* *Bastonia* 1075-1123, 43
Bastonia, 133, 240, 252, 264, 271, 272, 285, 282, 290, 291, 287-285, 299, 300, 301, 488
Bastonia, 141, 488
Bastonia, *Modern* *indication* (a. 104, d. 170), 37
Bastonia, 230, 234, 240, 263, 245, 247, 248, 271, 280, 303, 304, 306, 324, 488; *name of*, see *John Alexander* 1311-1371, *John* *Constantine* (name), ca. 1365-1391, *John* *Constantine* (name), ca. 1345-1390
Bastonia (Bastonia), *Slavic* people, 199, 225, 232, 241, 247, 251, 270, 274, 274, 274
Bastonia, see *Philip Bastonia*
Bastonia, 142, 172, 188, 233, 274, 275, 278a, 280, 284-288, 302, 304, 323, 488; *name of*, see *Constantine* *Slavic* of, see *Hugh* 101 1042-1042, *Hugh* IV 1218-1273, *John* of *Nicosia* 1404-1405, *Philip* III 1415-1447, *Michael* I *Slavic* 1477-1483
Bastonia (Bastonia), *Slavic* *Almond* *Qadir*, *name of* *Slavic* ca. 1286-1290, 248, 253
Bastonia, 231, 241, 254-256, 262, 274, 280, 488
Bastonia, see *Philip* and *George* *Bastonia*
Bastonia, 184, 190, 203, 223, 251, 280, 287; *name of*, see *Law* VI 104-102, 141
Bastonia, 101 1075-1078, *Constantine* 1077-1085, *August* 1113-1204, *Theodore* I *Lawrence* 1113-1204, *John* III *Constantine* 1204-1222, *John* III *Constantine* 1222-1234, *Philip* III 1234-1254, *John* VI 1254-1264, 1261-1267, 1264-1453, *John* VI *Constantine* 1267-1284; *name of*, see *Thomas* *Palaeologus* 1403-1445
Bastonia, see *Constantine*
Bastonia, in *Palaeologus*, 1, 106, 111, 124, 154, 488, *name of*, see *Herodotus* 1073-1180
Bastonia, see *Kelly*
Bastonia of *Constantine*, *Constantine* *Constantine* (B. 1047), 1240
Bastonia, 141, 488
Bastonia, *legendary* *Slavic* (B. 1095), 294, 307
Bastonia, 10, 78, 86, 91, 243, 454, 488, 429, 454, 474, 488
Bastonia, *legendary* *name of* *Karlough* ("Constantine"), 102, 104, 106
Bastonia, 109, 488
Bastonia, 488; *Greek* *Slavic* of, (B) and see *Review*
Bastonia, *Slavic*, at *Baghdad* 749-1238, see *Palaeologus* at *Caio* 104-1071, see *Palaeologus* (name), in *Herodotus* 1130-1269, see *Palaeologus*
Bastonia III (Almond *Bastonia*, page 1433-1453, 268, 315, 328, 332, 334
Bastonia, 287; see *Almond* and *Andrew* *Bastonia*
Bastonia I, *Greek* *name of* *Constantine* 1370-1371, 1373-1384, 242
Bastonia, 101, 252, 488; *name of*, 372
Bastonia, *Palaeologus*, *Palaeologus* *name of* (B. 1453), 345
Bastonia, 287a, 488
Bastonia, *name of*, see *Crus*
Bastonia, page, 105, 106, 264, 240, 213, 488

- Canes, 105–107, 303, 338, 409
- Canosa, 290a, 409
- Canusmann, Byzantine family 158a; see John VI Canusmannus, Marthari (Apost) Canusmannus, Theodoros Canusmannus
- Canter del Ciel 30, 63, 64, 66, 68
- Canterbury, 123a, 409, and see Germany; introduction of, see Baldwin 1184–1190
- Cepennax, royal dynasty in France 905–1146, 101, 102; see Philip I 1060–1108, Louis VII 1117–1180, Philip II 1180–1223, Louis IX 1226–1270, Philip IV 1285–1304, Charles V 1364–1422, Louis XI 1461–1483, Charles VIII 1483–1498, Louis XII 1498–1515, Francis I 1515–1547, see also Alphonse (of Portugal), Hugh (of Normandy), Robert (of Artois), and Angoulême
- Cepennax, 409; and see John
- Ceylan, 409; bishop of, see Landolph 824–879
- Ceylanath, 236, 409
- Cezilav, 236, 409
- Chadonia, see Pelagius (Galvus) 1206–1230, Conrad (of Uffizi) 1209–1227, Otto (of Saxony) 1225–1227, James of Viter 1226–1246/7, Otto of Chidimarus 1244–1273, Elio 1340–1348, Hugh de Luignat 1408–1442, John Cezilav 1408–1444, Francis Cezilav 1443–1447, Basarion (of Tebicon) 1409–1473, Isidore (of Rome) 1409–1463, Jean 'le Jeune' (de Canay) 1409–1467, John Borell 1409–1449, Zsigmon (Hungary) 1479–1493, Prior of Aschues 1489–1503
- Chadra, see Salomon Chadra
- Chadria, 325a, 409
- Chadria, see Theodoros Chadria
- Chadria, religious order: 171, and see Peter Thomas
- Chadriana, Frankish royal and imperial dynasty in France (70 C) 711–992; see Charles Martel 734–741, Pepin 741 750–768, Charlemagne 768 771–800, emperor 800–814, Louis I, emperor 814–840, see also Roland
- Chadriana, 409
- Chadriana, monastic order, 171, 324
- Chadri IV son of Vladimir Iaroslav, king of Poland 1407–1492: 234, 303a
- Chadri Sea, 409
- Chadria, 409, and see Isidore
- Chadria, 237, 409
- Chadriana, 209, 409
- Chadri, 409; king of, see Alfonso I 1009–1014 (1130), Ferdinand V 1074–1082 (1504); emperor 1094–1216; queen of, see Isabella 1074–1092 (1504); widow of, see Peter (L. 1119)
- Chadria, see George and John Chadria
- Chadri Company, 103, 206
- Chadria, various people, 91, 175a, 109, 163, 105, 107, 210, 214, 216, 236, 234, 230, 231
- Chadria, 166, 409; king of, see Angon
- Chadria Island, son of George, Greek land holder in Crete (L. 1301), 102a
- Chadri, see Chidra
- Chadria Chadria (Chadria), daughter of Mark, wife of Isaac II of Cyprus 1468 (1473), queen-regent 1473–1489 (d. 1508), 123, 164
- Chadria, 348, 409
- Chadria, 409
- Chadria see Chadria, 409, and see Richard
- Chadria II (Hystachia Boris Chadria), pope 1191–1199: 12, 223, 109
- Chadri Area, 270, 409
- Chadria IV, emperor of Bani 1088 1093 107
- Chadria, 204, 230, 240, 250, 251, 409; emperor; father of, see Charles I Tocco 1303–1428, Conrad II Tocco 1428–1446
- Chadria, 202, 409; widow of, see Michael Badama Chadria, lord of, see Marco Vostor
- Chadria, see Julian Chadria
- Chadria, 131, 409
- Chadriodistia, see Lascaris Chadriodistia
- Chadria-see-Boris, 200, 409
- Chadria, see Leo Chadria
- Chadriaga, 123, 109, 364, 176, 201, 409; emperor of, see Henry II 1100–1195, Theobald III 1195–1200, Theobald IV 1201–1223, see also Allen
- Chadri O Khali (Pukal) son-in-law of Murad II, Ottoman grand vizir: En 1444, 1452, 273, 274, 292, 304, 307, 308, 313, 314
- Chadriaga, son of Pepin; Chadriaga: ruling of the Franks 768–771, king 771–800, emperor 800–814, 41, 50, 52, 71a, 74, 78, 46, 98, 301
- Chadri VI, Chadria king of France 1400–1422: 92
- Chadri VIII, son of Louis XI, Chadria king of France 1403–1480: 275a–276, 341, 342–347
- Chadri V, grandson of Maximilian I and of Ferdinand and Isabella, Hapsburg king of Spain (L.14) 1516–1556: of Germany 1519–1550, archduke of Austria 1520–1550, emperor 1550–1564 (d. 1564), 325
- Chadri Marat, Chadriaga ruler of the Franks 104–140: 79
- Chadri J of Agos, brother of Louis IX of France; Angoulême king of Sicily (proposed

- Constantine I, Roman emperor (d. 337), 3, 36, 32
- Constantine (Dymitrachy), brother of Dragash, Serbian prince (d. 1394), 243, 246
- Constantine Ducas, ruler of Creta (in 1123), 182
- Constantine XI Palaiologos ("Dragash"), son of Manuel II, Byzantine emperor of the Morea (1423) 1423-1448, emperor 1448 (reigned 1448)-1453 275, 276, 274, 388, 312-384, 314, 334
- Constantine "the Airline", convert to Christianity (116, C), 74
- Constantinople, 72, 73, 93, 188, 191, 192, 238, 229, 231, 234-239, 241, 244, 268, 252-271, 260, 268, 269, 272, 275, 288-293, 388, 395, 298, 301, 302, 388, 389, 311-313, 322, 324, 326, 328, 327-329, 340, 342, 356, 371, 374, 340, 364, 423, 482, Great patriarchate of, see Callistus I (129-132), 1232-1242, Matthew (1471-1418), Joseph II (1418-1408), Walter Lachs patriarchate of, see Peter Thomas (1364-1368), Isidore (1429-1463), Basilios (1463-1473)
- Copa, Christian sect in Egypt and Ethiopia, 28, 178, 179
- Corbedis, legendary brother of Caliban, 182, 183-184
- "Corbanus", legendary Maronite leader, see Karpaga
- Corbett, 343, 480
- Corbica, 61, 490
- Corfa, 192, 194, 238, 296a, 343, 348, 349, 490
- Coriath, 182, 183, 300, 498, head of, see Lee Squire (d. ca. 1288)
- Corick, Child of, 349, 499
- Corsari (Corsari), 213, see Andrea, Chetani, and Mar? Corsari
- Corsemarant, legendary son of Corbedis, 182, 184-188, 183, 314
- Corvett, 490; and of, see Richard (d. 1222)
- Corva, 144a, 182, 194-197, 212, 258, 303a, 344, 349-351, 490
- Corsaleis, legendary gibbon, 72a
- Corica, 490
- Corvus, 304, 151, 257, 328, 498
- Cos, 490
- Cosimo de' Medici, virtual ruler of Florence 1454-1464: 338
- Caliban, Great Judge (186, C), 188
- Cosmas, see Moses of Cosmas
- Courtesy, 490; see also Baldwin (II), Jocelin I and II, and Philip
- Croce, 325a-327, 491, bishop of, see Zingone
- Crivizacki 1423-1425, Peter Garret 1534-1545
- Crotona, 490, bishop of, see Lustrand Co. 962-ca. 972
- Croton, 372, 491
- Crota, 171, 189-188, 192-198, 280-287, 229-232, 264, 491, archbishop of, see Peter Thomas (1362-1364); and of, see Constantine Ducas (in 1182), Isidore Tropic 1297 (1299), Marino German 1348-1349/1350, Thomas Dardo 1403-1405
- Croton, 326, 491
- Crota, Visitation feast family at Nazan 1323-1348, see James I (1297-1418) William D (de Angler 1297-1463) 1473-1463
- Crochulaz (Krochulaz), see Michael Crochulaz
- Crotona, 343, 364, 343, 491, laws of, see John Harvath (in 1388), Parole Thats:cy (in 1444)
- Crota, 226, 264, 293, 327, 336, 491
- Crotona of 1129, 119
- Culla, see Francis Culla
- Cyclades, 491
- Cydonia, see Demetrios Cydonia
- Cyprus, 91, 99, 114, 123, 144, 146, 150-174, 181, 226, 231, 249, 262, 278, 289, 328, 342, 344a, 381, 491, rulers of, see Isaac Comnenus (1144-1191), Ladislaus (1193-1267), de Ladislaus 1267-1454, Louis of Savoy 1453-1464, Catherine Cornaro 1473-1488; report of, see Alice of Champagne (1318-1375), Peter de Lusignan (in 1422), rulers of, see Philip of Sicily, John I of Sicily
- Cydonia, 325, 491
- Cydonia, Greek people, 247, 283
- Cydonia, see Eusebius Cydonia
- Delaman, archbishop of Pisa 1088-1099, Latin patriarch of Jerusalem 1099-1100 (d. 1105), 121, 329
- Delaman, 327, 491
- Delaman, 139, 343, 345, 358, 348, 352, 352, 491
- Demetrios, 379, 426a, 429, 430, 434-438, 448, 477, 480-473, 474, 475, 491, rulers of, see Bivich 1164-1154, Mir-as-Cia 1146-1174, Al-Habib 1174-1280
- Delaman, 74, 78, 87, 118, 122, 142, 146, 381, 399, 491
- Dan II. (Dendrid?), son of Maron, viceroy of Wallachia 1428/1431, 228, 262
- Dandalo, see Enrico German

- Elbasan**, 375, 492
- Eleazar of Argeus**, wife of Peter I of Cyprus 1232-1249 (d. 1407), 123
- Eleusis**, monastery at Macedonia, 187
- Ellas**, archbishop of Nicosia 1312-1342, under patronage of Jerusalem 1342-1342, medieval-print 1342-1348, 170
- Ellas, John, Oront, Oront, and Zacharias**, legendary saint of Oront, 338
- Elzabeth (el Lazzabegh)**, daughter of Sapor and Barbas; wife of Albert V 1421-1419 (d. 1442), 383, 384, 386-389
- Endreus of Moss**, poet (d. 1407, d. 1477), 52, 64
- Emirak Corbet**, Hungarian envoy (ca 1491), 342
- Enos**, *see* Benedict Enos
- Enverus**, edited at Antiochia, 793
- England**, 94, 124, 125, 127, 128, 135, 136, 138, 140, 142, 148, 172, 242, 378, 379, 492; kings of, *see* William I 1066-1087, William II 1087-1100, Plantagenet 1154-1483
- English**, 38, 237
- English Channel**, 124, 127, 492
- Enguerrand of St. Pol**, legendary crusader (ca 1073), 104, 105
- Enghien**, 171, 492
- Enrico Dandolo**, doge of Venice 1192-1206 124, 373, 382
- Ephesus**, 238, 492; wife of, *see* Elzabeth (ca 1348)
- Ephesus**, 238, 244, 245, 246, 328, 492; diocese of, *see* Theodor Doms 1215-1220, Charles I 1208-1428-1428; *see* also Angria
- Erilia**, 241, 492
- Erila**, 492, bishop of, *see* Simon Beagor 1442-1444
- Ernest**, French chevalier (d. 1238), 386
- Ernest of Armenia**, brother of Baldwin; legendary crusader, 393, 106
- Erzincan**, 328, 492
- Estuans**, Hector, Marston, Sordone, and Tullio, brothers; legendary rulers of Mecca, 313
- "Estates the Nocturnal"**, legendary Byzantine studies; *see* Marston
- Estimac de Lusignan**, *see* Jean de Lusignan
- Etiochia**, 46, 492
- Ethiopian (Abyssinian)**, African people and art, 172
- Euboea**, 175, 385, 176, 184, 395, 398, 398, 398, 253, 254, 342, 344, 328, 328, 328, 492
- Eulachmestrasen**, Byzantine family; *see* Andronikos and Nicholas (2)
- Eudoxia Angelina**, daughter of Alexius III; wife of Stephen I of Serbia ca 1202, wife of Alexius V Douca 1202-1204, wife of Leo Symeon 1204-1207, 181
- Eudoxia**, legendary sister of Saladin and king of Alexandria, 181
- Eugenius III (Peter Beronice)**, pope 1145-1145, 120, 128, 140
- Eugenius IV (Gabriel Condemner)**, pope 1447-1447 (378, 348, 373, 373, 378, 342, 343, 346-346, 294, 291, 302, 304
- Eulogius**, archbishop of Thessalonica 1218-1218 (cosmopolitan 124)
- Euphrates**, 24, 253, 253, 424, 431, 492
- Eusebius II**, count of Beaugor ca 1048-by 1088: 302, 304
- Eusebius III**, son of Eusebius II and Ida, count of Beaugor by 1088-after 1123 99, 100-102, 115, 304
- Eusebius (Eusebius) Regi**, Ottoman general (ca 1354), 233, 240, 243, 243, 246
- Eusebius (Eusebius) Ahmed**, Ottoman general (ca 1477), 230
- Eufat**, legendary saint (ca 1090), 104
- Falkenberg**, 492, *see* Baldwin and Balan
- Famagusta**, 128, 133, 138-140, 142-142, 148, 170, 492
- Fatimid**, Arab dynasty in Tunisia 909-972 and Egypt 909-1071 40, 162, 421, 423-423, 429-442, 448, 423, 424, 428, 468; *see* al-Mu'izz 972-972, al-Mu'izz 973-996 al-Mu'izz 996-1021, al-Zahir 1021-1036 al-Mu'izz 1036-1094, al-Mu'izz 1094-1101, al-Aziz 1101-1122, al-Mu'izz 1149-1154, al-Aziz 1154-1171
- Faula**, *see* Gauden Faula
- Fauz**, 492, legendary sister of 103, 181
- Ferdinand**, king (V) of Castile and Leon 1474-1492 (1394 reign 1394-1394) king (II) of Aragon-Castile 1479-1484, of Spain 1482-1484: 347, wife of, *see* Isabella of Castile
- Ferdinand (Ferdinand) I**, husband son of Alfonso V of Aragon, king of Naples and (II) of Sicily 1438-1484, 322, 328, 333-333, 335, 379
- Fernando** (*see* Fernandez), *see* Gauden Fernandez
- Ferris**, 244, 385, 492
- Filipino of Padua**, Franciscan provincial (ca 1234), propagandist (ca 1250), 53-54
- Fifth Crusade**, 14, 121, 127a, 141, 378a, 382
- Philippus Franciscus** ("Catholicon"), Italian character, story of the Pope (d. 1437, d. 1490), 277a, 398, 382

- First Crusade, 5, 7, 44, 50, 64, 86, 88, 95, 98, 100-102, 113, 115-122, 124, 125, 138, 204, 257n, 262, 262, 285, 426
- Fritz ("Dacian"), Armenian official at Antioch (in 1096), 104
- Flapdraz, 242, 277, 289, 493; cousin of, *see* Robert II (1092-1101), Baldwin IX 1194-1200
- Floury, *see* Pierre de Floury
- Flora, 492; sister of, *see* Joachim (d. 1200)
- Florus, 129, 268, 268, 282, 283, 318, 346, 347, 374, 493; archbishop of, *see* Antonin-Pardoul 1448-1459; Council of, 179, 203; sister of, *see* Matilda 1434-1494 and other 1212
- Flourent, legendary nephew of Otto, 80
- Flourens, 246, 492
- Flourennes, 23, 146, 214, 304, 302, 330
- Floris (or Marston), legendary sister of Eustache ("Corbicaire") and wife of Godfrey of Beaulieu, 108, 312, 312, 114
- Floris Barthez, son of George Cypriote count (in 1449), 159n, 155
- Fordhoel, *see* Antiochian Fordhoel
- Fortz, 480; legendary bishop of, 403, 121
- Fouriel, *see* Francis Fouriel
- Fourth Crusade, 118, 124, 125, 132, 168, 141, 174, 184, 224
- Franois, 4, 262, 332, 334, 346, 362, 369, 378, 374, 349, 379, 382, 493; king of, *see* Minervigian; ca. 427-733; Carolingians 750-993; Capetians 997-1044; reign of, *see* Roger (d. 1123)
- Franciscan Brotherhood Papalists, Florentine (d. 1240), 121n, 141, 164, 164
- Francis I, first counts once married of Louis XII, Capetian king of France 1315-1347: 251
- Francis Godfroy, nephew of Emperor IV, married prior 1431-*ca.* 1445, papal abbot in 1445, cardinal-bishop of Paris *ca.* 1445-1453, 269, 280n, 281, 294n-297, 300, 306
- Francis Gully, knight count (in 1440), 294n
- Francis Poulard, bishop of Meuse 1423-1457: 280n, 281, 294
- Francis Queriel, Meusean survey (in 1790), 249
- Fransois I Storm, duke of Milan 1430-1446: 218
- Francis Thibault, son of Count (in 1446), 308, 309
- Franciscan (Frisan Monks, Minervian), monastic order: 23, 28, 81, 83, 94, 170, 242; master-general of, *see* Nicholas IV (Jennet of Asch), 1274-1279; other Franciscans, *see* Anthony of Meuse, Fidelis of Pader, Gilbert of Tournai, John (of Waterbury), John of Capistrano, John of Pader and Capistrano, Raymond-Lad, Roger Boreas, William of Rulwick
- Frederick, son of Hermann II, count of Gilly 1435-1454: 268
- Frederick, last count of Alfort (IV), Hapsburg king (III) of Germany 1440 (reigned 1442)-1452 (1493), emperor 1452-1493, archbishop (IV) of Austria 1457-1484 (1493), 270n, 282n, 286, 287, 323, 329, 334
- Frederick I ("Barbarossa"), emperor of Conrad III, Hohenstaufen king of Germany 1152-1155, emperor 1155-1196: 74, 81, 123, 140, 230n, 270
- Frederick II, son of Henry VI; Hohenstaufen king (II) of Sicily 1197-1250, of Germany 1212-1250, emperor 1250-1250, king of Jerusalem 1228-1228: 31, 74, 323, 328, 329, 328, 340, 371, 371, 382-383
- Frederick III (Aragon), king of Naples 1487-1500 (d. 1480), 247, 330
- Frederick II, king of Sicily 1266-1337: 4, 21, 32, 33, 25, 371, 389
- Frank Boreas, 247, 493
- Frank Boreas, *see* Franciscan
- Frank-Franciscan, *see* Franciscan
- Frankish, 270n, 493
- Frankish, Hapsburg pretender (ca. 1423): 239
- Frankish of Chertsey, crusade and crusader (d. 1400), 2, 42, 44, 260
- Frankish of Meuse, legendary crusader, 101
- Frank, count (IV) of Anjou 1029-1029; brother of Matilda and king of Jerusalem 1021-1043: 312, 372, 372, 379
- Frank of Meuse, crusader (d. 1402), 75, 125, 270n
- Frank, 72, 426, 474, 493
- Calafia, legendary king, 43
- Calafia, 265, 266, 266, 493
- Calafia, principality, 154, 247, 493, prince of, *see* Umberto 1079-1101; Calafia: 110-1101, under prince of, *see* Guy de Lusignan (d. 1140), Hugh de Lusignan (1140-1179), Henry de Lusignan (d. 1420)
- Califf, 239, 233-237, 242, 247, 244, 252, 354, 255, 252, 363, 372, 372, 295, 297, 296, 303, 306, 312, 320, 493; lord of, *see* Aam (d. 1150)
- Califfus de Levania, Califfus phylarch, 10 (d. 1223), 10
- Califf, *see* Peter Califf
- Califf, legendary emperor, 16

- Gámas, legendary hero, 75b
 Garmara, *see* Christopher Garmara
 Garm le Lorrain ("Lohengrin"), legendary epic hero, 303
 Garm of Mearns, master of the Hougatham, 1207-1227, 143a
 Garmoy, 337-493
 Gaska, 344, 493
 Garpat Sphakt, assassination of Balarama 1437-1449: 383a, 383a
 Garton, son of Gualter IV, vicarage of Bilem, 1288-1330: 327
 Gauthier, Genoese dynasty at Lisbon 1255-1462: 314, 318, 320; *see* Domusio 1445-1478, Nicholas (Lemnos) 1449-1456 1456-1462
 Gavarrin Peadar, troubadour (b. ca. 1285, d. ca. 1320), 74
 Gavril-Gavril, Pizari (lord of Drenč), Hungarian commander (in 1446), 364, 367
 Gava, 433, 493
 Gedik (or Gedik) Ahmed (Pasha), Ottoman admiral (d. 1472), 321a, 330-332
 Gellin, legendary nephew of Gao, 144
 Genna, 79, 124, 153, 140-143, 238, 233, 263, 312, 321, 378, 387-493
 Gennaro, 7, 27, 84, 92, 124, 173, 179, 185-187, 232, 231, 273, 244, 247, 257-259, 275, 302, 313, 317, 320, 323, 347, 348, 354a
 Gensle, *see* Gervasio Bassano Gensle
 Geoffroy le Bas (or Bas), jurist and chancerylain (d. 1273-1247), 153a
 Geoffroy of Thury, Burgundian naval commander (in 1447), 380, 381, 386, 390
 Geoffroy of Villahardouin, marshal of Champagne, chronicler (d. ca. 1213), 323, 124, 141a
 Geoffroy I of Villahardouin, nephew of Geoffroy the chronicler, prison of Aulnay 1289-ca. 1228: 183
 George Anzuti, Albanian lord (d. 1432), 263
 George Beccard, *see* Giorgio Beccard
 George Brankovich, son of Vuk, despot (lord) of Serbia 1457-1496: 259-268, 367, 276-277, 274-282, 283, 291, 293, 294, 298-306, 302, 303, 318, 313, 322-324
 George Butros, Cypriot chronicler (d. 1489), 161
 George Casanova ("Brancheleg"), son of John, nephew and adopted son of Stephen Lazarovich, Albanian leader 1443-1466: 265, 266, 271, 272, 274, 275, 295, 322, 324, 326, 332
 George Lefka, Greek landholder in Crete (d. 1271), 322
 George Lopez, bishop of Transylvania 1427-1442: 387
 George Skordilis, landholder in Crete (in 1402), 162
 George Sphrantzes, Byzantine historian (d. ca. 1477), 223a, 276a
 Georgios (Gromont), Chaldean people, 263, 334
 Gerald of Llanvaes, patriarch of Jerusalem 1215-1239: 15
 Gerald of Wales (Gereidus Cambrensis), bishop of St David's 1199-1209, chronicler, topographer (b. ca. 1147, d. ca. 1220 or 1237?), 47, 48, 132a
 Gerald, or Gualter, Lomas of Rosalston ca. 1602-1613: 337
 Gerard Gualter, lord of Solonby 1237-ca. 1370: 376, 400
 Gerard of Strabourg, traveler (d. 1171), 70a
 Gerasios, Thessalian people, 74, 129, 266, 333a
 Gerasios, 124, 129, 136, 137, 284, 323, 313, 314, 349-493, emperor of, *see* "Holy Roman Empire", king of, *see* Hohenstaufen 1158-1268, Sigismund 1410 (1414)-1433 11437, Albert II 1433-1439, Frederick III 1440 1442-1472 (1493), Maximilian I 1486-1493 1276, Charles V 1519-1550 (1556), *see* also Richard (of Connaught), on King 1287-1272
 Gervasio, 248, 251, 312, 493
 Gervase of Canterbury, English chronicler (d. ca. 1220), 140a
 Giza IL, Arpad king of Hungary 1041-1062: 133
 Glaz Föld, Ottoman commander (in 1214), 233
 Glio Zavarid, Albanian lord (in 1444), 272
 Glat, Venetian family, 309, 317
 Glibel, *see* Glibel
 Gromont, Strail of, 123, 124, 493
 Gilbert of Lannoy, Burgundian envoy (in 1421), author (d. 1482), 329
 Gilbert of Tournai, Frenchman, author (d. 1279), 13, 82
 Giorgio, *see* Nicholas Giorgio
 Giorgio Beccard, nephew of Innocent VIII, papal envoy (in 1491), 341-343, 346, 347
 Giovanni Battista Gensle, Genoese merchant and conspirator (in 1482), 140
 Giovanni Maria Angiolello, Venetian notary and historian (d. 1524), 311a
 Giovanni Villani, Florentine historian (d. 1361), 87
 Glibelus Cambrensis, *see* Gerald of Wales
 Glibelich, *see* Glibel Glibelich
 Glogha, 259, 263, 367, 273, 493

- Guastafani-Baron, see *Andreas Guastafani-Baron*
 Guastafani-Lange, see *John Guastafani-Lange*
 Gualthier, bishop of Langres ca. 1246-1247: 46, 52, 152
 Gualthier (of Syonenberg, count of Hattenbach), bishop of Würzburg 1184-1190: 176n
 Gualthier (count) of Bouillon, son of Florence II and like count of Werlun 1076-1086, donor of Lower Lorraine 1087-1106, advocate of the Holy Sepulchre 1089-1100: 56, 76, 83, 84, 98, 108, 116-121, 179, 128, 132, 139, 147, 156, 166, 167, 169
 Golden Horn, 262, 493
 Gualthier of Minors, legendary Saviour, 168
 Golebski, 248, 259-261, 271, 279, 300, 306, 312, 324, 329, 483
 Gualthier Perseus, Spanish scholar in Italy (fl. 1265), 323
 Gualthier of Als, legendary crusader ca. 1090, 154, 167
 Gualthier, see *John Gualthier*
 Gwynedd, 323, 483
 Gualthier, see *Leonard Gualthier*
 Gualthier of Gualthier epic poem (ca. 1090), 98, 101, 109-111
 Gualthier, 24, 26, 34, 245, 493
 Gualthierism, monastic order, 122
 Gualthier, 117, 279, 348, 348, 483
 Gualthier (Bavarian), Irish language people, 98, 128, 159, 161, 163, 167, 170, 171, 173, 178n, 183, 196-208, 214-226, 228, 235, 241, 242, 244, 246, 247, 248, 273, 281, 282, 304, 318, 478
 Gualthier, see *Michael Gualthier*
 Gualthier, son of George Brankovich, intended 1427, proposed to Sofia (ca. 1428-4 1439), 283, 289, 308, 363, 324
 Gregory I (The Great), pope 590-604 (reign): 86
 Gregory VII (Gregory VII), pope 1073-1085 (reign): 5, 20, 40, 82
 Gregory VIII (Albert di Morra), pope 1187-1187-10, 128n, 152
 Gregory IX (Ugo Bonifacio di Sesto), pope of Innocent III, pope 1227-1241, 24, 29, 33, 129, 134, 136, 148
 Gregory X (Theodore Vincent), pope 1271-1276: 83, 128, 138, 329
 Gregory of Brachia, Lorraine poet (fl. ca. 1125), 152
 Gregory of Smolensk, Pole (fl. 1460), 273n
 Gregory of Tours, historian, bishop of Tours 573-594: 3
 Gualthier, Frankish family in Syria, see *Orontid* by 1135-ca. 1170, *Reynold* ca. 1170-1183, *Reynold* I ca. 1204-1240, *John* 1247-1260
 Gualthier, see *Marion Gualthier*
 Gualthier, 262, 264, 264, 493, bishop of see *John Gualthier* 1480-1494
 Gualthier, see *Georgios*
 Gualthier of Hagia, French character (fl. 1302), 4, 41-43, 61
 Gualthier, 493, and see *Arnold*
 Gualthier Barons, friend of Pius II (fl. 1447), 316n
 Gualthier, 263, 493
 Gualthier, legendary saint, 183
 Gualthier of Langres, half-brother of Henry III of England: advocate of 1240: 152
 Gualthier of Langres, son of Hugh III, countable of Cyprus ca. 1095, 152
 Gualthier of Langres, son of Hugh IV, count prince of Cilicia ca. 1140, 153
 Gualthier of Italia, Dominican, bishop of Lucca 1337-1347: 128n, 131, 166n
 Gualthier of Langres, (brother) of 947 1110-1190, king of Jerusalem 1110-1190, ruler of Cyprus 1192-1194, 76, 136, 154, 166, 174, 177, 188, 198, 443
 Gualthier of Warwick, legendary epic hero, 73
 Gualthier, see *Michael Gualthier*
 Gualthier, 267, 493
 Hafia, Moorish Berber dynasty in Tunisia and eastern Algeria 1230-1274, 342, see *Zakariya* 11 1490-1494
 Hagia Sophia (Santa Sophia, Holy Wisdom), church at Constantinople, 364
 Hafia, 493
 Hafia, 268, 494, count of see *Reynold* VI 1182-1200
 Hafia (Hafia), Ottoman commander (ca. 1254), 273, 278n, 341
 al-Hafia, al-Hafia al-Marrovi son of al-Hafia, Fatawa imam of Egypt 790-1021, 423
 Hafia, 423
 Hafia, 423, 452, 494
 Hafia, 246, 246, 254, 261, 312, 494
 Hafia, Spanish Berber dynasty in eastern Algeria 1054-1132, see *al-Hafia* 1042-1080
 Hafia (Hafia), Ottoman scholar (fl. 1434), 317
 Hafia, Ottoman poet (fl. 1430), 263
 Hafia, royal and imperial dynasty, 329, 347, 353: ca. Austria 1201-1782, see *Albert V* 1404-1428, *Carlota* 1445-1457, *Frederick V* 1457-1480 (1473), *Michael* 1480-1493

Hapsburgs (Habsburgs)

- (1198), Charles I 1297-1327 (1296); in Iberia 1407-1467, see Albert II 1407-1439, Vladislav (Ladislav) I 1402 (1403)-1437; in Germany 1418-1780, see Albert II 1404-1439, Frederick III 1440 (1442)-1452 (1495), Maximilian I 1486-1493 (1519), Charles V 1519-1558 (1556); in Hungary 1407-1457, see Albert I 1427-1439, Louis V 1444-1457, in Spain from 1516, see Charles (1516) 1516-1556; as "Holy Roman" emperors 1271/1760, see Frederick III 1452-1495, Maximilian I 1495-1519, Charles V 1519-1556
- Harald Hardråde, king of Norway, 1046-1066: I

- Harjes, cf. Bourges, legendary founder, 100, 108, 109, 110, see also Otto Argeus
- Harris, 405, 406

- al-Hamir bin al-Sakhr al-Flamī (Hama-i-Sakhrī), assassin-murder in Persia 990-1124: 104

- Harris, 34, 342, 374, 377, 384, 404

- Hasturilla, 494, and see Roger

- Hatros, 484, titular bishop of, see Michael de Courcy (d. 1448)

- Heinsberg, 494, and see Philip

- Hejaz, 552, 494

- Helia, daughter of Constantine (Djauzavich) (A. 1294), 280

- Helena Palaiologina, granddaughter of Michael II, wife of John II of Cyprus 1402-1451, 1516, 173a

- Hellingsport(s), see Dordanelles

- Henry (Plantagenet), son of Henry II of England (b. 1155 d. 1199), 14

- Henry, count (2d) of Champagne and count palatine of Troyes 1181-1197, brother of Isabella and ruler of Jerusalem 1192-1197: 113, 376, 381, 394, 401

- Henry VI, son of Frederick I; Hohenstaufen king of Germany 1195-1198, emperor 1198 (crowned 1195)-1197, king of Sicily 1194-1197: 123, 145, 150

- Henry, legendary archbishop of Tyre (d. 1099), 10

- Henry II, Plantagenet king of England 1154-1189: 14, 119, 122, 125-127, 136, 140

- Henry III, son of John; Plantagenet king of England 1216-1272: 122, 129, 145, 381

- Henry de Châtillon, titular lord of Jaffa, chancellor of Cyprus (b. 1349), 172

- Henry II de Lusignan, son of Hugh III, king of Cyprus 1205-1234, of Jerusalem 1205 (crowned 1209)-1229 (titular 1241-1254), 132, 113, 136, 157, 159, 160, 170a

- Henry de Languet, son of James V, titular prince of Galilee (d. 1436), 138

- Henry of Antioch, son of Bohemund III; ruler of Jerusalem 1202-1204 (d. 1276): 132, wife of, see Isabella of Lusignan

- Henry I of Lusignan, son of Hugh I, king of Cyprus 1218-1253, regent of Jerusalem, 1246-1253: 171, 343

- Hinnelien, archbishop of Caesarea 1171-1180
Latin patriarch of Jerusalem 1200-1201: 132, 384a; successor of, see Prusac de Beyer
Hinnelien, legendary patriarch of Jerusalem (b. 1099), 111, 112, 114

- Hirring, see Robert Harcing

- Hermann II, count of Cilly 1465-1485: 368a
Hermannstadt, 367, 369, 367, 494

- Hervik, male, Cretan general (b. 1500), 151

- Hervic of Dorset, count of Hereford 1191-1221: 371

- Hesperia, 355, 494

- Hervic, priest, monk of, ca. 1500, 174

- Himmarin, royal dynasty in Cilician Armenia 1226-1345, 1361-1371, see Hayman

- Himmarin, wall across isthmus near Caesarea: 121

- Himmarin, wall across isthmus of Corinth, 274, 284, 285, 300, 136

- Hilbert of La Mare, French polemicist (b. 1051-d. 1131), 37a

- Hirring, 355, 494

- Hiram, I Ha, 494

- Hos al-Akrad, see Erik dei Chetani

- Howa Kalf, 405, 494

- Hohenstaufen, imperial dynasty in Germany and Italy 1139-1268, as kings and emperors of Germany, see Conrad III (king 1139-1132), Frederick I (king 1125-1135): 115-116, Henry VI (king 1194-1198) 1190, 1197, Philip (king 1197-1208) Frederick II (king 1212-1220) 122a-125a, Conrad IV (king 1234-1254) as king of Sicily, see Henry VI 1194-1197, Frederick II 1197-1210 Conrad IV 1234-1254, Conrad 1254-1258, as king of Jerusalem, see Frederick II 1223-1228 (regent 1228-1245), Conrad IV 1228-1254, Conrad (titular 1254-1260) as father of Swabia and Alsace, see Philip 1194-1200; of Swabia, see Conradin 1254-1268

- Holzer, see Robert Holzer

- Holy Land, see Palestine

- "Holy Roman Emperor"; emperor of, see Hohenstaufen 1135-1254, Sigismund 1433-1457, Maximilian 1519-1550

- Holy Sepulchre, Greek monastery at Lefkara, 109

- Ida, wife of Ramon II of Barcelona 1099–by 1093 (s. 1117), 401, 402, 411, 412, 414, 415
 1486, *Halimeddin al-Idridi*, Ottoman character (s. 1330), 277n, 341
- Idkhalids, Turkish dynasty in Egypt and Syria 915–959, 425, 435
- Id-Shahids, Mongol dynasty in Persia 1258–1368, 378
- Dyaa (Bag), Ottoman commander (in 1426), 256
- Dyaa, ruler of Marash (in 1425), 255, 256n
- Imbrus, 261, 319, 321, 494
- Imd, al-Ashraf (Bay) Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1453–1461, 132
- Imra, 38, 494
- Imran Goren, 252, 494
- Innocent II (Gregory Papareschi), pope 1198–1200, 131
- Innocent III (Cathac de' Conti de Segni), pope 1198–1216 (I, 12, 13, 28, 32, 40, 117, 121, 127–128, 133, 155, 156, 158, 160, 215, 277n)
- Innocent IV (Sinibaldo Fieschi), pope 1243–1254 (I, 111, 118, 131, 166, 446, 451, 476, 488)
- Innocent VI (Stephen Aubert), pope 1352–1362, 232–237
- Innocent VIII (Giovanni Battista Cybo), pope 1484–1492, 257–268
- Inquisition, 75, 77
- Ionia Sea, 259–264, 494
- Iraa, 20, 454–494
- Irislata, *see* Persians
- Irisa Palatinata, daughter of John V, fiancée of Khalil 1334–1339, 237
- Ira (Bag), Ottoman investigator (in 1409), 261, 291n
- Ira, son of Bayazid I, Ottoman commander (s. ca. 1402), 254, 279
- Ira (Bag), Ottoman general (in 1498), 324
- Irene II Angelina, Byzantine empress 1185–1195, co-empress 1203–1204, 181
- Irene Comnena, great-nephew of Isakiah I, Byzantine ruler of Cyprus 1194–1195 (s. 1695), 111, 164, 158, 367
- Isabel of Jerusalem, daughter of Asenetic (wife of Humphrey IV of Toros 1182–1192; divorced), 3rd wife of Conrad of Montferrat 1195–1197, wife of Henry II of Champagne 1195–1197, 2nd wife of Alimory of Lusignan 1197–1208, queen of Jerusalem 1195–ca. 1206, 153
- Isabel of Lusignan, daughter of Hugh I and Alice, wife of Henry of Antioch 1233–1264, regent of Jerusalem 1243–1264, 152
- Isabella, wife of Ferdinand II, in Aragon 1469–1494, queen of Castile and Leon 1474–1496, of Spain 1482–1504, 347
- Isabella of Portugal, wife of Philip III of Burgundy 1429–1467 (s. 1473), 297
- Islandicists (*Islandicists*), Turkish dynasty in Elal Akamash 128–1461/2, 255, 256n, 262, *see* Solomon II (s. 1342–ca. 1397)
- Iskik (Bag), Ottoman investigator (in 1427), 260, 261
- Iskik (Fader), Ottoman vicer (in 1402), 331
- Iskik ("the Ruthless" or "of Kiev"), metropolitan of Elal (1406) 1437–1442 (prior 1402–1434), cardinal-priest 1438–1451, cardinal-bishop of Sabena 1470–1483, later for Lann patriarch of Constantinople 1483 1489–1493, titular Lann archbishop of Nicomedia 1494–1498, (of Moscow 1498–1499), 262
- Iskik, 293, 494
- Iskander (Fader), Ottoman governor of Ischia (in 1425), 1440n, 158, 348, 350
- Iskik (Arabic, *al-Iskik*, the submission, to God), 101, 5, 14, 21–24, 35–43, 45, 64, 75, 76, 77, 81, 97–98, 278, 280
- Iskik (Arabic, *al-jamshir* or *al-jamshir*) the community of Marash, 19, 26, 28, 32–34, 38, 49, 63, 123, 125, 227, 247, 252, 261, 263, 273, 313, 314, 347, 362, 421–434
- Iskik, Iskik, Ottoman scholar (in 1496), 218, 320
- Iskik, Iskik al-Mash, grandson of Taghlagin, 3rd ruler of Damascus 1133 1133–434
- Iskik, Ottoman commander (in 1406), 257
- Iskik (I), Iskik ruler of Persia 1341–1354, 362
- Iskik, in Iskik Miral Dik, son of Miral-Dik, Iskik scholar at Aleppo 1194–1111/2, 473
- Iskik (Iskik), Iskik-Mirad Dik, *see* Iskik
- Iskik, 158, 494
- Iskik, *see* Constantinople
- Iskik, 4, 98, 142, 153, 190, 269, 273, 218, 262; *see also* Phrygia, Ottoman, Persia, Macedonia
- Iskik, 31, 20, 121, 123, 127, 129, 166, 192, 195, 218, 242, 260, 264, 267, 268, 269, 279, 323, 330, 331, 333–337, 342, 343–350, 354, 359, 363, 368, 370, 371, 374, 382, 495
- Iskik, *see* Iskik
- Iskik de Marash, Ottoman, Iskik character (s. 1793–ca. 1795), 57n
- Iskik of Marash, author, pilgrim (s. 1333), 70n

- Isachius*, *Micropholus-Chrysomelae*, cat. 60, 176, 177, 178
- Jacques Peurvan*, *Isapoulos*, see *Benedict XII*
- Jakó*, 154, 156a, 184, 401, 471, 495; *counts of*, see *Angelen* 1151-1153, 1154-1163, *Almory of Lusignan* 1185-1194, *Walter IV of Brienne* ca. 1231-1240, *John of Bréhat* 1250-1266, *James de Flouzy* (strate), in 1452
- Jakmak*, 21-2466, *Barč* *Mamlūk* *action of Egypt and Syria* 1436-1453, 200
- James I ("the Conqueror")*, king of Aragon-Cataluña 1213-1276 22, 151
- James I Crispo*, duke of the Archipelago 1197-1401 154
- James de Flouzy*, strate *count of Jable* (in 1452), 115a, 136a, 140
- James de Lusignan*, *comte de Cyprus* (in 1247, 1371), 114, 136
- James ("Tallent")* of Lusignan, *Dominica-march*, *Cypriote* *historian* (cf. 1376, 138a, 173)
- James I de Lusignan*, son of Hugh IV, king of Cyprus 1382-1396 132, 163, 165a, 167
- James II de Lusignan* ("Agathos"), *lasted grandson of James*, king of Cyprus 1464-1473 152, 113, 137-158, 161, 163, 165, 167, 175a-173, with cf. see *Catherine Cornaro*
- James III de Lusignan*, son of James II and Catherine, king of Cyprus 1473-1474 151
- James of Bréhat*, *great grandson of John I, jurei* (cf. 1271), 113a, 134
- James of Vitry*, *bishop of Acre* 1206-1220, *cardinal-bishop of Tarragona* 1220-1240-175, 182, 136
- James Sardeusan*, *Cypriote official* (in 1396), 165
- James Thyrchis*, *baron* *duke of Cyren* 1297-1299 103
- James Zaphon*, *Cypriote official* (in 1476), 163
- Jan Długosz*, *Polish historian*, *names of Cretus* (i. 1415, cf. 1403), 275a, 291, 303
- Jan Koscietowski*, *Polish chancellor* (in 1444), 304
- Jan-olud*, 365, 491
- Janderids*, see *Isafarids*
- Jande Thaffory*, *Hungarian commander* (in 1440), 304
- James Thoren*, *Hungarian official* (i. 1440), 177a
- James de Lusignan*, son of James II, king of Cyprus 1376-1432 132, 133, 156, 158, 159, 172, 174, 201, 263
- Janey Bayart*, *Barpanolite commander* (in 1440), 303
- John "le Jeune" de Courcy*, *bishop of Tré-vermont* 1436-1438, *cardinal-prince* 1439-1438, 291, 296a
- John Renart*, *French poet* (i. 1220), 73
- Johnaphat*, 196, 107, 495
- John*, son of Muhammad I, *Ottoman pretender* (i. 1495), 313a, 318-348, 350
- Jorastan*, city, 7, 9-11, 30, 41, 43, 46, 50, 72, 76, 78, 93, 94, 98, 102, 103, 106-109, 110-113, 117, 132, 132, 172, 238, 333, 311, 363, 379-371, 436, 472, 493, *Latin patriarch of*, see *Gualbert of Pisa* 1099-1152, *Horacius* 1180-1170, *Adhem* 1209-1211, *Gerald of Llaneris* 1220-1229, and see *Urban IV* (*James* *Prothonotarius* 1231-1241), *Haroldus* *deputy*, *vicar*, see *Anthony* 1256-1264, *Ulric* 1340-1345, *Christopher Carr* (in 1444), *Western patriarch of*, see *Joachim* 1427-1444
- Jorastan*, kingdom, 78, 107 114, 123, 126, 150, 153, 154, 156, 168, 246, 371-171, 380-383, 397-401, 415, 416, 427, 439-444, 446-458, 463, 466; *king of*, see *Godfrey of Zetellor* ("Agathos") 1099-1200, *Saladin I* 1100-1118, *Saladin II* 1118-1131, *Fakr* 1131-1142, *Saladin III* 1142-1163, *Amalric* 1163-1174, *Saladin IV* 1174-1181, *Saladin V* 1181-1186, *Guy of Lusignan* 1186-1193, *Henry (of Champagne, ruler)* 1193-1197, *Admiral of Lusignan* 1197-1205, *John of Brienne* 1206-1213, *Prothonotarius* (i) 1220-1229, *Conrad* (i) 1229-1234, *Ulricus* 1234-1240, *Hugh* (ii) of Lusignan 1240-1244, *Henry II de Lusignan* 1244-1249, see also *Agathos of remonte* *deputy*, *spouses of*, see *Mell-wood* 1111-1112, *Isabel* (i) 90-on 1206, *regents of* see *Guy of Lusignan*, *Raymond III of Tripoli* 1213/4-1216, *John of Brienne* 1213-1221, *Frederick* (ii) 1221-1243, *Alise of Cham-ron* 1243-1248, *Henry I of Lusignan* 1248-1251, *Isabel of Lusignan* 1261-1264, *Hugh* (iii) of Lusignan 1264-1269; *chambers of*, see *Conrad of Montfort* 1190-1193, *Hugh of Bréhat* (in 1244); *pretender to*, see *Charles I of Aragon* 1277-1285, see also *Yorla*
- Jorastan of Casanque*, *glorifier* (i. 1304), 24, 29
- John* (*Gerald* or *Jorastan*, *21a*), 3, 17, 31-33, 37, 31-34, 36, 38, 39, 31, 43, 80, 86, 96, 117, 121, 124, 129, 140, 176a, 215; see also *Peter Alfonso*
- Jorla*, 353, 495
- Jorla*, 3, 5, 19, 22, 34-37, 62

- Joachim, abbot of Fleury* (s. 1202), 49
- Joachim, Melkite patriarch of Antioch* 1477–1484, 302
- John (ed. Winterhagen, Wiesbaden), Franciscan* (s. 1360), 92
- John, lord of Saville, biographer* (s. 1319), 71, 76, 78, 82, 122, 123, 143, 146–148, 364
- John ("Lackland"), son of Henry II; Plantagenet king of England* 1199–1216: 127, 128
- John VIII, pope* 1771–1802: 4, 1
- John XIII (Johannes Duns), pope* 1328–1334: 23, 24, 109, 172, 316
- John Adriaen, German godson of New Phoenice* (ca 1420), 251
- John Athonitis (al-Falahiti), convert to Christianity* (11th C), 76
- John Albert, son of Casimir IV, king of Poland* 1492–1498: 349
- John Almatidze, title of Bulgaria* 1239–1272: 249–252
- John Aneluth, Neophyte in Cyprus* (s. 1470), 181a
- John Barrell, archbishop of Tennes* 1428–1439, cardinal priest 1439–1449: 263a
- John Belykhoros, Byzantine eunuch* (s. 1460), 281a
- John ("le Marquis") Beaulieu, marshal of France* (s. 1420), 223
- John VI Comnenus, Byzantine co-emperor* 1346–1347, emperor 1347–1354 (s. 1361), 222a, 224–232, 264, 283, 287
- John Castriota, Albanian lord* (ca. 1460), 265, 266
- John de Brines, count of Mévouillon* 1234–ca. 1340: 109–120; wife of, *see* *Ade*
- John II de Lusignan, son of Ismar, king of Cyprus* 1423–1442: 125, 127, 144, 146, 172, 174; wife of, *see* *Helen Palaiologina*
- John de Lamoignon, son of Blaise IV, ruler prince of Antioch, regent of Cyprus* 1362–1365, 1369–1379: 163
- John del Reguardail, Venetian eunuch* (ca 1440), 272, 284, 291, 297, 301, 303
- John de Sallus, Cypriot chanceler* (ca. 1360), 163, 163a
- John de Talarid, Cypriot marshal* (s. 1402), 153a
- John Domian, bishop of Cassocastan* 1440–1444: 308, 309
- John III Ducas Vatatzes, son-in-law of Theodore I Lascaris, Byzantine emperor* at Nicaea 1222–1234: 308
- John Galeotto Visconti, duke of Milan* 1395–1402: 291
- John (William) Gramsci-Longo, Genoese lord of Lampedusa* (s. 1450), 114
- John Gower, Scottish author* (s. ca. 1390), s. 1400), 32
- John Harward, bar of Croatia* (s. 1380), 247
- John (Istvan) Haryada, viceroy of Transylvania* 1440–1456, regent of Hungary 1446: 141(2), 264, 267, 269–271, 283, 297–299, 299–302, 305–308–310, 314, 321
- John Mastour, Cypriot official* (s. 1340), 129
- John of Aila, legendary crusader*, 101, 111
- John (son) of Andrew, cyrenian, gladiator* (s. ca. 1270), s. 1348), 25
- John of Brissac, Christian al-Mary of Montfort, king of Jerusalem* 1202–1203, regent 1212–1223, Latin co-emperor of Romania 1236–1257: 126, 142, 380–381, 399, 400
- John of Capistrano, Franciscan preacher* (s. 1424, *miswritten*), 322
- John of Chalis, wife of Philip, count of Joffa* 1230–1266, *juris*, 152, 173, 186, 300
- John I of Italia, son of Basil II comital of Jerusalem* 1194–ca. 1202: lord of Hama ca. 1196–1206, *basileus* of Cyprus 1207–1220, 1230–1234: 242, 243, 406
- John of Lamoignon, duke of Brulley* 1414–1421: 289
- John of Lausie, grand master of the Hospitaliers* 1427–1436: 297
- John of Montfort, son of Philip, lord of Tyre* 1276–1280: 407
- John ("the Puritan") of Naves, crusader* (s. 1390), duke of Burgundy 1404–1419: 232, 289
- John of Pasa del Corpus, Franciscan missionary, archbishop of Adramiti* 1245–1252: 17
- John (Johann) of Warren, Burgundian chanceler* (ca. 1444), 274a, 296, 297a, 306
- John of Wittenberg, German pilgrim* (ca 1441): 7
- John of Ypres, abbot of St. Bertin* ca. 1366–1383: 88
- John V Palaiologus, grandson of Manuel IX, Byzantine emperor* 1340–1347, 1124–1376, 1379–1390, 1390–1391: 234, 232, 235–236, 240–244
- John VII Palaiologus, son of Andronicus IV, Byzantine emperor* 1390–1391 (s. after 1400), 273, 234
- John VIII Palaiologus, son of Manuel II, Byzantine co-emperor* 1421–1425, emperor 1425–1440: 262, 272, 281–283a, 289, 300, 302, 306; wife of, *see* *María Comnena*
- John Rokymana, Hunsar archbishop of Prague* 1415–1470: 264

- [illegible]

- Kiev, 496; Greek metropolitan of, *see* Isidore (1438) 1437–1442 (similar 1442–1450)
- Kila, 334, 496
- Kilishacker, 326, 496
- Kilij Arslan I, David, *see* *emir of Malik-Shah*; Seljuqid *emir* of Kirm 1092–1107 883
- "al-Kilabi", pseudonym of Christian polemicist 1106 C), 56, 66, 71
- Kinson, *see* Paul Kinson
- Kilij Arslanid, 496; ruler of, *see* Isma'ilshah 1281–1461/2
- Kilij Arslan, legendary Turkish warrior, 883
- Kilishah, historical Islamic son of Tughrulshah, 332
- Kilish Alharani, general of Mongolian forces ca 1480, 335
- Kilish, 346a, 496
- Kija Minanli (Pasha), *see* Minanli (Bey)
- Kija-sh, 294a, 496
- Kilowai, 164, 496
- Kontostolich, *see* *John Kontostolich*
- Kontostolich Mikhalov (Mikhalovitch), *see* *emir* earlier (B) 1463), 311a
- Korpa, 436, 496
- Korpa (al-Qor'ba), 34, 37–41, 87
- Korova, 329, 346, 354, 375, 393, 323, 496
- Korova-Polje, 346, 388, 496
- Kotli-Dari, 323, 496
- Kragjereva, 291, 496
- Krik de Mortel, 496
- Krik des Chevaliers, 496
- Kromer, *see* Martin Kromer
- Kromsch, 321, 379a, 343, 496
- Krushvara, 346, 259–264, 312, 323, 325, 342, 496
- Kusur'um, 271, 293, 496
- Kutivara, 496
- Kutla, Indo-Iranian people, *see* Alghols
- Kutli, *see* Michael Kutli
- Kutimil, 242, 496
- Kutai Horn, 264, 496
- Kykhon, 271, 496
- Kyruia, 153, 162, 163, 496
- La Brocquades, 496, *and see* *Bortouades*
- La Castric, 164, 171a, 496
- La Cava, 163, 496
- La Chanson d'Antioche, 43, 67, 96, 108, 109–113
- La Chanson de Roland, 13, 14, 65a, 69, 72, 113
- La Comptie de Afranion, 43, 69, 96, 109, 106–113
- La (Grande) Abbatene (al-Bust), 106
- La Monnyne, 126, 496
- Lah, 323, 323, 496
- Ladilas (of Duran), great-great-grandson of Charles II of Anjou, Angevin king of Naples 1386–1414, prince of Achaea 1386–1394 348, 351
- Ladilas, son of Vladislav Ladislav king (Vladimir) of Poland 1434–1444, king of Lituania (of Hungary) 1442–1444 269, 271–274, 277a, 284, 285a, 286–287a, 288–289, 289a–290
- Ladilas ("the Pothomach"), son of Albert IV and Elizabeth, Hapsburg duke of Austria 1440–1453, archduke 1453–1457 king (Ladislaus V) of Hungary 1444–1457, king (Vladislav II) of Bohemia 1453–1457 284, 287
- Ladilas, son of Casimir IV of Poland, king (Vladislav III) of Bohemia 1471–1504, king (Ladislaus VII) of Hungary 1490–1516 343, 349
- Ladimig, *see* Leonard Ladimig
- Lagova, *see* Agva
- Lake Shavon, Ottoman general (ca 1342) 293, 326, 346, 347a
- Lambert of Saint-Omer, Genoese soldier (ca 1409), 141
- Lambert of Arles, chronicler (c. 1052) 309
- Lampodion, 286, 496
- Lampasara, 329, 357, 336, 356, 496
- Lanzano, 496, *and see* *Lila*, *emir* of *see* *Edmond* 44, 329a
- Laudis de de S. Paolo, Milanese chronicler (c. 1177), 325a
- Laudolph, master of Cyprus 1348–1378: 4
- Laughant, *see* William Laughant
- Laupre, 497; *isotop* of, *see* Geoffrey ca 1140–1164
- Lequades, 13, 497
- Leauy, 290a, 497
- Leucina Chalcocandylia, Byzantine historian (b. ca 1423, d. ca 1490), 275a, 276a, 281, 292a, 319
- Leuven, 164, 167, 497
- Leuven, *see* Theobald I Leuven
- Leuic, 497, *and see* *John*
- Lialia, *see* Ladilas
- Lilich IV, V, and VI of Hungary, *see* Ladilas IV, V, and VI
- Lilichivis, 360, 497
- Lilichin, 443–446, 452, 456, 497
- Lilichon palace, in Rome, Council, First, 14 Council, Second, 9, 10 Council, Third (1379), 24 Council, Fourth (1383), 12–13, 25, 29, 106, 106, 107
- Lilichon empire of Constantinople ("Bosnia") 126, 134, 186, 191, 227 ruler of, *see* Balduin I 1264–1265 Balduin II 1224–1231, co-

- emperors 1254-1281, emperors 1287-1384
(Chakri 1566-1775), *Index of Synonymy* (synonymy 1234-1237), Philip of Courtenay
(Chakri 1275-1281)
Lancaster, 497, and *see* Gerald
Larva, metamorphosis on Mount Atlas, 187
Lazar I (Circipassivick), ruler (king) of the
Serbs 1371-1388: 245-246; wife of, *see*
Milica
Lazar II, son of George Brankovich, despot
(knez) of Serbia 1428-1438: 323, 324
Le Bâtard de Brabant, 74, 96, 104, 113
Le Bourg, 497, and *see* *Bellevue* 215
Le Chevalier au Cygne , 96, 104, 105
Le Mire, 354, 497, and *see* *Hilshorn*
Le Puy-en-Velay, 354, 357, 497; bishop of, *see*
Adhémar of Monteil 1097-1099
Leffars, 109, 497, Great Bishop of, *see* *Mos-*
thos Ga 1267, *Gilmanov* (ca 1268)
Leffersho, 173, 497
Leisnau, 118, 497, and *cf.* *see* *Simon V of*
Meissen 1238-1248
Leisnau, 212, 318-320, 327, 338, 497; lord of,
see *Nicholas II Gumbelle* 1449-1454
Leo VI, Byzantine emperor 944-962: 792
Leo, Greek bishop of Seb (1115), 179
Leo IV pope 847-855: 4
Leo Christianus, ruler of Sicily (ca 1267), 187
Leo Spanish, lord of Cornish Id. ca 1200, 101,
102; wife of, *see* *Isabella Angellina*
Leop, 497, bishop of, *see* *Cassio*; queen of, *see*
Isabelle 1454-1492 (1504)
Leop VI de Lusignan, great-grandson of Hugh
II, king of Cilician Armenia 1274-1275 (cf.
1271), 113
Leonard Ordesiga, *Veronica in Cloth* (ca.
1508), 328, 364
Leonard Lohing, bishop of Posen 1424-1439-
1454
Leonard Lorenz, duke of Meiss 1501-1528-
1552
Leonard of Chocul, *Demetrius* (B. 1498), 140
Leonard Vinter, *Veronica* (ca 1448), 209a
Leonidas Macharon, Cypriot chronicle (B.
1424), 136a, 162, 173
Leopold VI (cf. *Belobereg*), duke of Styria
1184-1220, of Austria 1198-1230: 742
Leopold, 350, 348, 349, 351, 497
Leips, *see* *Georgius Leips*
Leu Chelys, 96, 104-113, 113
Leves, 249, 318, 319-321, 328, 336, 354a, 497;
brother of, *see* *John Gumbell-Loupe* (cf.
1455), *Demetrius* (Chronicle 1443-1458),
Nicholas II Gumbelle 1449-1462
Leves, 204, 336, 338, 487, duke of *Leves*,
see *Charles I and II Tere*
Leige, 497, bishop of, *see* *Robert* 1081-1117
Leisnau, 160, 163, 164, 166, 167, 168, 497,
Leisnau of, *see* *Michael* 1291-ca 1300, *City*
of *Leisnau* 1337-1347
Leisnau, 125, 497
Leisnau, 134, 200, 497
Leisnau, 497, bishop of, *see* *Arnold* 1041-1121
Leisnau, 364, 497; grand duke of, *see* *Vladis-*
lav Augustus 1512-1526
Leisnau, *Belie* people, 361
Leisnau, *Belie* people, bishop of *Crusades* ca.
162-ca 1772: 29a
Leisnau, 306, 497
Leisnau, 361, 497
Leisnau (*Martha* *Storia* (C. *Storia*)), grand-
son of *Princis* I: duke of *Bar* 1478-1488
of *Meiss* 1484-1500 (cf. 1502), 356
Leisnau, *see* *Charles* in *Leisnau*
Leisnau, *Belie* people, 175
Leisnau, 134, 105, 213, 497
Leisnau 119, 128, 497
Leisnau, *see* *Adrian*, *Leonard*, and *Paul*
Leisnau
Leisnau de Meiss (C. *Magistratus*), grand-
son of *Crusades* ca-ruler of *Platon* 1468-
1478, ruler 1478-1492: 108
Leisnau Spino, *Medial* (ca 1487), 158
Leisnau, 142, 143, 146, 338a, 339, 497
Leisnau, *Lower*, 354, 497, duke of, *see* *God-*
frey of Brabant 1087-1100
Leisnau, *see* *Demetrius* *Leisnau*
Leisnau I (C. *Crus*), great-grandson of *Charles*
II of *Austria*, *Augustus* king of *Hungary*
1542-1562, of *Poland* 1570-1586: 336-342,
361, 362
Leisnau VII, grandson of *Philip I*, *Capitain* king
of *France* 1117-1129: 125, 160
Leisnau IX, grandson of *Philip II*, *Capitain* king
of *France* 1226-1270 (assumed), 5, 52, 75,
78, 79, 81, 112, 113, 120, 123-125, 134, 135,
142-147, 179, 184, 186, 446, 447
Leisnau XI, grandson of *Charles VI*; *Capitain*
king of *France* 1401-1403: 134, 135
Leisnau XII, grand-son of *Charles VI*, duke
of *Orleans* 1402-1499, *Capitain* king of
France 1484-1515: 347, 349
Leisnau I (C. *Crus*), son of *Charles* (C. *Crus*),
Capitain emperor 414-442: 41
Leisnau of *Savoy*, husband of *Charlotte* de *Le*
Leisnau 1459-1462 and king of *Cyprus* 1459-
1464 (cf. 1462), 352, 357

- Lee Countries, 126, 497
 Lebeck, 492, *and see* Arnold
 Leontid, legendary brother of Calicut, 108
 Leuca, 126a, 126, 128, 128, 128, 492, *and see* *Palaeus*
 Lezore, 51, 497
 Ledia, legendary heroine, 72a
 Leil, *see* Raymond Leil
 Languas, 497
 Languass, royal dynasty in Jerusalem 1166–1186, 1197–1205, 152, 153, 162, 173, 174; *see* Guy 1166–1186, Asmar 1177–1205; *in* Cyprus 1192–1267, 154a, *see* Guy 1192–1194, Almar 1194–1266, Hugh 3 1260–1268, Henry I 1219–1225, Hugh II 1252–1267; *see also* Isakid
 “de Languass” (Ammoth Languas bar), royal dynasty in Cyprus 1267–1454, 99, 142, *see* Hugh II (pages 1267) 1267–1268, Henry II 1265–1274, Hugh IV 1274–1276, Peter I 1276–1288, James I 1282–1298, James 1298–1423, John II 1423–1454, Charles 1454–1464 (with Louis of Savoy 1459–1464), James II 1464–1473, James III 1473–1474 (with mother Catherine Cornaro); *see also* Amalric, Guy (3), Henry, Hugh (2), James (2), John, Marcella, Peter; *in* Jerusalem 1269–1281, *see* Hugh (2) (pages 1264–1267) 1269–1284, Henry II 1285–1289, *in* Cilician Armenia, *see* Peter 3 1348–1368, Leon VI 1374–1377
 Lennenburg, 496, *and see* Elizabeth and Eglemound
 Lepida, 496
 Lerna, 79, 128, 496, Second Council of (1274), 32, 75, 81–84, 86, 89
 Mahal, *see* Mahal
 Maclure, legendary heroines, 66
 Macfarlane, 187, 242, 246, 254, 317, 326, 496
 Machavere (7) 496
 Machavere (Mahavere), *see* Leontius Machavere
 Machava, 496, *and see* William
 Madava, 279, 285, 496; *see also*, *see* Mahabala of Ujjah 1472–1492
 Mafren, 496, *correct of*, *see* John de James 1224–*ca.* 1249
 Magdalene, bishop of, 379a
 Mahamad, brother-in-law of Mahad II; Osseman commander (in 1443), 271
 Mahamad (Pasha), Angkorath, Osseman grand vizir 1452–1458, 1472–1473 *et.* 1474a, 313, 321, 324, 326
 Maharaia, 303, 496
 Mahia, 337, 496
 Mahia, 496 *and see* Deon and Emilian
 Mainfichila, 413, 496
 Majara, 496
 Makel, 331, 496
 Mallesman, legendary castle, 106
 Mahab-Bah, Schiffoth when 1272–1282, 416
 Malhara, *see* Majara
 Malmsbury, 496, *and see* William
 Malia, 496
 Mamara, 495, 496
 Manabala, Bahet, slave dynasty in Egypt and Syria 1258–1312, 1269–1282 27, 36, 37, 87, 91–93, 222, 225, 277, 421, 428, 429, 434, 434, 439, 448, *see* Baybars 1260–1277, Kaharun 1279–1296, Muhammad 1293–1294, 1298–1299, 1318–1342, *see* Bahet Isakid 1342–1343
 Manabala, Bahet, slave “dynasty” in Egypt and Syria 1342–1388, 1360–1377, 142, 147, 171, 213, 242, 275, 289, 294–299, 342, 352, 353, 343, 352, 353, 377, 377, 421, 439 *see* Bahet Isakid 1422–1433, Isakid 1438–1442, Isakid 1442–1443, Isakid 1443–1446, Isakid 1446–1448, Isakid 1448–1450
 Manab, 423, 496
 Mangana, 176, 496
 Manabala, 81, 318, 145, 146, 496
 Manara, 129, 322, 345, 496 Congress of, 323
 Manad I Cornaro, grandson of Alabala I Byzantine-emperor 1240–1182 142, 184, 361, 379
 Manad Dragonopodas, Greek in Greece (1272), 366
 Manad III Palaeologus, son of John V. Byzantine-emperor 1279–1291, emperor 1291–1423 239, 244, 246, 251, 254, 254, 261
 Manad Filati, Cretan marchant, author (1441), 361
 Manabari, 227, 496
 al-Masari, Tash-al-Din Adnan Bin-Mah, Atrac Institute (in 1344, d. 1402), 423a, 423a, 423a
 Mas, daughter of George Ivanovich, wife of Masad II 1439–1450 *et.* 1477), 256, 371, 256
 Masara, French poet (b. *ca.* 1126, d. 1195), 73
 Masra J Sarala, archbishop of Carice Dandala, *deputy of* the Archbishop 1267–1227, 106
 Masra Wama, lord of Carice in 1228, 223
 Masropoli, 309, 496
 Masra, 423, 496
 Masra, 157a, 159, 160, 496
 Margara of Brinna, niece of John, wife of Balun I Greater (B. 1240), 384

- Margaret Ister, in Vienna, 163
- Maria Comnena, daughter of Alexios IV of Byzantium; wife of John VIII Palaiologos (1437-1496) 282
- Maria of Hungary, daughter of Louis I, lat wife of Sigismund (1385-1395) 203
- Maria of Trebiz, great-granddaughter of John I (fl. 1340s), 172n
- Marietta (Mariella) de Longueval, daughter of Peter I (fl. 1365), 152
- Martín Colman, Visconti duke of Caste (1346-1348/50) 209
- Martinus Sarraceni ("Berbalis"), Visconti Visconti (fl. 1378, d. 1377), 88-89, 91, 92, 176n, 229, 237
- Martino Barletta, Albanian historian (fl. 1512?), 293
- Martino, 218, 241, 242, 246, 279, 382, 499
- Mark Cornaro (Cornio), Visconti canon (fl. 1450s), 168
- Mark Knalysich, son of Vukobrat Serbian prince (d. 1394), 243, 250
- Mark, 488, and see Thomas
- Martina, see cf. 232, 241, 257, 499
- Martianus, Christian writer and around Syria, 179, 177
- Maria, 267, 499
- Marcwald Erlausen, German imperial army (fl. 1494), 344n
- Marićević, 166n
- Marićević, 147n, 499
- Marić, legendary king, 47
- Martin V (John-Colman), pope (1417-1431), 226, 249, 261, 281, 382
- Martin Krizan, Polish-Moscow (fl. 1530s), 277n
- Martynian, 499; *idem* cf., see Arnold below (1090-1099)
- Martullo, see Valerio Martullo
- Mascl, Jerome, see Mikuláš IV
- Masia, 499, and see Anthony
- Mashevina, legendary mother of Odoak, 100, 102
- Mathew, Greek bishop of Leffissa (fl. 1297), 170
- Matthew (Assay-Comnencus), son of John VI; Byzantine general in 1350 (d. 1363 or 1391), 230, 272, 284, 288
- Matthew Paris, English chronicler (d. 1259), 33, 117n
- Matthew Vucic, Visconti bulle in Cret (fl. 1354), 216n
- Matthew Vilani, Florentine chronicler (fl. 1340), 238
- Matthae, Greek patriarch of Constantinople 1347-1440: 254n
- Matthias Corvinus, son of John Hunyadi king of Hungary 1458-1490, ruler king of Bohemia (coronal 1469) 1478-1490: 277n, 324-328, 332, 339-339, 342, 344, 347
- Matthias I, son of Frederick (127), duke of Burgundy (died 1477) 1402; Hapsburg king of Germany and archduke of Austria 1469-1493 (1317), emperor 1485-1519 239, 342, 344, 348, 347, 352, 353
- Matys, 23, 72, 73, 88, 115, 353, 353, 499, and see Einhard and Burgard
- Mattei, Florentine family, in power 1454-1499 and after 1512, see Contini and Lorenzini de' Medici
- Matteo, 51, 752, 853, 499
- Matthiasen, see, 25, 27, 73, 88, 91, 94, 115, 223, 223, 380, 318, 328, 353, 442, 447, 389
- Matthias-Agata, 235, 499
- Matys, 499, and see Jaz
- Matys, 250, 347, 499
- Matys I ("the Chastelard"), son of Boyatz I, German commander 1423-1413, ruler 1413-1420: 254, 255, 279, 310
- Matys II (Pella, "the Chastelard"), son of Matys II, coronal ruler 1440-1448, German ruler 1431-1440: 240, 279, 279, 290, 304, 304, 310-313, 318, 323, wife cf., see Chastelard Khaton
- Matysian, baron in Leoben, 321
- Matys, 254, 257, 499
- Matys (Bogh, son of Assay) Greek ruler under, German commander (fl. 1354), 237
- Matys, Marie people of the Maras, 181, 185n
- Matys of Jerusalem, daughter of Baldwin II, wife of Pella 1131-1143, widow of Jerusalem 1231-1252 (d. 1441), 311, 312
- Matys (Orthodox Syrian, "Chastelard"), Christian sect, 179
- Matys, 238, 499
- Matyschka, 278, 499
- Matyschka, Gary, legendary Visconti of the Longueval, 99
- Matyschka, 248, 352, 499
- Matyschka, novel dynasty in Prussia ca. 475-751, 3
- Matyschka, 249, 249, 257, 499; *idem* bishop of, see Domestico de Deux-Louis (fl. 1347)
- Matys (Pella), a Palaiologos, German admiral (fl. 1480), 328
- Matyschka, 424, 430, 433-433, 453, 499; *idem* cf., see Schastelard
- Matys, 193, 194, 212, 313, 499

- Metz, 246, 258n, 499
 Meulan, 499, *and see* Falcus
 Mird (Baq), Ottoman commander (in 1447), 267, 267, 268
 Mökürs, 499, *and see* Philip
 Michael VII, Byzantine emperor 1078–1079; *see* Michael, son of Isidore, university of Wallachia 1411–1420: 259
 Michael Bekim, German poet (in 1411, d. ca. 1480), 299, 300
 Michael Chumakov, Czech metropolitan of Athens 1182–1215 (d. by 1220): 184
 Michael Crivobala (Brünneling), Hermannus, Latinist, noble and Greek rhetorician (fl. 1444), 317n, 320
 Michael Kuzak, Serbian canon (ca. 1440), 316n
 Michael VIII Palaiologos, great-grandson of Alexios III Angelos, Byzantine co-emperor w/ Nikeas 1259–1261, emperor at Constantinople 1261–1282: 300n
 Michael IX Palaiologos, Byzantine co-emperor 1294–1320: 250n
 Michelič, 309, 499
 Mikić, 176, 499
 MišaĐević, *see* Karamanli MišaĐević
 Mihael-eghile, Ottoman commander (in 1422), 250n
 Mihael-eghile Aš, Ottoman commander (in 1474, 1492), 329, 343
 Mihael, 129, 244, 246, 344, 347, 376, 499 archbishop of, *see* Anastos 1087–1091; duke of, *see* John Chouman Vlaniot 1295–1400; Philip Maria Vlaniot 1412–1447; Francis I Šćerac 1409–1466, Ladislav Šćerac 1464–1490
 Milostovica, 263, 499
 Milovan, daughter of John Ughlas; wife of Lazar I in 1509, regent of the Serbs 1509–1506: 248
 Mircea of Bistrița ("the Old"), nephew of Vlad II, prince of Wallachia 1396–1410: 240, 250, 251, 259
 Muz, *see* Egypt
 Muziliga, *see* Andrew and Thomas Muziliga
 Mădăra, 184n, 185, 192, 194, 200, 297, 250, 250, 262n, 298, 344, 349–351, 499
 Muhammed (Amir, Muhammad), founder of Islamic religion and community (b. ca. 570, d. 632), *evils*, 21, 22, 31, 33, 53–62, 67–69, 76, 81, 88, 444, 467, 469
 Moldavia, 239, 262, 229, 326, 349, 499, involved of, *see* Peter III Asin 1451/1452, Stephen 1457–1504
 Molyluk, 320, 499
 Monemman, 182, 250, 344, 499
 Mongols, 499
 Mongols, in Timur, 73, 80, 75, 116, 372, 424, 434
 Montery, *see* John Montery
 Montagu-sur-Chançon, 300 *and see* Carlo Masti-Castan, 2, 300 *and see* Peter "the Dearest"
 Moore (de) Cross, 300, *and see* Riccardo Montali, 300, *and see* Adeline
 Montagu, 250, 342, 344, 344, 300
 Montachus, 300; nephew of, *see* Conrad 1184–1192, Richard I 1192–1197
 Mountfort, in Syria, 300
 Mountfort-Camery, 384, 300, *and see* John, Philip, and Simon V
 Moutpallier, 300
 Mortuus, 300, lord of, *see* Reginald of Chik often 1174–1187
 Moyses, masters of Morocco and Spain 12, 64
 Moyses, 243, 280, 291, 322, 323, 354, 300
 Moyses, 277, 181, 183, 133, 189, 191, 182, 183, 194, 196–201, 207, 209–211, 213–213, 217, 220, 224, 240, 246, 249, 250, 250, 282–283, 286, 275, 273, 254, 260, 261, 294–300, 313, 316, 318, 320, 324–328, 344, 345–351, 359; despot of, *see* Palaiologos (ca. 1460)
 Mortuus, 172, 300
 Moutan le Fay, legendary half-sister of Arthur, 131
 Mortuus, Spanish converts from Islam, 322
 Moynak, 271, 300
 Moynak, 29, 306, ruler of, *see* Muziliga 1130–1269
 Mortuus, *see* Salvator Mordant
 Moyses, 300, *and see* Richard
 Mount, 88, 424, 443n, 474, 475, 349, ruler of, *see* Zengid 1177–1234
 Moynak, Spanish Christians under Muslim rule, 4, 64
 Muhammad, an Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-Dīn, son of Kalawan, Bahā'i Maṣṣab, caliph of Egypt and Syria 1259–1264, 1269–1280, 1310–1341, 92
 Muhammad, Nāṣir-al-Dīn, Dāṣṣimāṣṣal *and see* 1134–1140: 423
 Muziliga, 241, 267, 300
 al-Murī, also-Bahā'i Maṣṣab, Fāṣṣal Maṣṣab in Medina 913–972, in Cairo 972–973, 423
 Muziliga, Baṣṣa, Arab family at Shalṣar, *see* Ughlas
 Muzal I, son of Orkhan, Ottoman ruler 1342–1389: 233, 236, 241–243, 280
 Muzal II, son of Muzal I, Ottoman sultan

- 1421-1437, 154-163, 163-171, 171a-178, 182-194, 194, 280-310, 323, 364, 370; wife of, *see* Maria
- Musa, son of Baybars I, Ottoman commander 68, 1403, 221, 279
- Muslim Revolt (Ma'arik), *see* Muslim revolution (a. 175), 87
- al-Musta'fi (Mu'izz-ad-Din), also-Muhammad al-Musta'fi (Mu'izz al-Mustafid), Mamluk caliph 1170-1188, 425
- Mumukh (Bay), Ottoman envoy (a. 1469), grand vizier (a. 1474) *see* Mumukh Pasha (a. 1512), 341, 342, 348
- Musa'if, son of Baybars I, Ottoman pretender (a. 1423), 154-157, 178a, 262a
- Murad, son of Muhammad I, Ottoman pretender (a. 1423), 179
- al-Musta'il, also I-Qutub Ahmad, son of al-Muhammad Fakhri ruler of Egypt 1094-1101, 423, 432
- al-Mustashir (al-Ray), also-Ibrahim al-Mustashir, grandson of al-Malik; Mamluk caliph 1226-1242, 439, 461, 466
- al-Mustawfi, also-Dawud Mur'ad, son of al-Zahir, Mamluk imam of Egypt 1094-1094, 423-427, 432, 448, 449, 453
- Muwahhid, (Mu'awhid), Khatibah Sultan and caliph dynasty in North Africa and Spain 1130-1268, 10, 429a, 429c; *see* also, *see* Abd-al-Wahid (a. 1132-1142)
- Muzir de Cypria, admiral of Cyprus (a. 1473), 141
- Mytilene, 191, 194, 200, 200
- Mytilene, island, *see* Lesbos
- Mytilene, town, 120, 121, 190, 200
- al-Nakhal, (al-Nakhal), also-Ibrahim al-Nakhal, Arabic ruler (a. 1641, a. 1731), 444, 445a
- Nakhal, 500, *and* *see* Philistene
- Nasir, 120, 500; *see* also, *see* Baldwin (II) of Constantinople (1207-1229)
- Nasir, city 128, 130, 131, 133, 142, 146, 150, 200; archbishop of, *see* Alexander (174-182), duke of, *see* Stephen (II) 973-977
- Nasir, kingdom, 164, 122, 123, 126, 146, 147, 150, 500; *see* also, *see* Angelos (1268-1442), Alfonso I (1423) 1442-1458, Ferdinand I 1418-1434, Alfonso II 1494-1497, Portugal 1477-1490
- Nasrallah (II) Samsar, French emperor (100-1013), 39
- al-Nasir (al-Din al-Malik), also-Ibrahim al-Malik, son of al-Mustashir; Mamluk caliph 1180-1225, 456, 460
- al-Nasir (al-Mustashir), Mamluk ruler of northern Algeria 1062-1081, 1, 15
- al-Nasir Yusuf, Salih-ad-Din, son of al-Malik Muhammad; Ayyubid ruler of Aleppo 1236-1260, of Damascus and Hama 1250-1260 (a. 1261), 440
- Nasr, 181, 182, 183, 194, 144, 149, 500; archbishop of, *see* Samsar
- Nasr, 144, 146, 151, 500
- Nasr, 171, 200; *see* also, *see* Alfonso I 1024-1134, Theobald I 1234-1235
- Nasr, 20, 200
- Nasr, 121, 200
- Nasr, island, *see* Lesbos
- Mohammad, poet, 194-196, 127, 128, 160
- Nasir, Mamluk Muhammad, Ottoman commander (1546), 279
- Nasr, Christian, 101, 48, 170
- Nasr, 145, 500
- Nasr, 164, 166
- Nasr, also-Maria, 101, *and* *see* Fulk
- Nasr, 121, 160, *and* *see* John, count of, *see* Henry of Donat 1190-1221
- Nasr, 101, *and* *see* William
- Nasr, 181, 120, 120, 121, 124, 140, 170, 101, *and* *see* Galt
- Nasr, 120, 161
- Nasr, Cyprus, Byzantine Nasr (a. 1060, 121a, 122, 126)
- Nasr, legendary monk or cardinal, 16
- Nasr (IV) (Baron Nasr of Anah), French nobleman-general 1274-1279, pope 1280-1281, 20, 43, 43, 121
- Nasr V (Thomas Perinatos), pope 1447-1451, 164, 167, 129
- Nasr, Bar, Hungary (a. 1443), 167a
- Nasr de Courtois, noble bishop of Hattin (a. 1465), 167
- Nasr (Theodore), archbishop of Cyprus (a. 1230-1232)
- Nasr (Theodore), Byzantine envoy (a. 1410, 163, 165)
- Nasr (III) (Galt), brother of Despot, lord of Larnaca 1469-1476, of Larnaca 1478-1482, 164, 168, 120, 121
- Nasr (Galt), Western envoy (a. 1474), 127
- Nasr (Galt) (Galt), Hungarian lord of Larnaca (Galt) 1477-1482, 112
- Nasr (Galt) (Galt), Hungarian commander (a. 1442), 167, 120, 121
- Nasr, 120, 127, 115, 501
- Nasr, 91, 140, 147, 148, 150-151, 161, 174, 174, 178, 190, 164, 165, 168, 500

- Nicene, 173, 168, 162-167, 169-173, 586, arch-
bishops of, *see* *Elfen* 1332-1342, Hugh de
Langton 1425-1442, Robert (cinder 1476-
1478)
- Nijmegen, 588, 589
- Nile, 310, 508
- Nimes, 43, 588
- Nink, 344, 376, 371, 398-399, 323, 324, 588
- Nishura, 344, 385, 588
- Nishin, 437, 581
- Nogent-sur-Vernon, 584, *and see* *Orbert*
- Noma, *see* *Baldwin de Hono*
- Normandy, 124, 123, 317, 582; dukes of, *see*
William I 1035-1067, Robert II 1087-1134
- Norman, Scandinavian people, 136, 376, 565,
362, 344, 369
- North Africa, 5, 26-28, 36, 46, 41, 47, 36, 36,
36, 394, 352, 451-548
- North Sea, 124, 588
- Norway, kingdom; king of, *see* *Harald Har-
drade* 1046-1066
- Novara, 503, *and see* *Philip*
- Novi Pazar, 565, 581
- Novo Brdo, 367, 367, 323, 581
- Nur-ad-Din Mahmud, Zangid ruler of Syria
1148-1174 426n, 427
- Ode (of Italy), bishop of Paris 1296-1298: 128
- Ode Arpa, vassal of Bourges (c. 1095), 119,
140, *see also* *Harpin of Bourges*
- Ode of Bourges, legendary crusader, 168
- Ode of Châlons, medieval bishop of Tournai
1244-1273: 565, 444, 446, 462, 463
- Ode of Douai, French chronicler (fl. 1298), 46,
345, 563
- Odessa, Greek bishop of Lesbos (ca. 1266,
173n)
- Odessa, 387n, 581
- Odessa, *see* *Elfen* (Hansel)
- Oliver (David), abbot/bishop of Cologne, bishop
of Padua 1224-1225, cardinal-bishop
of Sabina 1225-1227 142
- Oliver, daughter of Louis I and Matilda; wife
of Richard I from 1189-1205
- Oval 323 581
- Oval, legendary palace, 76
- Origny, 70, 581, *and see* *William*
- Origny Yvels, monk, author (fl. 1173, fl. ca.
1143), 73n, 126n, 179n
- Orient, legendary king, 180; wife of, *see*
Beatrice
- Orkney, grandson of Richard; Ottoman pre-
senter (in 1444), 373, 384
- Orkney, Ottoman ruler 1334-1362: 328, 336,
331, 334, 336-338, 340, 343, wife of, *see*
Theodore Comnenus
- Orkney, Ottoman presenter (in 1451)
312
- Oreana, 585, duke of, *see* *Loth* (1012) 1465
1468
- Oreana, 104, 344, 581
- Oreana, 344, 310, 304, 30n
- Oreana, chronicle of ca. 1303, 124n
- Oreana, 317, 581
- Oreana, Thalia, *see* *Oreana*
- Oreana, 323, 581
- Orkney, bishop of Lige 1095-1107: 123, 133
- Oreana de la Roche, great lord of Athens 1204-
1227 (fl. 1241), 338
- Oreana, 121n, 350, 351, 373, 350, 588
- Ore, legendary emperor, 581, 382
- Oreana (Oreana), Turkish people and dy-
nasty 1200-1400: 29, 33, 35, 64, 313, 355,
323-328, 363, 306-313, rulers: *see* *Orkney*
1336-1343, Murad I 1362-1389, rulers: *see*
Beyazit I 1389-1402, Mehmed I (cinder
1402-1403) 1413-1415, Murad II 1421-1451,
Mehmed II 1451-1481, Bayazit II 1471-
1512, Selim I 1512-1520, Suleiman I 1520-
1566, commanders for the sultanate 1402-
1413, *see also* (fl. ca. 1402), *Suleiman* (fl.
1413), *Sultan* (fl. 1413); presenters: *see* *Mu-
hammad* (fl. 1413), *Orkney* (fl. 1413), *John* (fl. 1413);
other presenters: *see* *Khalid* (fl. 1399) *Suleiman*
(fl. 1397)
- Our Lady of Tinnis, convent at Ptolemais, 171
- Our Lady of Tyre, convent at Nicopolis, 171
- Ourry, legendary half-brother of Baldwin (the
beastly), 113
- Overson, 134, 581
- Oxford, 581, *and see* *Philip*
- Padua, 581, bishop of, *see* *Oliver* 1224-1225
- Padua, 581, *and see* *Padua*
- Pagan of Bourges, legendary chronicler, 167
- Paganus Daria, Ottoman chronicler in 1331 (fl.
ca. 1375), 32n
- Palatinate, Byzantine imperial dynasty in
Nicosia 1279-1281 and Comnenus 1281-
1453: 183, 301, 382, 341, 315, *and see* *345*
chaud IX (1264-1266), John V 1341-1347,
1354-1376, 1379-1390, 1396-1399, Andrew
III (1355) 1374-1376, John VII 1380-
1390, Manuel II (1373) 1396-1423, John
VIII (1421) 1423-1448, Constantine XI
1448-1453, 1453, 1453, 1453, *and see* *Thomas*
1453-1463, in the House, *see* *Theodore I*
1382-1407, *Theodore II* 1405-1423 (1443),

- Thomas (1428-1432, groom of Achens 1432-1440), Constantine (XI, 1428) 1443-1448, Demetrius (1449-1460; in Thessalonica, see ADDENDUM 1460-1462; see also Helena and Prince Palaeologus, and Monks (Patriar)
- Palera, 258, 301
- Palermos, 302; cardinal-bishop of, see Hugh de Languis 1437-1438
- Pandora, see Camille Poudon
- Papacy, or Holy See ("Rome"), 4, 34, 49, 120, 126, 138, 141, 172, 238, 264, 268, 289, 292, 294, 319, 323, 328, 330, 331, 333, 337, 338, 341, 344, 348
- Paphos, 160, 161, 168, 360
- Papa, 126, 127, 302, bishop of, see Gilo 1176-1200
- Papa, see Matthew Peter
- Papari, 256, 301
- Parthians, central Asian people, 438
- Paschal II (Rainer of Elze), pope 1099-1118: 151
- Pasque de Rivet, mistress of Hamilton (II, 1417), 112
- Pasqua, 302, bishop of, see Leonard Lohring 1424-1441
- Pastormas, anti-christian dissidents in French 73
- Patrios, 166, 303
- Patra, 264, 268, 302
- Paul II (Papa Barba), pope 1464-1470: 277a
- Paul Kistai, son of Tamerlane in 1479, Hungarian general (in 1494), 342
- Pavia, 170, 302, and see Blaise
- Pavia, 241, 242, 302, and see Bipa
- Pavlovsk, see Francesco Baldacci Pavlovsk
- Pelagos (Calmar), cardinal-deacon (280-1289, cardinal-priest 1290-1301, cardinal-bishop of Athens (1312-1320), papal legate on Fifth crusade, 74, 123, 141, 242, 361
- Peloponnese, see Maria
- Pelivora, 302, and see Raymond
- Pemodistika, 163, 302
- Pepia ("the Short"), son of Charles Martel: Carolingian ruler 741-751, king of the Franks 751-768 99
- Pera, 230, 231, 243, 277a, 303, 348, 362
- Perche, 302, and see Robert
- Perpetua, 229a, 301
- Petia, 232, 302, 303, 304; ruler of, archbishop on 1206-ca. 640, Sachakata, il-khanate 1274-1285, Tamerlane 1286-1288, Subutai 1284-1294
- Petrica Gulf, 340
- Petrua language, 126, 30
- Petrus (Stamand), Indo-European people, 41, 73, 74, 426
- Peter, infant of Castile (I, 1376), 24
- Peter IV ("the Ceremonious"), king of Aragon-Castile (1336-1387), duke of Achens ca. 1376-1387-1388
- Peter (son of) Alfonso, Jewish convert to Christianity (b. ca. 1076, d. 1148), 36
- Peter III Artois, vermouth of Melitona 1431-1432, 1434-1435, 1435-1437-1438
- Peter Bartholomew, crusader (d. 1099), 44, 108
- Peter I de Longueval, son of Hugh IV, king of Cyprus (reigned 1314) 1379-1380; cf. Cili and Armenia 1266-1380 152-154, 156, 157, 179-181, 183, 185-187, 178, 179; wife of, see Eleanor of Antioch
- Peter II de Longueval, 154, 155, 163, 167, 173
- Peter de Longueval, son of Marcella, titular count of Tripoli, regent of Cyprus in 1452 (d. 1457), 154
- Peter de Pierre Chomagne, bishop of Reims 1302-1319 170
- Peter Bleda, Hunnic enemy (b. 490), 340
- Peter Dubois, see Pierre Dubois
- Peter Gaurin, bishop of Crete 1331-1343, 277a
- Peter Loredan, Venetian ally (in 1434), 257
- Peter of Achmon, great master of the Hospitallers 1454-1481, cardinal-deacon 1467-1501 231, 234, 337, 340, 341, 346a
- Peter of Artois, Cypriot commander (ca. 1470) 179
- Peter of Blois, French cleric (b. ca. 1135, d. ca. 1205), 42
- Peter of Braccas, French crusader (b. 1204) 108a
- Peter of Sacrobosco, Polish astro-theologian (b. 1444), 354
- Peter of Toledo, treasurer (II, 1407), 365
- Peter Perceval, Marston (d. 1360), canonized, 57
- Peter "the Deacon", cf. Marco Caserio Italian chronicler (ca. 1197-ca. 1242), 36a
- Peter "the Hermit", travelling Anagapaga (fl. 1064), 43, 73, 103, 302, 128, 117, 158, 253
- Peter "the Wonderful", abbot of Cluny 1122-1136: 36, 36a
- Peter Thomas, Gazon Carmelite, archbishop of Cote 1265-1266, thirde Latin patriarch of Constantinople 1244-1246: 87, 92, 95, 170, 235-237
- Peter Vland, archbishop of Euboea (and Sicily) 1461-by 1502: 376a

- Peter VII, Catholic, Burgundian countess**
 (a 1444), 308, 309a
- Patrick**, 354, 355
- Petrusvallis**, 381, 382
- Phaeacians**, common in countries of Nicotia, 172a
- Philadelphia**, 344, 345
- Phalaenopterus**, *Byrroniae usary* (a 1439), 256
- Philbert of Nollac**, grand master of the Hospitaliers 1796-1425, 232
- Philip I**, Capetian king of France 1060-1108, 118, 358
- Philip II ("Augustus")**, son of Louis VII, Capetian king of France 1180-1223, 118, 120-122, 124-128, 133, 137, 140, 141, 178
- Philip IV ("the Fair")**, grandson of Louis IX; Capetian king of France 1285-1314, 84, 86, 89
- Philip II ("the Good")**, son of John of Normy; duke of Burgundy 1404-1467, 288-290, 292-293; wife of, *see* Isabella of Portugal
- Philip**, son of Frederick II; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia and Alsace 1196-1208, king of Germany 1197-1208, 128
- Philip Barchinon**, *see* Philip Barchinon
- Philip d'Alsace**, countess of Henry III of England (d. 1277), 122
- Philip Maria Visconti**, duke of Milan 1412-1447, 319a
- Philip of Comines**, *Grand of Aquitaine*, French envoy (a 1494), *Mémoires* (a 1111), 346
- Philip of Courtenay**, son of Baldwin II, titular Latin emperor of Romania 1273-1283, 126
- Philip of Heinsberg**, archbishop of Cologne 1167-1191, 318a
- Philip of Italia**, son of Isidore II, bishop of Cyprus 1216-1227, 152
- Philip of Melitene**, chancellor of Cyprus (a 1343), *chronicle* (a 1405), 85, 162, 221, 236
- Philip of Montfort**, first count of Slania V; lord of Tinea 1240-1264, of Tyre 1241-1278, 181, 407
- Philip of Novara**, Lombard chancellor (a 1185, d. ca. 1265), 74, 153, 162
- Philip of Oxford**, propagandist (d. 1316), 41
- Philippopolis**, 347, 292, 302
- Philoteus I**, Melkite patriarch of Alexandria 1437-1450, 382
- Phlades**, 179a, 342
- Phoenax**, 236, 236a, 308, 302
- Phoenax, Nova**, 236, 235, 371, 387
- Pico del Carpio**, 352, *and see* John
- Pierre Dubois**, French jurist (d. 1308), 88-90, 121
- Pisano**, *see* Hugh Pisano
- Pisa**, 382, *and see* Raymond
- Pisani**, *see* Manuel Pisani
- Pisotides**, 364, 362
- Pir Ahmad**, son of Bedlam (Bég), son of Kassar 1466-1469/70, *see also* 1468/70-1473/4, 322
- Pisa**, 270, 271, 292, 342
- Pisa**, 261a, 269, 170, 171, 302; archbishop of, *see* Desiderio 1081-1099, Council of, 281
- Pisano**, 22, 160
- Piso II** (*Don Silvio Procelario*, *Acacia Sylvestris*, paper 1458-1466, 91, 270a, 197, 249, 302a, 310a, 326, 322, 124-126
- Pisano**, *see* *Citizens of Pisa*
- Platagone**, royal dynasty in England 1114-1482, king, *see* Henry II 1154-1189, Richard I 1189-1199, John 1199-1216, Henry III 1216-1272, Edward I 1272-1307, prince, *see* Henry of 1187, Richard of 1272, Edward of 1294
- Plato Comagno**, *see* Peter de Plato Champaign
- Platonic**, 247, 362
- Plotina**, 364, 362
- Poggio Bracciolini**, Italian humanist and papal official (d. 1473), 270a, 109a
- Pollens**, 123, 173, 302, *and see* Raynold, count of, *see* Alphonsus 1245-1251
- Pollens**, 154, 156, 158, 169, 176, 302, count of, *see* William IX of Aquitaine 1066-1127
- Pollard**, 131, 266, 272, 274, 275a, 284, 291, 304, 328, 327, 341, 349, 386; king of, *see* Louis I 1270-1312, Vladimir II Jurek 1286-1354, Vladimir (Ladislav) III 1424-1444, Cui *see* IV 1445-1482, John Asher 1482-1504, Sigismund (St. Augustus) 1548, 1572
- Poma**, Slavic people, 270, 361, 364, 368, 110
- Poma**, 169, 362
- Poma**, son of Bernard, count of Tripoli 1112-1137, 371
- Pontius**, 368, legendary creation of, 46
- Pope**, *see* Gregory I 590-604, Leo IV 847-855, John VIII 873-882, Alexander II 1060-1073, Gregory VII 1073-1085, Urban II 1088-1099, Paschal II 1099-1118, Innocent II 1130-1143, Eugene III 1145-1153, Alexander III 1159-1181, Gregory VIII 1173-1187, Clement III 1187-1191, Celestine III 1191-1198, Innocent III 1198-1216, Honorius III 1216-1227, Gregory IX 1227-1241, Innocent IV 1243-1254, Urban IV 1261-1264,

- Clement IV 1268–1269, Gregory X 1270–1274, Nicholas IV 1288–1289, Boniface VIII 1294–1303, Clement V 1305–1314, John XXII 1316–1334, Benedict XII 1334–1342, Clement VI 1342–1352, Innocent VI 1352–1362, Urban V 1362–1378, Benedict IX 1369–1404, Martin V 1407–1420, Eugene IV 1431–1447, Nicholas V 1447–1455, Callixtus III 1455–1458, Pius II 1458–1464, Pius II 1464–1471, Sixtus IV 1471–1484, Innocent VIII 1484–1492, Alexander VI 1492–1502, Julius II 1502–1512; *see also* *Papacy*
- Prato, 343, episcopal-bishop of, *see* Conrad 1219–1223, Francis Condolmieri *et al.* 1442–1452
- Portugal, 152, 333, 345, 348, and *see* *Isabella* France, 345, 348
- Portugal, 165, 348
- Prague, 345, 349, 350, Housie archbishop of, *see* John Episcopus 1436–1471
- Przemyslavskaya, monastic order, 131, 170
- Principes (of Salerno), *see* Richard Pezz 149, 363
- Procelio, 174, 345, 346, 350
- Procelio, or Procelio, people of south-eastern France, 168, 169
- Provence, 144, 129, 375, 382, marriage of, *see* Raymond IV of Saint-Gilles *et al.* 1005
- Proven, 378, 382
- Pérensis, 1548, 1716, 302
- Palace of Lancia, Dominican chapel of, *et al.* 1312, 32, 34
- Pyrone, 71, 382
- Pyrus, 151, 382
- Pyrene, 232, 382
- Quirici, *see* Francis Quirici
- Quirici, *see* George Quirici
- Qia, 428, 300
- Rain II (Framedilore, "the Simple" or "the Bold"), 1005–1025, vicar of Wallachia 1421/1427–279
- Rade III ("the Handless"), son of Vlad III, predecessor to Wallachia 1442/1473–325
- Rafael Hucag, bishop of Tarragona 1448–1458–338
- Ragusa, 243, 267, 274, 345, 386–390, 394, 394–398a, 395
- Ralova, 232, 300
- Rambert Cross, legendary crusader (c. 1090), 104, 300
- Ralva, legendary duke of Saxony, 100
- Randa, 162, 428, 382; lord of, *see* Italian II of Thule *et al.* 1187–1195; *see also* *Baldwin of Flandersburg (legendary count)*
- Rapport II, son of Pezz; count of Tripoli, 1177–1182; 375, 402
- Rapport III, son of Raymond II, count of Tripoli 1182–1187 (captivity 1144–1174), regent of Jerusalem 1185/4–1186, 375, 376, 379, 402, 403, 451
- Rapport Lull, Countess, Franciscan monastery (d. *ca.* 1321), 61, 91, 93
- Rapport of Aguilera, French crusader and chronicler, chaplain to Raymond of St. Gilles (c. 1099), 44, 318, 331, 359, 370
- Rapport of Pellicano, Dominican crusader, master-general 1234–1240 (d. 1271), 27–29
- Rapport of Pica, Countess, crusade (c. 1100), 153a
- Rapport of Pezzers, son of William IX of Aquitaine; husband of Countess and prince of Antioch 1176–1149; 108, 110, 371, 372, 393, 394
- Rapport of Saint Gilles, count (IV) of Tripoli and marquis of Provence 1080–1105 (other names of) of Tripoli 1102–1103 104–105, 107, 151, 377; chaplain to, *see* Raymond of Aguilera
- Rapport V of Saint Gilles, nephew of Bertrand; count of Tripoli 1140–1194, 174
- Rapport-Rapport, grandson of Bohemond III, prince of Antioch 1216–1229, predecessor to Christian Armenia (d. 1232), 180, 184
- Rat III, 72, 174, 182, 183, 453, 393
- Rapport-Crusader, son of Conrad, lord of Antioch, 1170–1187, lord of Beirut (d. *et al.* 1200), 376, 377, 382, 384, 400
- Rapport or Chabillon, brother of Christian II and regent of Antioch 1152–1162, Christian II of Saphir and lord of Karik and Mersin 1174–1187–18, 76, 112, 113, 413
- Rapport of The legendary crusader, 385
- Rapport-Rapport, legendary crusader (c. 1090), 104
- Rapport de Coultis, Hospitaller (d. 1441), 287
- Rapportant, *see* John de Rapportant
- Raric, *see* John Raric
- Rassat, epic poem (c. 1200), 102
- Ravata, 196, 303
- Ravata, 301, and *see* *Robert*
- Ravata, 191, 303
- Ravata, 129, 303
- Ravata, city, 299, 303
- Ravata, Ravata, 238, 249, 252, 263, 273, 287–290, 294–298, 303, 428, 350, 111, 340, 340,

- Rhodes** (*continued*)
146a, 146, 149, 151, 151, 154a, 161; *ruins of*, *see* Hospitallers 1366-1373
- Rhone**, 116, 126, 303
- Roccolle of Monte (St) Cross**, Dominican missionary (d. 1309), 57a, 79-81, 82, 88, 88, 91
- Richard (Platanogenet)**, son of John of England; earl of Cornwall, co-king of Germany 1157-1172: 143, 143
- Richard I ("the Lionheart")**, son of Henry II; Plantagenet king of England 1189-1199-21, 47, 73, 74, 118, 119, 122, 123, 133, 140, 147, 180, 151a, 173a, 178
- Richard de la Rochem**, Cypriot: 88, 1425, 142a
- Richard of Cambray**, legendary crusader, 103, 105, 106
- Richard of Devion**, monk, chronicler (fl. 1175), 71a
- Richard of Paris**, legendary crusader, 103
- Richard of San Germano**, Italian chronicler (fl. 1345), 123a
- Richard of the Principate** (of Salerno), brother-in-law of Tancred, regent of Salerno 1104-1108, 118, 158, 164, 166, 169
- Richard "the Pilgrim"**, crusader (fl. 1090), 105, 128-131
- Ricard (of Brie)**, bishop of Verden 1089-1107: 119
- Ridwan**, nephew of Malik-Shah; Seljuqid ruler of Aleppo 1095-1111: 437
- Robert I**, brother of Louis IX of France; count of Artois (d. 1280), 142
- Robert II ("the Jeune-épouse")**, count of Flanders 1092-1118: 105, 118, 157; wife of, *see* Clementia
- Robert II ("Cartier")**, son of William the Conqueror, duke of Normandy 1067-1134: 105, 107, 126, 124, 133, 179, 182, 184
- Robert Guiscard**, duke of Apulia 1086-1093: 126, 143a
- Robert Holcar**, Dominican (d. 1349), 19-22, 76
- Robert of Clari (Clery)**, French crusader and chronicler (d. after 1216), 180a, 186a, 141a
- Robert of Katoen**, purifier of the Kaaba (ca. 1240), 26, 57
- Robert of Ruano**, Italian chronicler (fl. 1606), 7, 42, 41, 77
- Robert "the Blind"**, countess (fl. 1112), 110
- Roche**, *see* Orlon de la Roche
- Roderic**, 303; bishop of, *see* Peter de Platan-Changre 1060-1119
- Roedrig Diaz of Viver (Dz) Claf**, Spanish warrior (d. 1099), 1, 79, 84
- Roger I** (of Huesca-Gel), brother of Robert
- Guiscard*, count of Sicily 1071-1081: 1, 79, 164
- Roger Roca**, English Franciscan, hermit (d. 1360), 87
- Roger Roca**, son of Robert Guiscard, duke of Apulia 1085-1101: 156
- Roger of Hereford (Glover)**, English chronicler (d. ca. 1300), 109a
- Roger of Salerno**, son of Richard of the Principate; regent of Antioch 1112-1119: 154, 164, 167, 192
- Rokycana**, *see* John Rokycana
- Roland**, nephew of Charlemagne; epic hero (d. 778), 45, 79
- Roman empire**, resurgence of, *see* Constantine I (d. 337)
- Romania**, 175, 176, 176, 179, 186, 182, 186, 191, 207, 224, 261, and *see* Greece, Latin empire of Constantinople
- Romans**, citizens of Rome, in the Roman empire, 436; kings of, *see* Constantine, kings of Romania-mu-ahab, 303, and *see* Hunsbert
- Roma**, 76, 105, 176, 187, 179, 218, 223, 240, 240, 264, 128, 150, 217-241, 246, 249, 264, and *see* Papacy
- Romulo de Rastrow**, captain and master of Azzura 1379-1381: 266; wife of, *see* Zoe of Megara
- Rosa**, or Rosina, legendary daughter of Orlon and father of Balduin II of Jerusalem, 151, 154
- Rostom of Persia**, legendary crusader, 109, Verden 246a, 261
- Roussillon**, 172, 264, count of, *see* Gerard I ca. 1005-1113
- Rovina**, 236, 264
- Rougeyrol**, *see* Roca and Stephen Rougeyrol
- Rubrick**, 304, and *see* William
- Rua**, *see* Anatolia, rulers of, *see* Seljuqids of Rüm 1071-1302
- Rumeli-Hisar**, 311, 364
- Rumelia**, 236, 240, 242, 247, 251, 255, 257, 259, 262, 263, 267, 270, 271, 280, 292, 294, 300, 301, 308, 314, 317, 327, 331, 315, 134, 144, 264
- Ruman**, 136, 304
- Rumour**, poem (d. ca. 1285), 82, 82
- Ruthenians**, Slavic people, 282
- Sablon**, 304; cardinal-bishop of, *see* Oliver 1225-1237, Romanion 1408-1449, 1465-1472, Indare 1431-1461
- Sakalika**, Ottoman historian (fl. 1556, d. 1596), 276a, 280a

- Seljuks**, royal dynasty in Persia 1089-1176, 152, 153 *see* **Isma'ili** 1308-1334
- Sepulch**, Venetian family, 305
- Saint Basilian**, Greek monastery at Hamaia, 149
- Saint Berthé**, 504 *about* of, *see* **John** of **Yemen** ca. 1260-1280
- Saint Blaise**, priory at Hamaia, 151a
- Saint George**, on coins, 167, 193
- Saint Gilles-du-Gard**, 178, 402, 504, and *see* **Raymond** and **Raymond IV** and **V**
- Saint Hilarius**, 183, 504
- Saint John of Hila**, church at Hamaia, 173
- Saint John Fredonius**, monastery near **Sereis**, 142
- Saint Macarius**, Armenian monk, north of Hamaia, 172
- Saint Mamoud**, Greek monk at Hamaia, 173
- Saint Mark**, church in Venice, *see* **San Marco**
- Saint Maurice**, on coins, 371a
- Saint Nicholas** (see **Zealotry**), 173, 304
- Saint Nicholas**, church at **Phanagoria**, 151
- Saint Orsen**, 154, 164
- Saint Peter**, cathedral at **Agrioch**, 119
- John Peter**, on coins, 164, 165, 191-193
- Saint Pol-eur-Thronos**, 504, and *see* **Enguerrand**
- Saint Quentin**, 158, 304
- Saint Sabas**, abbey in **Aeas**, 447
- Saint Sabas**, abbey near **Partheni**, 173a
- Saint Simeon**, priory at **Phanagoria**, 173
- Saint Theodore**, on coins, 164, 167
- Saint Theobaldus**, 171, 504
- Saint Thord**, 304; *legendary* *about* of, 160
- Saint Urbain**, 122, 504
- Sakarya**, 127, 304
- Sakafis** 164-Nasir **Sakaf-al-Din Yusuf** **Al-Aythy**, Zengid governor of Egypt 1169-1174, **Ayubid** ruler of Egypt and Syria 1174-1193 *see* 47, 66, 73, 76, 81, 93, 95, 111, 112, 113, 174-183, 408, 422a, 427-439, 431-437, 443, 450a, 451, 452-457
- Sakafis** **Tahs**, 128-134, 134, 155, 140, 141, 148
- Salerno**, 104, and *see* **Baron** and **Richard** of the **Principes**; prince of *see* **Matthieu** (in 174)
- al-Sakif** **Ayub**, **Nasir-al-Din**, son of **al-Kamil** **Mubarakshah**, **Ayubid** ruler of Damascus 1216-1239, 1245-1249, ruler of Egypt 1260-1269, (ruler of **Isfahak** 1246-1249), 404, 467a
- al-Sakif** **Isma'ili**, **Tutal-al-Din**, son of **al-Nasir** **I** **Sakaf-al-Din**, **Ayubid** ruler of Damascus 1237-1237, 1239-1245 of **Isfahak** 1237-1246 (q. 1237), 404-468
- al-Sakif** **Isma'ili**, **Tutal-al-Din**, **Tutal** **Isma'ili** ruler of Egypt and Syria 1342-1345, 434
- Sakia**, 162, 504
- Sakian** **Carica**, ruler history of **Tartus** 1423-1429, 149
- Sakia**, 249, 304
- Sakia**, *see* **Thomaston**
- Salvage**, *see* **Sagorin** **Salvage**
- Salvage**, 170a, 304
- Savathetia**, 318, 321, 304
- San Germano** **Narcissus**, 504, and *see* **Richard**
- San Marco** (Saint Mark), church in Venice, 174
- Sangha**, brother of **Maagha**, *legendary* son of a *salva*, 408
- Sanket**, 164, and *see* **Gregory**
- Sanu** **Mina**, island, *see* **Lebanon**
- Sanu** **Stephen** (Hague **Stephen**, Holy **Stephen**), church in Hamaia, 153, 164a, 169
- Sarakh**, Venetian royal dynasty at **Nabata** 1207-1371 (1307), 127; *see* **Mauro** I 1207-1227, and *see* **Mauro** **Sarakh**
- Saragosa**, 45, 304, *legendary* lord of, *see* **Cantabria**
- Sardis**, 75, 505
- Sarva** **Ras**, 123, 124, 305
- Sarvathia**, 348, 305
- Sasania**, royal dynasty in Persia ca. 226-ca. 646 (644), 430
- Sasania**, *see* **James** **Sasania**
- Sava**, 129, 305
- Savay**, 168, 193, and *see* **Loch**, *son* of *see* **Amadeus** VI 1247-1245
- Savona**, **Tedrick** *gentry*, 199
- Savory**, 165, *legendary* *date* of *see* **Rahim**
- Savathetia**, *see* **George** **Cantabria**
- Savathetia**, 124, 305
- Schick**, *see* **Georg** **Schick**
- Sepulchra** **Tiipala**, husband son of **James** (L. 1119), 193
- Scotland**, 165, king of, *see* **William** 1167-1214
- Scotus**, in **Albania**, 147, 159, 163, 172, 173, 305; lord of, *see* **Sakif** (in 1399)
- Scotus**, in **Albania**, 120, 145, 305
- Schona**, 154, 305
- Second Crusade**, 45, 74, 132, 115, 160, 445
- Sepis**, 195; *bishop* of, *see* **Brucal** **And** 1079-1123
- Sepulchra** **Salvage**, **Gregory** *trade* 170, 1200, 95
- Selchukids** (**Seljuks**), **Qipchak** Turkish people and dynasty in Persia and Syria, *see*, 125, 128, 140, 434, 428, 430, 434, 437, *see* **Mahmud** **Ghaz** 1023-1052, **Buyukshah** 1094-1125 at **Alapka**, *see* **Rahim** 1095-1113, **Alp** **Arslan** 1113-1135

- Sargis of Alaska, legendary heroism, 308
- Sarcocolla, *Cypripedium* family, 173
- Sarcopiles, 238, 240, 306
- Spain, 1-6, 13, 23, 27, 36, 37, 39, 41, 54, 62, 65, 72, 76, 79, 94, 134, 177, 252, 286; kings of, *see* Ferdinand (V) 1492-1504 (1516), Charles V (1516) 1516-1556; queens of, *see* Isabella 1492-1504
- Spalato, 256, 296a, 306
- Spanish, 4, 171, 252; *see also* Castilian
- Spain, 182, 306; rule of, *see* Leo Chomarov (in 1203)
- Sphinctran, *see* George Sphinctran
- Spinelli, *see* Lucian Spinelli
- Sporophyll, 306
- (John) Stasivich, son of John Alexander, bar of western Bulgaria in 1346-1396 251
- Stevanovica, 268, 273, 306
- Studia Com, 239, 306
- Sturkenberg, *see* Moravian
- Thracian Thracian monastery at (Stavro) Stavrovitski, 171
- Stephen, son of George Brankovich; killed 1427, co-keeper of Serbia (1416) 1417-1426, despot (from 1423-1429 (in 1477), 299, 306, 307
- Stephen ("the Great"), retreat of Moldavia 1457-1504: 303-307
- Stephen Bathori, Hungarian commander, prince of Transylvania in 1444, 267a, 306, 307
- Stephen (Lion) IV Dushan, (Romanian) king of the Serb 1331-1345 "emperor" (1443-1397, 239, 256, 257, 303
- Stephen Lachovitch, retreat of Transylvania (in 1395), 303
- Stephen Lazarovich, son of Laza II, ruler (from) of the Serb 1389-1427 246, 252, 254-268
- Stephen of "Albomaria" (Blain?), legendary crusader, 188
- Stephen of Mold, son of Chetiv and Blain 1089-1082 104, 105, 107, 110, 136, 159
- Stephen Ruzayev, Serbian count, Hungarian commander (in 1424), 264, 266a
- Stephen VI Thomas, grandson of Petko I, king of Bozra 1444-1461 301
- Stephen VII Zvezdovitch, son of Stephen VI; king of Bosnia 1461-1463 303
- Steph-Gedevich, Serbian army of Ladislav IV (in 1444), 299, 306, 302
- Sturkenberg, 235a, 306, *see also* General
- Sturkenberg, 235, 245, 246, 306
- Syria, 235a, 245, 306; state of, *see* Lempell (V) 1194-1230
- Sydon, 71, 306
- Szem, 253, 306
- Suger (abbot of St. Denis), regent of France 66, 1251, 438
- Suleyman (Sulay), nephew of Yekizid, son of Karim (in 1340), 279a
- Suleyman II, lieutenant of Emir of Kail Akkad in 1393-ca. 1393 349
- Suleyman (Sulay), Ottoman army (in 1444) 300
- Suleyman (Pasha), Ottoman governor (in 1491), 236, 242, 340
- Suleyman, son of Bayezid I, Ottoman governor of Ruzovica, commander for ruzovica 1462-1413 254, 259
- Suleyman (Pasha), son of Orkhan, Ottoman prince (in 1317), 236-238, 236-238
- Suleyman I (Karam), "the English"; "the Magellanic", son of Selim I, Ottoman military 1520-1546 242, 353
- Suleyman, 256, 246
- Suleyman, 92, 246 archbishop of, *see* William Adam 1323-1324
- Suleyman, archbishop Mladin majority, 423
- Suleyman, 236a, 306, dates of, *see* Mladinarchia
- Suleyman, son of Orkhan; legendary epic hero and father of Isid, 96, 105-107, 115, 116; wife of, *see* Ruzovica
- Synanthus, *Cypripedium* family, 173, *see* Cypripedium
- Synanthus, *Cypripedium* family, 173, *see* Cypripedium
- Syria, 76, 94, 104, 110, 149, 145, 253, 255, 256, 257, 262, 307, 423-425, 424-440, 444, 447, 458, 464-472, 505; rulers of, *see* Seleucid, Zengid, Ayyubid, Mamluk, Mamluk, Mamluk, Mamluk
- Syrianizing, 267, *see also* Peter
- Syria, 271, 275a, 287, 291, 296a, 302-304, 307
- Syria, Transylvanian events, *see* Francis Colly, Michael Kamil, *see* Stephen Ruzayev
- Syria from Glasgow, 267, 307
- Syrianizing, Syria, 239
- Syria, 265, 307
- Tafel, ruled with grandson, 69, 104, legend *see* "king" of, 106-108, 111
- Tahiti, 236, 307
- Tahiti, 236, 307
- Tahiti, nephew of Solomon I, prince of Tahiti 1099-1106 (dates 1099-1123), regent of Anioch 1099-1108, 1104-1123: 83, 103, 109, 106, 108, 111, 114, 121, 256, 264-269, 294, 292
- Tahiti-Waga, 253, 307

- Taranto, 340, and see *Johnston* & archbishop of, see *John Bernard* 1475-1479
- Tarcon, 103, 338, 347
- Tatars, see *Mongols*
- Taurus ("Taurus the Mountain"), *Byzantine general* (in 1096), 181
- Tavrosia, 341, 342, 347
- Telike, 347a, 347
- Tendras, 171a, 347
- Tenavris district, 347, *see* *of*, see *Paul Constant* (in 1479)
- Tenavris, *town*, 341, 350, 345, 344, 347
- Tempture, or *Knights Templars*, military order, 3, 18, 49, 112, 117, 124-125, 127, 126, 127, 140, 142, 144, 144, 171, 172, 184; *masters of*, see *Arnold of Theng* 1038-1044, 903; *house of Chauron* 1210-1239
- Temptis, *Mon. at London*, 128
- Tetacles, 123, 125, 144, 143, 306, 315, 340, 347
- Tetus, 171, 184, 306, 307
- Tetonic Knights, military order, 134, 171, 354a
- Thalberg, see *Finans and lands Thalberg*
- Tharus, 319-321, 347
- Thelus, 162, 242, 306, 307
- Theobald, count (V) of Blois 1123-1191, 123
- Theobald III, count of Champagne 1177-1201, 118, 140
- Theobald, son of Theobald III, count (IV) of Champagne 1201-1225, *king of* of Normans 1234-1235, 124
- Theodora Cantamarina, daughter of John VI, wife of Orphan 1246-1262 *et. after* 1265, 234
- Theodora Comnena, sister of Manuel I, wife of Baldwin III 1158-1163-341
- Theodora Comnena, *Byzantine empress* (in 1442), 230
- Theodora Douca (Angelina) "Comnena" daughter of Epina 1235-1236, or Theodora 1234 ("compen") 1225-1236 (4, 1254), 185
- Theodora I Lascaris, *son-in-law of Arnold III Angelus*, *Byzantine emperor at Nicara* 1268-1272, 379
- Theodora Makrambolita, *Greek in Greek* (4, 1264), 176a
- Theodor I Palaeologus, son of John V, *despot of the Morea* 1362-1407, 230
- Theodor II Palaeologus, son of Manuel II, *despot of the Morea* 1417-1418, *co-despot of the Morea and the Black Sea* 1428-1443, *lord of Salmyria* 1443-1448, 300
- Theodosius, 307, *bishop of*, see *John 1436-1438*
- Theodosius, 330, 340, 347, 372, 379, 380, 382-384, 388, 372, 381, 391, 351, 392; *emperor of*, see *Constantine II of Constantinople* 1204
- Thessalonians 1234-1236, *High* (17) of *Byzantine* (under, 1264-1273), *Andron* (in *Palaeologus* 1408-1413)
- Thessaly, 161, 378, 346, 345, 349, 354, 372, 374, 387
- Thessalonian Republic (1401-1402), *Cyprian official* (4, 1176), 151, 159, 173a
- Third Crusade, 11, 25, 47, 74, 119, 131, 143, 140, 142, 152, 378a, 379a, 174
- Thierry-la-Berchier, 347 and see *Geoffrey*
- Thomas Aquinas, *Dominican theologian* (4, 1223, 4, 1274, *convent*), 15, 22
- Thomas Dandolo, *Venetian duke of Crete* 1443-1447, 294
- Thomas Marston, *Venetian captain of the Gulf in 1245*, *duke of Venice* 1414-1423, 232, 233, 235
- Thomas of Marla, *legendary crusader*, 167
- Thomas "of the Mares" *first brother of Helena Palaeologina*, *chamberlain of Cyprus* (4, 1477), 151
- Thomas Palaeologus, son of Manuel II; *co-despot of the Morea* 1418-1425-1431, *prince of Achaea* 1433-1460, *claimant to Byzantine throne* 1451-1460, 324, 325
- Thomas Parik, *knights* (4, 1187), 158
- Thopie Zante-Via, *Athens lord* (4, 1432), 347
- Thorus, 239-238, 242, 245, 244, 236, 227
- Thorus, see *John Thorus*
- Thorus, 429, 307, and see *John de Thorus*
- Thorus Venetian family, see *John and Scipione Thorus*
- Tigra, 48, 307
- Thork, 347, 304, 309
- Titus ("Lust", the *Luxus Tarentina*) *Tiro-rigardus* 1389-1407, 211, 234, 242, 279, 152
- Tivorda, *Turkish dynasty in Transylvania and Persia* 1349-1380, 242; see *Tivora* 1349-1407, *Tivorda* 1401-1447
- Tivora, 247, 248, 250, 274, 155, 308
- Tivra, 279, 308
- Tivra, *Neapolitan family*, 340, see *Charles I*
- Tivra 1349-1423, *Charles II Tivra* 1429-1444
- Tivra, 340, and see *Four*; *archbishop of*, see *Constantine 1234-1239*
- Tivra, 372, 308
- Tivra, 308, and see *Reynold*
- Tivra (Thorus), see *John Thorus*
- Tivra, 308, and see *Arnold*
- Tivra, 384, 308, *lord of*, see *Philip of Montfort* 1340-1362

- Torda, Armenian lord of Edessa (s. 1095), 561, 562
- Torcama, in Syria, 109, 506; similar bishops of, *see* Salomon Carian 1420-1470, *Anthony Antioch*
- Tord, 118n, 508
- Tordona, 419, 377, 368, 371, 376, 508
- Tordoun, county, 357; count of, *see* Raymond IV of St Gilles, 1014-1101, Raymond 1105-1112, Alfonso Jordan 1112-1140, Raymond V 1140-1194
- Torfan, 108, and *see* Gilbert and Simon
- Toran, 123, 126, 143, 508; bishop of, *see* Gregory 573-1104
- Tower of David, in Jerusalem, 373, 374, 376, 397, 398, 401
- Tajaf's Door, 282, 508
- Taraphosa, 238, 241, 364, 367, 377n, 239, 264, 183, 207, 329, 345, 358; bishop of, *see* George Lepin 1427-1442; count of, *see* Sacher, prince of, *see* Stephen Bethard (s. 1444); vicar of, *see* Stephen Lachovitch (s. 1395), John Huppall 1440-1450
- Tar, 354, 508
- Tekimant, 402, 365, 379, 398, and *see* Ismarion
- Telbarnat, couples, 361, 322, 325, 379, 508; superior of, *see* Conrad 1264-1441
- Tephel, 123, 508
- Tevlan, 129, 508
- Thamir, legendary king of Alexandria, 73
- Thipala, city, 41, 342, 376, 344, 387, 428, 429, 449, 508, and *see* William
- Thipol, county, 154, 376, 373, 379, 382, 382, 386, 387, 402-405, 407, 410, 423, 439, 444, 445-417, 443; counts of, *see* Raymond of St Gilles 974-1100, Raymond 1109-1112, Peter 1112-1137, Raymond II 1137-1112, Raymond III 1152-1185, Bohemund (10) 1187-1233, Bohemund (7) 1233-1242, Bohemund (7b) 1253-1275, Bohemund (VII) 1275-1285, Peter de Lusignan (Ghur), Balan of Falkenberg (legendary)
- Troseti, ancient people of Asia Minor, 189
- Trop, 123n, 394, 508
- Troya, 378, 508; count palatine of, *see* Henry III of Champagne 1181-1197
- Tugayin ('Daulak'), tribal meeting of Dismenon 1154-1158 118, 434
- Tulazak, Turkish dynasty in Edessa and Syria 348-905, 425, 431
- Tura, 27, 78, 81, 508
- Turida, 502; rulers of, *see* Agkathak 880-909, Filakida 909-972, Mikrakidak, Rafak 1210-1274
- Turkhan (Bag), Ottoman general (s. 1423, 1442; d. 1454), 236, 237n, 264, 270, 270n
- Turkman (or Turkman, Thikman), Turkic people, 224, 227-229, 362, 377, 182, and *see* Akkoyunlu, Arakida, Dismenonkida, Kankoyunlu, Kalkak
- Turkey, 73, 223, 224, 233, 508
- Turkic language, 101, 8
- Turks, Akkai people, 101, 44, 71, 74, 96, 104, 106, 107, 100n, 241, 254, 215, 220, 225-230, 232-244, 249, 261, 262, 271, 276-281, 284-310, 313, 319, 323, 342, 347, 352, 365, 364, 434, and *see* Akkida, Kalkakida, Kalkakida (Kankoyunlu), Ottoman, Turkakida, Turkakida of Edna, Turakida, Turkakida, Zangak
- Turra, 123, 508
- Turpin, legendary portrait of Charlemagne (based on archbishop of Reims 753-1104) and alleged meeting of the 1110-C chronicler, 11, 50, 45
- Turris (Bag), Ottoman historian (s. 1450), 310
- Tuscep, 109, 328, 508
- Turkman, 502; medieval bishop of, *see* Ismarion of Vasy 1230-1245/L, Ode of Chikasharion 1244-1273, Hugh de Lusignan 1404-1442, John Comel 1444-1444, Basilian 1445-1448
- Turris Luder of Basia 1155-1175, king 1177-1191-1207
- Turris II, son of Turris I, king of Basia 1404-1408, 1431-1440, 360, 367, 372
- Tyc, 131, 132, 133, 132, 174, 182-184, 407, 410, 429, 430, 440-444, 454, 474, 508; archbishop of, *see* William of Tyc 1174-ca. 1187, and *see* Henry (legendary), brother of, *see* Philip of Montfort 1243-1270, John of Montfort 1270-1283, Antoine de Lusignan (Ghur) prince, 8, 1300
- Tyrone, 233, 233, 508
- Ughulak, *see* John Ughulak
- Ughul, 508, and *see* William (2)
- Umar (Phoen), son of Agila 134-1348, 228, 229, 233, 270n, 349
- Upper Egypt, 428, 508
- Urban II (Stade of Lapey), pope 1088-1099 5-11, 13, 14, 39-44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 72, 89, 103, 117
- Urban IV (Ismarion Panaklon), patriarch of Jerusalem 1255-1264, pope 1261-1264: 134, 138
- Urban V (William de Gernacourt), pope 1362-1378: 307, 340, 342

- Uzunak, shah-Buzurglar, the-branded the-
shahs, Arabic manuscript (s. 1081, d.
1182), 75
- Usher of Sedice, monk of Durham (s. 1770),
31, 32
- Utragueta, Basque group, 296
- Uzun Hattat, chief of the Akkoyunlu Turks
1466-1478: 324, 326-328, 353
- Vaiskron, legendary Median leader, 43
- Valence, 354, 358, 549, and see Bernard
- Valens Mirandis, Western Indian Communist
sage (in 1802), 334
- Vallat, 328, 348
- Vannoy, Scandinavian in Byzantine empire,
38
- Varns, 361, 374, 375, 391, 394, 395, 398, 399,
500
- Varns, Greek, army of the Ottomans (in 1446),
300
- Vasutius, 94, 128, 134, 135, 154, 155, 159, 165-
167, 173, 189, 192-198, 202, 208-211, 228-
231, 237-240, 242-245, 254, 271, 279, 287-
288, 271-275, 288, 281, 288, 293-298, 341,
397, 311, 321, 327, 336, 333, 346, 349, 352,
444, 462, 463
- Vasut, 43, 128, 141, 158, 164-168, 174, 176a,
189-208, 277-288, 236, 231, 235, 239, 340,
345, 348-349, 369, 372, 382, 383, 386-398,
395, 312, 397-399, 324-352, 378, 383, 462,
399; steps of, see *Enrico Donato* 1193-
1205, *Trois de Moirige* 1414-1421, *Four
de Fournet* 1423-1437, *Leonard London*
1506-1522
- Vasut, 302a, 394; see *Leonard, Maria, and
Matthew Vasut*
- Vasut, 119, 549; bishop of, see *Richter* 1079-
1107, count of, see *Godfrey of Basilia*
1076-1108
- Vasutaria, 358, 398; count of, see *Ralph* 61,
1189
- Vasut, 774, 309; and see *Jerbo*
- Vasut, 346, 349, 350, 399
- Vin Egnatia, 346, 399
- Vasut, 219, 341, 251, 252, 287, 279, 304, 321,
349
- Vasut, 364, 285, 387, 318, 326, 399
- Vasut, 14, 354, 376a, 349; Council of (1381-
1383), 33
- Vasutia, 599; daughter of, see *Hansel* 11
(1354-1349)
- Village, Scandinavian authors and warriors,
72a
- Vilagos, 371, 399
- Vin, 121, 309
- Vilach, 345, 399
- Vilapi, see *Clonard and Matthew Vilapi*
- Vilfranco-er-Mar, 290, 293, 293, 291, 309
- Vilfrancoia, 309; see also *Godfrey* 51 and
William
- Vincent of Basutia, Dominican, theologian
(d. 1244?), 81, 91
- Vincent, dotal family of Vilapi, see *John
Clonard Vincent* 1193-1400; see also
Gregory X
- Vincent, Hungary army (in 1446), 309
- Vin-er-Arnie, 309, and see *James*
- Vin, 598, and see *Rodriguez* 322
- Vin, 343, 375
- Vlad, anti-episcopate in Wallachia (in 1497), 311,
353
- Vlad I, prince of Wallachia ca. 1446-1472:
341
- Vlad II Dracul ("the Dragon" or "the Devil"),
son of Mircea, prince of Wallachia ca.
1425-1448: 248, 247, 271-275, 281, 300,
395, 349
- Vlad III Neput ("the Imposter", "Dracula"), son
of Vlad II, prince of Wallachia 1458-1462,
1476-1478: 323
- Vladimir, see *Latitia*
- Vladimir I and II of Bohemia, see *Latitia V
and VI*
- Vladimir III, king of Poland, see *Latitia IV*
- Vladimir Iagila, son-in-law of Louis I of Pol-
and, great duke of Lithuania 1362-1401,
king (II) of Poland 1386-1404: 324
- Vladko Vukovich, Hungarian prince, Bos-
nian commander (in 1365), 347
- Vladko, 321, 309
- Vladko, 321, 309
- Vuk Bugarovich, lord of Skopje ca. 1271-1293
et. by 1412, 323
- Vukobin (Vukobinich), ruler (Ruso) of the
Serbs 1366-1371: 342
- Walter, prince of Salerno (in 878), 4
- Wastan of Werra, nephew of John, Magyar-
dian commander (in 1444), 276a: 292-293,
302, 354
- Wala, 309, 309, and see *Gerald*
- Wallachia, 128, 341, 248, 250, 251, 258-261, 264,
267, 274, 280, 282, 286, 291, 305, 308, 325,
336, 323, 334, 335, 338; princes of, see
Vlad I ca. 1240-1272, *Mircea* 1386-1412,
Michael 1412-1420, *John II* 1420-1421, *Sachs*
II 1421-1427, *Aldea* 1428-ca. 1433, *Vlad III*
ca. 1433-1444, *Vlad III* 1456-1462, 1476-

- 1476; anti-corrode of, *see* *Wad* (in 1393);
 presider in, *see* *Rada* III 1462-1473
 Wabir IV, nephew of John of Bressan; count
 of Bressan 1255-1270, count of Jolia ca.
 1221-1232-34
 Wabir of Compiègne, author (R. 1140), 33,
 68
 Warwick, 329, *and see* *Clay*
 Warin, 329, *and see* *John* and *Walewe*
 Wasan, 32, 399
 White Sheep Turcomans, *see* *Akkaymish*
 William IX, troublesome duke of Aquitaine and
 count of Poitou 1086-1127-38
 William I ("the Conqueror"), duke of Nor-
 mandy 1035-1087, king of England 1066-
 1087-124
 William II ("Rufus"), son of William I, king
 of England 1087-1100: 120, 132
 William ("the Lion"), king of Scotland 1165-
 1214: 119
 William Adair, Dominican propagandist, arch-
 bishop of Salazarph 1323-1324 *id.* on
 1399, 92
 William II Crispin, brother of Thos. R. lord of
 Annapolis 1297-1463, duke of the Archipelago
 1423-1463-78
 William Langland, author (I) of "Piers Plow-
 man" (a. ca. 1332, d. ca. 1400), 51, 32
 William Marshal (son of Pederbrok, d. 1219),
 14, 74
 Williams of Chartres, master of the Temple
 1218-1219: 143n
 William of Muchant, French musician and
 chronicler (d. 1177), 93n
 William of Malmesbury, English chronicler (R.
 1021), 3, 4, 42, 49
 William of Newburgh, Scottish chronicler (d.
 ca. 1188), 176n
 William of Orange, legendary warrior, 64, 85,
 99
 William of Radrick, Frenchman missionary (d.
 1276), 41, 87
 William of Tripoli, Dominican missionary (R.
 1276), 17n
 William of Tyre, archbishop of Tyre 1174-ca.
 1187: 3, 74-100, 102, 102, 114, 125n, 369,
 381-383
 William of Villehardouin, son of Godfrey R.
 prince (II) of Achaia 1246-1278: 191
 William Shakespeare, English poet and drama-
 tist (b. 1564, d. 1616), 93
 Wyrzburg, 329n, 328, *and see* *John*; bishop of,
see *Godfrey* 1134-1136
 Wydz' *see* *John Wydz'*
 Yaghi-Seyan ("Gardian"), Turkish governor of
 Antioch 1087-1098: 369, 385
 Yakhya (Qug), son of Karan (in 1334), 128n
 Yakub (Fakh), Ottoman general (in 1493), 343
 Yama, 303, 328
 Yaw, 367, 326, 329, 332, 399
 Yemut, 452, 453, 399
 Yemutshy, 273, 273, 350
 Yungu (Fakh), son of Murad II (R. 1422),
 236n
 Yura, 310, *and see* *John*
 Yusuf, legendary hero, 64
 Yusuf ("Bastard") of Jerusalem, daughter of
 Isidore II abbot of Italy (R. 1444), 12,
 112
 Zaid, 472, 510, ruler of *see* *R.R.* (in 1158)
 al-Zahir, al-Zahir (Mamun) (son), great-grandson
 of al-Muhammud, Fatimid imam of Egypt
 1149-1154: 423
 Zagata, Ottoman commander (in 1444), 274,
 364, 365, 364, 326, 328
 al-Zahir, al-Zahir Hasan R.R. son of al-Muhammud,
 Fatimid imam of Egypt 1021-1034: 423
 al-Zahir Qutub, Ghazni-al-Zahir, son of Sal-
 din, Ayyubid governor of Aleppo 1186-1193,
 ruler 1193-1216: 423, 433, 439-463
 Zakariya' R. al-Zahir al-Zahir, Hafid ruler
 of Tarsus 1498-1499: 343
 Zakhari, Muslim family, *see* *Andrew*
 Zaki, 364, 230, 343, 350; counts (son) of,
see *Charles R. Thos* 1401-1425, Chapter II
 Thos 1429-1448
 Zakhari, *see* *James Zakhari*
 Zari, 340, 234, 310
 Zaynab Chamschi, bishop of Cracow 1421-
 1425, medieval-prince 1429-1432-277n, 284-
 287, 344
 Zekoukian, 273, 284, 310
 Zerkat, Albanian family, *see* *John* and *Thos*
 Zerkat
 Zeng, *see* *John Zeng*
 Zengid, Turkish dynasty in Mosul 1127-1234
 and Aleppo 1128-1183: 435-437-438, 445n,
see *Nip al-Zahir* (1246-1274), *son* (II)
 (Aleppo 1174-1181/2)
 Zeng, Muslim family, 293
 Zekou, 245, 310
 Zekou, son, 276, 273, 310
 Zekou, son, 276, 310
 Zekou, 283, 270
 Zac of Mopon, wife of Rensu de Balthazar
 (in 1280), 306n
 Zerkat, 342, 360

COMPOSED BY METRICOMP, GRAPEVILL CENTER, IOWA AND
CULTURA-METTEREN, METTEREN, BELGIUM
MANUFACTURED BY THOMSON-TOBI, INC., DEXTER, MICHIGAN
TEXT IS SET IN TIMES ROMAN, DISPLAY LINES IN GARAMOND



Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
(Revised for v. 4)

Series. Known: Hope, 1954-
A history of the Crusades.

Includes bibliographical references and indexes.

Crusades. v. 1 The first hundred years, edited by
M. W. Baldwin. - v. 2 The later Crusades, 1189-1291,
edited by R. L. Wolff and H. W. Hazard. - [etc.] -
v. 4 The impact of the crusades on Europe, edited
by Harry W. Hazard and Norman F. Zerkow.

I Crusades. I Title.

D157.54Q2 940 (78 48-9437)

ISBN 0-399-00740-2 (p. 3)